Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

What's new in iOS 26

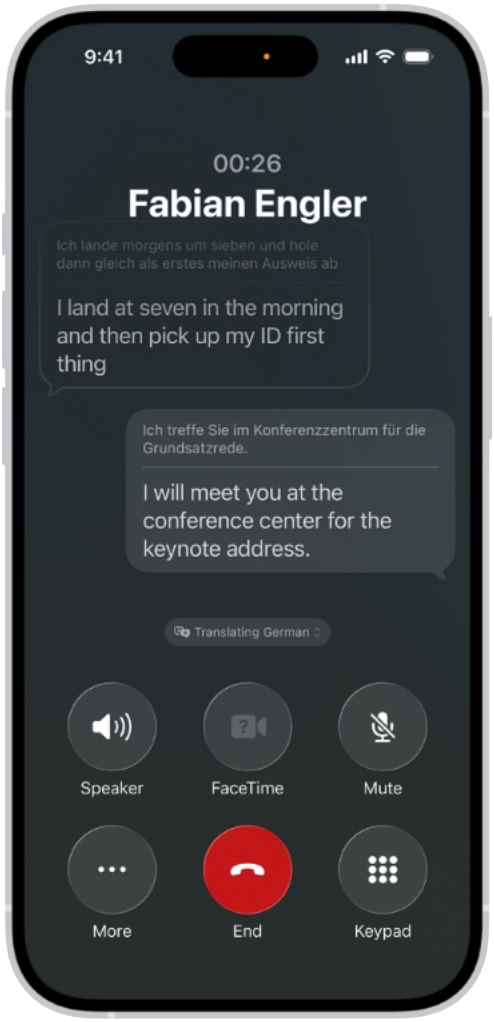
Lock Screen. The time dynamically adapts its position based on your Lock Screen photo or wallpaper and always keeps the subject in view. When you move your iPhone, your Lock Screen photo comes to life with a new 3D effect. See Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.



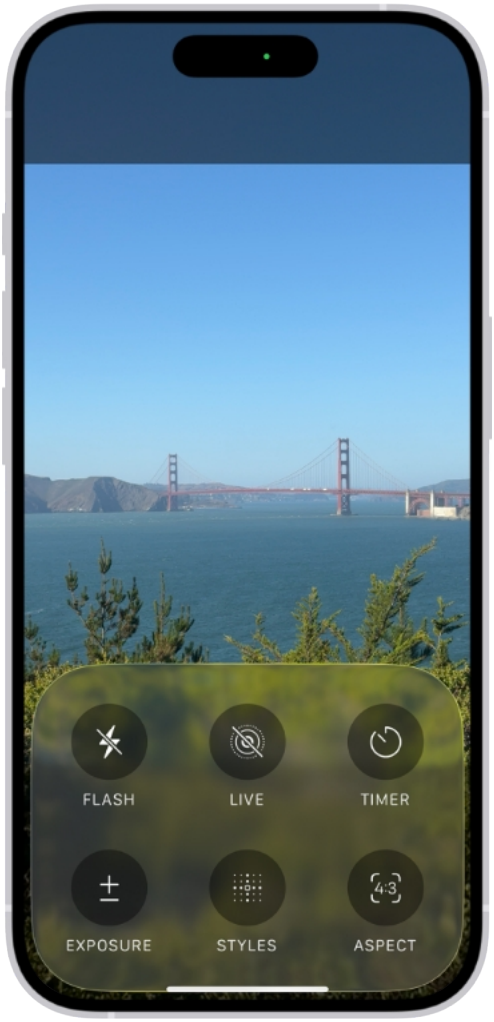
Home Screen. App icons on your Home Screen have a new look that you can tint with different colors or turn light, dark, or clear. See Customize apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen.



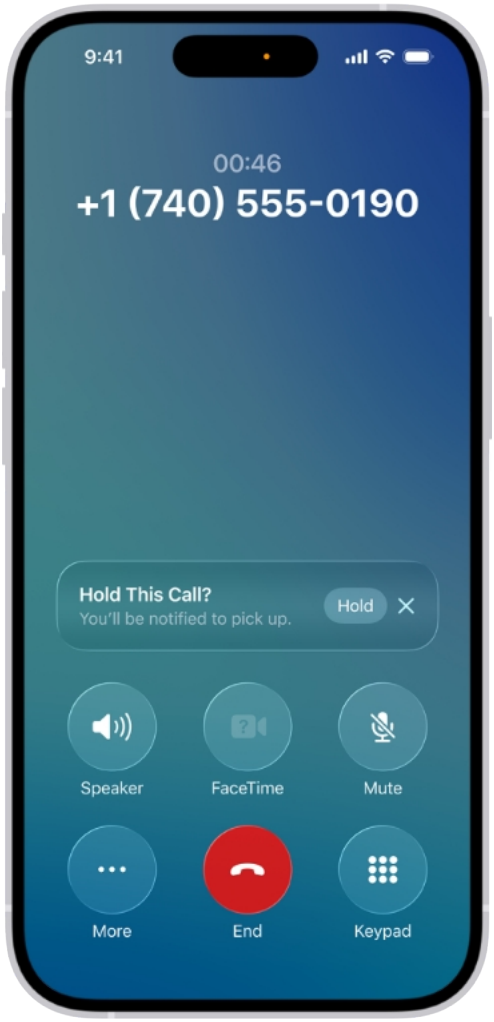
Apple Intelligence.* Create custom Genmoji using existing emoji, combinations of emoji, or descriptive text. Change the look and expressions of Genmoji and Image Playground creations that are based on people from your Photos library. Design custom backgrounds for your Messages conversations. Live Translation automatically translates texts in Messages, shows live translated captions in FaceTime calls, and provides spoken translations for Phone calls. Use visual intelligence to learn more about what you're viewing on your iPhone screen. See Create original images with Image Playground on iPhone, Create your own emoji with Genmoji on iPhone, Create and edit original backgrounds with Image Playground, Translate messages, calls, and conversations on iPhone, and Learn more about the content on your iPhone screen.



Camera. A simplified design highlights Photo and Video modes for quick access, while the other camera modes are just a swipe away. Camera controls are now grouped together onscreen, making it easier to adjust your camera settings in the moment. See Switch between camera modes and Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot.



Phone. Remove unwanted distractions from unknown numbers with Call Screening, which gathers the necessary information before your phone rings, so you can make an informed decision on whether to pick up, decline, or ask for more information. Use Hold Assist to wait on hold for you and then send you a notification when it's time to return to the call. See Screen and block calls on iPhone and Receive a notification when you're no longer on hold.



Messages. Messages from unknown numbers are filtered into a separate area of your conversation list for you to review and approve. Backgrounds let you personalize conversations for everyone to enjoy using dynamic backgrounds, your own photos, or backgrounds you create in Image Playground. In group conversations, you can create polls to help make decisions, send money using Apple Cash, and see typing indicators. See Screen, filter, report, and block text messages on iPhone, Add backgrounds in Messages on iPhone, Send, request, and receive payments with Apple Cash in Messages, and Poll people in Messages on iPhone.



Photos. An updated design makes it easier to switch between your Library and Collections. You can now customize how Collections appear—reorder them, choose which ones to pin, and select from three display sizes: larger tiles, a denser grid, or a layout that highlights the top row. See Browse your photo library on iPhone and Browse your photo collections on iPhone.



Maps. Maps learns your preferred routes to places you go often, like work or home. Maps will notify you of conditions on your preferred route, such as traffic delays or road closures, before you head out and offer you an alternate route. Use Visited Places to keep track of where you've been, so you can recall them later and share with friends or family. See Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone and View and manage Visited Places in Maps on iPhone.



Games. A new app where you can keep track of all the games you're playing, discover new ones, receive tailored recommendations, and start challenges with friends. See Get started with the Apple Games app on iPhone.

Audio recording. Capture high-quality audio and video during video conference calls and with Camera. A new input chooser makes it easy for creators to pick the right microphone for each app. See Record audio and video on iPhone.

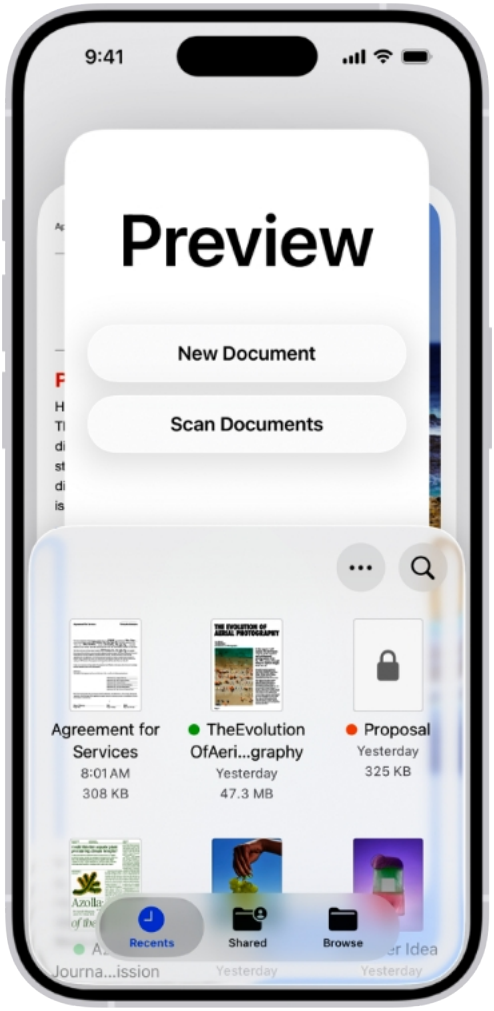


Music. AutoMix seamlessly mixes one song to the next, just like a DJ. See Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone.

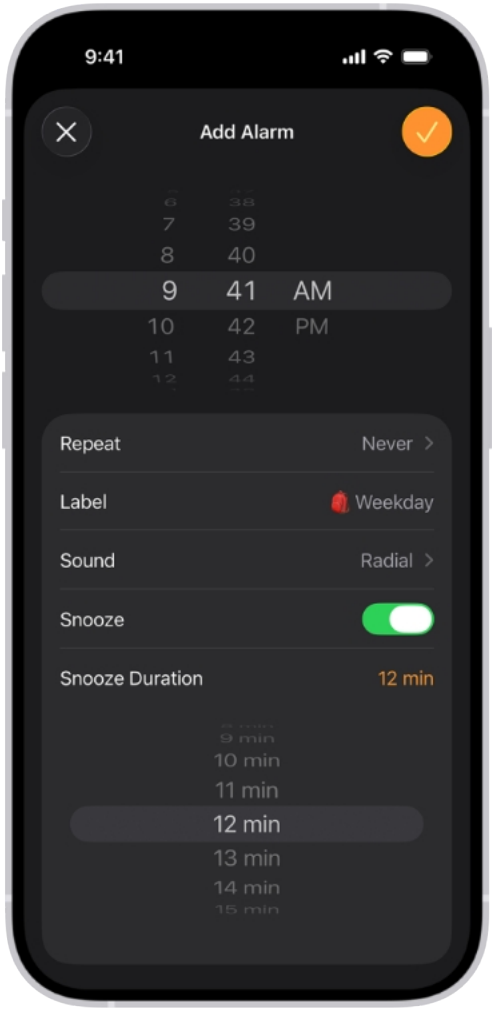
Wallet. Boarding passes that you save in Wallet provide access to relevant information about your flight and airport, as well as airline app features. See Use passes in Wallet on iPhone.



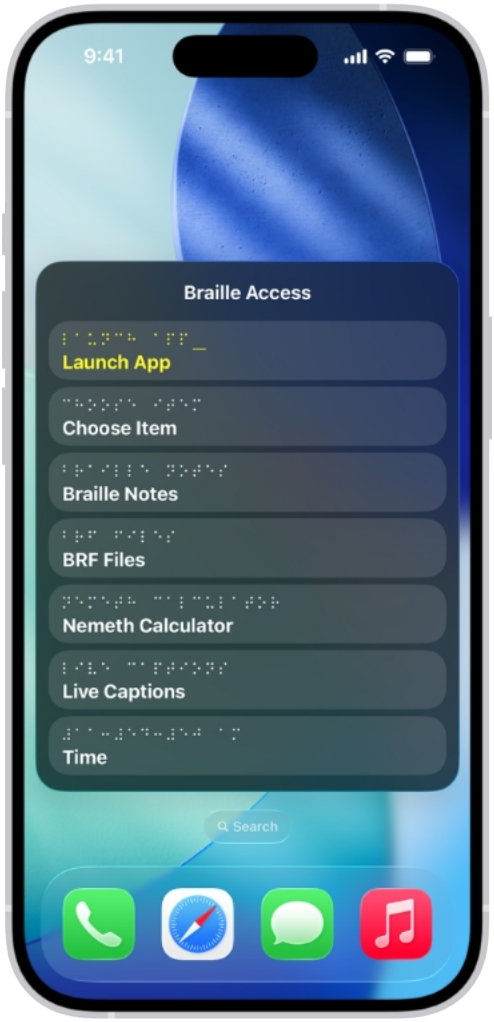
Preview. The Preview app is now available on iPhone so you can easily view, edit, and share PDF documents and images. Scan documents from within Preview, use Autofill in Preview to quickly fill out forms, and export PDFs and images as different file types or sizes. See Get started with Preview on iPhone.



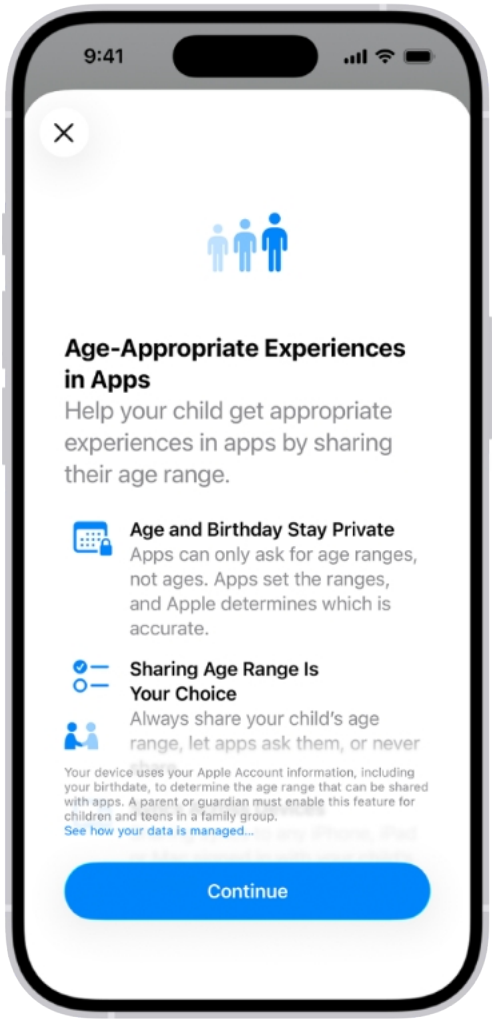
Clock. Set a custom snooze time for your alarm to match your preferred sleeping habits. See Set an alarm.



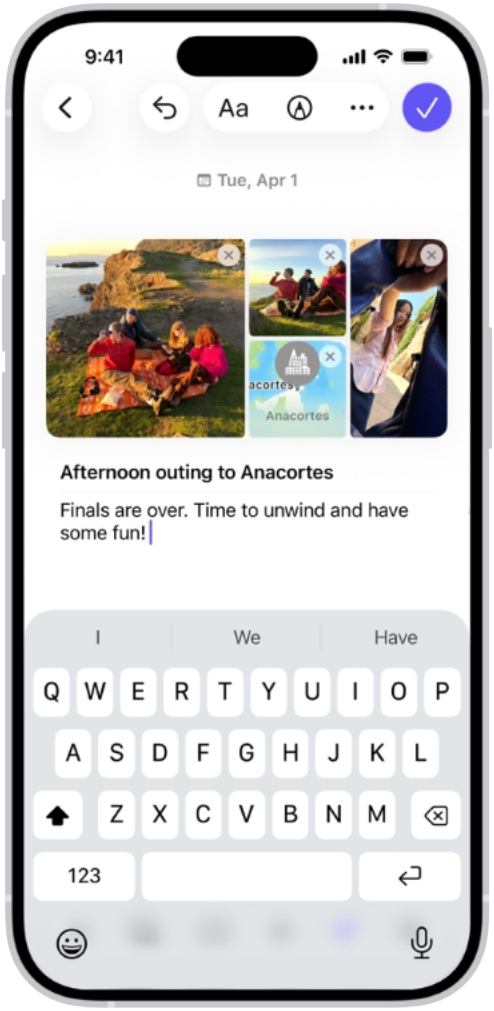
Accessibility. Braille Access introduces an all-new experience designed for Braille users with a connected Braille display that enables note-taking, document-reading, access to Live Captions and more. Vehicle Motion Cues help reduce motion sickness for passengers in moving vehicles. You can also temporarily use your Accessibility settings on someone else's device. See Use Braille Access with a braille display on iPhone, Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle, and Share your Accessibility settings with another device on iPhone.



Family. During device set up, parents can specify if they are setting up a device for an older child, age 13–17, and age-appropriate protections are automatically enabled. See Share your child's age range with apps on iPhone.



Journal. Create multiple journals for different aspects of your life. As you write, include drawings inline with text, and then view the location of your journal entries on a map. See Create multiple journals, Add formatting, photos, and more in Journal on iPhone, and View and search your journal entries on iPhone.



CarPlay. New design makes CarPlay an easier and safer way to use your iPhone while you drive. Tapbacks in Messages make it easy to quickly respond to messages you receive while driving. Widgets let you keep up with your favorite apps at a glance and Live Activities on the dashboard let you keep track of events in real time. See React with Tapbacks, Add a widget for CarPlay, and View Live Activities in CarPlay.

Weather. Add a Weather widget to your Smart Stack for an upcoming destination. Opt-in to receive severe weather alerts for that location. See Get weather notifications for a suggested location.

Learn tricks for iOS 26. The Tips app adds new suggestions regularly, so you can get the most from your iPhone. See Get tips.

Note: New features and apps may vary depending on your iPhone model, region, language, and carrier.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

iPhone User Guide

Everything you need to know about iPhone

Table of Contents ⊕



converted by iphone17manual.com



Get started

Set up a few basic features before you start using your new iPhone.

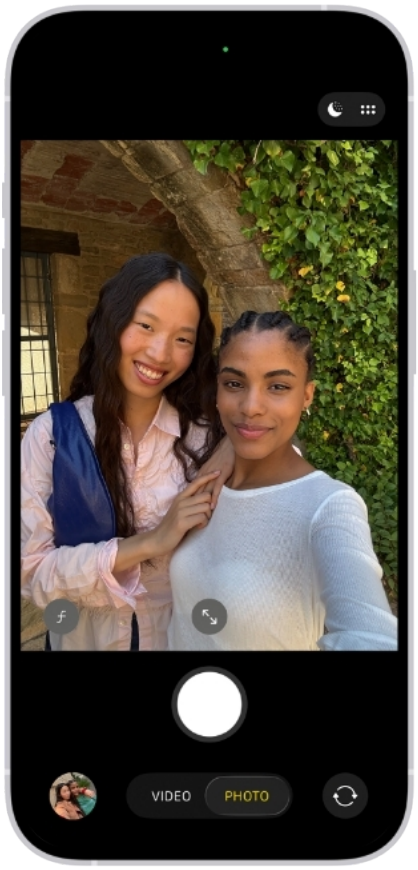
Setup basics ›

Add a personal touch

Your iPhone can reflect your personal style and preferences. Showcase your favorite photos on the Lock Screen, add widgets to the Home Screen, adjust text size, ringtones, and more.

Make your iPhone your own ›





Take your best shot

Use your iPhone to capture the moment, wherever you are. Learn how to take photos and videos on the fly, and use other camera features on your iPhone.

Take great photos and videos ›

Stay connected

iPhone makes it easy to reach the people important to you. Add them to your contacts so you have their information everywhere you need it—then catch up with text messages, phone calls, or FaceTime.

Keep in touch with friends and family ›





All in the family

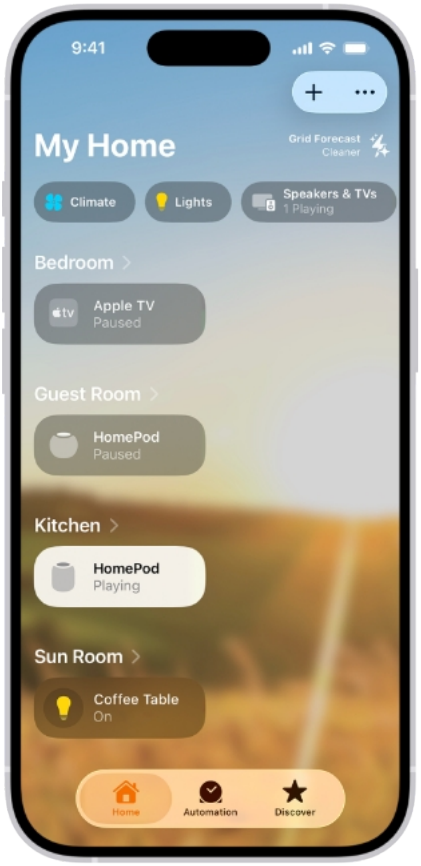
You and your family members can use Family Sharing to share eligible app purchases, your location, and even health data. You can also choose a family member or someone you trust to help you regain access to your iPhone if you forget your passcode.

Share features with your family ›

Simplify your day

Learn how to use the apps on your iPhone to direct you to the places you go most often, pay for your morning coffee, remind you of important tasks, and even lock your front door automatically when you leave home.

Use iPhone for your daily routines ›





Pro tips

Check out these tips from Apple Support advisors to keep your iPhone, and the information you keep on it, safe and secure.

Expert advice from Apple Support ›

To explore the iPhone User Guide, click Table of Contents at the top of the page, or enter a word or phrase in the search field.

Next
iPhone models compatible with iOS 26

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

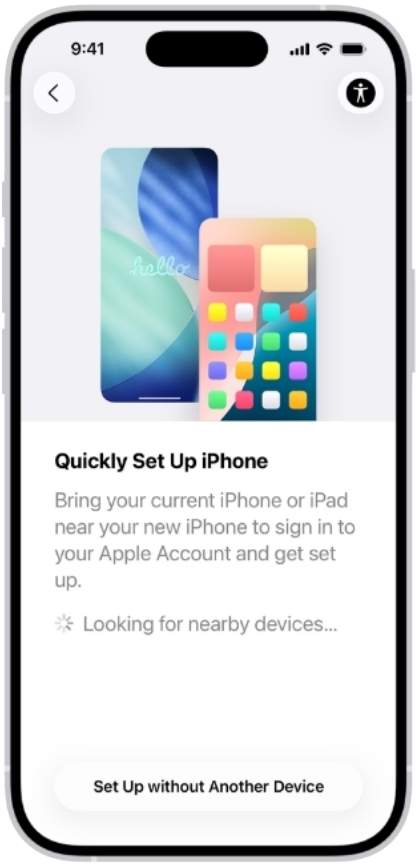
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Setup basics

iPhone has an easy setup process to help you get going when you first turn on your device. Whether you're just getting started or want to make sure you have the basics set up, you're in the right place.



Transfer your apps and info onto your new iPhone

When you first turn on your iPhone and begin the setup process, you can wirelessly transfer many of your apps, settings, and content from your previous iPhone directly to your new iPhone—just bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Set up cellular service and connect to Wi-Fi

Depending on your model, use an eSIM from your carrier or install a physical SIM card to connect to your cellular network. To check if your iPhone is connected to your cellular plan, go to Settings > Cellular.

To connect your iPhone to your home Wi-Fi network, go to Settings > Wi-Fi, turn on Wi-Fi, then choose your network. iPhone automatically connects to your Wi-Fi network whenever you're home.



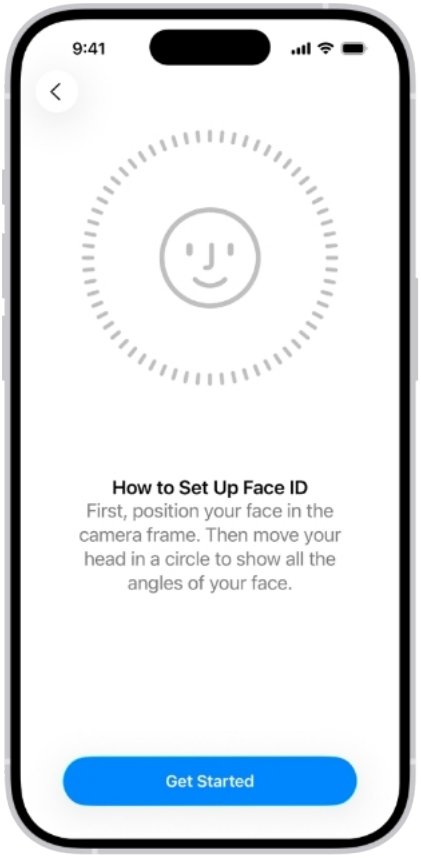


Sign in to your Apple Account

You use your Apple Account to access Apple services such as the App Store, the iTunes Store, Apple Books, Apple Music, FaceTime, iCloud, iMessage, and more.

To sign in to your Apple Account, go to Settings > Apple Account. If you have an iPad (with iPadOS 17 or later) or another iPhone (with iOS 17 or later), you can simply bring your iPhone near your other device. Otherwise, you can manually sign in. To verify that you're signed in, go to Settings > [*your name*]; your Apple Account appears below your name.

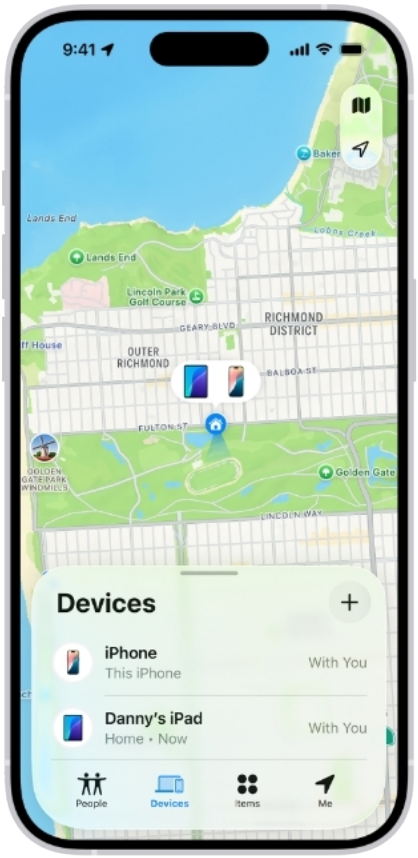
Set up Face ID or Touch ID



You can use Face ID (face recognition) or Touch ID (your fingerprint) to securely unlock your iPhone, sign in to many apps, and make purchases. For your security, Face ID and Touch ID data doesn't leave your device and isn't saved anywhere else.

Depending on your iPhone model, do one of the following:

- *Set up Face ID:* Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode, tap Set up Face ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Set up Touch ID:* Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode, tap Add a Fingerprint, then follow the onscreen instructions.



Turn on Find My iPhone

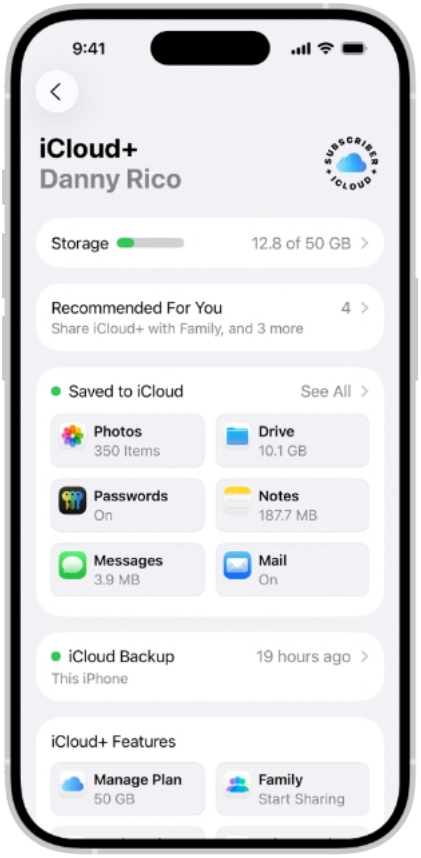
You can locate your iPhone if it's ever lost or stolen.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Find My, tap Find My iPhone, then turn on Find My iPhone. You can see the location of your devices in the Find My app. If you lose your iPhone and don't have access to the Find My app, you can locate your device using Find My on iCloud.com.

Store your data in iCloud

iCloud helps you keep your important info safe and in sync across your devices. If you replace or lose your iPhone, or it's damaged or stolen, your photos, videos, and more remain secure in iCloud.

To turn on or change the features you want to use with iCloud, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.



Want to learn more?

- Turn on and set up iPhone
- Set up cellular service on iPhone
- Connect iPhone to the internet
- Set up Face ID on iPhone
- Locate a device in Find My on iPhone
- Use iCloud on iPhone

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

Previous
iPhone Air

Next
Make your iPhone your own

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Make your iPhone your own

You can tailor your iPhone to your own interests and preferences. Personalize your Lock Screen, customize the appearance of apps on your Home Screen, keep your favorite features like magnifier and remote handy, change the sounds and vibrations for calls and messages, and more.



Customize app icons on your Home Screen

You can change the look and feel of app icons on your Home Screen. Choose between light or dark, an all-new clear option, or tinted your favorite color.

Touch and hold the background on any Home Screen page until the apps jiggle. Tap Edit, tap Customize, then choose from the different appearance options.

Personalize your Lock Screen

You can showcase a favorite photo, then add a depth effect to turn it into a spatial scene. You can also add widgets, adjust the size of the clock, or swap out the controls at the bottom of the screen for other options—like Timer or Voice Memo.

Touch and hold the Lock Screen, then tap ⊕ at the bottom of the screen. Browse the gallery of wallpaper options, then tap an option to select it and customize its appearance.





Set your favorite controls

Many iPhone features—like the timer and flashlight—are just a swipe away in Control Center. To quickly open Control Center on an iPhone with Face ID, swipe down from the top-right edge; on an iPhone with a Home button, swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

After you open Control Center, tap ⊕. Tap Add a Control at the bottom of the screen, then swipe up to view the controls gallery. When you see a control you want to add, tap it.

Add widgets to your Home Screen

Widgets let you easily see the information that's most important to you, like the current weather and upcoming calendar events. You can also complete tasks—for example, check off an item in your Reminders to-do list, or play a song in Music.

Touch and hold the background on any Home Screen page until the apps jiggle, tap Edit, then tap Add Widget.





Customize your phone calls

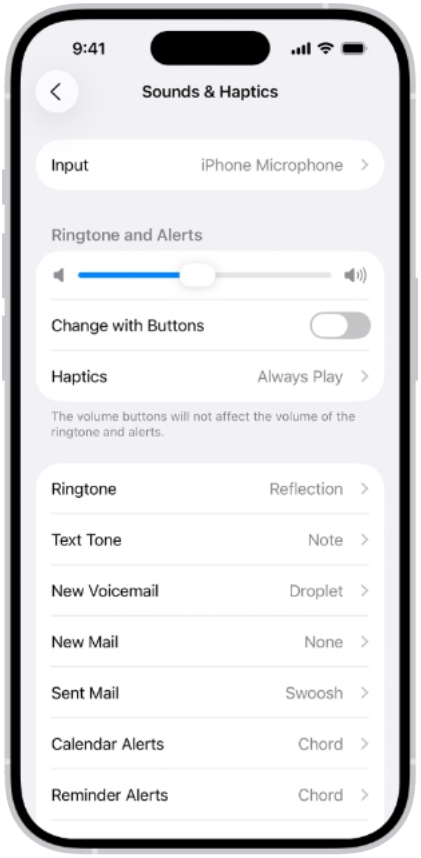
Create your own unique call poster to personalize what people see when you call them. Choose your favorite photo or emoji, pair it with your preferred font, then add colors to make it pop. When you make a phone call, your call poster appears on the screen of the person you're calling.

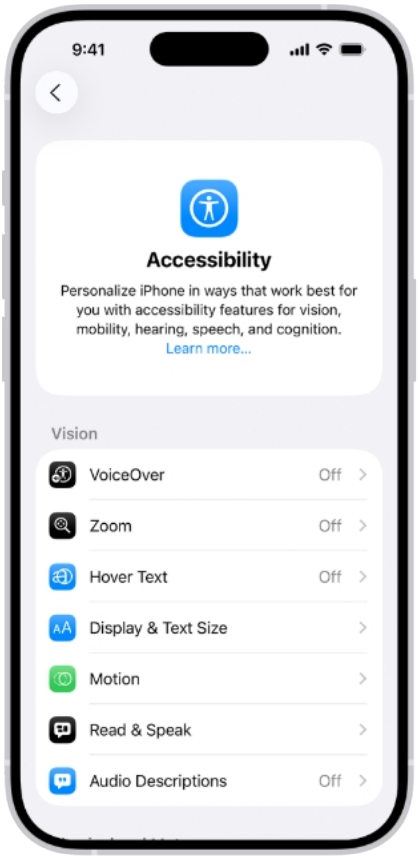
To get started, open the Contacts app, tap your name, then tap Shared Name and Photo.

Choose sounds and vibrations

iPhone can play different sounds and vibrations for phone calls, text messages, calendar alerts, and other notifications. Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics.

You can also change the sounds iPhone plays for certain people; in the Contacts app, tap a person's name, tap Edit, then tap Ringtone or Text Tone.





Use built-in accessibility features

iPhone provides many accessibility features to support your vision, mobility, hearing, speech, and cognitive needs. Change text size, make it easier to use the touchscreen, control your iPhone with just your voice, and more.

To customize these settings, go to Settings > Accessibility.

Check your privacy settings

iPhone is designed to protect your privacy and information. You can grant or deny apps permission to track your activity across other companies' apps and websites. To deny requests from apps to track your activity, go to Settings > Privacy & Security, tap Tracking, then turn off Allow Apps to Request to Track.



Want to learn more?

- Customize apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen
- Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen
- Use and customize Control Center on iPhone
- Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone
- Get started with accessibility features on iPhone
- Control what you share on iPhone

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

Previous
Setup basics

Next
Take great photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Take great photos and videos

With your iPhone nearby, you'll never miss a chance to take a photo or video or snap a selfie. After you take photos, use the editing tools in the Photos app to crop, adjust the light and color, and much more.

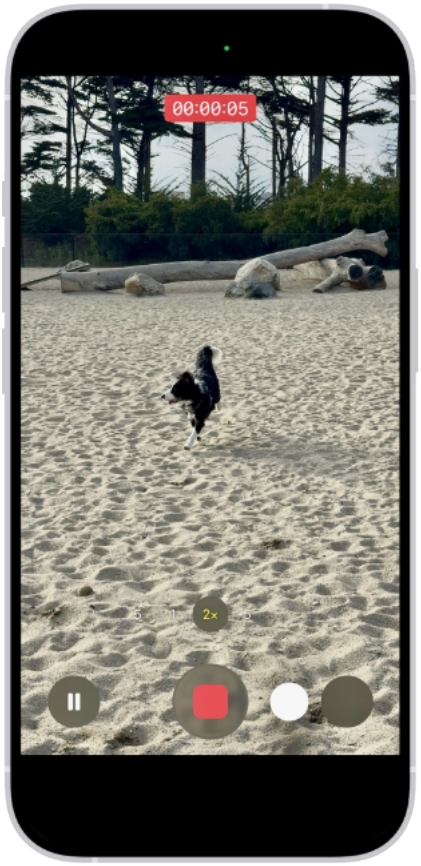


Capture the moment

To quickly open Camera, just swipe left on the Lock Screen. Camera automatically focuses the shot and adjusts the exposure. Tap the Shutter button to take a photo.

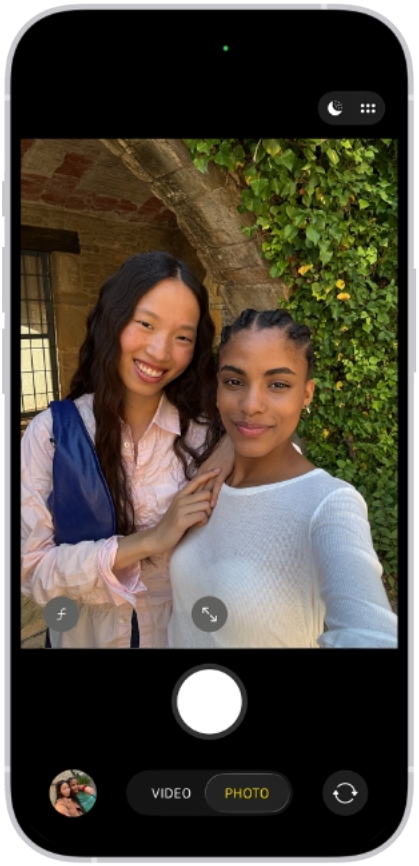
On supported models, click the Camera Control to open Camera, then click it again to take a photo.

Record video on the go



After you open Camera, tap Video to switch to Video mode, then tap the Record button to start a recording. Or stay in Photo mode and just touch and hold the Shutter button to start recording; release the button to stop recording.

On supported models, click the Camera Control to open Camera, then click and hold the Camera Control to start a recording.



Take the perfect selfie

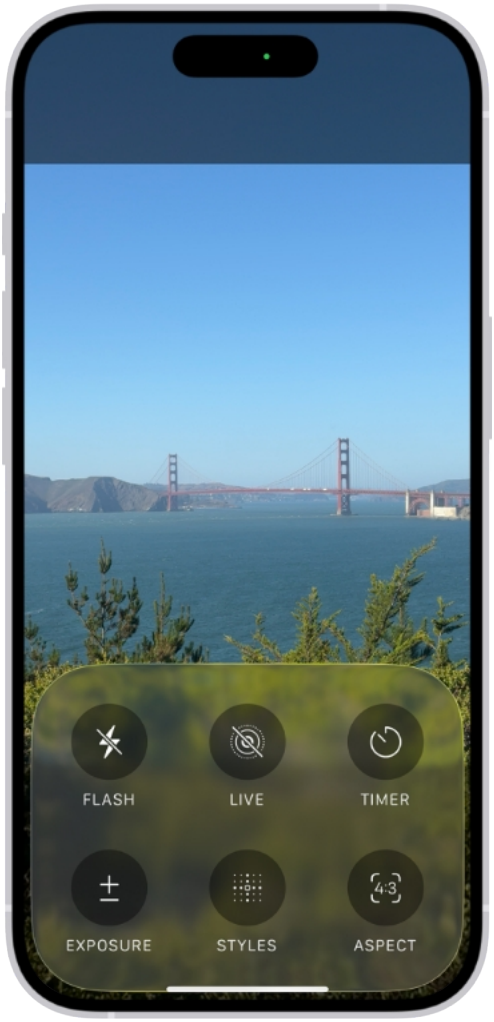
To take a selfie, open Camera, then tap. Hold your iPhone in front of you, then tap the Shutter button or press either volume button to take the selfie.

On supported models, the camera frame can automatically enlarge or rotate to fit more people in the selfie.

Capture photos in low light

Night mode automatically improves photos taken in low light on supported iPhone models. When you see in the top-right corner of the screen, Night mode is on. Tap the Shutter button, then hold your iPhone steady for the best results.





Adjust camera controls

When Camera is open, you can quickly make adjustments to features like Flash or Exposure. Just tap at the top of the screen, then tap any feature to adjust its settings and improve your shot.

Add the final touches

After you take a photo or video, use the editing tools in the Photos app to make it even better. Open a photo or video, tap , then tap the buttons at the bottom of the screen to adjust lighting, add a filter, crop, or rotate. As you make edits, tap the photo to compare your changes to the original.



Want to learn more? Check out the Camera and Photos chapters.

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

Previous
Make your iPhone your own

Next
Keep in touch with friends and family

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Keep in touch with friends and family

iPhone makes it easy to reach the people important to you—so you can catch up with phone or video calls and quickly text your group of friends.



A smarter address book

Enter phone numbers, email addresses, birthdays, and more in the Contacts app once, and you have them everywhere you need them—from Messages to FaceTime to Mail.

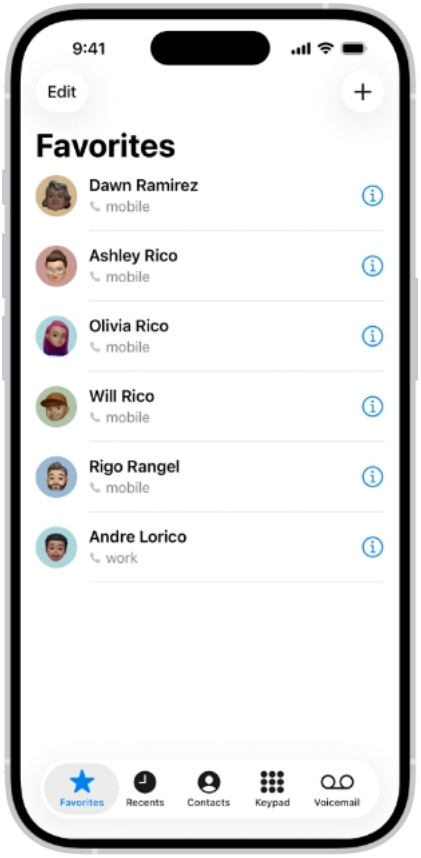
You can also add contact information from another account (like Google or Yahoo). Go to Settings > Apps > Contacts > Contacts Accounts, then tap Add Account.

Find your favorites

Add the people you talk to frequently to your Favorites list in the Phone app to make them easier to reach. In Unified view, your favorites appear in a grid at the top of the screen. In Classic view, tap Favorites at the bottom of the screen to view your favorites in a list.

Note: Tap to switch between Unified and Classic views.

In the Phone app, tap Contacts, select a contact, then tap Add to Favorites.





Start a group conversation

You can send messages to a group of people you want to talk to all at the same time, like members of your family.

In the Messages app, tap , enter the contacts you want to start a conversation with, then send the first message.

In group conversations you can send photos or videos, make payments with Apple Cash, or create a poll to help make decisions like where to take your next family outing or what to make for dinner.

Make a video call

You can use FaceTime to make video calls with your friends and family.

In the FaceTime app, tap New Call, select the contact you want to call, then tap FaceTime.





Add people to a FaceTime call

You can add more people to a FaceTime call—friends and family can join at any time. Tap the screen to show the controls, tap, then tap Add People.

Want to learn more?

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Share features with your family

There are special features you and your family can use to share purchases, stay connected, and protect your data. If you have children, you can also set up parental controls to manage how your children use their Apple devices.



Set up Family Sharing

You and your family members can share eligible purchases and subscriptions. Everyone uses their own device and Apple Account, but iCloud storage, subscriptions (to services like Apple Music and Apple Arcade), and other content is shared.

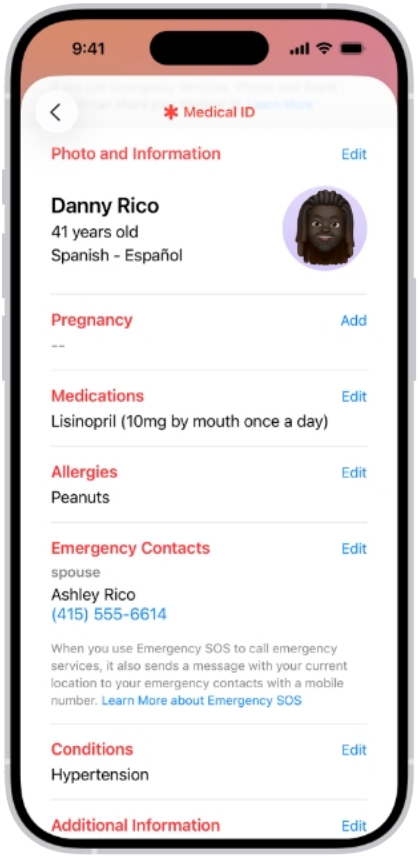
To get started, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Family.

Share locations with Find My

When you and your family members share your location, you can help each other locate missing devices in the Find My app. You can also share the location of AirTags you use to track important items like backpacks or house keys.

To set up location sharing, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Family, then tap Location Sharing. Turn on sharing for your family members. After you share your location with family members, they can also see the location of your devices in Find My.





Set up emergency contacts

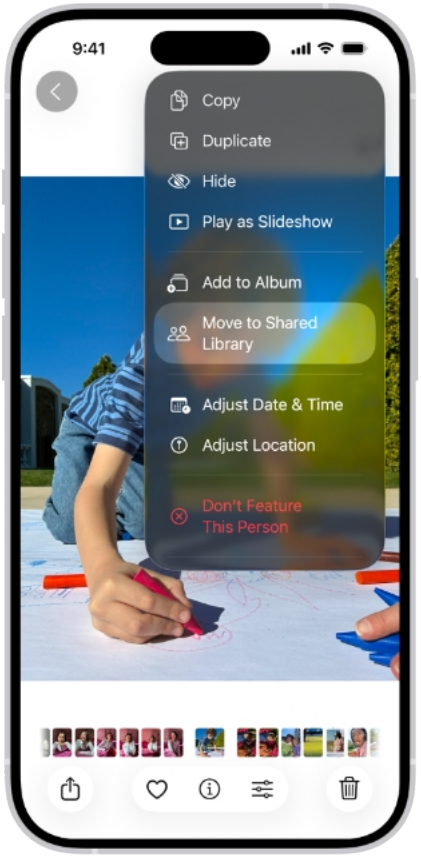
After you make an emergency call, your iPhone can automatically notify your emergency contacts with a text message that includes your current location. If your location changes, your emergency contacts receive updated location information.

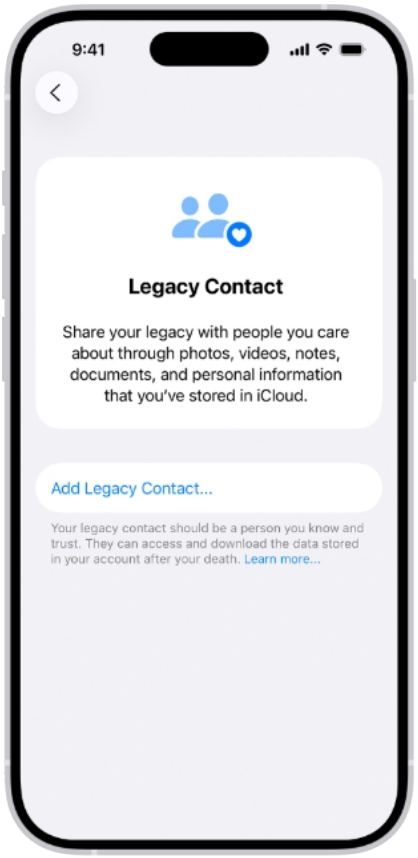
Emergency contacts are saved in your Medical ID. To set up a Medical ID, open the Health app, tap your account in the top-right corner, tap Medical ID, then tap Get Started.

Start a family photo library

You can use iCloud Shared Photo Library to share photos and videos with up to five other family members. Everyone can add, edit, and caption photos, and enjoy the shared photos in their memories, featured photos, and Photos widget.

To get started, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, turn on Sync this iPhone, then tap Shared Library.





Just in case

You can add family members and other trusted people as recovery contacts to help you regain access to your account if you ever get locked out. You can also designate someone as a legacy contact to access the data stored in your account in the event of your death.

To add these contacts, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then tap Recovery Contacts or Legacy Contact.

Want to learn more?

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use iPhone for your daily routines

While you're going about your day, you can use the apps on your iPhone to get directions, make purchases, and control accessories in your home. You can also silence notifications while you're driving or working, or allow only specific notifications related to what you're focused on.



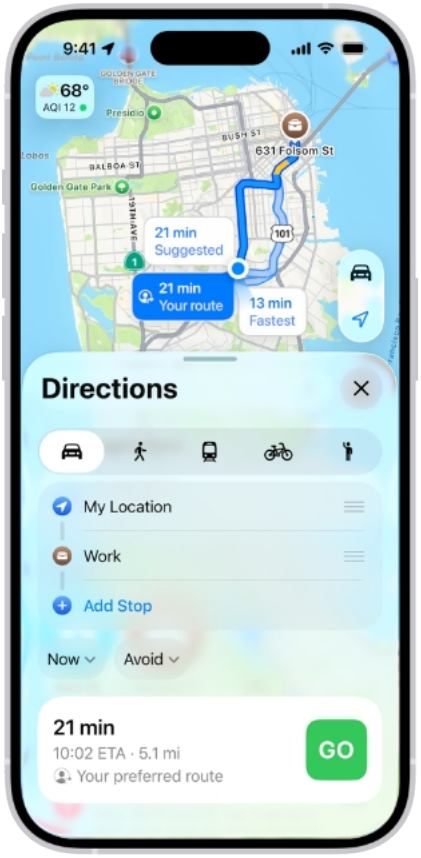
Start the day with the info you need

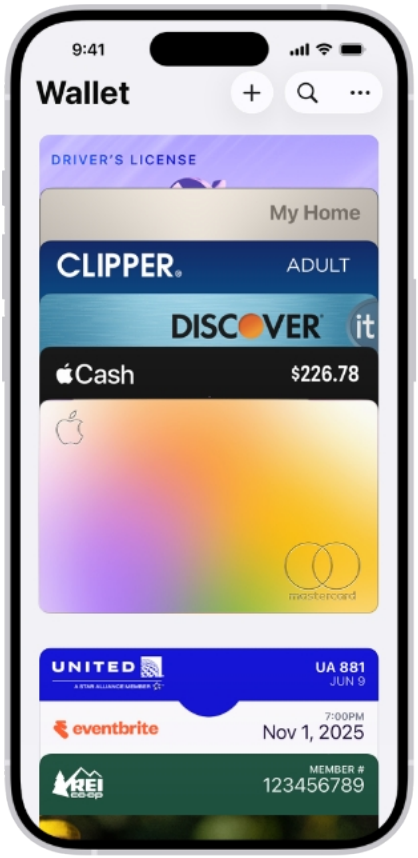
While iPhone is charging, you can put it in StandBy to view useful and timely information at a glance. With StandBy, you can use your iPhone as a bedside clock that displays the time, temperature, and other information you might want to see when you wake up in the morning, or before you go to bed.

To use StandBy, connect iPhone to a charger, stand it on its side (in landscape orientation), then tap the screen.

Know before you go

When you regularly drive to the same place, like work or school, the Maps app learns your preferred route to get there and will notify you of traffic delays or road closures before you head out.





Set up a virtual wallet

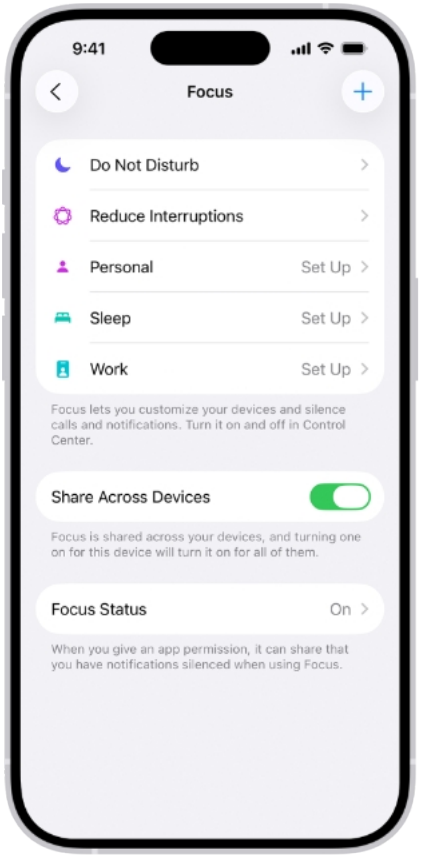
Keep your credit and debit cards, transit passes, event tickets, and more in the Wallet app on your iPhone. When you add a credit or debit card to Wallet, you can use it to make secure payments in stores and online, and send and receive money from friends and family.

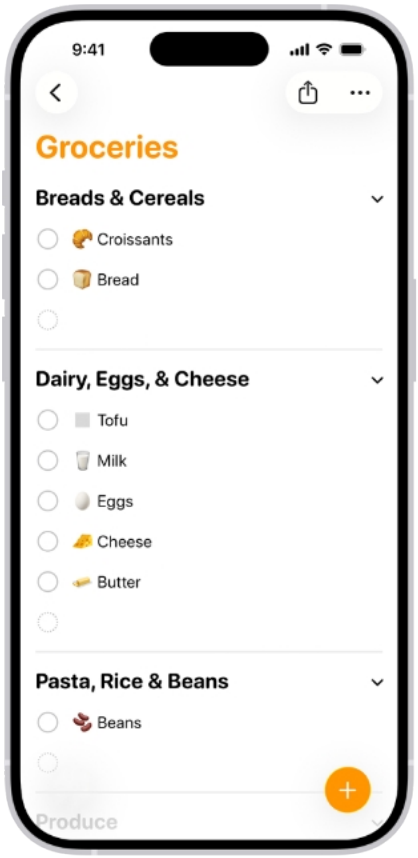
To add your first card, open the Wallet app, tap + at the top of the screen, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Stay focused

Whether you're driving, working, or just need to step away from your iPhone, you can set up a Focus to temporarily silence notifications that don't match your task—and let other people know you're busy.

Go to Settings > Focus, then choose the Focus you want to use, or tap + at the top of the screen to create your own.





Reminders when you need them

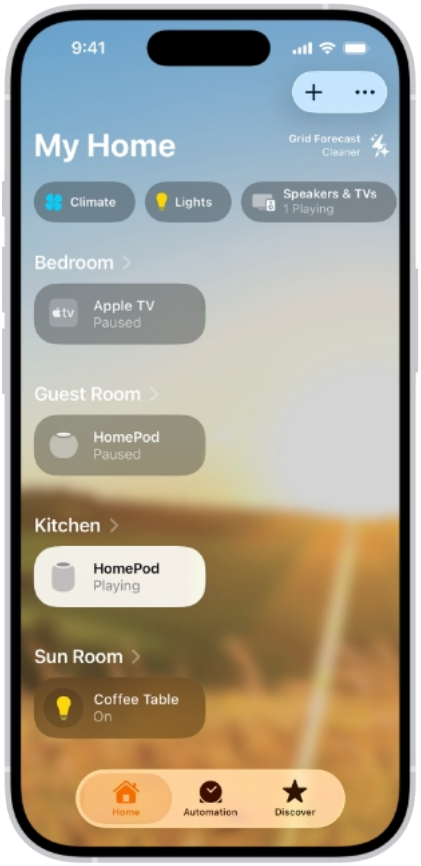
You can use the Reminders app to make to-do lists for projects around the house and grocery lists that sort items into categories. You can also get a reminder about something when you arrive at a certain location.

To create your first reminder, open the Reminders app , then tap .

Forgot to turn off the lights?

With the Home app on iPhone, you can securely control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as lights, smart TVs, and thermostats from anywhere. You can also create automations that simplify your normal routines, like automatically turning on your entryway lights when you arrive home at night.

To add your first Works with HomeKit accessory, open the Home app, tap + at the top of the screen, then tap Add Accessory.



Want to learn more?

- Use StandBy to view information at a distance while iPhone is charging
- Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone
- About Apple Wallet on iPhone
- Set up a Focus on iPhone
- Get started with Reminders on iPhone
- Intro to Home on iPhone

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

Previous
Share features with your family

Next
Expert advice from Apple Support

Helpful? Yes No

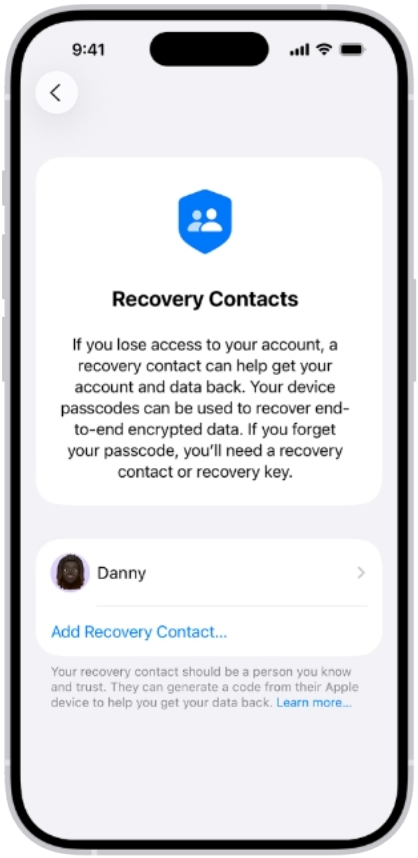
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Expert advice from Apple Support

Apple Support advisors help iPhone customers with all sorts of questions from forgotten passwords to lost photos. Below are a few pieces of advice that Apple Support advisors wish all iPhone owners knew. Follow these simple steps now to keep your iPhone, and the important information you keep on it, safe.

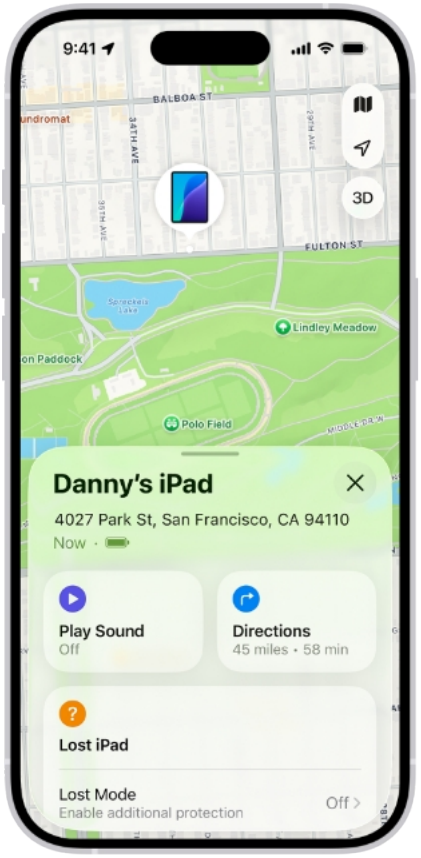


Just in case you forget

After you set up your iPhone, there are two things you really don't want to forget—your iPhone passcode and your Apple Account information. Your iPhone passcode is the four- or six-digit numerical code that you use to unlock your iPhone. You use your Apple Account to sign in to Apple services, make purchases in the App Store, and more. Your Apple Account is typically your primary email address or phone number and the unique password you create to use with it.

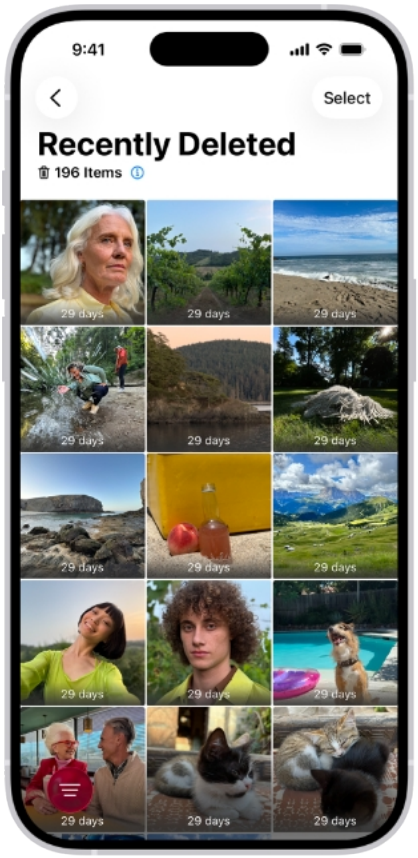
If you think you might forget these things, you can designate a trusted person as your account recovery contact. Your recovery contact doesn't have access to your iPhone or Apple Account, but they can give you a code to reset your passcode or access your account if you get locked out. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security > Recovery Contacts, then tap a suggested contact or tap Choose Someone Else.

How to find your iPhone if it’s lost or stolen



It’s easy to find your iPhone if it ever gets lost or stolen—as long as you turn on Find My iPhone before that happens. First, make sure you’re signed in to your Apple Account, then go to Settings > [*your name*] > Find My and turn on Find My iPhone.

After you turn on Find My iPhone, you can use the Find My app on another Apple device to see the location of your iPhone; you can even play a sound on your lost iPhone to help you find it. (Make sure you’re signed in to the same Apple Account on the other Apple device.) If you don’t have another Apple device, go to www.icloud.com/find on any web browser and sign in to the same Apple Account.



Recover deleted photos or videos

When you delete photos or videos from the Photos app, they’re automatically saved in the Recently Deleted album for 30 days. If you accidentally delete a photo or video, you can recover it and restore it to your Photos library.

To recover deleted items, open the Photos app, then tap Collections. Tap the Recently Deleted collection (below Utilities), then tap View Album. Unlock the album using your iPhone passcode, Face ID, or Touch ID. Tap a photo or video, tap Recover, then tap Recover Photo or Recover Video.

Maximize the life of your iPhone battery

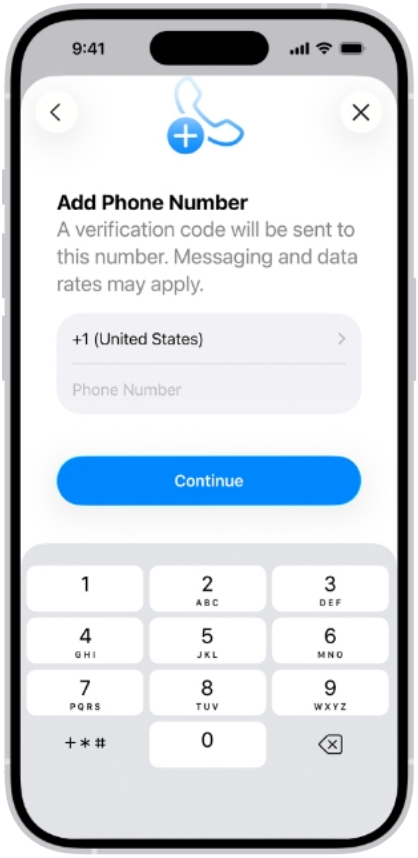


There are a few easy steps you can take to preserve the life of your iPhone battery. First, make sure your iPhone is updated to the latest version of iOS. To check if a software update is available, go to Settings > General > Software Update.

Next, always connect to Wi-Fi when it's available; a Wi-Fi connection uses less battery power than a cellular connection.

Finally, turn down your screen brightness: Open Control Center, then slide down. To automatically dim your screen based on the surrounding light, go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size, then turn on Auto-Brightness.

To learn more about your iPhone battery health, go to Settings > Battery.



If you get a new phone number

The phone number associated with your Apple Account is often used to verify your identity and authenticate that your iPhone is really yours—it's known as your trusted phone number. If you get a new phone number, make sure you update your trusted phone number so you don't lose access to your account if you forget your Apple Account password, or move to a new iPhone.

To update your trusted phone number, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then tap Add Email or Phone Number. Tap Phone Number, then enter your new phone number and follow the onscreen instructions to verify your new number.

All about eSIM



An eSIM is a digital version of the physical SIM card inside your iPhone that connects to your cellular carrier. With eSIM, you don't have to swap out your SIM card when you get a new iPhone, and you can easily connect to new cellular carriers at home or while traveling.

If you erase your iPhone, or restore it from a backup and accidentally delete your eSIM, your iPhone may lose its cellular connection; to restore it, you'll need to contact your cellular provider.

Want to learn more?

- Keep your Apple Account secure on iPhone
- Locate a device in Find My on iPhone
- Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone
- Understand your iPhone battery usage and health
- Set up an eSIM

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

Previous
Use iPhone for your daily routines

Next
What's new in iOS 26

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Turn on and set up iPhone

You can turn on and set up your new iPhone with an internet connection. You can also set up iPhone by connecting it to your computer. If you have another iPhone, an iPad, or an Android device, you can transfer your data to your new iPhone.

Note: If your iPhone is deployed or managed by a company or other organization, see an administrator for setup instructions. For general information, see the Apple at Work website.

Prepare for setup

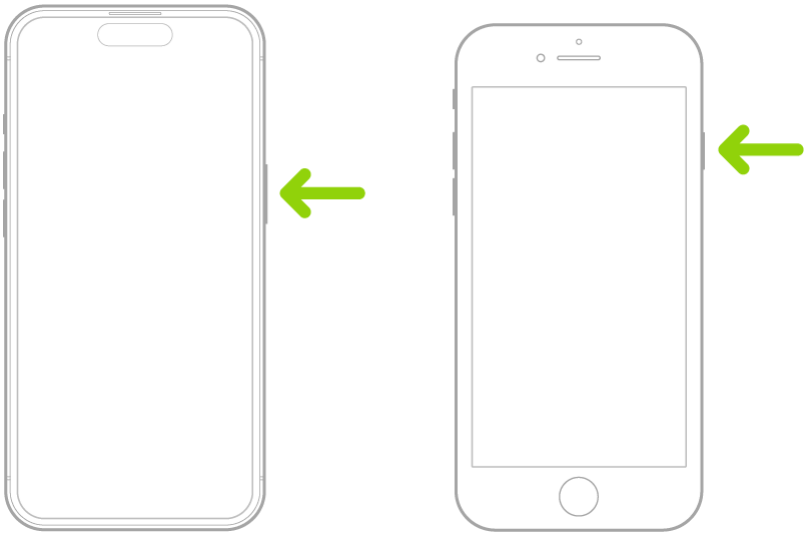
To make setup as smooth as possible, have the following items available:

- An internet connection through a Wi-Fi network (you may need the name and password of the network) or cellular data service through a carrier (not required for iPhone 14 and later models)
- Your Apple Account and password; if you don't have an Apple Account, you can create one during setup
- Your credit or debit card account information, if you want to add a card to Apple Pay during setup
- Your previous iPhone or a backup of your device, if you're transferring your data to your new device

  Tip: If you don't have sufficient storage space to back up your device, iCloud will provide enough storage to complete a temporary backup, free of charge, for up to three weeks from the purchase of your iPhone. On your previous device, go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset [*device*]. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- Your Android device, if you're transferring your Android content

Turn on and set up your iPhone

1. Press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears.



If iPhone doesn't turn on, you might need to charge the battery. For more help, see the Apple Support article If your iPhone won't turn on or is frozen.

Tip: If you're blind or have low vision, you can triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to turn on VoiceOver, the screen reader. You can also double-tap the screen with three fingers to turn on Zoom. See Get started with accessibility features.

2. Do one of the following:

- *Set up with another device:* If you have another iPhone or iPad with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later, you can use it to automatically set up your new device. Bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions to securely copy many of your settings, preferences, and iCloud Keychain. You can then restore the rest of your data and content to your new device from your iCloud backup.

  Or, if both devices have iOS 12.4, iPadOS 13, or later, you can transfer all your data wirelessly from your previous device to your new one. Keep your devices near each other and plugged into power until the migration process is complete.

- *Set Up Manually:* If you don't have another device, tap Set Up Without Another Device, then follow the onscreen setup instructions.

Move from an Android device to iPhone

If you have an Android device, you can transfer your data with the Move to iOS app when you first set up your new iPhone.

Note: If you already completed setup and want to use Move to iOS, you must erase your iPhone and start over, or move your data manually. See the Apple Support article Move content manually from your Android device to your iPhone or iPad.

1. On your device with Android version 4.0 or later, see the Apple Support article Move from Android to iPhone or iPad and download the Move to iOS app.
2. On your iPhone, do the following:
   - Follow the setup assistant.
   - On the Transfer Your Apps & Data screen, tap From Android.
3. On the Android device, do the following:
   - Turn on Wi-Fi.
   - Open the Move to iOS app.
   - Follow the onscreen instructions.

⚠ **WARNING:** To avoid injury, read Important safety information before using iPhone.

See also

Wake, unlock, and lock iPhone

Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

Apple Support article: How to remove Activation Lock

Apple Support article: Help your child set up an iPhone or iPad

Previous
What's new in iOS 26

Next
Wake, unlock, and lock

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

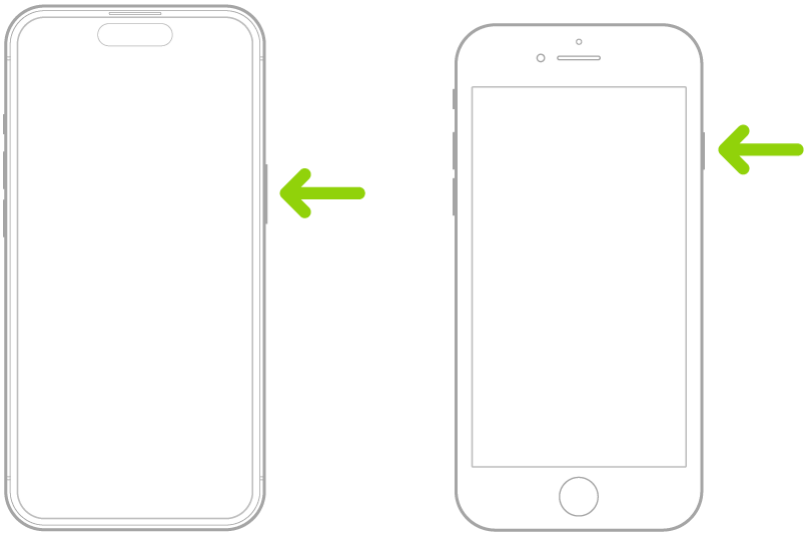
Wake, unlock, and lock iPhone

iPhone turns off the display to save power, locks for security, and goes to sleep when you're not using it. You can quickly wake and unlock iPhone when you want to use it again.

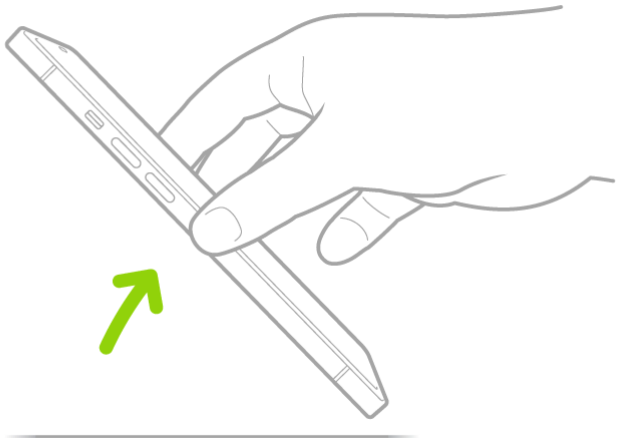
Wake iPhone

To wake iPhone, do one of the following:

- Press the side button.

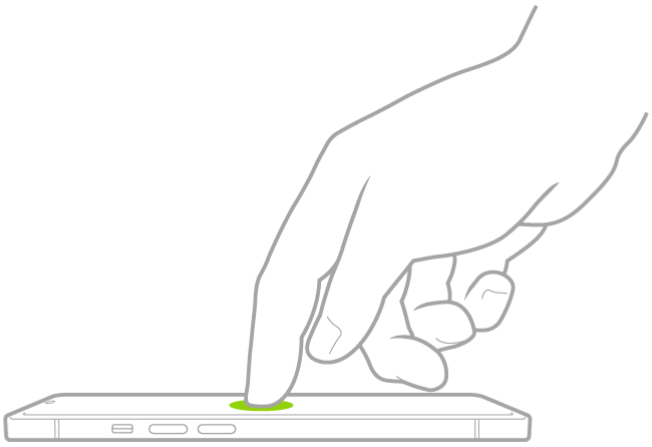


- Raise iPhone.



Note: To turn off Raise to Wake, go to Settings > Display & Brightness.

- Tap the screen (not available on iPhone SE).



Unlock iPhone with Face ID

If you have an iPhone with Face ID, but you didn't turn on Face ID during setup, see Set up Face ID. Then follow these steps:

1. Tap the screen or raise iPhone to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

   The lock icon animates from closed to open to indicate that iPhone is unlocked.

2. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

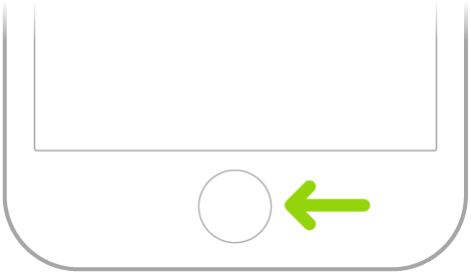
Note: To lock iPhone again, press the side button. iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so. However, if Attention Aware Features is turned on in Settings > Face ID & Passcode, iPhone won't dim or lock as long as it detects attention.

Unlock iPhone with Touch ID

If you have an iPhone with a Home button, but you didn't turn on Touch ID during setup, see Set up Touch ID. Then follow these steps:

1. To unlock iPhone, press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.
2. To lock iPhone again, press the side button.

   Note: iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.



Unlock iPhone with a passcode

If you didn't create a passcode when you set up iPhone, see Set a passcode. Then follow these steps:

1. Swipe up from the bottom of the Lock Screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models).
2. Enter your passcode.

Lock iPhone

You can lock iPhone using the following methods:

- *Manually:* Press the side button.
- *Automatically:* iPhone locks on its own if you don't interact with it for a certain amount of time. See Change when iPhone automatically locks.

When iPhone locks, the display turns off unless you've turned on the Always On Display.

See also

Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

Find settings on iPhone

Set up cellular service on iPhone

Previous
Turn on and set up iPhone

Next
Set up cellular service

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Set up cellular service on iPhone

Your iPhone needs a physical SIM or an eSIM to connect to a cellular network. (Not all options are available on all models or in all countries and regions. On iPhone 14 and later, some models only use eSIM.) Contact your carrier to get a SIM and set up cellular service.

Set up an eSIM

Supported iPhone models can digitally store an eSIM provided by your carrier. If your carrier supports either eSIM Carrier Activation or eSIM Quick Transfer, you can turn on your iPhone and follow the instructions to activate your eSIM during setup.

If you already completed setup, do the following:

1. Make sure your iPhone is connected to an available Wi-Fi or cellular network. eSIM setup requires an internet connection.
2. Add an eSIM using one of the following methods:

   - *eSIM Carrier Activation:* Some carriers can assign a new eSIM directly to your iPhone; contact your carrier to initiate this process. When you receive the "Finish Setting Up Cellular" notification, tap it. Or go to Settings > Cellular, then tap Set Up Cellular or Add eSIM.

   - *eSIM Quick Transfer:* Some carriers support transferring a phone number from your previous iPhone to your new iPhone without needing to contact them (requires iOS 16 or later on both devices).

     On your new iPhone, go to Settings > Cellular, tap Set Up Cellular or Add eSIM, then tap Transfer From Nearby iPhone or choose a phone number. On your previous iPhone, follow the instructions to confirm the transfer.

     Note: After your phone number is transferred to your new iPhone, it stops working on your previous iPhone.

- *Scan a QR Code provided by your carrier:* Go to Settings > Cellular, tap Set Up Cellular or Add eSIM, then tap Use QR Code. (You may need to tap Other Options first.) Position iPhone so the QR code appears in the frame, or enter the details manually. You may be asked to enter a confirmation code provided by your carrier.

- *Transfer from a different smartphone:* If your previous phone isn't an Apple iPhone, contact your carrier to transfer the phone number.

- *Activate service through a participating carrier's app:* Go to the App Store, download the carrier's app, then use the app to activate cellular service.

- Travel eSIM: A travel eSIM can maintain coverage and may help you avoid international rates. Make sure you have cellular service, then go to Settings > Cellular, tap Add eSIM, then tap View Travel Options. Follow the on-screen instructions. See Apple Support article Use eSIM while traveling internationally with your iPhone.

3. To verify the eSIM is activated, go to Settings > Cellular, then make sure the new line (below eSIMs) is turned on.

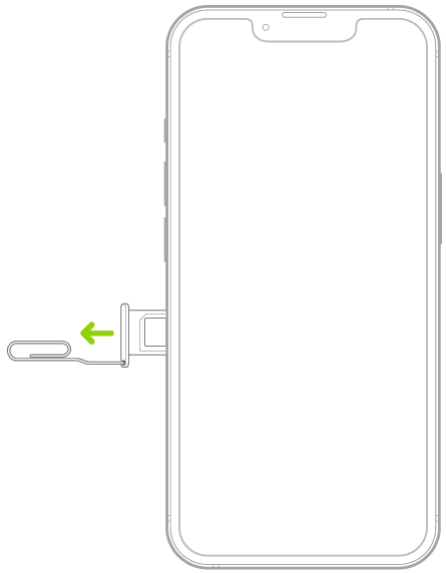
For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article If you can't set up an eSIM on your iPhone.

Install a physical SIM

You can get a nano-SIM card from a carrier or move it from your previous iPhone.

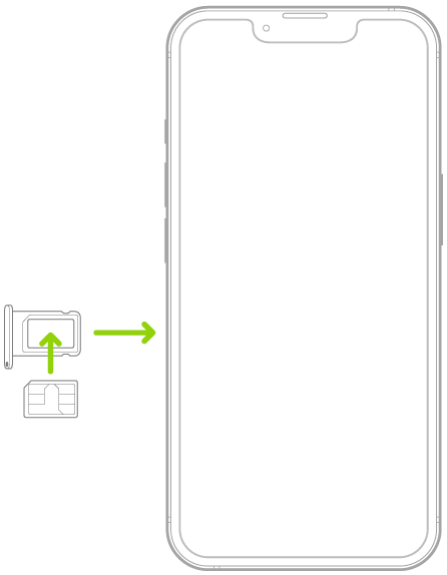
Note: Physical SIM isn't supported on all models.

1. Insert a paper clip or SIM eject tool into the small hole of the SIM tray, then push in toward iPhone to eject the tray.



Note: The shape and orientation of the SIM tray depend on the iPhone model and your country or region.

2. Remove the tray from iPhone.
3. Place the SIM in the tray. The angled corner determines the correct orientation.



4. Insert the tray back into iPhone.
5. If you previously set up a PIN on the SIM, carefully enter the PIN when prompted.

   WARNING: Never try to guess a SIM PIN. An incorrect guess can permanently lock your SIM, and you won't be able to make phone calls or use cellular data through your carrier until you get a new SIM. See the Apple Support article Use a SIM PIN for your iPhone or iPad.

Convert a physical SIM to an eSIM

If your carrier supports it, you can convert a physical SIM to an eSIM on a supported iPhone model.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Cellular, then tap Set Up Cellular or Add eSIM.
3. Choose the phone number with a physical SIM.
4. Tap Convert to eSIM, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Important: The availability of cellular capabilities depends on the wireless network, your iPhone model, and your location.

Consider applicable data, voice, and roaming charges when managing your cellular plans, especially when you travel with iPhone. See View or change cellular data settings.

Some carriers let you unlock iPhone for use with another carrier (additional fees may apply). Contact your carrier for authorization and setup information. See the Apple Support article How to unlock your iPhone for use with a different carrier.

See also

Connect to a cellular network if Wi-Fi isn't available

Use Dual SIM on iPhone

Apple Support article: About eSIM on iPhone

Apple Support article: Use eSIM while traveling internationally with your iPhone

Previous
Wake, unlock, and lock

Next
View or change cellular data settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View or change cellular data settings on iPhone

You can turn cellular data and roaming on or off, set which apps and services use cellular data, see cellular data usage, and set other cellular data options.

Note: For help with cellular network services, voicemail, and billing, contact your wireless service provider.

How cellular networks handle voice and data

If your iPhone is connected to the internet using a cellular data network, an icon identifying the cellular network appears in the status bar.

You can use internet services while you're talking on the phone with 5G, LTE, 4G, and 3G service on GSM cellular networks. Other cellular networks don't support simultaneous voice and data communications unless your iPhone also has a Wi-Fi connection to the internet. Depending on your network connection, you may not be able to receive calls while your iPhone transfers data over the cellular network—when downloading a webpage, for example.

- *GSM networks:* On an EDGE or GPRS connection, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.

- *CDMA networks:* On EV-DO connections, data transfers are paused when you answer incoming calls. On 1xRTT connections, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.

Data transfer resumes when you end the call.

To make calls using Wi-Fi, see Make calls using Wi-Fi.

Manage roaming options and choose other cellular data options

To turn Cellular Data on or off, go to Settings > Cellular, then turn Cellular Data on or off.

If Cellular Data is off, all data services—including email, web browsing, and notifications—use Wi-Fi only. If Cellular Data is on, carrier charges may apply. For example, using certain features and services that transfer data, such as Siri and Messages, could result in charges to your data plan.

To set options when Cellular Data is on, go to Settings > Cellular > Cellular Data Options, then do any of the following:

- *Avoid roaming charges:* Turn off Data Roaming. When you're in a region not covered by your carrier's network, Data Roaming permits internet access over a cellular data network. When you're traveling, turn off Data Roaming to avoid roaming charges.
- *Reduce cellular usage:* Tap Data Mode, then choose Low Data Mode. This mode pauses automatic updates and background tasks when iPhone isn't connected to Wi-Fi.

Depending on your iPhone model, carrier, and region, the following options may be available:

- *Turn Voice Roaming on or off:* (CDMA) Turn Voice Roaming off to avoid charges from using other carrier's networks. When your carrier's network isn't available, iPhone won't have cellular (data or voice) service.
- *Enable or disable 4G/LTE:* Using 4G or LTE loads internet data faster in some cases but may decrease battery performance. There may be options for turning off 4G/LTE or for selecting Voice & Data (VoLTE) or Data Only.

On iPhone 12 models and later with a 5G data plan, you can do the following:

- *Enable Smart Data mode to optimize battery life:* Tap Voice & Data, then choose 5G Auto. In this mode, your iPhone automatically switches to LTE when 5G speeds don't provide noticeably better performance.

- *Use higher-quality video and FaceTime HD on 5G networks:* Tap Data Mode, then choose Allow More Data on 5G.
- *Turn off 5G:* Tap Voice & Data, then choose LTE.

To set up a Personal Hotspot to share your internet connection, see Share your internet connection from your iPhone.

View how much data you're using

To see how much cellular data you've used, go to Settings > Cellular, then do any of the following:

- *See cellular data usage for individual apps:* Scroll down to your list of apps, then tap Show All. The amount of cellular data used appears below each app. If you don't want an app to use cellular data, you can turn it off for that app. When cellular data is off, apps use only Wi-Fi for data.
- *See cellular data usage for individual system services:* System Services appears above the list of apps in the cellular section. Cellular data can't be turned on or off for individual system services.

You can view the data-usage statistics for an app from a current period, or view data statistics for apps that used data when you were roaming. To reset these statistics, go to Settings > Cellular, scroll to the bottom, then tap Reset Statistics.

If you're using an iPhone with Dual SIM, you can see how much cellular data you've used with your selected cellular data number.

Note: To get the most accurate cellular data usage from a current period, contact your carrier.

Set cellular data usage for apps and services

Go to Settings > Cellular, then turn Cellular Data on or off for any app (such as Maps) or service (such as Wi-Fi Assist) that can use cellular data.

If a setting is off, iPhone uses only Wi-Fi for that service.

Note: Wi-Fi Assist is on by default. If Wi-Fi connectivity is poor, Wi-Fi Assist automatically switches to cellular data to boost the signal. Because you stay connected to the internet over cellular when you have a poor Wi-Fi connection, you might use more cellular data,

which may incur additional charges depending on your data plan. See the Apple Support article About Wi-Fi Assist.

Lock your SIM card

If your device uses a SIM card for phone calls or cellular data, you can lock the card with a personal identification number (PIN) to prevent others from using the card. Then, every time you restart your device or remove the SIM card, your card locks automatically, and you're required to enter your PIN. See Use a SIM PIN for your iPhone or iPad.

To add an eSIM, see Set up cellular service.

See also

Set up cellular service on iPhone

Previous
Set up cellular service

Next
Use Dual SIM

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Dual SIM on iPhone

Here are some of the many ways you can use Dual SIM:

- Use one number for business and another number for personal calls.
- Add a local data plan when you travel to another country or region.
- Have separate voice and data plans.

Note: To use two different carriers, your iPhone must be unlocked. See the Apple Support article How to unlock your iPhone for use with a different carrier.

You can set up Dual SIM with the following:

- One physical SIM and one eSIM; supported on iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone XR, iPhone Xs, iPhone 11, iPhone 12, iPhone 13, and iPhone 14, and later
- Two eSIMs; supported on iPhone SE (3rd generation), iPhone 13, and later

Note: Physical SIM isn't supported on all models. eSIM isn't available in all countries or regions.

Set up Dual SIM

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Cellular, then make sure you have at least two lines (below SIMs). To add a line, see Set up cellular service.
3. Turn on two lines—tap a line, then tap Turn On this Line.

   You can also change settings such as Cellular Plan Label, Wi-Fi Calling (if available from your carrier), Calls on Other Devices, or SIM PIN. The label appears in Phone, Messages, and Contacts.
4. Choose the default line for cellular data—tap Cellular Data, then tap a line. To use either line depending on coverage and availability, turn on Allow Cellular Data Switching.

You may incur roaming charges if Data Roaming is on and you're outside the country or region covered by the carrier's network.

5. Choose the default line for voice calls—tap Default Voice Line, then tap a line.

When using Dual SIM, note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that is in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that is in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.
- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

  If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.
- If you make a phone call from another device, such as your Mac, by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.
- If you start an SMS/MMS Messages conversation using one line, you can't switch the conversation to your other line; you need to delete the conversation and start a new conversation using the other line. Also, you may incur additional charges if you send SMS/MMS attachments on the line that's not selected for cellular data.
- Instant Hotspot and Personal Hotspot use the line selected for cellular data.

See also

Connect to a cellular network if Wi-Fi isn't available

View or change cellular data settings on iPhone

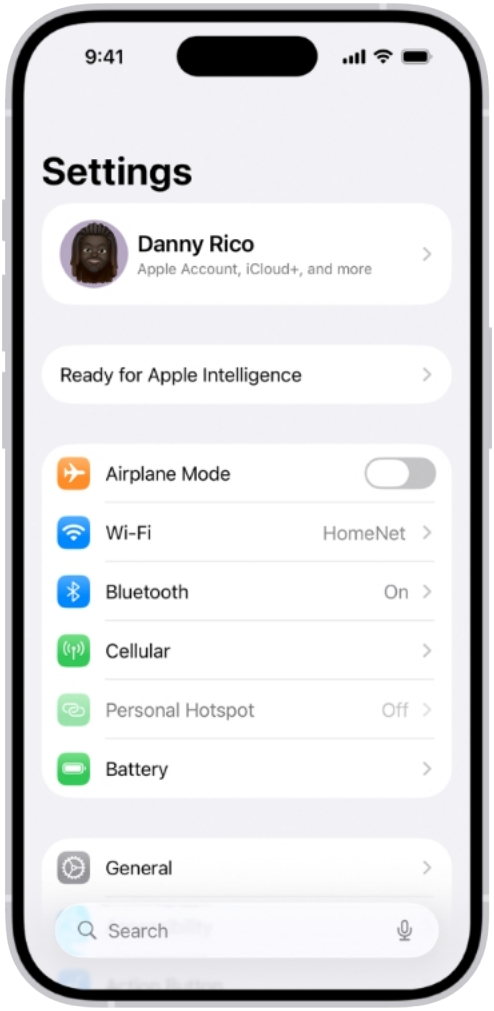
Previous
View or change cellular data settings

Next
Connect to the internet

Table of Contents

Connect iPhone to the internet

Connect your iPhone to the internet by using an available Wi-Fi or cellular network.



View available networks and connect to Wi-Fi

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, then turn on Wi-Fi.

   iPhone automatically joins known networks.
3. To join a new network, do one of the following:

- *Join an available network:* Tap the name of the network. If asked, enter the password.

- *Join a hidden network:* Tap Other, then enter the name of the network, security type, and password.

When iPhone is connected to Wi-Fi, a blue checkmark appears next to the network name, and appears at the top of the screen.

Share a Wi-Fi password

If your iPhone is connected to a Wi-Fi network, you can share the Wi-Fi password with another nearby iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

1. Make sure your iPhone is unlocked, connected to the Wi-Fi network, and signed in to your Apple Account.
2. Make sure of the following:

    - The person you're sharing the password with is signed in to their Apple Account on their device.

    - The person is in your contacts list in the Contacts app.

    - The other device is close to your iPhone.
3. On the other device, choose the Wi-Fi network.
4. On your iPhone, wait a few moments for the Wi-Fi Password notification to appear, then tap Share Password.

Join a Personal Hotspot

If an iPhone or iPad with cellular service is sharing a Personal Hotspot, you can use its cellular connection.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, then choose the name of the device sharing the Personal Hotspot.
3. If asked, enter the password. (On the device sharing the Personal Hotspot, the password is shown in Settings > Cellular > Personal Hotspot.)

Manage settings for Wi-Fi and hotspots

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, then do any of the following:
   - *Change the settings for a Wi-Fi network:* Tap ⓘ.
   - *Join a new Wi-Fi network:* Tap Ask to Join Networks, then choose Off, Notify, or Ask.
   - *Join a personal hotspot when Wi-Fi isn't available:* Tap Auto-Join Hotspot, then choose Never, Ask to Join, or Automatic.

Connect to a cellular network if Wi-Fi isn't available

Your iPhone automatically connects to your carrier's cellular data network if a Wi-Fi network isn't available. If iPhone doesn't connect, check the following:

1. Verify that your SIM is activated and unlocked. See Set up cellular service.
2. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone, then tap Cellular.
3. Verify that Cellular Data is turned on. If you're using Dual SIM, tap Cellular Data, then verify the selected line. (You can choose only one line for cellular data.)

How iPhone connects to the internet

iPhone does the following, in order, until a connection is made:

- Tries to connect to the most recently used available Wi-Fi network
- Shows a list of Wi-Fi networks in range and connects to the one you choose
- Connects to your carrier's cellular data network

  On an iPhone that supports 5G, iPhone may use your 5G cellular data instead of Wi-Fi. If so, you see Using 5G Cellular For Internet below the Wi-Fi network's name. To switch back to Wi-Fi, tap ⓘ next to the network name, then tap Use Wi-Fi for Internet. See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.

Note: If a Wi-Fi connection to the internet isn't available, apps and services may transfer data over your carrier's cellular network, which may result in additional fees. Contact your

carrier for information about your cellular data rates. To manage cellular data usage, see View or change cellular data settings.

See also

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

Learn the meaning of iPhone status icons

Previous
Use Dual SIM

Next
Sign in and manage your Apple Account

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone

Your Apple Account gives you access to Apple services such as the App Store, the Apple Games app, the iTunes Store, Apple Books, Apple Music, FaceTime, iCloud, iMessage, and more.

When you create a new Apple Account in China mainland or India, you can use your mobile phone number as your Apple Account user name. See the Apple Support article Create and manage an Apple Account using a phone number instead of an email address.

Sign in to your Apple Account

If you didn't sign in during setup, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account.
3. Tap one of the following:

    - *Use Another Apple Device:* Bring your other iPhone or iPad (with iOS 17, iPadOS 17, or later) nearby, then follow the onscreen instructions.
    - *Sign in Manually:* Enter your email address or phone number, then enter your password. If you don't have an Apple Account, you can create one.

4. If you protect your account with two-factor authentication, enter the six-digit verification code.

If you forgot your Apple Account password, see the Reset your password website.

Change your Apple Account settings



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then do any of the following:

- *Update Personal Information:* Update your name, birthdate, and Memoji or photo associated with your Apple Account. You can also set up your preferences for communication from Apple, and see how your data is managed.
- *Change Sign-In & Security:* Change your Apple Account password, turn on two-factor authentication, add or remove phone numbers and emails you can use to sign in, and set up Account Recovery or Legacy Contact.
- *Manage Payment & Shipping:* Select your payment methods and shipping address for your Apple Account and purchases from the Apple Store.
- *View and manage your subscriptions:* View and manage your subscriptions from Apple and subscriptions that you purchased in apps from the App Store.
- Use iCloud.
- Manage Family Sharing.

- Use Find My.
- *Manage Media & Purchases:* Manage the accounts linked to Apple Music, Apple Podcasts, Apple TV, and Apple Books and select purchasing settings.
- Use Sign in with Apple.

Add or update the payment method associated with your Apple Account

The payment information associated with your Apple Account is used for Apple media purchases and services.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap Payment & Shipping. You may need to authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID.
3. Tap Add Payment Method or tap an existing payment method.

See the Apple Support article If you need to change or update your Apple Account payment method.

See also

Keep your Apple Account secure on iPhone

Apple Support article: Manage and use your Apple Account

Apple Account website

Previous
Connect to the internet

Next
Use iCloud

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use iCloud on iPhone

iCloud securely stores your photos, videos, documents, backups, and more—and keeps them updated across all your devices—automatically. With iCloud, you can also share photos, calendars, notes, folders, and files with friends and family. iCloud provides you with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can subscribe to iCloud+.

Note: Some iCloud features have minimum system requirements. The availability of iCloud and its features varies by country or region.

Set up iCloud

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*].

   If you don't see your name, tap Apple Account, then sign in to your Apple Account.
3. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then turn on the apps and features you want to sync with iCloud.

   For example, turn on iCloud Drive to make your files in iCloud Drive available to your other devices.



For information on how to customize iCloud features on your other devices, see Set up iCloud and change settings on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

Ways to use iCloud on iPhone

iCloud can keep your iPhone backed up automatically. See Back up iPhone.

You can also keep the following information stored in iCloud and kept up to date across your iPhone and other Apple devices:

- Photos and videos; see Back up and sync your photos and videos with iCloud
- Files and documents; see Set up iCloud Drive
- iCloud Mail
- Contacts, Calendars, Notes, and Reminders
- Data from compatible third-party apps and games
- Messages; see Set up Messages
- Passwords; see Use passwords

- Safari bookmarks and open tabs; see Bookmark a website and Organize your tabs with Tab Groups
- News, Stocks, and Weather settings
- Home and Health data
- Voice Memos
- Map favorites

You can also do the following:

- Share your photos and videos. See Create shared albums and Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library.
- Use iCloud Drive to share folders and documents.
- Use Find My to locate a missing device and share locations with friends and family.

For additional storage and access to iCloud Private Relay, Hide My Email, and HomeKit Secure Video support, you can subscribe to iCloud+.

You can also access your iCloud data on iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple Vision Pro, Apple TV, Windows devices, and iCloud.com. To learn more about the available features and how they work across all your devices, see the iCloud User Guide.

See also

Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts on iPhone

Previous
Sign in and manage your Apple Account

Next
Subscribe to iCloud+

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone

iCloud+ gives you everything iCloud offers plus premium features including iCloud Private Relay, Hide My Email, HomeKit Secure Video support, and all the storage you need for your photos, files, and more.

You can subscribe to iCloud+ or to Apple One, which includes iCloud+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Some iCloud+ features have minimum system requirements. The availability of iCloud+ and its features varies by country or region.

What's included with iCloud+

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can do the following on iPhone:

- Get 50 GB, 200 GB, 2 TB, 6 TB, or 12 TB (depending on your plan) of storage for photos, files, backups, and more.
- Create unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal inbox with Hide My Email. See Use Hide My Email in Safari and Use Hide My Email in Mail.
- Browse the web in an even more secure and private way with iCloud Private Relay. See Protect your web browsing.
- Set up home security cameras with HomeKit Secure Video so you can view your footage from anywhere while keeping it private and secure. See Set up security cameras.
- Use a custom email domain to personalize iCloud Mail. See Set up a custom email domain.

To learn more about iCloud+ features and how they work across all your devices, see the iCloud User Guide.

Upgrade, change, or cancel your iCloud+ subscription

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap Storage, tap Change Storage Plan, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: If you cancel your iCloud+ subscription, you lose access to the additional iCloud storage and iCloud+ features.

Share iCloud+

You can use Family Sharing to share iCloud+ with up to five other family members. When your family members accept your invitation to share iCloud+, they have instant access to the additional storage and features.

Note: To stop sharing iCloud+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or leave or turn off Family Sharing. See Add a member to a Family Sharing group.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

See also

Find settings on iPhone

Previous
Use iCloud

Next
Find settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find settings on iPhone

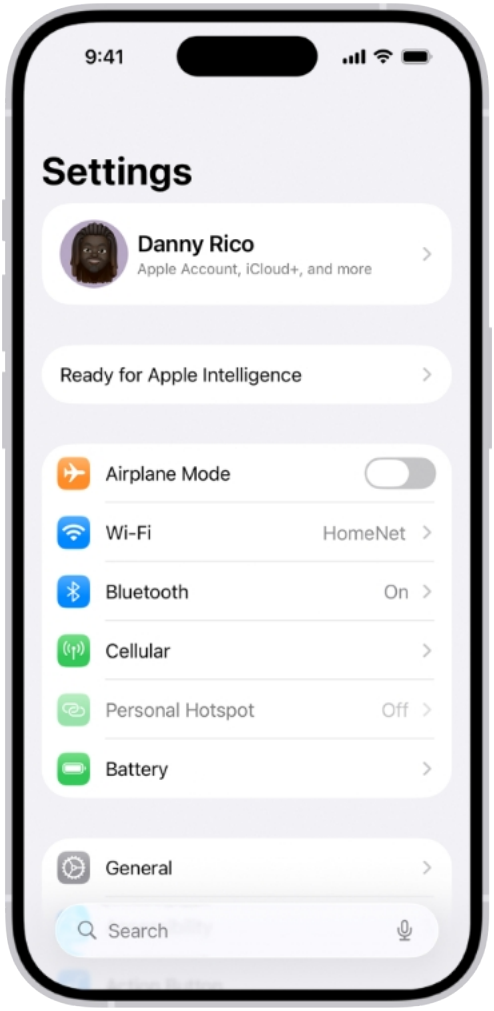
In the Settings app, you can search for iPhone settings you want to change, such as your passcode, notification sounds, and more.

---

1. Tap Settings on the Home Screen (or in App Library).



2. Tap the search field, enter a term—“volume,” for example—then tap a setting.



Tip: You can also search for settings from the Home Screen or Lock Screen.

See also

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

Change the wallpaper on iPhone

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

Search with Spotlight on iPhone

Previous
Subscribe to iCloud+

Next
Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts

Table of Contents

Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts on iPhone

In addition to the apps that come with iPhone and that you use with iCloud, iPhone works with Microsoft Exchange and many of the most popular internet-based mail, contacts, and calendar services. You can set up accounts for these services.

Set up a mail account

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mail Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Enter your email address, tap Next, then enter your email account information.

   You can also tap "choose from a list" under the email address field to select the email service you want to use—for example, iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, or Gmail (Google).

   If your email service isn't listed, tap Add Other Account, tap Mail Account, then enter your email account information.

See Add and remove email accounts.

Set up a contacts account

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Contact Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Do one of the following:

- Tap a provider—for example, iCloud or Microsoft Exchange—then enter your account information.

- Tap Other, tap Add LDAP Account or Add CardDAV Account (if your organization supports it), then enter the server and account information.

See Add or remove accounts in Contacts.

Set up a calendar account

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Calendar Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Do one of the following:

   - *Choose a provider:* Tap a provider—for example, iCloud or Microsoft Exchange—then enter your account information.

   - *Add a CalDAV, CardDav, or LDAP account:* Tap Add Other Account, choose an option, then enter your server and account information.

   - *Subscribe to iCal (.ics) calendars:* Tap Other, tap Add Subscribed Calendar, then enter the URL of the .ics file to subscribe to; or import an .ics file from Mail.

See Set up multiple calendars.

For information about setting up a Microsoft Exchange account in a corporate environment, see the Apple Support article Set up Exchange ActiveSync on your iPhone or iPad.

If you turn on iCloud Keychain on your iPhone, your accounts stay up to date on all your devices that have iCloud Keychain turned on. See Use to iCloud Keychain to keep passwords, accounts, and more up to date with iCloud in the iCloud User Guide.

See also

Use iCloud on iPhone

Table of Contents

Learn the meaning of iPhone status icons

The icons in the status bar at the top of the screen provide information about iPhone. On an iPhone with Face ID, there are additional status icons at the top of Control Center.

Note: If you turn on a Focus, its icon appears in the status bar.

Status icon	What it means
	**Wi-Fi.** iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. See View available networks and connect to Wi-Fi.
	**Cell signal.** The number of bars indicates the signal strength of your cellular service. If there's no signal, "No Service" appears.
	**Dual cell signals.** On models with Dual SIM, the upper row of bars indicates the signal strength of the line you use for cellular data. The lower row of bars indicates the signal strength of your other line. If there's no signal, "No Service" appears. To see the status icons with their corresponding cellular plan labels and carrier names, open Control Center.
	**Airplane Mode.** Airplane Mode is on—you can't make phone calls, and other wireless functions may be disabled. See Choose settings for travel.
	**5G.** Your carrier's 5G network is available, and supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	**5G UC.** Your carrier's 5G UC network is available, which can include your carrier's higher frequency version of 5G. Supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	**5G+.** Your carrier's 5G+ network is available, which can include your carrier's higher frequency version of 5G. Supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	**5G UW.** Your carrier's 5G UW network is available, which can include your carrier's higher frequency version of 5G. Supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	**5G E.** Your carrier's 5G E network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings.

LTE	**LTE.** Your carrier's LTE network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings.
4G	**UMTS.** Your carrier's 4G UMTS (GSM) or LTE network (depending on the carrier) is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings.
3G	**UMTS/EV-DO.** Your carrier's 3G UMTS (GSM) or EV-DO (CDMA) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See View or change cellular data settings.
E	**EDGE.** Your carrier's EDGE (GSM) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See View or change cellular data settings.
G	**GPRS/1xRTT.** Your carrier's GPRS (GSM) or 1xRTT (CDMA) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See View or change cellular data settings.
SOS	**SOS only.** Full service from your cellular provider isn't available, but emergency calls may be possible through other carrier networks (not available in all countries or regions). See Use SOS to contact emergency services.
	**Satellite features.** Emergency SOS, Find My, Roadside Assistance, and Messages via satellite are available in your location (supported on iPhone 14 and later). See Use Emergency SOS via satellite.
SAT	**Carrier satellite features.** Your device is using a carrier-provided satellite feature. See Apple Support article About carrier-provided satellite features on iPhone.
Wi-Fi	**Wi-Fi calling.** iPhone is set up for Wi-Fi calling. iPhone also displays a carrier name next to the icon. See Make calls using Wi-Fi.
	**Personal Hotspot connection.** iPhone is connected to the internet through the Personal Hotspot of another device. See Join a Personal Hotspot.
VPN	**VPN.** iPhone is connected to a network using VPN.
	**Navigation.** iPhone is providing turn-by-turn directions. See Get driving directions.



Personal Hotspot. iPhone is providing a Personal Hotspot. See Share your internet connection with Personal Hotspot.



Phone call. iPhone is on a phone call. See Make phone calls.



FaceTime. iPhone is on a FaceTime call. See Make FaceTime calls.



Screen recording. iPhone is recording your screen. See Take a screen recording.



Camera in use. An app is using your camera. See Control which apps have access to the camera and microphone on your iPhone.



Microphone in use. An app is using your microphone. See Control which apps have access to the camera and microphone on your iPhone.



Syncing. iPhone is syncing with your computer. See Sync your iPhone with other devices.



Network activity. Shows that there's network activity. Some third-party apps may also use it to show an active process. See Connect to the internet.



Call forwarding. Call forwarding is set up. See Set up call forwarding.



Lock. iPhone is locked. See Wake and unlock iPhone.



Do Not Disturb. Do Not Disturb is turned on. See Turn on or schedule a Focus.



Portrait orientation lock. The iPhone screen is locked in portrait orientation. See Change or lock the screen orientation.



Location services. An app is using Location Services. See Control which apps can use the location of your iPhone.



Alarm. An alarm is set. See Set an alarm.



Headphones connected. iPhone is paired with Bluetooth® headphones that are turned on and within Bluetooth range. See Set up and listen to Bluetooth headphones.



Battery. Shows the iPhone battery level. When the icon is yellow, Low Power Mode is on. See Show the iPhone battery percentage.



Battery charging. The iPhone battery is charging. When the icon is gray, charging is paused. See Charge the battery.



Bluetooth battery. Shows the battery level of a paired Bluetooth device. See Connect to Bluetooth accessories.



AirPlay. AirPlay is on. See Stream videos and photos.



Voice Control. Voice Control is turned on in Settings > Accessibility, and you can use your voice to interact with iPhone.



TTY. Software RTT/TTY or Hardware TTY is turned on. See Set up and use RTT and TTY.



CarPlay. iPhone is connected to CarPlay. See Connect to CarPlay.



Siri Eyes Free. You can ask a question or make a request to Siri in your car. See Use Siri in your car on iPhone.

See also

Connect iPhone to the internet

Show the iPhone battery percentage

Get information about your iPhone

View Live Activities in the Dynamic Island on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Show the iPhone battery percentage

You can view how much charge remains in your iPhone battery in the status bar. You can also add a widget to the Home Screen to monitor the battery levels of your iPhone and connected accessories (including AirPods and other devices).

See the iPhone battery percentage in the status bar

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then turn on Battery Percentage.

On an iPhone with Face ID, the battery percentage appears inside the battery symbol on the status bar.

Tip: On iPhone models with Face ID, you can also swipe down from the top-right corner to quickly view the battery percentage in Control Center.

Add a Batteries widget to your Lock Screen or Home Screen

See Add a widget to your Home Screen and Create a custom Lock Screen.

See also

Charge the iPhone battery

Understand your iPhone battery usage and health

Save battery life with Power Modes on iPhone

Apple Support article: iPhone Battery and Performance

Table of Contents

Charge the iPhone battery

iPhone has an internal lithium-ion rechargeable battery, which currently provides the best performance for your device. Compared with traditional battery technology, lithium-ion batteries are lighter, charge faster, last longer, and have a higher power density for more battery life.

To understand how your battery works so you can get the most out of it, see the Apple Lithium-ion Batteries website.

About charging the battery



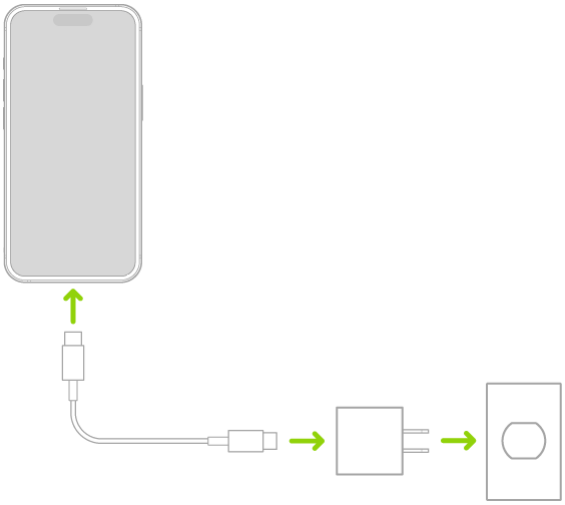
The battery icon in the top-right corner shows the battery level or charging status. When you're syncing or using iPhone, it may take longer to charge the battery.

If iPhone is very low on power, it may display an image of a nearly depleted battery, indicating that it needs to charge for up to 10 minutes before you can use it. If iPhone is extremely low on power when you begin charging it, the display may be blank for up to 2 minutes before the low-battery image appears. See the Apple Support article If your iPhone won't charge.

Charge the battery

To charge iPhone, do any of the following:

- Connect iPhone to a power outlet using the charging cable (included) and an Apple USB power adapter or other compatible power adapter (sold separately). See Power adapters.



- Place iPhone face up on MagSafe Charger (connected to Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or other compatible power adapter) or on a Qi-certified charger. (MagSafe Charger, power adapters, and Qi-certified chargers are sold separately.) See MagSafe chargers and battery packs and Qi-certified wireless chargers.

  Note: You can also use third-party power adapters and Qi-certified chargers that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. See "Charging" in Important safety information for iPhone.

- Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

  Make sure your computer is turned on—if iPhone is connected to a computer that's turned off, the battery may drain instead of charge. Look for ⚡ on the battery icon to make sure your iPhone is charging.

  Note: Don't try to charge your iPhone by connecting it to your keyboard, unless your keyboard has a high-power USB port.

Connecting iPhone to a power outlet or placing it on a wireless charger can start an iCloud backup. See Back up iPhone.

WARNING: If you suspect there may be liquid in the charging port of iPhone, don't plug the charging cable into it. For information about exposure to liquid, and other important safety information about the battery and charging iPhone, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Improve charging speed

If your iPhone is charging slowly, you'll see a Slow Charger message in Settings > Battery. This message appears when your iPhone supports fast charging but the connected charger isn't capable of delivering optimal power.



Charging might take longer than expected if you're using:

- A wired charger that provides 7.5 watts or less
- A wireless charger that provides less than 10 watts, such as a Qi-certified charger

---

Understand charging behavior

iPhone manages how it charges to help preserve long-term battery health. Here's what happens when you charge:

- *Fast charging up to 80%:* iPhone charges quickly until the battery reaches about 80%.
- *Trickle charging after 80%:* Charging slows to reduce battery stress and limit heat. This final stage helps maintain battery lifespan.
- *Temperature:* Charging may pause temporarily while in extreme temperature conditions, and resumes once the battery's temperature returns to its normal operating range.

These protections happen automatically and don’t require any changes to your settings.

About charge cycles and battery lifespan

The capacity of any type of battery will diminish after a certain amount of recharging. With lithium-ion batteries, the capacity diminishes slightly with each complete charge cycle. Apple lithium-ion batteries work in charge cycles and retain about 80% of its original capacity for a high number of charge cycles, depending on the product.

A charge cycle happens when you use a total of 100% of your battery’s capacity,* even if it's not all at once. For example, you might use 75% of your battery’s capacity one day,

then recharge it fully overnight. If you use 25% the next day, you will have discharged a total of 100%, and the two days will add up to one charge cycle.

Tip: Partial charging throughout the day won't harm the battery, and using features like Optimized Battery Charging or Charge Limit can help extend its life even further.

Battery life and charge cycles vary with use and settings. To learn how to maximize your battery's performance and lifespan, see the Apple Support article iPhone Battery and Performance.

The iPhone battery should be serviced or recycled by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

*A complete charge cycle is normalized between 80% and 100% of original capacity to account for expected diminishing battery capacity over time.

See also

Show the iPhone battery percentage

Understand your iPhone battery usage and health

Charge iPhone with cleaner energy sources (U.S. only)

Save battery life with Power Modes on iPhone

Apple Support article: About iPhone charge speeds

Previous
Learn the meaning of iPhone status icons

Next
Show the battery percentage

Helpful? Yes No

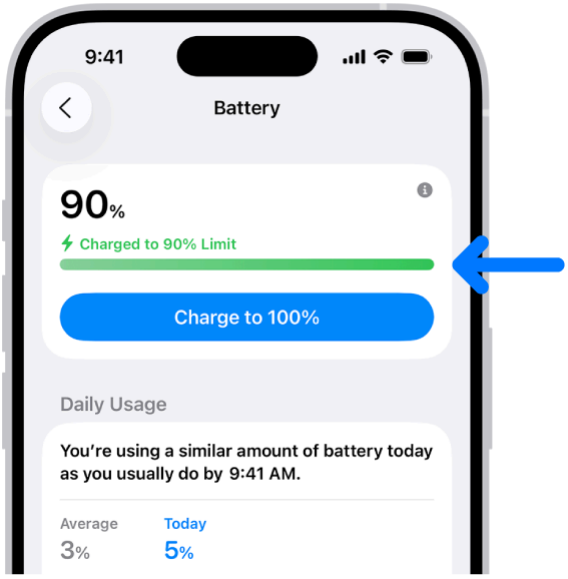
Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set a charge limit on iPhone

On iPhone 15 and later, you can set a maximum battery level—like 80%—to help reduce battery wear, especially if you charge your iPhone frequently or keep it connected for long periods. iPhone may also recommend a charge limit based on your charging patterns.

When Charge Limit is on, iPhone stops charging when it reaches your selected percentage.



What to expect

- Your iPhone will occasionally charge to 100%—even with a lower limit set—to keep the battery percentage display accurate. This may happen more often if your iPhone isn't regularly able to complete a full charge.

Set a Charge Limit

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then tap Charging.

3. Choose the charge percentage that works best for you. You can change or remove the limit anytime.

Change the Charge Limit

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then tap Charging.
3. Choose the charge percentage that works best for you, then do any of the following:

    - *Temporarily override charge limit:* Tap Allow Until Tomorrow. The charge limit will return to your set percentage at 6:00 a.m.
    - *Set a new charge limit:* Tap Set Limit to 100%. The charge limit will remain at 100% until you change it again.

Previous
Optimize battery charging

Next
Understand Thermally Limited Charging

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Understand Thermally Limited Charging on iPhone

Your iPhone protects its battery by limiting charging in hot or cold conditions.

Charging your iPhone in very hot or cold environments can temporarily affect performance. When your iPhone becomes too warm or too cold, iOS may automatically slow down or pause charging. This helps preserve your battery's long-term health and ensures safe operation.



You might see a message on the Lock Screen such as "Charging On Hold. Charging will resume when iPhone returns to normal temperature."

What to expect

- If your iPhone gets too warm, charging may slow or stop until the temperature lowers.
- In very cold environments, charging may be slower or temporarily disabled until your device warms up.
- Charging resumes automatically when the battery returns to a safe temperature range.

These protections apply whether you're using a cable, MagSafe Charger, or other wireless chargers.

Tips to maintain charging performance in extreme temperatures

Help your iPhone charge efficiently with these best practices:

- Charge your iPhone in environments between 32° and 95° F (0° and 35° C).
- Avoid placing your iPhone in direct sunlight or leaving it in hot spaces (like a car on a sunny day).
- If you're in a cold climate, try charging indoors or warming your iPhone gradually before plugging it in.
- Remove your case if your iPhone tends to heat up while charging.

Note: These temperature-based protections work automatically and can't be turned off. They are available on iPhone using iOS 16 or later.

See also

Apple Support article: If your iPhone or iPad gets too hot or too cold

Understand your iPhone battery usage and health

Previous
Set a charge limit

Next
Save battery life with Power Modes on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Optimize iPhone battery charging

iPhone includes charging features that help extend your battery's lifespan by reducing the time your battery stays fully charged. With Optimized Battery Charging, iPhone pauses charging at 80%, then finishes charging closer to when you usually unplug your iPhone. For example, if you typically unplug your iPhone at 7 a.m., charging may pause at 80% overnight and finish just before that time.

What to expect

- *It needs a routine:* Optimized Battery Charging activates when your iPhone predicts it will be connected to a charger for an extended period, like overnight. The feature requires time to learn your charging habits, so it works most consistently in the locations where you spend the most time, such as your home and office. It may not activate when your charging habits are more varied, like when you're traveling.
- *It may not always be active:* If your charging schedule is inconsistent or you're in a new place, Optimized Battery Charging may not activate. In these situations, your iPhone will charge to 100% without pausing.

Temporarily override Optimized Battery Charging

You can temporarily override Optimized Battery Charging if you need to charge your iPhone to full sooner than scheduled.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then tap Resume Charging.

Turn Optimized Battery Charging on or off

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

    - *On iPhone 14 or earlier:* Tap Battery, then tap Battery Health & Charging. Turn Optimized Battery Charging on or off.

    - *On iPhone 15 or later:* Tap Battery, then tap Charging. Turn Optimized Battery Charging on or off.

If optimized charging doesn't start when expected, see the Apple Support article About Optimized Battery Charging on your iPhone.

Previous
Charge with cleaner energy sources

Next
Set a charge limit

Table of Contents

Charge iPhone with cleaner energy sources (U.S. only)

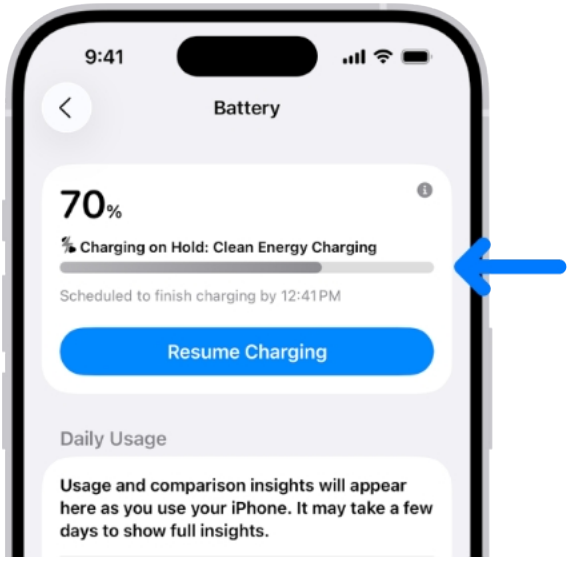
With Clean Energy Charging, iPhone uses a forecast of the carbon emissions in your local energy grid to charge during times of cleaner energy production. This feature is available only in the U.S. and is turned on by default. iPhone learns from your daily charging routine so it can reach full charge before you need to use it.

What to expect

- *Charging may be delayed:* When you connect your iPhone to a charger, it may wait to begin charging. iPhone does this automatically when cleaner energy is forecasted to be available soon. iPhone does this only when it knows your device will finish charging before you unplug it.
- *It isn't always active:* Clean Energy Charging happens only when a forecast for cleaner energy is available from your local grid. If a forecast isn't available, your iPhone charges normally.

Temporarily override Clean Energy Charging

You can temporarily override Clean Energy Charging if you need to charge your iPhone to full sooner than scheduled.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then tap Resume Charging.

Turn off Clean Energy Charging

Clean Energy Charging is on by default when you set up your iPhone. To turn off the feature:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

    - *On iPhone 14 or earlier:* Tap Battery, then tap Battery Health & Charging. Turn Clean Energy Charging on or off.
    - *On iPhone 15 or later:* Tap Battery, then tap Charging. Turn Clean Energy Charging on or off.

See also

Charge the iPhone battery

Apple and the environment

Previous
Show the battery percentage

Next
Optimize battery charging

Table of Contents

Save battery life with Power Modes on iPhone

iPhone offers power-saving features that help extend battery life based on your needs. Use Adaptive Power to let iPhone automatically adjust performance based on your usage patterns, or turn on Low Power Mode to manually reduce power consumption when your battery gets low.

Turn on Adaptive Power

On iPhone 15 Pro or later, Adaptive Power helps extend the battery life of your iPhone on days when your usage is higher than usual. When turned on, Adaptive Power works automatically in the background so you don't need to manage it. It uses on-device intelligence to predict when you'll need extra battery power based on your recent usage patterns, then makes performance adjustments to help your battery last longer.

Note: On iPhone 17, iPhone 17 Pro, iPhone 17 Pro Max, and iPhone Air, Adaptive Power is on by default.

When enabled, Adaptive Power can lower screen brightness, limit background activity, and make performance adjustments to conserve power throughout the day. It can also automatically turn on Low Power Mode when your battery reaches 20%.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, tap Power Mode, then turn Adaptive Power on or off.

You can get notifications when Adaptive Power turns on during the day: Go to the Settings app, tap Battery, tap Power Mode, then turn Adaptive Power Notifications on or off. If you turn off notifications, Adaptive Power continues to help extend your battery life.

Manage Low Power Mode

Low Power Mode reduces the amount of power that your iPhone uses when the battery gets low. It optimizes performance for essential tasks like making and receiving calls,

sending and receiving email and messages, accessing the internet, and more. On iPhone models with ProMotion display technology, Low Power Mode limits the display refresh rate to 60 frames per second.

Note: iPhone might perform some tasks more slowly when in Low Power Mode.

To turn Low Power Mode on or off, do any of the following:

- *iPhone 14 or earlier:* Go to the Settings app, then tap Battery. Tap Low Power Mode.
- *iPhone 15 or later:* Go to the Settings app, then tap Battery. Tap Power Mode, then tap Low Power Mode.
- *In Control Center:* Add to Control Center, then tap .

Low Power Mode automatically turns off when iPhone charges to 80% or higher.

See also

Charge the iPhone battery

Apple Support article: Use Low Power Mode to save battery life on your iPhone or iPad

Previous
Understand Thermally Limited Charging

Next
Understand your iPhone battery usage and health

Helpful? Yes No

Support › iPhone User Guide › Save battery life with Power Modes on iPhone

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

https://www.iphone17manual.com

Table of Contents

Learn basic gestures to interact with iPhone

Control iPhone and its apps using a few simple gestures—tap, touch and hold, swipe, scroll, and zoom.

Symbol	Gesture
	**Tap.** Briefly touch an item on the screen with one finger. For example, to open an app, tap its icon on the Home Screen.
	**Touch and hold.** Press an item on the screen until something happens. For example, if you touch and hold the wallpaper of the Home Screen, the app icons begin to jiggle.
	**Swipe.** Move one finger across the screen quickly. For example, swipe left on the Home Screen to see more apps.
	**Scroll.** Move one finger across the screen without lifting. For example, in Photos, you can drag a list up or down to see more. Swipe to scroll quickly; touch the screen to stop scrolling.
	**Zoom.** Place two fingers on the screen near each other. Spread them apart to zoom in, or move them toward each other to zoom out. You can also double-tap a photo or webpage to zoom in, and double-tap again to zoom out. In Maps, double-tap and hold, then drag up to zoom in or drag down to zoom out.

See also

Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

Table of Contents

Adjust the volume on iPhone

Adjust the volume of media, alerts, and sound effects using the volume buttons, Siri, or Control Center.

Use the volume buttons or Siri to adjust volume

When you're on a call or listening to songs, movies, or other media on iPhone, you can use the buttons on the side of your device to adjust the audio volume. Otherwise, the buttons control the volume for the ringer, alerts, and other sound effects, unless the ringer and alert volumes are locked in Settings.

You can also use Siri to turn the volume up or down.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Turn down the volume." Learn how to use Siri.

WARNING: For information about avoiding hearing loss, see Important safety information.



Lock the ringer and alert volumes in Settings

1. Go to Settings, then tap Sounds & Haptics.
2. Turn off Change with Buttons.

Adjust the volume in Control Center

When iPhone is locked or when you're using an app, you can adjust the volume in Control Center.

Open Control Center, then drag .

Reduce loud headphone sounds

You can limit the maximum volume of sound that plays through headphones on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics, then tap Headphone Safety.
3. Turn on Reduce Loud Audio, then drag the slider to specify the maximum volume.

Note: If you set up Screen Time for a family member, you can prevent them from changing the Reduce Loud Audio level. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions, tap Reduce Loud Audio, then select Don't Allow.

Limit the speaker volume

You can limit the maximum volume of sound that plays through the built-in speaker on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics > Volume Limit.
2. Turn on Limit Maximum Volume, then drag the slider to specify the maximum volume.

Note: If you set up Screen Time for a family member, you can prevent them from changing the Speaker Volume Limit level. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions, tap Speaker Volume Limit, then select Don't Allow.

See also

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

Table of Contents

Understand your iPhone battery usage and health

iPhone offers useful insights into your battery life to help you identify ways to improve your experience, as well as important information about your battery's overall health.

View Daily Usage information

The Daily Usage section summarizes your battery usage today compared to previous days. iPhone displays the following battery usage information:

- *Similar or lower usage:* Shows when your battery use is about the same as usual or less than usual by this time of day (in blue). When usage is similar, iPhone highlights the top three apps or system activities contributing to today's usage.
- *Higher usage:* Appears when you've used more battery than usual by this time of day (in orange). iPhone highlights the top three apps or system activities that may explain the increase.



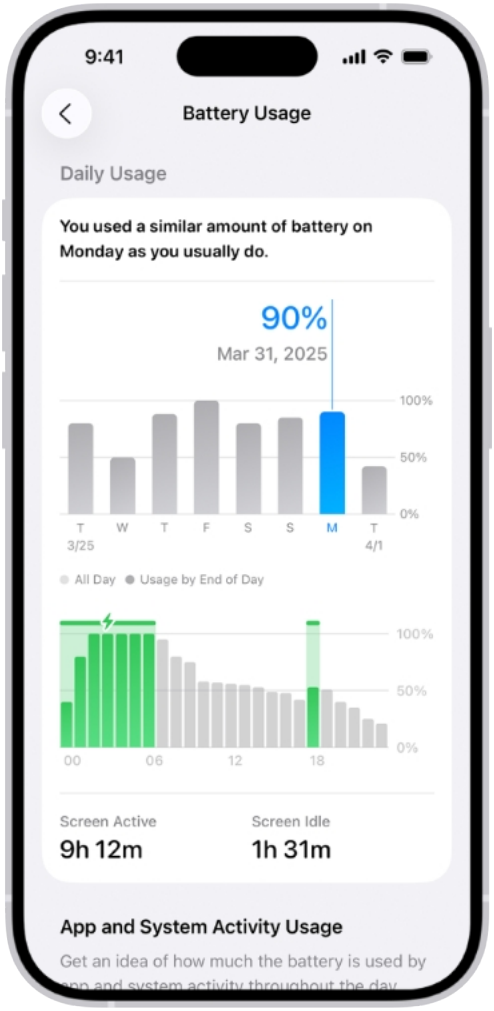
To view daily usage information:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery.

View additional Battery Usage information

You can explore more information about your app and system activity usage for today and the previous week.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, tap View All Battery Usage, then tap a day.

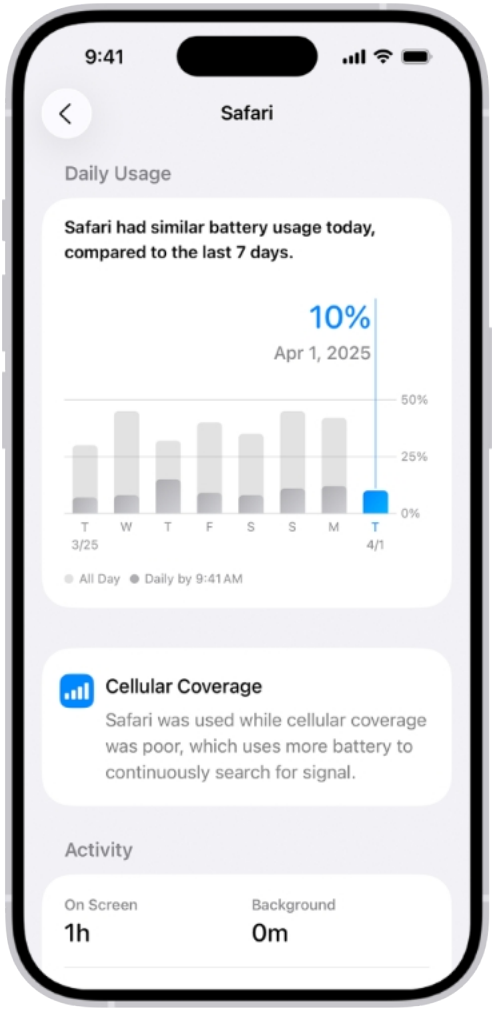


View App and System Activity information

The App and System Activity section helps you understand what's using your battery by listing the percentage of battery used by each app and system task.

You might see the following information under an app or system activity, or when you tap an app to view more details. Here's what they mean:

- *On screen:* The app or system activity was open and visible on your screen. A long duration of onscreen time can explain higher battery usage compared to previous days.
- *Background:* A long duration of background time can explain higher battery usage compared to previous days. Background activities include directions, playing music, syncing photos, fetching mail, and more.
- *Cellular coverage:* The app was used in a low signal environment, which used more battery.
- *Notifications:* The app or system activity woke your device and used battery to check for new information. You can manage an app's notification settings to reduce how often this happens.



To view app and system activity information:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *View today:* Tap Battery, then scroll down.
   - *View additional battery information for today and previous days:* Tap Battery, tap View All Battery Usage, tap a day, then scroll down.
3. Tap an app to view more details, including its battery usage and activity for each day.

See when your iPhone was last charged

iPhone shows when the battery was last fully charged and when it was disconnected from the charger. While charging, iPhone displays estimated times to reach 80% and 100%. To learn more about charging, see Charge the iPhone battery.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Battery.

Review your iPhone battery health

iPhone displays information about your battery's capacity. On iPhone 15 models or later, you can also see details like battery health, cycle count, manufacture date, and first use date.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then do one of the following:

    - *On iPhone 14 or earlier:* Tap Battery Health & Charging.
    - *On iPhone 15 or later:* Tap Battery Health.

Battery life and charge cycles vary with use and settings. To learn how to maximize your battery's performance and lifespan, see the Apple Support article iPhone Battery and Performance.

The iPhone battery should be serviced or recycled by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

See also

Optimize iPhone battery charging

Save battery life with Power Modes on iPhone

Previous
Save battery life with Power Modes on iPhone

Next
Learn basic gestures

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Turn the iPhone flashlight on or off

You can use the flashlight on iPhone to light your way in the dark or get a more detailed look at something.

Use Siri to turn the flashlight on or off

You can use Siri to turn the flashlight on or off.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Siri, turn on the flashlight." Learn how to use Siri.

Use Control Center to turn the flashlight on or off

1. Open Control Center.
2. Tap to turn the flashlight on; tap it again to turn it off.

   Note: If you don't see in Control Center, you can add it. See Customize controls.

Turn on the flashlight from the Lock Screen

If your iPhone has on the Lock Screen, you can press it to turn the flashlight on or off.

Turn the flashlight on or off with the Action button

If your iPhone has an Action button, you can customize it to turn the flashlight on or off. See Use and customize the Action button.

Change the brightness of the flashlight

After you turn on the flashlight, an image of the flashlight appears on the screen. You can change the brightness by dragging up or down on the flashlight image.

Previous
Adjust the volume

Next
Silence iPhone

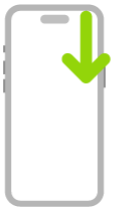
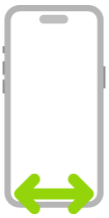
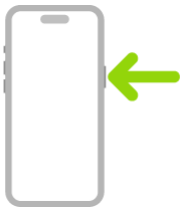
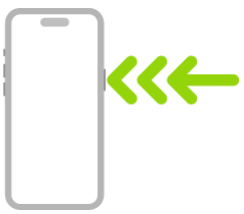
Helpful? Yes No

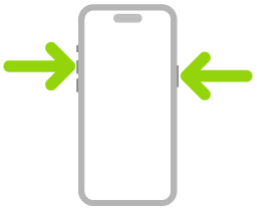
Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

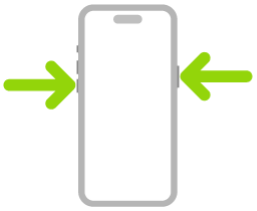
Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

Here's a handy reference to the gestures you use for interacting with an iPhone that has Face ID.

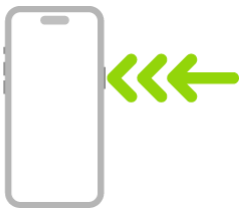
Gesture	Description
	**Go Home.** Swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen to return to the Home Screen at any time. See Open apps on iPhone.
	**Quickly access controls.** Swipe down from the top-right corner to open Control Center; touch and hold a control to reveal more options. To add or remove controls, go to Settings > Control Center. See Use and customize Control Center on iPhone.
	**Open the App Switcher.** Swipe up from the bottom edge, pause in the center of the screen, then lift your finger. To browse the open apps, swipe right, then tap the app you want to use. See Switch between open apps on iPhone.
	**Switch between open apps.** Swipe right or left along the bottom edge of the screen to quickly switch between open apps. See Switch between open apps on iPhone.
	**Use Siri.** Just say "Siri" or "Hey Siri." Or press and hold the side button while you ask a question or make a request. See Learn how to use Siri.
	**Use Apple Pay.** Double-click the side button to display your default card for Apple Pay, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID. See Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone.
	**Use Accessibility Shortcut.** Triple-click the side button. See Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone.



Take a screenshot. Simultaneously press and quickly release the side button and volume up button. See Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Face ID.



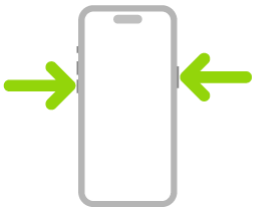
Use Emergency SOS (all countries or regions except India). Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons. See Quickly call emergency services (all countries or regions except India).



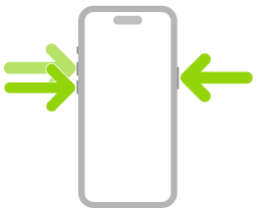
Use Emergency SOS (in India). Quickly press the side button 3 times until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends.

If you've turned on Accessibility Shortcut, simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

See Quickly call emergency services (India).



Turn off. Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider to power off. Or go to Settings > General > Shut Down. See Turn off iPhone.



Force restart. Press and release the volume up button, press and release the volume down button, then press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears. See Force restart iPhone.

See also

Learn basic gestures to interact with iPhone

Previous
Learn basic gestures

Next
Adjust the volume

Table of Contents

Silence iPhone

With the push of a button or flip of a switch, you can quickly silence your iPhone.

Turn Silent mode on or off

When Silent mode is on, iPhone doesn't ring or play alerts or other sound effects (but iPhone may still vibrate). When Silent mode is off, iPhone plays all sounds.

- On models with an Action button: Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics, then turn Silent mode on or off.

  You can also configure the Action button to turn Silent mode on or off, in addition to other functions. See Use and customize the Action button on iPhone.

- On other models: Flip the Ring/Silent switch toward the back of your iPhone to turn Silent mode on. Flip it toward the front to turn Silent mode off.

Important: Clock alarms, audio apps such as Music, and many games play sounds through the built-in speaker, even when Silent mode is on. In some countries or regions, the sound effects for Camera, Voice Memos, and Emergency Alerts are played, even when the Ring/Silent switch is set to silent.

Silence iPhone by turning on Do Not Disturb

You can temporarily silence calls, alerts, and notifications by turning on Do Not Disturb.

1. Open Control Center.
2. Tap Focus, then tap Do Not Disturb.

   When Do Not Disturb is turned on, you won't hear ringtones or text tones for incoming calls, texts, or notifications. Also appears in the status bar at the top of the screen.

See Turn on or schedule a Focus.

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find and use your apps in App Library on iPhone

App Library shows your apps organized into categories, such as Social, Entertainment, and Productivity & Finance. The apps you use most are near the top of the screen and at the top level of their categories, so you can easily locate and open them.



Note: The apps in App Library are organized in categories intelligently, based on how you use your apps. You can add apps in App Library to the Home Screen, but you can't move them to another category in App Library.

Find and open an app in App Library

1. Go to the Home Screen, then swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to get to App Library.
2. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the app you're looking for. Or scroll up and down to browse the alphabetical list.
3. To open an app, tap it.

If a category has a few small app icons, you can tap them to expand the category and see all the apps in it.

Hide and show Home Screen pages

Because you can find all of your apps in App Library, you might not need as many Home Screen pages for apps. You can hide some Home Screen pages, which brings App Library closer to your first Home Screen page. (When you want to see the hidden pages again, you can show them.)

1. Go to the Home Screen, then touch and hold the Home Screen wallpaper until the app icons begin to jiggle.
2. Tap the dots at the bottom of the screen.

   Thumbnail images of your Home Screen pages appear with checkmarks below them.
3. To hide pages, tap to remove the checkmarks.

   To show hidden pages, tap to add the checkmarks.
4. Tap Done (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models).

With the extra Home Screen pages hidden, you can go from the first page of the Home Screen to App Library (and back) with only one or two swipes.

Note: When Home Screen pages are hidden, new apps you download from the App Store may be added to App Library instead of the Home Screen.

Reorder Home Screen pages

If you have multiple Home Screen pages, you change their order. For example, you can gather together your favorite apps on one Home Screen page, and then make that your first Home Screen page.

1. Go to the Home Screen, then touch and hold the Home Screen wallpaper until the app icons begin to jiggle.
2. Tap the dots at the bottom of the screen.

   Thumbnail images of your Home Screen pages appear with checkmarks below them.
3. To move each Home Screen page, touch and hold it, then drag it to a new position.
4. Tap Done twice (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button twice (on other iPhone models).

Change where new apps get downloaded

When you download new apps from the App Store, you can add them to the Home Screen and App Library, or to App Library only.

1. Go to Settings > Home Screen & App Library.
2. Choose Add to Home Screen or App Library Only.

Note: To allow app notification badges to appear on apps in App Library, turn on Show in App Library.

Move an app from App Library to the Home Screen

If you download an app to App Library, you can easily move it to the Home Screen.

1. Go to App Library.
2. Touch and hold the app until the app icons begin to jiggle and the app moves to the Home Screen, then lift your finger.

See also

Open apps on iPhone

Previous
Open apps

Next
Switch between open apps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

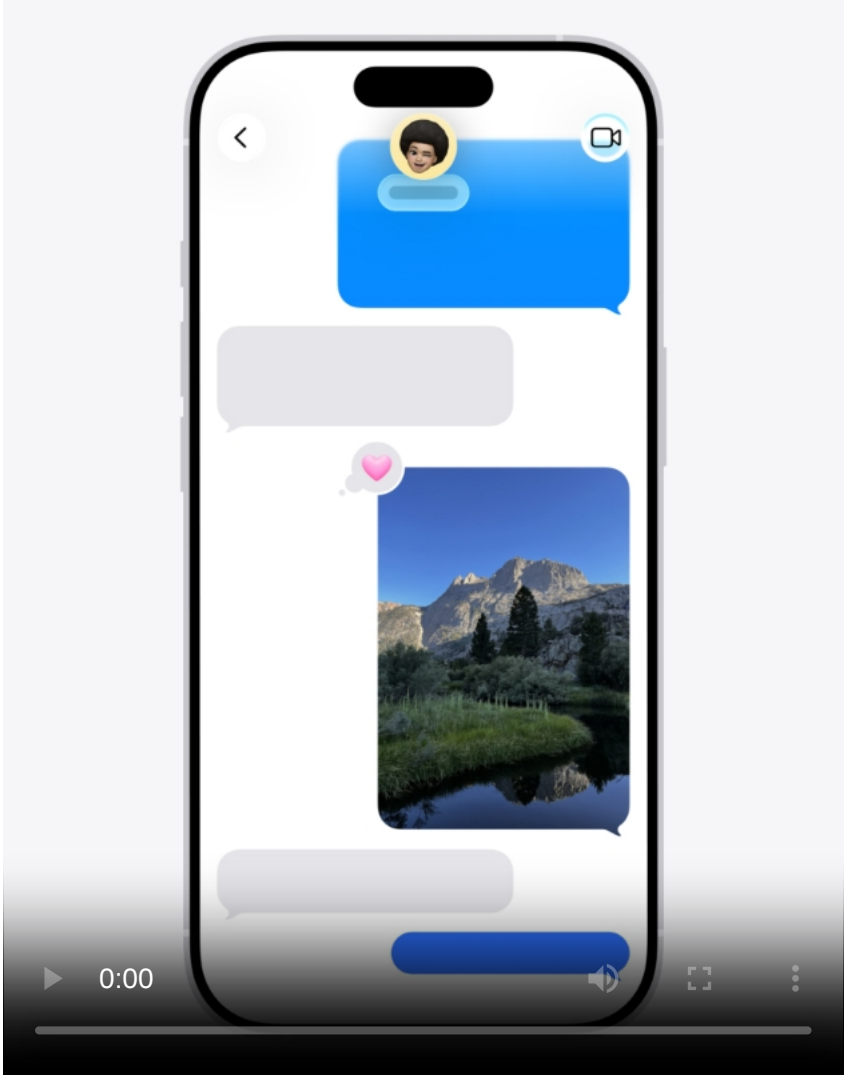
Table of Contents

Open apps on iPhone

You can quickly open apps from one of your Home Screen pages (like the one shown below) or your App Library.



1. To go to the Home Screen, swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).



2. Swipe left to browse apps on other Home Screen pages.
3. Swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to see App Library, where your apps are organized by category.
4. To open an app, tap its icon.
5. To return to App Library, swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

See also

Find your apps in App Library

Quit and reopen an app

Move and organize apps on your Home Screen

Remove or delete apps from iPhone

Table of Contents

Quit and reopen an app on iPhone

If an app isn't responding, you can quit it and then reopen it to try and resolve the issue. (Typically, there's no reason to quit an app; quitting it doesn't save battery power, for example.)

1. To quit the app, open the App Switcher, swipe right to find the app, then swipe up on the app.
2. To reopen the app, go to the Home Screen (or App Library), then tap the app.

If quitting and reopening the app doesn't resolve the issue, try restarting iPhone.

See also

Turn iPhone on or off

Previous
Switch between open apps

Next
Multitask with Picture in Picture

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

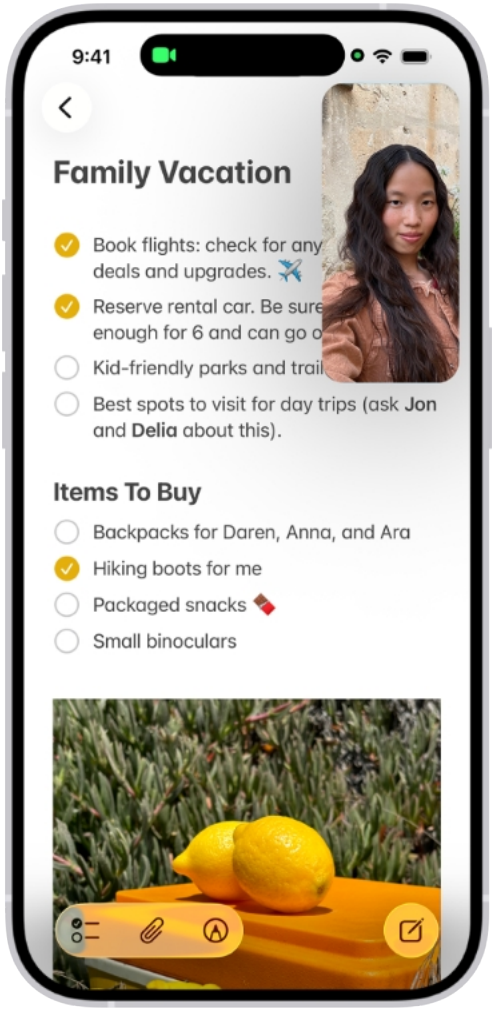
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Multitask with Picture in Picture on iPhone

With Picture in Picture, you can watch a video or use FaceTime while you use other apps.



While watching a video, tap in the video window.

The video window scales down to a corner of your screen so you can see the Home Screen and open other apps. With the video window showing, you can do any of the following:

- *Resize the video window:* To make the small video window larger, pinch open. To shrink it again, pinch closed.
- *Show and hide controls:* Tap the video window.

- *Move the video window:* Drag it to a different corner of the screen.
- *Hide the video window:* Drag it off the left or right edge of the screen.
- *Close the video window:* Tap ⊗.
- *Return to a full video screen:* Tap in the small video window.

See also

Use other apps during a FaceTime call

Previous
Quit and reopen an app

Next
Access features from the Lock Screen

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Access features from the iPhone Lock Screen

The Lock Screen appears when you turn on or wake iPhone. From the Lock Screen, you can see notifications, open Camera and Control Center, get information from your favorite apps at a glance, control media playback, and more.

You can personalize your Lock Screen by choosing a wallpaper, showcasing a favorite photo, changing the font of the time, adding widgets, and more. See Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.



Access features and information from the Lock Screen

You can quickly access useful features and information from the Lock Screen, even while iPhone is locked.

Go to the Lock Screen, then do any of the following:

- *Open Camera:* Swipe left. On supported models, you can touch and hold, then lift your finger. (See iPhone camera basics.)
- *Open Control Center:* Swipe down from the top-right corner (on an iPhone with Face ID) or swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on other iPhone models). (See Use and customize Control Center on iPhone.)
- *See earlier notifications:* Swipe up from the center. (See View and respond to notifications on iPhone.)
- *View more widgets:* Swipe right. (See Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone.) You can interact with widgets on the Lock Screen and the Home Screen to perform tasks—for example, tap an item in the Reminders widget to check it off, or tap the Play button in the Podcasts widget to play an episode.
- *Control media playback:* Use the playback controls (Now Playing) on the Lock Screen to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward media playing on your iPhone. (See View and control Live Activities on the Lock Screen.)

To choose what you can access from the Lock Screen, see Turn on Lock Screen features on iPhone.

Show notification previews on the Lock Screen

1. Go to Settings > Notifications.
2. Tap Show Previews, then tap Always.
3. Choose how you want notifications displayed on the Lock Screen:

    - *View just the number of notifications:* Tap Count.
    - *View the notifications grouped into stacks by app:* Tap Stack.
    - *View the notifications in a list:* Tap List.

    You can pinch the notifications on the Lock Screen to change the layout.

Notification previews can include text from Messages, lines from Mail messages, and details about Calendar invitations. See View and respond to notifications on iPhone.

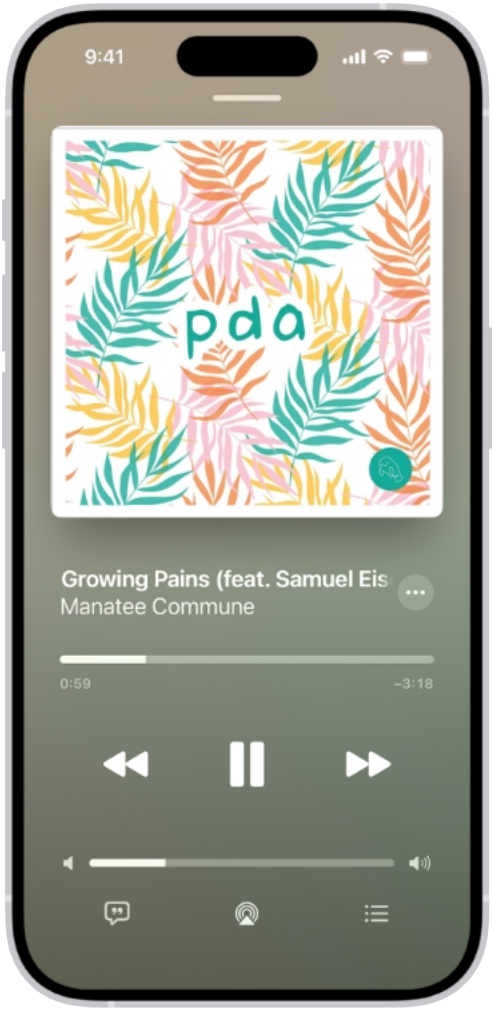
View and control Live Activities on the Lock Screen

You can view app activities on your Lock Screen, so you can easily follow their progress. Examples include directions from Maps, live sports updates from the Apple TV app, order updates from food delivery apps, and more. These updates are called Live Activities.

When you play music, a movie, or other media on your iPhone, you can control the view and control these Live Activities using the playback controls on your Lock Screen to play, pause, rewind, and fast-forward. You can also control media playback on a remote device (such as your Apple TV or HomePod) from your iPhone Lock Screen.

To change your Live Activity settings, go to Settings, tap Apps, tap the app with the settings you want to change, then tap Live Activities.

Note: Not all apps have a Live Activities setting.



See also

Turn on Lock Screen features on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View Live Activities in the Dynamic Island on iPhone

On supported models, you can check alerts and Live Activities—such as a Voice Memo recording in progress, an AirDrop connection, and directions from Maps—in the Dynamic Island at the top of the Home Screen or at the top of the active app. The Dynamic Island appears at the top of the screen whenever your iPhone is unlocked.



You can do any of the following in the Dynamic Island:

- *Expand the activity to see more detail:* Touch and hold the activity or swipe from the center to the right or left side.
- *Collapse the activity to make the Dynamic Island smaller:* Swipe from the right or left side toward the center.
- *Switch between two activities:* Swipe from one side or the other.

See also

View and control Live Activities on the Lock Screen

Previous
Access features from the Lock Screen

Next
Perform quick actions

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Search with Spotlight on iPhone

On iPhone, you can search for apps and contacts, content in apps like Mail and Messages, and even text in your photos using Live Text. You can check stock and currency information, and find and open webpages, apps, and images in your photo library, across your system, and on the web.

When you search for an app, app shortcuts for your most likely next action appear within the Top Hit. (For example, a shortcut to the Favorites album appears when you search for Photos.)

In Settings > Search, you can choose which apps you want to include in search results. Search offers suggestions based on your app usage, and updates results as you type.

Choose which apps to include in Search

1. Go to Settings > Search.
2. Scroll down, tap an app, then turn Show App in Search on or off.

Search with iPhone

1. Tap Search at the bottom of the Home Screen (on models with Face ID) or swipe down on the Home Screen or the Lock Screen.
2. Enter what you're looking for in the search field.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Initiate your search:* Tap .
   - *Open a suggested app or website:* Tap the app or website.
   - *Take quick action:* Start a timer, turn on a Focus, find the name of a song with Shazam, run any shortcut, and more. Search for an app's name to see shortcuts

available for the app, or create your own using the Shortcuts app.

- *Check a suggested website:* Tap it.
- *Get more information about a search suggestion:* Tap it, then tap one of the results to open it.
- *Start a new search:* Tap ⊗ in the search field.

Turn off Location-Based Suggestions

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. Tap System Services, then turn off Suggestions & Search.

Search in apps

Many apps include a search field or a search button so you can find something within the app. For example, in the Maps app, you can search for a specific location.

1. In an app, tap the search field or .

   If you don't see a search field or button, swipe down from the top.
2. Type your search, then tap Search.

Add a dictionary

On iPhone, you can add dictionaries, which can be used in searches.

1. Go to Settings > General > Dictionary.
2. Select a dictionary.

See also

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Table of Contents

Get information about your iPhone

View overall storage availability and storage used per app

Go to Settings > General > iPhone Storage.

See the Apple Support articles How to check the storage on your iPhone and iPad and Manage your iCloud storage.

See battery usage

Go to Settings > Battery to see the elapsed time since iPhone was charged as well as battery usage by app.

You can also display battery level as a percentage, turn Low Power Mode on or off, and check your battery's health.

See Monitor the iPhone battery level.

View call time and cellular usage

Go to Settings > Cellular. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Find your IMEI

You can view the IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity) for your iPhone in Settings.

1. Go to Settings > General > About.

2. Scroll down to find your IMEI.

See the name, model, iOS version, serial number, and more

Go to Settings > General > About. The items you can view include:

- Name
- iOS software version
- Model name
- Part and model numbers. To the right of Model, the part number appears. To see the model number, tap the part number.
- Serial number
- Number of songs, videos, photos, and apps
- Capacity and available storage space
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® addresses
- Cellular network
- Carrier settings. To the right of Carrier, the carrier settings version number appears. To see additional carrier-specific information, tap the version number. Contact your carrier for more details.
- ICCID (Integrated Circuit Card Identifier, or Smart Card) for GSM networks
- IMEI/MEID (Mobile Equipment Identifier) for CDMA networks
- Modem firmware

To copy the serial number and other identifiers, touch and hold the identifier until Copy appears.

To see Legal & Regulatory information (including legal notices and license, warranty, and RF exposure information) and regulatory marks, go to Settings > General > Legal & Regulatory.

On supported models, you can also find the IMEI on the SIM card tray and the model number in the SIM tray opening.

View or turn off diagnostic information

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Analytics & Improvements.

To help Apple improve products and services, iPhone sends diagnostic and usage data. This data doesn't personally identify you, but may include location information.

See also

Turn on and set up iPhone

Previous
Search on iPhone

Next
Manage storage on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

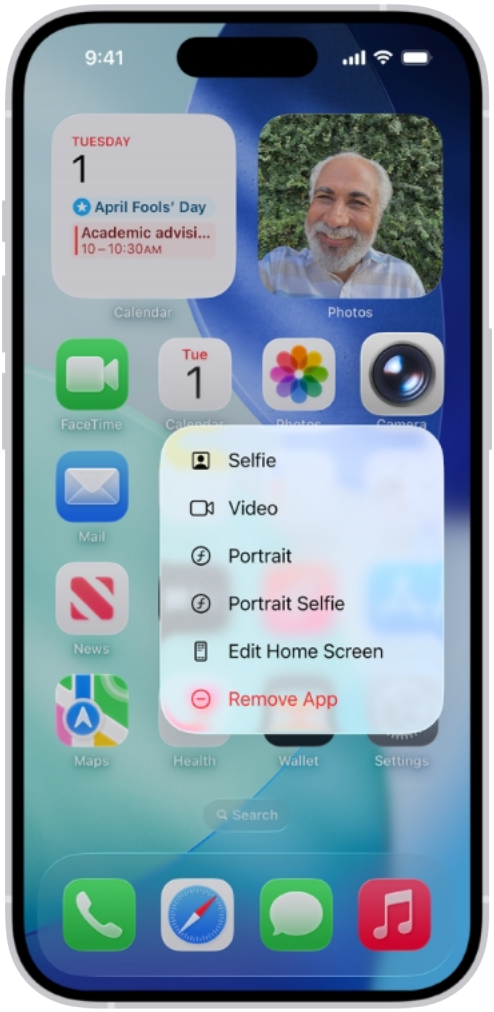
Table of Contents

Perform quick actions on iPhone

On the Home Screen, in App Library, in Control Center, and in apps, you can use quick actions menus, see previews, and more.

Perform quick actions from Control Center, the Home Screen, and App Library

On the Home Screen and in Control Center and App Library, touch and hold apps to open quick actions menus.



For example:

- Touch and hold Camera, then choose Selfie.
- Touch and hold Maps, then choose Send My Location.
- Touch and hold Notes, then choose New Note.

Note: If you touch and hold an app for too long before choosing a quick action, all of the apps begin to jiggle. Tap Done (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models), then try again.

See previews and other quick actions menus

- In Photos, touch and hold an image to preview it and see a list of options.
- In Mail, touch and hold a message in a mailbox to preview the message contents and see a list of options.
- Open Control Center, then touch and hold an item like Camera or the brightness control to see options.
- On the Lock Screen, touch and hold a notification to respond to it.
- When typing, touch and hold the Space bar with one finger to turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad.

See also

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Previous
View Live Activities in the Dynamic Island

Next
Search on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Manage storage on iPhone

On iPhone, you can check how much storage space is available and increase the available space by removing items you no longer need.

Check storage on your iPhone

Go to Settings > General > iPhone Storage.

The available storage is shown at the top of the screen.

Remove apps and data

When you're low on storage, you can have iPhone automatically remove unused apps.

1. Go to Settings > General > iPhone Storage.
2. Tap Enable next to Offload Unused Apps.

   The unused apps move to iCloud Drive. You can find them in iCloud Drive in the Files app.

You can also remove many apps manually, and redownload them if you change your mind. See Remove or delete apps.

If you have documents and data on your iPhone that you no longer need, you can find and delete them in the Files app. See Delete a file or folder.

You can also review items you downloaded in the TV app and remove ones you already watched. See Manage your library in the Apple TV app.

Keep selected files

If you have downloaded files that you always want to be able access on your iPhone, you can make sure they're not removed. See Keep selected files downloaded.

Previous
Get information about your iPhone

Next
Travel with iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

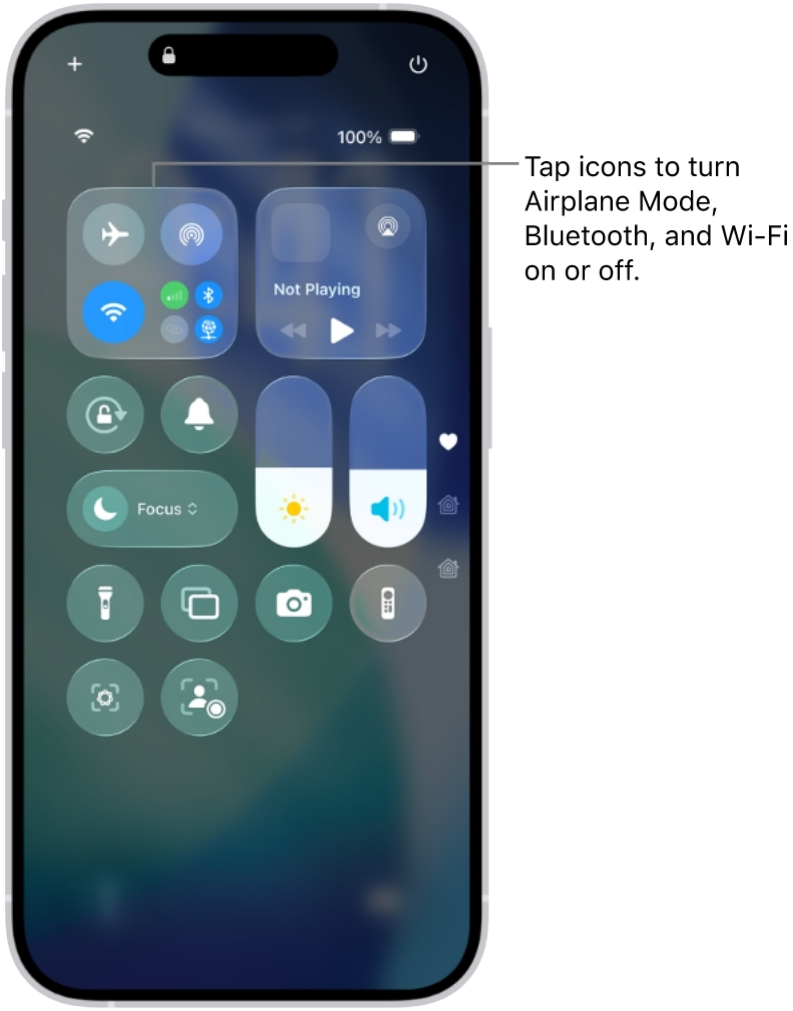
Choose iPhone settings for travel

When you travel with iPhone, choose settings that comply with airline requirements. Some airlines let you keep your iPhone turned on if you switch to Airplane Mode. When you turn on Airplane Mode initially, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and cellular networks turn off. However, you can turn Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and cellular networks back on even when Airplane Mode is on. This allows you to make or receive FaceTime calls or use features or accessories that require wireless communication.

To choose settings that minimize cellular charges when you travel, see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Turn on Airplane Mode

Open Control Center, then tap ✈.



You can also turn Airplane Mode on or off in Settings. When Airplane Mode is on, the Airplane Mode icon appears in the status bar.

Turn on Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in Airplane Mode

If your airline allows it, you can use Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in Airplane Mode.

1. Open Control Center, then turn on Airplane Mode.
2. Tap to turn on Wi-Fi or to turn on Bluetooth.

   If you turn on Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in Airplane Mode, it may be on the next time you return to Airplane Mode. You can turn it off again in Control Center.

See also

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Table of Contents

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

You can change the sounds iPhone plays when you get a call, text, voicemail, email, reminder, or other type of notification.

Haptic feedback is the vibration you feel on your iPhone when you perform some actions, such as when you touch and hold any icon on the Home Screen.

Customize your iPhone sounds and vibrations

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. Drag the slider below Ringtone and Alerts to set the volume for all sounds.
4. Tap Haptics, then choose the haptics behavior for ringtones and alerts—Always Play, Play in Silent Mode, Don't Play in Silent Mode, or Never Play.
5. Tap Ringtone, Text Tone, or another option.
6. Choose a tone.
7. Tap Haptics, then choose a vibration pattern or tap Create New Vibration to create your own.

You can also change the sounds iPhone plays for certain people. Go to Contacts, tap a person's name, tap Edit, then choose a ringtone and text tone.

Turn haptic feedback off or on

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. Tap Haptics, then choose an option.

When Haptics is set to Never Play, you won't hear or feel vibrations for incoming calls and alerts.

Have iPhone play a sound effect when it's turned on and off

On iPhone 14 and later, you can have iPhone play a sound when it's turned on and off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Audio & Visual.
3. Turn on Power On & Off Sounds.

Tip: If you're not receiving incoming calls and alerts when you expect them, open Control Center, then check whether Do Not Disturb is on. If the Do Not Disturb button is highlighted, tap it to turn off Do Not Disturb. (When Do Not Disturb is on, its icon also appears in the status bar.)

See also

Adjust the volume on iPhone

Previous
Travel with iPhone

Next
Use and customize the Action button

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen



You can personalize your Lock Screen by choosing a wallpaper, showcasing a favorite photo, changing the font of the time, adding widgets, and more.

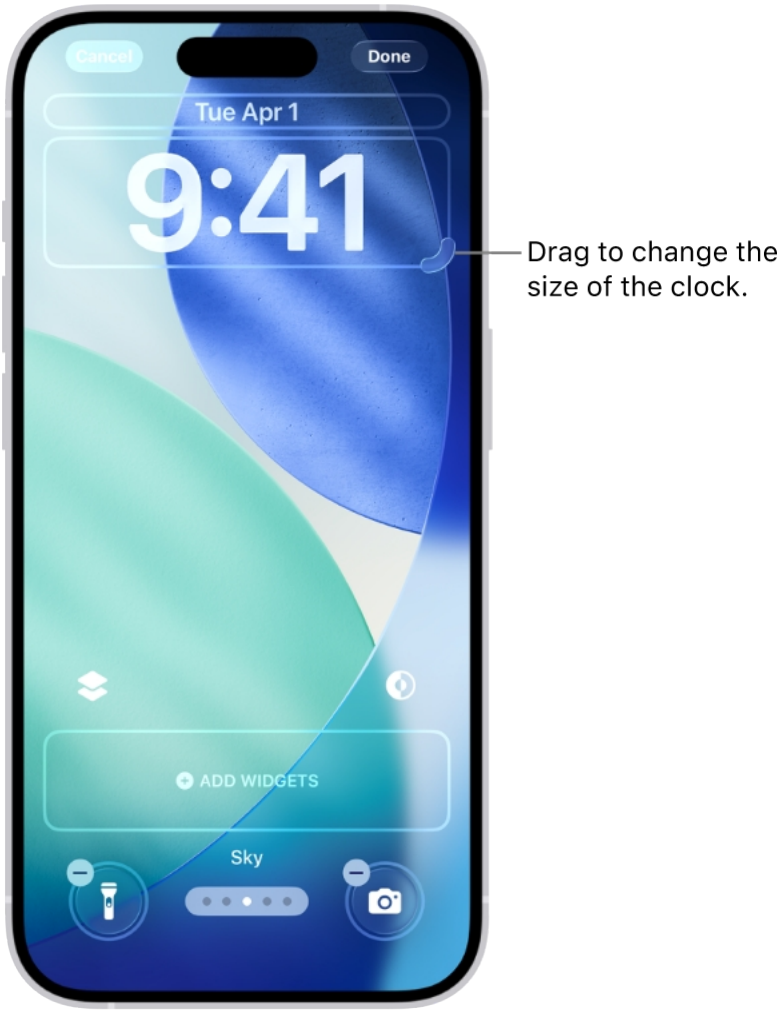
You can create more than one Lock Screen, switch between Lock Screens, and even link a Lock Screen to a Focus. So, for example, you could set a specific Lock Screen for when you're working.

Edit your Lock Screen or create a new one

1. Press the side button on your iPhone.

2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen, then tap ⊕ to create a new Lock Screen. To make changes to an existing Lock Screen, swipe to the screen you want to change, then tap Customize.

3. If you're creating a new Lock Screen, tap one of the wallpaper options. On iPhone 12 and later, you can try a spatial scene for a new 3D effect and try options where the time dynamically adapts to your photo wallpaper and notifications.



4. Here are some ways to customize your Lock Screen (options depend on the wallpaper you choose):

   - *Change the look of the clock:* Drag the bottom right corner to increase the height, then tap the time to change the font, switch to a more transparent look, and more.

   - *Add a 3D effect:* If you've added a photo that supports spatial, tap the Spatial Capture button (iPhone 12 and later).

   - *Add or change the widgets:* Tap your existing widgets or tap Add Widgets.

   - *Swap the controls (like the flashlight):* Tap ⊖ on one of the controls, then tap ⊕.

- *Reposition your photo:* Pinch open to zoom in, drag the image with two fingers to move it, then pinch closed to zoom out.
- *Create a multilayered effect:* Tap the Depth Effect button. Or if you have a photo that supports layering, tap ⋯, then choose Depth Effect.
- *Change the style:* Swipe left or right to try different color filters.
- *Create a motion effect with a Live Photo:* If you select a Live Photo that can be translated into slow motion, tap ◎ to play the Live Photo when the device wakes up.
- *Set the shuffle frequency:* If you chose Photo Shuffle, tap the photo thumbnail to change the photo selection or change the shuffle frequency by tapping ⋯.
- *Switch between a light and dark appearance* If the background you chose has a light mode and dark mode option, tap ◐.

5. Tap Add or Done, then choose to Set as Wallpaper Pair or Customize Home Screen.

Link a Focus to your Lock Screen

Focus helps you concentrate on a task by minimizing distractions. After you set up a Focus, you can link it to your Lock Screen — so your Focus settings apply whenever you use that particular Lock Screen and that Lock Screen appears whenever that Focus is on.

1. Press the side button on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Focus near the bottom of the wallpaper to see the Focus options—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, and Work.
4. Select a Focus, then tap ×.

Switch between Lock Screens

You can create multiple custom Lock Screens and switch between them throughout the day.

1. Press the side button on your iPhone.

2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.
3. Swipe to the Lock Screen you want to use, then tap it.

Note: If a Lock Screen links to a specific Focus, switching from that Lock Screen to another also switches your Focus.

Delete a Lock Screen

You can delete Lock Screens you no longer need.

1. Press the side button on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.
3. Swipe to go to the Lock Screen you want to delete, swipe up on the screen, tap , then tap Delete This Wallpaper.

See also

Keep the iPhone display on longer

Change the wallpaper on iPhone

Previous
Use and customize the Action button

Next
Add an app

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use and customize the Action button on iPhone

On supported models, iPhone has an Action button in place of the Ring/Silent switch. You can choose which function you want the Action button to perform when you press it. Because the button is so accessible, it's useful for actions you perform often. (The location of the Action button is shown below.) It's easy to change the Action button to perform a different function.



Use the Action button

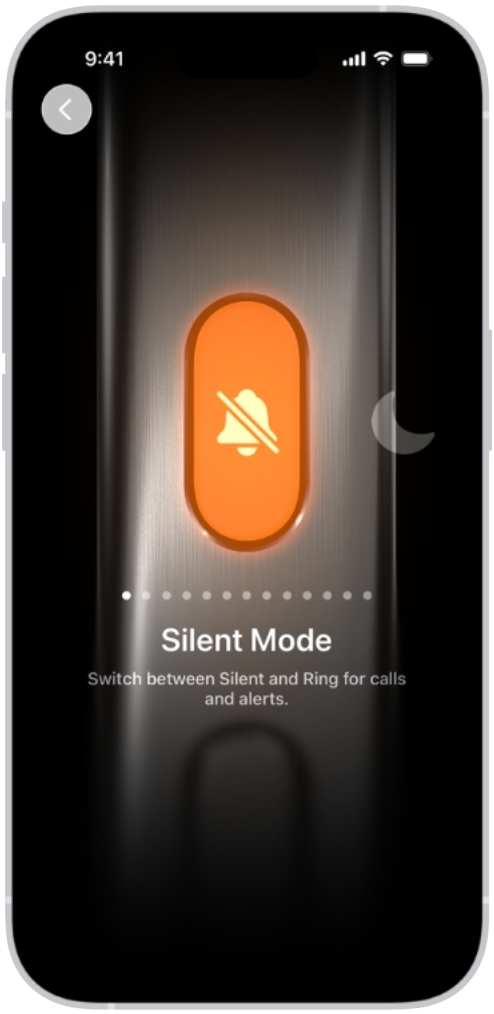
To perform the action assigned to the Action button, press and hold the Action button.

For many functions, the Action button can be used to turn a setting on or off. For example, if the selected action is Silent Mode (the default), you can press and hold the Action button to put iPhone in Silent mode 🔕. If you press and hold the Action button again, it turns off Silent mode.

Customize the Action button

1. Go to the Settings app ⚙️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Action Button.

   An image of the side of the iPhone appears with icons representing actions you can assign to the Action button.



3. To choose an action (like Silent Mode), swipe to the action you want to use—its name appears below the dots.
4. If there are additional options for the selected action, ⇕ appears below the action; tap it to see the list of options.

   For the Controls, Shortcut, and Accessibility actions, you need to tap the button below the action and select a specific option—otherwise the Action button does nothing.

Icon	Action
	*Silent Mode:* Switch between Silent and Ring for calls and alerts.
	*Focus:* Turn on a Focus to silence notifications and filter out distractions.
	*Camera:* Open the Camera app to capture a moment.
	*Visual Intelligence:* Use visual intelligence to learn more about the places and objects around you (Requires Apple Intelligence*).
	*Flashlight:* Turn on extra light when you need it.
	*Voice Memo:* Record personal notes, musical ideas, and more.
	*Recognize Music:* Find out what song is playing nearby or on your iPhone with Shazam.
	*Translate:* Translate phrases or have a conversation with someone in another language.
	*Magnifier:* Turn your iPhone into a magnifying glass to zoom in on and detect objects near you.
	*Controls:* Quickly access your favorite control.

	*Shortcut:* Open an app or run your favorite shortcut.
	*Accessibility:* Quickly use an accessibility feature.
No Action	Do nothing.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Silence iPhone

Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone

Previous
Change sounds and vibrations

Next
Create a custom Lock Screen

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Add an app on iPhone

To add an app to your iPhone, you can download it from the App Store. When you download an app, you can choose to add it to both your Home Screen and App Library, or to App Library only.

Choose where apps get downloaded

1. Go to the Settings app  .
2. Tap Home Screen & App Library.
3. Choose Add to Home Screen or App Library only.

Move an app from App Library to the Home Screen

If you download an app to App Library, you can easily move it to the Home Screen.

1. Swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to get to App Library.
2. Touch and hold the background until the apps begin to jiggle.
3. Touch and hold the app you want to move, then drag it to the left.

See also

Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

Organize your apps in folders on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone



What are widgets?

Widgets give you an easy way to view current information from an app at a glance—today's headlines, weather, reminders, battery levels, and more. You can view widgets in Today View and add them to your Home Screen or Lock Screen to keep this information at your fingertips.

You can interact with widgets on the Home Screen or Lock Screen without opening the app—you can take action on the widgets for Music, Podcasts, Safari, Home, Contacts, and more. For example, tap ▶ on the Music or Podcasts widget to play a selection.

Tip: A Smart Stack (a widget with dots next to it) is a combined set of widgets that uses information such as the time, your location, and activity to automatically display the most relevant widget at the appropriate time in your day. You can add a Smart Stack from the widget gallery to the Home Screen, then swipe up and down through it to see the widgets it contains.

Add a widget to your Home Screen

1. Go to the Home Screen, then find the Home Screen page where you want to add the widget.
2. Touch and hold the background until the apps begin to jiggle, tap Edit at the top of the screen, then tap Add Widget.
3. Scroll or search to find the widget you want, tap it, then swipe through the size and style options.
4. When you see the size you want, tap Add Widget.
5. While the apps are still jiggling, move the widget where you want it, then tap Done.

To learn how to add a widget to your Lock Screen, see Edit your Lock Screen or create a new one.

Turn an app icon into a widget

You can quickly create a widget from an app icon.

1. Touch and hold the app icon on your Home screen.
2. Tap one of the icons in the pop-up menu to choose the widget size.



To change the widget back to an app icon, touch and hold it, then tap the app icon button (the leftmost small icon at the top of the pop-up menu.)

Interact with widgets

You can perform tasks by tapping widgets on your Home Screen, Lock Screen, or StandBy. Tap an item in the Reminders widget to check it off, tap the Play button in the Podcasts widget to play an episode, or tap the Home widget to turn on your living room lights—all without opening an app.

Edit a widget on your Home Screen

You can adjust most widgets right from your Home Screen so they display the information you want to see. For example, for a Mail widget, you can tap the mailbox shown in the widget, then choose a different mailbox so the messages in that mailbox are displayed in the widget.

1. Touch and hold the widget.

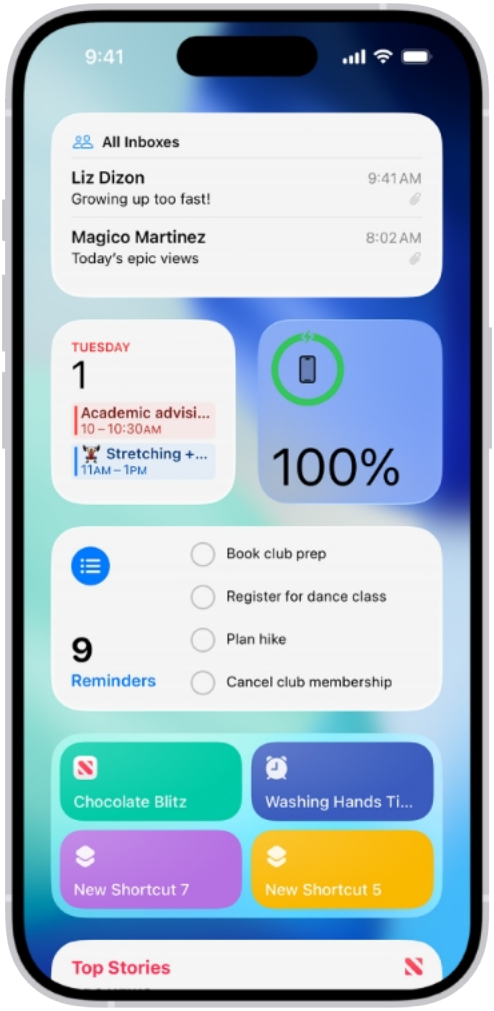
2. Tap Edit Widget (or Edit Stack, if it's a Smart Stack), then choose options.

   For a Smart Stack, you can reorder widgets by dragging them within the stack, drag a widget from the Smart Stack to the Home Screen, or remove a widget by tapping ⊖ in its upper-left corner.

3. Tap Done.

View widgets in Today View

To view widgets in Today View, swipe right from the left edge of the Home Screen, then scroll up and down.



View widgets in Today View when iPhone is locked

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on other iPhone models).

3. Make sure Today View and Search is turned on (below Allow Access When Locked).

See also

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

Previous
Add an app

Next
Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

You can move apps and widgets anywhere on the Home Screen to create the ideal layout—frame your wallpaper photo, align apps and widgets along the side or bottom, or drag them to other Home Screen pages. If you have multiple Home Screen pages, each one can have a unique layout. You can also temporarily hide Home Screen pages, change where new apps get downloaded, and more.

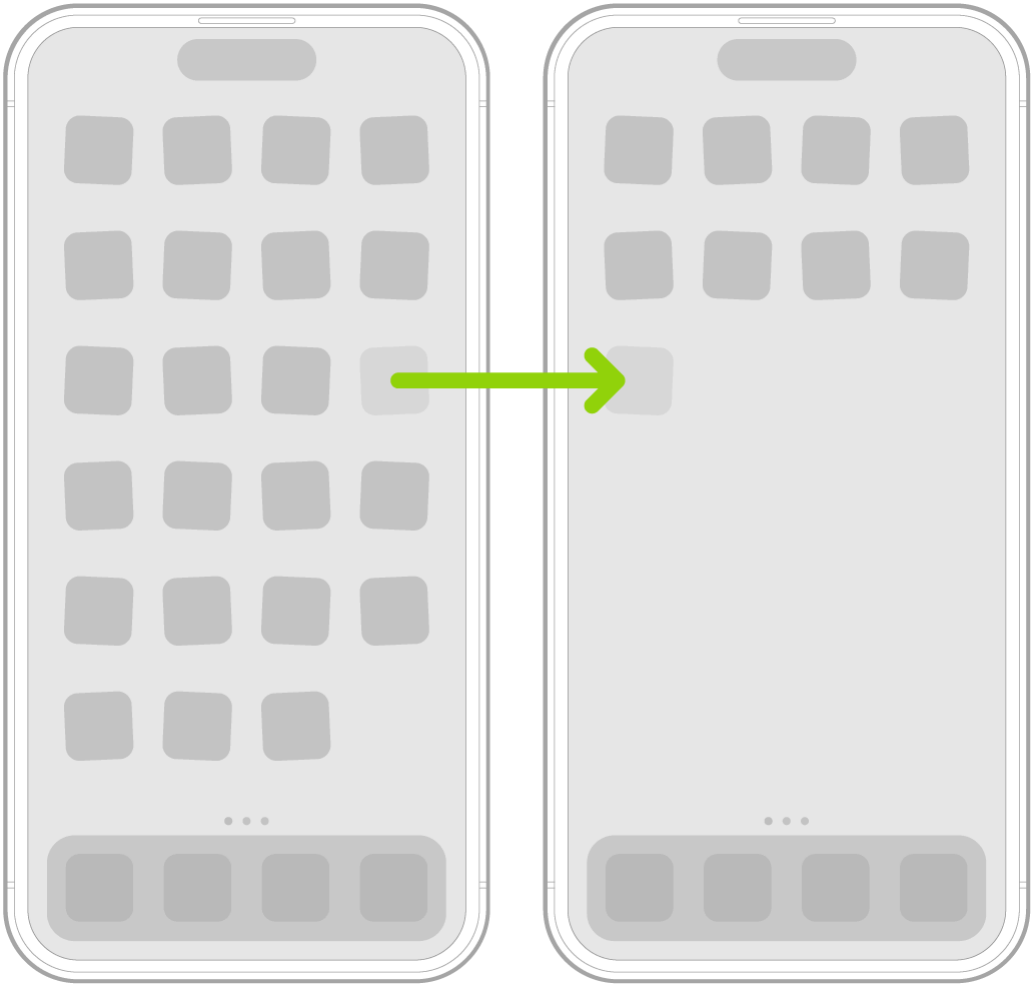
Tip: You can put all your apps and widgets related to a particular Focus (your Work Focus, for example) onto one Home Screen page, and make that page accessible during that Focus.

Move apps and widgets on your Home Screen

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the items begin to jiggle.
3. Drag the app or widget to one of the following locations:

   - Another location on the same page—including the top, bottom, or side of the screen
   - Another Home Screen page

     Drag the app or widget to the right edge of the screen. You might need to wait a moment for the new page to appear. The dots above the Dock show how many pages you have and which one you're viewing.



4. When you're finished, press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button) or tap the Home Screen background (on other iPhone models).

Reset the Home Screen and apps to their original layout

1. Go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.
2. Tap Reset, tap Reset Home Screen Layout, then tap Reset Home Screen.

   Any folders you created are removed, and apps you downloaded are arranged alphabetically after apps that came with your iPhone.

See also

Find and use your apps in App Library on iPhone

Organize your apps in folders on iPhone

Remove or delete apps from iPhone

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Lock or hide an app on iPhone

If you want to show someone something on your iPhone but want peace of mind that they can't get into certain apps, you can lock or hide the apps. Locking an app requires Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to open it. Information inside a locked app won't appear in other locations—for example, in CarPlay, notification previews, search, Siri suggestions, or your call history.

When you lock or hide an app on your device, it's only locked or hidden on that device. The locked or hidden status of an app doesn't sync with iCloud.

Note: Children under 13 in a Family Sharing group can't lock or hide apps. Anyone aged 13 to 17 in a Family Sharing group can lock or hide an app, but a parent or guardian in the family group can see that the app was downloaded and how much time it's used, and restrict access to it using Screen Time. (These ages vary by country or region.)

Lock an app

Locking an app requires Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to open the app.

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Locate the app you want to lock.
3. Touch and hold the app icon until the quick actions menu opens.
4. Tap Options, then tap Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode).

Note: Some of the apps that come with iPhone can't be locked—including Calculator, Camera, Clock, Contacts, Find My, Maps, Shortcuts, and Settings.

Open an app that's locked

You can open and use an app that you locked.

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Locate the app you want to open.
3. Tap the app, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

Unlock an app

You can unlock an app so you no longer need to use Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode to open it.

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Locate the app you want to unlock.
3. Touch and hold the app icon until the menu opens.
4. Tap Don't Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode), then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

Hide an app

Hiding an app prevents others from seeing or opening it (unless they have a way to authenticate your iPhone using Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode).

When you hide an app, its name is still visible in some places, such as Screen Time, Battery Usage By App (in Settings), and your App Store purchase history.

Note: Apps that come installed can't be hidden—only apps you download separately from the App Store can be hidden. Apps that are set by the user as default web browser or app marketplace (available only in the EU) can't be hidden either.

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Locate the app you want to hide.
3. Touch and hold the app icon until the menu opens.

4. Tap Options, then tap Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode).
5. Tap Hide and Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode), authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode), then tap Hide App.

   The app disappears from your Home Screen and moves to the Hidden folder at the bottom of App Library.

Tip: To view a list of your hidden apps, go to Settings > Apps > Hidden Apps.

Open a hidden app

You can open and use an app that you've hidden.

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to go to App Library.
3. Tap the Hidden folder at the bottom of App Library, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

   The app appears in the Hidden folder.
4. Tap the app, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

Unhide an app

You can stop hiding an app so that you can see it.

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to go to App Library.
3. Tap the Hidden folder at the bottom of App Library, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).
4. To move the app out of the Hidden folder, touch and hold the app, tap Don't Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode), then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

   The app appears near the top of App Library.

See also

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Customize apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen



You can customize app icons and widgets on the Home Screen by changing their color, adding a tint, making them larger or smaller, and more.

---

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the icons begin to jiggle.
3. Tap Edit at the top of the screen, then choose Customize.

4. Do any of the following:

   - *Make the icons bigger:* Tap  . (In large size, the names of the apps disappear.)
   - *Choose a dark appearance for icons and widgets:* Tap Dark. To show icons and widgets with a dark appearance at night and a light appearance during the day, tap Auto.
   - *Give the icons a clear look:* Tap Clear to make the icons translucent, then choose Light, Dark, or Auto.
   - *Add a color tint to icons and widgets:* Tap Tinted. Use the sliders to choose the color and saturation (or use the eyedropper to select a color in your wallpaper.) Then choose Light, Dark, or Auto.

See also

Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone

Previous
Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen

Next
Lock or hide or an app

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Organize your apps in folders on iPhone

You can organize your apps into folders to make them easier to find on your Home Screen pages.

Create a folder

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.
3. To create a folder, drag an app onto another app, then drag other apps into the folder.

   A folder can contain multiple pages of apps.
4. To rename the folder, touch and hold it, tap Rename, then enter a new name.

   If the apps begin to jiggle, tap the Home Screen background and try again.
5. When you're finished, tap Done.

Note: Organizing your apps on the Home Screen doesn't affect the organization of apps in App Library.

Delete a folder from your Home Screen

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.
3. Tap the folder to open it, then drag all the apps out of it onto the Home Screen.

   When the folder is empty, it's deleted automatically.

Move an app from a folder to the Home Screen

You can move an app from a folder to the Home Screen to make it easier to locate and open.

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Locate the folder that contains the app, then tap the folder to open it.
3. Touch and hold the app until the apps begin to jiggle.
4. Drag the app from the folder to the Home Screen.

See also

Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

Find your apps in App Library

Remove or delete apps from iPhone

Previous
Lock or hide or an app

Next
Remove or delete apps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Remove or delete apps from iPhone

You can remove or delete some of the built-in apps that come with your iPhone.

Note: When you remove a built-in app from your iPhone, you also remove any related user data and configuration files. Removing built-in apps from your iPhone can also affect other system functionality.

If you want to limit access to an app without deleting it, see Lock or hide an app.

To block an app to prevent its use, you can use Screen Time settings. See Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases.

If you change your mind after deleting apps, you can download them again later (if they're still available in the App Store).

Delete apps

Do any of the following:

- *Remove an app from the Home Screen:* Touch and hold the app on the Home Screen, tap Remove App, then tap Remove from Home Screen to keep it in App Library, or tap Delete App to delete it from iPhone.
- *Delete an app from App Library and the Home Screen:* Touch and hold the app in App Library, tap Delete App, then tap Delete. (See Find your apps in App Library.)

If you change your mind, you can redownload apps you remove.

In addition to removing third-party apps, you can remove the following built-in Apple apps that came with your iPhone:

- Books
- Calculator

- Calendar
- Clock
- Compass
- Contacts (Contact information remains available through Phone, Messages, Mail, FaceTime, and other apps. To remove a contact, you must restore Contacts if it's been deleted.)
- FaceTime (If you remove the FaceTime app from your iPhone, you can still make or receive FaceTime calls in Contacts and the Phone app, but you can't use SharePlay on your iPhone unless you redownload the app. See Make FaceTime calls.)
- Files
- Find My (Removing this app doesn't turn off location sharing or Find My for your device or items—it just removes the ability to view locations in the Find My app on that device.)
- Fitness
- Freeform
- Games
- Health
- Home
- Image Playground
- iTunes Store
- Journal
- Magnifier
- Mail
- Maps
- Measure
- Music
- News
- Notes
- Passwords
- Podcasts
- Preview

- Reminders
- Shortcuts
- Stocks
- Tips
- Translate
- TV
- Voice Memos
- Wallet (Removing this app doesn't delete cards and passes you have stored in iCloud.)
- Watch
- Weather

Note: In the European Union, there may be other built-in apps you can delete. For more information, see Delete certain built-in apps from your iPhone or iPad in the European Union.

See also

Change the default apps on iPhone

Previous
Organize your apps in folders

Next
Change the wallpaper

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

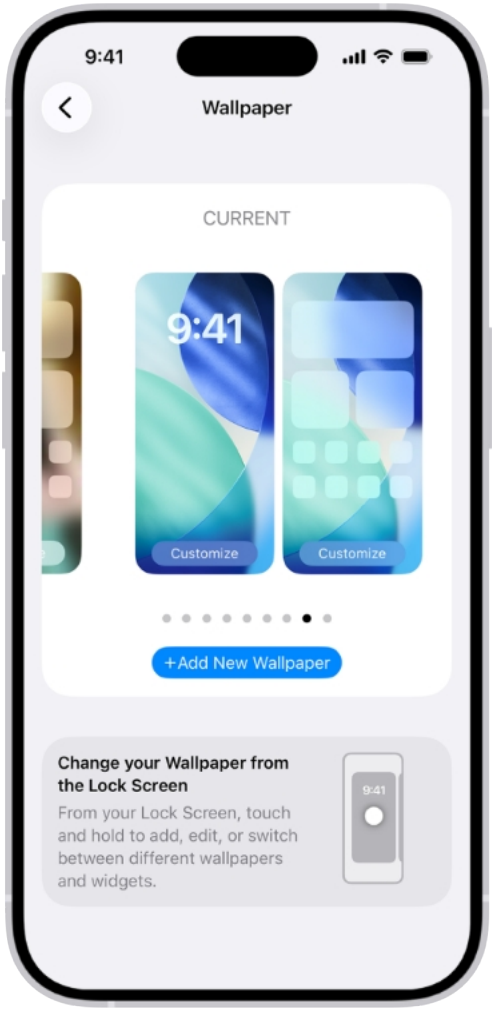
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change the wallpaper on iPhone

On iPhone, you can change the wallpaper on the Lock Screen and the Home Screen. You can set your wallpaper in Settings or through the wallpaper gallery from your Lock Screen. See Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallpaper, then tap Add New Wallpaper.
3. Tap one of the wallpaper options, then make additional changes to the Lock Screen.
4. Tap Add, then do one of the following:

- *Choose to use the wallpaper on both the Lock Screen and Home Screen:* Tap Set as Wallpaper Pair.

- *Make changes to the Home Screen:* Tap Customize Home Screen. Tap a color to change the wallpaper color, tap  to use a custom photo, or select Blur to blur the wallpaper so the apps stand out.

See also

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

Previous
Remove or delete apps

Next
Use and customize Control Center

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Control Center on iPhone gives you instant access to useful controls—including Airplane Mode, Do Not Disturb, flashlight, volume, screen brightness, and more.

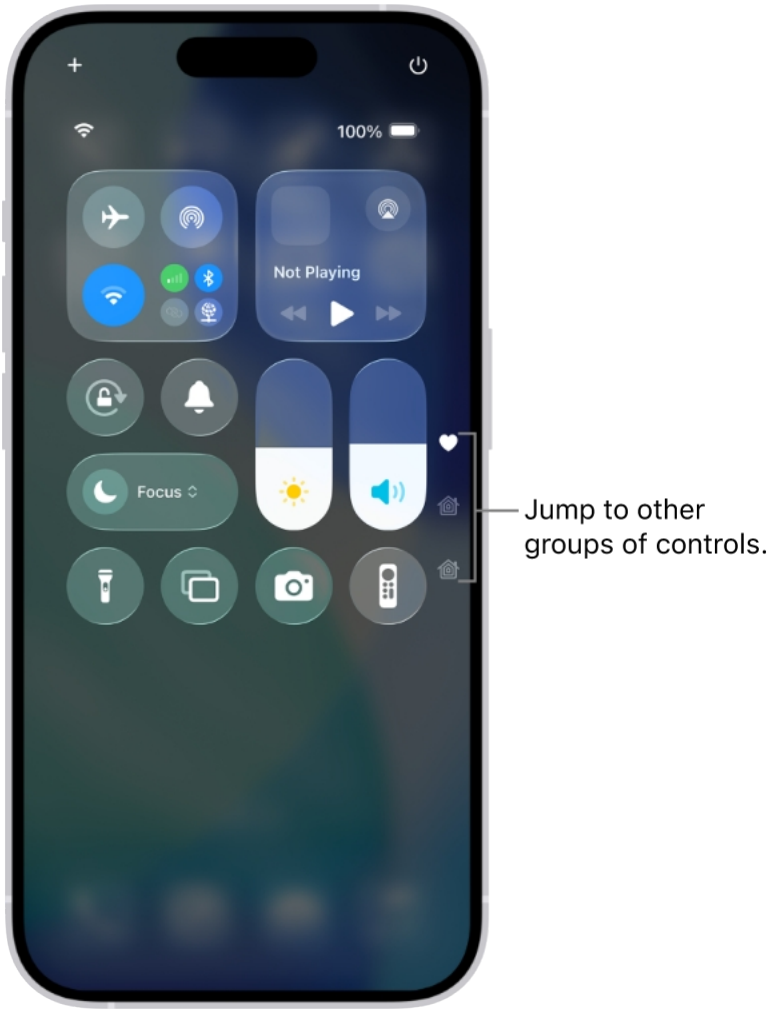
Open Control Center



To open Control Center, do one of the following:

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen. If you continue swiping down, you see more groups of controls.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Swipe up from the bottom.

You can jump to specific groups of controls by swiping through the icons on the right edge of the screen. Swipe up through the icons to go back to the first group.



To close Control Center, swipe up from the bottom center of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID), or press the Home button.

Access more controls in Control Center

Many controls offer additional options. To see available options, touch and hold a control. For example, you can do the following in Control Center:

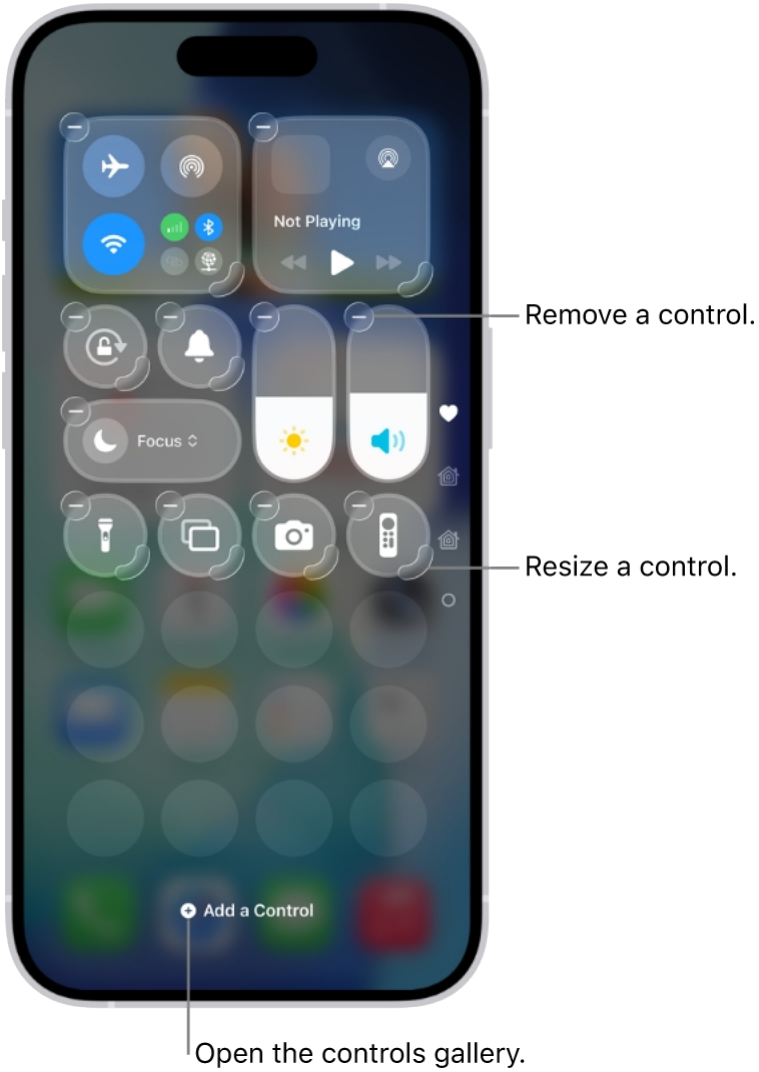
- Touch and hold the top left group of controls, then tap to open the AirDrop options.
- Touch and hold to take a selfie, record a video, or take a photo.
- Touch and hold at the top right of the screen (while Control Center is open) until you feel a vibration. Then drag the slider to power off the iPhone.



Customize controls

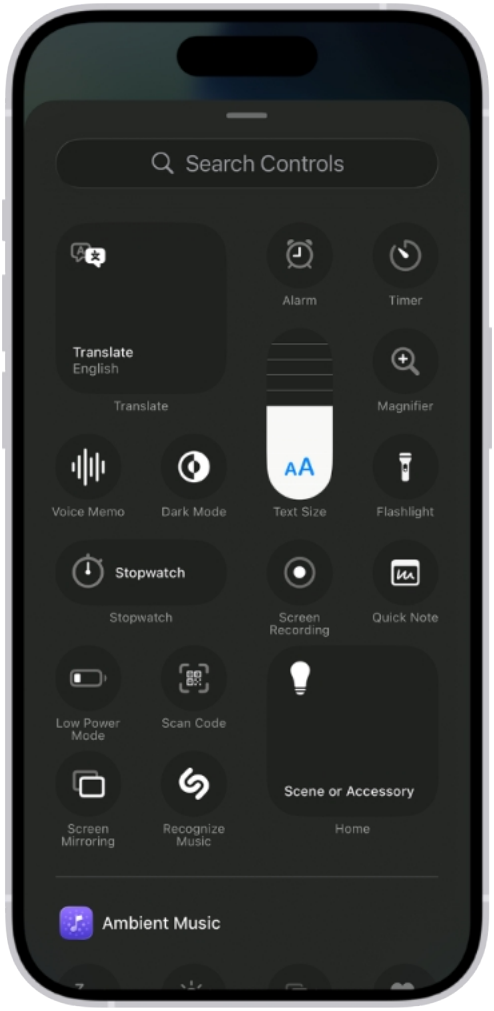
You can rearrange, add, and remove controls in Control Center.

1. Open Control Center.
2. Tap + at the top left of Control Center to begin editing the controls.



3. Do any of the following:

- *Rearrange controls:* Drag a control to a new position.
- *Remove a control or a set of controls:* Tap ⊖ at the upper left of the control.
- *Resize a control:* Drag the handle at the lower right of the control.
- *Create a new section of controls:* Tap the bottommost icon (the little circle) along the right edge of the screen, then tap Add a Control, and choose which controls to add to your custom group. Or you can drag a control off the bottom of the page to create a new section.
- *Add more controls:* Tap Add a Control at the bottom of the screen to open the controls gallery, then tap a control to add it to Control Center.



4. When you finish customizing, close Control Center by swiping up from the bottom center of the screen.

Temporarily disconnect from a Wi-Fi network

In Control Center, tap ; to reconnect, tap it again.

To see the name of the connected Wi-Fi network, touch and hold .

Because Wi-Fi isn't turned off when you disconnect from a network, AirPlay and AirDrop still work, and iPhone joins known networks when you change locations or restart iPhone. To turn off Wi-Fi, go to Settings > Wi-Fi. (To turn on Wi-Fi again in Control Center, tap .) For information about turning Wi-Fi on or off in Control Center while in Airplane Mode, see Choose iPhone settings for travel.

Temporarily disconnect from Bluetooth devices

In Control Center, tap ; to allow connections, tap the button again.

Because Bluetooth® isn't turned off when you disconnect from devices, location accuracy and other services are still enabled. To turn off Bluetooth, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then turn off Bluetooth. To turn on Bluetooth again in Control Center, tap . For information about turning Bluetooth on or off in Control Center while in Airplane Mode, see Choose iPhone settings for travel.

Turn off access to Control Center in apps

Go to the Settings app on your iPhone > Control Center, then turn off Access Within Apps.

See also

Choose iPhone settings for travel

Previous
Change the wallpaper

Next
Record audio and video

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone



On iPhone, you can make your screen dimmer or brighter (dimming the screen extends battery life). You can also adjust the screen brightness and color manually or automatically with Dark Mode, True Tone, and Night Shift.

Adjust the screen brightness manually

To make your iPhone screen dimmer or brighter, do one of the following:

- Open Control Center, then drag ☀ up or down.

- Go to Settings > Display & Brightness, then drag the slider.

Adjust the screen brightness automatically

iPhone adjusts the screen brightness for current light conditions using the built-in ambient light sensor.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility.
2. Tap Display & Text Size, then turn on Auto-Brightness.

   Note: Turning off Auto-Brightness may increase power consumption.

Turn Dark Mode on or off

Dark Mode gives the entire iPhone experience a dark color scheme that's perfect for low-light environments. With Dark Mode on, you can use your iPhone while, for example, reading in bed, without disturbing the person next to you.

Do any of the following:

- Open Control Center, touch and hold , then tap to turn Dark Mode on or off.
- Go to Settings > Display & Brightness, then select Dark to turn on Dark Mode, or select Light to turn it off.

Schedule Dark Mode to turn on and off automatically

You can set Dark Mode to turn on automatically at night (or on a custom schedule).

1. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness.
2. Turn on Automatic, then tap Options.
3. Select either Sunset to Sunrise or Custom Schedule.

   If you choose Custom Schedule, tap the options to schedule the times you want Dark Mode to turn on and off.

   If you select Sunset to Sunrise, iPhone uses the data from your clock and geolocation to determine when it's nighttime for you.

Turn Night Shift on or off

You can turn on Night Shift manually, which is helpful when you're in a darkened room during the day.

Open Control Center, touch and hold ☀, then tap ◔.

Schedule Night Shift to turn on and off automatically

Schedule Night Shift to shift the colors in your display to the warmer end of the spectrum at night and make viewing the screen easier on your eyes.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Display & Brightness > Night Shift.
2. Turn on Scheduled.
3. To adjust the color balance for Night Shift, drag the slider below Color Temperature toward the warmer or cooler end of the spectrum.
4. Tap From, then select either Sunset to Sunrise or Custom Schedule.

   If you choose Custom Schedule, tap the options to schedule the times you want Night Shift to turn on and off.

   If you select Sunset to Sunrise, iPhone uses the data from your clock and geolocation to determine when it's nighttime for you.

   Note: The Sunset to Sunrise option isn't available if you turned off Location Services in Settings ⚙ > Privacy & Security, or if you turned off Setting Time Zone in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.

Turn True Tone on or off

True Tone automatically adapts the color and intensity of the display to match the light in your environment.

Do any of the following:

- Open Control Center, touch and hold ☀, then tap ▦ to turn True Tone on or off.
- Go to Settings ⚙ > Display & Brightness, then turn True Tone on or off.

Table of Contents

Keep the iPhone display on longer

The iPhone display stays on while you're looking at it, but it dims and eventually locks (for your security) when you look away for a while. If you need the display to stay on longer (for example, when you're navigating with Maps), you can change how long it takes iPhone to automatically dim and lock.

Change when iPhone automatically locks

You can set how long it takes iPhone to automatically lock.

Go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then choose a length of time.

Note: Delaying or preventing Auto-Lock may increase power consumption.

Keep your Lock Screen visible with Always-On display

On supported models, the Always-On display setting allows a dimmed version of your Lock Screen to stay visible, even when your iPhone is locked. By glancing at the dimmed screen, you can check essential information, like notifications, the date and time, and information in your widgets.

The display automatically turns off when iPhone is either face down or obstructed from view, not near a paired Apple Watch, when a CarPlay session begins, while Continuity Camera is in use, while Low Power Mode is on, while Sleep Focus is on, or at your usual bedtime.

The Always-On display setting is on by default. To turn it off, go to Settings > Display & Brightness, then turn off Always On Display.

Tip: When Always-On display is turned on, you can choose whether to show your wallpaper or notifications on your Lock Screen. In Settings > Display & Brightness > Always On Display, turn Show Wallpaper or Show Notifications on or off.

See also

Use StandBy to view information at a distance while iPhone is charging

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

Set a passcode on iPhone

Previous
Adjust the screen brightness and color balance

Next
Use StandBy

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Record audio and video on iPhone

You can control the settings for when you capture audio and video in apps and websites—for example, during a videoconference—to maximize the quality of your recording.

Select an audio input source

You can choose a input source for recording audio in a specific app or for your device—for example, your built-in iPhone microphone or a connected Bluetooth microphone.

1. Open the app or go to the website you want to record from.
2. Open Control Center.
3. Tap the button for your app at the top of Control Center.
4. Tap Input, then select an input device.



Filter out background sounds in your recording

In certain apps, you can filter out background sounds in your recording and record only your voice—clear and separate from other sounds.

1. Open the app or go to the website you want to record from.
2. Open Control Center.
3. Tap the button for your app or browser at the top.
4. Tap Voice Isolation.

To include the background sounds in your recording, tap Wide Spectrum, if it's available. (Wide Spectrum isn't available for all apps.)

Use AirPods to record audio and capture video from a distance

With supported models of AirPods and AirPods Pro, you can use your AirPods to remotely record audio and video during a videoconference. To start and stop recording, press the AirPods stem. See Use AirPods with camera apps in the AirPods User Guide.

Record audio and video with local capture

During a videoconference on your iPhone, you can use local capture to record high-quality audio and video on your side of the call, with echo-cancellation of other voices.

By default, local capture records both audio and video. If your camera is in use by another app, only audio is recorded.

1. Open the videoconferencing app you want to record from.
2. Open Control Center.
3. Touch and hold .

   Note: If you don't see , add it to Control Center first. (See Use and customize Control Center on iPhone.)
4. Tap Start Recording.

   To exclude video from your recording, select Audio Only in Control Center.



If your iPhone model has a Dynamic Island, the recording icon appears there during local capture.

Note: While you're recording with local capture, Voice Isolation won't filter out background sounds, even if you select it.

After the call, your recording is automatically saved in the Downloads folder in your Files app. Tap to share it with other call participants. It can be combined with other participants' recordings in a post-production app such as Logic Pro or Final Cut Pro.

Previous
Use and customize Control Center

Next
Adjust the screen brightness and color balance

Helpful? Yes No

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use StandBy to view information at a distance while iPhone is charging

You can use StandBy to turn your iPhone into a bedside clock, a photo frame, a display for viewing widgets or Live Activities in full screen, and more.

Start StandBy

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Standby and make sure StandBy is turned on.
3. Connect iPhone to a charger and set it down on its side, keeping it stationary.
4. Press the side button.
5. Swipe left or right to switch between widgets, photos, and clocks. Swipe up or down to scroll between options for each of these views.

   When Night Mode is turned on for StandBy, the screen adapts to low ambient light at night and displays items with a red tint so that it's not intrusive while you're sleeping.



With the Always-On display (on supported models), StandBy stays on to show useful information. For all other iPhone models, it's easy to activate StandBy any time by either tapping the screen, gently nudging the table your iPhone is on, or using Siri.

Siri: Activate Siri, then tell Siri to turn StandBy on or off.

In each location where you charge iPhone with MagSafe, StandBy remembers your preferred view, whether that's a clock, photos, or widgets. For example, you can have it set up for family photos in the kitchen or an alarm clock at your bedside.

Set display preferences for when StandBy is on

You can choose how long to have your iPhone display stay on when StandBy is on.

1. Go to Settings > StandBy > Display.
2. Choose one of the following:

   - *Automatically:* The display turns off when iPhone isn't in use and the room is dark.
   - *After 20 Seconds:* The display turns off after 20 seconds.
   - *Never:* The display stays on as long as StandBy is on.

See also

Keep your Lock Screen visible with Always-On display

Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone

Table of Contents

Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone

You can increase the size of the text on your iPhone display, make the text bold, and magnify the screen with Display Zoom.

Increase the text size on iPhone

1. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness.
2. Tap Text Size.
3. Drag the slider left or right to change the text size.

Make the text bold on iPhone

1. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness.
2. Turn on Bold Text.

Magnify the entire iPhone screen

You can magnify the iPhone screen with Display Zoom.

1. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness.
2. Tap Display Zoom, then tap Larger Text.
3. Tap Done, then tap Use Zoomed.

Table of Contents

Change the name of your iPhone

You can change the name of your iPhone, which is used by iCloud, AirDrop, Bluetooth®, your Personal Hotspot, and your computer.

1. Go to Settings > General > About > Name.
2. Tap , then enter a new name.

See also

Use AirDrop to send items to nearby Apple devices

Previous
Customize the text size and zoom setting

Next
Change the date and time

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Change the date and time on iPhone

The time zone on your iPhone is set automatically, but if you don't have Location Services turned on or you don't have service, you can change it manually.

1. Go to Settings > General > Date & Time.
2. Turn off Set Automatically, then tap Time Zone.
3. Enter a location in the search field, then tap the result to change the time zone.

To change the default date and time, turn off Set Automatically, then change the date and time displayed.

Tip: To change the font color and style of the clock on the Lock Screen, see Edit your Lock Screen or create a new one.

See also

Change the language and region on iPhone

Previous
Change the name of your iPhone

Next
Change the language and region

Table of Contents

Change your default search engine on iPhone

You can select an alternative search engine as the default to search for content on the web.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then tap Search Engine.
3. Tap the search engine you want to set as the default, then tap .

See Choose a search engine on iPhone.

Previous
Change the default apps

Next
Rotate your iPhone screen

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

See also

Add or change keyboards on iPhone

Previous
Change the date and time

Next
Change the default apps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

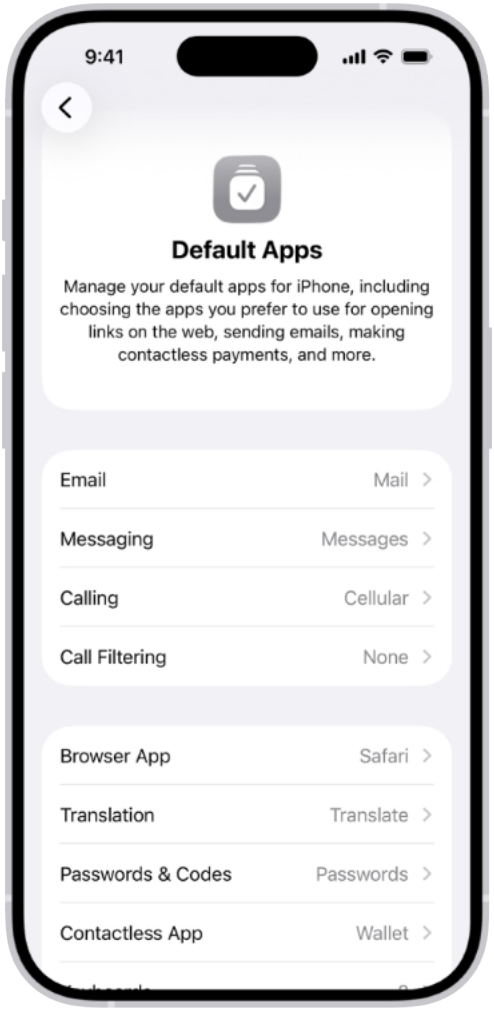
Table of Contents

Change the default apps on iPhone

You can select alternative, third-party apps—for email, messaging, calling, call filtering, web browsing, passwords, or keyboards—as defaults to launch instead of the built-in Apple apps. Make sure the app you want to switch to supports this feature. If you aren't sure, contact the app developer.

Change your default apps

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.> Apps > Default Apps.
2. Tap any of the following:
   - *Email:* To change the default app for sending and receiving email.
   - *Messaging:* To change the default app for sending and receiving messages.
   - *Calling:* To change the default app for making and receiving calls.
   - *Call Filtering:* To turn on or off call blocking and identification options. (See Filter unknown and spam calls).
   - *Browser App:* To change the default app to open links on the web.
   - *Translation:* To change the default app used to translate text.
   - *Passwords & Codes:* This section allows you to turn on or off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys for apps and websites, and password, passkey, and code-generation and verification apps.
   - *Keyboards:* To add or delete keyboards and third-party keyboard apps.
3. Select the app you want to use as the default.



See also

Apple Support Article: Change your default apps for features on iPhone and iPad

Previous
Change the language and region

Next
Change your default search engine

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Change the language and region on iPhone

You choose the language and region of your iPhone during setup. If you travel or move, you can change the language or region.

---

1. Go to Settings > General > Language & Region.
2. Set the following:
   - The language for iPhone
   - Your preferred form of address. (Choose feminine, masculine, or neutral. Turn on Share with All Apps so all apps personalize how they address you. Available for some primary languages—for example, Spanish.)
   - The region
   - The calendar format
   - The temperature unit (Celsius or Fahrenheit)
   - The measurement system (metric, US, or UK)
   - The first day of the week
   - Live Text (text you can select in images to copy or take action on)
3. To add another language and keyboard to your iPhone, tap Add Language, then select a language.

Table of Contents

Rotate your iPhone screen

Many apps give you a different view when you rotate iPhone.

Rotate the screen

1. To make sure the rotation lock is off, open Control Center, then tap if it's red.
2. Turn your iPhone sideways.

Lock or unlock the screen orientation

You can lock the screen orientation so that it doesn't change when you rotate iPhone.

Open Control Center, then tap .

When the screen orientation is locked, appears in the status bar (on supported models).

See also

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Previous
Change your default search engine

Next
View and respond to notifications

Table of Contents

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Notifications help you keep track of what's new—they let you know if you missed a call, if the date of an event moved, and more. You can customize your notification settings so you see only what's important to you.

Unless you have notifications silenced with a Focus, iPhone displays them as they arrive—they roll in from the bottom of the screen to minimize distraction. You can view them on the Lock Screen in an expanded list view, stacked view, or count view. Pinch the notifications on the Lock Screen to change the layout.

Note: While you're using an app, you might be asked how you want to receive notifications from it—immediately, not at all, or in a scheduled summary. You can change this setting later in Settings > Notifications.

Find your notifications in Notification Center

To see your notifications in Notification Center, do any of the following:

- *On the Lock Screen:* Swipe up from the middle of the screen.
- *On other screens:* Swipe down from the top center. Then you can scroll up to see older notifications, if there are any.

To close Notification Center, swipe up from the bottom with one finger or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

Respond to notifications

When you have multiple notifications in Notification Center or on the Lock Screen, they're grouped by app, which makes them easier to view and manage. Notifications from some apps may also be grouped by organizing features within the app, such as by topic or thread. Grouped notifications appear as stacks, with the most recent notification on top.

Do any of the following:

- *To expand a group of notifications to see them individually:* Tap the group. To close the group, tap Show Less.
- *To view a notification and perform quick actions if the app offers them (on supported models):* Touch and hold the notification.
- *To open a notification's app:* Tap the notification.

Schedule a notification summary

You can reduce distractions in your day by scheduling your notifications to be delivered as a summary—you choose which notifications to include in the summary and what time you want to receive it.

The notification summary is personalized to you and intelligently ordered by priority, based on your current activity, with the most relevant notifications at the top. The summary is especially useful because it allows you to engage with notifications on your own time. You can take this even further by using Focus to filter notifications while you focus on an activity.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Scheduled Summary, then turn on Scheduled Summary.
2. Set a time for your summary to appear. If you want to receive another summary, tap Add Summary.
3. Select the apps to include in your summary.
4. Tap A to Z below Apps in Summary, then make sure the apps you want to include in your summary are turned on.

   Note: If an app you want to include in your notification summary doesn't appear in the A to Z list, you may need to turn on Allow Notifications for the app. Go to Settings > Notifications, tap the app, then turn on Allow Notifications. See Change notification settings.

View, dismiss, clear, and mute notifications

When notifications appear on your iPhone, do any of the following:

- *Handle a notification you receive while using another app:* Tap to view it, then swipe up to dismiss it.
- *Clear notifications:* Swipe left on the notification or group of notifications, then tap Clear or Clear All.

- *Mute notifications for an app:* Swipe left on the notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap an option to mute the app's notifications for an hour or a day. This sends them directly to Notification Center and prevents them from appearing on the Lock Screen, playing a sound, lighting up the screen, or presenting a banner.

  To see and hear these notifications again, swipe left on the notification in Notification Center, tap Options, then tap Unmute.

- *Turn off notifications for an app or notification group:* Swipe left on a notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap Turn Off.

- *Change how an app displays notifications:* Swipe left on a notification, tap Options, then tap View Settings. See Change notification settings to learn about the settings you can change.

- *Clear all your notifications in Notification Center:* Go to Notification Center, tap ⊗, then tap Clear.

- *Silence all notifications:* Turn on Do Not Disturb. See Turn on or schedule a Focus.

When you haven't used an app for a while, you may see a suggestion that you turn off notifications for that app.

Show recent notifications on the Lock Screen

You can allow access to Notification Center on the Lock Screen.

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on other iPhone models).
2. Enter your passcode.
3. Scroll down and turn on Notification Center (below Allow Access When Locked).

Use Apple Intelligence to summarize notifications and prioritize time-sensitive ones

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use Apple Intelligence to summarize long or stacked notifications, making them easier to understand at a glance. You can also use Apple Intelligence to prioritize time-sensitive notifications, so you can catch up on what you may have missed. See Summarize notifications and reduce interruptions with Apple Intelligence.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

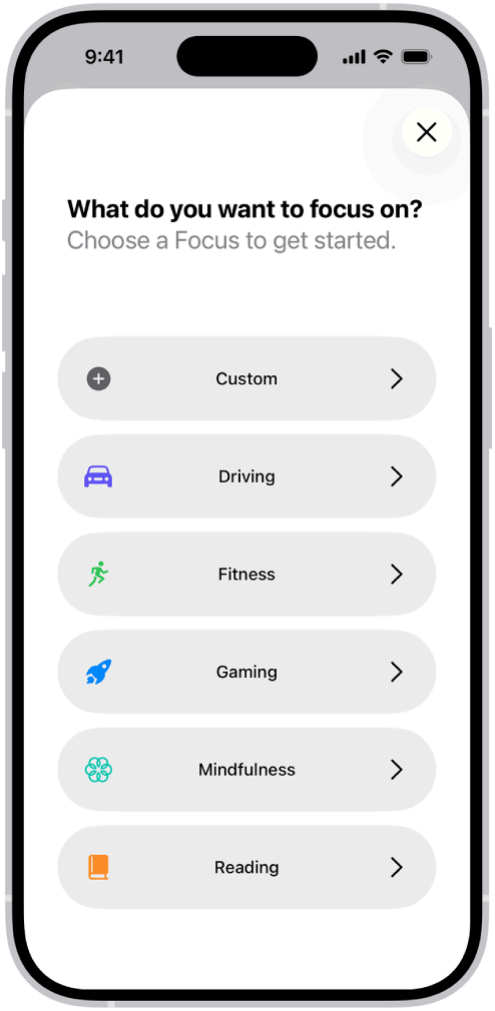
Change notification settings on iPhone

Previous
Rotate your iPhone screen

Next
Change notification settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies



1. Go to Settings > Focus.
2. Tap + at the top right, then tap Custom.
3. Enter a name for your Focus, then tap Return.
4. Choose a color and an icon to represent your Focus, then tap Next.
5. Tap Customize Focus, then set up the options for your custom Focus.

Keep your Focus settings up to date across all your Apple devices

You can use the same Focus settings on all your Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to Settings > Focus.
2. Turn on Share Across Devices.

   Note: When you turn on Share Across Devices and turn on Share Focus Status, your Focus can show that you have notifications silenced. For example, if you silence notifications when you Set up a Focus, people who text you will see that your

Table of Contents

Change notification settings on iPhone

Choose when and how notifications appear, which apps can send them, and what sounds they make. You can also set up location-based alerts, allow government alerts, and more. Many notification settings apply to all app notifications, while others can be customized for individual apps.

Change the appearance of notifications

1. Go to Settings > Notifications.
2. Choose how you want notifications displayed on the Lock Screen:
   - *View just the number of notifications:* Tap Count.
   - *View the notifications grouped into stacks by app:* Tap Stack.
   - *View the notifications in a list:* Tap List.

   When notifications arrive, you can change the layout by pinching the notifications on the Lock Screen.

To turn off notifications for an app, go to Settings > Notifications, tap the app, then turn off Allow Notifications.

Prevent notification previews from appearing on the Lock Screen

You can choose when to have notification previews from an app appear on your Lock Screen.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications, then tap an app below Notification Style.
2. Scroll down, tap Show Previews, then select one of the following:

- Always
- When Unlocked
- Never

Change the frequency of notifications

To minimize interruptions from notifications throughout the day, you can schedule a notification summary that includes notifications for several apps at once.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Scheduled Summary.
2. Turn on Scheduled Summary, then tap Continue.
3. Schedule times for the notification summary.
4. Select the apps to include in your notification summary, then tap Add Apps.
5. To choose when you want notification previews to appear, tap Show Previews, select an option, then tap < at the top of the screen.

   Previews can include things like text (from Messages and Mail) and invitation details (from Calendar). You can override this setting for individual apps.

When you use Focus, it delays the delivery of notifications on iPhone to prevent interruptions. You can schedule a time to receive a summary of the notifications you missed. See Schedule a notification summary.

Choose notification sounds for individual apps

You can choose the sound that plays when a notification arrives for an app.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications.
2. Tap an app below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.
3. Tap Sounds, select a sound, then tap < at the top of the screen.

You can choose immediate or scheduled delivery for the app's notifications and where you want them to appear (on the Lock Screen, in Notification Center, or as Banner at the top of the screen), and more.

Turn off notifications selectively for individual apps

1. Go to Settings > Notifications.
2. Tap an app, then turn off Allow Notifications.

Turn off location-based alerts

Some apps use your location to send you relevant alerts based on where you are. For example, the Weather app might send you alerts based on your location.

If you don't want to see these types of alerts, you can turn them off.

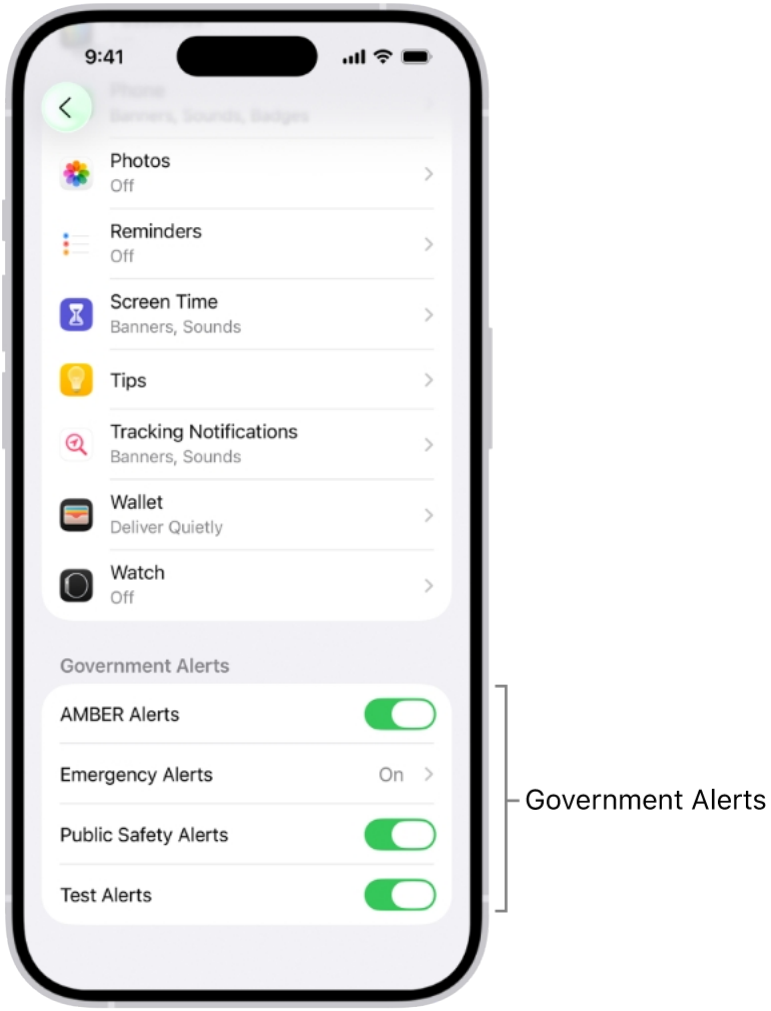
1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. Turn on Location Services.
3. Tap an app (if any appear in the list), then choose whether you want to share your location while using that app.

See the Apple Support article About privacy and Location Services.

Turn government alerts on or off

In some countries or regions, you can turn on alerts in the Government Alerts list. For example, on iPhone in the United States, you can receive National Alerts, and you can turn AMBER, Public Safety, and Emergency Alerts (which include both Severe and Extreme Imminent Threat Alerts) on or off (they're on by default). On iPhone in Japan, you can receive Emergency Earthquake Alerts from the Japan Meteorological Agency.

1. Go to Settings > Notifications.
2. Scroll down to the Government Alerts section, then turn on the alerts you want to receive.



3. Tap Emergency Alerts if you want to turn on Emergency Alerts and Local Awareness.

   Note: In some regions, Local Awareness may improve the timeliness, accuracy, and reliability of certain Emergency Alerts. For example, Earthquake Alerts received on iPhone in California, Oregon, and Washington (including bordering regions) may be more timely or delivered with increased accuracy when Local Awareness is turned on.



4. Turn on Always Play Sound to have Emergency Alerts play a sound even if iPhone is in Silent mode.

Government alerts vary by carrier and iPhone model, and may not work under all conditions. See the Apple Support article About emergency and government alerts.

See also

Allow or silence notifications for a Focus on iPhone

Previous
View and respond to notifications

Next
Set up a Focus

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Set up a Focus on iPhone

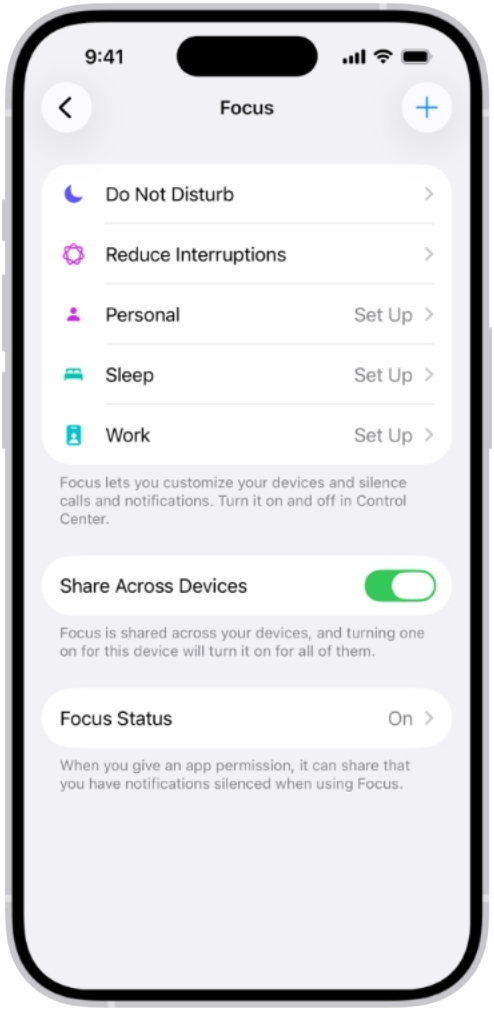
Focus is a feature that helps you concentrate on a task by minimizing distractions. When you want to concentrate on a specific activity, you can customize one of the provided Focus options—for example Work, Personal, or Sleep—or create a custom Focus. You can use Focus to temporarily silence all notifications, or allow only specific notifications—ones that apply to your task, for example—and let other people and apps know you're busy.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can also use the Reduce Interruptions Focus, which uses Apple Intelligence to show you only the most important notifications. See Use the Reduce Interruptions Focus.

Tip: To quickly silence all notifications, open Control Center, tap Focus, then turn on Do Not Disturb.

Set up a Focus

1. Go to Settings, tap Focus, then tap a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, or Work.



2. Do any of the following:

- *Choose which people to allow notifications from during your Focus:* Tap People. To learn more, see Allow or silence notifications from specific people during a Focus.
- *Choose which apps to allow notifications from during your Focus:* Tap Apps. To learn more, see Allow or silence notifications from specific apps during a Focus.
- *Choose whether to show silenced notification on the Lock Screen, darken the Lock Screen when the focus is on, and more:* Tap Options.
- *Choose a customized Lock Screen or Home Screen page to switch to while the Focus is on to help limit distractions:* Choose the Lock Screen or Home Screen. To learn more, see Link a Focus to your Lock Screen.
- *Have the Focus turn on automatically at a set time, location, or while using a certain app:* Tap Add Schedule. To learn more, see Schedule a Focus to turn on or off.
- *Customize how your apps and device behave when the Focus is on:* Tap Add Filter. To learn more, see Add Focus filters.

- *Use Apple Intelligence* to allow important notifications to interrupt you:* Turn on Intelligent Breakthrough & Silencing.

Add Focus filters

When you set up a Focus, you can add app filters that determine what information apps will show during the Focus. For example, you can choose which mail account or which calendar to use during the Focus.

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then tap the Focus you want to add filters to.
2. Scroll down to Focus filters, then tap Add Filter.
3. Tap an app or system filter, then select the information from that app you want to use during the Focus.
4. Tap Add to add the filter to the Focus.

Note: Focus filters don't get synced across devices when you have Share Across Devices turned on in Settings > Focus.

Create a custom Focus

If you want to focus on an activity that's different from any of the provided Focus options, you can create a custom Focus.

notifications are silenced. You can change this setting for specific people on their contact card.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

Link a Focus to your Lock Screen

Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

Previous
Change notification settings

Next
Allow or silence notifications for a Focus

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Allow or silence notifications for a Focus on iPhone

When you set up a Focus, you can select people and apps you want to receive notifications from by either silencing them or allowing them. For example, set up a Work Focus and allow only notifications from your coworkers and the apps you use for work.

Allow or silence notifications from specific people during a Focus

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then choose a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, or Work.
2. Tap People (or tap Choose People), then do one of the following:

   - *Allow specific people:* Tap Allow Notifications From, tap +, then select from your contacts.

     You can also turn on options to allow calls from certain groups of people and allow repeated calls (two or more calls from the same person within 3 minutes).

   - *Silence specific people:* Tap Silence Notifications From, tap +, then select from your contacts.

     You can also turn on Allow Calls From Silenced People.

Note: Regardless of your Focus settings, you can allow calls from your emergency contacts to come through. See Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced, below.

When Intelligent Breakthrough & Silencing is on, Apple Intelligence* allows important notifications to interrupt you and silences notifications determined not to be important. See Summarize notifications and reduce interruptions with Apple Intelligence.

Allow or silence notifications from specific apps during a Focus

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then choose a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, or Work.
2. Tap Apps (or tap Choose Apps), then do one of the following:
   - *Allow specific apps:* Tap Allow Notifications From, tap +, then select apps.
   - *Silence specific apps:* Tap Silence Notifications From, tap +, then select apps.

   Note: You can allow or silence notifications from specific web apps you've added to your Home Screen. (See Add a website icon to your Home Screen.)

You can also turn on Time Sensitive Notifications, which allows all apps to send time-sensitive notifications immediately.

Choose whether to share your Focus status

When you use a Focus and have your focus status turned on, people who try to contact you (using Messages, for example) may see that you have "notifications silenced." You can turn this on or off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Focus, then tap Focus Status.
3. Turn Share Focus Status on or off.
4. If you turn it on, choose which Focus profiles can share that you have notifications silenced.

Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced

You can allow sounds and vibrations from emergency contacts to come through even when your iPhone or notifications are silenced.

1. Open Contacts.
2. Select a contact, then tap Edit.

3. Tap Ringtone or Text Tone, then turn on Emergency Bypass.

   Or set up your Medical ID and identify an emergency contact.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Previous
Set up a Focus

Next
Turn a Focus on or off

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

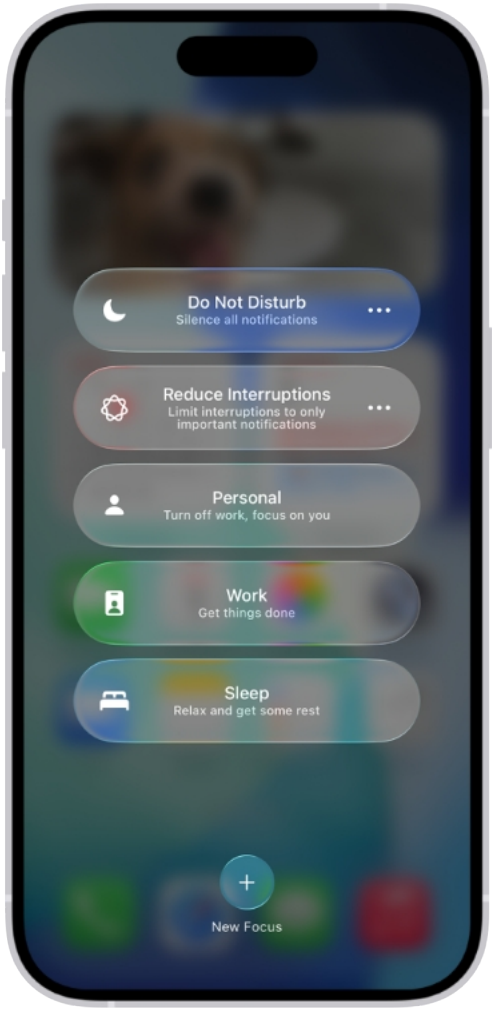
Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

To use a Focus, you can turn it on directly in Control Center, or schedule it to turn on automatically.

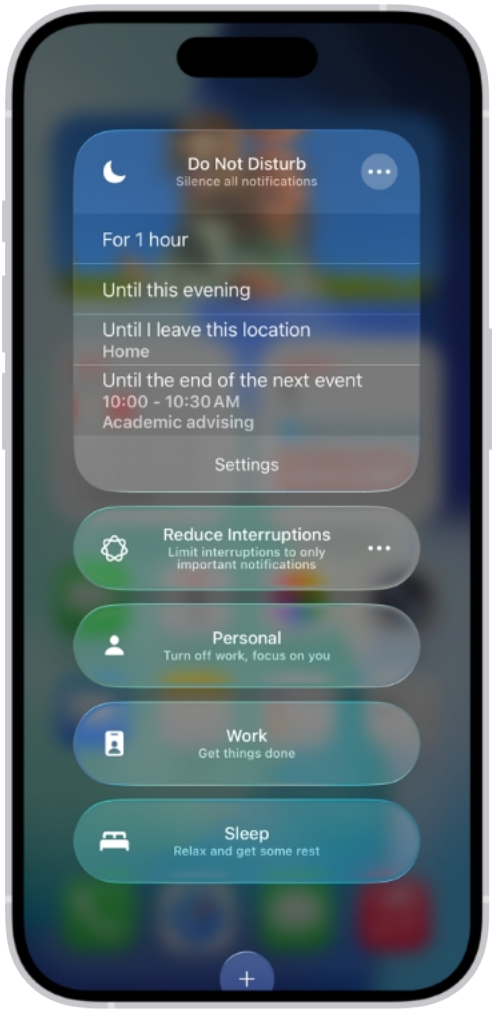
Turn on a Focus in Control Center

1. Open Control Center, tap Focus, then tap the Focus you want to turn on (for example, Do Not Disturb).

   Note: If another Focus is already on, it turns off when you tap the new one.



2. To choose an ending point for the Focus, tap ⋯, select an option (such as “For 1 hour” or “Until I leave this location”), then tap ⋯ again.



When a Focus is on, its icon (for example, ☾ for Do Not Disturb) appears in the status bar and on the Lock Screen, and your status is automatically displayed in the Messages app. People who try to send you a message will see that you’ve silenced notifications, but they can still notify you if something is urgent.

Note: You can also turn a Focus on or off by going to the Settings app ⚙, tapping Focus, tapping the Focus, then turning it on.

Schedule a Focus to turn on or off

You can schedule a Focus to turn on at certain times, when you’re at a particular location, or when you open a specific app.

1. Go to Settings ⚙, tap Focus, then tap the Focus you want to schedule.

   If a time appears below Set a Schedule, you can tap it to set a schedule for turning the Focus on and off.

2. Tap Add Schedule, then set the times, a location, or an app you want to activate this Focus.

Note: When you set up a Sleep Focus, it follows the sleep schedule you set in the Health app. To add or edit a sleep schedule, tap Open Sleep in Health. See Add or change sleep schedules in Health. You can also change your next bedtime and wake-up time. See Set an alarm in Clock.

Turn a Focus on or off using Siri

You can use Siri to turn a Focus on or off.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Turn on the Work Focus." Learn how to use Siri.

Turn off a Focus

When you're finished using a Focus, you can quickly turn it off to allow notifications again. After you turn off a Focus, it still appears in Control Center and can be reused.

1. Do any of the following:

   - Touch and hold the Focus icon on the Lock Screen.
   - Open Control Center, then tap Focus.

2. Tap the Focus that's on to turn it off.

Delete a Focus

When you no longer need a Focus you set up, you can delete it.

1. Go to the Settings app.
2. Tap Focus, tap the Focus you no longer need, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap Delete Focus.

If you delete a provided Focus, you need to set it up again by going to the Settings app > Focus, then tapping +.

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Stay focused while driving with iPhone

Turning on the Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. When you turn it on, text messages and other notifications are silenced or limited. Incoming calls are allowed only when iPhone is connected to CarPlay—a car Bluetooth® system—or a hands-free accessory.

WARNING: For important information about navigation and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone. The Driving Focus is not a substitute for following all the rules that prohibit distracted driving.

Set up the Driving Focus

You can set up the Driving Focus to turn on automatically when you're in a moving car. (You can also turn it on manually in Control Center.)

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Focus, then tap Driving.

   If you don't see the Driving Focus, tap + at the top right, then tap Driving.
3. Tap Auto-Reply, then choose if you want certain people to receive an auto-reply if they try to contact you when the Driving Focus is on

   You can also edit your auto-reply message to customize it.

   Then tap < at the top left.

4. Tap While Driving (below Turn On Automatically), then select when to activate Driving:

- *Automatically:* When iPhone detects you might be driving.
- *When Connected to Car Bluetooth:* When your iPhone is connected to a car's Bluetooth system.
- *Manually:* When you turn it on in Control Center.
- *Activate With CarPlay:* Automatically when iPhone is connected to CarPlay.

See also

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Previous
Turn a Focus on or off

Next
Customize sharing options

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

You can choose which options appear in an app's Share menu and rearrange the options.

---

1. Open a document in the app, then tap .
2. Swipe left over the row of buttons, tap More, then tap Edit.



3. Do any of the following:
   - *Show an option:* Tap to turn it on.
   - *Hide an option:* Tap to turn it off.

- *Add an option to Favorites:* Tap ➕.
- *Remove an option from Favorites:* Tap ➖.
- *Change the order of options in Favorites:* Drag ☰ next to any option.

4. Tap ☑.

See also

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Stay focused while driving

Next
Type with the onscreen keyboard

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Select version:

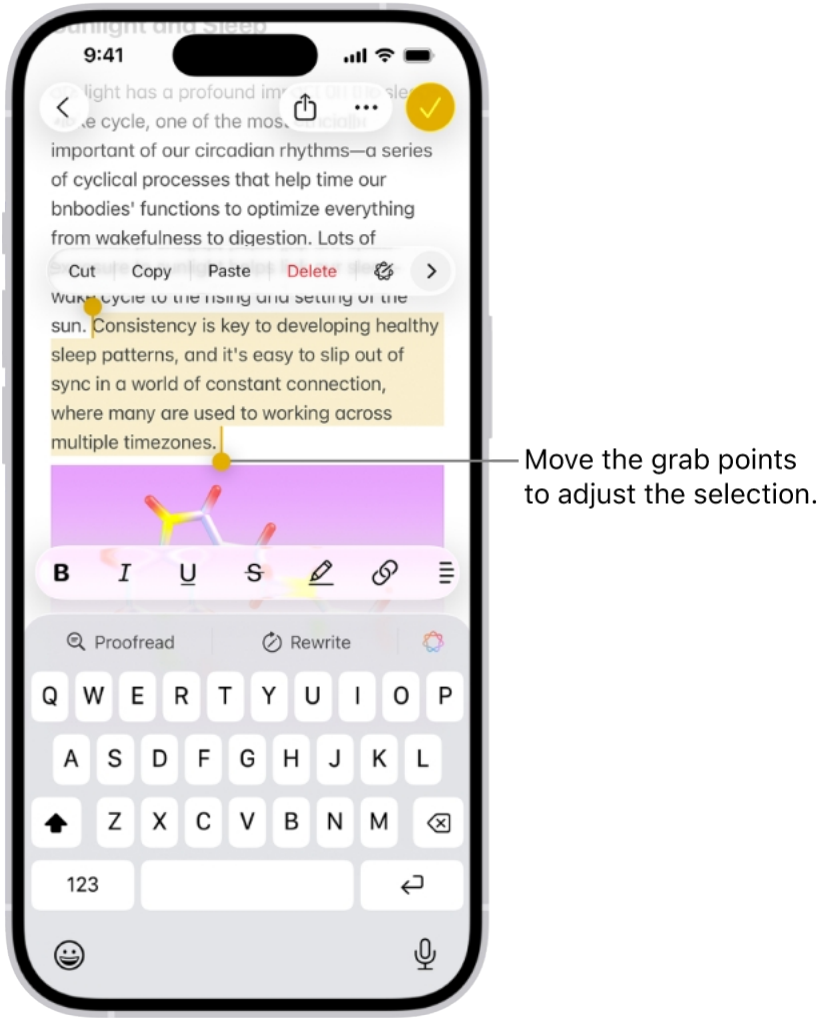
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

In apps on iPhone, you can use the onscreen keyboard to select and edit text in text fields.

Select and edit text



1. To select text, do any of the following:

    - *Select a word:* Double-tap with one finger.

    - *Select a paragraph:* Triple-tap with one finger.

- *Select a block of text:* Double-tap and hold the first word in the block, then move the grab points to select text.

2. After selecting the text you want to revise, you can type, or tap the selection to see editing options:

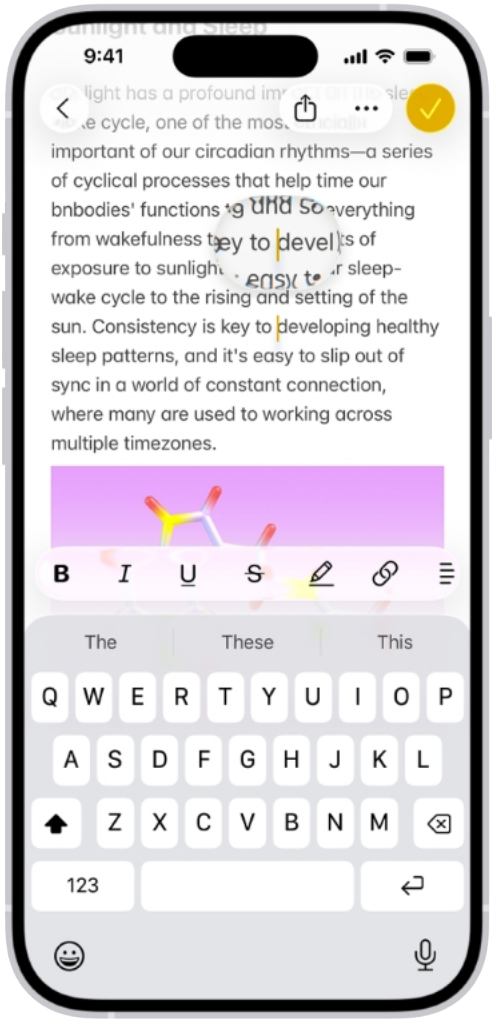
   - *Cut:* Tap Cut or pinch closed with three fingers two times.
   - *Copy:* Tap Copy or pinch closed with three fingers.
   - *Paste:* Tap Paste or pinch open with three fingers.
   - *Select All:* Select all the text in the document.
   - *Replace:* View suggested replacement text, or have Siri suggest alternative text.
   - *Format:* Format the selected text.
   - ›: View more options.

💡 **Tip:** To move text without cutting or copying, touch and hold selected text until it lifts up, then drag the text to another location.

Insert or edit text by typing

1. Place the insertion point where you want to add or edit text by doing any of the following:

   - Tap where you want to add or edit text.
   - Touch and hold to magnify the text, then move the insertion point by dragging it.



Note: To navigate a long document, touch and hold the right edge of the document, then drag the scroller to locate the text you want to revise.

2. Type or paste the text you want to add.

You can also use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy something as you normally would on one Apple device and paste it to another. See Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices.

See also

Dictate text on iPhone

Use predictive text on iPhone

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Table of Contents

Dictate text on iPhone

With Dictation on iPhone, you can dictate text anywhere you can type it. You can also use typing and Dictation together—the keyboard stays open during Dictation so you can easily switch between voice and touch to enter text.

Dictation requests are processed on your device in many languages—no internet connection is required. When dictating in a search box, dictated text may be sent to the search provider in order to process the search.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

When using Dictation, cellular data charges may apply. See View or change cellular data settings.

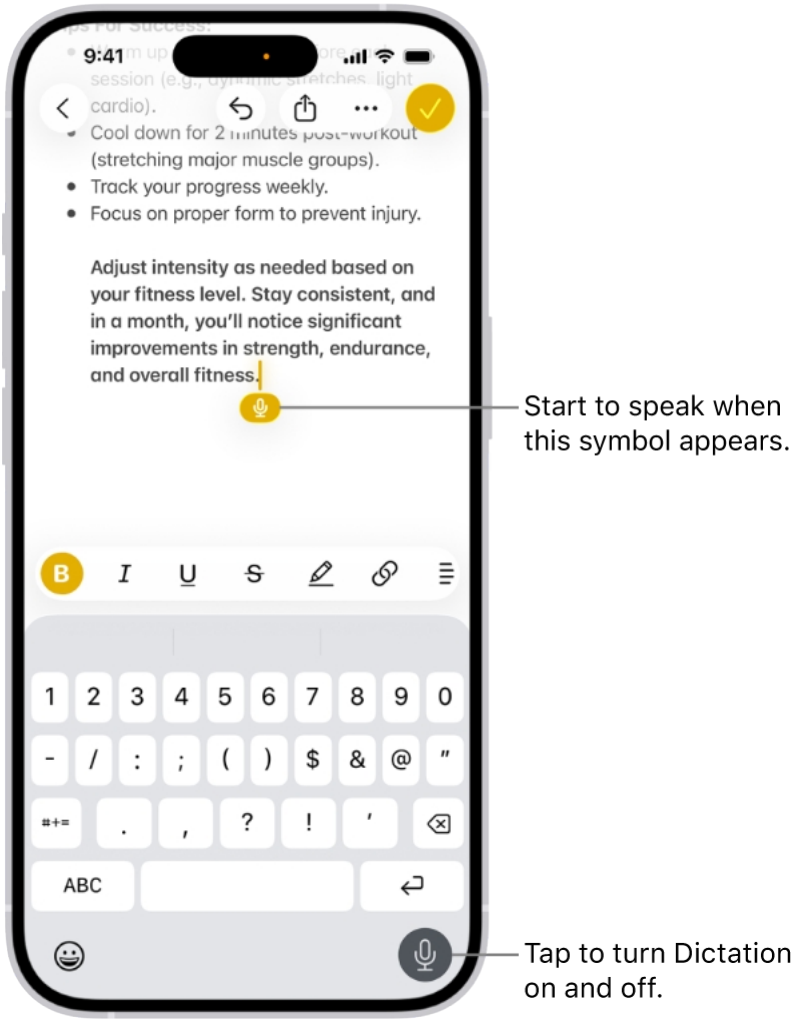
Turn on Dictation

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Keyboard.
3. Turn on Enable Dictation. If a prompt appears, tap Enable Dictation.

To learn more about how Apple protects your information and lets you choose what you share, tap About Dictation & Privacy below Dictation, or see the Apple Privacy website.

Dictate text

Dictate text and use voice commands to edit and format content.



1. Tap in the text field to place the insertion point where you want to begin dictating text.
2. Tap on the onscreen keyboard (or in any text field where it appears).
3. When appears near the insertion point in the text field, begin to dictate your text.
4. Do any of the following:

- *Add emoji:* Say the name of an emoji, such as “heart emoji” or “smiley face emoji.”
- *Add punctuation:* Say the name of the punctuation mark, such as “exclamation point.”

  Note: In supported languages, Dictation automatically inserts commas, periods, and question marks as you dictate. To turn off automatic punctuation, go to Settings > General > Keyboard, then turn off Auto-Punctuation.
- *Add a line break:* Say “new line” or “new paragraph.”
- *Spell a word:* Say something like “Let’s invite Steven S-T-E-P-H-E-N,” or “Change tea to T-E-E.”
- *Edit text:* Say “select” or “delete” followed by the phrase you want to change.

- *Undo or repeat a command:* Say “undo” or “redo” if you change your mind or want to repeat a command.

5. When you’re done, tap or say “Stop dictation.” Dictation stops automatically when you stop speaking for 30 seconds.

For a full list of the commands you can use while dictating, see Commands for dictating text.

When you use a keyboard for another language, you can use Dictation in that language as well. See Add or change keyboards.

Turn off Dictation

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Keyboard.
3. Turn off Enable Dictation.

See also

Commands for dictating text on iPhone

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

Previous
Type with the onscreen keyboard

Next
Commands for dictating text

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Commands for dictating text on iPhone

When you dictate text, you can say commands for punctuation, formatting, capitalization, and more. In some languages, you can insert emoji using your voice while dictating. The commands listed below are always available while you're dictating text.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

When using Dictation, cellular data charges may apply. See View or change cellular data settings.

Punctuation

Command	Result
Period	.
Comma	,
Exclamation point	!
Question mark	?
Dollar sign	$
Open parenthesis	(
Close parenthesis	)
Quote	“
End quote	”
Colon	:
Semicolon	;
Hashtag	#

For some languages, Dictation automatically adds certain punctuation as you dictate text.

Format text

Command	Result
Cap	Capitalize the next word
Caps on … caps off	Capitalize the first character of each enclosed word
All caps	Make the next word all uppercase
All caps on … all caps off	Make the enclosed words all uppercase
No caps on … no caps off	Make the enclosed words all lowercase
No space	Eliminate the space between two words (not available for all languages)
No space on … no space off	Run a series of words together (not available for all languages)
New paragraph	Start a new paragraph
New line	Start a new line

Change, insert, and delete text

Dictation commands to edit text are available in U.S. English on iPhone 12 and later (except iPhone SE).

Command	Result
Change … to …	Replace existing text with new text
Insert … before …	Insert new text before existing text
Insert … after …	Insert new text after existing text
Select …	Select text
Delete …	Delete text
Delete all	Delete all text
Undo	Undo the action
Redo	Redo the action

Insert emoji

You can insert emoji while dictating in certain languages. (For supported languages, see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.) For example, say “heart emoji” for ❤️ or “car emoji” for 🚗. See below for more examples of emoji commands and the corresponding result.

Command	Result
Smiley emoji	😊
Halo emoji	😇
Laugh out loud emoji	🤣
Heart eyes emoji	😍
Amazing emoji	🤩
Yum emoji	😋
Congrats emoji	🥳
Goofy emoji	😜
Sick emoji	🤒
Scream emoji	😱
Hug emoji	🤗
Fingers crossed emoji	🤞
Purple heart emoji	💜
Cheers emoji	🥂
Celebrate emoji	🎉
Speech balloon emoji	💬

Puppy emoji	
Music emoji	
Rainbow emoji	
Present emoji	

See also

Dictate text on iPhone

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

Previous
Dictate text

Next
Select and edit text

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

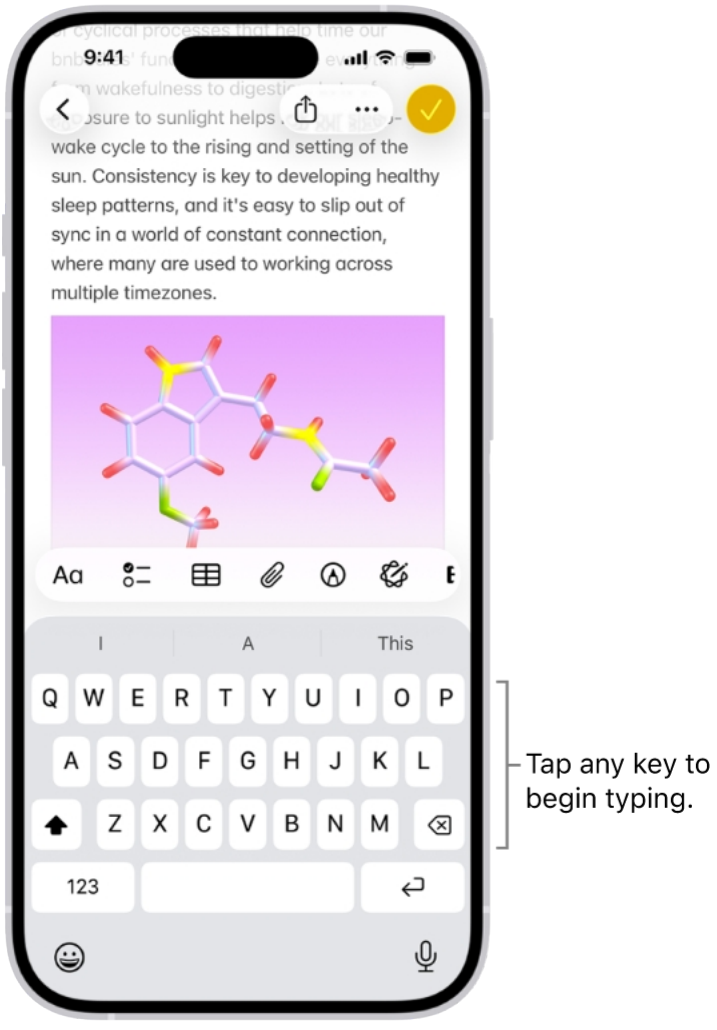
Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone

You can use the onscreen keyboard to enter and edit text.

Note: You can also use Magic Keyboard and Dictation to enter text on iPhone.

Enter text using the onscreen keyboard

In any app that allows text editing, open the onscreen keyboard by tapping a text field. Tap individual keys to type, or use QuickPath to type a word by sliding from one letter to the next without lifting your finger (not available for all languages). To end a word, lift your finger. You can use either method as you type, and even switch in the middle of a sentence. (If you tap ⌫ after sliding to type a word, it deletes the whole word.)



While entering text, you can do any of the following:

- *Type uppercase letters:* Tap ⇧, or touch ⇧, then slide to a letter.
- *Turn on Caps Lock:* Double-tap ⇧.
- *Quickly end a sentence with a period and a space:* Double-tap the Space bar.
- *Enter numbers, punctuation, or symbols:* Tap 123 or #+=.
- *Undo autocorrect:* As you type, misspelled words are automatically corrected and temporarily underlined so you know what's been changed; to revert to the spelling as you typed it, tap the underlined word, then tap the spelling you want to use.
- *Correct spelling:* Tap a misspelled word (underlined in red) to see suggested corrections, then tap a suggestion to replace the word, or type the correction.
- *Undo the last edit:* Swipe left with three fingers, then tap Undo at the top of the screen.
- *Redo the last edit:* Swipe right with three fingers, then tap Redo at the top of the screen.

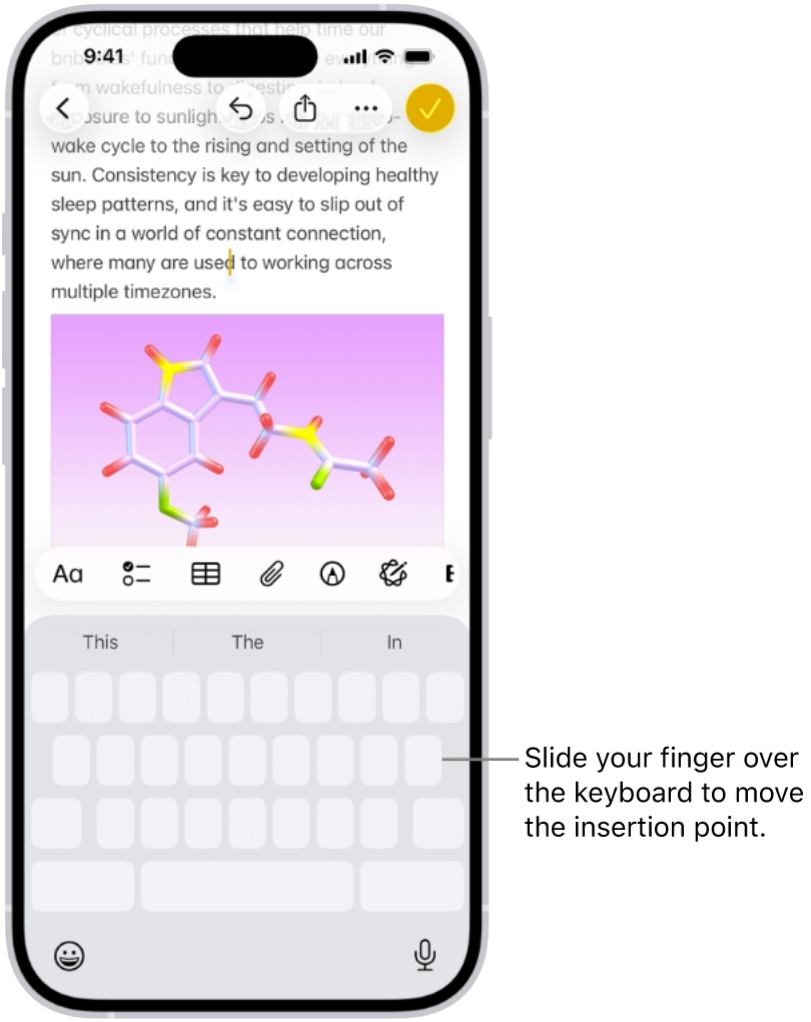
Turn on keyboard sounds and haptic feedback

You can customize keyboard settings to hear clicking or feel tapping as you type.

Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics > Keyboard Feedback, then turn on Sound or Haptic.

Turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad

You can turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad to easily move and place the insertion point.



1. Touch and hold the Space bar with one finger until the keyboard turns light gray.
2. To move the insertion point, slide your finger around the keyboard.

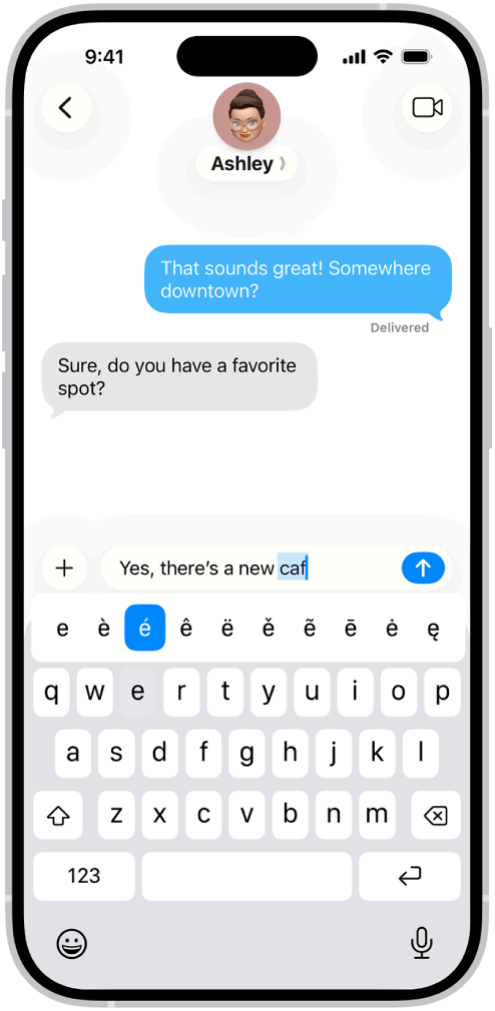
   To select text, touch and hold the keyboard with a second finger, then adjust the selection by moving the first finger around the keyboard.

See Select, cut, copy, and paste text for more ways to select text.

Enter accented letters or other characters while typing

While typing on the keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol that's related to the character you want.

For example, to enter é, touch and hold the e key, then slide your finger and release it on the option you want.



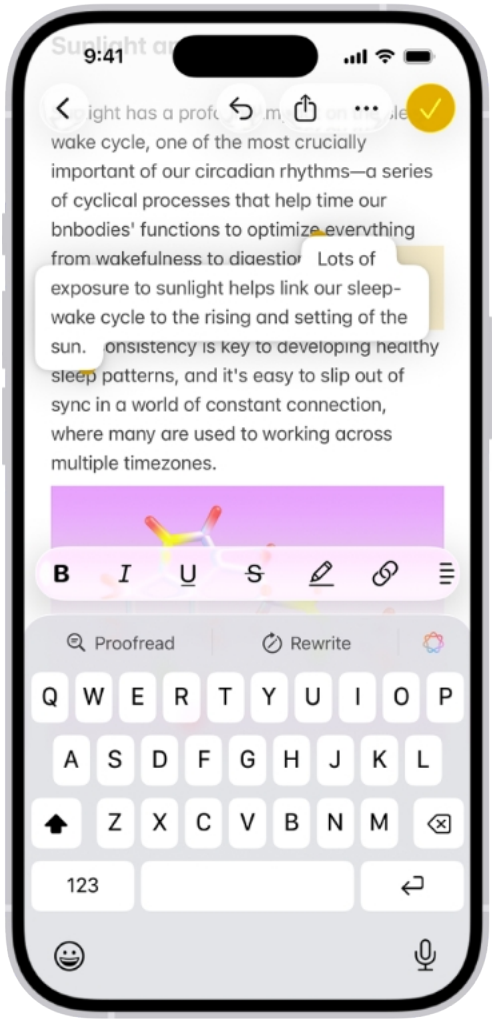
You can also do any of the following:

- *On a Thai keyboard:* To choose native numbers, touch and hold the related Arabic number.
- *On a Chinese, Japanese, or Arabic keyboard:* Tap a suggested character or candidate at the top of the keyboard to enter it, or swipe left to see more candidates.

  Note: To view the full candidate list, tap the up arrow on the right. To return to the short list, tap the down arrow.

Move text

1. In a text editing app, select the text you want to move.
2. Touch and hold the selected text until it lifts up, then drag it to another location within the app.



If you change your mind about moving the text, lift your finger before dragging, or drag the text off the screen.

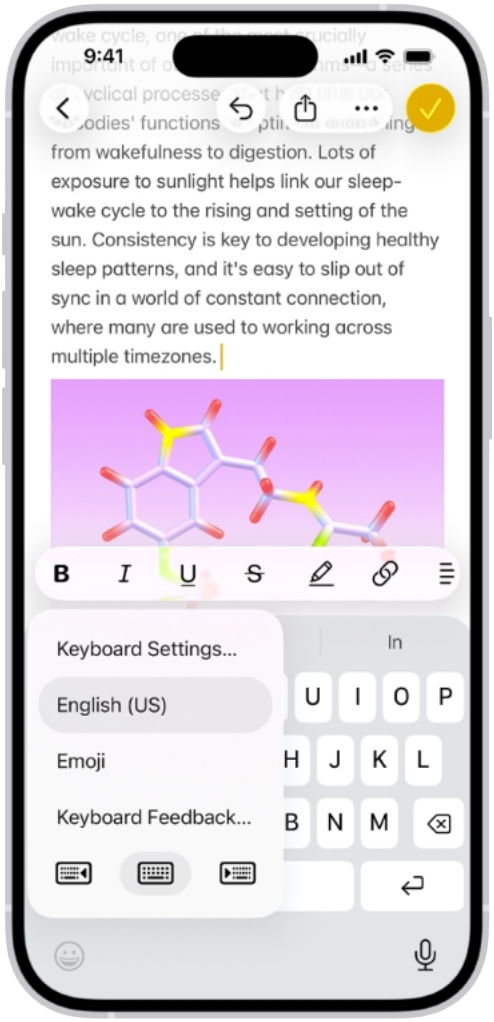
Change keyboard settings

You can turn special typing features—such as predictive text and auto-correction—off and on.

1. While typing on the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold 😀 or 🌐, then tap Keyboard Settings. Or go to Settings ⚙️ > General > Keyboard.
2. Turn the typing features (below All Keyboards) on or off.

Type with one hand

To make it easier to type with one hand, you can move the keys closer to your thumb.



1. Touch and hold 😀 or 🌐.
2. Tap one of the keyboard layouts. (For example, choose ⌨ to move the keyboard to the right side of the screen.)

   To center the keyboard again, tap the right or left edge of the keyboard.

See also

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

Dictate text on iPhone

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Previous
Customize sharing options

Next
Dictate text

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

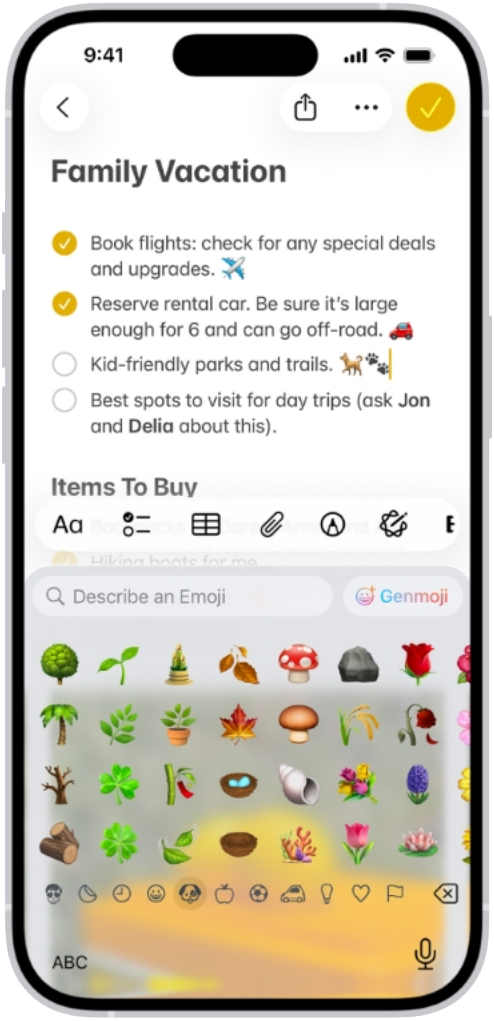
Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

As you type, you can use the iPhone keyboard to enter emoji, Memoji, and stickers to express yourself in messages and documents.

Add an emoji, Memoji, or sticker

Use the emoji keyboard to replace text and bring words to life.

1. Tap a text field, then tap 😀 or 🌐 to switch to the emoji keyboard.



2. Swipe left or right to browse emoji, Memoji, and stickers, or tap a symbol below the keyboard to jump to that category.

   Emoji, Memoji, and stickers you recently used appear in the Frequently Used section of the emoji keyboard.

3. Tap an image to add it to your text field.

   To see variations of an emoji—such as different skin tones—touch and hold the emoji, then drag your finger and release it on the variation you like.

4. Tap ABC to return to the regular keyboard.

Tip: As you use the keyboard to type, words that can be replaced with emoji appear above the keyboard; tap the emoji to apply it in place of the text.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can create custom emoji—called Genmoji. See Create your own emoji with Genmoji.

Make a sticker with the iPhone keyboard

In supported apps, you can make a new sticker from images in your photo library as you type a message with your iPhone keyboard.

1. Tap a text field, then tap or to switch to the emoji keyboard.
2. Tap , then tap .

   To search your photo library, enter a term in the search field at the top of screen, or tap a category such as People or Animals.

3. Tap the photo you want to use, then tap Add Sticker.

   The sticker is automatically added to your sticker collection.

Make or edit Memoji with the iPhone keyboard

In supported apps, you can create a Memoji as you type a message with your iPhone keyboard. You can also edit, delete, or duplicate a Memoji that you already created.

1. Tap a text field, then tap or to switch to the emoji keyboard.
2. Tap , then tap + to make your first Memoji or tap ··· to edit, delete, duplicate, or make additional Memoji.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to make your Memoji, then tap Done.

The Memoji is automatically added to your Memoji collection.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Add a sticker with Markup

Make stickers from your photos on iPhone

Create and send Memoji in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Add or change keyboards

Next
Take a screenshot

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone

Set up a text replacement you can use to enter a word or phrase by typing just a few characters. For example, type “omw” to enter “On my way!” That one’s already set up for you, but you can also add your own.



Create a text replacement

1. While typing in a text field, touch and hold 😀 or 🌐.
2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then tap Text Replacement.

3. Tap ＋ at the top right.
4. Type a phrase in the Phrase field and the text shortcut you want to use for it in the Shortcut field.

Have a word or phrase you use and don’t want it corrected?

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard, then tap Text Replacement.
2. Tap ＋ at the top right, then enter your word or phrase in the Phrase field, but leave the Shortcut field blank.

Create a text replacement for word and input pairs

When using certain Chinese or Japanese keyboards, you can create a text replacement for word and input pairs. The text replacement is added to your personal dictionary. When you type the text shortcut for a word or input while using a supported keyboard, the paired word or input is substituted for the typed shortcut.

Shortcuts are available for the following:

- *Simplified Chinese:* Pinyin
- *Traditional Chinese:* Pinyin and Zhuyin
- *Japanese:* Romaji and Kana

Use iCloud to keep your personal dictionary up to date on your other devices

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on iCloud Drive.

Reset your personal dictionary

1. Go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.
2. Tap Reset, then tap Reset Keyboard Dictionary.

All custom words and shortcuts are deleted, and the keyboard dictionary returns to its default state.

See also

Use predictive text on iPhone

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

Add or change keyboards on iPhone

Previous
Use predictive text

Next
Add or change keyboards

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Add or change keyboards on iPhone

You can add keyboards for writing or using Dictation in different languages on your iPhone. You can also change the layout of your onscreen or external keyboard.

If you add keyboards for other languages, you can type in two languages without having to switch between keyboards. Your keyboard automatically switches between the two languages you use most often. (Not available for all languages.)

Add or remove a keyboard for another language

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard.
2. Tap Keyboards, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a keyboard:* Tap Add New Keyboard, then choose a keyboard from the list. Repeat to add more keyboards.
   - *Remove a keyboard:* Tap Edit, tap ⛔ next to the keyboard you want to remove, tap Delete, then tap Done.
   - *Reorder your keyboard list:* Tap Edit, drag ☰ next to a keyboard to a new place in the list, then tap Done.

If you add a keyboard for a different language, the corresponding language is automatically added to the Preferred Language Order list. You can view this list and add languages directly to it in Settings > General > Language & Region. You can also reorder the list to change how apps and websites display text.

Switch to another keyboard

1. While typing text, touch and hold 😀 or 🌐.



2. Tap the keyboard you want to switch to.

You can also switch between Magic Keyboard and other keyboards.

Assign an alternative layout to a keyboard

You can use an alternative keyboard layout that doesn't match the keys on your keyboard.

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Keyboards.
2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then select an alternative layout from the list.

See also

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings for accessibility on iPhone

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

Table of Contents

Use predictive text on iPhone

Using predictive text, you can write and complete entire sentences with just a few taps. As you type on the iPhone keyboard, you see choices for words, emoji, and information that you'd probably type next (not available for all languages). In Messages, for example, when you type something like:

- "I'm at" followed by a space, your current location appears as an option
- "My number is" followed by a space, your phone number appears as an option

You also see inline predictions that complete the word or phrase you're currently typing.

Apply inline text predictions

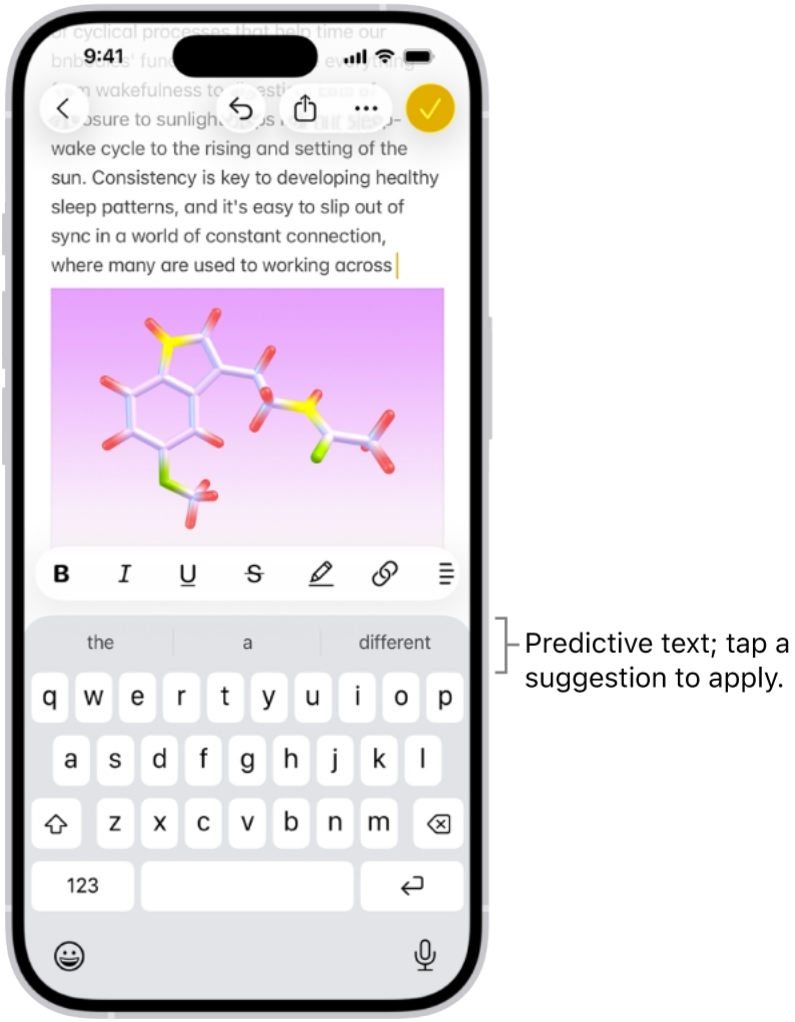
As you type, predictions that complete the word or phrase you're typing appear inline in gray text. Tap the Space bar to accept the prediction for the word or phrase; keep typing to reject it.

If you accept an inline prediction and then change your mind, tap ⌫, then tap the word you were in the process of typing.

Note: Inline predictive text may not be supported in your language. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

Apply predictive text

As you type, suggested words, emoji, and information appear above the onscreen keyboard; tap a suggestion to apply it.



Note: When you accept a suggested word, a space is automatically entered after the suggestion. If you enter a comma, period, or other punctuation, that space is automatically deleted.

To reject the suggestions, tap your original word (shown as the option within quotation marks), or just continue to type.

Turn predictive text off or on

1. While using the keyboard, touch and hold 😀 or 🌐.
2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then turn Predictive Text off or on.

When you turn off Predictive Text, iPhone may still try to suggest corrections for misspelled words. To accept a correction, enter a space or punctuation, or tap Return. To reject a correction, tap the “x.” If you reject the same suggestion a few times, iPhone stops suggesting it.

Note: Turning off the Predictive Text setting turns off both predictive text and inline text predictions.

Table of Contents

Change the screen capture settings on iPhone

In Settings, you can customize how screenshots and screen recordings work on your iPhone, including preview style, visual lookup features, and capture formats.

Preview screenshots as thumbnails

After you take a screenshot, it appears in full screen by default. If you prefer a temporary thumbnail preview in the bottom-left corner, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Screen Capture.
3. Turn off Full-Screen Previews.

Use Visual Lookup

You can have iPhone automatically identify and learn about objects and places that appear in screenshots.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Screen Capture.
3. Turn on Automatic Visual Lookup.

Capture screenshots from CarPlay

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Screen Capture.
3. Turn on CarPlay Screenshots.

Choose SDR or HDR format for screenshots and recordings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Screen Capture.
3. Choose one of the following:

    - *SDR:* This option captures less brightness and color. It's standard for most computer displays and mobile devices. Screenshots use PNG format, and screen recordings use HEVC (H.265).
    - *HDR:* This option captures more brightness and color. It requires an HDR display to show the full quality. Screenshots use HEIC format, and screen recordings use HEVC (H.265) in an HDR container.

      Note: On standard displays, HDR screenshots appear in SDR format, and HDR recordings play back with slightly reduced quality.

See also

Take a screenshot on iPhone

Take a screen recording on iPhone

Previous
Take a screen recording

Next
Write and draw in documents

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

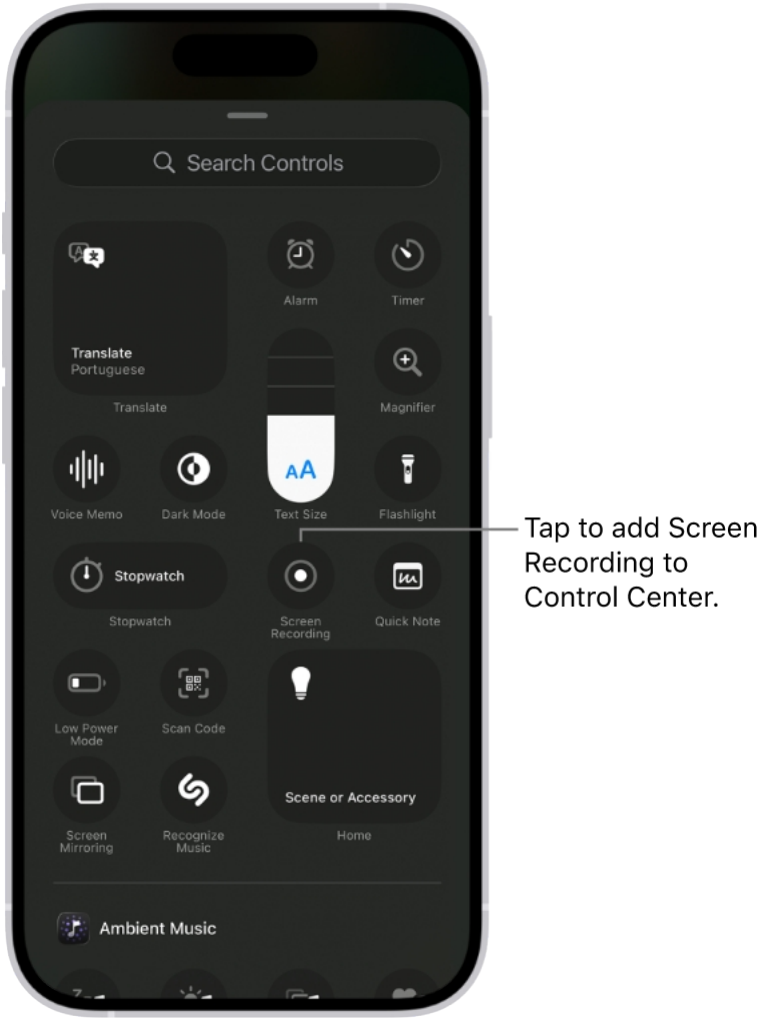
Table of Contents

Take a screen recording on iPhone

You can make a screen recording to capture what's happening on your iPhone screen and save it as a video. You can even turn on the microphone to add audio.

Record the iPhone screen

1. Swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen to open Control Center.
2. Touch and hold the background of the screen, then tap Add a Control.
3. In the controls gallery, tap Screen Recording to add it to Control Center.



Note: After you add Screen Recording to Control Center, you don't need to add it again for future recordings.

Tap anywhere on the screen to return to Control Center.

4. Tap , then wait for the 3-second countdown to start recording.
5. To stop recording, tap the red circle at the top of the screen, then tap .

Take a screen recording with audio

1. Swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen to open Control Center.
2. Touch and hold , tap Microphone to turn it on, tap Start Recording, then wait for the 3-second countdown to start recording.

Screen recordings are automatically saved to your photo library in the Photos app. To see all your screen recordings, open Photos, tap Collections, scroll down to Media Types, then tap Screen Recordings.

Note: Some apps might not allow you to record their content. You can't record your screen and use screen mirroring at the same time.

See also

Take a screenshot on iPhone

Change the screen capture settings on iPhone

Trim video length, adjust speed, and edit audio on iPhone

Previous
Take a screenshot

Next
Change the screen capture settings

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

In supported apps, such as Notes and Photos, you can use the Markup tools to draw and sketch in your documents. You can also use the Markup tools to annotate screenshots, PDFs, and more.



Write and draw

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap the pen, marker, or pencil tool, then write or draw with your finger.

While drawing, do any of the following:

- *Change the line weight:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then tap an option.
- *Change the opacity:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then drag the slider.
- *Change the color:* Tap in the toolbar, then tap Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders to adjust your color choice.
- *Undo:* Tap .
- *Draw a straight line:* Tap the ruler tool in the toolbar, then draw a line along the edge of the ruler.
    - To change the angle of the ruler, touch and hold the ruler with two fingers, then rotate your fingers.
    - To move the ruler without changing its angle, drag it with one finger.
    - To hide the ruler, tap the ruler tool in the toolbar again.

3. To close the Markup toolbar, tap or Done.

Erase a mistake

Tap the eraser tool in the Markup toolbar in a supported app, then do one of the following:

- *Erase with the pixel eraser:* Scrub over the mistake with your finger.
- *Erase with the object eraser:* Touch the object with your finger.
- *Switch between the pixel and the object erasers:* Tap the eraser tool again, then choose Pixel Eraser or Object Eraser.

Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

Move Markup objects

1. In the Markup toolbar, tap the lasso tool (between the eraser and ruler tools), then use your finger to drag around the elements you want to move.

   Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

2. Lift your finger.
3. Touch the selected element, then drag it to a new location.
4. Tap the screen to turn off the lasso.

See also

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures iPhone

Previous
Change the screen capture settings

Next
Add text, shapes, stickers, and more

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

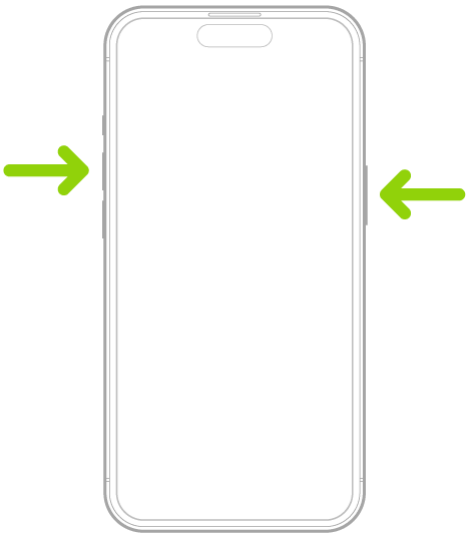
Table of Contents

Take a screenshot on iPhone

When you need to capture what's on your iPhone screen, take a picture of it so you can view it later, share it with others, or attach it to documents. You can grab a full screenshot or save a specific portion.

Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Face ID

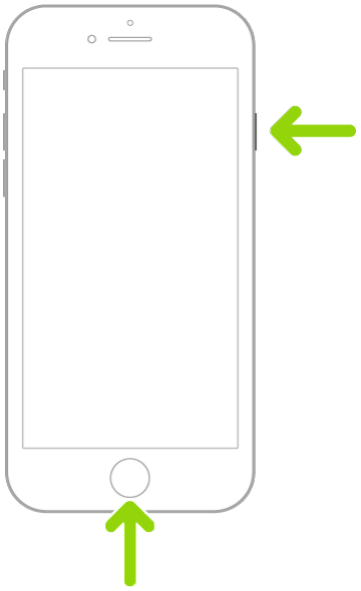
1. Quickly press and release the side button and the volume up button at the same time.



2. Edit, send, save, or cancel the screenshot.

Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Touch ID

1. Quickly press and release the side button and the Home button at the same time.



2. Edit, send, save, or cancel the screenshot.

Edit, send, save, or cancel the screenshot



After you take a screenshot, do any of the following:

- *Crop:* Drag the handles to save only the portion you want.

- *Annotate:* Tap Ⓐ, then use the Markup tools.
- *Share:* Tap ⬆, then choose a sharing option.
- *Save:* Tap ✓, then choose an option.

  By default, screenshots are saved to your photo library in the Photos app. To see all your screenshots, open Photos, tap Collections, scroll down to Media Types, then tap Screenshots.
- *Cancel or delete:* Tap ×.

You can also use visual intelligence to interact with text, search for similar images, and more.

Take a full-page screenshot

You can take a screenshot of content that exceeds the length of your iPhone screen, such as an entire webpage in Safari.

1. Do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Quickly press and release the side button and volume up button at the same time.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Quickly press and release the side button and the Home button at the same time.
2. Tap Full Page, then do any of the following:

   - *Scroll down:* Drag your finger on the preview image on the right to see more of the screen shot.
   - *Crop:* Tap ⌗, then drag the handles to save only the portion you want.
   - *Save as an image:* Tap ✓, then tap Save to Photos.
   - *Save a PDF:* Tap ✓, tap Save PDF to Files, then choose a location.
   - *Cancel or delete:* Tap ×.

Other ways to take screenshots

Here are some alternate ways to take a screenshot:

- *AssistiveTouch:* Use AssistiveTouch if you prefer tapping the touchscreen to using hardware buttons.
- *Back Tap:* Tap the back of iPhone two or three times.
- *Voice command:* Activate Siri.

Change the default settings for screenshots

You can adjust the screen capture settings so that screenshots appear in full screen or as temporary thumbnails in the bottom-left corner. You can also save screenshots in SDR or HDR format. See Change the screen capture settings.

See also

Take a screen recording on iPhone

View photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers

Next
Take a screen recording

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures iPhone

You can fill out forms and sign documents that you receive on your iPhone. After you complete a form, you can add your signature and share it with others. You can also use AutoFill to quickly fill out forms with information you saved in the Contacts app. In supported apps, you can use Markup to add your signature to a document or create multiple signatures to use in different images and documents.

Fill out forms and add signatures

1. Go to the file you want to open.
2. Tap the file to open the document.

   If prompted, open the document in the Files app, then tap Save.
3. Tap , then tap a blank field to enter text using the onscreen keyboard.
4. To fill out another field, tap it, then enter text.
5. To add additional text or to add your signature to the form, tap , then do one of the following:

   - *Add text:* Tap Add Text Form Box, drag the text box where you want it on the form, then enter text using the onscreen keyboard.
   - *Add your signature:* Tap Add Signature, sign your name with your finger, then tap Done. Drag your signature where you want it to appear on the document.
6. When you're done, tap to share the completed document using Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.
7. Tap Done to close the document.

Fill out forms with AutoFill

You can use AutoFill to quickly enter your personal information in supported forms and documents as long as you've completed your My Card in the Contacts app.

1. Go to the file you want to open.
2. Tap the file to open the document.

   If prompted, open the document in the Files app, then tap Save.
3. Tap , then tap a blank field.
4. Tap an option from your saved contact info to complete the field.

   Tap "Choose other" to use AutoFill to enter another person's information from your contact list, such as a family member or caregiver.
5. Tap any field to select it, then tap again to make changes using the onscreen keyboard.
6. Tap Done to close the document.

Add your signature with Markup

In supported apps, such as Notes and Photos, you can use the Markup tools to add your signature to images and documents.

1. In a supported app, tap or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap , then tap Add Signature.
3. Use your finger to sign your name.

   To redo your signature, tap Clear, then sign your name again.
4. Tap Done, then make any of the following adjustments:

   - *Move the signature:* Drag it.
   - *Resize the signature:* Drag any dot along the outline.
   - *Adjust the signature's line weight or color:* Tap an option in the Markup toolbar.
   - *Cut, copy, duplicate, share, or delete the signature:* Tap next to the signature, then tap an option.

5. When you're finished adjusting the signature, tap outside the text box.

Add or delete signatures

After you create a signature, iPhone saves it to use the next time you add a signature with Markup. You can create multiple signatures, such as a nickname or initials, and delete signatures.

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Add Signature.
3. Tap Add or Remove Signature, then tap + to create a new signature.
4. Tap the arrow next to New Signature, then tap the type of signature you want to add, such as given name, nickname, or initials.
5. Use your finger to sign, then tap Done.

To delete a signature, tap ⊕, then tap Add Signature. Tap Add or Remove Signature, then tap ⊖ next to any signatures you want to delete.

See also

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

Fill in personal information in Safari on iPhone

Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone

Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Add text, shapes, stickers, and more

Next
Interact with content in a photo or video

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone

With Visual Look Up, you can identify and learn about architectural landmarks, popular statues, famous art, plants, pets, books, and more that appear in photos and images. Visual Look Up can also identify food and suggest related recipes.

You can use Visual Look Up in Photos, Safari, Quick Look, and more.



1. Open a photo or image in full screen, or pause a video on any frame.

If the Info button displays a symbol with stars such as or , Visual Look Up is available.

2. Tap the starred Info button, then tap Look Up at the top of the photo information to view the Visual Look Up results.
3. Tap to close the Visual Look Up results, then swipe down on the photo or video frame to close the photo information.

Visual Look Up isn't available in all regions or languages. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

See also

See photo and video information on iPhone

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone

Previous
Interact with content in a photo or video

Next
Lift a subject from the photo background

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

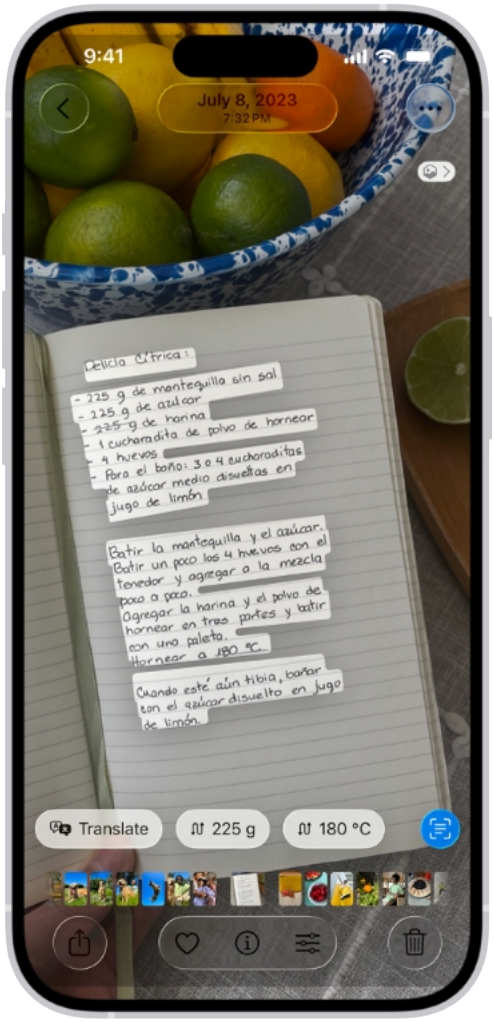
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Live Text recognizes text within your photos, videos, and images you find online. You can interact with this text in multiple ways. You can select text to copy, share, or translate, or you can use quick actions to perform tasks like making a phone call, opening a website, or converting currencies.

You can use Live Text in Safari, Photos, Camera, Quick Look, and more.



Turn on Live Text

Before you start using Live Text, make sure it's turned on for all supported languages.

1. Go to Settings > General > Language & Region.
2. Turn on Live Text (green is on).

Copy, translate, and look up text in a photo or video

1. Open a photo or pause a video that contains text.
2. Tap, then touch and hold the selected text.
3. Use the grab points to select specific text, then do any of the following:
   - *Copy Text:* Copy text to paste into another app such as Notes or Messages.
   - *Select All:* Select all the text within the frame.
   - *Look Up:* Show personalized web suggestions.
   - *Translate:* Translate text.
   - *Search the web:* Look up the selected text on the web.
   - *Share:* Share text using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, or other available options.
4. Tap to return to the photo or video.

Perform tasks within a photo or video with quick actions

Depending on the content of the photo or video, you can tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen to do things like make a phone call, get directions, translate languages, convert currencies, and more.

1. Open a photo or pause a video that contains text.
2. Tap.
3. Tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap to return to the photo or video.

Live Text isn't available in all regions or languages. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

See also

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures

Next
Identify objects in your photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

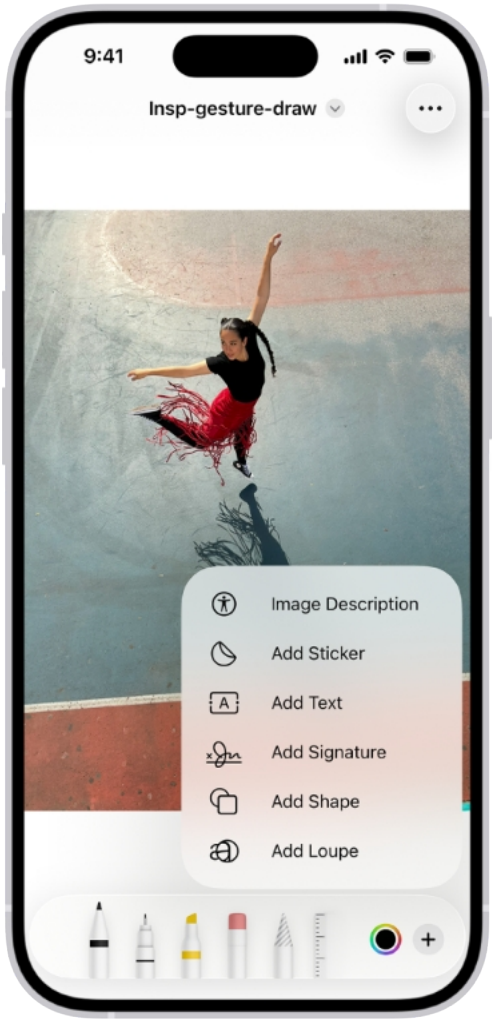
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

In supported apps, such as Notes and Photos, you can use the Markup tools to add text, shapes, stickers, and image descriptions to your images and documents.



Add text

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Add Text.
3. Tap the text box, then use the keyboard to enter text.

4. To adjust the text's font, size, justification, style, or color, tap the tools at the bottom of the screen.
5. To cut, copy, duplicate, or delete the text box, tap ⋯.
6. When you're done, tap outside the text box.
7. To close the Markup toolbar, tap or Done.

Add a shape

1. In a supported app, tap Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Add Shape.
3. Tap the shape you want to add, then do any of the following:

    - *Move the shape:* Drag it.
    - *Resize the shape:* Drag any dot along the shape's outline.
    - *Adjust the shape's direction or dimension:* Drag any green dot along the shape's outline.
    - *Adjust the shape's border color, border width, fill color, and opacity:* Tap an option in the Markup toolbar.
    - *Cut, copy, duplicate, share, or delete:* Tap ⋯ next to the shape, then tap an option.
4. When you're done adjusting the shape, tap the screen.
5. To close the Markup toolbar, tap or Done.

Tip: Pinch the screen open to zoom in on the document so you can adjust shapes up close. To pan when you're zoomed in, drag two fingers. To zoom back out, pinch closed.

Draw a shape

You can use Markup to draw geometrically perfect shapes—lines, arcs, and more—to use in diagrams and sketches.

1. In a supported app, tap Markup, then tap a writing tool in the Markup toolbar.
2. Draw a shape in one stroke with your finger, then pause.

A perfect version of the shape snaps into place, replacing the drawing. (If you prefer to keep the freehand shape, tap ↩.)

The shapes you can draw include straight lines, arrows, arcs, continuous lines with 90-degree turns, squares, circles, rectangles, triangles, pentagons, chat bubbles, hearts, stars, and clouds.

Add a sticker with Markup

You can use Markup to add stickers from your sticker collection to documents and images.

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Add Sticker.
3. Touch a sticker, then drag it onto your document or photo.

   To adjust the angle of the sticker, before lifting your finger, rotate a second finger around the sticker.
4. Touch and drag a dot around the outline of the sticker to adjust its size.

You can download sticker packs from the App Store. You can also create stickers in the Messages app, or by lifting subjects from photos and Live Photos. See Make stickers from your photos.

Add custom image descriptions

In supported apps, such as Photos, you can use Markup to add descriptions to images. VoiceOver reads your custom descriptions when you use the Image Explorer.

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Description.
3. Enter your description, then tap Done.

See also

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use the Camera Control on iPhone

The Camera Control (on supported models) lets you quickly open your iPhone camera and access common camera settings. The location of the Camera Control is shown below.



Open Camera with the Camera Control

Click the Camera Control to open Camera.

Take a photo or video with the Camera Control

1. Click the Camera Control to open Camera.
2. Click again to take a photo, or click and hold to record a video.

   Note: If your camera is set to Video mode when Camera opens, click to start recording.

Settings available with the Camera Control

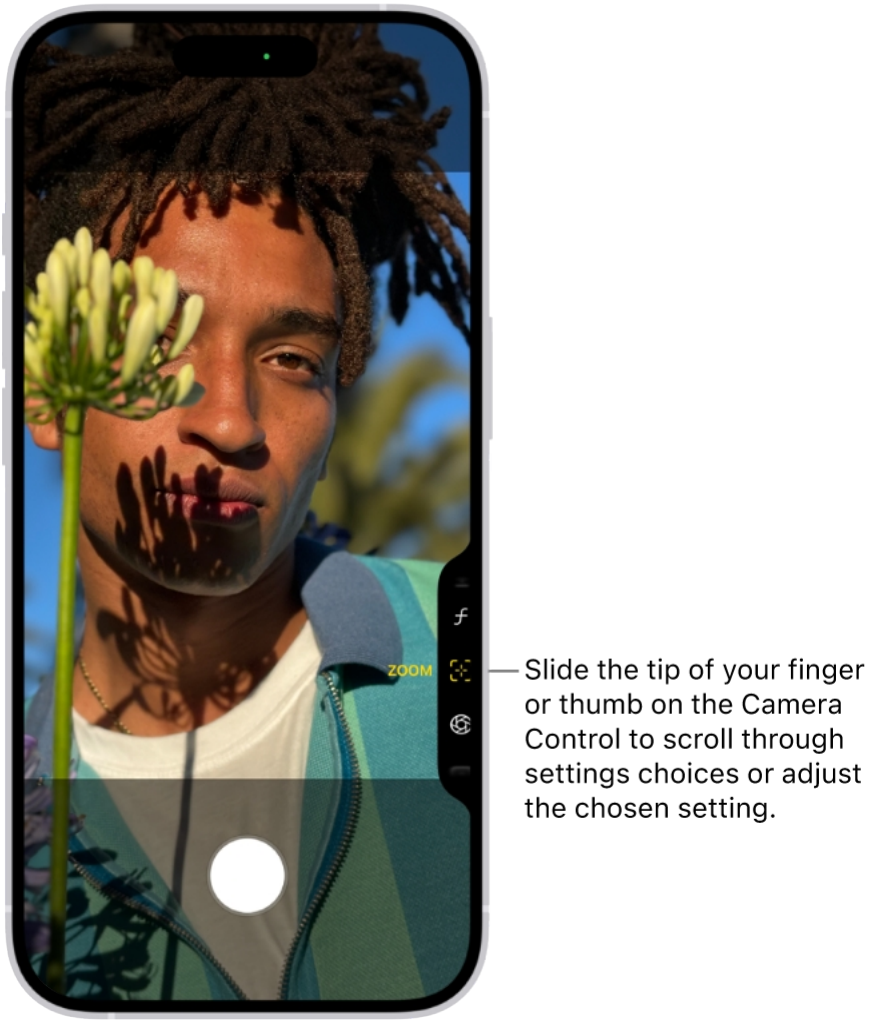
You can select and adjust any of the following settings with the Camera Control:

- *Exposure:* Brighten or darken the scene by increasing or decreasing the exposure.
- *Depth:* Increase or decrease the background depth-of-field effect (this setting turns on Portrait mode if it wasn't already selected).
- *Zoom:* Zoom in or out.
- *Cameras:* Switch between cameras, including the front-facing camera.
- *Styles:* Change the Photographic Style.
- *Tone:* Lighten or deepen the mood by increasing or decreasing the tone.

Note: Not all controls are available in all camera modes.

Select and adjust the Camera Control settings

1. Click the Camera Control to open Camera.
2. Lightly press the Camera Control twice to open an overlay that shows the available settings for that camera mode.



3. Slide your finger on the Camera Control to scroll through the settings choices, then lightly press to select the setting you want.
4. Slide your finger on the Camera Control to adjust the setting.

   The setting is saved and appears the next time you lightly press the Camera Control.
5. Click the Camera Control to take your shot.

Tip: You can choose which Camera Control settings are available in the settings overlay, and change the order they appear in. Go to Settings > Camera > Camera Control > Customize.

Lock the exposure and focus with the Camera Control

You can use the Camera Control to lock the exposure and focus settings on a subject as you take photos and record video.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, tap Camera Control, then turn on Lock Focus and Exposure.

   After you complete steps 1 and 2, you don't need to repeat them.

3. Click the Camera Control to open Camera.
4. Lightly press and hold the Camera Control until you see AE/AF Lock above the frame.
5. Keep your finger touching the Camera Control to maintain the AE/AF Lock.

   Note: If you release the Camera Control, the AE/AF Lock turns off.
6. Click the Camera Control to take photos or click and hold to record video.
7. Release the Camera Control to turn off the AE/AF Lock.

Customize how you open the Camera Control

You can change the number of clicks it takes to open Camera with the Camera Control from one click to two.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, tap Camera Control, then tap Single Click or Double Click.

You can also adjust accessibility options for the Camera Control, such as the pressure required to lightly press or the speed required to lightly double-press. See Adjust accessibility settings for the Camera Control.

Use visual intelligence with Camera Control

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use visual intelligence with Camera Control to quickly learn more about the places and objects around you. For example, get details about a restaurant or business, have text translated or read aloud, find out where to buy something you see, and more. See Use visual intelligence on iPhone.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Use the Camera Control to open another app on iPhone

Adjust accessibility settings for the Camera Control on iPhone

Table of Contents

Use the Camera Control to open another app on iPhone

Instead of opening the camera, you can set the Camera Control (on supported models) to open the Magnifier app, the Code Scanner, or your favorite third-party camera app. You can also turn off the Camera Control so it doesn't open the camera or any other camera app when clicked.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, tap Camera Control, then choose one of the following options:
   - *Camera:* Opens Camera.
   - *Code Scanner:* Opens a QR code scanner.
   - *Magnifier:* Opens the Magnifier app.
   - *None:* No app opens when you click the Camera Control.

See also

Use the Camera Control on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Adjust the shutter volume on your iPhone camera

You can adjust the sound of the camera shutter, or mute it using the Ring/Silent switch on the side of your iPhone.

Change the volume of the shutter sound in Photo mode

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Open Control Center, then drag up or down.
3. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to go back to Camera.

   Note: The shutter doesn't make a sound when Live Photos is turned on (except in some countries and regions).

Mute the shutter sound

Mute the shutter sound using the Ring/Silent switch on the side of your iPhone. To put iPhone in Silent mode, set the Ring/Silent switch so that the switch shows orange. To turn off Silent mode, set the switch back.

Some iPhone models have an Action button instead of a Ring/Silent switch. Press the Action button to turn Silent mode on or off.

Note: In some countries and regions, you can't mute the shutter sound.

See also

Adjust the volume on iPhone

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

Previous
Use the Camera Control to open another app

Next
Adjust HDR camera settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone

You can isolate the subject of a photo or video frame from its background, then copy or share it in other documents and apps.

You can use this feature in Photos, Safari, Quick Look, and more.



1. Open a photo in full screen, or pause a video on any frame.
2. Touch and hold the subject. When an outline appears around the subject, do one of the following:

- Continue to touch the subject, then with another finger, open a document in another app and drag the subject into the document.
- Tap Copy or Copy Subject, then paste the subject into an email, text message, or note.
- Tap Look Up to learn more about the subject.
- Tap Add Sticker, then save the sticker to use in photos, email, text messages, and more.
- Tap Share, then choose a sharing option, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

See also

Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

Previous
Identify objects in your photos and videos

Next
Camera basics

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Adjust HDR camera settings on iPhone

HDR (high dynamic range) helps you get great shots in high-contrast situations. The iPhone camera takes several photos in rapid succession at different exposures and blends them together to bring more highlight and shadow detail to your photos.

By default, iPhone takes photos in HDR (for the rear camera and the front camera) when it's most effective.

Supported models record video in HDR to capture true-to-life color and contrast.

Turn off automatic HDR

By default, iPhone automatically uses HDR when it's most effective. On some iPhone models, you can manually control HDR instead.

On iPhone 11 models, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and iPhone 12, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Smart HDR. Then from the camera screen, tap HDR to turn it off or on.

Turn HDR video off and on

On supported models, iPhone records video in Dolby Vision HDR for true-to-life color and contrast. To turn off HDR video recording, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video or HDR (depending on your model).

See also

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Record a video with your iPhone camera

Record ProRes video with your iPhone camera

Table of Contents

Change sound recording options on iPhone

iPhone 16 models or later use Spatial Audio to record video. Spatial Audio produces more realistic and immersive audio recordings that you can edit later in the Photos app; see Edit sound with Audio Mix. You can also choose to record video in Stereo or Mono. Earlier iPhone models record in Stereo.

Depending on your iPhone model, you can choose to record in Spatial Audio, Stereo, or Mono. Go to Settings > Camera > Record Sound, then choose one of the following:

- *Spatial Audio:* Audio playback is immersive from all directions on supported playback devices.
- *Stereo:* Audio playback is separated between left and right ears.
- *Mono:* Audio playback is the same in both ears.

Note: On iPhone 16 or later, when you record video with either Spatial Audio or Stereo, wind noise is automatically reduced. To change this setting, go to Settings > Camera > Record Sound, then turn off Wind Noise Reduction.

With supported models of AirPods and AirPods Pro, you can use your AirPods as a microphone when you record video. See Use AirPods or AirPods Pro with supported camera apps in the AirPods User Guide.

See also

Take spatial photos and record spatial videos for Apple Vision Pro with your iPhone camera

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

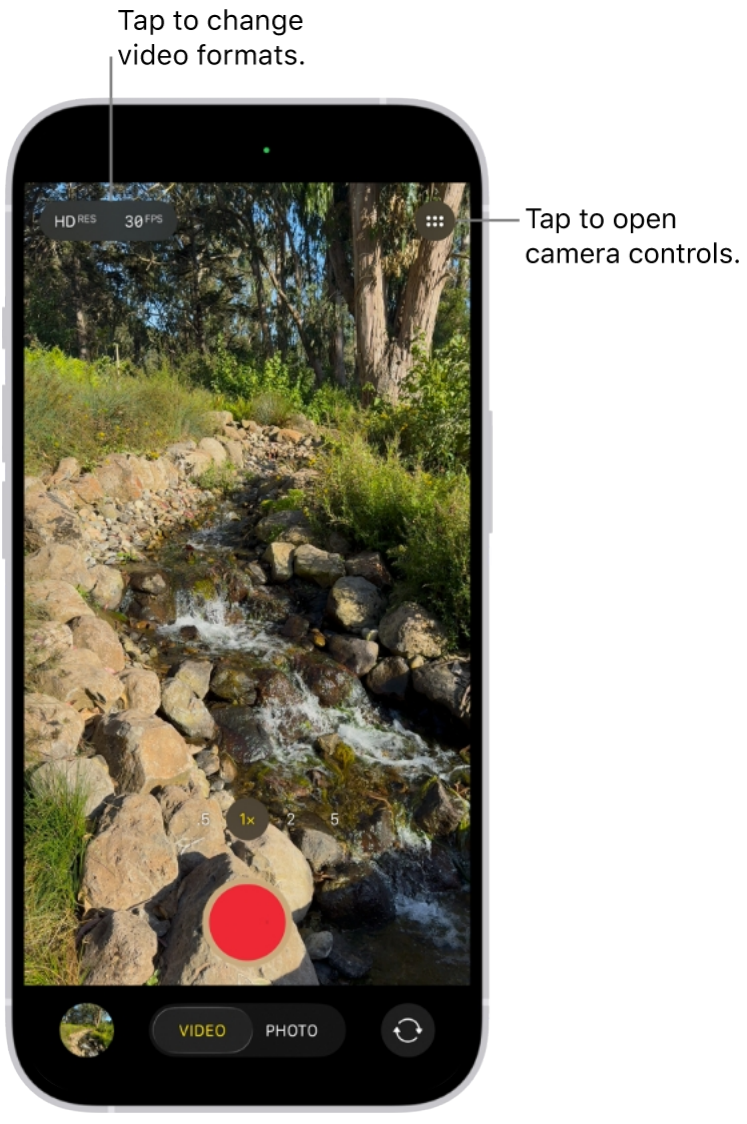
Record a video with your iPhone camera

Use your iPhone camera to record videos. Learn how to record Dual Capture videos, switch between video formats, change modes to take Cinematic, slow-motion, and time-lapse videos, and use Action mode to improve video stabilization.

Note: Video recording isn't available during a phone or FaceTime call.

Record a video

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.



2. Tap Video to switch to Video mode.
3. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models) to start recording. While recording, you can do the following:
    - Tap the white Shutter button to take a still photo.
    - Tap the Pause button to pause recording.
    - Pinch the screen to zoom in and out.
    - Tap .5x, 1x, 2x, 3x, 4x, 5x, or 8x (depending on your model) to zoom in and out.

      For a more precise zoom control, touch and hold 1x, then slide the dial.
    - On supported models, use the Camera Control to zoom in and out.
4. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models) to stop recording.

With supported models of AirPods and AirPods Pro, you can press the AirPod stem to record a video. See Use AirPods or AirPods Pro with supported camera apps in the AirPods User Guide.

If you have an Apple Watch, you can use the Camera Remote to record a video. See Use Camera Remote on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Note: For your security, a green dot appears at the top of the screen when Camera is in use. See Control access to hardware features on iPhone.

Record Dual Capture video

On iPhone 17, iPhone 17 Pro, iPhone 17 Pro Max, and iPhone Air, you can record Dual Capture video, which allows you to record yourself—and the action in front of you—at the same time.



1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Select Video mode.
3. Tap , then tap Dual Capture.
4. Tap the screen to show the Record button, then tap the Record button to start recording.
5. To turn off Dual Capture, tap .

Change video recording formats

Depending on your iPhone model, you can record video in high-quality formats, like HD, 4K, HD (PAL), and 4K (PAL). Also depending on your model, you can change the fps rates to 24, 25, 30, 60, or 120.

When Camera is open and Video mode is selected, tap the resolution and frame rate values onscreen to see the formats available on your iPhone. Tap a format option or an fps value to use it.

To enable additional formats, follow the instruction below. Options vary depending on your iPhone model.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then tap Record Video.
3. Select from the list of video formats and frame rates that your iPhone supports.

   Note: Faster frame rates and higher resolutions result in larger video files.

Videos you record at faster frame rates can be played back at slower speeds in the Photos app. See Trim video length, adjust slow motion, and edit audio.

Note: PAL is a television video format used in many countries and regions in Europe, Africa, Asia, and South America.

Use Action mode

On supported models, Action mode provides improved stabilization while recording in Video mode. Tap , then tap Action. Tap onscreen to turn it off.

Tip: To always show the Action mode button on your camera screen, go to Settings > Camera > Indicators, then turn on Action Mode.

Action mode works best in bright light. If you want to use Action mode in lower light, go to Settings > Camera, tap Record Video, then turn on Action Mode Lower Light. Action mode has a maximum capture resolution of 2.8K.

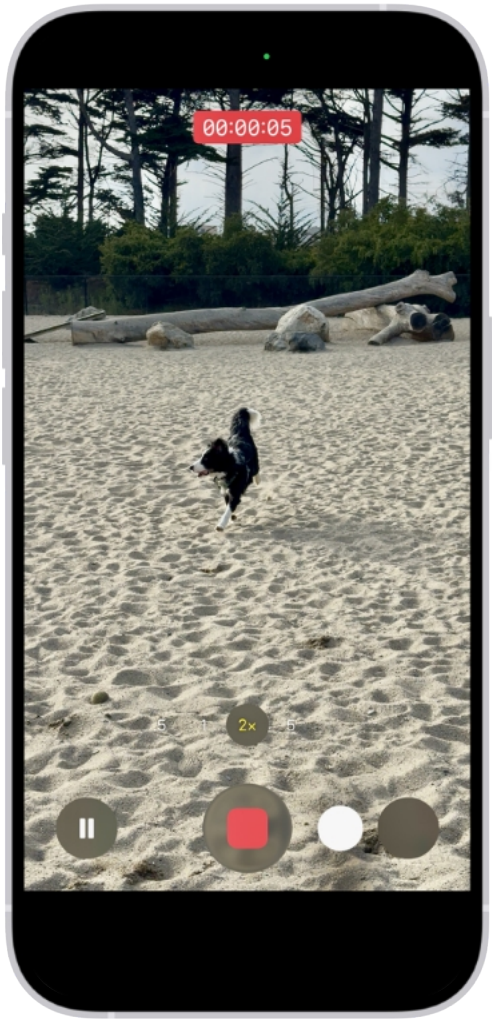
Record a video in Photo mode

You can record a video while in Photo mode instead of switching to Video mode. While recording, you can move the Record button into the lock position and take still photos at the same time.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the Shutter button to start recording.
3. Slide the Shutter button to the right and let go over the lock for hands-free recording.

   - Both the Record and Shutter buttons appear below the frame—tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.

   - Swipe up to zoom in on your subject, or if you're recording hands-free, you can pinch out on the screen to zoom in.
4. Tap the Record button to stop recording.



Tip: Press and hold the volume up or volume down button to start recording a video in Photo mode.

On supported models, you can click and hold the Camera Control to record videos in full resolution.

Tap the thumbnail to view the video in the Photos app.

Record a slow-motion video

Slo-mo mode records your video as normal and then plays it back in slow motion. You can edit your video later to choose which parts play in slow motion; see Edit the slow-motion section of a video shot in Slo-mo mode.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Touch Photo or Video mode, then swipe to select Slo-mo mode.

   On supported models, you can tap to record in Slo-mo mode with the front camera.
3. To start recording, tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models).

You can tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.

4. To stop recording, tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models).

To set a portion of the video to play in slow motion and the rest at regular speed, tap the video thumbnail, then tap Edit. Slide the vertical bars below the frame viewer to define the section you want to play back in slow motion.

Depending on your model, you can change the slow motion frame rate and resolution. To change slow-motion recording settings, go to Settings > Camera, then tap Record Slo-mo.

Tip: On iPhone 16 Pro models and iPhone 17 Pro models, you can record slow-motion videos in Video mode. Tap the format and resolution values in the corner of the screen, then select 120 FPS.

Record a time-lapse video

Capture footage at selected intervals to create a time-lapse video of an experience over a period of time—such as a setting sun or traffic flowing.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Select Time-lapse mode.
3. Position your iPhone to frame your subject, then place it on a stable surface or tripod.
4. Tap the Record button or click the Camera Control (on supported models) to start and stop recording.

Tip: On iPhone 12 or later, use a tripod to capture time-lapse videos with more detail and brightness when recording in low-light situations.

See also

Record ProRes video with your iPhone camera

Change video recording settings on iPhone

Trim video length, adjust speed, and edit audio on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Take spatial photos and record spatial videos for Apple Vision Pro with your iPhone camera

On supported models, you can take spatial photos and record spatial videos, and then relive the memories in three dimensions in the Photos app with Apple Vision Pro.

Take spatial photos and record spatial videos

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Swipe right on the screen to select Spatial mode.
3. Rotate your iPhone to landscape orientation.
4. Tap or to take a spatial photo or record a spatial video.
5. For best results, do the following:
    - Keep your iPhone steady and level.
    - Frame your subjects 3 to 8 feet from the camera.
    - Use lighting that is even and bright.
6. Tap the Shutter button or Record button to take a photo or begin recording a video.

After you take a spatial photo or video, you can view it in three dimensions in the Photos app on your Apple Vision Pro. You can also view and share spatial photos and videos just like regular photos and videos on any of your other Apple devices. Spatial photos and videos sync to all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and have iCloud Photos turned on.

See also

Table of Contents

Save camera settings on iPhone

You can save the last camera mode, filter, lighting, depth, and Live Photo settings you used so they're not reset the next time you open Camera.

---

1. Go to Settings > Camera > Preserve Settings.
2. Turn on any of the following:
   - *Camera Mode:* Save the last camera mode you used, such as Portrait or Pano.

     See Switch between camera modes.
   - *Photographic Style:* Save the last used Photographic Style (on supported models).

     See Use Photographic Styles with your iPhone camera.
   - *Creative Controls:* Save the last settings you used for a light setting.

     See Take a photo with a filter, Adjust the Portrait Lighting, and Adjust the background blur.
   - Depth Control: Save the last depth control setting you used in Photo, Portrait, and Cinematic modes.

     See Adjust the background blur and Record videos in Cinematic mode.
   - *Macro Control:* Preserve the Auto Macro setting rather than automatically using the Ultra Wide camera to capture macro photos and videos (on supported models).

     See Control automatic macro switching.
   - *Exposure Adjustment:* Save the exposure control setting (on iPhone 11 and later).

     See Manually adjust focus and exposure.

- *Night Mode:* Save the Night mode setting rather than reset to Auto (on supported models).

  See Take Night mode photos.

- *Portrait Zoom:* Save the Portrait mode zoom rather than reset to the default lens (this setting is on by default on supported models).

  See Take portraits.

- *Action Mode:* Keep the Action Mode setting turned on rather than reset to off (on supported models).

- *ProRAW & Resolution Control:* Save the Apple ProRAW setting (on supported models).

  See Take Apple ProRAW photos.

- *Apple ProRes:* Save the Apple ProRes setting (on supported models).

  See Record ProRes videos.

- *Live Photo:* Save the Live Photo setting. This setting is on by default.

  See Take Live Photos.

See also

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Customize the Main camera lens on iPhone

Change video recording settings on iPhone

Previous
Change video recording settings

Next
Customize the Main camera lens

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Record video in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

Cinematic mode applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. iPhone automatically identifies the subject of the video and keeps it in focus throughout the recording; if a new subject is identified, iPhone automatically transitions the point of focus. You can also manually adjust the point of focus while you record, or change it later in the Photos app.

Cinematic mode is available on supported models.

---

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Swipe left on the screen to select Cinematic mode.
3. Before recording, you can make the following adjustments:
   - Tap , then tap Aperture or Exposure to adjust these values.
   - Tap 2 or 3 next to 1x to zoom in (on supported models).
   - Tap the resolution and fps values in the corner of the screen to change the settings (on supported models).
4. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording.
   - A yellow frame on the screen indicates the person in focus; a gray frame indicates a person is detected, but not in focus. Tap the gray box to change the focus; tap again to lock the focus on that person.
   - If there isn't a person in the video, tap anywhere on the screen to set the focus point.
   - Touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a single distance.

- On iPhone 15 Pro models, iPhone 16 Pro models, and iPhone 17 Pro models, tap 2 to zoom in.

  For a more precise zoom control, touch and hold 1x, then slide the dial.

5. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.

Tip: On supported models, you can use the Camera Control to adjust the depth-of-field effect. See Select and adjust the Camera Control settings.

After you record a video in Cinematic mode, you can remove or change the cinematic effect. See Edit Cinematic mode videos.

See also

Switch between camera modes

Change video recording settings on iPhone

Previous
Record ProRes video

Next
Change video recording settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Change video recording settings on iPhone

Make changes to the default video recording options on your iPhone such as Auto FPS settings, sound recording options, HDR recording, and more. To change recording formats and frame rate values, see Change video recording formats.

Adjust Auto FPS settings

iPhone can improve the video quality in low-light situations by automatically reducing the frame rate to 24 fps.

Go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then, depending on your model, do one of the following:

- Tap Auto FPS, then apply Auto FPS to only 30-fps video, to both 30- and 60-fps video, or turn it off.
- Turn on Auto Low Light FPS.

Turn Stereo sound off and on

iPhone uses multiple microphones to achieve stereo sound.

To turn off stereo recording, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Record Stereo Sound.

On iPhone 16 models or later, your camera records in Spatial Audio by default. To change recording settings, go to Settings > Camera > Record Sound, then tap Spatial Audio, Stereo, or Mono. See Change sound recording options on iPhone.

Turn HDR video off and on

On supported models, iPhone records video in HDR and shares HDR videos with devices using iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later; other devices receive an SDR version of the same video.

To turn off HDR recording, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video.

Turn Lock Camera on and off

On supported models, the Lock Camera setting prevents switching between cameras while recording video. Lock Camera is off by default.

To turn on Lock Camera, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Lock Camera.

Turn Enhanced Stabilization off and on

On supported models, the Enhanced Stabilization setting zooms in slightly to provide improved stabilization while recording in Video mode or Cinematic mode. Enhanced Stabilization is on by default.

To turn off Enhanced Stabilization, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn off Enhanced Stabilization.

Turn Lock White Balance on and off

You can lock the white balance when recording videos on your iPhone to improve accurate color capture based on lighting conditions.

To turn on Lock White Balance, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Lock White Balance.

Adjust default Slo-mo recording frame rate

Slo-mo is set to record at 1080 HD at 240 fps from the back camera and 1080 HD at 120 fps from the front camera. To change the back camera to 120 fps, go to Settings > Camera > Record Slo-mo.

Adjust Cinematic mode resolution and frame rate

On supported models, Cinematic video is set to record at 1080 HD at 30 fps. To switch to 4K at 24 fps or 4K at 30 fps, go to Settings > Camera > Record Cinematic.

Turn on Action Mode Lower Light

On supported models, if you want to use Action mode in lower light, go to Settings > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Action Mode Lower Light.

See also

Record a video with your iPhone camera

Record ProRes video with your iPhone camera

Record video in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

Previous
Record video in Cinematic mode

Next
Save camera settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Record ProRes video with your iPhone camera

On supported models, you can use your iPhone camera to record and edit videos in ProRes, which offers higher color fidelity and less compression.

ProRes is available on all cameras, including the front camera. ProRes isn't supported in Cinematic, Time-lapse, or Slo-Mo mode.

Note: ProRes videos result in larger file sizes.

Turn on ProRes video recording

1. Go to the Settings app on iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, tap Formats, then turn on Apple ProRes.

Repeat these steps when you want to turn off ProRes video recording.

Record a video with ProRes

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Select Video mode, tap the resolution and fps values in the corner of the screen, then tap a ProRes option.
3. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models) to start recording.

   While recording, you can pinch to zoom in or out, tap .5x, 1x, 2x, 3x, 4x, 5x, and 8x (depending on your model) to switch between lenses, or touch and hold the lens chooser, then slide the dial for more precise zoom control.
4. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models) to stop recording.

ProRes is available for recording up to 4K at 30 fps. iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max can record 4K at 60 fps when connected to a compatible external storage device. iPhone 16 Pro, iPhone 16 Pro Max, iPhone 17 Pro, and iPhone 17 Pro Max can record 4K at 120 fps when connected to a compatible external storage device.

On iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 16 Pro models with 128 GB, recording to internal storage is only available at 1080p at 30 fps. You can record 4K up to 60 fps on iPhone 15 Pro models and up to 120 fps on iPhone 16 Pro and iPhone 17 Pro models when connected to a compatible external storage device. See the Apple Support article About Apple ProRes on iPhone.

On iPhone 17 Pro and iPhone 17 Pro Max, you can record videos in ProRes RAW using applications such as Final Cut Camera to maximize the amount of detail and information captured by the camera system.

See also

Change video recording settings on iPhone

Record a video with your iPhone camera

Record video in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

Previous
Change sound recording options

Next
Record video in Cinematic mode

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

View, share, and print photos on iPhone

All photos and videos you take with your iPhone camera are saved in the Photos app. With iCloud Photos turned on, all new photos and videos are automatically uploaded and available in Photos on all your devices that are set up with iCloud Photos (with iOS 8.1, iPadOS 13, or later).

Note: If Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Locations Services, photos and videos are tagged with location data that can be used by apps and photo-sharing websites. See Control the location information you share.

View your photos

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Tap the thumbnail image in the lower-left corner.
3. Swipe left or right to see the photos you've taken recently.
4. Tap the screen to show or hide the controls.
5. Tap All Photos to see all your photos and videos saved in the Photos app.

Share and print your photos

1. While viewing a photo on your iPhone, tap .
2. To share your photo, select an option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages.
3. To print your photo, swipe up to select Print from the list of actions.

See Use AirDrop to send items to nearby Apple devices.

See the Apple Support article Use AirPrint to print from your iPhone or iPad.

Upload photos and keep them up to date across devices

Use iCloud Photos to upload photos and videos from your iPhone to iCloud and then access them on other devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. iCloud Photos is useful if you want to keep your photos up to date across multiple devices or save space on your iPhone. To turn on iCloud Photos, go to Settings > Apps > Photos, then turn on iCloud Photos.

See also

View photos and videos on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Change advanced camera settings

Next
Use Live Text

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Customize the Main camera lens on iPhone

On iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, iPhone 16 Pro, iPhone 16 Pro Max, iPhone 17 Pro, and iPhone 17 Pro Max, the default for the 1x Main camera lens is 24 mm. On iPhone Air, the default is 26 mm. You can add 28 mm and 35 mm as secondary lenses, and change which lens is the default Main lens.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, tap Formats, then tap Photo Mode and make sure 24 MP is selected.
3. Go back to Settings, tap Camera, then tap Main Camera or Fusion Camera below Photo Capture (depending on your model).
4. Below Additional Lenses, turn on the lenses you want to add as additional Main lenses.
5. Below Default Lens, tap the option you want to use for the default Main lens.

   When you open Camera, the Main lens will be either 1x (24 mm), 1.2x (28 mm), or 1.5x (35 mm). On iPhone Air, the Main lens will be either 1x (26mm), 1.1x (28 mm), or 1.4x (35 mm). Tap the Main camera lens to switch between the additional lenses you chose.

See also

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Previous
Save camera settings

Next
Change advanced camera settings

Table of Contents

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Learn about advanced iPhone camera features that let you capture photos more quickly, apply tailored and enhanced looks to your photos, and view content outside the camera frame.

Change the Main camera default resolution

On supported models, you can change the default resolution of the Main or Fusion cameras from 24 MP to 12 MP.

Go to Settings > Camera > Formats > Photo Mode, then choose 12 MP or 24 MP.

To capture resolution at 48 MP, go to Settings > Camera > Formats, then turn on Resolution Control or ProRAW & Resolution Control (depending on your model).

After you turn on ProRAW & Resolution Control, you can choose the default compression format. Open Camera, then tap the control at the top of the screen to turn the format you want to use on and off.

To learn about customizing the Main and Fusion camera, see Customize the Main camera lens on iPhone.

Turn View Outside the Frame off and on

On supported models, the camera preview displays content outside the frame to show you what can be captured by using another lens in the camera system with a wider field of view. View Outside the Frame is on by default.

To turn off View Outside the Frame, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off View Outside the Frame.

Turn Prioritize Faster Shooting off and on

The Prioritize Faster Shooting setting modifies how images are processed—allowing you to capture more photos when you rapidly tap the Shutter button. Prioritize Faster Shooting is on by default.

To turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting.

Turn Lens Correction off and on

On supported models, the Lens Correction setting adjusts photos taken with the front camera or Ultra Wide camera for more natural-looking results. Lens Correction is on by default.

To turn off Lens Correction, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Lens Correction.

Turn Scene Detection off and on

On iPhone 12 models, the Scene Detection setting can identify what you're taking a photo of and apply a tailored look to bring out the best qualities in the scene. Scene Detection is on by default.

To turn off Scene Detection, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Scene Detection.

Stop saving photos taken in Messages

Photos you take in the Messages app are automatically saved to your library in the Photos app.

To turn this feature off, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Save Captures to Photo Library.

Turn off lens cleaning hints

On supported models, iPhone detects if your lens is smudged and suggests you clean it for the clearest possible picture.

To turn off lens cleaning hints, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Lens Cleaning Hints.

Table of Contents

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Use your iPhone camera to copy, share, look up, and translate text that appears within the camera frame. Camera also provides quick actions to easily call phone numbers, visit websites, convert currencies, and more, based on the text that appears in the frame.

---

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Position your iPhone so the text appears within the camera frame.
3. After the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap .
4. Touch and hold the text, then use the grab points to select specific text and perform any of the actions below:
   - *Copy:* Copy text to paste into another app such as Notes or Messages.
   - *Select All:* Select all the text within the frame.
   - *Look Up:* Show personalized web suggestions.
   - *Translate:* Translate text.
   - *Search Web:* Look up the selected text on the web.
   - *Share:* Share text using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, or other available options.

     Tip: Depending on the content, you can tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen to do things like make a phone call, visit a website, start an email, convert currencies, and more.
5. Tap to return to Camera.

To turn off Live Text on your iPhone camera, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Show Detected Text.

Note: Live Text isn't available in all regions or languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use visual intelligence with Camera Control to interact with text around you. See Use visual intelligence on iPhone.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Scan a QR code with your iPhone camera

Previous
View, share, and print photos

Next
Scan a QR code

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Scan a QR code with your iPhone camera

You can use your iPhone camera or the Code Scanner to scan Quick Response (QR) codes for links to websites, apps, coupons, tickets, and more. The camera automatically detects and highlights a QR code.

Use the camera to read a QR code

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Position iPhone so that the QR code appears inside the camera frame.
3. Tap the notification that appears on the bottom of the screen to go to the relevant website or app.

Tip: On supported models, you can use the Camera Control to open the Code Scanner. See Use the Camera Control to open another app on iPhone.

Scan a code from Control Center

1. Add the Scan Code control to Control Center (see Customize controls).
2. Open Control Center, tap Scan Code, then position iPhone so that the code appears on the screen.

   Tip: Tap the flashlight to add more light.

See also

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Use Camera to capture an email address

Table of Contents

Update apps from the App Store on iPhone

Apps installed by default on your iPhone are updated whenever you update iOS. Apps that you download from the App Store app are automatically updated by default, but you can manually update an app.

Turn off automatic app updates

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap App Store.
3. Turn off App Updates.

Manually update apps

1. Go to the App Store app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your picture at the top right.
3. Scroll down, then tap Update next to apps you want to update, or tap Update All.

After an app is updated, it appears in the list of apps below Updated Recently.

See also

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Change settings and restrictions in the App Store on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use App Clips on iPhone

You can do a task quickly with an app clip—a small part of an app—like rent a bike, pay for parking, or order food. Discover App Clips in Safari, Maps, and Messages, or in the real world through NFC tags, QR codes, and App Clip Codes—unique markers that take you to specific App Clips.



NFC integrated



Scan only

Get and use App Clips

1. Get App Clips from any of the following:

    - *App Clip Code or QR code:* Scan the code using the iPhone camera or Code Scanner in Control Center.
    - *NFC-integrated App Clip Code or NFC tag:* Hold iPhone near the NFC tag.
    - *Maps:* Tap the app clip link on the information card (for supported locations).
    - *Safari or Messages:* Tap the app clip link.

2. When the app clip appears on the screen, tap Open or Play.

In supported App Clips, you can use Sign in with Apple, then make a payment using Apple Pay.

With some App Clips, you can tap the banner at the top of the screen to see the full app.

Find App Clips you used on iPhone

Go to App Library, tap the search field at the top of the screen, then scroll down to the end of the alphabetical list.

Remove App Clips

1. Go to App Library, then tap the search field at the top of the screen.
2. Enter the name of the app clip, or scroll down to the App Clips at the bottom.
3. Touch and hold the app clip you want to delete, then tap Remove App Clip.

See also

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Previous
Get apps

Next
Update apps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

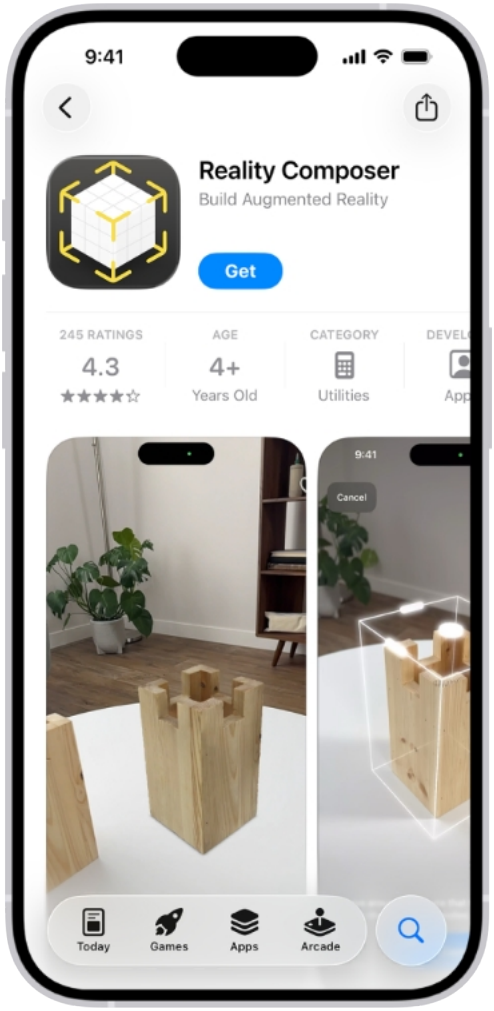
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

In the App Store app, you can discover new apps, featured stories, tips and tricks, in-app events, and offers.



Note: You need an internet connection and an Apple Account to use the App Store. The availability of the App Store and Apple Arcade varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Discover and find apps

1. Go to the App Store app on your iPhone.

2. Tap any of the following:

- *Today:* Browse featured stories, apps, and in-app events.
- *Games:* Find your next game across dozens of categories including action, adventure, racing, puzzles, and more.
- *Apps:* Explore new releases, see the top charts, or browse by category.
- *Arcade:* Enjoy the curated collection of premium games from Apple Arcade (subscription required) without ads or in-app purchases.
- *Search:* Tap 🔍, then enter what you're looking for. You can search by app name, category, developer, and more. You can also explore different categories or browse the suggested apps.

Get information about an app

1. Go to the App Store app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an app's name or icon to see the following details:

- Screenshots or previews
- Ratings and reviews
- In-app events and offers
- Developer
- File size
- Compatibility with other Apple devices
- Supported languages
- Age rating
- Game Center and Family Sharing support
- Supported accessibility features

- Privacy information

Buy and download an app

1. Go to the App Store app on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to the app you want, then tap Get (if the app is free) or the price.

   If you see instead of Get or the price, you've already purchased this app before. Tap to download it again for free.
3. If required, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

   Purchases are made with the payment method associated with your Apple Account.

You can find the app in the Recently Added category in App Library. While the app is downloading, a progress indicator appears on the app icon. See Find and use your apps in App Library and Change where new apps get downloaded.

Share and approve purchases with Family Sharing

If you're in a Family Sharing group, you can view and download eligible apps purchased by other family members.

Note: You can see purchases made by family members only if they choose to share their purchases. Purchases made with Family Sharing may not be accessible after the family member leaves the family group.

The family organizer can review and approve eligible purchases made by other family members under a certain age. See Turn on Ask to Buy.

See also

Change settings and restrictions in the App Store on iPhone

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

Table of Contents

See your purchases and subscriptions in the App Store on iPhone

You can view, change, and cancel your subscriptions from Apple as well as subscriptions you purchased in apps from the App Store.

See your purchase history

Your purchase history includes free and paid apps from the App Store as well as in-app purchases, subscriptions, music, videos, books, AppleCare+, and more.

1. Go to the App Store app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your picture at the top right, then tap Purchase History.

   You may be asked to authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
3. To narrow the results, enter the name, price, or order ID in the search field.
4. To change the search criteria, tap “Last 90 Days, Paid,” then set any of the following:

   - Date range
   - Cost (free or paid)
   - Type
   - Family member (available if you’re the organizer of a Family Sharing group)

View and redownload apps

1. Go to the App Store app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your picture at the top right, then tap Apps.

3. If you're part of a Family Sharing group, tap My Apps or choose a family member.
4. Find the app you want to download (if it's still available in the App Store), then tap .

Change or cancel a subscription

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Subscriptions.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Cancel a subscription:* Tap an active subscription, then tap Cancel Subscription or Cancel All Services.
- *Change a subscription:* Tap an active subscription, then choose a different option.
- *Renew a subscription:* Tap an expired subscription, then tap Renew.
- *Share a subscription:* Turn on Share with Family to automatically share eligible subscriptions with other members in your Family Sharing group.
- *Get Renewal Receipts:* Turn on Renewal Receipt Emails to receive a receipt each time one of your subscriptions renews.

See also

Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone

Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone

Previous
Share and send apps

Next
Change settings and restrictions

Helpful? Yes No

Share and send apps in the App Store on iPhone

When you find something special in the App Store, you can share a link to it or send it as a gift.

Note: Not all apps are available to send as gifts. See the Apple Support article Gift apps, media, and more from Apple.

1. Go to the App Store app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the app you want to share or give to see its details.
3. Tap, then choose a sharing option or tap Gift App.

See also

Apple Support article: Redeem a gift card with your iPhone, iPad, or Apple Vision Pro

Previous
Install and manage fonts

Next
See your purchases and subscriptions

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Install and manage fonts on iPhone

You can download fonts from the App Store app and use them in documents you create on iPhone.

Install fonts

1. Go to the App Store app on your iPhone.
2. Get an app containing fonts.
3. Open the app to install the fonts.

Manage fonts

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Fonts.

See also

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Find settings on iPhone

Table of Contents

Change settings and restrictions in the App Store on iPhone

In the App Store app, you can review and download purchases made by you or other family members. You can also set restrictions and customize your preferences for the App Store in the Settings app.

Change your App Store settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap App Store, then adjust any of the following settings:

- *Location:* Allow App Store to use your location and show apps and ads relevant to you.
- *Siri:* Allow Siri to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use the App Store.
- *Search:* Allow content from the App Store to appear in Search.
- *Cellular Data:* To allow App Store to use cellular, turn on Cellular Data. Adjust other settings for cellular data such as automatic downloads.
- *App Downloads:* Automatically install apps you purchased on your other devices.
- *App Updates:* Automatically download and install app updates.
- *In-App Content:* Automatically download in-app content in the background before the first time you open the app.
- *Video Autoplay:* Automatically play app preview videos.

- *In-App Ratings & Reviews:* Let apps ask for your feedback.
- *Offload Unused Apps:* Automatically remove unused apps. You can reinstall an app at any time if it's still available in the App Store.

Set content restrictions and prevent in-app purchases

After you turn on content and privacy restrictions, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then tap Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
4. Tap iTunes & App Store Purchases, then choose restrictions for installing or deleting apps and in-app purchases.
5. Tap App Store, Media, Web & Games, then choose age-appropriate restrictions such as the following:
   - *Apps:* Restrict apps by age ratings.
   - *App Clips:* Prevent App Clips from opening.

Set Screen Time limits and App Store restrictions for kids

With Family Sharing, the organizer—or another adult designated as parent/guardian—can set up the following parental controls for children or other members in the Family Sharing group:

- Set restrictions for installing and deleting apps and in-app purchases. See Set up Screen Time for a child.
- Allow your child to access only age-appropriate apps. See Share your child's age range for apps.
- Review your child's requests to purchase and download apps. See Turn on Ask to Buy.

See also

See your purchases and subscriptions in the App Store on iPhone

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

Find settings on iPhone

Previous
See your purchases and subscriptions

Next
Buy books and audiobooks

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

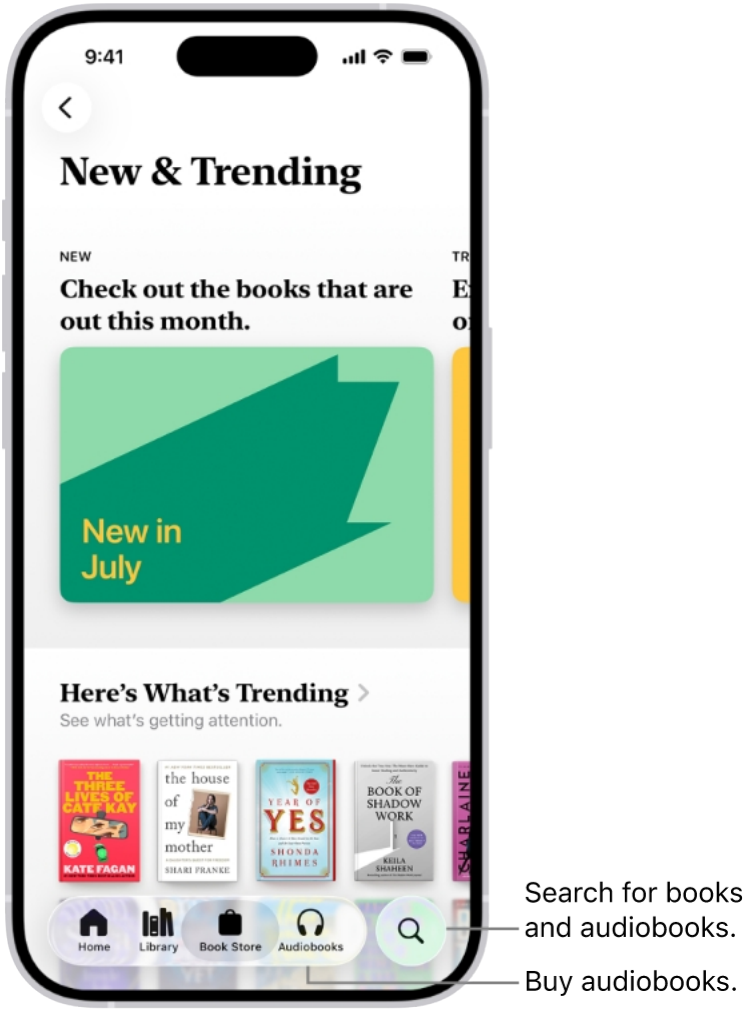
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

In the Books app, you can find today's bestsellers, view top charts, explore series, and browse lists curated by Apple Books editors. After you select a book or audiobook, you can read or listen to it right in the Books app.

Note: Apple Books isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.



1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Book Store or Audiobooks to browse titles, or tap Search to look for a specific title, author, series, or genre.

Tip: Tap Sections at the top of the screen to view titles in categories like Top Charts and Book Clubs, or genres like Biographies & Memoirs and Young Adults.

3. Tap a book cover to see more details, read a sample, listen to a preview, or mark as Want to Read.
4. Tap Buy to purchase a title, or tap Get to download a free title.

   All purchases are made with the payment method associated with your Apple Account.

You can allow books and audiobooks to download automatically over your cellular network when you aren't connected to Wi-Fi. Go to Settings > Apps > Books, then turn on Automatic Downloads. Tap Downloads, then choose Always Allow, Ask If Over 200 MB, or Always Ask.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

See also

Read books in the Books app on iPhone

Listen to audiobooks in the Books app on iPhone

Previous
Change settings and restrictions

Next
Read books

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

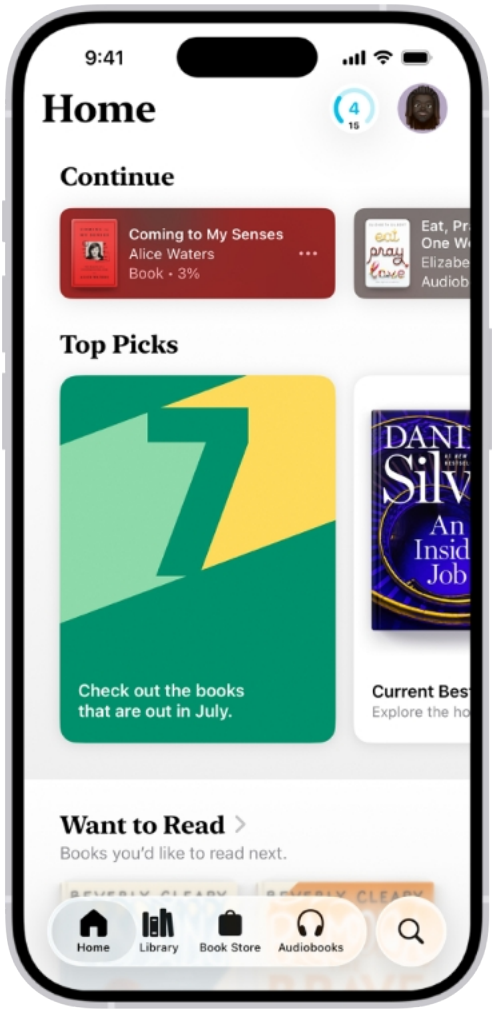
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Read books in the Books app on iPhone

In the Books app, you can view the books you're currently reading, want to read, book collections, and more.

- *Home:* Tap to access the books, audiobooks, and PDFs you're currently reading, get personalized suggestions for your next read, find books you've marked as want to read, and more. You can also set daily reading goals and keep track of the books you finish throughout the year.
- *Library:* Tap to see all of the books, audiobooks, series, samples, and PDFs you either got from the Book Store or manually added to Books. Tap to see your library sorted into collections, such as Want to Read, My Samples, Audiobooks, Finished, or custom collections you created (see Create a collection).



Note: Apple Books isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Read a book

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to a book, tap the cover to open it, then do any of the following:

   - *Turn the page:* Tap the right margin or swipe right to left.

     To allow either the left or right margin to turn the page, go to Settings > Apps > Books, then turn on Both Margins Advance.

   - *Go back to the previous page:* Tap the left margin or swipe left to right.

   - *Go back to previous reading location:* Tap the page, then tap the rounded arrow in the top-left corner of the page. Tap the rounded arrow again, but in the top-right corner, to go back to your current location.

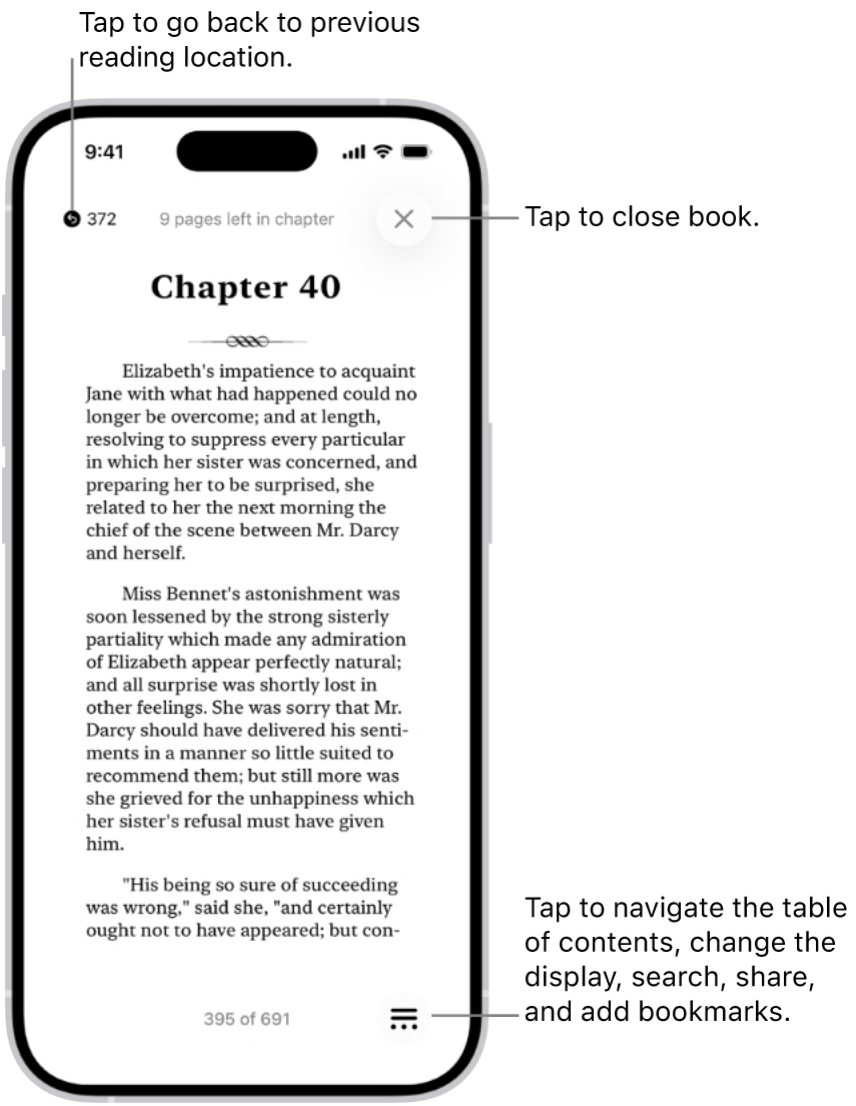
   - *Go to a specific page or location:* Tap the page, tap , then tap Search Book. Enter a word, phrase, or page number, then tap a result.

   - *Use the table of contents:* Tap the page, tap , then tap Contents.

     Tip: To quickly move through a book, touch and hold Contents, then drag your finger left or right; release your finger to go directly to that location in the book.

   - *Lock screen orientation:* Tap the page, tap , then tap to lock the screen in horizontal or vertical orientation.

   - *Close a book:* Tap the page, then tap in the top-right corner. Or swipe down from the top of the page (not available if vertical scrolling is on).



Change text and page appearance

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Open a book, then tap at the bottom of the page.

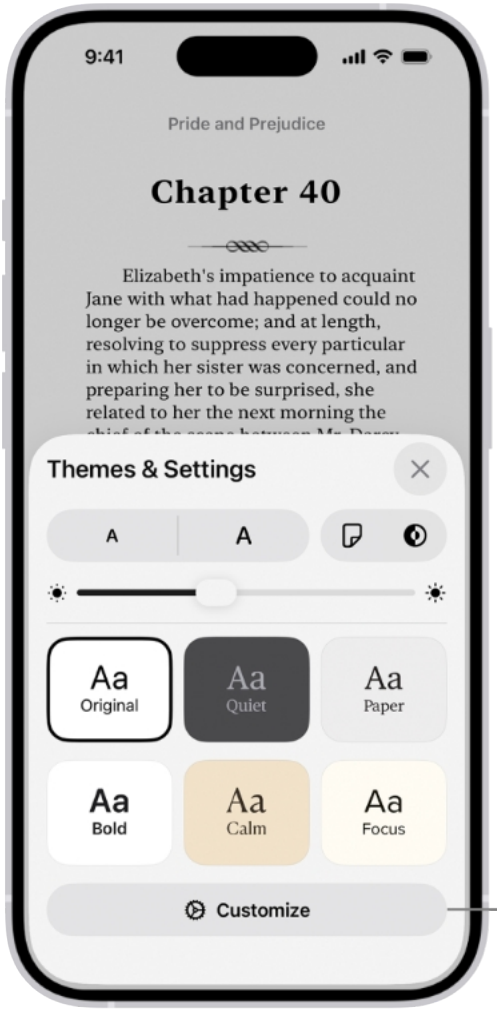
   You may need to tap the page for to appear.
3. Tap Themes & Settings, then do any of the following:

   - *Change the font size:* Tap the large A to increase the font size or tap the small A to decrease it.
   - *Turn on vertical scrolling or change the page turn style:* Tap , then tap Curl, Fast Fade, or Scroll.

     To turn on vertical scrolling when viewing a PDF, manga, or other fixed layout document, tap AA at the top of the screen, then turn on Vertical Scrolling.

- *Adjust the background mode:* Tap , then tap an option.
- *Adjust the display brightness:* Touch the brightness bar, then drag your finger in either direction.
- *Change the page theme:* Tap a page theme such as Quiet or Bold.
- *Change the font:* Tap Customize, then tap Font. Swipe up to view the font options. Tap a font name, such as Original or Palatino. Tap to apply the font.
- *Make the font bold:* Tap Customize, turn on Bold Text, then tap .
- *Customize spacing and justification:* Tap Customize, then below Accessibility & Layout Options, turn on Customize. Drag the sliders left or right to adjust line spacing, character spacing, word spacing, and margins. You can also turn Justify Text on or off. Tap to apply your changes.

4. Tap to close the Themes & Settings menu.



Note: To change which side of the screen the Menu button appears on, go to Settings > Apps > Books, then choose Left or Right below Reading Menu Position.

To undo text and layout customizations, tap , tap Customize, then tap Reset Theme.

Bookmark a page

When you close a book, your place is saved automatically—you don't need to add a bookmark—but you can add bookmarks to pages you want to return to again.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it, then tap the page you want to bookmark.
3. Tap at the bottom of the page.
4. Tap to add a bookmark; tap it again to remove the bookmark.

To access all your bookmarks, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Bookmarks.

Share a text selection or book link

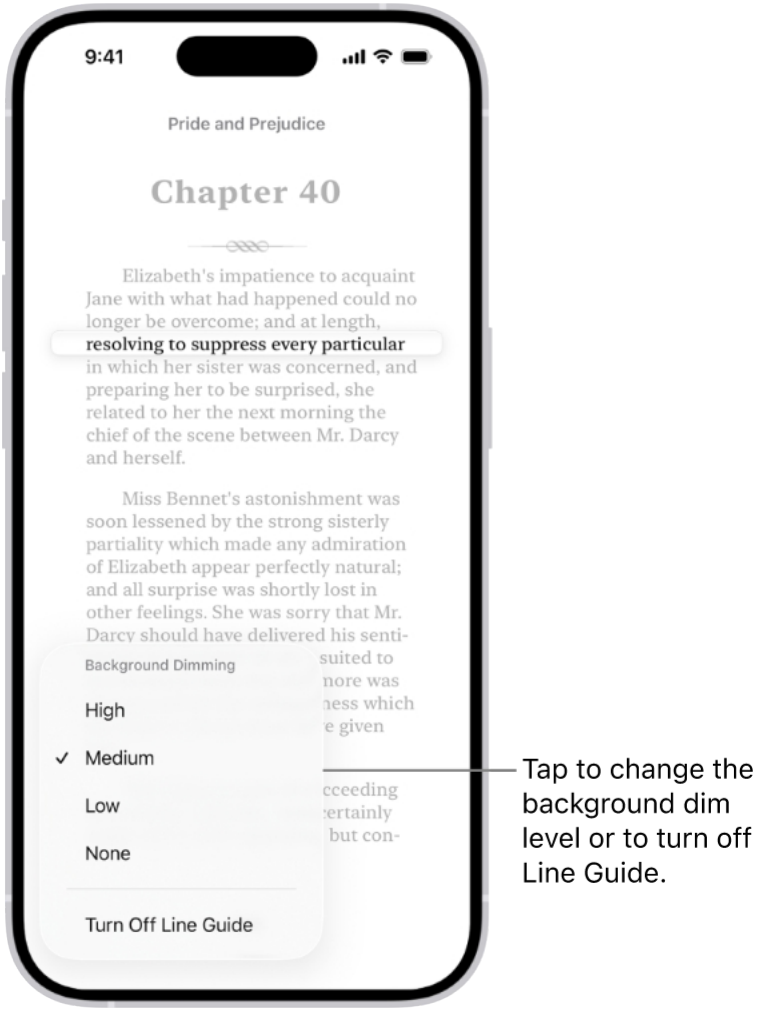
You can send text selections using AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, or you can add the selection to Notes. If the book is from the Book Store, a link to the book is included with the selection. (Sharing may not be available in all countries or regions.)

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.
4. Tap on the menu items, then tap Share.
5. Tap Mail, Messages, or another app or service to share the selection.

You can also share a link to view the book in the Book Store. Tap , tap , then tap how you want to share the link.

Turn on Line Guide

Use Line Guide to focus on individual lines of text as you read. When Line Guide is on, the rest of the page dims and the line you're reading becomes more visible.



1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it, then tap a page.
3. Tap at the bottom of the page.
4. Tap to turn on Line Guide, then do any of the following:
    - Tap the page above or below the line guide to move it up or down.
    - Tap the left or right page margin to move the line guide up or down (not available if vertical scrolling is on).
    - Touch and hold the line guide, then drag it to a new line on the page.
5. Tap in the bottom-left corner of the page to adjust the background dim level or turn off Line Guide.

See also

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

Listen to audiobooks in the Books app on iPhone

Organize books in the Books app on iPhone

Previous
Buy books and audiobooks

Next
Annotate books

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

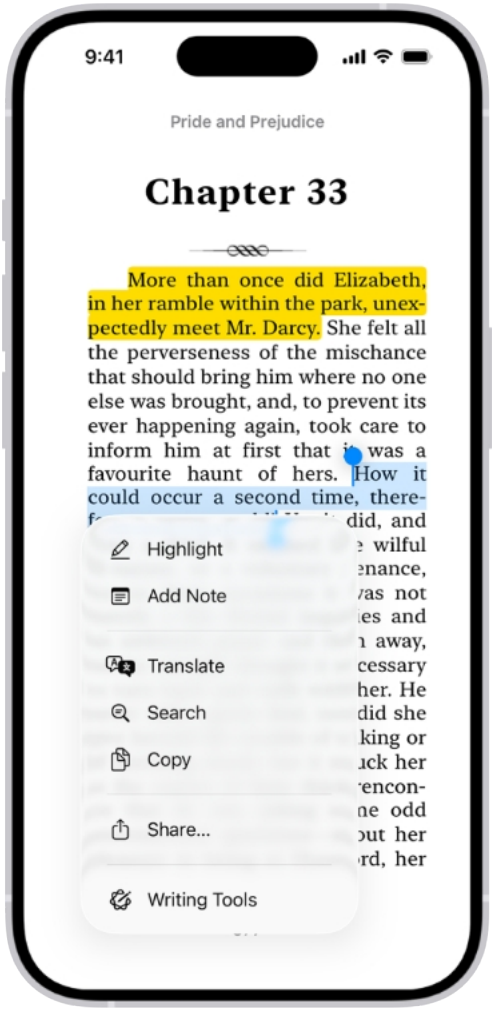
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

You can highlight, underline, and take notes as you read books in the Books app, and then share your annotations with others. You can also translate, copy, and share selected text.



Note: Apple Books isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Highlight or underline text

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.

2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, move the grab points to adjust the selection, then tap Highlight.

   To remove a highlight or underline, tap the text, then tap Remove.
4. To change the highlight color or switch to underline, tap the text, tap Highlight, then tap an option.

To see all of your highlights, tap the page, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights. Tap a highlight to go to that location in the book.

Add a note

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the text selection.
4. Tap Add Note, enter text, then tap .

To see all of your notes, tap the page, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights. Tap a note to go to that location in the book.

Share highlights and notes

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Tap a highlight or note, tap , then tap Share.

   Tip: To share multiple highlights or notes at the same time, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights. Tap , tap the items you want to share, then tap .

Delete a note

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Tap a note, tap Remove, then choose Remove Note or Remove Highlight & Note.

Tip: To delete multiple notes or highlights at the same time, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights. Tap , tap the items you want to delete, then tap .

Translate, search, or copy text

As you read, you can select text and then translate or copy it. You can also search the book for selected text.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the text selection.
4. Tap , then tap Translate, Search, or Copy.

See also

Read books in the Books app on iPhone

Set reading goals in the Books app on iPhone

Previous
Read books

Next
Access books on other Apple devices

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Listen to audiobooks in the Books app on iPhone

Use the Books app to listen to audiobooks on your iPhone.



Note: Apple Books isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Play an audiobook

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.

2. Navigate to an audiobook, then tap the cover to start playing it.
3. While the audiobook is playing, do any of the following:

- *Skip forward or back:* Tap or touch and hold the rounded arrows next to the Pause button. Or, use external controls such as headphones or car controls.

  Note: To change the number of seconds to skip forward or back, go to Settings > Apps > Books. Below Audiobooks, tap Skip Forward or Skip Back, then tap an option.

- *Go to a specific time:* Drag the slider below the audiobook cover left or right.
- *Adjust the volume:* Drag the slider below the Pause button left or right.
- *Speed it up or slow it down:* Tap 1x in the lower-left corner, then drag the dial up or down to adjust the narration speed. Touch and hold the narration speed to reset it to 1x.
- *Set a sleep timer:* Tap, then choose a duration.
- *Play on a different device:* Tap, then choose an available device such as HomePod, Apple TV, or Bluetooth® speakers.
- *Go to a chapter:* Tap, then tap a chapter.

  Note: Some audiobooks refer to chapters as *tracks*, or don't define chapters.

- *Switch to the audiobook mini-player:* Swipe down from anywhere on the screen, or tap — at the top of the screen. Tap the mini-player at the bottom of the screen to go back to full screen.
- *Close the audiobook player:* Swipe down from anywhere on the screen, or tap — at the top of the screen to switch to the mini-player. Touch and hold the mini-player, then tap Close Audio Player.

If a Wi-Fi connection to the internet isn't available, audiobooks play over your carrier's cellular network, which may result in additional fees. To manage cellular data usage, see View or change cellular data settings.

Find supplemental PDFs

Some audiobooks come with supplemental PDFs. To view the PDF as the audiobook plays, tap , or do the following:

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap ••• below an audiobook cover.
3. Tap View PDF Content.

See also

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

Previous
Access books on other Apple devices

Next
Set reading goals

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Access books on other Apple devices in the Books app on iPhone

You can access your books and audiobooks in the Books app on your other Apple devices such as your iPad, Mac, and Apple Vision Pro. You can also sync your reading position, highlights, notes, library collections, and more.

Note: Apple Books isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Access your books on your other devices

To keep your Books content and information updated across your other Apple devices, sign in to the same Apple Account on each device, then do any of the following:

- *Automatically download purchases made on other devices:* Go to Settings > Apps > Books, then turn on Purchases from Other Devices.
- *Sync reading position, bookmarks, notes, and highlights:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Books.
- *Sync Home, Library, and collections:* Go to Settings > Apps > Books, then below Syncing, turn on Home and iCloud Drive.

Access your books on your Mac

To see your books, audiobooks, and PDFs on your Mac, do one of the following:

- *macOS 15 or later:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, then click iCloud. Click iCloud Drive, click Apps Syncing to iCloud Drive, then turn on Books.
- *macOS 13–14.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, then click iCloud. Click iCloud Drive, click Apps syncing to iCloud Drive,

then select Books. Click Back, then click Done.

- *macOS 10.15–12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Apple ID. Click iCloud in the sidebar, then select iCloud Drive. Click Options, then select Books.
- *macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click iCloud. Select iCloud Drive, click Options, then select Books.

To see your collections, bookmarks, notes, and highlights on your Mac, open Books, then do one of the following:

- *macOS 13 or later:* Choose Books > Settings, click General, then select "Collections, bookmarks, and highlights."
- *macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Books > Preferences, click General, then select "Collections, bookmarks, and highlights."

See also

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

Previous
Annotate books

Next
Listen to audiobooks

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

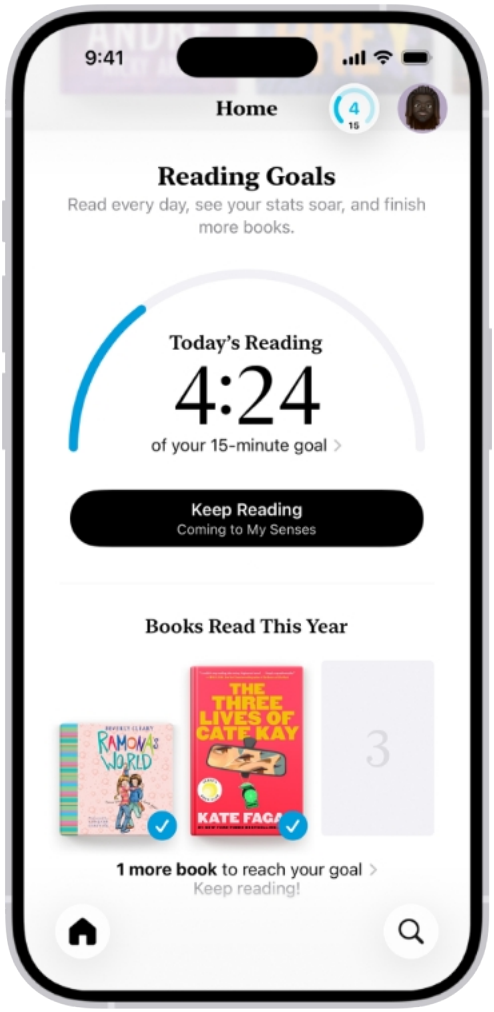
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Set reading goals in the Books app on iPhone

The Books app helps you keep track of how many minutes you read each day, and how many books and audiobooks you finish each year. You can customize your goals to spend more time reading, set new reading streaks, and receive encouragement to reach your goals.



Note: Apple Books isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Change your daily reading goal

You can adjust your daily reading goal depending on how many minutes you want to read per day. If you don't customize your daily reading goal, it's set to 5 minutes per day.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap the reading goals button at the top right of the screen.
3. Tap the reading goal timer, then tap Adjust Goal.

   Note: To count PDFs toward your reading goal, go to Settings > Apps > Books, then turn on Include PDFs below Reading Goals.
4. Slide the counter up or down to set the minutes per day that you want to read, then tap Done.

Change your yearly reading goal

After you finish a book, the cover is displayed below Books Read This Year. The default yearly reading goal is three books per year, but you can increase or decrease your goal depending on how many books you want to finish.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap the reading goals button at the top right of the screen.
3. Tap a book cover or a cover placeholder, then tap Adjust Goal.
4. Slide the counter up or down to set the books per year that you want to read, then tap Done.

Tip: You can change the status of a book in your library to finished. Tap ••• below a book or audiobook cover, then tap Mark as Finished.

Turn off coaching notifications

You receive encouragement and nudges from Books to help you reach your reading goals. You can turn off these notifications.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your account button in the top-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn off Coaching.
4. Tap ✕.

Turn off reading goals notifications

Books sends you notifications when you achieve a reading goal or set a reading streak. You can turn off these notifications.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your account button in the top-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn off Goal Completion.
4. Tap ✕.

Turn off reading goals

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap Books, then turn off Reading Goals.

When Reading Goals is turned off, the reading indicators in the Home tab are hidden and you don’t receive reading notifications.

Clear reading data

You can clear your reading data, such as time spent reading, reading goals, and reading streaks.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap Books, then tap Clear Reading Goals Data.

See also

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

Read books in the Books app on iPhone

Table of Contents

Read PDF documents in the Books app on iPhone

You can open and save PDFs in the Books app that you receive in Mail, Messages, or other apps.

Note: Apple Books isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Open a PDF you receive in another app in Books

1. Tap the PDF attachment to open it.
2. Tap, then tap Books from the list options.

Share or print a PDF

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap ••• below the PDF.
3. Tap, then choose a share option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, or tap Print.

Mark up a PDF in Books

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Open the PDF.
3. Tap the page, then tap at the top of the screen to use the drawing and annotation tools.

See also

Listen to audiobooks in the Books app on iPhone

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Previous
Organize books

Next
Get started with Calculator

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Organize books in the Books app on iPhone

The books and audiobooks you purchase in the Books app are saved in your library and automatically sorted into collections, such as Audiobooks, Want to Read, and Finished.



Note: Apple Books isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Create a collection

You can create your own collections to organize and personalize your library.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap , then tap New Collection.
3. Name the collection—for example, *Beach Reads* or *Book Club*—then tap .

Add a book to a collection

You can add a book from your library or from the Book Store to the collections you create.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to a book, then tap ••• below the cover.

   Tap Add to Collection, then tap the collection you want to add it to.

Tip: You can add the same book to multiple collections.

Organize your books

You can change how the books in your library or a collection are displayed and sorted.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library or go to a collection.
3. Tap , then do either of the following:

   - *Change the book display:* Tap Grid or List.
   - *Sort your books:* Tap Recent, Title, Author, or Manual.

     If you choose Manual, touch and hold a book cover, then drag it to a new position.

Remove books, audiobooks, and PDFs

You can remove or hide books, audiobooks, and PDFs from Home, Library, and your library collections.

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to a book or audiobook you want to remove, then tap ••• below the cover.
3. Tap Remove, then choose an option.

Note: If you choose Remove Download, the content and data associated with the title are no longer stored on your iPhone. To redownload the title, tap •••, then tap Download. If you choose Hide Book, the book won't appear in your library or collections. To unhide books and audiobooks, tap Home, tap your account icon, then tap Manage Hidden Purchases.

You can automatically remove downloads from your iPhone after you finish a book. Tap Library, then tap ••• at the top right of the screen. Tap Remove Downloads, then tap Automatically When Finished.

Delete a collection

1. Go to the Books app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap ≡.
3. Swipe left on the collection you want to delete, then tap Delete.

   Note: Deleting a collection doesn't delete the books or audiobooks in the collection; they're still in your library.

See also

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

Access books on other Apple devices in the Books app on iPhone

Previous
Set reading goals

Next
Read PDFs

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

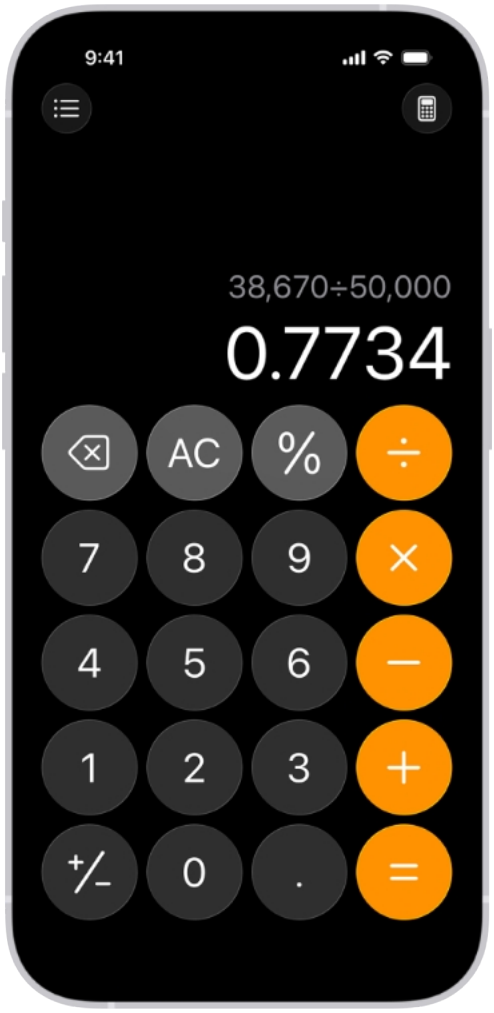
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use the basic calculator on iPhone

You can perform arithmetic calculations with a basic calculator.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, “What’s 18 percent of 225?” Learn how to use Siri.



Switch to the basic calculator

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Basic.

Clear digits, numbers, or the display

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Enter a digit or calculation.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *Delete the last digit:* If you make a mistake when you enter a number, tap ⌫.
   - *Delete the entire number you last entered:* Tap the Clear (C) key.
   - *Delete the expression:* Tap the All Clear (AC) key, or touch and hold ⌫ or the Clear (C) key.

Switch to another mode

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap 🧮, then do one of the following:

   - *Access algebraic, exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric keys, and more:* Tap Scientific. See Use the scientific calculator.
   - *Solve handwritten math problems, evaluate expressions, and assign variables:* Tap Math Notes, then tap ✎. See Solve math with Math Notes.
   - *Draw graphs:* Tap Math Notes, tap ✎, write an equation, then tap Insert Graph. See Work with graphs in Math Notes.
   - *Instantly calculate unit or currency conversions:* Turn on Convert. See Convert units or currency.

Note: Calculator uses select numeric systems for written math and variable names. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Copy a calculation result

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Enter a calculation, touch and hold the calculation result in the display, then tap Copy.

3. Paste the result somewhere else, such as in a note or message.

You can also copy previous calculations.

Repeat the last operation

Do one of the following after completing an operation:

- *Apply the last operation to the current result:* Tap the equal sign.

  For example, if you enter “1 × 2 =”, your result is 2. Each time you tap the equal sign, the currently displayed answer is multiplied by 2, producing these results: 4, 8, 16, 32, and so on.

- *Apply the last operation to a new number:* Enter a new number, then tap the equal sign.

  For example, if you enter “100 + 15% =”, the result is 115. Then, if you enter “150 =”, the result is 150 + 15%, or 172.5.

See also

Get started with Calculator on iPhone

Use the scientific calculator on iPhone

Measure dimensions with iPhone

Read math equations

Previous
Get started with Calculator

Next
Use the scientific calculator

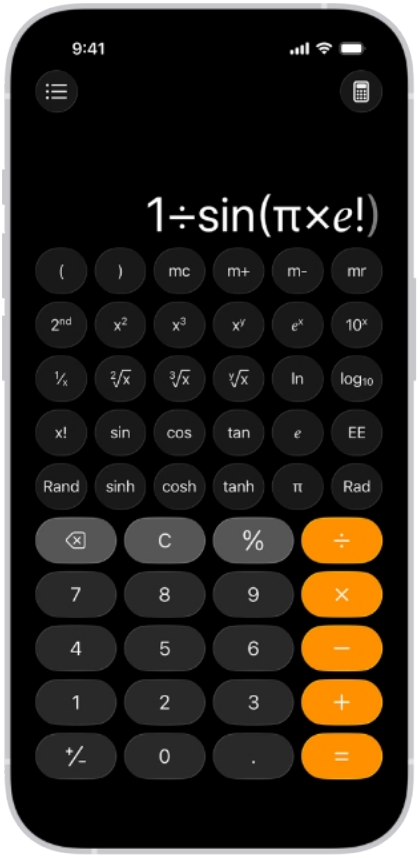
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get started with Calculator on iPhone

In the Calculator app, you can solve math problems in basic or scientific mode, convert units, or handwrite problems and generate graphs using Math Notes.

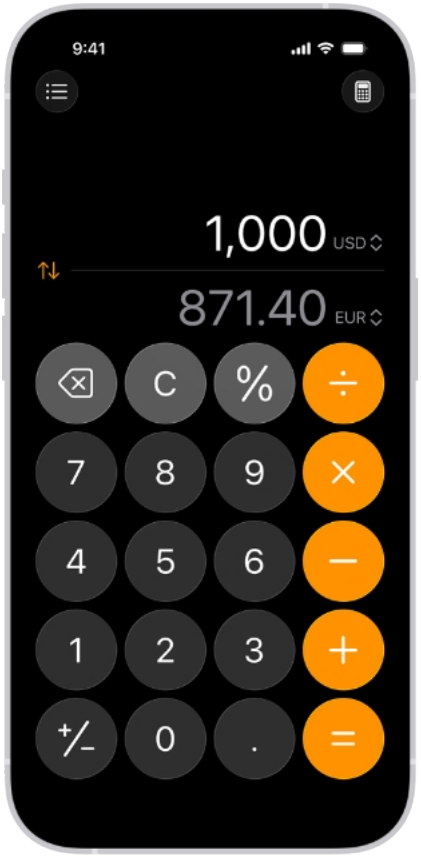


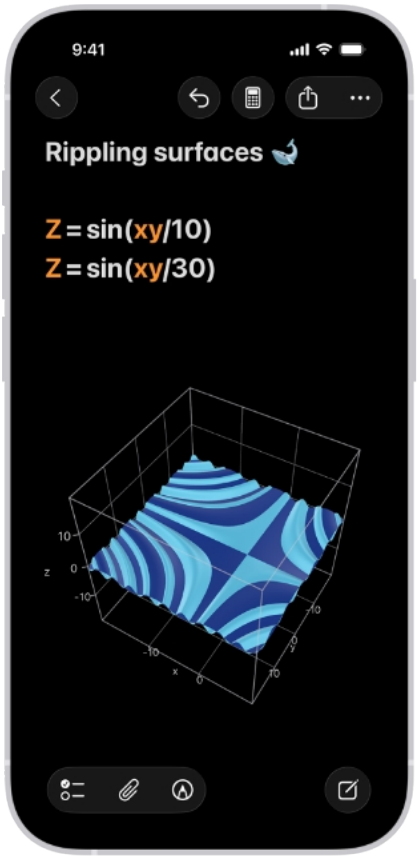
Choose the calculator for the task

Do basic math, or switch to the scientific calculator where you can perform advanced calculations involving powers, roots, exponents, fractions, logarithms, trigonometry, and more. Tap, tap Basic or Scientific, then enter your expression.

Convert units easily

Miles to millimeters? Yen to euros? Change units of length, weight, power, pressure, speed, currency, and more with the unit conversion mode. Tap , turn on Convert, then tap to choose the units or currencies.





Visualize your expressions with graphs

Evaluate expressions, assign variables, and plot graphs in Math Notes. Tap , tap Math Notes, then write an equation with two or three variables. Tap the equal sign of the equation to design your graph.

Want to learn more?

- Use the basic calculator on iPhone
- Use the scientific calculator on iPhone
- Convert units or currency in Calculator on iPhone
- Solve math with Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone
- Work with graphs in Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone
- See previous calculations in Calculator on iPhone

Previous
Read PDFs

Next
Use the basic calculator

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

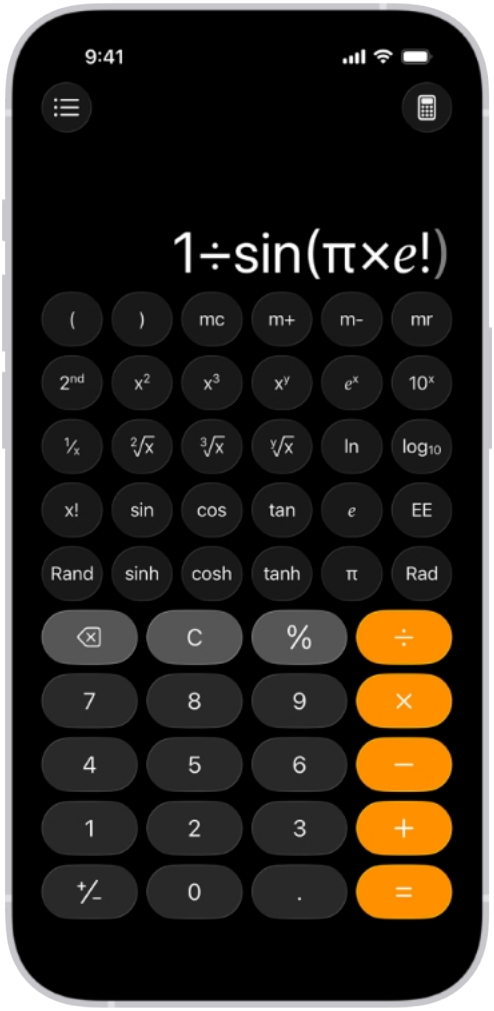
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use the scientific calculator on iPhone

You can use the scientific calculator for exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions. You can also view complete expressions with parentheses, trigonometry, and multiple operations before tapping the equal sign for the final answer.

Note: The Calculator app uses the standard order of operations. For example, multiplication is completed before addition and subtraction. Add parentheses around expressions that you want calculated first.



Switch to the scientific calculator

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.

2. Tap 🧮, then tap Scientific.

Work with stored values

1. Go to the Calculator app 🧮 on your iPhone.
2. Tap 🧮, then tap Scientific.
3. As you calculate, you can do any of the following:

   - *Add the value on the screen to memory:* Tap m+.
   - *Subtract the value on the screen from memory:* Tap m-.
   - *Recall the stored value in memory:* Tap mr.
   - *Clear the stored value from memory:* Tap mc.

Use exponential and logarithmic functions or notation

1. Go to the Calculator app 🧮 on your iPhone.
2. Tap 🧮, then tap Scientific.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Square a value:* Enter a number, tap x^2, then tap =.
   - *Cube a value:* Enter a number, tap x^3, then tap =.
   - *Raise a value to the power of y:* Enter a base number, tap x^y, enter the value of y, then tap =.
   - *Raise e to the power of x:* Tap e^x, enter the value of x, then tap =.
   - *Raise 10 to the power of x:* Tap 10^x, enter the value of x, then tap =.

     💡 **Tip:** Tap EE as a shortcut to use scientific notation, instead of tapping the × and 10^x keys.

Use the keys just below those keys to get the inverse functions: the square root, cube root, y^{th} root, natural logarithm, and logarithm.

To access additional functions (such as y^x or powers of 2), tap the “2^{nd}” key near the top left.

Use trigonometric and hyperbolic functions

1. Go to the Calculator app 🧮 on your iPhone.
2. Tap 🧮, then tap Scientific.
3. Find any of the following:

    - *Sine:* Tap sin, enter a number, then tap =.
    - *Cosine:* Tap cos, enter a number, then tap =.
    - *Tangent:* Tap tan, enter a number, then tap =.
    - *Hyperbolic sine:* Tap sinh, enter a number, then tap =.
    - *Hyperbolic cosine:* Tap cosh, enter a number, then tap =.
    - *Hyperbolic tangent:* Tap tanh, enter a number, then tap =.

To access the inverse of these functions (such as arcsine or arctangent), tap the “2^{nd}” key near the top left.

Use radians or degrees

The scientific calculator uses degrees by default.

1. Go to the Calculator app 🧮 on your iPhone.
2. Tap 🧮, then tap Scientific.
3. Tap Rad to switch to radians.

    When you’re using radians instead of degrees, the label Rad appears in the lower left of the display, and the Rad key becomes Deg.

To switch back to degrees, tap the Deg key.

When you hold your iPhone vertically (in portrait orientation), the Rad/Deg key is just above the ÷ key. When you hold it horizontally (in landscape orientation), the Rad/Deg key is near the bottom center.

Generate a random number between 0 and 1

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Scientific.
3. Tap Rand.

When you hold your iPhone vertically (in portrait orientation), the Rand key is just above ⌫. When you hold it horizontally (in landscape orientation), the Rand key is in the bottom left.

See also

Get started with Calculator on iPhone

Use the basic calculator on iPhone

Previous
Use the basic calculator

Next
Solve math with Math Notes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

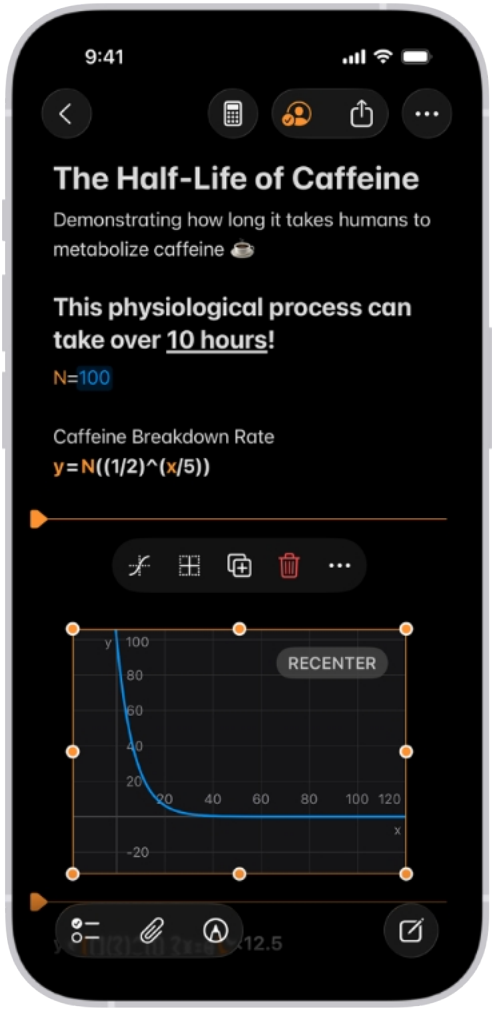
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Work with graphs in Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone

In Math Notes, you can insert a graph or overlay the graphs of multiple equations on the same two-dimensional grid or three-dimensional space to see how they relate.

Note: Math Notes uses common mathematical symbols, the same operations as the scientific calculator, and select numeric systems for written math and variable names. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Graph in two dimensions

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Math Notes.
3. Type or write an equation with exactly two undefined variables, with one on each side of the equal sign.

   You can include defined variables as well. For example, if you know *a* = 3, you can graph *velocity* = 0.5*at*^2. The graph's y-axis shows *velocity*, and the x-axis shows *t*.
4. Tap Insert Graph in the menu that appears, then, if asked, tap to assign a variable to the x-axis.
5. Do any of the following:

   - *Reframe the graph:* Tap the graph, then swipe with two fingers to pan.
   - *Zoom in or out:* Tap the graph, then pinch open and closed.

- *See coordinates:* Touch and hold the graphed function, then move your finger along the line to see each point's x- and y-value.

You can also tap an equal sign of any equation you already wrote to create a new graph.

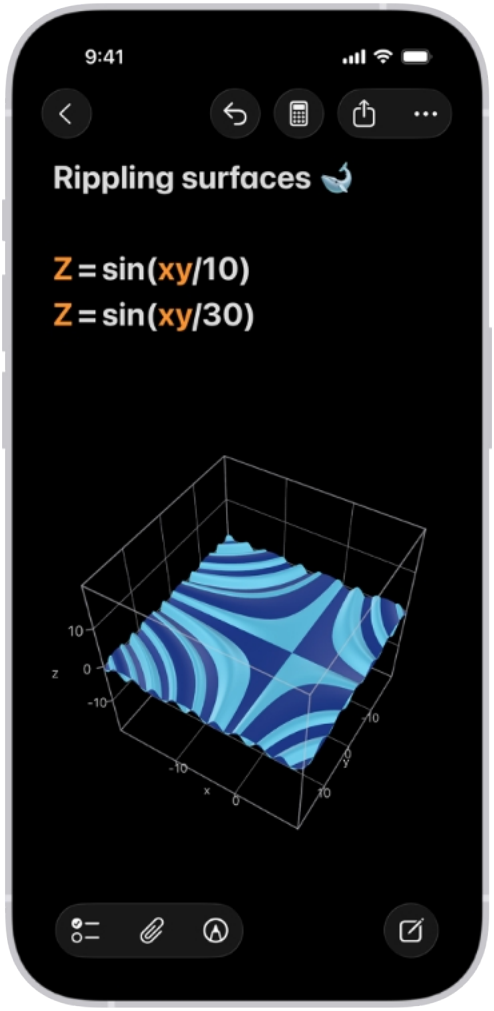
All graphs interpret the equations you enter as *y = f(x)*. The variable to the left of the equal sign graphs on the y-axis, and the other variable graphs on the x-axis.

Graph in three dimensions

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Math Notes.
3. Type or write an equation with a "z" on the left side of the equal sign and "x" and "y" on the right.

   For example, z = (x^3+y^3)/2.
4. Tap Insert 3D Graph in the menu that appears, then, if asked, tap to assign variables to axes.
5. Tap to select the graph, then do any of the following:

   - *Inspect the graph from other angles:* Drag from the middle of the graph.
   - *Move the graph in the note:* Drag the edge of the graph.



Modify a graph

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, tap Math Notes, then open a Math Note with a graph.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Change the shape of the function:* Edit your equation. The graph updates automatically.
   - *Resize the graph:* Tap the graph, then drag an edge or corner handle.
   - *Adjust the axes:* Tap the graph, tap, then swipe left or right on the numbers to make them larger or smaller, or tap Equalize Axes.
   - *Zoom to the best view of the graph:* Tap the graph, then tap Recenter.
   - *Center the origin:* Tap, then tap Center Origin.
   - *Duplicate the graph:* Tap the graph, then tap.

- *Recolor the graph:* Tap the line or surface of the graph, then tap the color picker to the right of the equation.

Work with multiple graphs

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Math Notes.
3. Create a graph in two or three dimensions, as above.
4. Type or write another equation, then tap Insert Graph or Add to Existing Graph.

   You can also tap an equal sign of any equation you already wrote to add it to an existing graph.
5. Do any of the following:

   - *Combine graphs on one grid:* Tap a graph, tap or , then tap the equation in the list that you want to add to the graph. appears.
   - *Hide a graph:* Tap the graph, tap or , then tap to uncheck it.

See also

Use the scientific calculator on iPhone

Solve handwritten math problems on a Freeform board on iPhone

Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPhone

Previous
Solve math with Math Notes

Next
Convert units or currency

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

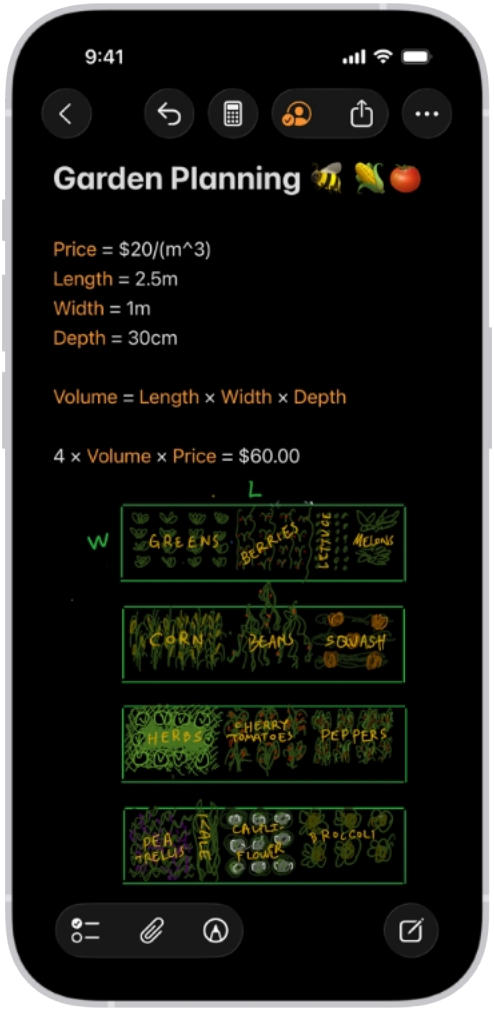
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Solve math with Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone

You can solve mathematical expressions, create and use variables, or graph equations—for example, when learning new concepts in class, doing day-to-day budgeting, planning an event, remodeling your home, and more.

Note: Math Notes uses common mathematical symbols, the same operations as the scientific calculator, and select numeric systems for written math and variable names. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Solve expressions

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap to open a previous Math Note, or tap to start a new one.
4. Do any of the following:

    - Type a math expression, then include an equal sign.
    - Tap, write a math expression horizontally, then include an equal sign.
    - Tap, write a stack of numbers, then draw a horizontal line below the numbers to add the numbers in the stack. Write a different symbol to the left of each number if you want a different operation.

5. Tap the equal sign to see what Math Notes understood in what you wrote. To correct mistakes, you can fix any of the following:

    - *Unrecognized math and unsolvable expressions:* Tap any dotted red lines to see details about the error.
    - *Ambiguous characters:* Tap any dotted blue lines to clarify what you wrote.

    See the Apple Support article How to handle errors in Math Notes to learn more.

Math Notes uses the standard order of operations in horizontal expressions. For example, multiplication is completed before addition and subtraction. Add parentheses around expressions that you want calculated first. In vertically stacked math, Math Notes evaluates expressions from top to bottom.

Math Notes automatically converts any units and currency used in expressions. You can also mix different systems—for example, 42 meters + 143 feet. Available units and currency match the Convert mode of the basic or scientific calculator. See Convert units or currency.

Update values

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, tap Math Notes, then tap the note you want to update.
3. Do one of the following:

    - Erase the number, then enter a new value.

- Tap the number, then slide left and right to adjust the value using the scrubber that appears above the number.

Any graphs using the values automatically update. If the value was assigned to a variable, results or graphs of any equations using the variable automatically update as well.

Use variables in expressions and equations

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap to open a Math Note, or tap to start a new one.
4. To declare a variable, type or write a letter or word to use as the variable, followed by an equal sign.
5. Type or write a value or expression after the equal sign to assign a value to the variable.
6. Type or write the variable name in an expression or an equation to use it.

Note: Math Notes reads entries from top left to bottom right. You must declare a variable (for example, x = 5) before using it in an expression (such as x + 10 =). Writing an expression without first declaring a variable produces an error. Variable names must contain characters only from the Latin alphabet. Variables can't be used in vertical math.

You can use equations with two or three variables to graph in two or three dimensions.

Show results automatically or as suggestions

You can choose how you want your iPhone to respond to the math problems you enter in Math Notes.

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap to open a previous Math Note, or tap to start a new one.
4. Enter text, or tap and begin writing with your finger.
5. Tap •••, tap Math Results, then do one of the following:

- *If you want problems to be solved:* Choose Insert Results. Answers appear automatically when you type or write a solvable math problem.
- *If you want suggestions to appear:* Choose Suggest Results. When you type or write an equal sign or select a solvable math problem, a Solve button appears that, when tapped, inserts the answer.
- *If you don't want any math results:* Choose Off. Answers don't appear when you type or write an equal sign after an expression.

Use a light background

Math Notes uses a dark background by default, but you can switch to a light background instead.

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap to open a previous Math Note, or tap to start a new one, then enter text or write.
4. Tap •••, then tap Use Light Background.

You can also show lines or grids in notes.

See also

Work with graphs in Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone

Solve handwritten math problems on a Freeform board on iPhone

Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPhone

Previous
Use the scientific calculator

Next
Work with graphs in Math Notes

Helpful? Yes No

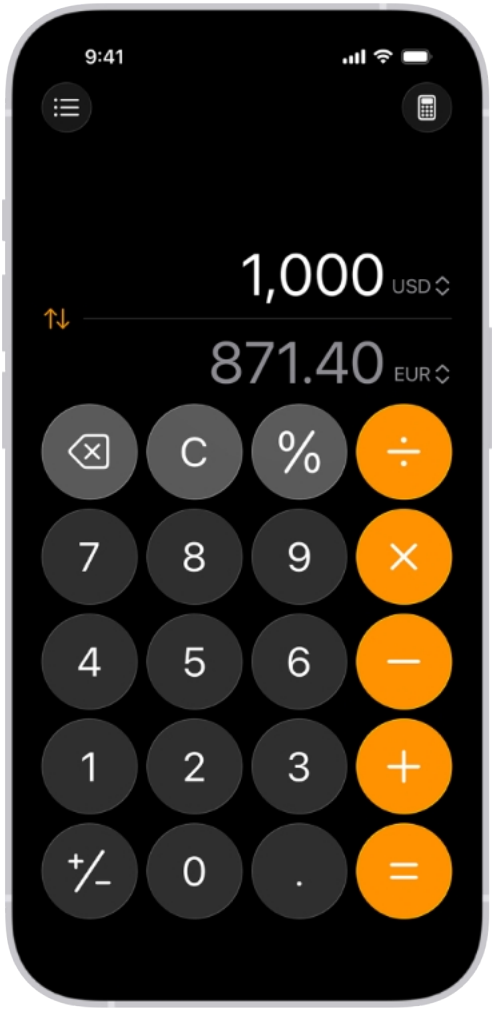
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Convert units or currency in Calculator on iPhone

Turn on unit conversions to convert length, weight, currencies, and more while using the basic or scientific calculator.



1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. While using the basic or scientific calculator, tap, then turn on Convert.
3. Tap and choose the units or currencies you want to convert from and to.

Swipe the categories at the top of the list to see others, such as Speed, Time, and Weight.

4. Enter a value in either field to see conversions as you type.
5. To reverse how the units are converted, tap ↑↓.

You can also convert units and currencies in Math Notes. For example, type or write “50 m in feet =” in a note.

See also

Measure dimensions with iPhone

Choose iPhone settings for travel

Translate text in apps on iPhone

Previous
Work with graphs in Math Notes

Next
See previous calculations

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

See previous calculations in Calculator on iPhone

Keep track of previous calculations in the basic or scientific calculators, and copy results from them to use in Calculator or other apps.

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then select Basic or Scientific.
3. Tap, then do any of the following:
   - *Reload the calculation:* Tap the listing. The calculation appears where you left off earlier.
   - *Copy the answer:* Touch and hold the listing, then tap Copy Expression or Copy Result.
   - *Delete the calculation:* Touch and hold the listing, then tap Delete.

See also

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

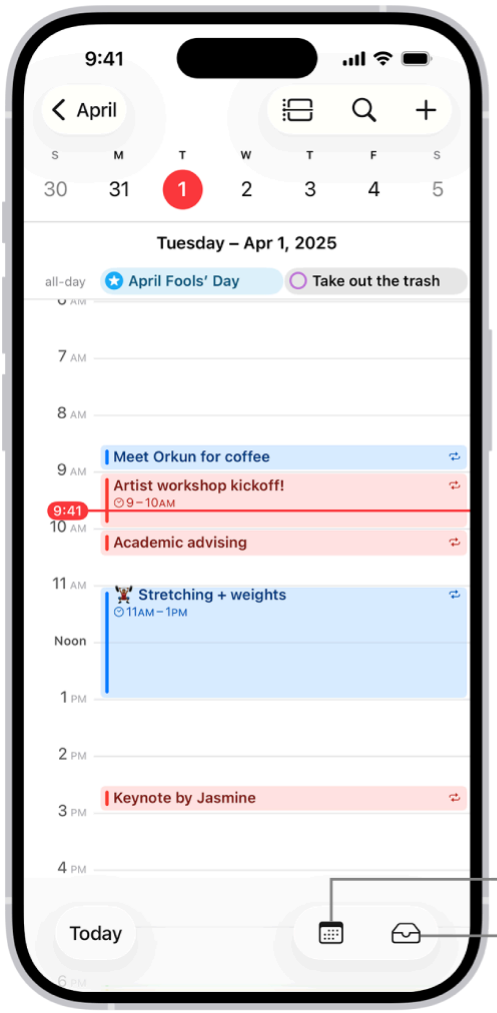
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Use the Calendar app to create and edit events, appointments, and meetings.



Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9."Learn how to use Siri.

Add an event

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. In Day view, tap + at the top of the screen.
3. Enter the title of the event.

4. Tap Location or Video Call, then enter a physical location or tap FaceTime to enter a video link for a remote event.

   You can also copy a FaceTime link you created or received and paste it in the Location field. See Create a link to a FaceTime call.

5. Enter the start and end times for the event, the travel time, invitees, attachments, and so on. (Swipe up, if necessary, to enter all the meeting information.)

6. Tap ✅.

Add an alert

You can set an alert to be reminded of an event beforehand.

1. Go to the Calendar app 📅 on your iPhone.

2. Tap the event, then tap Edit.

3. In the event details, tap Alert.

4. Choose when you want to be reminded.

   For example, "At time of event," "5 minutes before," or another choice.

   Note: If you add the address of the event's location, Calendar uses Apple Maps to look up locations, traffic conditions, and transit options to tell you when it's time to leave.

5. Tap ✅.

Add an attachment

You can add an attachment to a calendar event to share with invitees.

1. Go to the Calendar app 📅 on your iPhone.

2. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right.

3. In the event details, tap Add attachment.

4. Locate the file you want to attach.

   To find the file, you can enter its name in the search field, scroll, tap folders to open them, tap Browse to look in other locations (such as iCloud Drive), and so on. See Modify files, folders, and find downloads in Files.

5. Tap ✅.

To remove the attachment, tap the event, tap Edit near the top right, swipe left over the attachment, then tap Remove.

Find events in other apps

Siri can suggest events found in Mail, Messages, and Safari—such as flight reservations and hotel bookings—so you can add them easily in Calendar.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Siri, then turn on Show in App to allow Siri to suggest events found in other apps.

To allow Siri to make suggestions in other apps based on how you use Calendar, turn on Learn from this App.

Copy and paste an event

You can copy an event and paste it to another date.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the event, then tap Copy.
3. On another date, touch and hold the time where you want to paste the event.

   When you release, the New Event screen appears and the copied event appears below Title with the date and time where you want to paste the event.

   Tip: You can also tap + at the top of the screen after copying an event.
4. Tap the copied event below Title.
5. Tap .

Edit an event

You can change the time of an event and any of the other event details.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

- *Quickly change the event time or duration:* In Day or Week view, touch and hold the event, then drag it to a new time, or adjust the grab points.

- *Change event details:* Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right. In the event details, tap a setting to change it, or tap in a field to type new information.

Delete an event

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. In Day view, tap the event, then tap Delete Event at the bottom of the screen.

See also

Send invitations in Calendar on iPhone

Previous
See previous calculations

Next
Send invitations

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Send invitations in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can send meeting and event invitations. iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and some CalDAV servers also let you send meeting invitations. (Not all calendar servers support every feature.)

Before you begin

Before you can invite people to events you've scheduled, you need to make sure your calendar accounts are turned on.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Calendar Accounts, select an account, then check to see if Calendar is turned on.

   For more information about how to add calendars, see Set up multiple calendars.

Invite others to an event

You can invite people to an event you've scheduled.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top of the screen.
3. Tap Invitees.
4. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a name from your contacts:* Enter a contact's name, tap the name, then tap .

     You can also tap + to select contacts.

   - *Add an email address:* Enter an email address, tap Return, then tap .

- *Add a phone number:* Enter a phone number, tap Return, then tap ✅.

  Important: Sending a calendar invitation to a phone number is supported only in China and India.

Note: In order to send a calendar invitation to a contact, the contact must have an email address. See Add and use contact information.

To make an invitation optional, tap Invitees, swipe left on the name or email address of the person you've invited, then tap Make Optional.

5. When you're finished, tap ✅.

If you don't want to be notified when someone declines a meeting, go to Settings > Apps > Calendar, then turn off Show Invitee Declines.

Note: With Microsoft Exchange and some other exchange servers, you can invite people to an event even if you're not the one who scheduled it.

Quickly email attendees

You can email all attendees of an event—for example, to share event details.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an event that has attendees.
3. Tap Invitees, then tap ✉.

See also

Reply to invitations in Calendar on iPhone

Previous
Create and edit events in Calendar

Next
Reply to invitations

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Search for events in Calendar on iPhone

You can search for events by title, invitees, location, and notes.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then enter the text you want to find in the search field.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, “What’s on my calendar for Friday?” Learn how to use Siri.

See also

Change your Calendar settings on iPhone

Previous
Change how you view events

Next
Change Calendar settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Reply to invitations in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, reply to meeting and event invitations you've received.

Reply to an event invitation

1. To respond to an event notification, tap it.

   Or, in Calendar, tap , then tap an invitation.

2. Tap your response—Accept, Maybe, or Decline.

To respond to an invitation you receive by email, tap the underlined text in the email, then tap Show in Calendar.

If you add comments to your response, your comments can be seen by the organizer but not by other attendees (comments may not be available for all calendars). To see events you declined, tap at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Show Declined Events.

Suggest a different meeting time

You can suggest a different time for a meeting invitation you've received.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the meeting, then tap Propose New Time.
3. Tap the time, then enter a new one.
4. Tap , then tap Send.

Depending on the capabilities of your calendar server, the organizer will receive either a counter-proposal or an email with your suggestion.

See also

Send invitations in Calendar on iPhone

Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

Previous
Send invitations

Next
Change how you view events

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

You can view events across the span of a month, week, or multiple days, or view a list of upcoming events.



See events in Month view

You can change your Month view to show event indicators or details.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. In Month view, tap the Month view icon, then do one of the following:
   - *Show a single bar indicator for the events on each day:* Tap Compact.
   - *Show a bar indicator for each event:* Tap Stacked.
   - *Show event titles:* Tap Details.

View events across multiple days

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

- *View multiple days:* In Day view, tap the Day view icon and choose Multi Day.
- *View a weekly calendar:* In Month or Day view, rotate iPhone sideways.

View events in a list

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *View a list of events for each day:* In Month view, tap the Month view icon and choose List. Tap each day to see a list of events.
   - *View a complete list of upcoming events:* In Day view, tap the Day view icon and choose List.

See also

Search for events in Calendar on iPhone

Change your Calendar settings on iPhone

Previous
Reply to invitations

Next
Search for events

Helpful? Yes No

Support > iPhone User Guide > Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

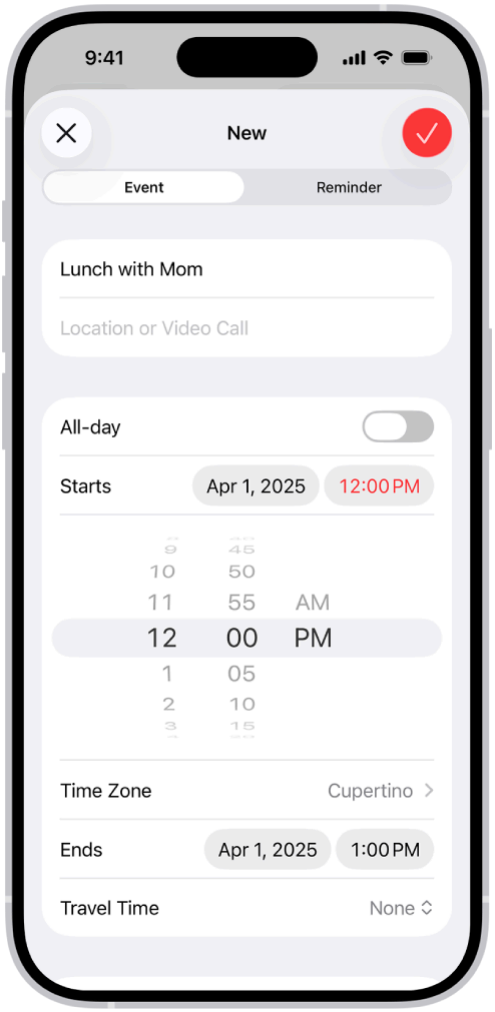
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Schedule or display events in a different time zone in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, events appear according to the time zone of your current location. However, you can schedule an event in a different time zone from the one currently shown in Calendar. You can also set your calendar to always display a specific time zone, even if you travel to a different location.



Change the time zone for a new event

You can create and edit events in Calendar and change the time zone of the event—even if it's different from the time zone you're currently in. For example, if you live in New York,

you can create or edit an event and schedule it according to the time zone in another location—like Chicago.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ＋ at the top of the screen.
3. Add the event details (title, location, travel time, attachments, and so on).
4. Enter the start and end times for the event, then tap Time Zone.
5. Search for a location, tap it, then tap .

Note: You can edit the time zone of the event later if you need to.

Always display your calendar in a specific time zone

You can override the default time zone setting so you can display Calendar in the time zone of your choice. This can be helpful if you're working remotely and need to keep track of the time when scheduling meetings with your colleagues in a different time zone. For example, if you live in San Francisco, but your job is based out of Boston, you can override the time zone of your current location and view your calendar events according to the time zone in Boston.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Time Zone Override, then turn on Time Zone Override.
4. Tap Time Zone, search for a location (like Boston, for example), then tap the location.

Events created before you turn on Time Zone Override appear in the new time zone, but also show the original time zone used when they were created.

Note: Time Zone Override only changes the time zone shown in the Calendar app.

See also

Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change your Calendar settings on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can add multiple accounts such as iCloud, Google, Microsoft Exchange, and Yahoo. You can change default settings to make it easier to create new events and to display your calendar in a way that works best for you. For example, you can choose the default calendar for new events, change the duration of new events, and more.

Set up iCloud, Google, Exchange, or Yahoo calendar accounts

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Calendar Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Tap a service (iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, or Google, for example), then sign in.

Add a CalDAV account

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Calendar Accounts, then tap Add Account.

4. Tap Add Other Account, then tap CalDAV account.
5. Enter your server and account information.

Note: If you add an account that doesn't support Push notifications, you can set a Fetch schedule for updating your calendar from the account. Go to Settings > Apps > Calendar. Tap Calendar Accounts, then tap Fetch New Data. Under Fetch, choose a schedule. If you choose Automatically, new data is downloaded when your iPhone is charging and connected to Wi-Fi.

Choose a default calendar

If you have multiple calendars, you can choose a default calendar, and any new events you create are added to that calendar automatically.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Default Calendar, then select the calendar you want to use as your default calendar.

Note: You can always move an event to a different calendar after you create it. To find out more about using multiple calendars, see Set up multiple calendars.

Set default event settings

You can change default settings for calendar events, such as the duration for new events, whether to be alerted when it's time to leave for an upcoming event, and more.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Choose when to get alerts for different types of events:* Tap Default Alert Times, tap Birthdays, Events, or All-Day Events, then choose an option.
- *Choose whether to be alerted when it's time to leave for an upcoming event:* Tap Default Alert Times, then turn Time to Leave on or off.
- *Change the default duration for new events:* Tap Duration for New Events, then choose a length of time.

- *Choose whether Calendar suggests a location when you create a new event:* Turn Location Suggestions on or off.

Change how your calendar is displayed

You can customize the way your calendar is displayed to help highlight the information that's most important to you. For example, you can choose which day you want to start the week with, display the Chinese, Hebrew, or Hijri calendar (alongside the Gregorian calendar), and more.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Display the Chinese, Hebrew, or Hijri calendar:* Tap Alternate Calendars, then choose a calendar.
   - *Display the week number next to every week of the year:* Turn on Week Numbers.
   - *Show the current day as the first day in Week view:* Turn on Week View Starts On Today.
   - *Choose a different day to start the week:* Tap Start Week On, then tap a day.

You can allow Siri to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Calendar. Go to Settings > Apps > Calendar, tap Siri, then turn on Learn from this App. You can also allow suggestions and content from Calendar to appear in Search, widgets, and as notifications.

See also

Schedule or display events in a different time zone in Calendar on iPhone

Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone

Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

Table of Contents

Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone

You can customize the notifications that let you know about upcoming calendar events, invitations, and more. You can also make sure your events and other calendar information are kept up to date on all your devices.

Customize Calendar notifications

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Calendar.
3. Turn on Allow Notifications.
4. Choose how and where you want the notifications to appear—for example, on the Lock Screen, in Notification Center, as banners at the top of the screen, with an alert sound, and so on.

Turn on customized notifications for specific calendar events

After customizing Calendar notifications, you can choose whether you want them to appear for specific occasions—like upcoming events or invitee responses, for example.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Calendar.
3. Scroll down and tap Customize Notifications.
4. Turn the specific customized notifications on or off.

Keep your calendar up to date across your devices

You can use iCloud to keep your calendar information up to date on all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud.
4. Tap iCloud Calendar and turn on Use on this iPhone.

If you don't want to use iCloud for your calendar, you can sync your calendar information between your iPhone and your computer. See Transfer files between your iPhone and other devices.

See also

Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone

Previous
Schedule or display events in a different time zone

Next
Use multiple calendars

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use reminders in Calendar on iPhone

You can view, create, complete, and edit reminders from the Reminders app right in Calendar.

Show reminders

You can show scheduled reminders you added to the Reminders app in Calendar.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Select Scheduled Reminders.

Reminders scheduled as all day are shown in the all-day section at the top of the calendar. Reminders scheduled at a specific time appear at that time in the full-day schedule.

Create reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap + at the top of the screen.
3. Tap Reminder, then enter a title.
4. To choose a date for the reminder, tap Date.
5. Optionally, turn on Time and choose a specific time for the reminder.

   You can also add other information—like images, notes, or a priority level to a reminder. See Add details.

Note: You can select a specific reminders list to add new scheduled reminders to. If you don't select a list, new reminders are added to the default list you chose for Reminders. See Change your Reminders settings.

Complete reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the circle next to a reminder's name.

   Complete reminders are dimmed. Deselect the circle next to a reminder to mark it as incomplete.

Note: If you set a scheduled reminder to repeat, future instances are dimmed and can only be marked complete after the most current instance is marked complete.

Hide reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Deselect Scheduled Reminders.

Removing reminders from Calendar doesn't delete the reminders from the Reminders app.

Edit or delete reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a reminder, then tap Edit to edit the details or Delete Reminder to delete.

   Deleted reminders go to the Recently Deleted list in Reminders for 30 days before being permanently deleted.

See also

Add or remove accounts in Reminders on iPhone

Edit and organize a list in Reminders on iPhone

Previous
Use multiple calendars

Next
Use the Holidays calendar

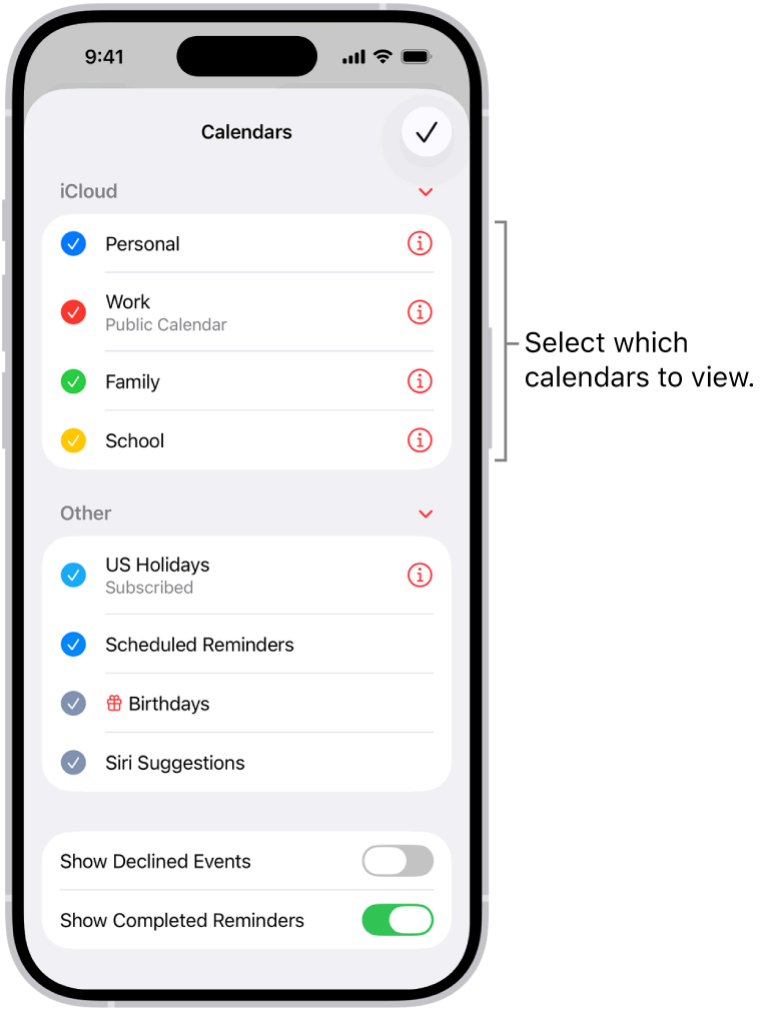
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can set up multiple calendars to keep track of different kinds of events. You can keep track of all your events and appointments in one calendar, but additional calendars are easy to set up and a great way to stay organized.



Set up a calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen, then tap Add Calendar.
3. Do one of the following:

- *Create an iCloud calendar:* Tap Add Calendar, enter a name for the calendar, then choose a color for it.

- *Subscribe to an external, read-only calendar:* Tap Add Subscription Calendar, enter the URL of the .ics file you want to subscribe to (and any other required server information), then tap Find.

- *Add a Holiday calendar:* Tap Add Holiday Calendar, then tap the holiday calendar you want to subscribe to.

  See Use the Holidays calendar.

You can also subscribe to an iCalendar (.ics) calendar by tapping a link to it.

Unsubscribe from a calendar

You can unsubscribe from a calendar you're subscribed to. When you unsubscribe, you can also report the calendar as junk.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap ⓘ next to the calendar you want to unsubscribe from.
4. Tap Unsubscribe, then Tap Unsubscribe or Unsubscribe and Report Junk.

   Note: When you tap Unsubscribe and Report Junk, the calendar is reported to Apple as a suspected junk subscription.

See multiple calendars at once

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:

   - Select the calendars you want to view.

   - Tap US Holidays to include national holidays with your events.

   - Tap Birthdays to include birthdays from Contacts with your events.

Turn on calendar event alerts

You can turn on event notifications for calendars you create or subscribe to.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap next to a calendar.
4. Turn Event Alerts on or off.
5. Tap .

Change a calendar's color

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap next to the calendar, then choose a color.
4. Tap .

For some calendar accounts, such as Google, the color is set by the server.

Move an event to another calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, tap Calendar, then select a calendar to move the event to.

See also

Use the Holidays calendar on iPhone

Use iCloud calendar subscriptions

Previous
Keep track of events

Next
Use reminders

Table of Contents

Use the Holidays calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, the Holidays calendar displays holidays based on the region set on your iPhone.

Note: The Holidays calendar is a subscription calendar. You can't add or delete holidays, because subscription calendars can be modified only by the calendar provider.

Show or hide holidays

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Select or deselect US Holidays (or the holiday calendar for your country or region).

Add a holiday calendar from a different region

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Add Calendar, then tap Add Holiday Calendar.
4. Tap the holiday calendar you want to subscribe to, then tap .

To change settings, like notification alerts or the color for a holiday calendar see Set up multiple calendars.

See also

Share iCloud calendars on iPhone

Previous
Use reminders

Next
Share iCloud calendars

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

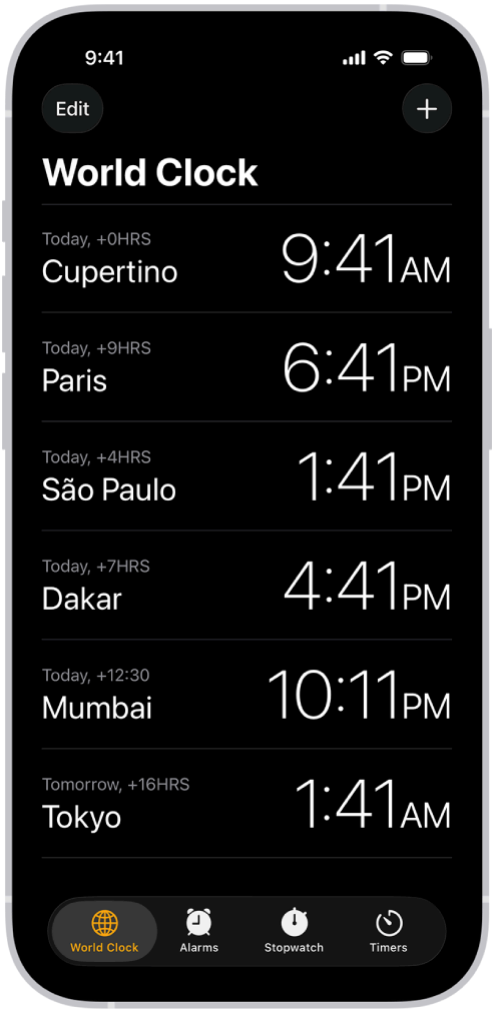
iOS 26

Table of Contents

See the time worldwide in Clock on iPhone

You can see the local time in time zones around the world.

Siri: Ask Siri something like: “What time is it?” or “What time is it in London?” Learn how to use Siri.



1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap World Clock.
3. To manage your list of cities, do any of the following:
   - *Add a city:* Tap ⊕, then choose a city.

- *Delete a city:* Tap Edit, then tap ⊖. Tap 🗑
- *Reorder the cities:* Tap Edit, then drag ☰ up or down.

4. When you're finished, tap ✓.

See also

Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone

Previous
Share iCloud calendars

Next
Set an alarm

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

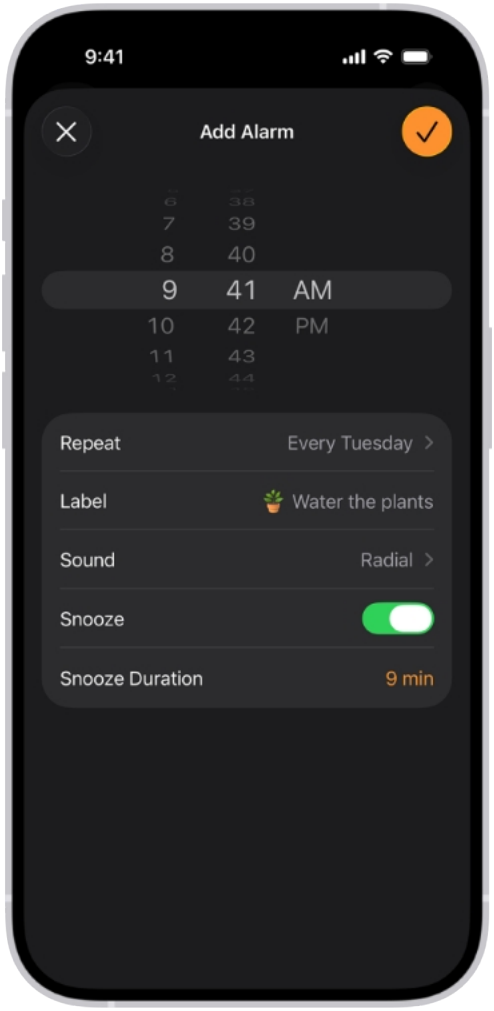
Table of Contents

Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone

You can turn your iPhone into an alarm clock, or simply ask Siri to set one for you. Alarms can be set for any time and repeated on specific days of the week. You can also adjust how long the snooze lasts.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, “Set an alarm for 7 a.m.” Learn how to use Siri.

Note: You can also set up a wake up alarm as part of a full sleep schedule (including bedtimes, wake up times, and more) in the Health app. If you don’t want to set up a sleep schedule, you can set a regular alarm in Clock for the time you want to wake up.



Set an alarm

You can set alarms for any time, including one for the time you want to wake up. Any alarm you set up in Clock is unrelated to a sleep schedule.

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms, then tap ⊕.
3. Set the time, then choose any of the following options:
   - *Repeat:* Choose the days of the week you want the alarm to repeat.
   - *Label:* Give the alarm a name, like “Water the plants.”
   - *Sound:* Choose a vibration, song, or ringtone.
   - *Snooze:* Turn on to see a Snooze button with your alarm.
   - *Snooze Duration:* Choose how long to pause the alarm.
4. Tap ✓.

To change the alarm, tap the alarm time. Or tap Edit at the top left, then tap the alarm time.

Change the alarm’s volume

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. Under Ringtone and Alerts, drag the volume slider.

Tip: To use the volume buttons on your device to change the alarm volume, turn on Change with Buttons.

Your alarm sounds even when you:

- Turn on Silent mode.
- Turn on Do Not Disturb (or another Focus).
- Connect headphones to your iPhone. The alarm plays at a set volume through both the built-in speakers on your iPhone as well as your headphones.

Turn off an alarm

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms.
3. Tap the button next to the alarm time.

Remove an alarm

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms.
3. Swipe left on the alarm, then tap .

See also

Change your wake up alarm in Clock on iPhone

Set up your first recurring sleep schedule

Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

Previous
See the world clock

Next
Change your wake up alarm

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share iCloud calendars on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can share an iCloud calendar with other iCloud users. When you share a calendar, others can see it, and you can let them add or change events. You can also share a read-only version that anyone can view but not change.

Create an iCloud calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Add Calendar.
4. Tap Add Calendar, enter a name for the new calendar, then tap .

   If iCloud isn't your default calendar, tap Accounts, then tap iCloud. See Change your Calendar settings.

Share an iCloud calendar

You can share a calendar with one or more people in iCloud. Those you invite receive an invitation to join the calendar.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.
4. Tap Add Person, then enter a name or email address, or tap to browse your contacts.

   Note: Your contacts must have an email address to share an iCloud calendar. See Add and use contact information.

5. Tap ✅.

Change a person's access to a shared calendar

After you invite a person to share your calendar, you can turn on or off their ability to edit the calendar, or stop sharing the calendar with that person.

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, tap ⓘ next to the shared calendar, then tap the person's name.
3. Do any of the following:

    - Turn Allow Editing on or off.
    - Tap Delete.

Turn off notifications for shared calendars

When someone modifies a calendar you're sharing, you're notified of the change. You can turn off notifications, if you don't want to receive them.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Customize Notifications, then turn off Shared Calendar Changes.

Share a read-only calendar with anyone

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap then tap ⓘ next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.
3. Turn on Public Calendar, then tap Share Link to copy or send the URL for your calendar.
4. Choose a method for sending the URL—Messages, Mail, and so on.

Anyone you send the URL to can use it to subscribe to the calendar using a compatible app, such as Calendar for macOS.

Delete a calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap next to the iCloud calendar you want to delete.
4. Tap Delete Calendar at the bottom of the list.

See also

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Previous
Use the Holidays calendar

Next
See the world clock

Helpful? Yes No

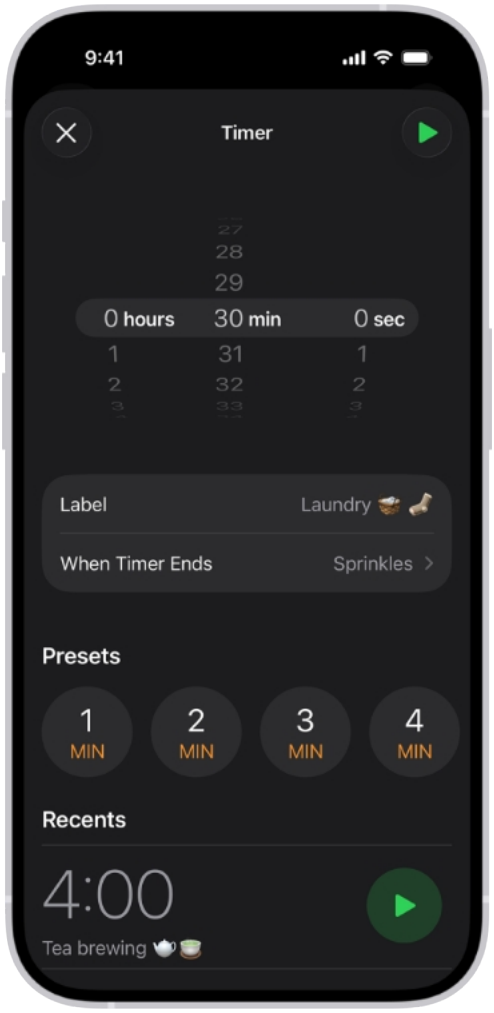
Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set timers in Clock on iPhone

You can set timers to count down from specified times.

Siri: Ask Siri something like: “Set the timer for 3 minutes.”Learn how to use Siri.



Set a custom timer

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then set a duration of time.
3. Choose any of the following options:

   - *Label:* Give the timer a name, like “Egg timer.”

- *When Timer Ends:* Choose a sound to play when the timer ends.

4. Tap Start.

Note: The timer continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.

When you set a custom timer, it appears below Recent—so you can start the same timer whenever you want.

Set a timer to stop playing audio or video

If you want to stop playing audio or video after a specific amount of time, you can set the timer to stop the playback—for example, when you fall asleep while listening to the radio.

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Set a custom timer, as above.
3. Tap When Timer Ends, then tap Stop Playing at the bottom of the list of sounds.
4. Tap Set, then tap Start.

Set multiple timers

After you start a custom timer, you can add more timers to keep track of different tasks at the same time.

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then Tap ⊕ at the top right.
3. Then do one of the following:

   - *Add a custom timer:* Set a duration of time, add a label or sound.
   - *Add a preset timer:* Swipe left below Presets, then tap a preset duration of time (like 1, 5, or 10 minutes).
   - *Add a recent timer:* Tap ▶ next to a timer you've recently set.

     Tap the timer to edit the label and sound.

Stop, pause, or remove a timer

When a timer ends, you get a notification at the top of your screen, no matter which app you're using. Tap to clear the notification, or tap if you want the timer to run again. You can also tap Repeat or Stop from the Lock Screen.

You can also turn off a timer before it ends.

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then do any of the following:

   - *Pause a timer:* Tap next to the timer to stop it momentarily. Tap to continue counting down.
   - *Remove a timer:* Swipe left, then tap .
   - *Remove several timers:* Tap Edit, tap , then tap .

From your Lock Screen, you can swipe left on a timer, then tap Clear.

See also

Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone

Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone

Previous
Use the stopwatch

Next
Compass

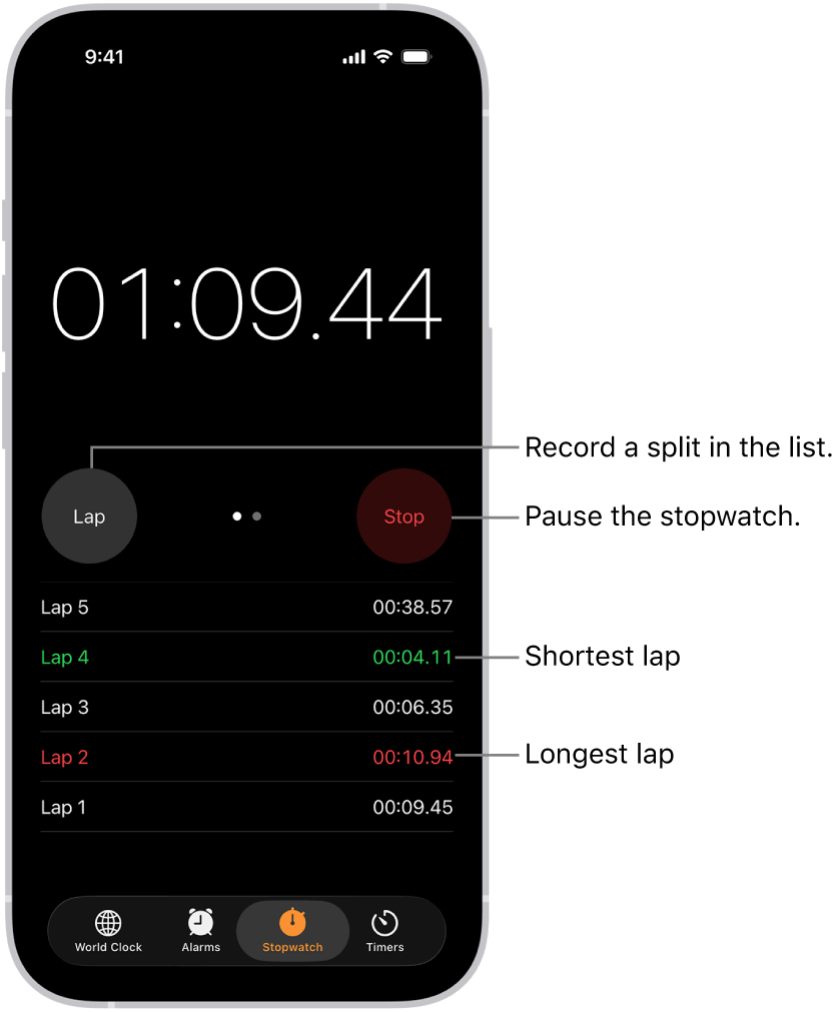
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone

You can use the stopwatch to measure the duration of an event.



1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Stopwatch.

   To switch between the digital and analog faces, swipe the stopwatch.
3. Tap Start.

   The timing continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.

4. To record a lap or split, tap Lap.
5. Tap Stop to record the final time.
6. Tap Reset to clear the stopwatch.

See also

Set timers in Clock on iPhone

Previous
Change your wake up alarm

Next
Set timers

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

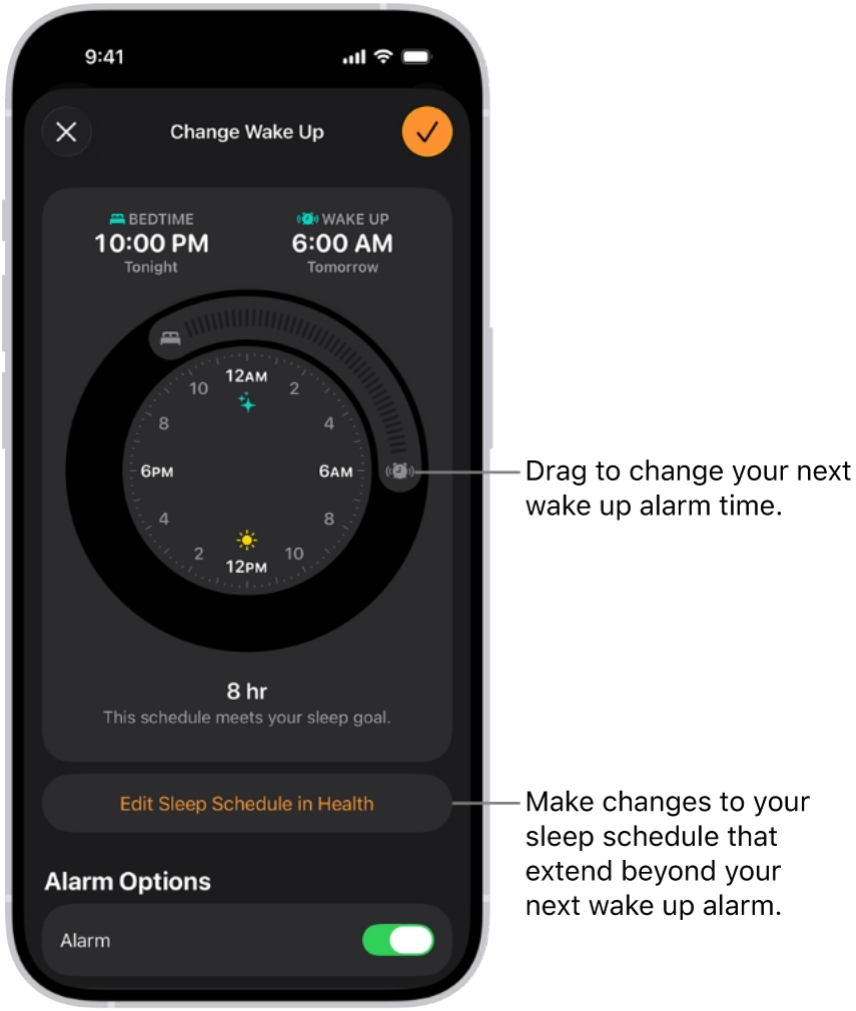
Table of Contents

Change your wake up alarm in Clock on iPhone

You can make changes to your wake up alarm if you've set up a sleep schedule in the Health app.

Change your wake up alarm

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms, then tap Change.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Change only your wake up time:* Drag.
   - *Shift your sleep schedule:* Drag to rotate the arc between and. (Your bedtime and wake up time change simultaneously, and the sleep duration remains unchanged.)



4. Scroll down to Alarm Options, turn the alarm on, then change any of the following options:

    - *Sounds & Haptics:* Tap to choose a vibration or ringtone.
    - *Alarm volume:* Drag the slider.
    - *Snooze:* Turn on to see a Snooze button with your alarm.
    - *Snooze Duration:* Choose how long to pause the alarm.

5. Tap ✓, then tap Change Next Alarm Only.

    Note: If you tap Change This Schedule, you also update your recurring wake up alarm in your sleep schedule.

To make changes to your sleep schedule that extend beyond your next wake up alarm, tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health. (See Add or change sleep schedules.)

Turn off your next wake up alarm

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms, then tap Change.
3. Scroll down to Alarm Options, then turn off Alarm.
4. Tap , then tap Change Next Alarm Only.

   Note: If you tap Change This Schedule, you also update your recurring wake up alarm in your sleep schedule.

Remove the wake up alarm

1. Go to the Clock app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Change, then tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health.
3. Turn off Sleep Schedule.

In the Health app, you can delete a sleep schedule or turn off all sleep schedules.

See also

Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone

Set up your first recurring sleep schedule

Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

Previous
Set an alarm

Next
Use the stopwatch

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use the compass on iPhone

The Compass app shows you the direction iPhone is pointing in, your current location, and the elevation.



Note: Your coordinates and elevation may not be available in certain countries or regions.

See your bearings, coordinates, and elevation

Your bearings, coordinates, and elevation are shown at the bottom of the screen.

1. Go to the Compass app on your iPhone.

2. For accurate bearings, hold iPhone flat to align the crosshairs at the center of the compass.
3. To lock your current direction, tap the compass dial.

   A red band appears when you're off course.

To open your location in Maps, tap the coordinates at the bottom of the screen.

Allow Compass to access your location

If Compass doesn't see your location, make sure you've turned on Location Services.

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.
2. Tap Compass, then tap While Using the App.

For more information, see Control the location information you share on iPhone.

Important: The accuracy of the compass can be affected by magnetic or environmental interference. Use the digital compass only for basic navigation assistance. Don't rely on it to determine precise location, proximity, distance, or direction.

Previous
Set timers

Next
Add and use contact information

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Add and use contact information on iPhone

You can use the Contacts app to create, find, share, and delete contacts.

Siri: Siri can update information about a contact. Say something like, “Sarah Milos is my sister.”Learn how to use Siri.

Create a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +.

Siri also suggests new contacts based on your use of other apps, such as email you receive in Mail and invitations you receive in Calendar. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings > Apps > Contacts > Siri, then turn off Show Contact Suggestions.)

Based on the way you use Contacts, Siri also provides contact information suggestions in other apps. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings > Apps > Contacts > Siri, then turn off “Learn from this App.”) See Siri Suggestions.

Find a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field at the bottom of the contacts list, then enter a name, address, phone number, or other contact information.

You can also search your contacts using Search (see Search with Spotlight).

Share a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.

2. Tap a contact, tap Share Contact, then choose the fields you want to share.
3. Tap then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

Quickly reach a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a contact.
3. Tap a button below the contact's name to do any of the following: start a message, make a phone call or a FaceTime call; or compose an email.

To change the default phone number or email address for a contact method, touch and hold the button for that method below the contact's name, then tap a selection in the list.

Delete a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the contact's card, then tap Edit.
3. Scroll down, then tap Delete Contact.

See also

Edit contacts on iPhone

Previous
Compass

Next
Edit contacts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Edit contacts on iPhone

Assign a photo to a contact, add a pronunciation and pronouns, change a label, add a birthday, and more.

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a contact, then tap Edit.
3. Enter or update the contact's information.
4. When you're finished, tap .

On models with Dual SIM, when you call or text a contact, iPhone uses the same line you used for your previous communication with this contact by default. To choose a preferred line for phone calls and SMS/MMS message conversations, select the contact, tap default (below the contact's name), then choose a line.

To change how your contacts are sorted and displayed, go to Settings > Apps > Contacts.

See also

Add or edit your contact info and photo on iPhone

Previous
Add and use contact information

Next
Add your contact info

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Add or edit your contact info and photo on iPhone

iPhone uses your Apple Account to create your contact card, called *My Card,* in the Contacts app. You can also add or edit details—including your name, address, phone number, and birthday, as well as the Contact Poster, which you can share with people when you call or send a message to them.

Complete or edit My Card

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Edit.

   If you don't see My Card, tap + and enter your information, then return to the contact list, touch and hold your contact, and tap Make this My Card.
3. Enter your contact information.

   Contacts suggests addresses and phone numbers to help you.

Tip: You can also teach Siri how to pronounce your name. See Tell Siri how to say your name.

Add or edit your home address

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Edit.
3. Tap Add Address, then add your address.
4. Tap the label that appears to the left of the address, then select Home.

You can use AutoFill in Safari to automatically fill in your address for things like online shopping or online forms. When you edit your My Card, your AutoFill information

automatically updates. See Fill in personal information.

Add or edit your photo and poster

You can set a photo and poster to automatically appear when you call or send a message to others.

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Edit.
3. Tap your contact photo, then choose and customize your photo and poster.

Share your name and contact image

You can choose to automatically share your updated name, photo, and poster with people in your contacts.

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, tap Edit, then tap your contact photo.
3. Turn on Name & Photo Sharing to start sharing your contact photo and poster with others. (You may need to scroll down.)

   You can share automatically with Contacts Only, or select Always Ask to be prompted before your name, photo, and poster are shared with anyone.

Add or edit contact pronouns



You can add or edit your pronouns or another contact's pronouns in the Contacts app.

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top to add your pronouns, or select another contact to add theirs.
3. Tap Edit, then tap "add pronouns."
4. Select your language, then add the correct pronouns.

   You can also add pronouns in other languages by tapping Add Pronouns again.
5. Tap Add.

Note: When you share your contact information through Contacts or NameDrop, by default your pronouns aren't shared. When you're sharing another contact's information, their pronouns are never shared.

Create or edit your Medical ID

A Medical ID provides information about you that may be important in an emergency, like allergies, medical conditions, and your emergency contacts.

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.

2. Tap My Card at the top of your contacts list, then tap Edit.

3. Scroll down, then tap Create Medical ID or Edit Medical ID.

See also

Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

Set up and view your Medical ID

Previous
Edit contacts

Next
Add or remove accounts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

You can use NameDrop to quickly share new contact information with a nearby iPhone or Apple Watch (Apple Watch Ultra models, Apple Watch Series 7 and later, and Apple Watch SE 2nd generation or later).



Note: NameDrop only works for sending new contact information, not updating an existing contact.

Use NameDrop on iPhone

1. Hold the display of your iPhone a few centimeters from the top of the other person's iPhone or Apple Watch.
2. Continue holding your devices near each other until NameDrop appears on both screens.
3. Choose to share your contact card and receive the other person's, or to only receive the other person's.

   If you're sharing your contact card, tap ›, select the fields you want to include, then tap Save. The same fields will be selected by default next the time you use NameDrop.

   To cancel, move the two devices away from each other or lock your iPhone before the NameDrop transfer completes.

Turn off NameDrop on iPhone

NameDrop is on by default. To turn off NameDrop (and other Bring Devices Together features), go to Settings > General > AirDrop, then turn off Bring Devices Together.

See also

Add and use contact information on iPhone

‹ Previous
Add or remove accounts

Next ›
Use contacts from the Phone app

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Add or remove accounts in Contacts on iPhone

In the Contacts app, you can add multiple accounts—such as iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo. You can choose a default account, set up LDAP or CardDAV accounts, show or hide accounts, and delete accounts.

Add your iCloud contacts

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Add your contacts from other accounts

You can use the Contacts app to manage your contacts in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Contacts Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Choose an account, sign in to it, then turn on Contacts.

Note: If you add an account that doesn't support Push notifications, you can set a Fetch schedule for updating your contacts from the account. Go to Settings > Apps > Contacts, tap Contacts Accounts, then tap Fetch New Data. Under Fetch, choose a schedule. If you choose Automatically, new data is downloaded when your iPhone is charging and connected to Wi-Fi.

Add contacts from contacts provider apps

You can allow third-party apps to add contacts to the Contacts app. The contacts are managed by the third-party app and can't be edited in Contacts.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Providers, then turn on the option for an app.

Choose your default account

You can select a default account where new contacts are automatically added.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Default Account, then tap the account you want to make your default.

Set up an LDAP or CardDAV account to access business or school directories

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Contacts Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Tap Add Other Account, then tap Add LDAP Account or CardDAV Account.
5. Enter the account information.

Remove a contact account

When you remove an account, the contacts in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The contacts remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Google) and any other devices you had already set up.

- *Turn off iCloud contacts:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn off Contacts.

You can choose to keep or delete the previously synced iCloud contacts on your iPhone.

- *Temporarily stop using an account:* Go to Settings > Apps > Contacts > Contacts Accounts, tap the account, then turn off Contacts.

  To view the contacts in that account on your iPhone again, turn on Contacts.

- *Delete an account:* Go to Settings > Apps > Contacts > Contacts Accounts, tap the account, then tap Delete Account.

  If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

See also

Control access to your contacts on iPhone

Import contacts on iPhone

Edit contacts on iPhone

Previous
Add your contact info

Next
Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get rid of duplicate contacts on iPhone

When you have contacts from multiple sources, you might have multiple entries for the same person. In the Contacts app, link contact cards for the same person in different accounts so they appear only once in your All Contacts list. Linked contact cards are displayed as a single *unified contact*.

Resolve duplicate contacts

If you have more than one contact card with the same first and last name, you can merge the duplicate contacts.

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Below My Card, tap View Duplicates.
3. Tap individual contacts to review and merge them, or tap Merge All to merge all duplicate contacts.

Link contacts manually

If two entries for the same person aren't linked automatically, you can unify them manually.

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap one of the contacts, tap Edit, then tap Link Contacts.
3. Choose the other contact entry to link to, then tap Link.

When you link contacts with different first or last names, the names on the individual cards don't change, but only one name appears on the unified card. To choose which name appears on the unified card, tap one of the linked cards, tap the contact's name on that card, then tap Use This Name For Unified Card.

Note: When you link contacts, those contacts aren't merged. If you change or add information in a unified contact, the changes are copied to each source account where that information already exists.

See also

Add and use contact information on iPhone

Previous
Use contacts from the Phone app

Next
Sync contacts across devices

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Import contacts on iPhone

You can import contacts from a SIM card, vCard, or from a directory.

Import contacts from a SIM card (GSM)

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Import SIM Contacts.

Import contacts from a vCard

Tap a .vcf attachment in an email or message.

Add a contact from a directory

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap <, then tap the GAL, CardDAV, or LDAP directory you want to search.
3. Enter your search.
4. Tap the person's name to save their information to your contacts.

See also

Export contacts on iPhone

Previous
Sync contacts across devices

Next
Export contacts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use contacts from the Phone app on iPhone

In the Phone app on iPhone, you can call contacts and add recent callers to the Contacts app.

Add a contact to Favorites

You can add VIP contacts to your Favorites list for quick dialing.

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Select a contact, scroll down, then tap Add to Favorites.

Calls from these contacts bypass Do Not Disturb (see Turn on or schedule a Focus).

Add a recent caller to Contacts

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a number in the Calls list.
3. Tap Create New Contact, then enter the contact's information.

   To add a recent caller to an existing contact, tap Add to Existing Contact, then choose a contact.

Automate dialing an extension or passcode

If the number you're calling requires dialing an extension, iPhone can enter it for you. When editing a contact's phone number, tap + * #, then do any of the following:

- Tap Pause to enter a two-second pause (a two-second pause is represented as a comma in the phone number).

- Tap Wait to stop dialing until you tap Dial again (wait-to-dial is represented as a semicolon in the phone number).

See also

Add and use contact information on iPhone

Previous
Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

Next
Merge or hide duplicate contacts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Sync contacts across devices on iPhone

To keep your contact information up to date across all your devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account, you can use iCloud.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Alternatively, you can sync the information between iPhone and your Mac or Windows device to keep the information up to date across iPhone and your computer. See Transfer files between your iPhone and other devices.

If you use iCloud for Contacts, your contacts are kept up to date automatically, and no options appear for syncing them with your computer.

See also

Add or remove accounts in Contacts on iPhone

Previous
Merge or hide duplicate contacts

Next
Import contacts

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Export contacts on iPhone

You can export some or all of your contacts to another device or app.

1. Go to the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap < at the top left.
3. Touch and hold an existing list (or create a new list by tapping Add List).
4. Tap Export, select the fields you want to include, then tap .
5. Choose a method to send or save the exported contact cards, such as Messages or Mail.

See also

Add and use contact information on iPhone

Previous
Import contacts

Next
Get started with FaceTime

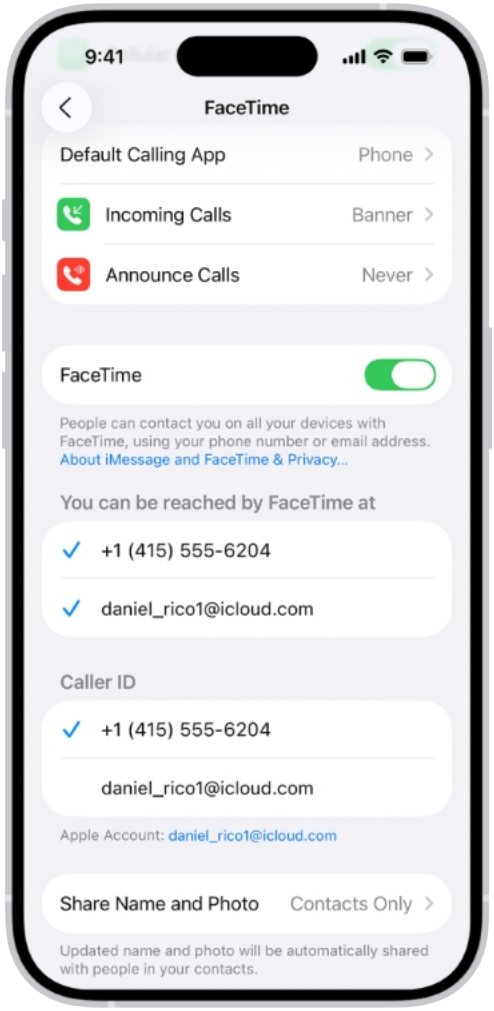
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Set up FaceTime on iPhone

To make and receive FaceTime calls on your iPhone, you can use your phone number or set up FaceTime with your Apple Account.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap FaceTime.
3. If FaceTime is turned off, turn it on.
4. Choose how you want to use FaceTime:
    - *With your Apple Account:* If you see a sign-in screen, sign in to your Apple Account and enter your password.

Below “You can be reached by FaceTime at,” choose whether people can reach you through your email address, your phone number, or both. Below Caller ID, choose whether your email address or phone number appears on Caller ID for outgoing calls.

- *With just your phone number:* You can skip signing in and use FaceTime with only your phone number as your contact method.

To stop using FaceTime, go to the Settings app  , tap Apps, then tap FaceTime. Turn off FaceTime (or if you’re signed in to your Apple Account, tap your Apple Account, then tap Sign Out).

See also

Make FaceTime calls on iPhone

Receive FaceTime calls on iPhone

Previous
Get started with FaceTime

Next
Make FaceTime calls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Make FaceTime calls on iPhone

With an internet connection, you can make and receive calls in the FaceTime app. (You may need to set up FaceTime before you can make and receive calls.)

You can also make FaceTime calls over a cellular data connection. (Calling and data rates may apply.) To turn this feature off, go to the Settings app, tap Cellular, then turn off FaceTime below Cellular Data. See View or change cellular data settings.

Note: FaceTime audio calls and Group FaceTime calls aren't available in all countries or regions.

Make a FaceTime call

1. Go to the FaceTime app on your iPhone.
2. Tap New Call.
3. Enter the name, number, or email of the person you want to call. Alternatively, you can tap to open Contacts and add people from there, or tap a suggested contact.
4. Tap FaceTime to make a video call or to make an audio call.

   Tip: In some countries and regions, you can record a one-to-one FaceTime audio call and view the call transcript in Notes. See Record and transcribe an audio call.

To call multiple people, see Make a Group FaceTime call.

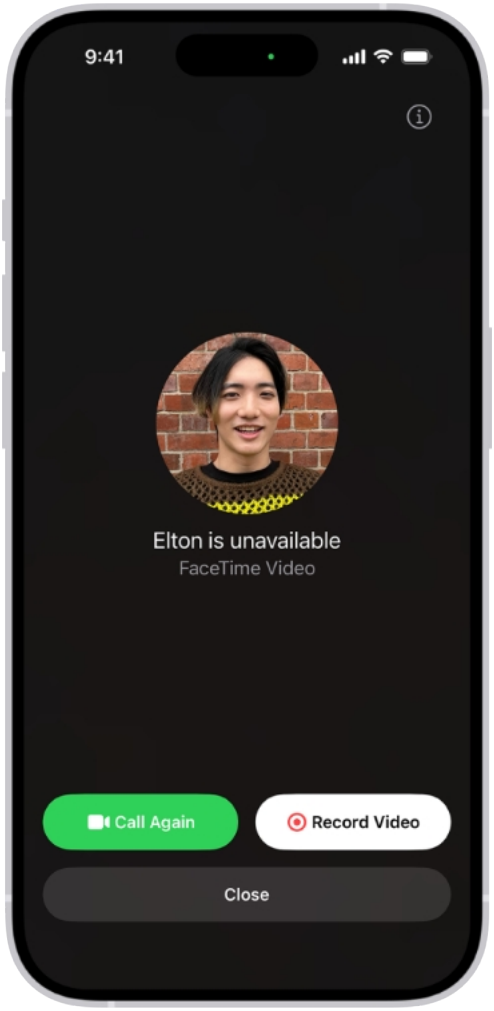
Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Call Eliza's mobile." Learn how to use Siri.

Tip: To see more during a FaceTime video call, rotate iPhone to use landscape orientation. See Rotate your iPhone screen.

Record a video message

If someone doesn’t answer your FaceTime video call, you can record a video message to convey exactly what you want to say.

1. Tap Record Video, wait for the countdown (from 5 to 1), then record your message.



2. Tap ⏹ to stop recording.
3. Tap ↑ to send your recorded message, or tap Retake to rerecord the message. You can also tap Save to save the video message to Photos.

   After you send your video message, the recipient is notified.



Note: You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

Note: You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

See View a video message or listen to a voicemail.

Leave a voicemail

If someone doesn't answer your FaceTime audio call, and the person you're calling has Live Voicemail turned on in Settings > Apps > Phone, you're prompted to leave a voicemail.

If you leave a voicemail, your message is transcribed on their screen as you speak, letting them know what you're calling about and giving them a chance to pick up your call.

Call again

To call someone again in FaceTime, do any of the following:

- Tap Call Again on the Record Video screen.
- In your call history, tap the name or number of the person (or group) you want to call again, then tap the Call or Video button.

Start a FaceTime call from a Messages conversation

In an iMessage conversation, you can start a FaceTime call with the person you're chatting with.

1. Tap  at the top right of the iMessage conversation.
2. Do any of the following:

    - Tap FaceTime Audio.
    - Tap FaceTime Video.

Use Live Translation

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use it to see live captions in FaceTime. See See translated captions in FaceTime.

Important: If you remove the FaceTime app from your iPhone, or if you removed FaceTime in an earlier version of iOS, you won't be able to make or receive FaceTime calls or use SharePlay on your iPhone unless you redownload the app. Cellular calls won't be relayed from your iPhone to your iPad, Mac, or Apple Watch until FaceTime is reinstalled. Settings and contact cards won't show FaceTime options. However, if your Apple Watch has its own SIM, it can still make calls through your service provider.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Use Live Captions in FaceTime on iPhone

Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Previous
Set up FaceTime

Next
Receive FaceTime calls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

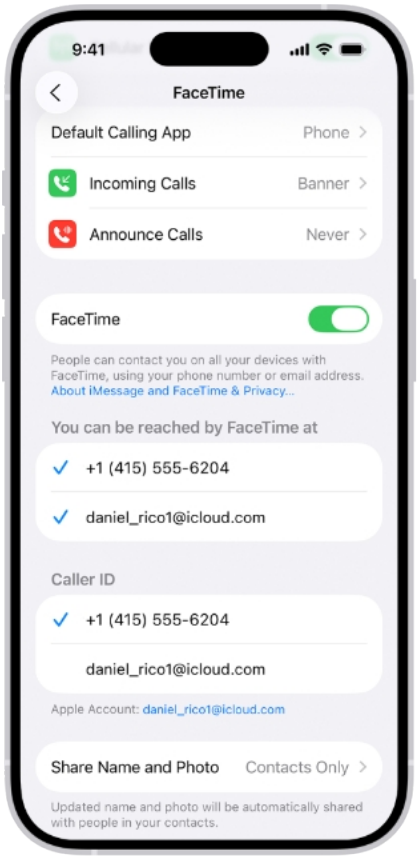
UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get started with FaceTime on iPhone

Learn how to use the FaceTime app to visit face-to-face with friends and family—over Wi-Fi or cellular. In a FaceTime call, you can also watch TV shows and movies, listen to music, and even work out together.



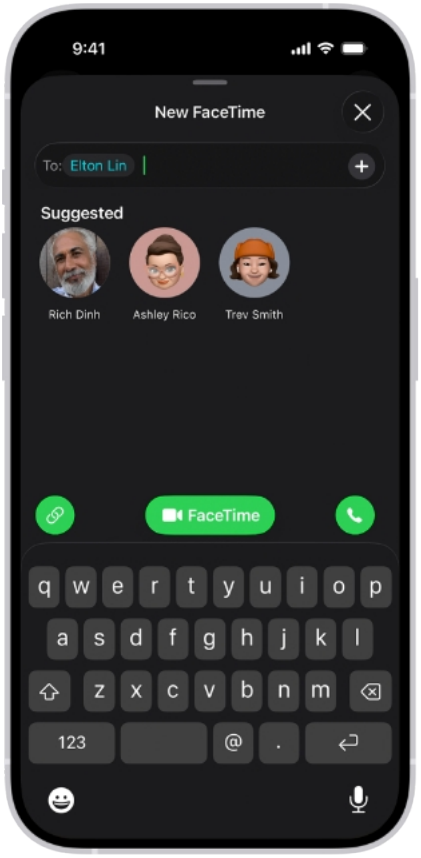
Set up FaceTime

Go to the Settings app, tap Apps, then tap FaceTime. Make sure FaceTime is turned on, and sign in to your Apple Account if you want to use it with FaceTime (so you can move the call between your devices, for example). If more than one contact method appears below “You can be reached by FaceTime at,” you can tap to select or deselect it.

Make a FaceTime call

Open the FaceTime app, tap New Call, then enter the name, number, or email of the person (or people) you want to call. Tap FaceTime to make a video call or to make an audio call. In a Group FaceTime call, you can talk with up to 32 people.

If you want to call someone who doesn't have an Apple device, you can create and send a link to the call in Messages or Mail. Open FaceTime, tap New Call, then tap .





Use the FaceTime controls

While on a FaceTime call, use the FaceTime controls to turn your camera or mic on or off, take a Live Photo, and more. If you don't see the controls, tap your screen.

Switch a FaceTime call to another device

When you're signed in to your Apple Account on multiple devices, you can start a FaceTime call on one of them, then move it to your iPhone. You can also move your call from your iPhone to another device. On the device you want to switch to, tap or at the top of the screen or the suggestion "Move call to this [*device*]," then tap Switch.





Leave a video message

If someone doesn't answer your FaceTime video call, you can leave a video message. Tap Record Video, then record your message. When you're finished recording, tap . Tap to send the video.

Want to learn more?

- Set up FaceTime on iPhone
- Make FaceTime calls on iPhone
- Use Live Captions in FaceTime on iPhone
- Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices
- Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone
- Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

Note: Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

Previous
Export contacts

Next
Set up FaceTime

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use audio call tools in FaceTime on iPhone

If you're placed on hold during a FaceTime audio call, you can use Hold Assist to get a notification when a live agent becomes available.

In some countries and regions, you can record a FaceTime audio call when you're talking to one other person, and view the transcript of the call in the Notes app.

Note: Call recording isn't currently available in the European Union, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Egypt, Iran, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Morocco, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan, Qatar, Russia, Saudi Arabia, South Africa, Turkey, United Arab Emirates, and Yemen.

Use Hold Assist

When you're placed on hold during a FaceTime audio call, you can use Hold Assist to notify you when a live agent is available. See Receive a notification when you're no longer on hold.

Note: Hold Assist isn't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Record an audio call

Before you begin, check the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website to see if call recording is available in your language and region, and make sure the other call participant is willing to be recorded.

1. During a one-to-one audio call in the FaceTime app, tap, then tap Call Recording.

   Both call participants hear a notice that the call is being recorded.

2. To stop recording, tap.

   If doesn't appear, tap, then tap Stop next to Call Recording. Call recording also stops when you end the call.

Call recordings are automatically saved to a Call Recordings folder in the Notes app.

Play a call recording

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Select a note in the Call Recordings folder, then tap ▶.

View a call transcript

In select regions and languages, you can view the transcript of a recorded call in the Notes app. The transcript may not be available immediately—you may see a message that the transcription is in progress.

Note: Verify the accuracy of a transcription before relying on it. It might not be a perfect representation of the conversation.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Select a note in the Call Recordings folder, then tap .

   Note: Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see Transcript, your iPhone doesn't meet the minimum requirements or detect a supported language.

   In the transcript, the speaker of each statement is identified.
3. While viewing the transcript, you can do any of the following:

   - *Play the audio from a specific point:* Select the text you want to hear.
   - *Search the transcript:* Tap , then tap Find in Transcript.
   - *Copy the transcript:* Tap , then choose Add Transcript to Note or Copy Transcript.
   - *Save or delete the audio recording:* Tap , then choose Save Audio to Files or Delete.

     Note: Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.
   - *View the waveform of the recording:* Tap .

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can summarize a recorded FaceTime call. See Use Apple Intelligence in Phone.

Turn off Call Recording

Call Recording is turned on by default, but you can turn it off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Audio Call Recording, then turn off Audio Call Recording.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Change FaceTime audio settings on iPhone

Screen and filter FaceTime calls on iPhone

Previous
Create a FaceTime link

Next
Take a Live Photo

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Receive FaceTime calls on iPhone

In the FaceTime app, you can answer video and audio calls, decline calls, view video messages or listen to voicemails, and delete calls from your call history.

Note: Live Voicemail isn't available in all languages or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Answer a FaceTime call

When a FaceTime call comes in, do any of the following:

- *Accept the call:* To answer a video call, tap , then tap . To answer an audio call, tap .

  If a slider appears, you can drag it right to answer.

- *Decline the call:* Tap Decline or .

  For FaceTime video calls, tap Message to send a text message or tap Remind Me to set a reminder to call back. For FaceTime audio calls, tap Message to send a text message or tap Voicemail to send the caller to voicemail. (You may need to tap the incoming call banner to see these options.)

- *Accept an incoming call and place the current call on hold:* Tap .

  Note: This option is only available if you're on a FaceTime audio call and you receive another incoming FaceTime audio call. Otherwise, accepting an incoming call will end the current call.

Tip: You can have Siri announce incoming calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

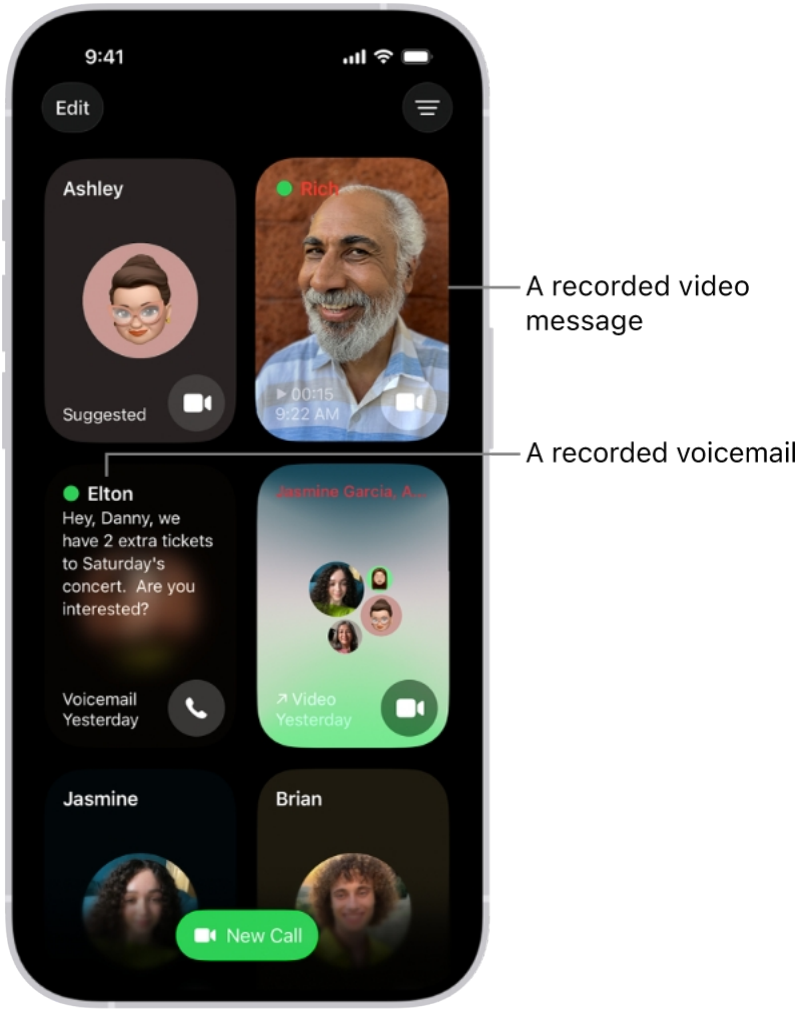
View a video message or listen to a voicemail

If you miss an incoming *video call* and the caller leaves a video message, you receive a notification about the video message. A thumbnail image from the video also appears in your FaceTime call history. You can tap the notification or image to view the video message.

Note: You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

If you miss an incoming *audio call*, the caller can leave a voicemail if you have Live Voicemail turned on in Settings > Apps > Phone. You can see a real-time transcript of the voicemail and pick up the call as the caller is leaving the message. To stop the incoming voicemail without answering or blocking the call, tap Stop. See Turn on Live Voicemail.

Tip: To quickly access all voicemails or video messages from a specific contact, tap their name in the call history, then tap the Voicemails button or the Videos button.



Delete a call from your call history

1. Go to the FaceTime app on your iPhone.

2. Touch and hold the call in your call history, then tap Delete.

See also

Block a FaceTime call and report it as spam on iPhone

Screen and filter FaceTime calls on iPhone

Previous
Make FaceTime calls

Next
Create a FaceTime link

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Take a Live Photo during a FaceTime call on iPhone

When you're on a FaceTime video call, you can take a Live Photo to capture a moment of your conversation (not available in all countries or regions). The camera captures what happens just before and after you take the photo, including the audio, so you can see and hear it later just the way it happened.

Note: Make sure FaceTime Live Photos is turned on in Settings > Apps > FaceTime.

1. During a video call in the FaceTime app, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Do one of the following:
   - *During a call with one other person:* Tap ◯.
   - *During a Group FaceTime call:* Tap the tile of the person you want to take a picture of, then tap ◯.

You both receive a notification that the photo was taken, and the Live Photo is saved in your Photos app.

See also

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Table of Contents

Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone

In FaceTime, you can create a link to a FaceTime call and send the link to a friend or a group (using Mail or Messages). They can use the link to join or start a call.

1. Go to the FaceTime app on your iPhone.
2. Tap New Call, then tap Create Link.
3. Choose an option for sending the link (for example, Messages or Mail).

In Calendar, you can schedule a remote video meeting by inserting a FaceTime link as the location of the meeting.

Note: You can invite anyone to join you in a FaceTime call, even people who don't have an Apple device, as long as they have a browser that supports WebRTC (such as the latest version of Google Chrome or Microsoft Edge). They can join you in one-to-one and Group FaceTime calls from their browser—no login is necessary. Sending video requires H.264 video encoding support.

See also

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Use Live Captions in FaceTime on iPhone

Table of Contents

Use other apps during a FaceTime call on iPhone

While you're on a call using the FaceTime app, you can use other apps—for example, to look up information, write a note, or perform a calculation.

1. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
2. Tap an app icon to open the app.
3. To return to the FaceTime screen, tap the green bar (or the FaceTime icon) at the top of the screen.

You can also share your screen with the other people in your FaceTime call while using another app. See Share your screen in a FaceTime call.

See also

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Previous
Use Live Captions

Next
Make a Group FaceTime call

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

In the FaceTime app, you can talk with up to 32 participants in a Group FaceTime call.

Note: Group FaceTime calls aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Start a Group FaceTime call

1. Go to the FaceTime app on your iPhone.
2. Tap New Call.
3. In the field near the top of the screen, enter the names, numbers, or emails of the people you want to call.

You can also tap ⊕ to open Contacts and add people from there, or tap suggested contacts.

4. Tap FaceTime to make a video call or tap to make a FaceTime audio call.

Each participant appears in a tile on the screen. When a participant speaks (verbally or by using sign language) or you tap the tile, that tile becomes highlighted or more prominent. Tiles that can't fit on the screen appear in a row at the bottom. To find a participant you don't see, swipe through the row. The participant's initials may appear in the tile if an image isn't available.

To prevent the tile of the person speaking or signing from becoming more prominent during a Group FaceTime call, go to the Settings app, tap Apps, tap FaceTime, then turn off Speaking below Automatic Prominence.

Note: Sign language detection requires a supported model for the presenter. In addition, both the presenter and participants need iOS 14, iPadOS 14, macOS 11, or later.

Start a Group FaceTime call from a group Messages conversation

In a group iMessage conversation, you can start a Group FaceTime call with all the people you're chatting with in Messages.

1. Tap at the top right of the iMessage conversation.
2. Tap FaceTime Audio or FaceTime Video.

Add another person to a call

Any participant can add another person at any time during a FaceTime call.

1. Do one of the following:

   - *During a one-on-one FaceTime call:* Tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), tap ···, then tap Add People.

   - *During a Group FaceTime call:* Tap the people count at the top of the screen, then tap Add People.

2. Enter the name, number, or email of the person you want to add, or tap ⊕ to add someone from Contacts. You can add multiple people.

3. Tap Add People.

Join a Group FaceTime call

When someone invites you to join a Group FaceTime call, you receive a notification of the incoming call—you can either join or decline. See Answer a FaceTime call.

Leave a Group FaceTime call

To leave a group call at any time, tap ⓧ in the FaceTime controls, or tap Leave while viewing the list of participants.

The call remains active if one or more participants remain.

See also

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone

Previous
Use other apps during a call

Next
Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Live Captions in FaceTime on iPhone

During a video call in the FaceTime app, you can turn on Live Captions to see the spoken conversation transcribed and displayed in real time.

Note: Live Captions aren't available in all languages or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

1. During a video call in the FaceTime app, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap, then tap Live Captions.

   A Live Captions window appears, showing the automatically transcribed dialogue of the call near the top of the screen and who's speaking.
3. To stop showing the conversation on the screen, tap the screen, tap, then tap Stop next to Live Captions.

Important: The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn't be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations. Live Captions uses additional battery.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use it to see live translated captions in FaceTime. See Translate messages, calls, and conversations.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Get started with FaceTime on iPhone

Display subtitles and captions on iPhone

Table of Contents

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

With SharePlay in the FaceTime app, you can stream TV shows, movies, and music in sync with friends and family while on a FaceTime call. You can also play supported multiplayer games in Game Center with friends during a FaceTime call, and watch supported live sports events together.

Note: You can start SharePlay instantly by holding two iPhones together. See Start a SharePlay session by holding two iPhones close together.

SharePlay can also be used in other apps during a FaceTime call. To see which apps are supported, tap ···, tap SharePlay, then scroll through the apps.

Note: Apple TV+ (includes Friday Night Baseball in some countries and regions), MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, and some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie, TV show, or live sports event together, every participant needs to have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the minimum system requirements. SharePlay may not support the sharing of some movies, TV shows, or live sports events across different countries or regions. FaceTime, Group FaceTime, some FaceTime features, and other Apple services may not be available in all countries or regions.

Watch video together during a FaceTime call

You can watch movies and TV shows during a FaceTime call in sync with your friends and family. You can also watch supported live sports events.

1. Start a FaceTime call or a Group FaceTime call.
2. Tap ···, tap SharePlay, then tap an app below Listen and Play Together (for example, the Apple TV app).

   Alternatively, you can go to the Home Screen, then open a video streaming app that supports SharePlay.

3. Select a show, movie, or live sports event that you want to watch.
4. Tap the Play button, then select SharePlay (if it appears) to begin watching with everyone on the call. (Others on the call may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

   For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

Each person watching the content can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward. (Settings like closed captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.)

You can use Picture in Picture to keep watching the video while using another app—order food, check your email, or jump into the Messages app to discuss the video by text when you don't to interrupt the sound of the movie or TV show.

Invite friends to watch video together from a supported app during a FaceTime call

On an iPhone that meets the minimum system requirements, you can start a FaceTime call in the Apple TV app (or other supported video app) while you're browsing or watching video content, and share the item in sync with others using SharePlay. Everyone on the call needs to have the same type of access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase.

1. In the Apple TV app (or other supported video app), find a show, movie, or live sports event that you want to share.
2. Tap the item to see its details, tap, then tap.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap FaceTime.
4. When the FaceTime call connects, tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

   To begin viewing, recipients tap Open.

Note: If the content requires a subscription, people who aren't subscribers can subscribe before watching.

After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV.

Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV

If you've already started watching a video together on iPhone, you can send it to Apple TV to enjoy on the big screen.

On iPhone, do one of the following:

- In the streaming app, tap , then choose Apple TV as the playback destination.
- Open Control Center, tap , then choose Apple TV as the playback destination.

The video plays in sync on Apple TV, and you can keep the conversation going on your iPhone.

See Watch together using SharePlay in the Apple TV User Guide.

Listen to music together during a FaceTime call

You can get together and listen to an album or favorite playlist with others on a FaceTime call. Anyone on the call who has access to the music (for example, through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial) on a device that meets the minimum system requirements can listen along, see what's next, add songs to a shared queue, and more.

1. Start a FaceTime call or a Group FaceTime call.
2. Tap , tap SharePlay, then tap a music streaming app below Listen and Play Together (for example, the Music app).

   Alternatively, you can go to the Home Screen, then open a music streaming app that supports SharePlay.
3. Select the music you want to listen to, then tap the Play button to begin listening to the music together. (Others on the call may have to tap Join SharePlay to hear the music.)

   For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the music starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

Each person can use the music controls to pause, rewind, fast-forward, scrub to a different part of the song, or go to the next track. And anyone on the call can add songs to the shared queue.

Invite friends to listen to music together from a supported app during a FaceTime call

On an iPhone that meets the minimum system requirements, you can start a FaceTime call in the Music app (or other supported music app) and use SharePlay to share the music in sync with others on the call. Each person can use the music controls to pause, rewind, fast-forward, or scrub to a different part of the song. And anyone using SharePlay can add songs to the shared queue. The people you want to share with must have access to the music (for example, through a subscription).

1. Go to the Music app (or other supported music app), then tap the music you want to share.
2. Tap •••, tap then tap .
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap FaceTime.
4. When the FaceTime call connects, tap Start.

   To begin listening, recipients tap the song title at the top of the FaceTime controls, then tap Open. The music starts playing at the same time for everyone on the call who has access to the content.

Note: People who don't have access to the content you share are asked to get access.

Play games in Game Center with friends during a FaceTime call

You can play supported multiplayer games with friends in Game Center on a FaceTime call. You must first set up and manage your Game Center profile in the Settings app , add friends, then find and download a supported multiplayer game for Game Center in the App Store.

During a FaceTime call, open the game, tap Start SharePlay, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Play with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone.

SharePlay lets you work out with others using Apple Fitness+. See the Apple Support article Use SharePlay with Apple Fitness+ on your iPhone, iPad, or Apple TV.

You can also share your screen to show apps, webpages, and more during the conversation. See Share your screen in a FaceTime call.

See also

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Previous
Make a Group FaceTime call

Next
Share your screen in a FaceTime call

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

In the FaceTime app (on a device that meets the minimum system requirements), you can share your screen to bring apps, webpages, and more into the conversation.

Note: FaceTime, FaceTime audio, Group FaceTime, some FaceTime features, and other Apple features or services may not be available in all countries or regions.

Share your screen

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap ···.
2. Tap Screen Sharing, then tap Share My Screen.

   A countdown from 3 to 1 appears at the bottom of the screen before screen sharing begins.

Tip: During a one-to-one FaceTime call, a participant who is using an iPhone or iPad can tap, draw, or write on your screen to call your attention to a specific area. The circle, drawing, or writing disappears after a few seconds. If you need more help, you can also allow the other participant to control your screen.

To stop sharing your screen, tap ···, then tap Stop next to Screen Sharing. Ending a FaceTime call also ends screen sharing.

Ask someone to share their screen

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap ···.
2. Tap Screen Sharing, then tap Ask to Share Screen.

See also

Request or give remote control in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Previous
Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together

Next
Request or give remote control in a FaceTime call

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Request or give remote control in a FaceTime call on iPhone

During a one-to-one FaceTime video or audio call, you can remotely control someone else's screen or allow a trusted person to remotely control yours. The person controlling the screen can help with an issue or demonstrate how to use an app.

Note: Remote control isn't currently available in the European Union.

Request remote control

You can request control of an iPhone screen that's being shared with you.

Note: Both you and the other participant need iOS 18 or later.

1. Go to the FaceTime app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the window showing the shared screen, then tap.

   If the other participant accepts your request, you can tap or swipe to interact with the shared screen. You can also use the onscreen keyboard within apps.

Accept a remote control request

A participant can remotely control your screen if they're saved in your contacts and using an iPhone or iPad with iOS 18, iPadOS 18, or later. To help protect your data and privacy, additional restrictions may apply to remote control requests.

When you receive a remote control request notification in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap Allow.

WARNING: The person remotely controlling the screen can perform tasks on your iPhone such as opening and closing apps, changing settings, deleting items, or sending messages. Only approve remote control requests from people you trust.

The person remotely controlling the screen may be restricted from tasks such as changing your Apple Account or Face ID settings, making payments, or erasing your device. Your Face ID and Touch ID will be disabled during a remote control session.

You can still tap, swipe, or type while your screen is remotely controlled—your actions take priority over remote actions.

Decline a remote control request

When you receive a remote control request notification in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap Don't Allow. Screen sharing continues, and the other participant can still tap, draw, or write on your screen to highlight important areas.

Stop remote control

You can end remote control at any time. Do one of the following:

- *If you're allowing someone to control your screen:* Tap Stop at the bottom of the screen sharing window.
- *If you're controlling someone's screen:* Tap at the bottom of the screen sharing window.

Ending a FaceTime call also ends remote control and screen sharing.

See also

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Previous
Share your screen in a FaceTime call

Next
Collaborate on a document in FaceTime

Table of Contents

Collaborate on a document in FaceTime on iPhone

In a FaceTime call, you can collaborate on a shared document. You can initiate collaboration in a FaceTime call that's in progress, or you can initiate collaboration from the app where the document was created.

1. Start a conversation in the FaceTime app with the people you want to collaborate with.
2. Open the app you want to use, then open a document.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Tap Collaborate in the notification that appears.
   - Tap, choose how to share the document (FaceTime, AirDrop, Mail, or Messages), then tap Collaborate.
4. Tap Start in the collaboration notification that appears at the top of your screen.

   Participants get a notification that you've shared a document you want to collaborate on. When they tap Open in the notification, the document opens on their device.

   Everyone who receives and opens the document can make changes and see changes made by others. When someone makes a change, a notification is sent to everyone who's collaborating on the document.

See also

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Previous
Request or give remote control in a FaceTime call

Next
Use video conferencing features

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

During a video call in the FaceTime app or a third-party video conferencing app, you can use full-screen video effects and add reactions with hand gestures that fill the camera frame with 3D effects.

Use video effects in a video call

1. During a video call on your iPhone in the FaceTime app, tap your tile.
2. Do any of the following:

- *Keep yourself in the camera frame as you move around:* Center Stage—available only on iPhone 17, iPhone 17 Pro, iPhone 17 Pro Max, and iPhone Air— is on by default. To turn it off, tap Camera Effects, then tap Center Stage.
- *Blur the background:* On iPhone 17, iPhone 17 Pro, iPhone 17 Pro Max, and iPhone Air, tap Camera Effects, then tap Portrait. On other models, tap Portrait. See Blur the background with Portrait mode.
- *Dim the background and illuminate your face:* On iPhone 17, iPhone 17 Pro, iPhone 17 Pro Max, and iPhone Air, tap Camera Effects, then tap Studio Light. On other models, tap Studio Light.
- *Become an animated Memoji:* On iPhone 17, iPhone 17 Pro, iPhone 17 Pro Max, and iPhone Air, tap Camera Effects, then tap Memoji. On other models, tap Memoji. You can use a built-in Memoji—or one that you created—to capture your movements, facial expressions, and voice. See Create and send Memoji.
- *Add visual effects with hand gestures:* Tap Reactions. When Reactions is turned off in Control Center, you can't use hand gestures to add reactions, but you can add reactions in FaceTime by tapping the icons that appear when you touch and hold your tile in the call. See Add reactions in a video call.

To use video effects in third-party video conferencing apps, open Control Center, tap the app, then tap one or more effects.

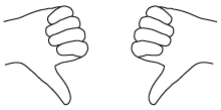
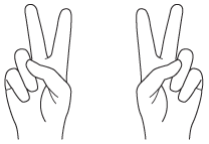
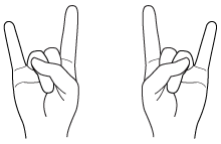
Note: Memoji aren't available in third-party video conferencing apps.

To adjust the amount of blur in Portrait mode or the intensity of Studio Light, open Control Center, then tap FaceTime (or the third-party video conferencing app). Tap Portrait or Studio Light, then adjust the slider.

Add reactions in a video call

With simple hand gestures in the FaceTime app (and third-party video conferencing apps), you can add reactions that fill the camera frame with fun, 3D augmented reality effects—including hearts, balloons, fireworks, and more. Hand gestures are available on iPhone 12 or later.

Note: To use hand gestures during a FaceTime call, tap your tile, then make sure Reactions is turned on. To use hand gestures during a call in a third-party video conferencing app, open Control Center, then make sure Reactions is turned on. When using gestures, hold your hands away from your face, and pause for a moment or two to activate the effect. (Only the front camera supports reactions and gestures.) You can also add reactions by touching and holding your tile in the call, then tapping the icons that appear.

Reaction	Gesture	Icon
Hearts		
Thumbs-up		
Thumbs-down		
Balloons		
Rain		
Confetti		
Laser burst		
Fireworks		

See also

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

Previous
Collaborate on a document in FaceTime

Next
Hand off a FaceTime call to another Apple device

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

You can start a FaceTime call on your iPhone and move the call to another device where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

With Continuity Camera and Mic, you can also use iPhone as a webcam and microphone for FaceTime calls on your Mac or Apple TV. See Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac and Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K.

Note: Your selected contact information for the call, shown in Settings > Apps > FaceTime, must match the selected contact information in FaceTime settings on the device you want to hand off to.

Hand off a FaceTime call from iPhone to iPad or Mac

While on a FaceTime call on your iPhone, you can hand off the call to your iPad or Mac (iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later, required). You must also be signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, do one of the following on the other device:

   - Tap the notification with the suggestion "Move call to this [*device*]."
   - Tap or at the top of the screen.

2. Tap Switch or Join, then tap Switch or Join to confirm.

   The call moves to the new device. On the original device, a banner appears confirming that the call was continued elsewhere, along with a Switch button, which you can tap if you want to bring the call back.

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to Apple TV 4K

You can start (or receive) a FaceTime call on your iPhone, and then hand off the call to the larger screen on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later) when you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices. After you hand off the call, it continues on Apple TV, with your iPhone serving as a webcam and microphone for Apple TV for the duration of the call. Continuity Camera with Apple TV is available on iPhone XR, iPhone Xs, or later, and on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later).

For instructions on handing off and continuing the call on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation), see Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later).

See also

Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K

Previous
Use video conferencing features

Next
Change the FaceTime video settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

When you want your voice to be heard clearly in a FaceTime call and other sounds filtered out, you can turn on Voice Isolation. Voice Isolation prioritizes your voice in a FaceTime call and blocks out the ambient noise.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, open Control Center.
2. Tap FaceTime, then select Voice Isolation.

Include the sounds around you

When you want your voice and all the sounds around you to be heard in a FaceTime call, you can turn on Wide Spectrum.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, open Control Center.
2. Tap Mic Mode, then select Wide Spectrum.

Adjust audio automatically

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, open Control Center.
2. Tap FaceTime, then select Automatic.

Mute the mic

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap to turn off the sound.

   Tap to turn the mic back on.

When your sound is turned off, your mic detects whether you're speaking, and you're notified that your mic is muted and that you can tap to unmute it.

See also

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

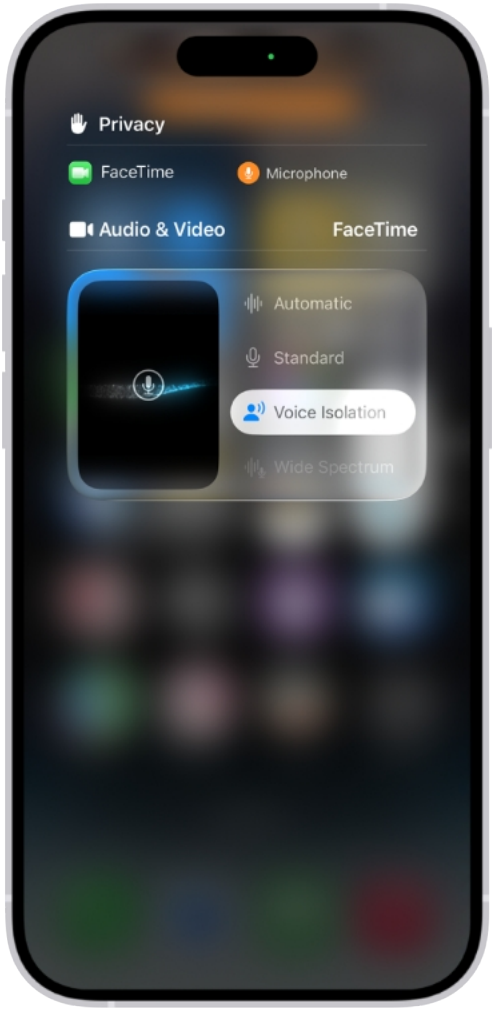
Use audio call tools in FaceTime on iPhone

Table of Contents

Change FaceTime audio settings on iPhone

Spatial Audio in the FaceTime app makes it sound like your friends are in the room with you. Their voices are spread out and sound like they're coming from the direction in which each person is positioned on the screen. You can adjust other audio settings during a FaceTime call.

Note: Spatial Audio also works with the following AirPods models: AirPods 3, AirPods Pro (all models), and AirPods Max.



Filter out background sounds

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

During a call in the FaceTime app, you can turn Portrait mode on or off, switch between cameras, or turn your camera on or off.



Blur the background with Portrait mode

During a FaceTime call, Portrait mode automatically blurs the background and puts the visual focus on you, the same way Portrait mode does in Camera.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap your tile.
2. Tap Portrait.

To turn Portrait mode off, tap the button again.

You can also turn on Portrait mode in Control Center. Open Control Center, then tap FaceTime Controls.

Switch to the rear camera

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap your tile.
2. Tap .

To switch back to the front-facing camera, tap again.

Note: While you're using the rear camera, you can adjust the image by tapping 1x. The label changes to show the current zoom (from 0.5x to 6x).

Turn off your camera

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the controls.
2. Tap . Tap it again to turn the camera back on.

See also

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Change FaceTime audio settings on iPhone

Previous
Hand off a FaceTime call to another Apple device

Next
Change the FaceTime audio settings

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Screen and filter FaceTime calls on iPhone

You can control how FaceTime handles calls from unknown numbers and suspected spam.

Screen unknown FaceTime audio calls

You can screen FaceTime audio calls from unknown numbers to get more information from callers before the call comes through. See Screen and block calls.

Silence or filter FaceTime calls

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap FaceTime.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Silence unknown callers:* Turn on Silence Unknown Callers. Calls from unknown numbers are silenced, sent to voicemail, and displayed on the Recents list. Incoming calls will continue to ring from people in your contacts, recent outgoing calls, and Siri Suggestions.

   - *Filter calls from unknown numbers:* Turn on Unknown Callers. Missed calls and voicemails from unknown numbers are moved to the Unknown Callers list in your call history (tap to see the list).

   - *Filter calls identified as spam:* Turn on FaceTime Spam. Spam calls are silenced and moved to the Spam list in your call history (tap to see the list).

See also

Apple Support article: Block phone numbers and contacts on your iPhone or iPad

Table of Contents

Block a FaceTime call and report it as spam on iPhone

In the FaceTime app, you can block FaceTime calls from unknown callers and report the calls as spam or junk.

Block a FaceTime call

If you receive an unwanted FaceTime call, you can block the caller. Do one of the following:

- While the call is ringing, tap the left side of the call notification, tap Join FaceTime at the top of the screen, then tap Block Caller.
- During a call, tap the email address or phone number, tap Block Caller, then tap Block. (You may need to tap the FaceTime window for the email address or phone number to appear.)
- In your FaceTime call history, tap the call, tap Block Contact, then tap Block.

Block a Group FaceTime call

If you receive an unwanted Group FaceTime call from unknown callers, you can block the call initiator (or all participants) by doing one of the following:

- *While the call is ringing:* Tap the left side of the notification to expand the window, tap the people count at the top of the screen, then tap Block All Participants.
- *During a Group FaceTime call:* Tap the people count at the top of the screen, then tap Block Unknown Participants or Block All Participants.
- *After a Group FaceTime call has ended:* Tap the call in the call history, then tap Block All Participants.

Report a FaceTime call as spam

If you receive an unwanted FaceTime call from an unknown caller, you can report the call to Apple as spam. Touch and hold the tile in your call history, then tap Report Spam.

Unblock a caller

Do one of the following:

- *In the FaceTime app:* Tap the call in the call history. Tap the caller's contact information (if the call was a Group FaceTime call), then tap Unblock Contact.
- *In the Settings app:* Tap Apps, tap FaceTime, then tap Blocked Contacts. Swipe left on the contact information, then tap Unblock.

See also

Block phone numbers and contacts on your iPhone or iPad

Screen and filter FaceTime calls on iPhone

Previous
Leave a call or switch to Messages

Next
Screen and filter calls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Leave a FaceTime call or switch to Messages on iPhone

You can leave a call in the FaceTime app at any time, or switch your conversation to Messages.

Leave a FaceTime call

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap .

Switch to a Messages conversation

During a call, you can jump to a Messages thread that includes everyone on the call.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap the contact information or people count at the top of the screen, then tap .

See also

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Table of Contents

Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone

In the Files app, you can organize documents, images, and other files in folders.

Create a folder

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Open a location or an existing folder.
3. Tap, then tap New Folder.

   Note: If you don't see New Folder, you can't create a folder in that location.

Rename, compress, and make other changes to a file or folder

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Open a location or an existing folder.
3. Touch and hold the file or folder, then choose an option: Copy, Move, Rename, Compress, Duplicate, or Delete.

To modify multiple files or folders at the same time, tap, tap Select, tap to select the files or folders you want to modify, then tap an option at the bottom of the screen (for example, Share, Move, or Delete).

Note: Some options may not be available, depending on the item you select; for example, you can't delete or move an app library (a folder labeled with the app name).

Zip or unzip a file or folder

You can zip a file or folder to compress it so that it takes up less storage space on your iPhone. You can also unzip a compressed file or folder.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file or folder you want to zip, then tap Compress.

To unzip a compressed file or folder, touch and hold it, then tap Uncompress.

Tag a file or folder

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Open a location or an existing folder.
3. Touch and hold the file or folder, tap Tags, then tap one or more tags.
4. Tap Done.

To find tagged items, tap Browse, then tap an item below Tags.

To remove a tag, tap it again.

Mark a folder as a favorite

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Open a location, touch and hold the folder, then tap Favorite.

To find Favorites, tap Browse.

See also

Send files from the Files app on iPhone

Previous
Find and view files and folders

Next
Send files from the Files app

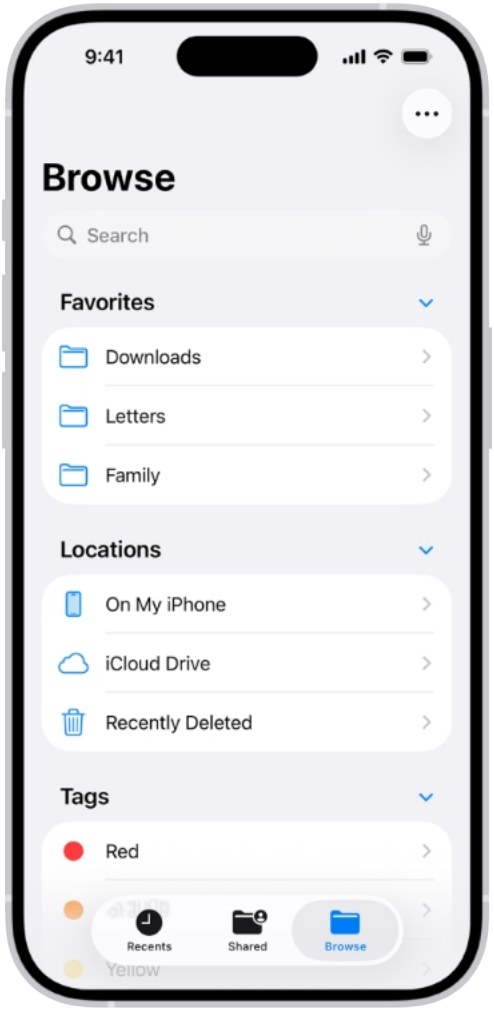
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

You can copy, move, customize, share, and delete your documents, images, and other files on your iPhone.



Modify and rearrange documents

When viewing a file in a supported document format, you can modify and rearrange the document's contents.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Open the document you want, tap its title, then choose any of the following:

- *Duplicate:* Make a copy of the document.
- *Move:* Move the document to another location.
- *Rename:* To rename the document.
- *Export:* Save a copy of the file in a different file format.
- *Print:* Print the document

To mark up a document, tap Ⓐ at the bottom of the screen.

To save the document in the Photos Library, tap ⎙, then tap Save Image.

To rearrange a document, touch and hold a highlighted page and drag it to a new location.

Note: Not all document formats are supported by the Files app.

Customize the appearance of your folders

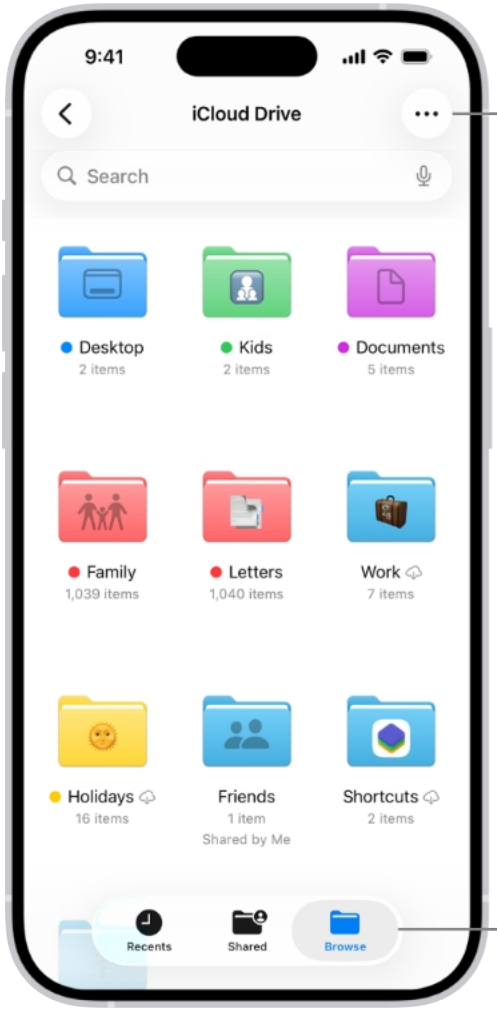
You can add color and icons to your folders to make them easier to spot.

1. Go to the Files app 🗂 on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a folder you want to customize, then choose Customize Folder & Tags.

   Note: This command doesn't appear for the Desktop, Documents, or Downloads folders.
3. Tap Tags, choose a color, then tap ‹.
4. Select an icon or tap Emoji to add an emoji to the folder.

To remove the icon from the folder, tap Clear below the icons.

Change to list view or icon view



1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. From an open location or folder, tap ⋯, then tap Icons or List to change your view of the files.

   To look deeper into a file hierarchy in List view, tap › next to a folder to expand it.

Rearrange the Browse screen

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. At the top of the Browse screen, tap ⋯, tap Edit, then do any of the following:

   - *Hide a location:* Turn the location off.
   - *Delete a tag and remove it from all items:* Tap ⛔ next to the tag. (See Tag a file or folder.)
   - *Remove an item from the Favorites list:* Tap ⛔ next to the item. (See Mark a folder as a favorite.)

- *Change the order of an item:* Touch and hold ☰, then drag it to a new position.

Delete a file or folder

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then locate the file or folder you want to delete.
3. Touch and hold the file, then tap Delete.

See also

Find and view files and folders in Files on iPhone

Previous
Files basics

Next
Find and view files and folders

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Find and view files and folders in Files on iPhone

In the Files app, you can search for and view your documents, images, and other files.

Find downloaded files

If you downloaded files to your iPhone from the internet, you can find them in the Downloads folder.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the Downloads folder to see your downloaded files.

Find a specific file or folder

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Enter a filename, folder name, or document type in the search field.

   When you search, you have these options:

   - *Focus the scope of your search:* Below the search field, tap Recents or the name of the location or tag.
   - *Hide the keyboard and see more results on the screen:* Tap Search.
   - *Start a new search:* Tap in the search field.
   - *Open a result:* Tap it.

Select an app to open a file

When opening a file, you can specify the app you want to open it with.

1. Go to the Files app 🗂️ on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file you want to open.
3. Choose Open With from the menu, then choose an option.

Choose a default app for opening a file

You can specify a default app to open a file with, so that the file always opens in that app when you tap it.

1. Go to the Files app 🗂️ on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file, then choose Get Info.
3. Below the Preview, tap the pop-up menu next to Always Open With, then select an app.

   When you select a new default app to open the file, a prompt appears to verify if you want to change the default app for that file or file type.

Open a file in Quick Look

You can preview an image file or a PDF in Quick Look.

1. Go to the Files app 🗂️ on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file, tap Open With, then choose Preview with Quick Look.

Browse files and folders

1. Go to the Files app 🗂️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap a document on the Browse screen.

   If you don’t see the Browse screen, tap Browse again.
3. To view recently opened files, tap Recents at the bottom of the screen.
4. To open a file, location, or folder, tap it.

Note: If you haven't installed the app that created a file, a preview of the file opens in Quick Look.

For information about marking folders as favorites or adding tags, see Tag a file or folder.

Change how files and folders are sorted

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. From an open location or folder, tap ⋯.
3. Choose an option: Name, Kind, Date, Size, or Tags.

See also

Organize files and folders on iPad

Previous
Modify files and folders

Next
Organize files and folders

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Files basics

In the Files app, you can locate and view your files, organize and rearrange them in folders, compress, rename, and share them with friends, transfer them to and from iCloud Drive and other devices, and more.

---

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *View files downloaded from email or the internet*: Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap Downloads in the sidebar. See Find downloaded files.
   - *Browse your files:* : Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap iCloud Drive. See Browse files and folders.
   - *View files you opened recently:* Tap Recents at the bottom of the screen.
   - *View shared files:* Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
   - *Copy, move, share, or delete a file or folder:* Locate the file or folder, touch and hold it, then tap Copy, Move, Share, or Delete. See Modify files and folders in Files.

Previous
Screen and filter calls

Next
Modify files and folders

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone

After you set up iCloud Drive, you can share folders and individual files with friends and colleagues. When you make changes to a shared folder or file, others see your changes automatically. If you allow people to make edits, their changes appear automatically as well.

Files and folders shared in iCloud Drive have these important characteristics:

- If you collaborate on a folder, all items added to that folder by you or other participants are automatically shared.
- The link to a shared file includes its name. If the name or content is confidential, be sure to ask recipients not to forward the link to anyone else.
- If you move a shared file to another folder or location, the link no longer works, and people lose access to the item.
- Depending on the app, users might need to reopen a file or tap the original link to see the latest changes.

Share a folder or file

If you own a folder or file in iCloud Drive, you can invite others to view or collaborate on its contents.

You can share a folder or file so that only people you invite can open it, or anyone with the link can open it.

You can allow the contents of a folder or file to be changed, or you can restrict access so that the contents can only be viewed.

1. Go to the Files app 📁 on your iPhone.
2. Go to a location, then touch and hold the folder or file you want to share.

3. Tap, then choose whether you want to collaborate or send a copy of the folder or file.
4. Do one of the following:
    - *Allow only invitees to view and edit the contents:* Tap >, tap "Only invited people," tap "Can make changes," tap Done, then choose a method—such as Messages or Mail—for sending people a link to the folder or file.
    - *Allow only invitees to view the contents:* Tap >, tap "Only invited people," tap "View only," tap Done, then choose a method for sending the link.
    - *Allow anyone with the link to view and edit the contents:* Tap >, tap "Anyone with the link," tap "Can make changes," tap Done, then choose a method for sending the link.
    - *Allow anyone with the link to view the contents:* Tap >, tap "Anyone with the link," tap "View only," tap Done, then choose a method for sending the link.
    - *Allow anyone to invite more people:* Tap >, turn on "Allow others to invite," then tap Done.
5. Choose how you want to send your invitation, then tap Send.

Invite more people to collaborate on a folder or file

If you already shared a folder or file and its access is set to "Only invited people," you can share it with more people.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file you want to share.
4. Tap, then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
5. Tap Share With More People, and choose a method for sending the link.
6. Enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

Share a folder or file with more people using a link

If you set the access to a shared folder or file to “Anyone with the link,” anyone with the link can share it with others.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file you want to share.
4. Tap, tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Send Link.
5. Choose a method for sending the link, enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

Change access and permission settings for everyone

If you’re the owner of a shared folder or file, you can change its access at any time. However, everyone you shared the link with is affected.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file whose permissions you want to change.
4. Tap, then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Share Options.
5. Change either or both of the options.

    - *Access option:* When you change the access option from “Anyone with the link” to “Only invited people,” the original link no longer works for anyone, and only people who receive a new invitation from you can open the folder or file.

    - *Permission option:* When you change the permission option, everyone who has the file open when you change the permission sees an alert. New settings take effect when the alert is dismissed.

Change access and permission settings for one person

If you’re the owner of a shared folder or file and its access is set to “Only invited people,” you can change the permission for one person without affecting the permission of others. You can also remove the person’s access.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the folder or file whose permission you want to change.
3. Tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
4. Tap the person's name, then select an option.

Stop sharing a folder or file

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file, you can stop sharing it.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Open the location of the folder or file you want to stop sharing.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file, tap , then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
4. Tap Stop Sharing.

Anyone who has the file open when you stop sharing it sees an alert. The item closes when the alert is dismissed, the file is removed from the person's iCloud Drive, and the link no longer works. If you later share the item again and set the access to "Anyone with the link," the original link works. If the access is set to "Only invited people," the original link works again only for people you reinvite to share the item.

See also

Collaborate on a project in Messages

Previous
Set up iCloud Drive

Next
Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone

You can access iCloud Drive and store files, create folders, and share documents with friends and family. You can access your content from all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account—including on a Mac, where iCloud Drive is located in the Finder.

iCloud Drive is built into the Files app on devices with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later. You can also use iCloud Drive on Mac computers (OS X 10.10 or later), Windows devices (iCloud for Windows 7 or later), or online at iCloud.com. Storage limits depend on your iCloud storage plan.

Turn on iCloud Drive

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap Drive, then turn on Sync this iPhone.

Browse iCloud Drive

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap iCloud Drive below Locations.

   If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again. If you don't see iCloud Drive below Locations, tap Locations.
4. To open a folder, tap it.

   See Modify files, folders, and find downloads.

Choose which apps use iCloud Drive

You can choose which apps have access to store and edit content on iCloud Drive.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud.
3. Turn on each app you want saved to iCloud, and turn off each one you don't want saved.

See also

Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone

Previous
Send files from the Files app

Next
Share files and folders in iCloud Drive

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud

With iPhone and a computer, you can transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service like iCloud, Box, or Dropbox.

Transfer files with an external storage device

1. Connect your iPhone or computer to an external storage device, such as a USB drive or SD card.

   To connect to iPhone, you might need a cable adapter. See Connect external storage devices.

   Note: If an alert appears on iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article About the 'Trust This Computer' alert.

2. Use a supported app (like Files or Pages) to copy files to the storage device. See Organize files and folders.

3. Disconnect the storage device, then connect it to the device where you want the copied files to appear.

4. Copy the files to the connected device. See Connect and use other storage devices with Mac in the Mac User Guide.

Access an external storage device

You can rename, erase, and get information about a connected external storage device.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.

3. Touch and hold the name of the storage device below Locations, then do any of the following:

- *Rename the storage device:* Tap Rename [*device*].
- *Erase the storage device:* Tap Erase.
- *Get information about the storage device:* Tap Get Info.

Change the formatting of an external storage device

You can use the Files app to quickly change an external drive to APFS (Apple File System), ExFAT, or MS-DOS (FAT) file formats on iPhone models that have a USB-C port.

1. Go to the Files app 🗂️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the name of the storage device below Locations, then tap Erase.
4. Select a format for the device—for example, APFS, ExFAT, or MS-DOS (FAT)— then tap Erase again.

Connect to a computer or file server

1. Go to the Files app 🗂️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap ⋯ at the top of the screen.
4. Tap Connect to Server.
5. Enter a local hostname or a network address, then tap Connect.

   💡 **Tip:** After you connect to a computer or file server, it appears in the Recent Servers list on the Connect to Server screen. To connect to a recent server, tap its name.
6. Select how you want to connect:

   - *Guest:* You can connect as a Guest user if the shared computer permits guest access.
   - *Registered User:* If you select Registered User, enter your user name and password.

7. Tap Next, then select the server volume or shared folder in the Browse sidebar (below Shared).

To disconnect from the file server, tap ⏏ next to the server in the Browse sidebar.

For information on how to set up your Mac to share files, see Set up file sharing on Mac in the Mac User Guide.

Transfer files with a cloud storage service like Box or Dropbox

Note: Subscription fees might apply.

1. On your iPhone or computer, follow the instructions from your cloud storage service to upload the files you want to share.
2. To access your shared files on iPhone, go to the Files app 📁, tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the storage service below Locations.

   To access the shared files on a computer, follow the service's instructions.

Keep selected files downloaded

You can keep files downloaded that you always want to be able to access on your iPhone. If you make changes to these files while offline, your changes will sync with iCloud when you are back online.

1. Go to the Files app 📁 on your iPhone.
2. Locate a file you want to keep downloaded.
3. Touch and hold the file you want to keep downloaded, then tap Keep Downloaded in the menu that opens.

   If Keep Downloaded doesn't appear in the menu, the file is already on your iPhone.

See also

Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

Previous
Share files and folders in iCloud Drive

Next
Share your location

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Send files from the Files app on iPhone

You can send a copy of any file to others. If you have a document you want to send that isn't digitized, you can scan it with the Files app first.

Send a file

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file you want to send, then tap Share.

   Tip: To send a smaller version of the file, tap Compress before you tap Share, touch and hold the compressed version of the file (identified as a zip file), then tap Share.
3. Choose an option for sending (for example, AirDrop, Messages, or Mail), then tap Send.

Reply to a received document

If you save an attachment from the Mail app, you can quickly reply to the email and optionally return the attachment.

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file you want to reply to, then tap "Reply to."

Scan a document

1. Go to the Files app on your iPhone.
2. Open the location or folder where the document you want to scan is located.

3. Tap ⋯ at the top of the screen, then tap Scan Documents.

Tip: If the files or folders you want to share are stored in iCloud Drive, you can invite others to view or edit their contents—you don't need to send them copies.

See also

Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone

Previous
Organize files and folders

Next
Set up iCloud Drive

Helpful? Yes No

Support › iPhone User Guide › Send files from the Files app on iPhone

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

https://www.iphone17manual.com

Table of Contents

Share your location in Find My on iPhone

Before you can use the Find My app to share your location with friends, you need to set up location sharing.

Note: If you set up location sharing and others still can't see your location, make sure Location Services is on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My. See Control the location information you share.

Set up location sharing

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Share My Location.

   The device sharing your location appears next to From.
3. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, you can tap Use This iPhone as My Location.

Note: To share your location from another device, open Find My on the device and change your location to that device. If you share your location from an iPhone that's paired with Apple Watch (GPS + Cellular models), your location is shared from your Apple Watch when you're out of range of your iPhone and Apple Watch is on your wrist.

You can also change your location sharing settings in Settings > [*your name*] > Find My.

Set a label for your location

You can set a label for your current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). When you tap Me, you see the label in addition to your location.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then tap Location.

3. Select a label.

   To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

Share your location with a friend

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, tap +, then choose Share My Location.



3. In the To field, type the name of a friend you want to share your location with (or tap ⊕ and select a contact).
4. Tap Send and choose how long you want to share your location.

You can also notify a friend or family member when your location changes.

If you're a member of a Family Sharing group, see Share your location with family members.

Stop sharing your location

You can stop sharing your location with a specific friend or hide your location from everyone.

- *Stop sharing with a friend:* Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you don't want to share your location with. Tap Stop Sharing My Location, then tap Stop Sharing Location.
- *Hide your location from everyone:* Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Share My Location.

Respond to a location sharing request

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Share below the name of the friend who sent the request and choose how long you want to share your location.

   If you don't want to share your location, tap Cancel.

Stop receiving new location sharing requests

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Allow Friend Requests.

See also

Use Precision Finding on iPhone to meet up with a friend

Previous
Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud

Next
Meet up with a friend

Table of Contents

Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone

On supported models, you can use the Find My app to share your location via satellite when you're outside cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

Note: Sharing your location via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions and requires an active SIM. See the Apple Support article Emergency SOS via satellite availability.

Before you disconnect from cellular and Wi-Fi coverage

Most Find My features are only available if you're connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network. To share your location with friends via satellite, do the following *before* you're outside cellular or Wi-Fi coverage:

- Set the iPhone you're bringing with you as the iPhone that shares your location. On your iPhone 14 or later open the Find My app, tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then make sure Share My Location is turned on. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, tap Use This iPhone as My Location.
- Add the contacts you want to share your location with. See Share your location in Find My.

Send your location via satellite

You can use the Find My app to share your location via satellite if you're not connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network. To share your location with a friend via satellite, you must already be sharing your location with that friend in Find My. See Share your location in Find My.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.

2. Make sure that you're outside with a clear view of the sky and the horizon. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.
3. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap Send My Location (below My Location via Satellite), then follow the onscreen instructions.

   If you need to turn left or right to connect to a satellite, your iPhone provides guidance—just follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: It may take a few minutes to send your location via satellite; continue to follow the onscreen instructions until the message is sent.

You can send your location once every 15 minutes. When you send your location via satellite, you don't see your friend's location in the Find My app.

See a friend's location sent via satellite

In order to see a friend's location sent via satellite, you need to have iOS 16.1 or later installed on your iPhone (you don't need iPhone 14 or later).

When a contact sends you their location via satellite, a satellite icon appears next to their picture and Satellite Location appears in the text in the Find My app. Their most recent location is viewable for up to 7 days.

See also

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

Previous
Meet up with a friend

Next
Add or remove a friend

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use Precision Finding on iPhone to meet up with a friend

Use the Find My app on iPhone models that support Precision Finding to meet up with a friend.

Note: Precision Finding isn't available in all countries or regions, and both you and the friend you're looking for must have a supported iPhone model.

To use another iPhone model to find someone, see Locate a friend.

---

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the friend you want to meet.

   If you aren't following each other, you may have to share your location or ask for their location.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *See your friend in Maps:* If you aren't nearby, tap Directions to get closer to their location.
   - *Find your friend nearby:* If you're near one another, tap Find to notify your friend that you're trying to locate them, then follow the onscreen instructions to get directions to them.

     When you get close enough to each other, an arrow points in their direction with an estimate of how far away they are.



When you’re walking in the right direction, the screen turns green.

4. When you locate the person you’re looking for, tap ⊗.



If you receive a notification that a friend is trying to find you, you can tap Share so they can find their way to you more easily. If you've already shared your location with them, they see where you are relative to their location. You can stop sharing your location at any time.

See also

Share your location in Messages

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Previous
Share your location

Next
Send your location via satellite

Table of Contents

Add or remove a friend in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app, after you share your location with a friend, you can ask to see their location on a map.

Ask to see a friend's location

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose location you want to see.

   If you don't see a person in the list, make sure you're sharing your location with them.
3. Tap Ask To Follow Location.

After your friend receives and accepts your request, you can see their location. See Respond to a location sharing request.

Note: If you see your friend's name in the People list but can't see their location on the map, ask them to make sure they're sharing their location and that Location Services is on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My.

Remove a friend

When you remove a friend, that person is removed from your People list and you're removed from theirs.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to remove.
3. Tap Remove [*name*], then tap Remove.

See also

Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Send your location via satellite

Next
Locate a friend

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to get a notification when your friend's location changes. You can get notified when a friend arrives at a location, leaves a location, or isn't at a location.

Important: In order to receive a notification when your friend's location changes, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings.

You can also let friends know when your location changes. See Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My.

Get notified when your friend arrives at or leaves a location

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.
3. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.
4. Choose whether you want to be notified when a friend arrives at or leaves a location.
5. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, you're notified when your friend is near the location instead of right at the location.
6. Choose whether you want to be notified only once or every time.
7. Tap Add, then tap OK.

   Your friend gets an alert after you set the notification.

   If you set a recurring notification, your friend must approve it before it's set. They get an alert asking for approval when they arrive at or leave the location you chose for the

first time.

Get notified when your friend isn’t at a location

You can receive a notification if your friend or family member isn’t at a specific location during a set schedule. For example, you can be notified if your child isn’t at school during school hours.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.
3. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.
4. Below When, tap [*your friend’s name*] Is Not At.
5. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, you’re notified when your friend is near the location instead of right at the location.
6. Select when you want to be notified.

   - *Time:* Select a start and end time.
   - *Days:* Select the days of the week.
7. Tap Add, then tap OK.

   Your friend must approve the notification before it’s set. They get an alert asking for approval on the time and day the notifications start.

Change or turn off a notification you set

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose notification you want to change or turn off.

   This could be a notification you receive about a friend, or a notification your friend receives about you.
3. Below Notifications, tap the notification.

4. Do either of the following:

   - *Change a notification:* Change any details, then tap Done.
   - *Turn off a notification:* Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

You can create up to 25 Notify Me notifications.

Note: You can only create recurring notifications for friends who have two-factor authentication turned on.

See also

Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Locate a friend

Next
Notify a friend when your location changes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Add your iPhone to Find My

Before you can use the Find My app to locate a lost iPhone, you need to connect the device to your Apple Account.

When you add your iPhone to Find My, you can also get notified if you leave it behind. See Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone.

Add your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Find My.

   If you're asked to sign in, enter your Apple Account information. If you don't have an Apple Account, tap "Don't have an Apple Account or forgot it?" then follow the instructions.

2. Tap Find My iPhone, then turn on Find My iPhone.

3. You can also turn on or off either of the following:

   - *Find My network:* If your device is offline (not connected to Wi-Fi or cellular), Find My can locate it using the Find My network.

     On a supported iPhone, turning on the Find My network allows you to locate your iPhone for up to 24 hours after it's turned off, or up to 5 hours when it's in power reserve mode.

   - *Send Last Location:* If your device's battery charge level becomes critically low, its location is sent to Apple automatically.

Your iPhone also includes a feature called Activation Lock that prevents anyone else from activating and using your device, even if it's completely erased. See the Apple Support article Activation Lock for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Add another device

See any of the following:

- *iPad:* Add your iPad to Find My in the iPad User Guide
- *iPod touch:* Add your iPod touch to Find My in the iPod touch User Guide
- *Mac:* Set up Find My on Mac in the Find My User Guide for Mac
- *Apple Watch:* Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone in the Apple Watch User Guide
- *AirPods:* Pairing instructions for your model in the "Pair and connect" section in the AirPods User Guide and Turn on the Find My network for AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, and AirPods Max
- *iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support:* Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My on iPhone

You can also add AirTags and other items to Find My using your iPhone. See any of the following:

- Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone
- Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

Add a family member's device

You can see your family members' devices in Find My if you set up Family Sharing first. Their devices appear below yours in the Devices list. See Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone.

You can't add friends' devices to Find My. Friends who lose a device can go to Find Devices on iCloud.com and sign in to their Apple Account.

See also

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

Notify a friend when your location changes

Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to let a friend know when your location changes.

You can also get a notification when your friend's location changes. See Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone.

Notify a friend when your location changes

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to notify.
3. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify [*your friend's name*].
4. Choose whether you want to notify your friend when you arrive at or leave a location.
5. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, your friend is notified when you're near the location instead of right at the location.
6. Choose whether you want your friend to be notified only once or every time.
7. Tap Add.

You can stop notifying friends when your location changes at any time. See Change or turn off a notification you set.

See all notifications about you

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

   Below Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

   If you don't see the Notifications About You section, you aren't notifying any friends when your location changes.
3. Select a name to see more details.

Turn off notifications about you

You can turn off any location notification about you. This includes notifications you set and notifications your friends create.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

   Below Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

   If you don't see the Notifications About You section, you aren't notifying any friends when your location changes.
3. Select a name, then tap a notification.
4. Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

See also

Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Get notified when friends change their location

Next
Add your iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

When a friend shares their location with you, you can use the Find My app to locate them on a map.

Note: If you want to see how far away your friends are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See Control the location information you share.



Tap a person to see contact information, get directions, and more.

See the location of a friend

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to locate.

- *If your friend can be located:* They appear on a map so you can see where they are.
- *If your friend can't be located:* You see "No location found" below their name.
- *If you aren't following your friend:* You see "Can see your location" below their name. You can ask to see a friend's location.

Contact a friend

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to contact.
3. Tap Contact and choose how you want to contact your friend. See Add and use contact information.

Get directions to a friend

You can get directions to a friend's current location in the Maps app.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to get directions to.
3. Tap Directions to open Maps.

See Get directions in Maps.

Set a label for a friend's location

You can set a label for a friend's current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). The label appears below your friend's name when they're at that location.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to set a location label for.
3. Tap Edit Location Name, then select a label.

To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

Mark a friend as a favorite

Favorite friends appear at the top of the People list and are marked by a star.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then find the person you want to mark as a favorite.
3. Do one of the following:

   - Tap the name of the person, then tap Add [*name*] to Favorites.
   - Swipe left across the person's name, then tap the star.

To remove a friend from your Favorites, swipe left and tap the star, or tap the friend, then tap Remove [*name*] from Favorites.

See also

Add or remove a friend in Find My on iPhone

Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone

Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Add or remove a friend

Next
Get notified when friends change their location

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

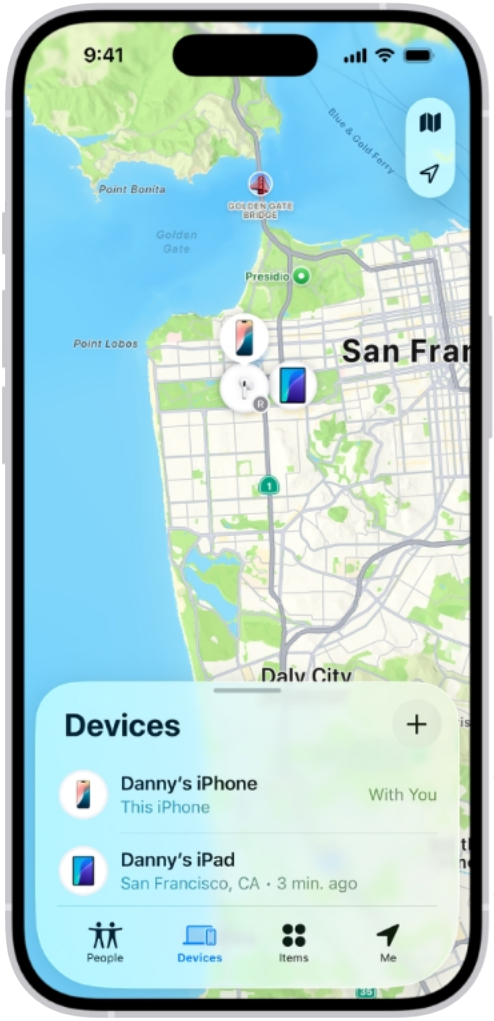
Table of Contents

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to locate and play a sound on a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple Watch, AirPods, or Beats headphones (supported models). In order to locate a device, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

Note: If you want to see how far away your devices are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See Control the location information you share.

If you lose your iPhone and don't have access to the Find My app, you can locate or play a sound on your device using Find Devices on iCloud.com.



Tap a device to play a sound, get directions, and more.

About locating a device

- You can use Find My on your iPhone to see the location of your device on a map. If the device is online, you see its location, and it plays a sound to help you find it. If the device is offline, you see its location, but it doesn't play a sound.
- For AirPods and supported Beats headphones, you can locate them when they're near your device and connected to Bluetooth®. For supported AirPods, you can also see their location via the Find My network for up to 24 hours after they last connected to your device, even if they're not nearby.
- For iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support, you can see its location when it's attached to your iPhone and its last known location if it detaches from your iPhone.

See the location of your device on a map

You can see your device's current or last known location in the Find My app.

Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to locate.

- *If the device can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is.
- *If the device can't be located:* You see "No location found" below the device's name. Below Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification when it's located.

  Important: Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article If Find My is offline or not working.

Play a sound on your device

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to play a sound on.
3. Tap Play Sound.

   - *If the device is online:* A sound starts after a short delay and gradually increases in volume, then plays for about two minutes. If applicable, a Find My [*device*] alert appears on the device's screen.

     A confirmation email is also sent to your Apple Account email address.

- *If the device is offline:* You see Sound Pending. The sound plays the next time the device connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network. For AirPods and Beats headphones, you receive a notification the next time your device is in range of your iPhone or iPad.

If your AirPods are separated, you have additional options to play a sound. See Locate AirPods in Find My in the AirPods User Guide.

Stop playing a sound on a device

If you find your device and want to turn off the sound before it stops automatically, do one of the following:

- *iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch:* Press the power button or a volume button, or flip the Ring/Silent switch. If the device is locked, you can also unlock it, or swipe to dismiss the Find My [*device*] alert. If the device is unlocked, you can also tap OK in the Find My [*device*] alert.
- *Apple Watch:* Tap Dismiss in the Find My Watch alert, or press the Digital Crown or side button.
- *Mac:* Click OK in the Find My Mac alert.
- *AirPods or Beats headphones:* Tap Stop in Find My.

Get directions to a device

You can get turn-by-turn directions to your device if you see its location on the map.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to get directions to.
3. Tap Directions to open the Maps app. See Get directions.

If you're near your supported AirPods, you can tap Find for additional directions. For more information, see Locate AirPods in Find My in the AirPods User Guide.

Locate or play a sound on a friend's device

If your friend loses a device, they can locate it or play a sound on it by going to Find Devices on iCloud.com and signing in to their Apple Account. To learn more, see Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

If you set up Family Sharing, you can use Find My to locate a family member's missing device.

See also

Locate an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

Apple Support article: If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is lost or stolen

Previous
Get notified if you leave a device behind

Next
Mark a device as lost

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app, you can turn on separation alerts for a device so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave your device without receiving an alert.

If you have an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support, you can get an alert if it detaches from your iPhone.

Important: In order to receive separation alerts, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

Set up alerts for your iPhone, iPad, Mac, or AirPods

You can set up separation alerts for your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later; Mac with Apple silicon and macOS 12 or later; or AirPods with the Find My network turned on.

You can only set up a separation alert from the device sharing your location. You receive an alert every time the device sharing your location separates from the device you set an alert for.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to set up an alert for.
3. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.
4. Turn on Notify When Left Behind, then follow the onscreen instructions.
5. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.
6. Tap Done.

Get notified when your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe detaches from your iPhone

You can get an alert one minute after your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support separates from your iPhone. Then you can use the Find My app to see its last known location on a map.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe.
3. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Detached.
4. Turn off or on Notify When Detached, then tap Done.

See also

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

Next
Locate a device

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

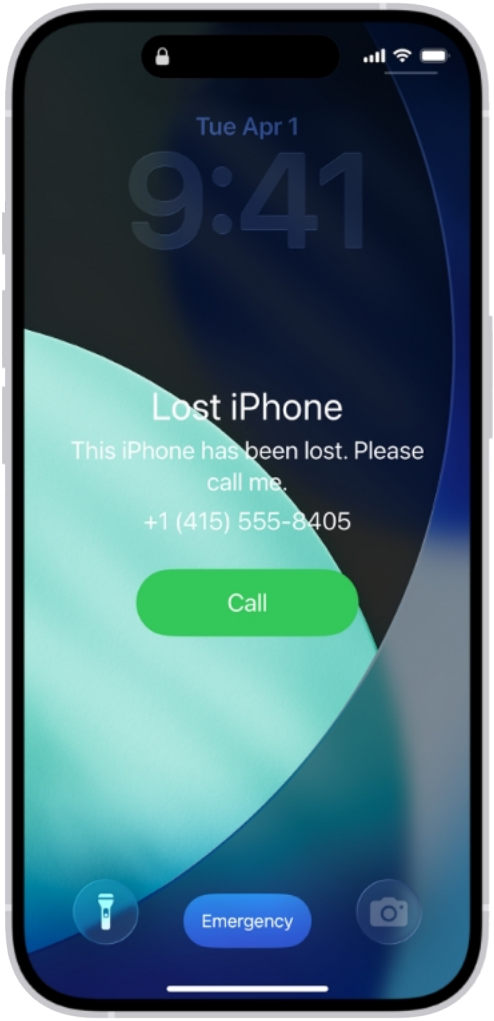
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to mark a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, Mac, supported AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe as lost. In order to mark a device as lost, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.



What happens when you mark a device as lost?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple Account email address.
- You can create a message for the device that says it's lost and how to contact you.
- For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch, your device doesn't display alerts or make noise when you receive messages or notifications, or if any alarms go

off. Your device can still receive phone calls and FaceTime calls.

- For applicable devices, payment cards and other services are suspended.

Mark a device as lost

If your device is lost or stolen, you can turn on Lost Mode (for your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, supported AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe), or lock your Mac.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.
3. Below Mark As Lost, tap Activate.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions, keeping the following in mind:

    - *Passcode:* If your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch doesn't have a passcode, you're asked to create one now. For a Mac, you must create a numerical passcode, even if you already have a password set up on your Mac. This passcode is distinct from your password and is only used when you mark your device as lost.

    - *Contact information:* For iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch, the contact information and message appear on the device's Lock Screen. For AirPods or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe, the information appears when someone tries to connect with your device.

5. Tap Activate (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe) or Lock (for a Mac).

When the device has been marked as lost, you see Activated below the Mark As Lost section. If the device isn't connected to a network when you mark it as lost, you see Pending until the device goes online again.

See also Mark AirPods as lost in the AirPods User Guide.

Change the information for a lost device

After you mark your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe as lost, you can adjust the information in the Lost Mode message.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.

3. Below Mark As Lost, tap Pending or Activated.
4. Update the information, then tap Done.

Turn off Lost Mode for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

When you find your lost device, you can turn off Lost Mode.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. In Find My, tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device.
3. Tap Pending or Activated below Mark As Lost, tap Turn Off Mark As Lost, then tap Turn Off.

For iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch, you can also turn off Lost Mode by entering your passcode on the device. For iPhone Wallet with MagSafe, you can turn off Lost Mode by attaching the wallet to your iPhone.

Unlock a Mac

When you find your lost Mac, do one of the following:

- *Mac with Apple silicon:* Enter your Apple Account password.

  See the Apple Support articles If you forgot your Apple Account primary email address or phone number and If you forgot your Apple Account password.

- *Intel-based Mac:* Enter the numeric passcode on the Mac to unlock it (the one you set up when you marked your Mac as lost).

If you forget your passcode, you can recover it using Find Devices on iCloud.com. For more information, see Use Lost Mode in Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

If you lose your iPhone, you can turn on Lost Mode using Find Devices on iCloud.com.

See also

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

Apple Support article: If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is lost or stolen

Table of Contents

Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My on iPhone

If your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe has Find My support, you can connect it to your Apple Account so you can see its last known location in the Find My app. You can allow someone who finds it to see your contact information to help them return it to you.

When you add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My, you can get notified if it detaches from your iPhone.

Note: iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support can be used with compatible iPhone models.

Add iPhone Wallet with MagSafe when you first attach it to your iPhone

1. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
2. Attach your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support to your iPhone.
3. Tap Continue on your iPhone screen, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Add iPhone Wallet with MagSafe later

If you decide not to add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support when you first attach it to your iPhone, you can add it later from the Find My app.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Attach your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support to your iPhone.
3. Tap +, choose Add MagSafe Accessory, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If the iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support is associated with someone else's Apple Account, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove a device from Find My on iPhone.

See also

Add your iPhone to Find My

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Add your iPhone

Next
Get notified if you leave a device behind

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Erase a device in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to erase an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or Mac. In order to remotely erase a device, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

What happens when you erase a device in Find My?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple Account email address.
- When you erase a device remotely using Find My, Activation Lock remains on to protect it. Your Apple Account password is required to reactivate it.
- If you erase a device that had iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later installed, you can use Find My to locate or play a sound on the device. Otherwise, you won't be able to locate or play a sound on it. You may still be able to locate your Mac or Apple Watch if it's near a previously used Wi-Fi network.

Erase a device

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to erase.
3. Tap Erase This Device, then tap Continue.

If the device is a Mac, enter a passcode to lock it (you need to use the passcode to unlock it).

4. If the device is lost and you're asked to enter a phone number or message, you may want to indicate that the device is lost or how to contact you. The number and message appear on the device's Lock Screen.
5. Tap Erase.
6. Enter your Apple Account password, then tap Erase again.

If your device is offline, you see Erase Pending. The remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network.

Cancel an erase

If you erase an offline device and find it before it comes online again, you can cancel the erase request.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device whose erase you want to cancel.
3. Tap Cancel Erase, then enter your Apple Account password.

If you lose your iPhone, you can erase it using Find Devices on iCloud.com.

See also

Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

Previous
Mark a device as lost

Next
Remove a device

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Share an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

If you want to share an item that's paired with an AirTag (or a third-party item that works with Find My), you can share it in Find My so the borrower can see it on a map and find it. If it's nearby, Find My can play a sound, and if you're using a supported iPhone, you can find its precise location. People you're sharing items with don't receive tracking notifications when the items are moving with them.

You can share an AirTag or other item with up to five borrowers in addition to yourself, for a total of six users per item, as long as the following requirements are met:

- Two-factor authentication must be turned on for your Apple Account.
- The person you share with must have an Apple Account and be signed in to it. They must also use iCloud. You can't share with a child account.
- The owner and borrowers must have iCloud Keychain turned on.
- The owner and borrowers must be using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later.

Note: You share a third-party item the same way you share an AirTag.

Share an AirTag

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the name of the AirTag or item you want to share, then tap Add Person below Share This AirTag (or Share This Item).
3. Enter the Apple Account information of the person you want to add.

   To add more people, tap ⊕.
4. Tap the name of the person you want to share with, then tap their Apple Account.

   Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each person you want to add.
5. When you're finished adding borrowers, tap Share in the top-right corner.

A list of everyone you invited appears on the item's main screen, along with the status of their invitations.

When someone accepts an invitation, the shared AirTag appears in Find My below Items and the recipient is notified that an item is being shared with them. If someone declines the invitation, their name is removed from the list, and you no longer see it.

Ask the owner of an AirTag to share it in Find My

If the owner of an AirTag shares it with you but doesn't do so in Find My, you'll receive an unknown AirTag notification and tracking notifications. To stop receiving tracking notifications for the AirTag, ask the owner to share it with you in Find My.

Note: You can only ask an owner to share an AirTag if you're in the same Family Sharing group. See Add a member to a Family Sharing group.

1. In the tracking notification you receive, tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.
2. Tap Ask Owner.

   If the owner wants to add you as a borrower, you receive an invitation to share the AirTag.

Accept or decline an invitation to share

If you're invited to share an AirTag, you receive a notification.

To see the invitation in Find My, tap Items, then do one of the following:

- *Accept the invitation:* Tap Add.

  The AirTag appears in your Items list, below [*Sharer*]'s Items. You stop receiving tracking notifications for as long as you borrow the AirTag.
- *Decline the invitation:* Tap Don't Add.

Stop sharing an AirTag

If you're the owner of an AirTag and no longer want to share it, you can stop sharing in Find My.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Items, tap the name of the item you're sharing, then tap the name of the person you're sharing it with.
3. Tap Stop Sharing, then tap Stop Sharing again.

   The person you were sharing with no longer sees the AirTag's location, but may still get tracking notifications when the AirTag is moving with them.

See also

Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Add an AirTag

Next
Share location of a lost item

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app to remove a device from your Devices list or turn off Activation Lock on a device you already sold or gave away. When you remove Activation Lock, someone else can activate the device and connect it to their Apple Account.

If you still have the device, you can turn off Activation Lock and remove the device from your account by turning off the Find My [*device*] setting on the device.

Remove a device from your Devices list

If you're not planning on using a device, you can remove it from your Devices list. The device may need to be offline in order for you to remove it.

The device appears in your Devices list the next time it comes online if it still has Activation Lock turned on (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch), or is paired with your iOS or iPadOS device (for AirPods or Beats headphones).

1. Do one of the following:
    - *For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch:* Turn off the device.
    - *For AirPods:* Put AirPods in their case and close the lid or turn the AirPods off.
    - *For Beats headphones:* Turn off the headphones.
2. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
3. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the offline device.
4. Tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

Remove an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

You can remove an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support from your Devices list if you don't want it to appear in the Find My app. Removing it from Find My allows someone else to connect it to their Apple Account.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe.
3. Tap Remove This Device, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Turn off Activation Lock on a device you have

Before you sell, give away, or trade in a device, you should remove Activation Lock so the device is no longer associated with your Apple Account.

See the Apple Support articles:

- What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch and Activation Lock for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch
- What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Mac and Activation Lock for Mac
- What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Apple Watch, or buy one from someone else and About Activation Lock on your Apple Watch

---

Turn off Activation Lock on a device you no longer have

If you sold or gave away your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch and you forgot to turn off Find My [*device*], you can still remove Activation Lock using the Find My app.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to remove.
3. Erase the device.

   Because the device isn't lost, don't enter a phone number or message.

   If the device is offline, the remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network. You receive an email when the device is erased.

4. When the device is erased, tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

   All your content is erased, Activation Lock is turned off, and someone else can now activate the device.

You can also remove a device online using iCloud.com. For instructions, see Remove a device from Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

See also

Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone

Previous
Erase a device

Next
Add an AirTag

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone

You can register an AirTag to your Apple Account using your iPhone. When you attach it to an everyday item, like a keychain or a backpack, you can use the Find My app to locate it if it's lost or misplaced.

You can also get notified if you leave your AirTag behind. See Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind.

You can also share an AirTag with other users.

You can also add supported third-party products to Find My. See Add or update a third-party item.

Add an AirTag

1. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
2. Remove the battery tab from the AirTag (if applicable), then hold it near your iPhone.
3. Tap Connect on the screen of your iPhone.
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.
5. Tap Continue to register the item to your Apple Account, then tap Finish.

You can also register an AirTag in the Find My app. Tap +, then choose Add AirTag.

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple Account, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My.

Change the name or emoji of an AirTag

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag whose name or emoji you want to change.
3. Tap Rename Item.
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.
5. Tap Done.

View more details about an AirTag

When you register an AirTag to your Apple Account, you can view more details about it in the Find My app.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag you want to see more details about.
3. Tap the name of the AirTag to see the serial number and the firmware version.

If the battery level is low, a message appears below the location of the AirTag. You can also see a low battery indicator next to the name of the AirTag in the Items list.

See also

Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

Previous
Remove a device

Next
Share an AirTag

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Table of Contents

Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

You can use certain third-party products with the Find My app. You can pair these products with your Apple Account using your iPhone, and then use Find My to locate them if they're lost or misplaced.

You can also get notified if you leave your item behind. See Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone.

You can also add an AirTag to Find My. See Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone.

Add a third-party item

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to make the item discoverable.
3. Tap +, then choose Add Other Item.
4. Tap Connect, type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.
5. Tap Continue to register the item to your Apple Account, then tap Finish.

If you have trouble adding an item, contact the manufacturer to see if Find My is supported.

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple Account, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My.

Change an item's name or emoji

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item whose name or emoji you want to change.

3. Tap Rename Item.
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.
5. Tap Done.

Keep your item up to date

Keep your item up to date so you can use all the features in Find My.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to update.
3. Tap Update Available, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: If you don't see Update Available, your item is up to date.

   While the item is updating, you can't use Find My features.

View details about an item

When you register an item to your Apple Account, you can use Find My to see more details about it, like the serial number or model. You can also see if a third-party app is available from the manufacturer.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want more details about.
3. Do either of the following:

   - *View details:* Tap Show Details.
   - *Get or open third-party app:* If an app is available, you see the app icon. Tap Get or to download the app. If you've already downloaded it, tap Open to open it on your iPhone.

See also

Add your iPhone to Find My

Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

Previous
Share location of a lost item

Next
Get notified if you leave an item behind

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share location of a lost item in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app on your iPhone, you can create a temporary webpage to share the location of a lost AirTag or other item. For example, you can share the webpage with an airline to help them track your mishandled bag.

If you want to share an item with a contact, see Share an AirTag.

Note: You can't share the location of an item if it's within proximity of the device sharing your location.

Create and share a webpage for location updates

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the item that you want to share location updates for, then tap Share Item Location.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to create and share a temporary webpage.

   Note: To provide updated locations, at least one of your Apple devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account needs to be online.
4. Tap Done.

View and manage the shared item location

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the item with the shared webpage, then tap Share Item Location.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Copy the URL:* Tap the field at the top.

- *View the details:* View the Visited By and Expiration rows.
- *Share the webpage with additional people:* Tap Share Location Link, then choose a sharing option (such as AirDrop or Mail).

Stop sharing location updates

Sharing stops when you reunite with the item, after 7 days, or when you end it manually.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the item with the shared webpage, then tap Share Item Location.
3. Tap Stop Sharing Item Location.

See also

Add a third-party item

Previous
Share an AirTag

Next
Add a third-party item

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app, you can turn on separation alerts for an AirTag or other item so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You receive an alert every time the device sharing your location separates from the item.

You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave an item without receiving an alert.

Important: In order to receive separation alerts, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

---

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the item you want to set an alert for.
3. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.
4. Turn on Notify When Left Behind.
5. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.
6. Tap Done.

See also

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone

Table of Contents

Locate an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app to locate a missing AirTag or third-party item that you've registered to your Apple Account. If you have an iPhone 15 or later model, you can also find their exact location.

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

See the location of an item

Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to locate.

- *If the item can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is. The location and timestamp appear below the item's name. The item's location is updated when it connects to the Find My network.
- *If the item can't be located:* You see where and when it was last located. Below Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification once it's located again.

  Important: Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

Play a sound

If the item is nearby, you can play a sound on it to help you find it.

Note: If you can't play a sound on an item, you won't see the Play Sound button.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to play a sound on.
3. Tap Play Sound.

To stop playing the sound before it ends automatically, tap Stop Sound.

Get directions to an item

You can get directions to an item's current or last known location in the Maps app.

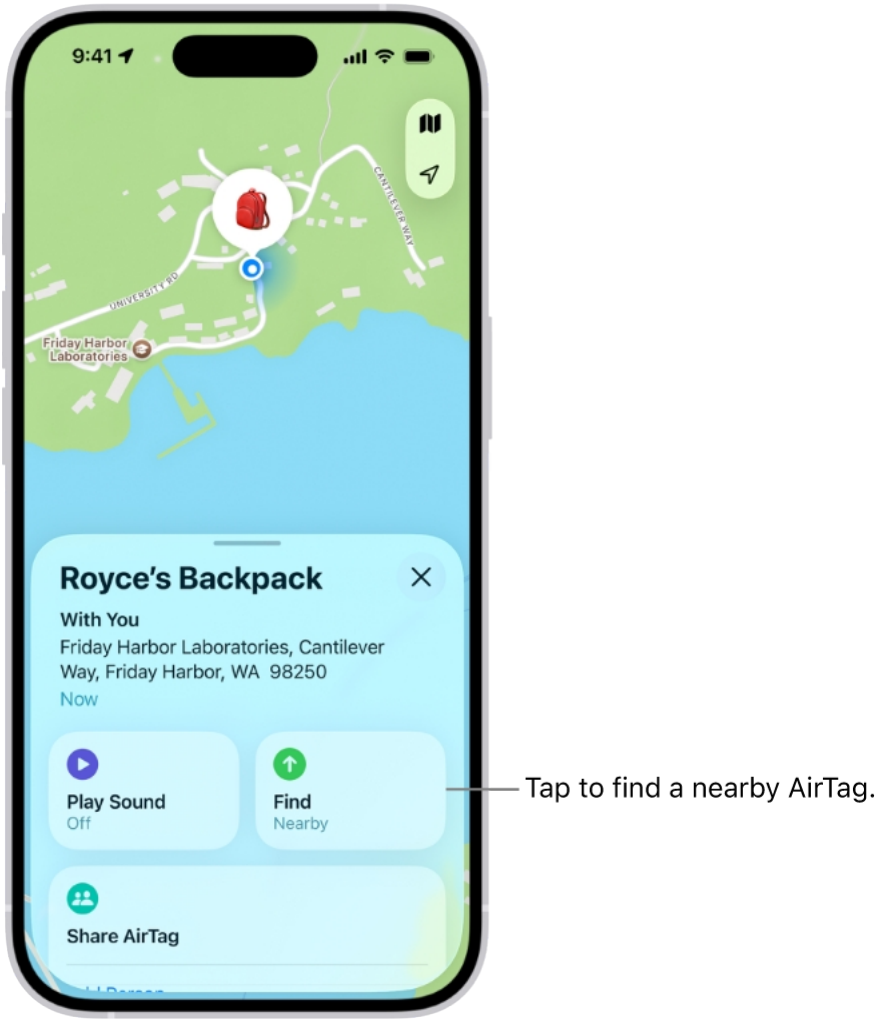
1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to get directions to.
3. Tap Directions to open Maps.

See Get directions.

Find the precise location of an AirTag

If you have a supported iPhone and are near your AirTag, you can find the precise location of the AirTag.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the nearby AirTag.
3. Tap Find.



4. Do any of the following:

    - *Move closer to the AirTag:* Start moving around to locate the AirTag and follow the onscreen instructions. You may see an arrow pointing in the direction of the AirTag, an approximate distance telling you how far away it is, and a note if it's located on a different floor.

    - *Play a sound:* Tap to play a sound on the AirTag.

5. When you locate the AirTag, tap .

See also

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

Table of Contents

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

If you lose an AirTag or third-party item registered to your Apple Account, you can use the Find My app to mark it as lost.

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

What happens when you mark an item as lost?

- You can add a message saying that the item is lost and include your phone number or email address.
- If someone else finds your item, they can use a supported device to see a website with the Lost Mode message.

Turn on Show Contact Info for a lost item

To Turn on Show Contact Info for a lost item, do the following:

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom-left side of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.
3. Below Lost AirTag, tap Show Contact Info.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to enter a phone number where you can be reached. To enter an email address instead, tap “Use an email address.”

   Important: Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.
5. Tap Done.

Change the contact information in the Lost Mode message

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom-left side of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.
3. Below Lost AirTag, tap Show Contact Info.
4. Edit the phone number or message, then tap Done.

Turn off Show Contact Info for a lost item

When you find your lost item, turn off Show Contact Info.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom-left side of the screen, then tap the name of the item.
3. Below Lost AirTag, tap Show Contact Info.
4. Tap Stop Showing Information.

See also

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

Previous
Locate an item

Next
Remove an item

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Turn off Find My on iPhone

You can turn off Find My on your iPhone if you no longer want to share your location or view the location of your friends, devices, and items.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Find My.
2. Tap Find My iPhone, then tap to turn it off.
3. Enter your Apple Account password, then tap Turn Off.

See also

Share your location in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Adjust map settings

Next
Get started with Fitness

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app to remove an AirTag or third-party item from your Apple Account so someone else can register it.

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to remove.
3. Bring the item near your iPhone.

   If the item isn't near your device, you can still remove it from your account. However, the item must be reset before anyone can register it to their Apple Account.
4. Tap Remove Item, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions to reset an item. For an AirTag, see the Apple Support article How to reset your AirTag.

See also

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

Table of Contents

Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone

You can change the map view or distance units that appear In the Find My app.

Change the map view

The button at the top right of the map indicates if the current map is for exploring or viewing from a satellite.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. To choose a different map, tap the button at the top right, then choose another map type.

   You can also tap to further customize the map.
3. Tap .

You can also tap 2D or 3D at the top right to change the view (not available in all locations).

Tip: If you don't see 2D or 3D, zoom in. You can also swipe up with two fingers to see the 3D view.

For information about how to interact with maps, see Set your location and map view in Maps on iPhone.

Change distance units

You can change the default distance units in Settings. See Change the language and region on iPhone.

See also

Get information about places in Maps on iPhone

Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Remove an item

Next
Turn off Find My

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Sync a third-party workout app to Fitness on iPhone

You can sync a compatible third-party workout app to the Fitness app on iPhone to help you meet your fitness goals. Fitness suggests workout apps that you can download from the App Store.

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Activity rings, then scroll down to Add To Your Rings.

   Note: You can also browse apps in the App Store. See Get apps in the App Store.
3. Choose an app, then download it from the App Store.
4. Open the app and if prompted, grant permission to share data with the Health app.

   Any workout you complete in a compatible third-party app appears in your activity summary and contributes to the progress toward closing your Move ring in the Fitness app.

To find out if a workout app you've downloaded is compatible with the Fitness and Health apps, see the Apple Support article Manage Health data on your iPhone or Apple Watch.

See also

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Share health and fitness data with apps and devices

Change Fitness settings on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone

You can see a summary of your daily activity, trends, awards, and more, to keep track of your progress. You can also add, edit, move, and delete the metrics that appear in your summary.

Siri: On supported models, ask Siri something like, “How far have I walked today?” or “How are my Activity Rings?” (not available in all languages or regions). Learn how to use Siri.



Check your progress

Go to the Fitness app at any time to see how you're doing. You can see your Activity rings, trends, completed workouts and meditations, awards, and more.

When you carry your iPhone with you, motion sensors track your steps, distance, and flights climbed to estimate active calories burned. Any workouts you complete in compatible third-party apps also contribute to the progress shown on your Activity rings.

The red Move ring shows how many active calories you've burned. And if you have an Apple Watch, you'll also see a green Exercise ring (showing how many minutes of brisk activity you've done), and a blue Stand ring (showing how many times in the day you've stood and moved for at least 1 minute per hour).

An overlapping ring means you exceeded your goal. Tap the Activity rings to see details of your progress for that day.

Note: You can add a Fitness widget that lets you track your daily activity directly from your Home Screen or Lock Screen. See Add, edit, and remove widgets and Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.

See your summary

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then do any of the following:

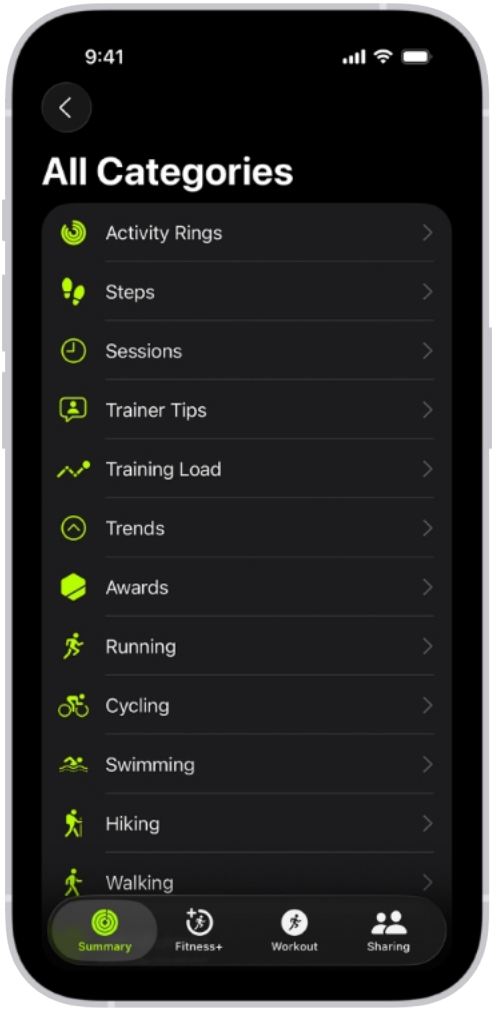
   - *See your activity summary for a specific day:* Tap the Activity rings, tap , then tap a date.
   - *See your steps metrics:* Tap the Step Count or Step Distance area.
   - *Begin a recommended Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation:* If you subscribe to Apple Fitness+, swipe left or right on the Fitness+ area to browse activities, then tap one.
   - *See your trends:* Tap the Trends area. To see the history of a specific trend, tap it.

     Your last 90 days of activity are compared to the last 365. If the trend arrow for a particular metric points up, then you're maintaining or improving your fitness levels. If an arrow points down, your 90-day average for that metric has started to decline. To help motivate you to turn the trend around, you receive coaching—for example, "Walk an extra quarter mile a day."

     Note: It takes 180 days of activity to start your trends.

- *See your workout and meditation history:* Tap the Sessions area, then tap an activity to learn more about its details.

- *See your awards:* Tap the Awards area, then tap an award to learn more about its details.



To view all categories of your summary, scroll down to the bottom of the screen, then tap See All Categories.

Customize your summary

You can add, edit, move, and remove fitness metrics in the Summary tab, so you can see what's important to you.

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, scroll down, then tap Edit Summary.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Add a metric:* Tap ⊕, scroll to find the metric you want, tap it, swipe through the different options, then tap Add Card.

- *Edit a metric:* Tap a metric, swipe through the different options, then tap Swap Current Card.
- *Move a metric:* Touch and hold a metric, then reposition it.
- *Delete a metric:* Tap ⊖ next to a metric.

4. When you're finished, tap ✓.

See also

Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone

Apple Watch User Guide: Track daily activity with Apple Watch

Apple Watch User Guide: Track your training load on Apple Watch

Previous
Get started with Fitness

Next
Adjust your Activity ring goals

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

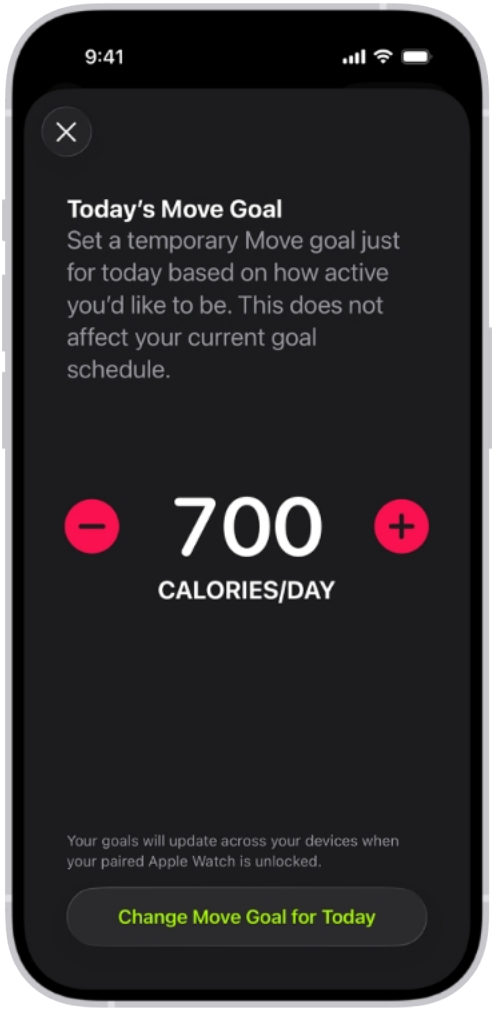
Table of Contents

Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone

You can change your personal health details, change your Activity goals, and customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week. You can also pause your Activity rings and resume at any time.

Change your Activity ring goals

You can change your daily goals for each of your Activity rings. You can also customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week.



1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.

2. Tap the Activity rings, then tap next to an Activity ring.
3. Tap one of the following:

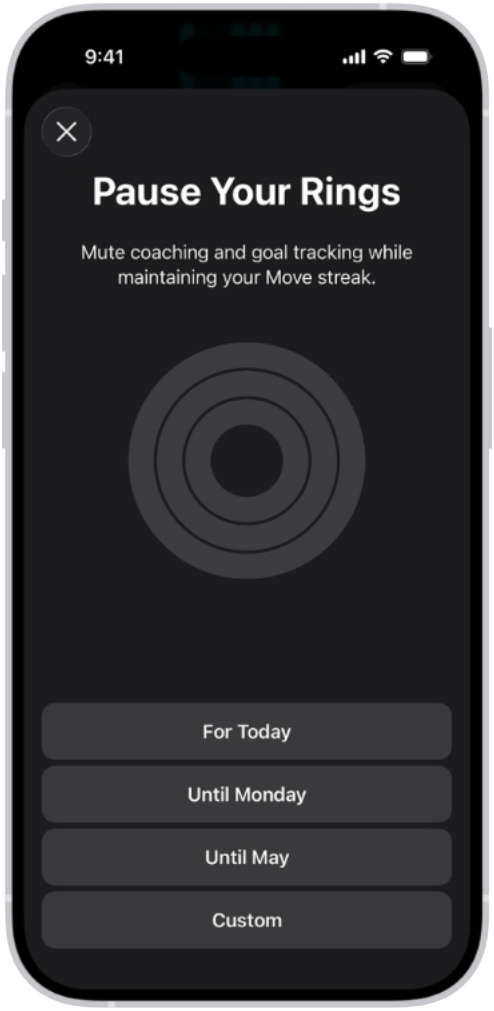
    - *Adjust Goal for Today:* Set a temporary goal for your Activity ring for today.
    - *Change Daily Goal:* Set a goal based on how active you are, or how active you want to be, each day.

    Tip: To customize your Activity ring goal by the day of the week, tap Change Daily Goal, then tap in the top right.
4. Tap or to adjust the goal.
5. When you're finished, tap Change [*activity*] Goal for Today, Change [*activity*] Goal, or Set [*activity*] Goal Schedule.

Every Monday, you're notified about the previous week's achievements, and you can adjust your goals for the upcoming week. Goals are suggested based on your performance in the previous week.

Pause your rings

If you need to take a break, you can pause your Activity rings for up to 90 days without breaking your award streak, and resume at any time.



1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Activity rings, scroll down, then tap Pause Rings.
3. Tap a duration, or tap Custom to set a custom duration.

To resume your rings, tap the Activity rings, then tap Resume Rings. To edit the duration of your pause, tap Edit Pause, set a custom duration, then tap Set.

See also

Fill out your Health Details in Health on iPhone

See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone

Start a workout in Fitness on iPhone

Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

Previous
See your activity summary

Next
Sync a third-party workout app

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get started with Fitness on iPhone

Use the Fitness app on iPhone to help you meet your fitness goals. You can track your progress, view completed workouts, change your goals, and share your activity with others.

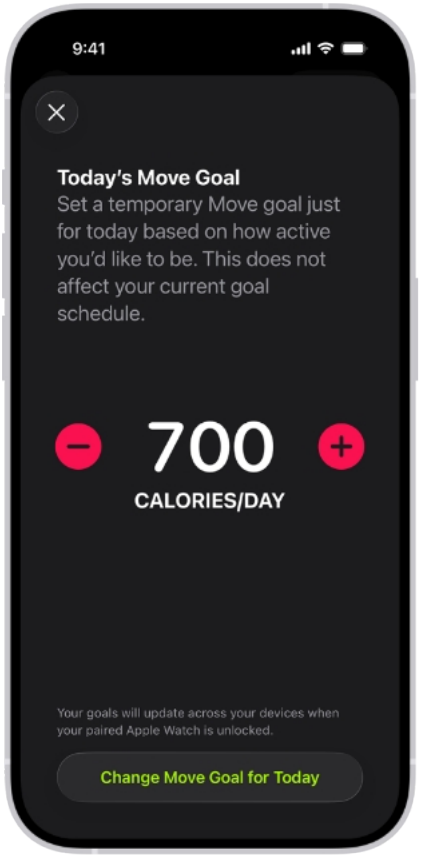


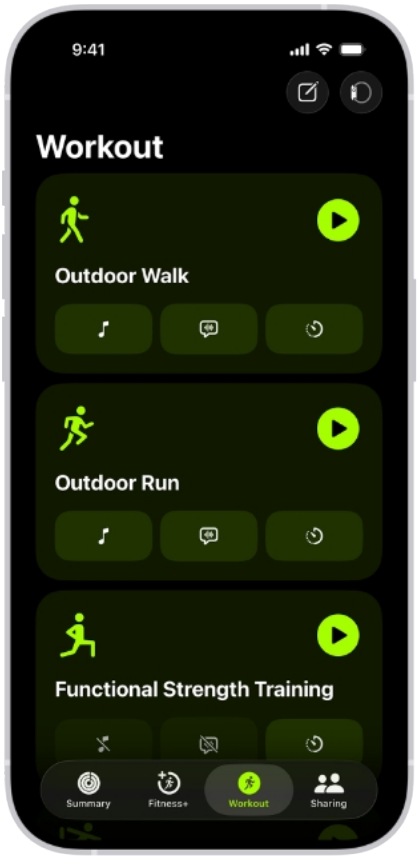
See your summary

Open the Fitness app to see a summary of your Activity rings, the number of steps you've taken, distance traveled, trends, and more. You can also customize the Summary tab to include the metrics that you want to see. Tap Summary at the bottom of the screen, scroll down, then tap Edit Summary.

Change your goals

You can change your daily goals for each of your Activity rings. You can also customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week. In the Summary tab, tap the Activity rings, scroll down, then tap Change Goals.





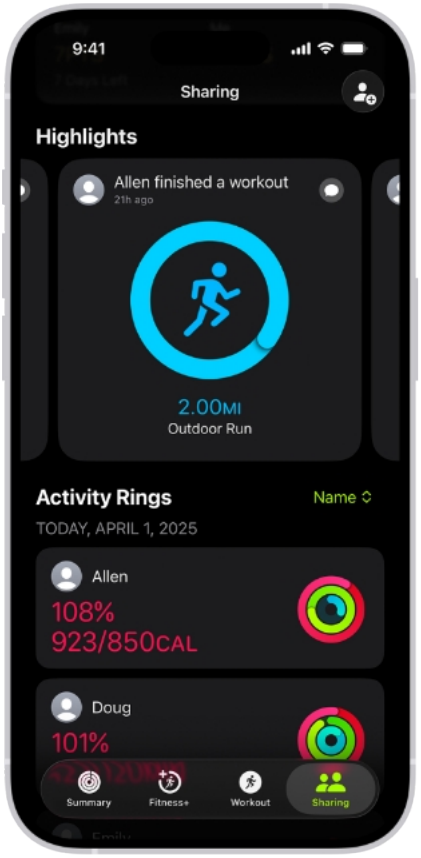
Start a workout

You can start individual workout sessions—from cardio-focused activities such as High Intensity Interval Training (HIIT), Outdoor Run, and Outdoor Cycle, to strength-based workouts like Functional Strength Training, Core Training, and Kickboxing. Tap Workout, then tap ▶ next to a workout type.

And when you connect an Apple Watch, AirPods Pro 3, Powerbeats Pro 2, or a compatible Bluetooth® enabled third-party heart rate monitor, you can do a workout with workout metrics displayed on the screen.

Share your activity with friends

Tap Sharing, then tap Invite a Friend to share the progress you're making toward your fitness goals. You can view highlights of your friends' activity and get notifications when they meet their goals, finish workouts, and more.



Want to learn more?

- See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone
- Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone
- Start a workout in Fitness on iPhone
- Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

Previous
Turn off Find My

Next
See your activity summary

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Change Fitness settings on iPhone

You can set notifications to help you reach your daily activity goals. You can also update your health details, change goals, set unit of measurement preferences, and change settings in the Workout tab.

Change Fitness notifications

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn off the notifications you no longer want to see.

Update your health details

You can update your height, weight, wheelchair status, and add a pregnancy in Health.

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Details, then make any changes.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Set unit of measurement preferences

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Units of Measure, then make any changes.

Change settings in the Workout tab

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Workout Settings, then do any of the following:

   - *Have Siri read your workout alerts:* Turn Voice Feedback on or off.
   - *Get a reminder to send a Workout Check In:* Turn Check In Reminders on or off.
   - *Automatically pause workouts when you stop moving:* Tap Auto-Pause, then turn Auto-Pause on or off.
   - *Receive a confirmation when you're ready to end your workout:* Turn End Workout Confirmation on or off.
   - *Choose units of measurement:* Tap Units of Measure, then make any changes.

See also

Fill out your Health Details in Health on iPhone

Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone

Start a workout in Fitness on iPhone

Previous
Customize a workout

Next
Share your activity

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Start a workout in Fitness on iPhone

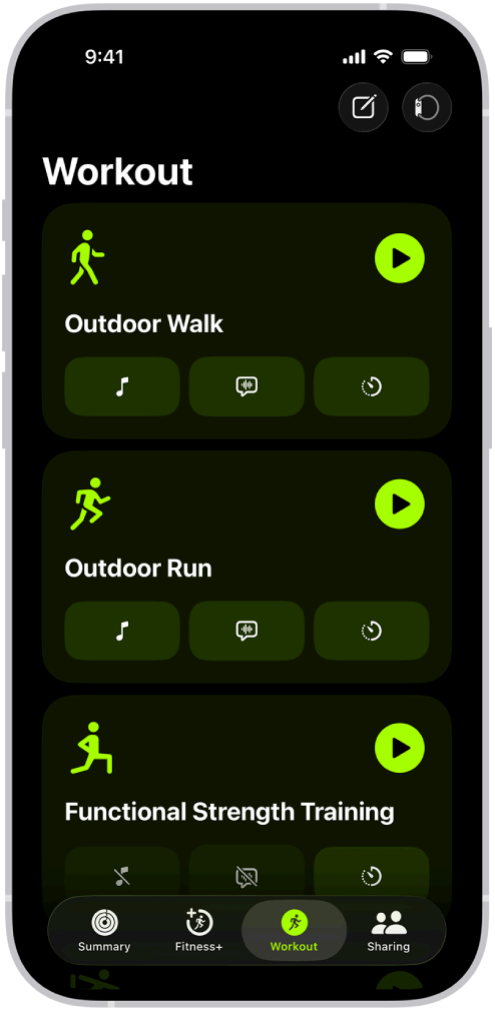
You can start individual workout sessions. The Workout tab offers a variety of fitness options—from cardio-focused workouts such as High Intensity Interval Training (HIIT), Outdoor Run, and Outdoor Cycle, to strength-based workouts like Functional Strength Training, Core Training, and Kickboxing.

If you have just an iPhone, you can do a workout with the following workout types:

- Outdoor Walk
- Outdoor Run
- Hiking
- Outdoor Push Walking Pace
- Outdoor Push Running Pace
- Outdoor Cycle

When you connect an Apple Watch, AirPods Pro 3, Powerbeats Pro 2, or a compatible Bluetooth enabled third-party heart rate monitor, you can do a workout with workout metrics displayed on the screen.

Note: If you have iPhone connected to AirPods Pro 3 or a third-party heart rate monitor, you have access to more workout types like Kickboxing and Pilates. If you have an Apple Watch, you have access to all workout types.



Connect a heart rate device

Before you start a workout on your iPhone, make sure you've connected an Apple Watch, AirPods Pro 3, Powerbeats Pro 2, or Bluetooth®-enabled third-party heart rate monitors that connect to the Health app. For more information on AirPods Pro 3, see Monitor your heart rate with AirPods Pro 3.

If you do not have a heart rate device connected, do the following:

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, then tap in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Bluetooth Settings, then pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory.

Start a workout

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, then scroll to the workout type you want to do.

To see workout types like Dance or Tennis, tap ⊕ at the bottom of the screen.

3. To start the workout, tap ▶.

Choose audio for a workout

You can set media to automatically play when you begin a workout type—either media selected for you based on what you normally listen to, or media you choose yourself.

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, scroll to a workout type, then tap ♫.
3. Turn on Autoplay Media.
4. To have media automatically play based on what you listen to and the type of workout, tap Picked for You.
5. To choose your own media, tap Choose Media, tap Add Media, then do one of the following:

   - *Choose a suggested option:* Tap an option below Suggestions.

     Tip: To view more suggestions, tap Music or Podcasts below Sources.

   - *Choose a playlist:* Tap Music, tap Playlists, then choose a playlist.

6. When you're finished, tap ✓.

Note: Music or other audio you're already listening to before you begin your workout continues to play.

Use the workout controls

During a workout, you can pause, mark a segment, send a Check In, lock controls, and more. When you finish a workout, you can view a summary of how you did.

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Start a workout, then do any of the following:

   - *Pause the workout:* Tap ⏸.

   - *Resume the workout:* Tap ↻.

- *Mark a segment:* Tap ①.
- *Connect a heart rate device:* Tap .
- *End the workout:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, then tap End Workout. Review the workout summary, then tap .
- *Mute Workout Buddy:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, then tap Mute.
- *Start a Check-In:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, tap Check-In, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Lock the workout controls:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, then tap Lock Controls.

See also

See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone

Customize a workout in Fitness on iPhone

Previous
Sync a third-party workout app

Next
Use Workout Buddy

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Use Workout Buddy in Fitness on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use Workout Buddy to get encouragement during your workouts based on real-time analysis of your fitness history and data from your current workout. Workout Buddy also lets you know when you've hit a new milestone—like running your fastest 10K, crossing 500 miles, and more.

You can use Workout Buddy with the following workout types:

- Outdoor and Indoor Run
- Outdoor and Indoor Walk
- Outdoor and Indoor Cycle
- Hiking
- Elliptical
- Stair Stepper
- High Intensity Interval Training (HIIT)
- Functional and Traditional Strength Training

Note: Workout Buddy requires Bluetooth headphones with the device and Siri language set to English. Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Set Up Workout Buddy

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, scroll to a workout type, then tap .
3. Turn on Workout Buddy, choose a voice, then tap .
4. When you're ready to start your workout, tap .

When you reach a milestone during your workout—like closing all your Activity rings or hitting your 100th mile for the year, you may receive audio motivation from Workout

Buddy. After you end the workout, Workout Buddy gives a summary of your workout—including the total time, calories burned, and more.

For more information on Apple Intelligence and privacy, see Apple Intelligence and privacy on iPhone.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

Previous
Start a workout in Fitness

Next
Customize a workout

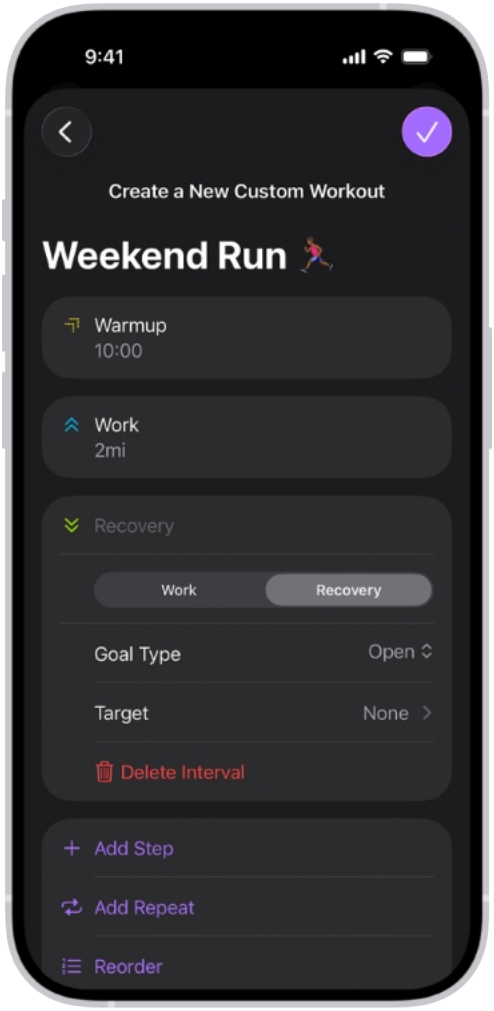
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Customize a workout in Fitness on iPhone

You can create a custom workout on your iPhone to support your fitness goals. Add warmup and cooldown times; add work and recovery intervals; set time, calorie, and distance goals; and more.



Create a custom workout

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, scroll to a workout type, then tap .
3. Tap Custom, then tap .
4. Do any of the following:

- *Add a warmup period:* Tap Warmup next to Goal Type, then tap Time, Distance, or Open.

  You can also tap Target to add a heart rate alert to the warmup period.

- *Add work and recovery intervals:* Tap Add Step, tap Work or Recovery, then next to Goal Type, choose Time, Distance, or Open.

  You can add multiple work and recovery intervals.

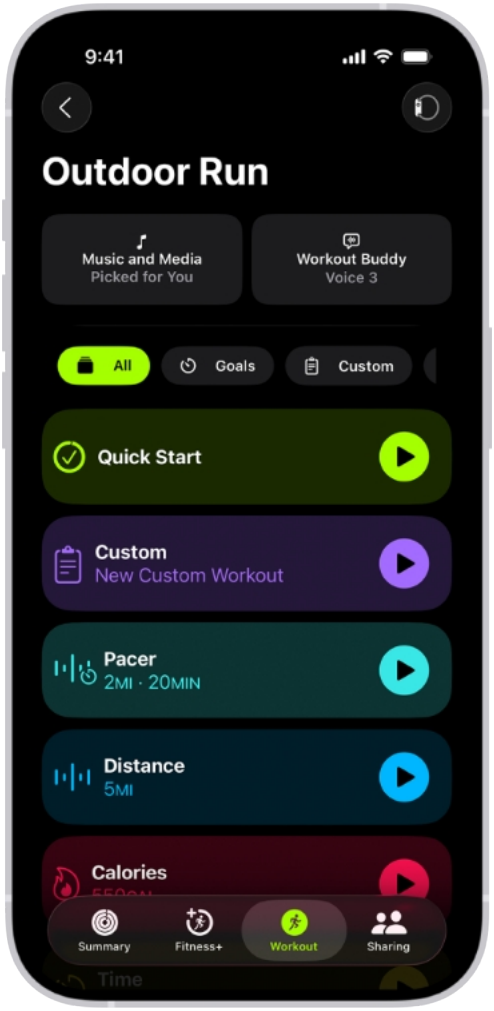
- *Add a cooldown period:* Tap Cooldown, then next to Goal Type, tap Time, Distance, or Open. When you choose Open, you can also add a heart rate alert.

- *Name the workout:* Tap New Custom Workout, then enter a name.

5. When you're finished, tap .

Add a workout goal

You can set time, distance, and calorie goals for each workout type.



1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Workout, scroll to a workout type, then tap .
3. Tap Goals, then tap .
4. Do any of the following:
    - *Set a time goal:* Tap Time, tap the time, then choose an option.
    - *Set a distance goal:* Tap Distance, tap the number and unit of measure, then choose an option.
    - *Set a calorie goal:* Tap Calories, tap the number, then choose an option.
5. When you're finished, tap .

To start a workout for a goal you set, tap next to a goal.

See also

Start a workout in Fitness on iPhone

Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone

Previous
Use Workout Buddy

Next
Change Fitness settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

You can keep your fitness routine on track by sharing your activity with your family and friends—you can even share with a trainer or coach. You can view highlights and get notifications when others meet their goals, finish workouts, and earn achievements.

Add or remove a friend

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, tap, then tap Invite a Friend.

   Note: If you're sharing for the first time, tap Sharing, then tap Invite a Friend.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a friend from your contacts:* Enter a contact's name, then tap the name.

     You can also tap to select contacts.
   - *Add a friend's phone number:* Enter a phone number.
   - *Add a friend's email address:* Enter an email address.
4. Tap Send.

If a friend hasn't accepted an invitation, tap their name in the Invited area of the Sharing screen, then tap Invite Again.

If you want to unsend an invitation you've sent, swipe left next to the friend's name, then tap Delete.

To remove a friend, tap a friend you're sharing with, tap, then tap Remove Friend.

View your friends' activity



You can see highlights of your friends' activity—like workouts they've finished or goals they've met. You can also view your friends' activity rings for the last 7 days and a summary of activities they've completed.

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then do any of the following:

   - *View highlights:* Swipe left or right below Highlights to see how all of your friends are doing.
   - *Reply to a friend's activity:* Swipe left or right below Highlights, tap , then tap a reply, or tap Custom Reply to type a response.
   - *View a friend's activity:* Tap a friend's name below Activity Rings to see a summary of their activity rings for the last 7 days and recently completed activities like workouts and meditations.

Change your friend settings

You can easily adjust friend settings.

1. Go to the Fitness app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then tap a friend.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:

- *View the friend's contact card:* Tap View Contact.
- *Mute notifications for the friend:* Tap Mute Notifications.
- *Hide your activity progress with a friend:* Tap Hide My Activity.
- *Stop sharing your activity with a friend:* Tap Remove Friend.

See also

Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone

Apple Watch User Guide: Share your activity from Apple Watch

Previous
Change Fitness settings

Next
Get started with Freeform

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

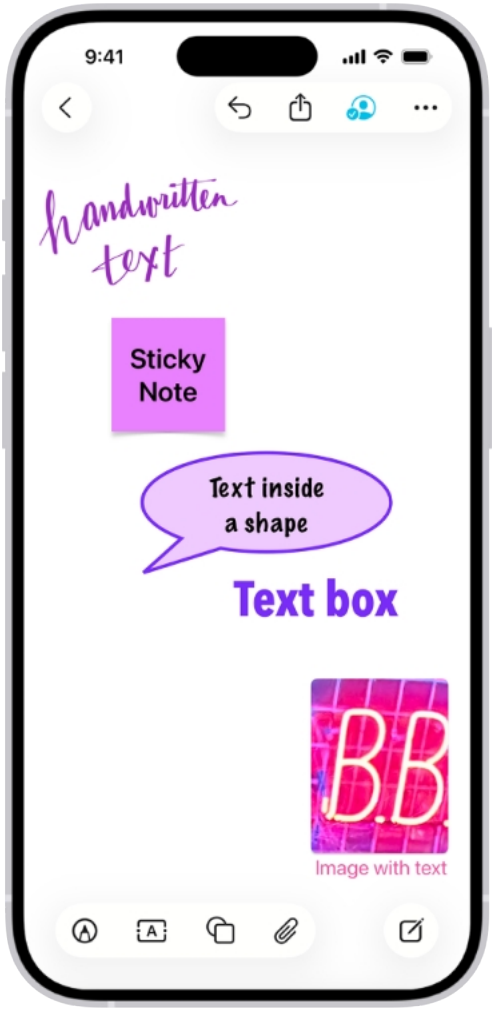
Table of Contents

Create a Freeform board on iPhone

You can use the Freeform app to create boards for brainstorming and collaborating. For example, propose a trip with friends and let everyone take part in the planning. You can add text, sticky notes, photos, videos, and other types of files. The canvas expands as you add content, so you're never constrained by space limits or page formatting.

Create a new board

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Tap one of the options at the bottom of the screen, such as or , to start building your board.



4. Move around your board by dragging your finger, and zoom in or out by pinching open or closed.

   Tip: To magnify more precisely, tap •••, tap View Options, then tap a percent.

5. Your board is saved automatically as you work. To name it, tap •••, then tap Rename.

Create a board from another app

You can start a new Freeform board using content from another supported app, such as Notes, Maps, Safari, Files, Photos, and more.

1. On your iPhone, go to the app whose content you want to use on a new Freeform board.

2. Open the item you want to place on the Freeform board (for example, a note, map, webpage, PDF, or screenshot).

   To share just one part of a file to a board (rather than the entire webpage or note), select what you want to share. If your selection includes text, only the text is shared.

3. Tap Share or , then tap the Freeform app icon .

4. Tap New Board or the name of an existing board.

   Either a link or the item appears in the board.

Open a board

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the board you want to open, or do one of the following:

   - *If you're in a board:* Tap ‹ in the top-left corner, then tap a board.
   - *Find a board you opened recently, share with others, or marked as a favorite:* Tap ‹ in the top-left corner, tap a category, then tap a board.

     Note: Any collaborations you get invited to in the Messages app appear in an Invitations section on the Shared Boards screen until you accept them.

Duplicate a board

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. While browsing All Boards, tap ••• at the top, then tap Select.

   If you're in a board, tap ‹ to browse All Boards.
3. Tap the boards you want to copy, then tap Duplicate.

Or touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Duplicate.

Note: If you duplicate a shared board, the copy isn't shared. See Send a copy of a board to send someone a snapshot of the board, or Invite others to collaborate on a board to reshare the board.

Add a board to Favorites

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *While browsing All Boards:* Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Favorite ♡.

- *If you're in a board:* Tap •••, then tap Favorite ♡.

See also

Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Previous
Get started with Freeform

Next
Draw or handwrite

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

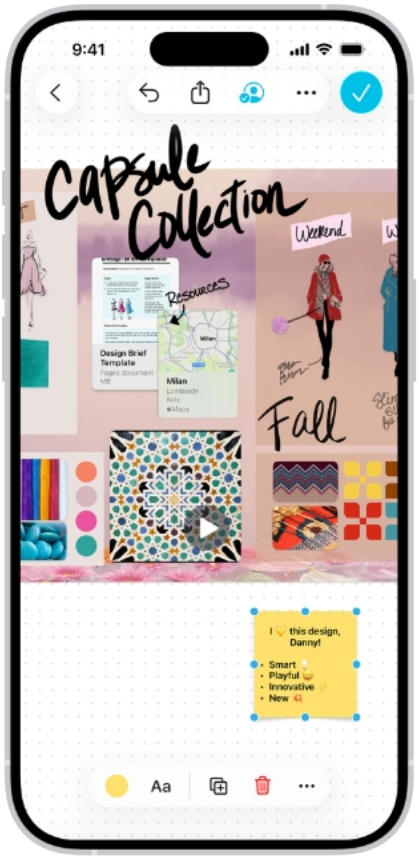
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get started with Freeform on iPhone

The Freeform app gives you a boundless canvas for creativity. Bring everything together on an online whiteboard, including photos, drawings, links, and files—and invite others to work with you. Brainstorm, sketch ideas, take notes, and collect your thoughts, either by yourself or with a group.



Gather ideas freely

You can put just about any kind of file in a Freeform board without worrying about layouts or page sizes. To create a board, tap , then tap A or another option at the bottom to start adding your ideas.

Collaborate with others

Tap to invite people to start working together in real time on a board. To conduct a brainstorming session or provide feedback, add a sticky note—tap , then tap Add Sticky Note.





Get creative with the drawing tools

Tap to start drawing. Tap a tool to adjust the line's thickness, transparency, color, and more, and pinch to zoom in and out as you work.



Start on your iPhone, keep working on your iPad or Mac

The Freeform boards you store in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—stay up to date on all your Apple devices when you're signed in to the same Apple Account. To use iCloud with Freeform, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > See All (in the Saved to iCloud section), then turn on Freeform.

Want to learn more?

- Create a Freeform board on iPhone
- Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone
- Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone
- iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices
- Add images, scans, links, and other files to a Freeform board on iPhone
- Add diagrams to a Freeform board on iPhone

Previous
Share your activity

Next
Create a Freeform board

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

You can sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger. You can edit and work with handwritten text just as you do with typed text.



Draw or handwrite

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap Ⓐ, then draw with your finger.

Tip: Hold your finger still for a moment when you finish the drawing to smooth or straighten its shape.



4. Do any of the following:

   - *Switch tools:* Tap a tool. Swipe to see other tools, such as Fill, Crayon, Fountain Pen, Reed Pen, or Watercolor Brush.
   - *Change a tool's qualities (such as angle, thickness, opacity):* Tap any tool a second time.
   - *Fill a shape with color:* Tap the Fill tool (the paint tube), then tap within a closed shape.
   - *Draw a straight line:* Tap the Ruler tool. Rotate the ruler by placing two fingers on it and turning your hand.

5. Tap ✓ when you're finished drawing.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use Image Playground to create one-of-a-kind images in Freeform. See Create original images with Image Playground.

Select and edit parts of a drawing

When you draw in the Freeform app, your strokes are grouped. If you want to break a drawing apart, you can separate your strokes and merge them. You can also delete, resize, or straighten parts of a drawing.

1. After you draw or write on your Freeform board with the drawing tools, tap (between the Eraser and Ruler) in the drawing tools.
2. Tap or circle the part of the drawing you want to select, then choose an option. (Tap › to see other options.)

   Tip: Choose Snap to Shape to smooth or straighten hand-drawn lines.

You can also tap to select an entire drawing or other item when you're not using the drawing tools. Tap an item to select it, tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap an option.

Work with handwritten text

When you write by hand in the Freeform app, your handwriting is recognized as words. You can search text you handwrite in the same way you search typed text. You can also select it, copy and paste it as text, straighten it, or translate it.

1. After you draw or write on your Freeform board with the drawing tools, tap (between the Eraser and Ruler) in the drawing tools.
2. To select text, tap, double-tap, or circle the words, tap >, then do any of the following:

   - *Make text more legible, smooth, and straight:* Tap Refine.

     Tip: To automatically smooth and straighten text as you write, tap ••• in the tools, then turn on Auto-refine Handwriting.

   - *Make your writing more level:* Tap Straighten.

   - *Correct spelling:* Tap an underlined word, then choose how you want to correct it. The fix appears in your own writing style.

   - *Move handwritten text:* Touch and hold the selected text, then drag it to a new position.

   - *Drag and drop:* Touch and hold the text.

   - *Erase text:* Strike through the writing, then hold down your finger on iPhone. (Supported when using a markup tool such as Pen, Mono line, or Marker.)

To see other options, tap > in the menu that appears above the selected text.

When you tap a handwritten link, address, phone number, or date, it may open a menu or another related app.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Add shapes, lines, and arrows to a Freeform board on iPhone

Solve handwritten math problems on a Freeform board on iPhone

Add accessibility descriptions

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Previous
Create a Freeform board

Next
Solve handwritten math problems

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add text in sticky notes, shapes, and text boxes on a Freeform board on iPhone

You can add text to a Freeform board using a sticky note or text box, or you can add text within a shape.



1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Add a text box:* Tap .

- *Add text inside a shape:* Tap .
- *Add a sticky note:* Tap , then tap Add Sticky Note.

4. Double-tap the text box, shape, or sticky note, then enter text. (If you have a keyboard connected, you can start typing as soon as the item appears.)
5. To change the font, alignment, and more, double-tap to show the object's formatting tools, then tap Aa.
6. Tap when you're finished.

See also

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Add accessibility descriptions

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Previous
Solve handwritten math problems

Next
Add shapes, lines, and arrows

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

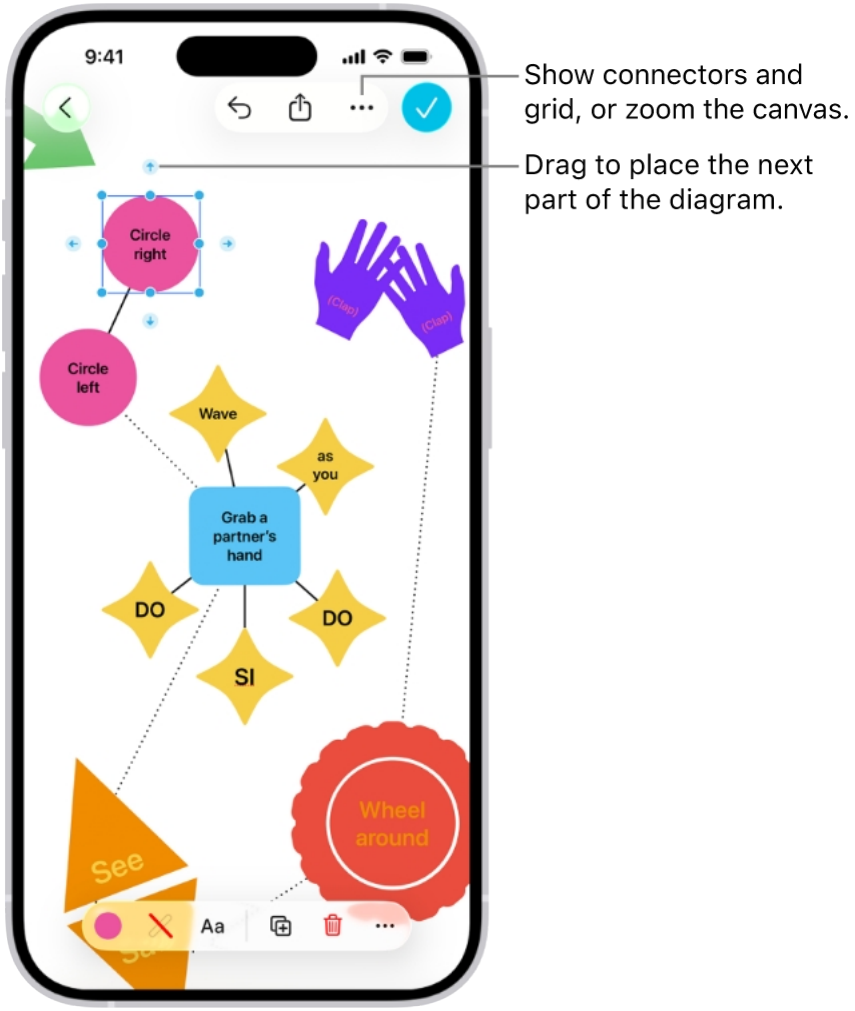
Add diagrams to a Freeform board on iPhone

You can add diagrams to a Freeform board.

Create a diagram

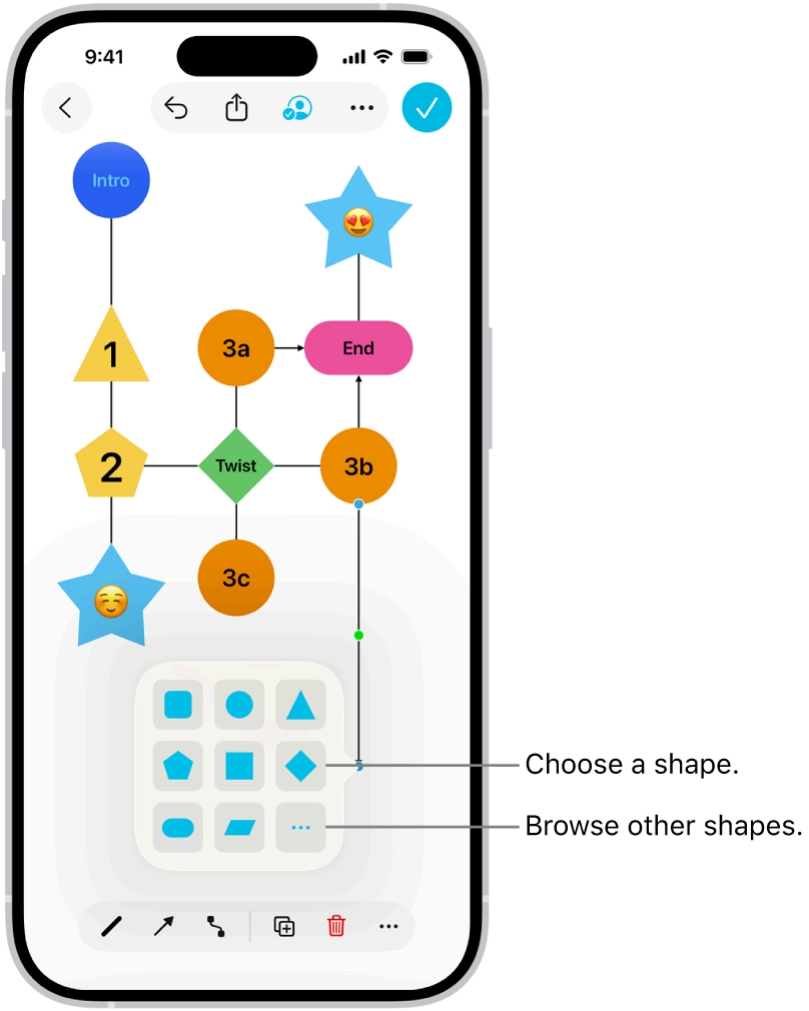
You can easily create a connected diagram, such as a flowchart, by using connectors and the shape picker in Freeform.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap •••, tap View Options, then then tap Show Connectors.



4. Begin your diagram by tapping A, , or to add an item.
5. Drag a connector arrow to where you want the next part of your diagram. When you let go, a small menu of shapes opens. Tap to select the next shape you want to add.

   (Tap ··· to browse other shapes.)



6. Tap ✓ when you're finished diagramming.

You don't see connector arrows when you select a line or multiple items.

💡 **Tip:** You can quickly add equally spaced, aligned shapes with connectors. Tap to select a shape, then touch and hold a connector arrow. As you hold, a preview of the shape and line appears. When you let go, the shape and line are added to the board.

Connect two items with a line

After you add two items to a Freeform board, you can add a line between them.

1. Select two items on your board.
2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Add Connection Line.
   - Tap, then tap .

Change connection points

After you add a connection line to a diagram on a Freeform board, you can change how it connects.

1. Tap to select a connection line, then drag one of its endpoints (the blue dots).
2. Attach the endpoint to another item on the board at a new connection point.

   You can attach a line to an item or (for some object types) near it. A filled circle appears when a connection is possible.

See also

Add shapes, lines, and arrows to a Freeform board on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Add accessibility descriptions

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Previous
Add shapes, lines, and arrows

Next
Add images, scans, links, and other files

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Solve handwritten math problems on a Freeform board on iPhone

You can solve handwritten math problems on a Freeform board.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap , tap Math Results, then choose how you want your iPhone to respond to the math problems you enter:
   - *If you want it to solve them:* Choose Insert Results. (The answer appears in writing that matches your own.)
   - *If you want suggestions to appear:* Choose Suggest Results. (A Solve button appears that, when tapped, adds the answer in writing that matches your own.)
4. Tap , then start writing a math equation.
5. Write an equal sign or draw a horizontal line below a stack of numbers, then do one of the following:
   - *In Insert Results mode:* Tap the answer to open the equation. You can tap to delete the answer.
   - *In Suggest Results mode:* Tap Solve to add the answer in writing that matches your own.

You can decide which mode you want, or turn off math hints. See Get math hints.

You can also type equations to be solved in any text in sticky notes, shapes, and text boxes and in the Notes app.

You can also use variables, edit equations, and update results as you can in the Calculator app. See Solve math with Math Notes.

See also

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Work with graphs in Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone

Solve math with Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone

Previous
Draw or handwrite

Next
Add text in sticky notes, shapes, and text boxes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Add shapes, lines, and arrows to a Freeform board on iPhone

You can add shapes, lines, and arrows to a Freeform board.

Add and format shapes, lines, and arrows

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap, and tap a shape, line, or arrow to add it to the board.
4. Tap to select the shape or line and show its formatting tools, then do any of the following:

   - *Change the fill color:* Tap .
   - *Change the line style:* Tap , then choose the stroke color and weight you want for a shape or line.

     Tap to turn lines into arrows or to add other styles of endings.

     If you've selected a connection line, tap to change its style to straight, corner, or curved.
   - *Change the type of shape:* Tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, tap Change Shape, then choose another shape.
5. Tap when you're finished.

You can also add shapes and lines to your board by drawing them and then smoothing or straightening the strokes. See Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board.

Note: The color of a button may change to reflect its current state.

Split or combine shapes

When you add multipart shapes to a Freeform board, you can divide them into their parts and then edit each part individually. For example, you can divide the map of the United States (in the Places category) and change the color of each state. You can also subtract shapes from other shapes, remove the overlapping area between two shapes, or create a new shape by combining one shape with another.

After you've added shapes to your Freeform board, do one of the following:

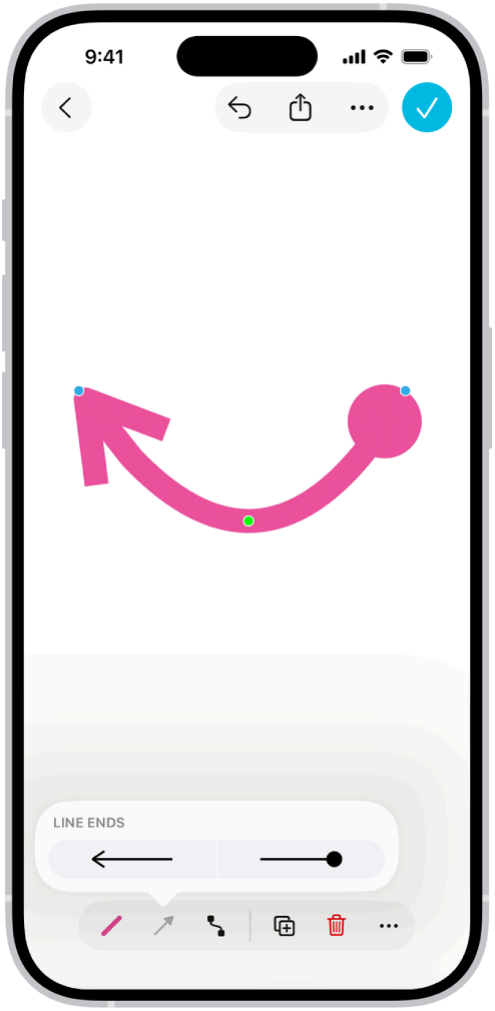
- *Split a multipart shape apart:* Tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Break Apart.
- *Combine shapes:* Select multiple items, tap , then below Combine Shapes tap an option to unite, intersect, subtract, or exclude.

Change size, width, or length

After you add a shape or line to a Freeform board, you can change its dimensions or change how lines connect.

Tap to select a shape or line, then drag a dot.

- *Shapes:* Drag a blue dot to change the size or proportions of the shape. Drag any green dot to change aspects particular to that shape, such as its number of sides.
- *Connection lines:* Drag a blue dot to change an endpoint. Drag the green dot to adjust the curve. If it's part of a diagram, see Change connection points.



See also

Add diagrams to a Freeform board on iPhone

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Previous
Add text in sticky notes, shapes, and text boxes

Next
Add diagrams

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

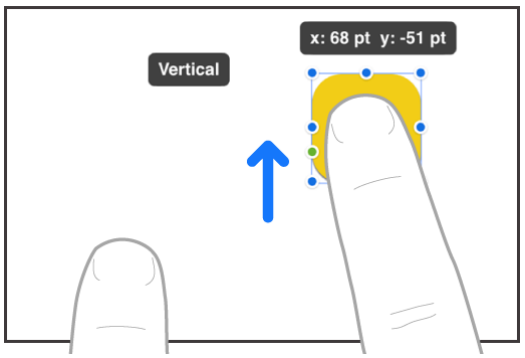
Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

You can move, rotate, or resize items on your Freeform board. You can align, distribute, or group them, and move them to the background or foreground. You can also lock items when you want to prevent any further changes.

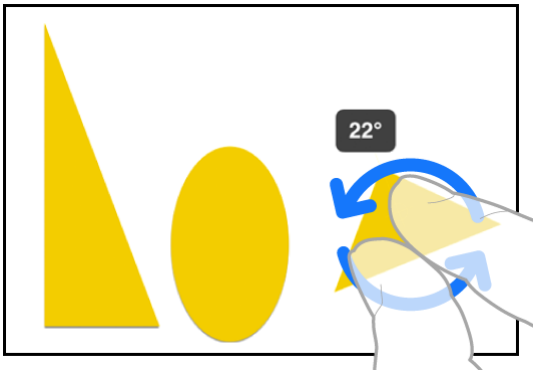
Move, rotate, or resize an item

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, select an item you want to position by tapping it, then do any of the following:

   - *Reposition it:* Drag from the center of the item.
   - *Move it in a straight line:* To constrain an item's movement horizontally, vertically, or diagonally, drag the item with one finger while you use another finger to touch and hold anywhere on the board.



   - *Rotate it:* Place two fingers on the item, then turn your hand in the direction you want to rotate it.

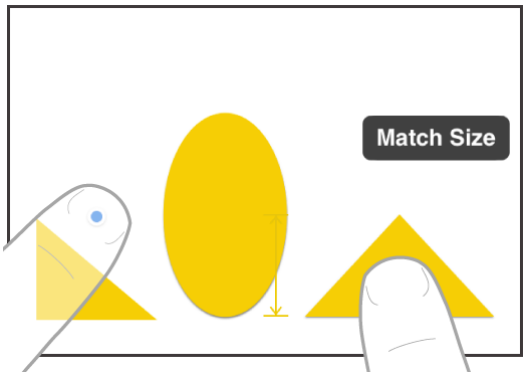


- *Put it in the background or foreground:* Tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Back or Front.

- *Resize it:* Drag a blue dot.

  In text boxes, drag a green dot to resize both the box and the text within it.

- *Match its size to another item:* Start resizing, then use a second finger to touch and hold the item whose size you want to match. When the words Match Size appear, lift both your fingers at the same time.

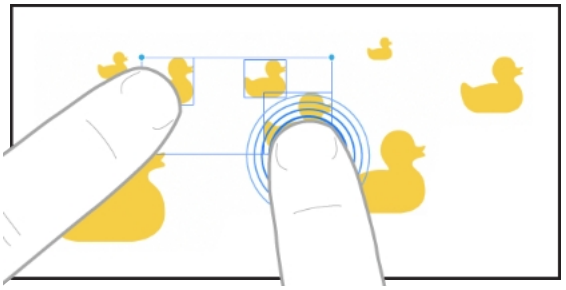


Select, align, and group multiple items on a board

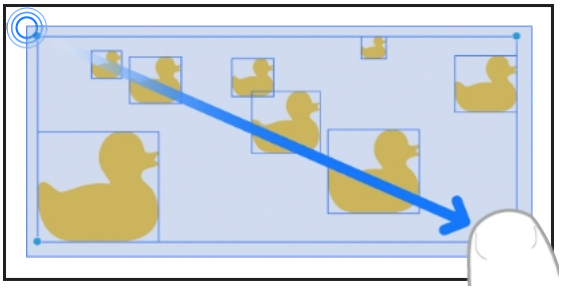
After you add items to a Freeform board, you can select and align multiple items relative to one another. You can also group several items to more easily move, rotate, or resize them as a single unit.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, then select multiple items by doing one of the following:

   - Touch and hold an item on your board, then, with another finger, tap other items.



- Touch and hold the canvas, then drag the box that appears around the items you want to select.



- Tap an empty space on the canvas, then tap Select Objects. Tap each item you want to select. Tap the item again if you want to deselect it.

3. Move, rotate, or resize the selected items, or tap , then tap an alignment option or Group.

   Some items—such as 3D objects—can't be grouped.

To make it easier to arrange items, you can turn on the background dot grid and automatically align items to it.

Lock an item on a board

After you add an item to a Freeform board, you can lock it so you don't inadvertently move, modify, or delete it. For example, you might lock one or more text boxes to serve as headings. (This could help set off areas on a board where participants can share items.)

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, then tap a drawing, shape, text box, or other item on your board to select it.
3. Tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Lock.

Tip: When you want to define a workspace for your participants (rather than having a wide open canvas), try adding a large rectangle shape. Select the shape, tap ••• in the

formatting tools at the bottom, tap Back, then lock it.

See also

Change your Freeform settings on iPhone

Create a Freeform board on iPhone

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Previous
Apply consistent styles

Next
Navigate and present scenes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

When you want the text in your sticky notes, shapes, or text boxes to have a consistent look in Freeform—for example, font, size, and color—you can copy the style from one item and paste it in another. You can also save styles.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item on a board and make any adjustments to the formatting—so it has the style you want to copy.
3. When you have an item that's formatted in a style you like, tap it to show its formatting tools.
4. Tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, tap Style, then tap Copy Style.
5. Tap to select and show the formatting tools for an item whose style you want to change.
6. Tap •••, tap Style, then tap Paste Style.

   Depending on the item you're pasting a style into, fonts, line weight, or color are matched.

   For linked or placed files, pasted styles update corners and shadows.

Tip: If you like the style of an item, you can save its style. Then, every time you add another item like that to your board, it uses that saved style. Tap to select the text box, tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, tap Style, then choose Save as Insert Style.

See also

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Navigate and present scenes in your Freeform boards on iPhone

You can save scenes—saved views of your board—to organize your boards into sections, then quickly navigate and present those parts of your board to others. Scenes let you identify and label content so you can present your board, section by section, and rearrange the order in which you present your board. You can also use scenes to identify the parts of your board you want to print or export as a PDF.

Save scenes

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board with content.
3. Zoom and scroll until you frame the part of your board you want on the screen for your first scene.
4. Tap •••, then tap Add Scene.

   The Scene Navigator opens at the bottom of your board.
5. Repeat these steps until you capture all the scenes you want: Frame your next scene, tap ☰ in the Scene Navigator or tap •••, then tap Add Scene.

Tip: Don't worry about saving scenes in order. You can edit their sequence after you capture them.

Navigate scenes

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board with saved scenes.
3. Tap •••, tap Scene Navigator, then do any of the following:
   - Tap ☰, then tap the scene you want to go to.
   - Tap ‹ and › to move between scenes.

Note: A scene may appear differently for you if you're using a different device or view than the person who captured it. For example, if someone captured a scene on a Mac, it may be framed differently when you view it on an iPhone in portrait orientation.

Edit scenes

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board with saved scenes.
3. Tap •••, tap Scene Navigator, then tap ☰.
4. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:
   - *Change the name of a scene:* Tap the scene whose name you want to change, enter a new name, then tap ✓.
   - *Reframe a scene:* Tap •••, then tap Replace Scene.
   - *Rearrange the view order:* Touch and hold ≡, then drag the scene up or down.
   - *Delete a scene:* Tap ⊖.
5. Tap ✓ in Scene Navigator, tap ✕, then tap ✓ in the top right.

Print or export all scenes

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board with saved scenes.
3. Tap •••, then do one of the following:

    - Tap Print, tap Scenes, then tap Print.
    - Tap Export as PDF, tap Scenes, then choose how you want to share it or tap Save to Files.

Tip: Printed and exported scenes default to the size of the device you're on. To print as the scenes were originally framed, tap Freeform Options, then select Capturing Device.

Print or export one scene

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board with saved scenes.
3. Tap •••, then tap Scene Navigator.
4. Tap ☰, touch and hold a scene name, then do one of the following:

    - Tap Print Scene, then tap Print.
    - Tap Export Scene as PDF, then either choose how you want to share it or tap Save to Files.

Tip: If you're already in the Scene Navigator, you can tap ••• next to any scene you want to print or export.

All collaborators can access any scenes saved in a board.

See also

Send a copy or PDF of a Freeform board on iPhone

Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Table of Contents

Add images, scans, links, and other files to a Freeform board on iPhone

You can add any photo or video to a Freeform board, or take a new one with your iPhone camera. You can also add any kind of file to your board by scanning, linking, or inserting it.

Add a photo, video, sticker, link, or other file

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Copy the item to your Clipboard, tap an empty space, then, when a menu appears, tap Paste.
   - Tap, then tap an option.
4. Tap when you're finished.

Double-tap any media item—photo, video, or other file—to preview it.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use Image Playground to create one-of-a-kind images in Freeform. See Create original images with Image Playground.

Note: You can insert files saved on your iPhone or in iCloud Drive. For most file types, Freeform makes a copy of the inserted file. When you add a link to a collaborative Keynote presentation, Numbers spreadsheet, or Pages document, participants in your Freeform board can tap the card to move to the shared file in iCloud. (If you want others to be able to collaborate on the file, you must save it in iCloud.)

Scan and add a document

You can scan a paper document and add it to your board as a PDF without leaving Freeform.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap , then tap Scan Document.
4. Position the document so that it appears on the screen, then tap or press a volume button.
5. Drag the corners to select the area you want in the scanned document, then tap Keep Scan.
6. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.

A card with an image of the first page of your scan appears on your board.

Tip: To save your scan to iCloud Drive or on your iPhone, select the card, tap , tap , then tap Save to Files.

Format a photo or video

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board with a photo or video in it.
3. Tap a photo or video to open its formatting tools at the bottom, then do any of the following:

   - *Crop or mask the photo:* Tap .
   - *Remove the photo's background:* Tap , then tap Remove Background. If the background of the photo can't be made transparent, Remove Background isn't available.

     Tip: You can also paste an image without a background. See Lift a subject from the photo or video background.

   - *Add a shadow, round the corners, add a description, and more:* Tap •••, then choose an option.
   - *Replace the photo or video:* Select the photo or video, tap or , tap Replace, then select a replacement.

- *Preview the photo or video:* Tap , or double-tap the photo or video.

  To preview a movie in full screen, double-tap it.

Put an image inside a shape

You can use a shape as a mask or frame for an image. For example, you can put your photo inside a circle.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Add a photo or other image to the board.
4. Tap , then choose a shape.
5. Position the shape over the image, then select both it and the image. (See Select, align, and group multiple items on a board.)
6. Tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Mask with Shape.

Or drag an image onto a shape to use it as a frame.

To remove it from the shape, select the masked image, tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Reset Mask.

Tip: To add a photo, video, file, or link to a Freeform board from supported apps (such as Notes, Photos, Safari, and more), select it and tap in the other app, tap the Freeform app icon, then tap New Board or the name of an existing board. (If you want others to be able to add items to your board, you must save it in iCloud.)

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Add accessibility descriptions

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone

You can invite people to collaborate on a Freeform board in iCloud, and everyone sees the latest changes when they're online and signed in to their Apple Account. To make sure the board is accessible to all, you can add descriptions for visual items.



Invite others to collaborate on a board

When you collaborate with others on a shared Freeform board, you can see edits as others make them. Changes are saved in iCloud, so everyone with access to the board sees the latest version whenever they open it.

Note: Boards are stored only in the iCloud account of the owner. The iCloud storage of participants isn't affected by items in a board.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *While browsing All Boards:* Touch and hold the board you want to share, then tap Share.

   - *From inside a board:* Open the board you want to share (or tap to start a new one), then tap .

3. The current sharing setting is described below the name of the board, such as "Only invited people can edit." Tap the setting to change it. See Manage sharing settings.

   Note: If you want to be the only one who can invite others, select "Only invited people" and turn off "Allow others to invite" (green is on).

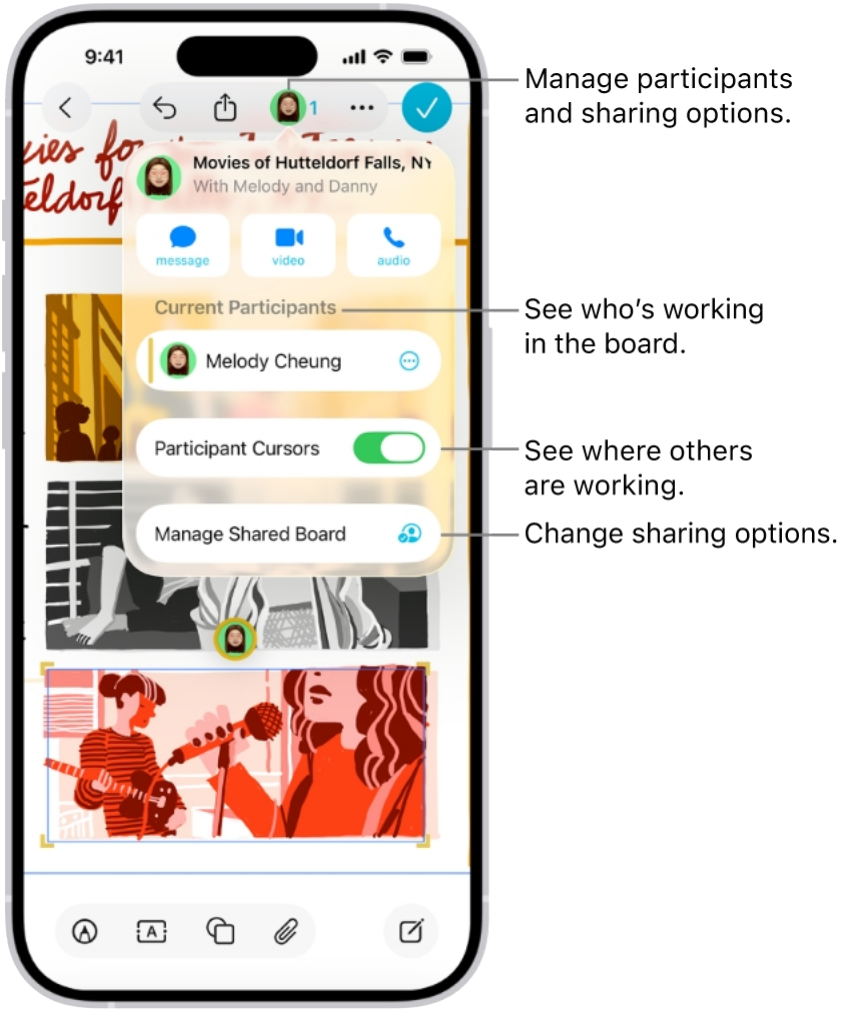
4. Choose how you want to share the board—such as in Messages or Mail—or tap the icon of anyone you communicated with recently to share with them.

You can add people after you start sharing a board. Tap , tap Manage Shared Board, then tap Share With More People. When you share with others in Messages, may change to reflect who shares the board with you.

Note: To edit or view the board, everyone you share with must be signed in to their Apple Account with iOS 16.2, iPadOS 16.2, macOS 13.1, or later. To collaborate using Messages, you and anyone you invite must also turn on iMessage.

View others in a board

You can see where others are working on your board in real time or follow along while another participant moves in a board. For example, if you're following someone who's presenting their design proposal on a Freeform board, you can see where they are on the board and what they see.



1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open the shared board where you want to see others at work, then tap .
3. Turn on Participant Cursors if the setting is off.
4. Do any of the following:

    - *Jump to where they're working:* Tap the name of a participant.

      The color next to the participant's name matches the color marking their place on the board.

    - *Follow their board view as they work or present:* Tap ••• next to the name of a participant, then tap Follow Along. Or you can just tap the person's avatar wherever they are on the board, then tap Follow.

      Anything you'd selected before entering the mode is deselected. A border (with a color matching the cursor of the person you're following) frames what they see on the board.

      Both you and the presenter you're following need to be online.

When you're following along, you can't select anything on the board, and the zoom level is based on the other person's view.

To stop following along, tap Stop in the top-right corner—or just scroll, zoom, or edit.

Note: Others working with you on the board can only undo and redo their own changes while the board is open. Use to move through the changes you made on your own iPhone. To redo a change after you undo it, touch and hold , then tap Redo.

Add accessibility descriptions

You can add a description of your visual content to any item on your board. That way, people who use assistive technology such as VoiceOver can hear the visual content described aloud. (Descriptions aren't visible on the board itself.)

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open the board where you want to add accessibility descriptions.
3. Tap to select the item you want to describe, tap ••• in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Description.
4. Enter a description of the visual content, then tap .
5. To hear the description, turn on VoiceOver, then tap the item.

Stop sharing or collaborating

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open the board you want to stop sharing or collaborating on.
3. Tap , then tap Manage Shared Board.
4. Do any of the following:

   - *Remove people:* Tap the name of the participant you want to remove, then tap Remove Access.
   - *Remove yourself from someone else's board:* Tap your name, then tap Remove Me.
   - *Stop sharing with everyone:* Tap Stop Sharing, then tap Stop Sharing.

     When you choose this option, the board no longer appears on the devices of the other participants, even though you still have access to it.

You can change access and permissions for individuals or for everyone after you start sharing a board. See Manage sharing settings.

To use the collaboration features fully, all participants must be online, signed in to their Apple Account, have Freeform turned on in iCloud (see Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide), and have set up two-factor authentication.

See also

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Print from iPhone

Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Previous
Print a board

Next
Search Freeform boards

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Print a Freeform board on iPhone

You can print a Freeform board.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open the board you want to print, tap •••, then tap Print.

   If you saved scenes in your board, choose to print one of the following:

   - *The entire board as a single page:* Tap Board.
   - *One scene per page:* Tap Scenes.

See also

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Print from iPhone

Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone

Previous
Send a copy or PDF

Next
Share boards and collaborate

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Send a copy or PDF of a Freeform board on iPhone

You can send a link to a copy of a Freeform board, so others can download the copy and add it to their boards—if you are signed in to your Apple Account. You can also export your Freeform board as a PDF to send a copy of it to others.

Send a copy of a board

Send a copy of your board to anyone with just a link. They can take the copy of the board and make it their own. You must be online and signed in to iCloud to send a copy of the board.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *While browsing All Boards:* Touch and hold the board you want to share, then tap Share.
   - *From inside a board:* Tap .
3. Tap the pop-up menu under the board name, choose Send Copy, then tap one of the following:
   - *Copy iCloud Link:* The link is copied to your clipboard. You can then paste it anywhere you like.
   - *Any contact or app icon:* Follow the onscreen instructions.

You can send this link to as many recipients as you like. Anyone with the link can download the copy within 30 days. When browsing for the board, recipients can find it in All Boards, not the Shared section. (Shared is only for boards you're collaborating on.)

If you'd like to share your board collaboratively—so you can all see one another's updates — see Share Freeform boards and collaborate.

Each new link sends a copy of the board at the time you created the link. When you send someone a copy, the link opens a new board. Changes on your board don't appear on their board, and anything others change doesn't affect yours.

Note: Sending a copy doesn't change who has access to the original board. See Manage sharing settings to change access to a board.

Send a PDF of a board

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. In the board you want to send, tap •••, tap Export as PDF.

   If you saved scenes in your board, choose to export one of the following:

   - *The entire board as a single page:* Tap Board.
   - *One scene per page:* Tap Scenes.
4. Choose how you want to send the PDF, such as in Messages or Mail, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   People and groups you recently communicated with appear as icons. Tap one to send the board to them.

You can also export a board as a PDF while browsing All Boards. Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, tap Share, then tap Export as PDF.

Tip: To send a PNG of your board, take a screenshot, then share it from the Photos app. You can also select and copy items you want to share and then paste them into other apps (Mail or Files, for example) as a PNG.

See also

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Print from iPhone

Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

Table of Contents

Search your Freeform boards on iPhone

You can search all your Freeform boards for text in handwriting, sticky notes, text boxes, shapes, and filenames.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Search within a board:* Tap ••• at the top, then tap Find.
   - *Search all boards:* Tap the search field at the top of the All Boards screen. Any board that contains the text appears in the search results.

     (If you're in a board, tap < to access Search in All Boards.)

See also

Create a Freeform board on iPhone

Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

You can remove Freeform boards you no longer need. You can also recover deleted boards you want to keep.

Delete a board

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. While browsing All Boards, tap ••• at the top, tap Select, then tap the boards you want to delete.

   (If you're in a board, tap < to browse All Boards.)
3. Tap Delete at the bottom-right corner of the screen.

You can also touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Delete.

If you're the *owner* of a board and you delete it, it no longer appears on anyone's devices.

If you're a *participant* in a shared board and you delete it, it no longer appears on your devices, but others can still access it.

Recover a recently deleted board

If you change your mind about deleting a board, you can recover it.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. While browsing All Boards, tap <, then tap Recently Deleted.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *Recover a board:* Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the recently deleted board, then tap Recover.

- *Recover several boards:* Tap ••• at the top, tap Select, then tap the boards you want to recover. Tap Recover at the bottom of the screen.

Deleted boards remain in Recently Deleted for 30 days.

If you were the *owner* of a shared board that you deleted, it no longer appears on anyone's device, and you have to reshare it after recovering it.

If you delete a board you don't own, you may be able to access it again with the invitation link.

Permanently remove a recently deleted board

After deleting a board, you can permanently remove it.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. While browsing Recently Deleted, touch and hold the board, tap Delete, then tap Delete.

See also

Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone

Search your Freeform boards on iPhone

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

Previous
Search Freeform boards

Next
Change Freeform settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change your Freeform settings on iPhone

You can customize the settings for the Freeform app.

Turn the background dot grid on or off

You can show a grid of gray dots on your board, which allows you to see more easily whether items line up.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Tap •••, tap View Options, then tap Hide Grid or Show Grid.

Align items to the background grid

You can make edges and points align to the nearest dot on the grid as you resize or move an item.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Freeform.
3. Turn on Snap to Grid.

You can also access these settings when you're working in a board. Tap •••, tap Alignment Settings, then tap Snap to Grid.

Turn alignment guides on or off

You can use alignment guides to help you place items more precisely. When guides are on, they appear as you drag an item on a board and it aligns with another item.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Freeform.
3. Tap on or off any of the following:

    - *Center Guides:* These appear when the midpoints of items align.
    - *Edge Guides:* These appear when the edges of items align.
    - *Spacing Guides:* These appear when three or more items are equally spaced in a line.

You can also access these settings when you're working in a board. Tap •••, tap Alignment Settings, then turn on the guides you want to use. Or turn them off if you don't want them appearing as you move items near one another on the board.

Get math hints

You can choose how you want your iPhone to respond to the math problems you enter.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Freeform.
3. Tap Math Results, then select one of the following:

    - *If you want problems to be solved automatically:* Choose Insert Results. (The answer appears in writing that matches your own.)
    - *If you want suggestions to appear:* Choose Suggest Results. (A Solve button appears that, when tapped, adds the answer in writing that matches your own.)
    - *If you don't want to see math results:* Choose Off.

You can also access these settings when you're working in a board. Tap •••, then tap Math Results.

Manage sharing settings

You can change access and permissions for individuals or for everyone after you start sharing a board.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open the board whose sharing settings you want to change.
3. Tap .

   A list of participants appears, showing who is working in the board.
4. Tap Manage Shared Board, then do any of the following:

   - *Lock the board for edits:* Tap Share Options, then tap "View only."

     Note: If you don't want participants to be able to invite others, select "Only people you invite" and "Only you can add people."

   - *Give editing access:* Tap Share Options, then tap "Can make changes."

   - *Change access and permissions individually:* Tap a participant's name, then adjust their settings.

   - *Invite others with a link:* Tap Share Options, tap "Anyone with the link," tap <, then tap Copy Link.

     Note: Anyone can copy the link to send to others, but if you select "Only people you invite," then only those invited to open the board can use the link. If you don't want participants to be able to invite others, select "Only people you invite" and "Only you can add people."

Tip: You can also manage any board you previously shared while browsing All Boards. Touch and hold its thumbnail or name, then tap Manage Shared Board.

Store your Freeform boards in iCloud

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.

3. Tap See All, then turn on Freeform.

To back up without using iCloud, see the Apple Support article About encrypted backups on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Sort your boards

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Tap •••, then do any of the following:

   - *View more boards at the same time (with smaller thumbnails):* Tap List.
   - *List boards alphabetically (instead of by most recently updated):* Tap Sort by Name.
   - *Categorize boards by how long ago they were last opened:* When viewing All Boards, tap Sort by Date, then tap Use Groups.
   - *Categorize boards by board owner:* When viewing Shared boards, tap Use Groups.

See also

Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

Get started with Freeform on iPhone

Previous
Delete and recover boards

Next
Get started with the Apple Games app

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Find and download games in the Apple Games app on iPhone

In the Apple Games app, you can find your next game across dozens of categories including action, adventure, racing, puzzles, and more.

Note: Game Center, Apple Arcade, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services. The availability of Apple Arcade games across devices varies based on hardware and software compatibility. Some content may not be available in all areas. See the Apple Support article Apple Arcade game availability across devices.

Browse or search for games

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Explore new releases, see top charts, or get personalized suggestions:* Tap Home.
   - *View the curated collection of games from Apple Arcade (subscription required) without ads or in-app purchases:* Tap Arcade.
   - *Search or browse:* Tap, browse by category or enter what you're looking for, then tap on the onscreen keyboard.
3. Select a game to see information such as ratings, game controller support, leaderboards, achievements, and more.

   To see additional information like reviews and privacy information, tap View in App Store.

Download or buy a game

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to the game you want, then tap the price. If the game is free, tap Get.

   If you see instead of the price or Get, you purchased this game before. Tap to download it again for free.
3. If required, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

   Purchases are made with the payment method associated with your Apple Account.

See also

Play with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Connect a game controller to iPhone

Previous
Set up your Game Center profile

Next
Subscribe to Apple Arcade

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get started with the Apple Games app on iPhone

The Apple Games app is your central hub for the games you enjoy and the friends you play them with. Apple Games brings together your game library, activity from your games and friends, and personalized recommendations in one convenient place.

Sign in to the same Apple Account in both Game Center and the App Store, then use the Apple Games app to keep track of what's new in the games you're playing, discover new games, and stay connected with friends.

Discover new games

Find recommendations tailored to your preferences and see what games your friends are playing. Tap Home, then tap a game to learn more, download it, or jump right in if you already have it installed.

Play with friends

Play and compete with friends or players around the world. Tap Friends, then tap Challenge Your Friends.

Manage your library

Tap Library to access your downloaded games, track achievements, and filter your collection.

Want to learn more?

- Find and download games in the Apple Games app on iPhone
- Play with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone
- View and manage your game library in the Apple Games app on iPhone
- Connect with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Table of Contents

Subscribe to Apple Arcade in the Apple Games app on iPhone

In the Apple Games app, you can subscribe to Apple Arcade to enjoy unlimited access to a curated collection of games on iPhone, iPad, Mac, and Apple TV.

You can subscribe to Apple Arcade or to Apple One, which includes Apple Arcade and other services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple Arcade and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services. The availability of Apple Arcade games across devices varies based on hardware and software compatibility. Not all Apple Arcade games are available on Mac and Apple TV. Some content may not be available in all areas. See the Apple Support article Apple Arcade game availability across devices.

Subscribe to Apple Arcade

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Arcade, then tap the subscription button.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Share Apple Arcade with family members

When you subscribe to Apple Arcade or Apple One, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple Arcade with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple Arcade is available to them the first time they open the Apple Games app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple Arcade or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the

group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple Arcade with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or (if you're the family group organizer) stop using Family Sharing.

Play Apple Arcade games on your Apple devices

If you subscribe to Apple Arcade, you can play and access your game progress on every compatible device where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. See the Apple Support article Access your Apple Arcade gameplay data on all of your devices.

Change or cancel your Apple Arcade subscription

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Subscriptions.
3. Tap Apple Arcade or Apple One, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you cancel your subscription, you can't play any Apple Arcade games, even if you downloaded them to your device.

You can resubscribe to play Apple Arcade games again and regain access to your gameplay data. If you wait too long, some of your gameplay data may not be supported after you resubscribe.

See also

Find and download games in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Play with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Previous
Find and download games

Next
Connect with friends in the Apple Games app

Table of Contents

Set up your Game Center profile in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Game Center is Apple's social gaming service that lets you connect with friends, track and compare scores and achievements, compete with other players in challenges, and invite friends to multiplayer games. In the Apple Games app, you can personalize your Game Center profile, manage who can connect with you, and more.

Note: To use the Apple Games app, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account.

Set up your Game Center profile

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Continue, then tap Continue again.
3. Do the following to customize your player profile:
   - *Choose your avatar:* Tap , then select an avatar.
   - *Create a nickname:* To choose a nickname that your friends will see when you play games together, tap Nickname, then enter a name or choose one of the suggestions.
   - *Choose who can see your game activity:* Tap an option.
4. Tap Continue.

You can also set up your Game Center profile by going to the Settings app, then tapping Game Center. Turn on Game Center, then customize your player profile.

Edit your Game Center profile

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your avatar in the top-right corner, then tap Edit Profile.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Edit your avatar:* Tap ✎, select an avatar, then tap ✓.
   - *Edit your nickname:* Tap your current nickname, enter a name or choose one of the suggestions, then tap ✓.

4. When you're finished, tap ✓.

You can also edit your Game Center profile by going to the Settings app ⚙, tapping Game Center, then tapping Customize Profile.

See also

Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone

Play with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Previous
Get started with the Apple Games app

Next
Find and download games

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Connect with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone

It's more fun to play games with friends. In the Apple Games app, you can invite friends, see friend requests, and more.

Add friends

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Friends, then tap .
3. Find a contact by entering their name, then tap Invite.
4. Tap to send the invitation using the Messages app.

You can also add a friend in the Contacts app. Open their contact card, then tap Add Friend on Game Center.

Respond to friend requests

If you get a friend request from a contact in the Apple Games app, there are a number of ways you can respond:

- *In the Apple Games app:* Tap your avatar, then tap Friend Requests.
- *In the Messages app:* Tap the friend request link.

- *In the Settings app*: Tap Game Center, then tap Friend Requests.

See your friends' recent activity

You can see your friends' shared gaming history, compare achievements, and send friends invite links and party codes.

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Friends.
3. In Friends & Groups, scroll down to see your friends' recent activity.

You can also see your friends' profiles and recent activity by going to the Settings app, tapping Game Center, then tapping All Friends.

Report a user or remove a friend

You can report a user for cheating, an inappropriate picture or nickname, or another problem. You can also remove someone from your Friends list.

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your avatar in the top right, then tap All Friends.
3. Tap the friend you want to report or remove, tap •••, then choose Report Friend or Remove Friend.

See also

Play with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Change game-related settings on iPhone

Previous
Subscribe to Apple Arcade

Next
Play with friends in the Apple Games app

Table of Contents

Play with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone

With the Apple Games app, you can send friend requests, compete on leaderboards, and play with friends during a FaceTime call.

Challenge friends

In supported games with Game Center leaderboards, you can create a challenge to compete with friends for a high score or specific goal. Challenges create a shared competition within your group, turning single-player games into friendly showdowns. You choose the game, select friends to invite, and track everyone's results as they complete the challenge.

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Friends, then tap Challenge Your Friends.
3. Select a game, then choose any of the following options:
   - *Number of tries:* Tap 1 Try, 3 Tries, or Unlimited.
   - *Challenge duration:* Tap 1 Day, 3 Days, or 1 Week.
   - *Add Players:* Tap Players, search for a contact or a friend's Game Center nickname, select the player, then tap Continue.
4. Tap Start.

To leave a challenge, select the game, tap •••, tap Leave Challenge, then tap Leave Challenge again.

Play games with friends during FaceTime calls

You can find and download games in the App Store that support multiplayer gaming with Game Center during a FaceTime call using SharePlay. During the call, open a supported multiplayer game, tap Start SharePlay, then follow the onscreen instructions. See Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime.

You can also use FaceTime's screen sharing feature to play any game while on a call. See Share your screen in a FaceTime call.

Use AirDrop to invite people to a multiplayer game

You can use AirDrop to invite nearby friends to multiplayer games that support Game Center.

1. Open the game you want to play on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to the screen where you invite friends.
3. Hold the display of your iPhone a few centimeters from the top of the other person's iPhone or Apple Watch.

   A glow emerges from both devices to indicate a connection is being made.
4. Continue holding your devices near each other until the game appears on the other person's screen.

See also

Find and download games in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Connect a game controller to iPhone

Previous
Connect with friends in the Apple Games app

Next
Manage your game library

Helpful? Yes No

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Connect a game controller to iPhone

You can connect a compatible game controller to your iPhone through Bluetooth® or a wired connection. You can customize the buttons and even add a second controller to get help from a friend.

Pair a Bluetooth game controller

1. Follow the instructions that came with the controller to put it in discovery mode.
2. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
3. Tap Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then tap the name of the device.

See the Apple Support article Connect a wireless game controller to your Apple device.

Connect a wired game controller

You can connect a compatible wired game controller to your iPhone. Depending on your iPhone model and controller, you may need an adapter (sold separately). Follow the instructions that came with your controller.

Customize the game controller buttons

After you pair or connect a compatible game controller, you can customize the buttons for supported games from the Apple Games app.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Game Controller.
3. Select the controller you want to customize, then do any of the following

    - *Customize default controls:* Tap Default.
    - *Customize controls for a specific game:* Tap Add Game, select the game, then tap Default for the selected game.
4. Select the actions and gestures you want to use with your controller.

Add a second game controller and get help from a friend

With Buddy Controller, iPhone lets two controllers work together to control the same player character, so a friend can help you navigate through challenging parts of a game. Buddy Controller is compatible with any game that supports game controllers.

1. Connect two compatible game controllers to iPhone through Bluetooth or a wired connection.
2. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
3. Tap General, then tap Game Controller.
4. Tap Buddy Controller.
5. Choose the primary controller, then choose the secondary controller.

See also

Find and download games in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Subscribe to Apple Arcade in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Table of Contents

View and manage your game library in the Apple Games app on iPhone

In the Apple Games app, you can browse Apple Arcade titles, view your downloaded games, check in-game events, and track your achievements in your library. You can also sort and filter your games to quickly find what you're looking for.

Note: Apple Arcade and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions.

View and organize your games

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then do any of the following:
   - Browse the list of games under Your Games.
   - Tap to sort games by name or recent activity, and filter by Controller Support, Installed Games, or Apple Arcade.

See in-game events or recent updates

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Events.
3. Select the game you want to see in-game events or updates for.

You can also see events and updates when you search for a game or open its game page in the Home or Search tab.

Check your achievements for a game

Track your Game Center achievements for supported games. You can view your progress and see what goals you've completed.

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Achievements.
3. To organize your achievements, tap , then choose an option.
4. Select the game you want to check achievements for.

Browse Apple Arcade games

If you subscribe to Apple Arcade or to Apple One, you can also browse Apple Arcade games in your Library.

1. Go to the Apple Games app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Apple Arcade.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:

   - Turn Show Previews on or off.
   - Sort games by Release Date, Last Update, or Name.
   - Filter games by Category, Controller Support, Multiplayer, or Age Rating.

See also

Find and download games in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Previous
Play with friends in the Apple Games app

Next
Connect a game controller

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

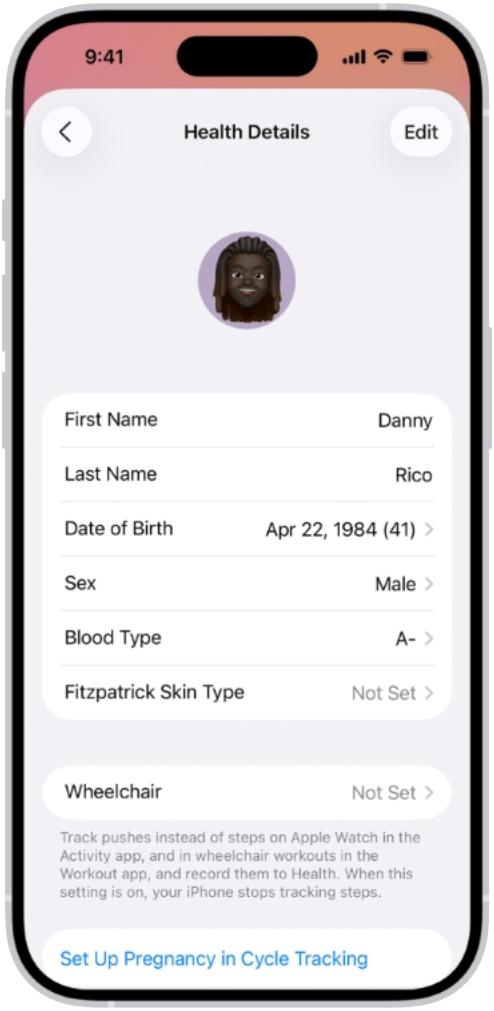
Fill out your Health Details in Health on iPhone

To personalize your experience, add your name, date of birth, sex, height, weight, and other basic information to Health Details. To help first responders and others in case you have a medical emergency, create a Medical ID that contains information about medical conditions, medications, allergies, blood type, emergency contacts, and more. To better manage your health with the help of the Health app, periodically review the Health Checklist.

Fill out the Health Details screen

When you first open Health, you're asked to provide basic health information about yourself. If you don't supply all of the requested information, you can add it later on the Health Details screen.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Details, then tap Edit.



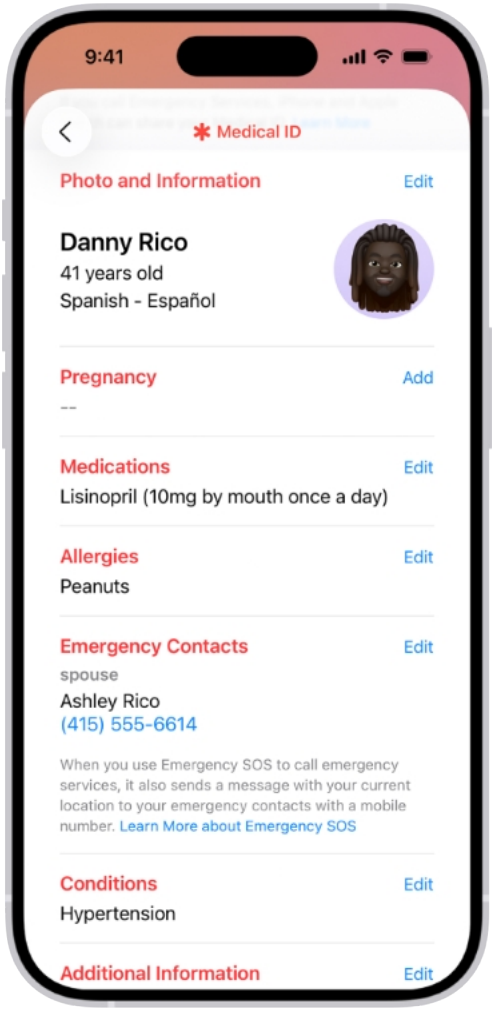
4. To make a change, tap a field.
5. When you're finished, tap ✓, then swipe down to exit.

Update your height and weight

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Details, then tap Edit.
4. Tap Height or Weight, then adjust.
5. When you're finished, tap ✓, then swipe down to exit.

Create a Medical ID

First responders and others can view critical medical information about you in your Medical ID, even while your iPhone is locked. See Set up and view your Medical ID.



Review your Health Checklist

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Checklist.
4. To turn on or learn more about an item in the list, tap it.
5. When you're finished, tap .

See also

Get started with Health on iPhone

Intro to Health data on iPhone

Log a pregnancy in Health on iPhone

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change game-related settings on iPhone

You can customize your gaming experience on iPhone by changing settings for the Apple Games app and Game Center. These settings let you control notifications, friend requests, multiplayer gaming, and content restrictions.

Change Apple Games app settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap Games, then do any of the following:

   - *Show or hide relevant content by combining your gaming activity:* Turn on Combine Gaming Activity.
   - *Reset the identifier used to report Games usage statistics to Apple:* Tap Reset Identifier.

Change Game Center settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Game Center, then do any of the following:

   - *View friends:* Tap All Friends.

- *Accept or decline friend requests:* Tap Friend Requests.
- *Allow or disallow apps to access your list of Game Center friends:* Tap Share Friends List, then turn Share Friends List on or off.
- *Allow Game Center friends to find you with the email and phone number associated with your Apple Account:* Turn on Help Friends Find You.
- *Manage activity sharing:* Choose Everyone, Friends Only, or Only You to specify who can see your profile, achievement progress, leaderboard updates, and recently played games.
- *Allow invitations from nearby players:* Turn on Nearby Players to allow nearby Game Center players in the same game to invite you to a multiplayer game over Wi-Fi or Bluetooth®.
- *Sign out of Game Center:* Tap Sign Out.

Change Game Center restrictions

You can set Game Center restrictions to create a safer, more controlled gaming experience by limiting features like friend requests, multiplayer games, and in-app purchases.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap App Store, Media, Web & Games, scroll down to Game Center, then set any of the following restrictions:
    - Multiplayer Games
    - Adding Friends
    - Connect with Friends
    - Screen Recording
    - Nearby Multiplayer

- Private Messaging
- Profile Privacy Changes
- Avatar & Nickname Changes

See also

View and manage your game library in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Connect with friends in the Apple Games app on iPhone

Previous
Connect a game controller

Next
Report a problem with a game

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Report a problem with a game in the Apple Games app on iPhone

You can report a problem with a game that you downloaded from the Apple Games app on your iPhone. You can also request a refund.

1. On your iPhone, go to reportaproblem.apple.com, then sign in to your Apple Account.
2. Tap “I’d like to,” then choose an option from the pop-up menu.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

See also

Get started with the Apple Games app on iPhone

See your purchases and subscriptions in the App Store on iPhone

Change game-related settings on iPhone

Previous
Change game-related settings

Next
Get started with Health

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Select version:

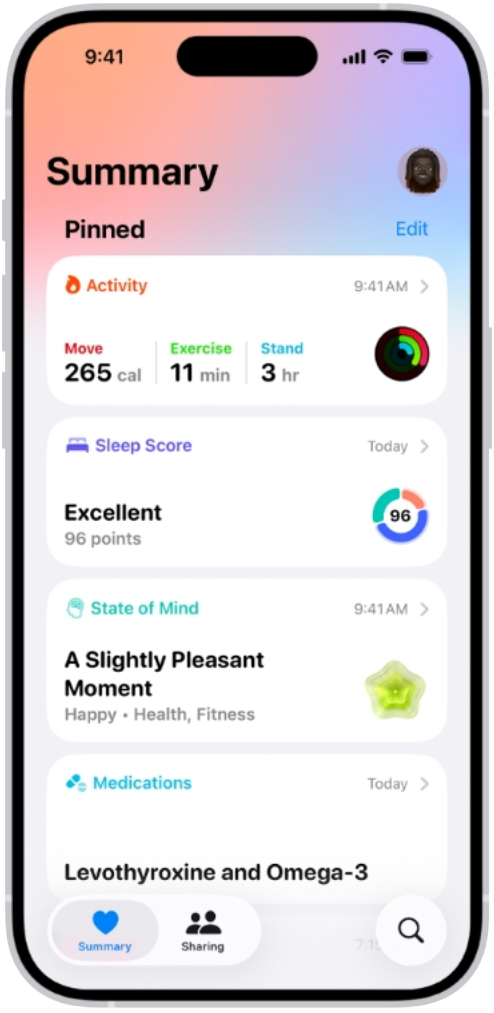
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Intro to Health data on iPhone

The Health app securely stores your health information from iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch, as well as from compatible third-party apps and connected devices. You can also manually enter data for body measurements, symptoms, menstrual cycle information, and more.

Siri: On supported models, ask Siri something like, “What’s my heart rate?” or “How far have I walked today?” (not available in all languages or regions). Learn how to use Siri.



Health data from iPhone

iPhone automatically stores and analyzes valuable health data, including the following:

- *Steps, flights of stairs, and other walking data:* Built-in sensors on your iPhone capture the number of steps you take, the number of flights of stairs you climb, your walking speed, and more. You can browse highlights, trends, and details about this data in the Activity category in Health.
- *Mobility data:* iPhone stores important mobility metrics such as walking asymmetry, double support time, and more. Over time, as you walk with iPhone in your pocket or wear it near your waist, these metrics are used to calculate and record your walking steadiness. You can browse this data in the Mobility category. You can also receive a notification and share your notification with others if your steadiness becomes low enough to put you at increased risk of falling in the next 12 months.
- *Headphone audio levels:* Audio level measurements from connected AirPods, EarPods, or other compatible headphones are automatically stored in Health. You can review this data in the Hearing category to help you understand your headphone listening habits.
- *Sleep history:* If you set up a sleep schedule in Health, iPhone estimates the periods you're lying in bed with the intention to sleep. You can review this data in the Sleep category to help you meet your sleep goals.
- *Health records from your healthcare providers:* You can set up automatic downloads of health records of your allergies, medical conditions, medications, and more from supported healthcare organizations (not available in all countries or regions). You can browse these records in Health.

Health data from Apple Watch

After you pair iPhone with Apple Watch, periodic heart rate and blood oxygen measurements are automatically sent from Apple Watch to Health, where you can browse highlights, trends, and details in the Heart and Respiratory categories. You can also set up Apple Watch to send additional information to Health, including the following:

- *Exercise minutes and other activity metrics:* You can view these metrics in the Activity category in Health on iPhone.
- *A history of time in daylight (Apple Watch SE 2nd generation, Apple Watch Series 6 or later, and all Apple Watch Ultra models):* The ambient light sensor in Apple Watch estimates how much time you've spent in daylight. You can view details in the Other Data category in Health on iPhone.
- *Notifications about high or low heart rates, low cardio fitness (watchOS 7.2 or later), and irregular heart rhythms (not available in all countries or regions):* You can view the details about these notifications in the Heart category.

- *Environmental noise levels and notifications about loud sounds:* You can view the details about noise in your environment in the Hearing category.
- *Overnight health metrics in the Vitals app:* You can view overnight health metrics—heart rate, respiratory rate, wrist temperature, blood oxygen, and sleep duration—to get a better understanding of your daily health status. If you wear your Apple Watch to sleep for multiple nights, the Vitals app establishes a typical range for each of your health metrics. If multiple metrics are outside your typical range, you'll receive a notification along with context for factors that may be involved—like medications or illness, for example. You can view the details about your overnight vitals in the Vitals category.
- *A history of hard falls (Apple Watch SE and Apple Watch Series 4 and later):* In the Other Data category, you can view details about the number of times fallen.
- *Sleep score in the Sleep app:* You can view a sleep score—a score based on estimates of how long you slept, the consistency of when you fell asleep relative to your recent history, and the amount and duration of awake periods during sleep. Your sleep score appears around 15 minutes after you wake up. You can also view the amount of sleep you had the night before, the time spent in each sleep stage, and your sleep average over the last 14 days. You can view details about your sleep score in the Sleep category.
- *Notifications of possible hypertension (Apple Watch Series 9, Apple Watch Ultra 2 and later):* You can wear Apple Watch to analyze your heart data, which can be used to detect signs of possible hypertension. If your Apple Watch detects patterns of hypertension, you receive a notification to discuss them with your healthcare provider. You are also prompted to use a third-party blood pressure cuff to take measurements over a 7-day period. You can view details about hypertension notifications in the Heart category.

To learn more about health data from Apple Watch, see Get started with health features, Time spent in daylight, Measure noise levels, Track your vitals, Manage Fall Detection, View your sleep score and sleep history, and Receive hypertension notifications in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Health data from other apps and devices

As you set up health and fitness apps that you download from the App Store, follow their onscreen instructions to allow them to share data with Health.

To store data from devices like blood pressure monitors and weight scales, follow their setup instructions. Bluetooth® devices need to be paired with iPhone.

Note: You can change health data permissions for apps and devices at any time.

Data that you add manually

You can manually enter data about your menstrual cycles, medications, body measurements, and more.

- *Add information about your menstrual cycles:* By logging menstrual cycle information, you can get period and fertile window predictions. See Log menstrual cycle information in Health.
- *Add your medications, vitamins, and supplements:* By adding these items, you can get reminders to take them and learn more about them. See Track your medications in Health.
- *Set up a sleep schedule:* Scheduling regular times for getting to bed and waking up can help you meet your sleep goals. See Set up a Sleep Focus schedule in Health.
- *Add information to a Medical ID:* You can provide information about your medical conditions, medications, emergency contacts, and more in an emergency Medical ID. First responders and others can view this critical information directly on your iPhone, even while it's locked. See Set up and view your Medical ID.
- *Add information to other Health categories:* Tap Search at the bottom right of Health, tap a category, tap Chevron Right for the data you want to update, then tap Add Data at the top right.

Important: iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch aren't medical devices. See Important safety information for iPhone.

See also

View your data in Health on iPhone

Share your data in Health on iPhone

Previous
Fill out your Health Details

Next
View your health data

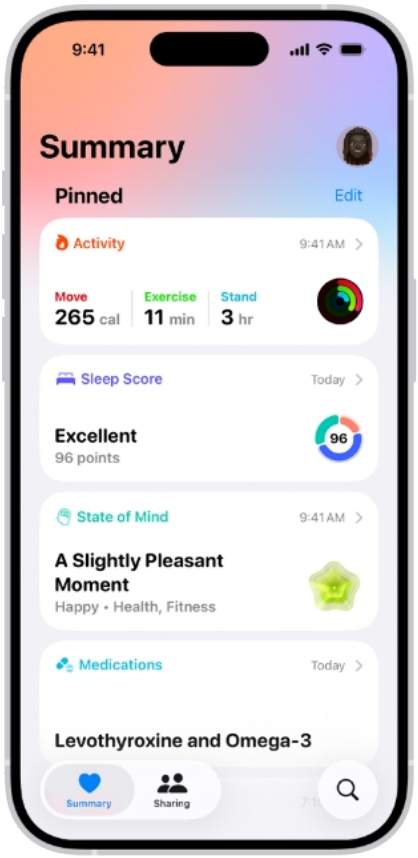
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get started with Health on iPhone

The Health app on iPhone stores health data from a number of different sources: your iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, and compatible apps and third-party devices. You can set up a sleep schedule, check your headphone levels, schedule when to take your medications, and much more.

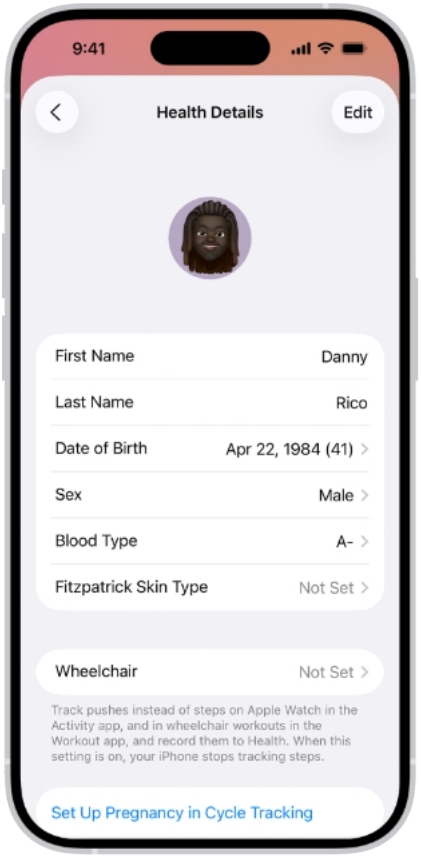


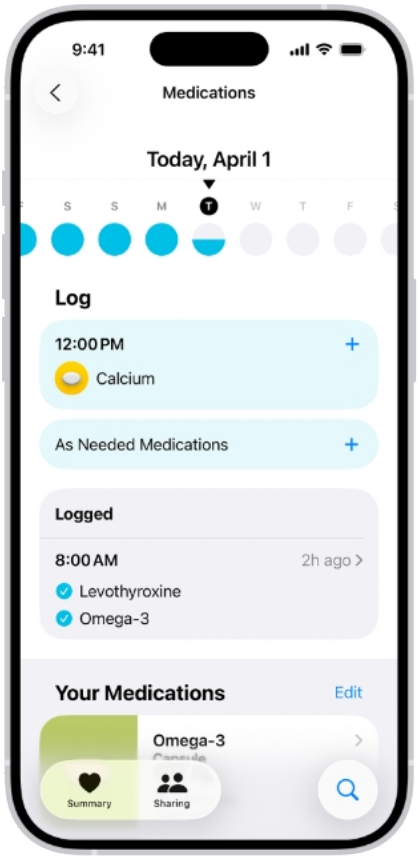
Find your health data in one place

iPhone automatically stores and analyzes valuable health details, including mobility data, sleep history, and even health records from your medical providers. You can also manually add information about medications you're taking, your menstrual cycle, and more. To display all of your health data, go to the Health app and scroll down to see highlights.

Fill out your health details

To personalize your experience, add your name, date of birth, sex, and other basic information to Health Details. To edit your health details, tap Summary, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Health Details, then tap Edit.



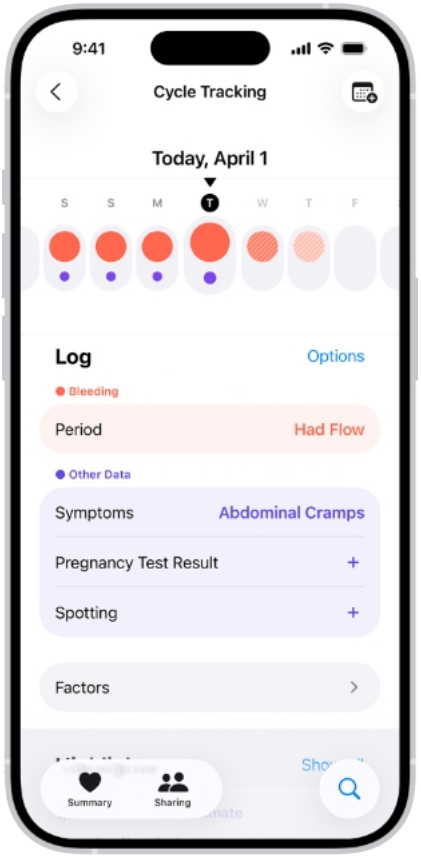


Schedule your medications

Create a list of the medications you're taking, schedule when to take them, and log when you do. To add a new medication, tap Search, tap Medications, then tap Add a Medication.

Track your menstrual cycle

With Cycle Tracking, you can log your period, record symptoms like cramps, and track cycle factors like lactation. You can also use it to help predict when your next period or fertile window will begin. To set up Cycle Tracking, tap Search, tap Cycle Tracking, then tap Set Up Cycle Tracking.



Want to learn more?

- View health records in Health on iPhone
- Fill out your Health Details in Health on iPhone
- Log menstrual cycle information in Health on iPhone
- Set up a sleep schedule in Health on iPhone
- Log your state of mind in Health on iPhone
- Share your data in Health on iPhone
- Back up your Health data in iCloud on iPhone

Previous
Report a problem with a game

Next
Fill out your Health Details

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

View health records in Health on iPhone

After you set up health record downloads from a healthcare provider, your records are securely and automatically downloaded to iPhone, where they're available for viewing in the Health app.

View your health records

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom right to display the Health Categories screen, then do one of the following:
   - Tap the search field, then enter the name of a health record category (such as clinical vitals) or a type of data (such as blood pressure).
   - Scroll down, then tap a category (such as Allergies or Clinical Vitals) below Health Records.
   - Scroll down, then tap the name of a specific organization.

To see more details, tap any section where you see >.

Note: If you don't see health records that you expect from a healthcare provider, make sure that you're signed in to your account with the provider. Tap , scroll to your list of accounts, tap the name of your provider, then sign in if asked.

Pin important lab results

You can pin results so that they appear at the top of the Lab Results screen for quick access.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Search at the bottom right, scroll down, then tap Lab Results.
3. Do any of the following:

   - Swipe left on a result, then tap Pin.
   - Touch and hold a result, then tap Pin this Lab.

Share your health records with other apps

Third-party apps can request access to your health records. Before you grant access, be sure that you trust the app with your records.

1. To grant access, choose which categories to share—such as allergies, medications, or immunizations—when asked.
2. Choose whether to grant access to your current and future health records or to only your current records.

   If you choose to share only your current records, you're asked to grant access whenever new records are downloaded to your iPhone.

To stop sharing health records with the app, turn off its permission to read data from Health.

Delete an organization and its records from iPhone

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Records, tap the name of an organization, then tap Remove Account.

See also

Share health data with your doctor

Monitor your walking steadiness in Health on iPhone

Table of Contents

Share your data in Health on iPhone

You can share health data stored in the Health app—such as health alerts and trends—with friends, family, and others caring for you.

Share health data with someone

People you share health data with can also view the health notifications you receive, including high heart rate and irregular rhythm notifications. You can also share notifications for significant trends, such as a steep decline in activity.

Note: To share health data with someone, you need to include them in your contacts.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then do one of the following:
   - *Set up sharing for the first time:* Tap Share with Someone.
   - *Share with an additional contact:* Tap "Add another person," then tap Next.
3. Use the search field to find someone in your contacts list, then tap their contact information to select them.
4. Tap See Suggested Topics or Set Up Manually, then choose topics to share.
5. Scroll down to see all topics on a screen, choose options, then tap Next to see the next screen.
6. Tap Share, then tap Done.

You receive a notification when your invitation is accepted.

Share health data with your doctor

You can share health data (such as heart rate, exercise minutes, hours of sleep, lab results, and heart health notifications) with your doctors. Doctors view the data in a dashboard in their health records systems (U.S. only; on systems that support Health app data Share with Provider).

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Set up sharing for the first time:* Tap "Share with your doctor."
   - *Share with an additional provider:* Tap "Share with another doctor."
4. Tap Next, then select one of the suggested providers, or use Search to find your provider.
5. If Connect to Account appears, tap it, enter the user name and password you use for the patient web portal for that account, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   In addition to sharing your health data, connecting to your account also causes your health records for that account to download to Health.
6. Choose topics to share with your doctor.
7. Scroll down to see all topics on a screen, then tap Next to see the next screen.
8. Tap Share, then tap Done.

Review or change the data you're sharing with others

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the name of a person or a healthcare provider.
4. Scroll down, then tap View Shared Data.
5. Make any changes, then tap Done.

Stop sharing data with a contact or a provider

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the name of a person or a healthcare provider.
4. Tap Stop Sharing or Remove Account.

Note: If you start sharing data with someone, simply removing them from Contacts doesn't stop the information from being shared.

Share health and fitness data with apps and devices

You can give other apps permission to share health and fitness data with Health. For example, if you install a workout app, its exercise data can appear in Health. The workout app can also read and make use of data (such as your heart rate and weight) shared by other devices and apps. If you didn't give an app permission to share data with Health when you set up the app, you can give permission later. You can also remove permission from an app.

To share your records from healthcare providers with apps, see Share your health records with other apps.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Below Privacy, tap Apps or Devices.

   The screen lists the items that requested access to Health data.
4. To change the access for an item, tap it, then turn on or off permission to write data to—or read data from—Health.

Share your health and fitness data in XML format

You can export all of your health and fitness data from Health in XML format, which is a common format for sharing data between apps.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Export All Health Data, then choose a method for sharing your data.

See also

Share your medication list

Intro to Health data on iPhone

Sync a third-party workout app to Fitness on iPhone

View data shared by others in Health on iPhone

Previous
View your health data

Next
View health data shared by others

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

View your data in Health on iPhone

You can view your health and fitness information in one place. For example, you can check whether your metrics change over time, and see how well you're meeting goals for activity, sleep, mindfulness, and more.

Customize your pinned health categories on the Summary screen

You can pin and arrange the health categories that are most important to you, like Medications, Heart Rate, Steps, and more.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap Edit next to Pinned.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Pin a health category:* Tap next to a category.
   - *Unpin a health category:* Tap next to a category.
   - *Reorder the health categories in your Pinned list:* Drag next to an category up or down.
4. When you're finished, tap .

View your highlights

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then scroll down to Highlights to see highlights of your recent health and fitness data.
3. Do the following:

- *View more data about a highlight:* Tap its graph.
- *View all highlights:* Tap Show All Highlights.

View your health trends

To help you keep track of your health data over time, Health can alert you to significant changes in types of data like resting heart rate, number of steps, and amount of sleep. Trend lines show you how much these metrics have changed and for how long.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then scroll down to Trends to view any recent trends.
3. If Health has detected trends, you can do the following:
   - *View more data about a trend:* Tap its graph.
   - *View all trends:* Tap Show All Health Trends.

To receive notifications about your health trends, tap Summary, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Notifications, then turn on Trends.

View trends, highlights, and details for a specific health category

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search at the bottom right to display the Health Categories screen, then do one of the following:
   - Tap a category. (To see all categories, scroll up and down.)
   - Tap the search field, then type the name of a category (such as Mobility) or a specific type of data (such as Walking Speed).
3. Depending on the data type, you may be able to do the following:
   - *View details about any of the data:* Tap >.
   - *See weekly, monthly, and yearly views of the data:* Tap the tabs at the top of the screen.

- *Manually enter data:* Tap Add Data in the top-right corner of the screen.
- *Pin to the Summary screen:* Tap Pin to Summary. (You may need to scroll down.)
- *View which apps and devices are allowed to share the data:* Below Options, tap Data Sources & Access. (You may need to scroll down.)
- *Delete data:* Tap Show All Data below Options, swipe left on a data record, then tap Delete. To delete all data, tap Edit, then tap Delete All.
- *Change the measurement unit:* Tap Unit below Options, then select a unit.

Learn more about health and fitness

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then scroll down to Get More From Health or Articles.
3. Tap an item to learn more.

When you view the details in many health categories, recommended apps are shown in addition to your data.

See also

Intro to Health data on iPhone

Share your data in Health on iPhone

Previous
Intro to Health data

Next
Share your health data

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Download health records on iPhone

The Health app offers secure access to information about your vaccinations, allergies, conditions, medications, and more (not available in all countries or regions).

You can use a QR code or a link from a healthcare provider or authority to download a test result record, and you can set up automatic downloads for a range of health records from supporting healthcare organizations.

Note: When iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of the health data in the Health app—other than what you add to your Medical ID—is encrypted.

Set up automatic health record downloads from your healthcare provider

Supporting healthcare organizations can securely and automatically download records of your allergies, medical conditions, medications, labs, vaccinations, and more to Health.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Records, then do one of the following:

   - *Set up your first download:* Tap Get Started.
   - *Set up downloads for additional accounts:* Tap Add Account.

   A list of nearby organizations appears. If your organization doesn't appear in the list, enter the name of a clinic, hospital, or other place where you obtain health records. Or enter the name of a city, state, or province to find organizations near there.
4. Tap the name of your organization.
5. Tap Connect Account (below Available to Connect) to go to the sign-in screen for your patient portal.

6. Enter the user name and password you use for the patient web portal of that organization, then follow the onscreen instructions.

After you set up downloads from an organization, you automatically receive new records in Health as they become available.

Note: Your healthcare organization might not appear in this feature. Organizations are added frequently.

See also

View health records in Health on iPhone

Previous
View health data shared by others

Next
View health records

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View data shared by others in Health on iPhone

You can receive notifications about a loved one's health, and you can view data about their activity, mobility, heart rate, and health trends in the Health app.

Invite someone to share health data

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then tap Ask Someone to Share.
3. Choose a sharing option.

The person you selected receives an invitation and can then choose which health information to share. Let the invitee know that you need to be included in their contacts.

Accept an invitation to view another person's health data

1. After the invitation arrives, do one of the following:
   - Tap the invitation, such as on the Lock Screen or in Notification Center.
   - In Health, tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen, then tap View in the invitation at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Accept, then tap Done.

View shared data and quickly respond to it

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the contact card listed below Sharing With You.
4. You can do any of the following:

    - *Quickly respond:* Tap Message, Call, or FaceTime.
    - *See more detail:* Tap an item on the screen.

      If the detail includes chart data, you can start a conversation about it by tapping Message. The chart is included in your message.

Ask another person to share their health data with you

You can ask someone to share their health data with you if they have an iPhone with iOS 15.6 or later or an iPad with iPadOS 17 or later. They control what data they share and when to stop sharing.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Ask Someone to Share, then choose an option.
4. Let your invitee know that you need to be included in their contacts to share with you, and that if they need assistance, sharing instructions are available in Share health data with someone.

See also

Intro to Health data on iPhone

View health records in Health on iPhone

Previous
Share your health data

Next
Download health records

Helpful? Yes No

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View menstrual cycle predictions and history in Health on iPhone

When you log your menstrual cycle, you can check the predicted date for your next period or fertile window, receive notifications about when your next period or fertile window is expected to be approaching, view details about your cycle history, and more.

Note: Health can also use data from Apple Watch to improve the predictions for your period and fertile windows. See Use Cycle Tracking on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

View your cycle timeline

Tap at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

At the top of the screen, a timeline shows the following icons.

Icon	Description
	A predicted period day.
	A predicted day of your fertile window.
	A day you likely ovulated (requires Apple Watch Series 8 or later or any Apple Watch Ultra model to be paired with your iPhone; not available in all regions).
	A day you logged a period.
	A day you added information (for example, noting a headache or cramping).

To select different days, swipe the timeline.

Check the dates for your predicted next period and for your reported last period

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Scroll to Highlights to see when your next period is likely to start.

   If you don’t see the estimate, tap Show All next to Highlights.
4. Scroll to Summary to see the date of your last period and your typical cycle length.

If you don't see a period prediction, make sure you have Period Predictions turned on in Options.

View your cycle history

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

3. To see a summary of your last three cycles, scroll down to Your Cycles.
4. To see summaries of all previous cycles, tap Cycle History.

   To send or a save a PDF of your cycle history, tap Export PDF, tap , then choose an option.
5. To see details about a cycle, tap it.

   To change any details for the cycle, tap Edit.

   To send or a save a PDF of the cycle details, tap Export PDF, tap , then choose an option.

If you receive a Cycle Deviation notification

You can receive a notification if your logged cycle history shows a possible cycle deviation. Irregular periods, infrequent periods, prolonged periods, and persistent spotting are common cycle deviations that may indicate an underlying condition, or may be due to other factors.

When you receive a notification, do the following to review your logged cycle history:

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Review Cycle History in the Possible Cycle Deviation notification.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to confirm, add, or edit the data in your cycle history.

If a cycle deviation is detected, a screen suggests what to do next.

View your cycle summary

You can view a summary of your last menstrual period, typical period length, typical cycle length, ongoing factors, and more.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Scroll down then tap Summary.
4. Scroll to view statistics of your last year of data.

Change cycle tracking notifications, cycle prediction displays, and other options

You can turn off period, fertility, and cycle deviation notifications, hide period and fertility predictions, and more. You can turn these on again at any time.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Scroll down, tap Options, then turn options on or off.

About your health data and privacy

The information you add about yourself in Health is yours to use and share. You can decide what information is stored in Health as well as who can access your data.

When your iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of your health and fitness data in Health, other than your Medical ID, is encrypted. Any health data synced to iCloud is encrypted both in transit and on Apple servers. And if you have a version of iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS (if you're using iPad and Apple Watch for cycle tracking) with default two-factor authentication and a passcode, your health and activity data is stored in a way that Apple can't read it.

This means that when you use the Cycle Tracking feature and two-factor authentication, your health data synced to iCloud is encrypted end to end, and Apple doesn't have the key to decrypt the data and therefore cannot read it.

*For information about the availability of the retrospective ovulation estimates feature, see watchOS Feature Availability.

See also

Log a pregnancy in Health on iPhone

Track your medications in Health on iPhone

Apple Support article: Track your period with Cycle Tracking

Previous
Log menstrual cycle information

Next
Log a pregnancy

Table of Contents

Intro to Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to securely add, control, and automate HomeKit and Matter-enabled accessories, such as lights, locks, and thermostats. When you set up security cameras that support HomeKit Secure Video, you can capture video, and receive a notification when a camera recognizes someone or when a package is left at the door. You can also open a compatible lock with a home key, group multiple speakers to play the same audio, and send and receive Intercom messages on supported devices.

You can create automations to run automatically at certain times, or when you activate a particular accessory (for example, when you unlock the front door). You can also control your home remotely with the aid of a home hub—an Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod speakers. This lets you, and others you invite, securely control your home while you're away.

Note: Matter-enabled accessories require a home hub, such as a HomePod speaker or Apple TV 4K. Thread-based accessories require a Thread-enabled home hub such as Apple TV 4K, HomePod (2nd generation), HomePod mini, or a compatible third-party Thread border router. Thread-enabled iPhone devices are able to locally pair and manage Thread accessories, which may require an update from the accessory manufacturer.

Home overview

The Home app lets you easily navigate and control your accessories. In the Home app, tap the Home tab to show the following sections:

- *Categories:* Tap a category such as Climate, Lights, Security, Speakers & TVs, or Water to show all related accessories on one screen, organized by room.
- *Cameras:* Video from up to four cameras can appear below Cameras. Swipe left to see more cameras.
- *Scenes:* Create scenes to control multiple accessories with a tap or Siri request—tap a scene to close the blinds and turn on the lights in the evening, for example.

- *Favorites:* Add to Favorites the accessories you use most often to quickly control them from the Home tab.
- *Rooms:* Accessories are organized by room, helping you find just the accessory you need.



Edit the Home tab

You can organize the Home tab in ways that suit you best.

Tap ⋯, then do any of the following.

- *Rearrange items:* Select Edit Home View, then drag tiles to a different position. Tap Done when you're finished.
- *Reorder sections:* To change the way sections such as Favorites or Scenes are ordered on the Home tab, choose Reorder Sections, then drag ☰ next to a section to a new position. Tap Done when you're finished.
- *Resize icons:* Select Edit Home View, tap a tile, tap ⤡, then tap Done.

To learn more about how to create and accessorize a smart home with your Apple devices, tap Discover at the bottom of the screen.

See also

Upgrade to the new version of Apple Home on iPhone

Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone

Previous
Back up your Health data

Next
Upgrade to the new version of Apple Home

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Log menstrual cycle information in Health on iPhone

You can log menstrual cycle information to get period and fertile window predictions.

Siri: On supported models, ask Siri something like, “Log that my period started today” (not available in all languages or regions). Learn how to use Siri.

Set up cycle tracking

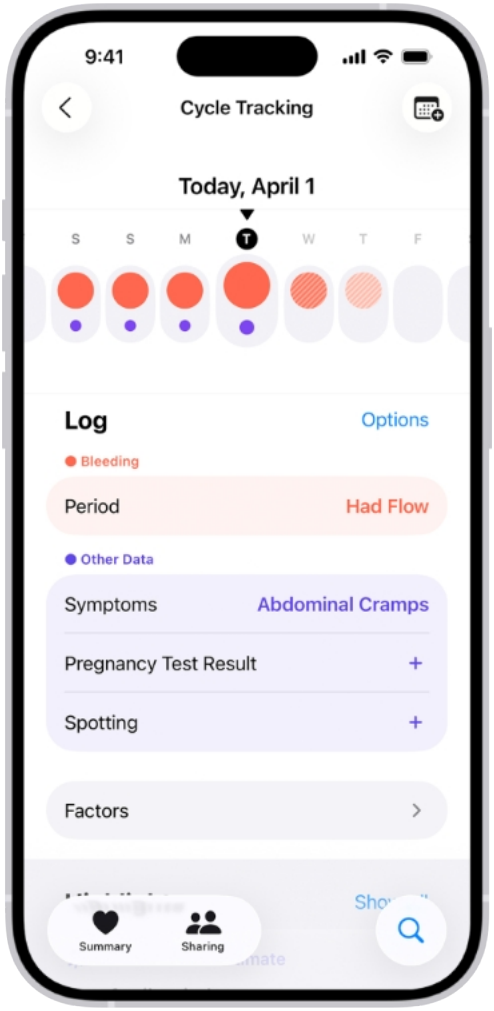
1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   To help improve predictions for your period and fertile windows, enter the requested information.

Log your cycle information

You can log the days of a period and track information like symptoms, spotting, basal body temperature, and more.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Do any of the following:



- *Log a period day:* Tap a day in the timeline at the top of the screen.
- *Log multiple period days:* Tap at the top right, select days from the monthly calendar, then tap .
- *Log the flow level for a day:* Swipe the timeline to select a day, tap Period (below Bleeding), choose an option, then tap Done.
- *Log symptoms, spotting, or other information:* Swipe the timeline to select a day, tap a category (below Other Data), supply the information, then tap Done.

To add categories to the data logging screen, tap Options next to Log, then choose from the categories below Log.

Note: You can use Apple Watch to help log your cycle information. See Use Cycle Tracking on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Edit your log

Your logged information appears in the timeline at the top of the screen, where a solid red circle represents a day you logged a period and a purple dot represents a day you logged with additional information. Data for the day selected in the timeline appears in the Cycle Log (below the timeline). To change your logged information, do the following:

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Swipe the timeline to select a day.
4. Tap a category of data (such as Menstruation or Symptoms), make your changes, then tap Done.

To unmark a period day, tap its solid red circle in the timeline.

Manage cycle factors

When you enter information about pregnancy, lactation, and contraceptive use, that information is used to help manage your cycle predictions.

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Tap Factors, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a factor:* Tap, select a factor, tap Started if you need to change the start date, then tap.
   - *Change the end date for a current factor:* Tap the factor, tap Ended, select a date, then tap.
   - *Delete a current factor:* Tap the factor, then tap Delete Factor From Health.

About your health data and privacy

The information you add about yourself in Health is yours to use and share. You can decide what information is stored in Health as well as who can access your data.

When your iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of your health and fitness data in Health, other than your Medical ID, is encrypted. Any health data synced to iCloud is encrypted both in transit and on Apple servers. And if you have a version of iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS (if you're using iPad and Apple Watch for cycle tracking) with

default two-factor authentication and a passcode, your health and activity data is stored in a way that Apple can't read it.

This means that when you use the Cycle Tracking feature and two-factor authentication, your health data synced to iCloud is encrypted end-to-end, and Apple doesn't have the key to decrypt the data and therefore cannot read it.

See also

View menstrual cycle predictions and history in Health on iPhone

Apple Support article: Track your period with Cycle Tracking

Previous
Monitor your walking steadiness

Next
View menstrual cycle predictions and history

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

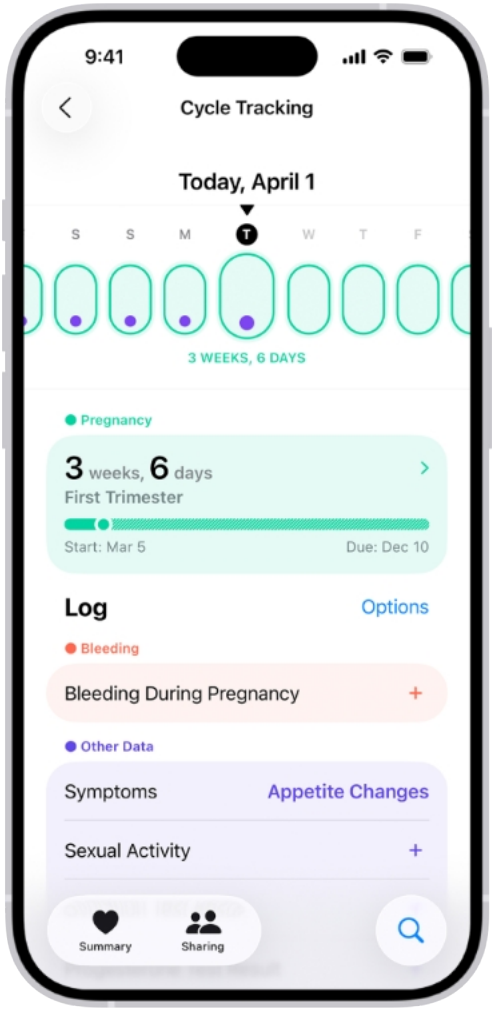
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Log a pregnancy in Health on iPhone

When you log a pregnancy in the Health app, you can view your gestational age and log the symptoms frequently experienced during pregnancy. The Health app on iPhone and the Cycle Tracking app on Apple Watch can help you to better understand your data during pregnancy. Both apps make adjustments and recommendations to reflect changes in your physical and mental health.



Log a pregnancy

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Scroll down, tap Factors, then tap +.
4. Tap Pregnancy, then tap Begin.
5. Do one of the following:

    - *Log the first day of your last period:* Tap Last Menstrual Period.
    - *Log an estimated due date:* Tap Estimated Due Date.
    - *Log how far along the pregnancy is in weeks:* Tap Estimated Gestational Age.
    - *Log when the embryo was transferred during IVF:* Tap Embryo Transfer Date.

    Note: To log a previous pregnancy, tap Log a Past Pregnancy.
6. Tap Next, follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Next.

7. Tap Next, then do the following:

    - *Turn on mental health questionnaire reminders (optional):* Tap Turn On Notifications.
    - *Add your pregnancy to your Medical ID (optional):* Tap Turn On Notifications.
    - *Review your medication information:* Tap Learn More below a medication to learn about any potential impact on your pregnancy, then tap Next.

8. Review the Cycle Timeline, then tap Done.

Note: You can also log a pregnancy in your Health Details. Tap Summary, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Health Details, then tap Set Up Pregnancy in Cycle Tracking.

While logging a pregnancy, you get a variety of recommendations of notifications that should be turned on or off during and after pregnancy:

- *Walking Steadiness:* Recommended to be turned on. Walking Steadiness can alert you more quickly during your third trimester, when the risk of falling can increase.
- *High Heart Rate (Apple Watch only):* If your high heart rate notification threshold is set below 120 beats per minute (bpm), you're asked to review and adjust it.
- *Cardio Fitness (Apple Watch only):* Cardio Fitness notifications are recommended to be turned off during and until 12 weeks after the end of your pregnancy.

To review your health notification settings, see Review your Health Checklist.

Log bleeding and other symptoms

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Swipe to select a day, then do any of the following:

    - *Log bleeding:* Tap Bleeding During Pregnancy, tap Had Bleeding, select a bleeding level, then tap Done.

      Note: When you log bleeding during your pregnancy, you receive a notification recommending that you contact your doctor or care team.

    - *Log symptoms or other information:* Swipe the timeline to select a day, tap a category (below Other Data), supply the information, then tap Done.

To add categories to the data logging screen, tap Options next to Log, then choose from the categories below Log.

View the pregnancy cycle timeline

Tap 🔍 at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

At the top of the screen, a timeline shows the following icons.

Icon	Description
	A day you logged a pregnancy.
	A future day where you may still be pregnant.
	The day of your estimated due date.

To select different days, swipe the timeline.

Edit your pregnancy details

1. Go to the Health app ❤️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap 🔍 at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Tap the Pregnancy area, then do any of the following:
    - *Change the estimation method:* Tap Change, then tap an estimation method.
    - *Edit your estimation method:* Tap a field to make a change.
    - *Delete your pregnancy information:* Tap Delete Factor from Health.
4. When you're finished, tap ✅.

About your health data and privacy

The information you add about yourself in Health is yours to use and share. You can decide what information is stored in Health as well as who can access your data.

If you choose to add a pregnancy to Medical ID, your pregnancy status will be accessible on the Lock Screen if Show When Locked is turned on. Your pregnancy status will also be shared with first responders during an emergency call if Share During Emergency Call is turned on. You can change your Medical ID settings at any time by going to your Health app Profile. You can remove or update your pregnancy status in Medical ID if your status changes.

When your iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of your health and fitness data in Health, other than your Medical ID, is encrypted. Any health data synced to iCloud is encrypted both in transit and on Apple servers. And if you have a version of iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS (if you're using iPad and Apple Watch for cycle tracking) with default two-factor authentication and a passcode, your health and activity data is stored in a way that Apple can't read it.

This means that when you use the Cycle Tracking feature and two-factor authentication, your health data synced to iCloud is encrypted end to end, and Apple doesn't have the key to decrypt the data and therefore cannot read it.

See also

Fill out your Health Details in Health on iPhone

Set up and view your Medical ID

Take a mental health assessment in Health on iPhone

Previous
View menstrual cycle predictions and history

Next
Track your medications

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Monitor your walking steadiness in Health on iPhone

When you carry your iPhone in a pocket or holster near your waist, the Health app uses custom algorithms that assess your balance, strength, and gait. You can receive a notification if your steadiness becomes low or stays low, and you can automatically share the notification with someone close to you. Health can also show you exercises to help improve your walking steadiness. (iPhone 8 or later.)

Receive notifications when your steadiness is low or very low

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Checklist.
4. Tap Set Up for Walking Steadiness Notifications, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To review your notifications, tap at the bottom right, tap Mobility, scroll down, then tap Walking Steadiness Notifications.

To automatically share your walking steadiness notifications with somebody close to you, see Share your data in Health.

View your walking steadiness data

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom right, then tap Mobility.
3. Tap Walking Steadiness (you may need to scroll down).
4. Tap Show More Walking Steadiness Data.

5. To learn about the three steadiness levels (OK, Low, and Very Low), tap ⓘ.

Learn how to improve your walking steadiness

1. Go to the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search at the bottom right, then tap Mobility.
3. Scroll down, then tap Exercises That May Improve Walking Steadiness.

See also

Intro to Health data on iPhone

Previous
View health records

Next
Log menstrual cycle information

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Control accessories with Home on iPhone

Use the Home app and Control Center to control accessories in your home.

Control accessories in the Home app

On the Home tab, tap an accessory's icon on the left side of the tile—a light, for example—to quickly turn the accessory on or off. Tap the accessory's name on the right side of the tile to show the accessory's control.

The available controls depend on the type of accessory. For example, with some lightbulbs, there are controls for changing colors. With your smart TV, you can choose an input source.

Add accessories to Control Center

You can add Home scenes and accessories to Control Center for easy access to your most used accessories.

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.
2. Tap + in the top left, then tap Add A Control at the bottom.
3. Tap the Home Scene or Accessory control.
4. Tap Choose Scene or Accessory, then select a home and device or scene you want to control.

View categories and home status

The Lights, Climate, Security, Speakers and TVs, and Water categories let you quickly access all the relevant accessories organized by room.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.

2. Tap the Home tab.

   Below your home's name, buttons show the status of accessories belonging to a category—for example, a Lights category that shows "3 on."

3. Tap one of the category buttons to show all accessories within that category, organized by room.

4. While viewing a category, tap the icon on the left side of an accessory tile to perform an action—turn a light or group of lights on or off, start playing music on a HomePod, or lock the front door.

View Activity History

When you have a home hub using the new version of Apple Home and latest software, all the members of your home (except guests) can view the activity history for accessories like garage doors, locks, security systems, and adaptive temperature thermostats. For example, you can learn when a door was unlocked and who unlocked it.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.

2. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.

3. Go to Activity, then tap One Month to view up to 30 days of activity.

4. In the Home tab, tap the Security or Climate category, then tap Home Activity to show the Activity History.

Turn Activity History on and off

Only the home owner or a shared home user with permission to add and edit accessories can turn Activity History on and off. When you turn off Activity History, all previous activity for the home is permanently deleted.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.

2. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, tap Home Settings, then tap Activity.

3. Choose One Month to turn Activity History on, or choose Off.

Turn on Adaptive Lighting

Some HomeKit and matter-compatible lights let you adjust their color temperature, from cool blue to warm yellow. You can set supported lights to automatically adjust the color temperature throughout the day. Wake up to warm colors, stay alert and focused midday with cooler ones, and wind down at night by removing blue light. For a light that supports Adaptive Lighting, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the light's tile to show the controls.

   You can also touch and hold the tile, and then choose Accessory Settings.
3. Tap , then turn on Adaptive Lighting.

Note: Adaptive Lighting requires a home hub—a device such as Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod speakers.

Edit home accessories

To edit accessory settings, tap the right side of an accessory tile, tap , then do any of the following:

- *Rename an accessory:* Tap to delete the old name, then type a new one.
- *Change an accessory's icon:* Tap the icon next to the accessory's name, then select a new icon. If you don't get a choice of other icons, it means the icon can't be changed for this accessory.

Group accessories

You can control multiple accessories with the tap of a button by grouping them.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the right side of an accessory tile, tap , then tap Group with Other Accessories.
3. Tap the accessory you want to group with this accessory—another light in the room, for example.
4. In the Group Name field, type a name for the group.
5. Tap Done.

   Turn on Include in Favorites to include the group in Favorites on the Home tab.

See also

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Previous
Set up accessories

Next
Use Grid Forecast to plan your energy usage

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

The first time you open the Home app, the setup assistant helps you create a home, where you can add accessories and define rooms. If you've already created a home when setting up a different accessory, you skip this step.

Add an accessory to Home

Before you add an accessory such as a light or camera, be sure that it's connected to a power source, is turned on, and has network connectivity.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home at the bottom left, then tap Add Accessory.

   You can also tap + at the top of the screen, then choose Add Accessory.
3. If you're pairing a Matter accessory that was previously paired to another app, tap More options, then select your accessory. Open the accessory's app, then generate a pairing code, which will be used to complete pairing with the Home app.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Matter-enabled accessories require a home hub, such as a HomePod speaker or Apple TV 4K. Thread-based accessories require a Thread-enabled home hub such as Apple TV 4K, HomePod (2nd generation), HomePod mini, or a compatible third-party Thread border router. Thread-enabled iPhone devices are able to locally pair and manage Thread accessories, which may require an update from the accessory manufacturer.

You may need to scan a QR code, enter an 8-digit HomeKit setup code found on the accessory itself (or its box or documentation), or enter an 11 or 21-digit code for Matter-enabled accessories. A supported smart TV displays a QR code for you to scan. You can assign the accessory to a room, give it a name, then use this name when controlling the accessory with Siri. You can also add suggested automations during setup.

When you set up Apple TV in tvOS and assign it to a room, it automatically appears in that room in the Home app on iPhone.

Paired Matter accessories are synced across devices and stored in the Settings app using iCloud Keychain, regardless of which app you used to set them up. You can easily add a previously paired accessory that's stored in Keychain to another Matter ecosystem app. To manage these accessories, go to Settings > General, then tap Matter accessories. See the Apple Support article Pair and manage your Matter accessories.

Show accessories in a room

You can show individual rooms, scenes assigned to them, and a room's accessories organized by category.

In Room View, do one of the following.

- Tap > next to a room's name.
- Tap ⋯, then choose a room.

Change an accessory's room assignment

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold an accessory tile, then tap Accessory Settings.
3. Tap Room, then choose a room.

Edit a room

You can change a room's name and wallpaper, remove the room, and more. When you remove the room, the accessories assigned to it move to Default Room.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap > next to a room, or tap ⋯, then choose a room.
3. Tap ⋯, then tap Room Settings.

Organize rooms into zones

You can group rooms together into a zone to easily control different areas of your home with Siri. For example, if you have a two-story home, you can assign the rooms on the first

floor to a downstairs zone.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap > next to a room on the Home tab or tap ⋯, then choose a room.
3. Tap ⋯, then tap Room Settings.
4. Tap Zone, then tap an existing zone, or tap Create New to add the room to a new zone.

See also

Control accessories with Home on iPhone

Previous
Upgrade to the new version of Apple Home

Next
Control accessories

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Grid Forecast to plan energy use in Home on iPhone (U.S. only)

The electricity powering your home comes from different sources, which can include renewable energy, like solar and wind, or fossil fuels, like coal and natural gas. The sources powering your home can change throughout the day. In the Home app on your iPhone, you can see a forecast for your area that highlights cleaner times, which can help reduce carbon emissions, and less clean times, to help you choose when to use electricity.

To view the Grid Forecast, you must be connected to the internet, and Location Services must be turned on for the Home app.

Note: Grid Forecast is available only in the contiguous United States; it's not available in Alaska or Hawaii.

Show Grid Forecast

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab.
3. Tap the Energy category at the top of the screen to show the Grid Forecast widget.

   Green bars in the widget indicate when cleaner energy is available in your area—from 4 p.m. until 10 p.m., for example. If there are no bars, cleaner energy isn't forecast for the near future.

If you're traveling, Grid Forecast shows energy information for both your home location and the location of your iPhone.

Note: If you haven't added accessories to your home, the Grid Forecast widget appears when you open the Home app.

Receive Grid Forecast notifications

To receive notifications when the electricity powering your home is being generated by cleaner or more renewable sources of energy, tap in the Grid Forecast widget in the Home app, then tap Notify Me.

Turn off Grid Forecast

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Energy, then turn off Show Grid Forecast.

See also

View electricity usage and rates on iPhone (participating U.S. providers only)

Previous
Control accessories

Next
View electricity usage and rates

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Upgrade to the new version of Apple Home on iPhone

iOS 16.2 introduced a new version of Apple Home that's more reliable and efficient. For availability and details, see the Apple Support article Upgrade to the new version of Apple Home.

Before you upgrade, make sure that Apple devices connected to your home are using the latest software. This includes any owner's devices and any shared users' devices.

Note: A home hub such as Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod is required for features such as remote access, sharing your Home, notifications, automations, HomeKit Secure Video, and Adaptive Lighting. iPad is not supported as a home hub with the new version of Apple Home. You can continue to use the Home app on iPad to connect and control your smart home accessories.

Upgrade your home

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Software Update, tap Learn More, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: Any connected devices that aren't using the latest software will lose access to the upgraded home until they're updated.

See also

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Table of Contents

View electricity usage and rates on iPhone (participating U.S. providers only)

You can get insight into your home electricity usage and electricity rate information by connecting your utility account to the Home app. This allows you to:

- View your home electricity usage over time and see how it's trending.
- View how much electricity you used during cleaner and less clean periods, and find opportunities to shift your usage to help the environment.
- Learn more about your electricity rate plan, and if you're on a time-of-use (TOU) plan, see if it's currently a peak or off-peak time to help you decide when to use electricity, and see how much electricity you used during lower- and higher-cost periods.
- If you have rooftop solar, know when you used electricity from the grid and when you had a surplus and sent it back, as well as how your imports and exports varied across different rate periods and during cleaner and less clean times.

Electricity usage data is typically displayed with a lag of 24 to 72 hours.

Note: To use these features, you need to have a residential electrical service with a participating utility provider, and you must be the utility account owner or authorized user of the utility account.

Set up electricity usage and rate information

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Energy, then tap Connect Account.

   Note: Participating utility providers are listed under Available Providers. If your utility provider isn't listed, this feature isn't currently supported in your area.

4. Follow the onscreen instructions to link your compatible electricity account.

Set up electricity usage and rate for multiple utility accounts

If you have multiple utility accounts or providers, you can create an additional home to add them to the Home app.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap +, tap Add New Home, then tap Save.
3. From the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
4. Tap Energy, then tap Connect Account.

   Note: Participating utility providers are listed under Available Providers. If your utility provider isn't listed, this feature isn't currently supported in your area.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to link your additional compatible electricity account.

Disconnect your account from electricity usage and rate information

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Energy, then tap your linked electricity account.
4. Tap Disconnect Account.

See also

Use Grid Forecast to plan energy use in Home on iPhone (U.S. only)

Previous
Use Grid Forecast to plan your energy usage

Next
Adaptive Temperature and Clean Energy Guidance

Table of Contents

Set up HomePod in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to set up HomePod and control many HomePod settings.

To learn what you can do with iPhone and HomePod, see the following in the HomePod User Guide:

- Set up HomePod
- Play audio on HomePod using an iOS or iPadOS device
- Make Personal Requests on HomePod
- Use HomePod for phone calls

Note: HomePod is not available in all countries or regions.

Use Home to send and receive Intercom messages

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Intercom, then configure these settings:
   - When you can receive Intercom messages
   - Who is allowed to send or receive Intercom messages
   - Which HomePod speakers can use Intercom

   Note: Any member of the Home can choose when they receive Intercom messages. Only a home owner or admin can choose who can send or receive Intercom messages and which HomePod speakers can use Intercom.
4. Tap Back, then tap Done.
5. Tap , say something like “Who ate the last cookie?” then tap Done.

Your Intercom message is sent to all the HomePod speakers in your home, and to the iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS devices of all members of your home who can send and receive Intercom messages.

See Use HomePod as an Intercom in the HomePod User Guide.

Use HomePod and HomeKit Secure Video to announce guests

With a HomeKit Secure Video camera or doorbell, HomePod can notify you when someone you know is at the door (or send you a message if the person isn't recognized).

Note: To start announcing guests, first turn on Face Recognition.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Cameras & Doorbells, then tap your camera or doorbell.
4. Tap Doorbell Chime, then choose which HomePod speaker or speakers to enable.

Use Home to add and edit HomePod alarms and timers

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the right side of a HomePod tile, swipe up, then do any of the following:

   - *Add an alarm:* Tap New Alarm, create the alarm, then tap Done.
   - *Edit an alarm:* Tap the alarm, change the time, then tap Done.
   - *Turn alarms on or off:* Tap the switch next to an alarm.
   - *Delete an alarm:* Tap the alarm, then tap Delete Alarm.
   - *Create a new timer:* Tap New Timer, enter a timer label (optional), choose the length of the timer, then tap Start.
   - *Pause and restart a timer:* Tap ⏸; tap ▶ to restart the timer.

- *Remove a timer:* Tap ⊗.

Change HomePod settings

You can assign HomePod to a different room, add an automation, create a stereo pair with two HomePod speakers of the same kind in the same room, and more.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the right side of a HomePod tile.
3. Tap ⚙, then configure HomePod settings.

Use HomePod to listen for alarm sounds

HomePod can notify you when an alarm sound is detected in your home.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the right side of a HomePod tile.
3. Tap ⚙, then tap Sound Recognition.
4. Turn on Smoke & CO Alarm, then choose which HomePods will listen for alarms.

Your HomePod will listen for certain sounds and notify you when alarm sounds may be recognized.

Important: Sound Recognition may detect smoke and carbon monoxide alarm sounds and send you notifications when recognized. Sound Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or in high-risk or emergency situations. Sound Recognition requires the new version of Apple Home.

Add a Siri-enabled accessory

You can extend access to HomePod throughout your home by enabling Siri on compatible HomeKit accessories. If you enable Siri on these accessories, you can control them with your voice, get help with everyday questions or tasks, and play your favorite music and podcasts.

See Set up a Siri-enabled accessory in the HomePod User Guide.

See also

Control your home remotely with iPhone

Previous
Adaptive Temperature and Clean Energy Guidance

Next
Control your home remotely

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Control your home remotely with iPhone

In the Home app, you can control your accessories even when you're away from home. To do so, you need a home hub—a device such as Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, tap See All, then turn on Home.

You must be signed in to the same Apple Account on your home hub device and your iPhone.

If you have an Apple TV or HomePod, and you're signed in to the same Apple Account as your iPhone, it's set up automatically as a home hub.

See also

Create and use scenes in Home on iPhone

Previous
Set up HomePod

Next
Create and use scenes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Use automations in Home on iPhone

In the Home app, you can run automations based on the time of day, your location, the activation of a sensor, or the action of an accessory. You can use preconfigured automations included with the Home app, or create automations of your own.

Thread-based accessories require a Thread-enabled home hub such as Apple TV 4K, HomePod (2nd generation), HomePod mini, or a compatible third-party Thread border router for you to run automations, receive notifications, and control accessories while away.

Use a preconfigured automation

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, touch and hold an accessory, then tap Accessory Settings.
3. Turn on an automation.

To disable an automation, return to the accessory's setting screen, then turn it off.

Create an automation

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap +.
3. Tap Add Automation, then choose one of the following automation triggers:

   - *When arriving at or leaving a location:* Tap People Arrive or People Leave. Choose when the automation is activated by people arriving or leaving, the location, and the time the automation works.

   - *At a time of day:* Tap A Time of Day Occurs, then choose when you want this automation to run.

If you choose Sunset or Sunrise, times vary as the season changes.

You can also set an automation to only occur after sunset, which is useful for turning on lights just when they're needed.

- *When an accessory changes:* Tap An Accessory is Controlled, select an accessory, tap Next, then follow the onscreen instructions.

  You might use this, for example, to run a scene when you unlock the front door.

- *A sensor detects something:* If you've added a sensor to Home, tap A Sensor Detects Something, select an accessory, tap Next, then follow the onscreen instructions.

  You might use this, for example, to turn on lights in a stairway when motion is detected nearby.

Manage and edit automations

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Automation tab at the bottom of the Home app screen.
3. Tap an automation, then do any of the following:

   - Enable or disable the automation
   - Choose when the automation happens
   - Add or remove accessories
   - Test the automation
   - Delete the automation

Add a Siri shortcut

To make your automation even more efficient, you can add a Siri Shortcut to it.

1. When choosing accessories to control with an automation, swipe up, then tap Convert To Shortcut.
2. Tap Next, name the automation (optional), then tap Done.

See the Shortcuts User Guide.

See also

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone

Previous
Create and use scenes

Next
Set up security cameras

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Create and use scenes in Home on iPhone

In the Home app, you can create scenes that allow you to control multiple accessories at once. For example, you might define a “Reading” scene that adjusts the lights, plays soft music on HomePod, closes the drapes, and adjusts the thermostat.

Create a scene

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap +, then tap Add Scene.
3. Tap Custom, enter a name for the scene (such as “Dinner Party” or “Watching TV”), then tap Add Accessories.
4. Select the accessories you want this scene to include, then tap Done.

   The first accessory you select determines the room the scene is assigned to. If you first select your bedroom lamp, for example, the scene is assigned to your bedroom.
5. Set each accessory to the state you want it in when you run the scene.

   For example, for a Reading scene, you could set the bedroom lights to 100 percent, choose a low volume for the HomePod, and set the thermostat to 68 degrees.
6. Test the scene and choose whether or not to show it on the Home tab (scenes appear on the Home tab by default), then tap Done.

Use scenes

Do one of the following:

- *Run a scene:* Tap the scene on the Home tab.

  If you’ve decided not to show the scene on the Home tab, tap ⋯, choose the room the scene is assigned to, then tap the scene.

- *Edit a scene:* Touch and hold a scene, then tap Edit Scene.

  You can change the scene's name, test the scene, add or remove accessories, and more.

See also

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Use automations in Home on iPhone

Previous
Control your home remotely

Next
Use automations

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Adaptive Temperature and Clean Energy Guidance

Using the Home app and your compatible Matter thermostat, you can turn on automatic adjustments for energy savings and cleaner energy.

Adaptive Temperature

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap your thermostat, tap ⚙, then tap Adaptive Temperature.
3. Turn on Adaptive Temperature, then choose your settings and temperature range for your At Home, Night, Away, and Extended Away states.
4. Turn on any of the following:

    - *Switch Thermostat Modes:* When enabled, your thermostat will switch between Heat, Cool, Auto, and Off based on your temperature preferences. When disabled, your thermostat will stay in its current mode.
    - *Occupancy Detection:* With compatible occupancy sensors, Adaptive Temperature can adjust the temperature based on room occupancy.
    - *Predict Arrival:* Use daily routines, Apple Maps, Calendar, and more to predict arrivals and automatically precondition to your chosen At Home temperature range.
    - *Activity History:* Adaptive thermostat changes are logged to Activity History.

Turn off Adaptive Temperature

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap your thermostat, tap ⚙, then tap Adaptive Temperature.

3. Turn off Adaptive Temperature.

Clean Energy Guidance

Home can adjust the thermostat by small amounts to help reduce electricity usage while energy sources are less clean.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap your thermostat, then tap .
3. Turn on Optimize for Clean Energy.

Turn off Clean Energy Guidance

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap your thermostat, then tap .
3. Turn off Optimize for Clean Energy.

See also

View electricity usage and rates on iPhone (participating U.S. providers only)

Previous
View electricity usage and rates

Next
Set up HomePod

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Face Recognition in Home on iPhone

With a HomeKit Secure Video camera or doorbell, you can use the Home app to receive notifications when people you've tagged in the Photos app are within the camera's view.

Set up Face Recognition

Face Recognition identifies people by the faces that appear in your photo library or pictures of recent visitors captured by your camera or doorbell.

If you're setting up a camera or doorbell for the first time, do the following:

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Add the accessory to the Home app.
3. In the Recognize Familiar Faces card, turn on Face Recognition, then tap Continue.
4. Choose who can access your photo library:
   - *Never:* Only faces you've added from clips in the Home app are recognized.
   - *Only Me:* Only the notifications you receive have the names of people in your photo library.
   - *Everyone in this Home:* The notifications for everyone in your home have the names of people in your photo library.
5. Tap Continue, then finish setting up the camera or doorbell.

If you have an existing doorbell or camera and want to use it to identify visitors, tap it on the Home tab, tap ⚙, tap Face Recognition, then turn on Face Recognition. Tap your photo library, then choose who can access it.

Note: Notifications can appear on any of the devices associated with your Apple Account.

Identify recent visitors

You can use Face Recognition to help identify people that aren't in your photo library using a picture captured by your camera or doorbell.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Turn on Face Recognition.
3. On the Home tab, tap the camera or doorbell, then tap .
4. Tap Face Recognition, tap an unidentified person listed below Recent, then tap Add Name.
5. Add the person's name or their relationship to you—Mom or Mail Carrier, for example.
6. Choose whether to be notified when they're seen by your camera or doorbell.

Note: People with a face mask don't appear in this list.

Share faces with your household

You can allow the members of your household to see the names of visitors identified in your photo library.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Turn on Face Recognition.
3. Tap , then tap Home Settings.
4. Tap Cameras & Doorbells below Notifications, then tap Face Recognition.
5. Tap your photo library, then tap Everyone in this Home.

See also

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Previous
Set up security cameras

Next
Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone or Apple Watch

Table of Contents

Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone or Apple Watch

Some maker's locks provide the ability to unlock your door with a home key in Apple Wallet, with an access code, or both.

While pairing a supported lock in the Home app, a home key is automatically added to Apple Wallet on your iPhone.

Note: The Home app supports both HomeKit and Matter-compatible locks.

Set up a home key

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Add a supported lock.
3. Choose an unlocking option.
    - *Express Mode:* Unlock the door without authenticating with Face ID or Touch ID.
    - *Require Face ID or Passcode:* Hold your device near the lock, then use Face ID or Touch ID to unlock it.
4. Choose automations such as Lock After Door Closes and Lock When Leaving Home.

If the lock works with a home key, all residents of your household receive the home key automatically.

Note: Not all Home app-compatible locks support home key.

Unlock your door with a home key

When you have a home key on your iPhone or Apple Watch and you've turned on Express Mode, place your device near the lock to unlock it. You can use the Home app to share

access with other people.

Set up an access code for a guest

In the Home app you can set up an access code for people who need temporary access to your home.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, touch and hold the lock, tap Accessory Settings, tap Manage Access, then tap Add Guest.
3. Give the guest a name—Dog Walker, for example—then turn on the locks you want them to have access to.
4. Tap Change Access Code, enter an access code, then tap Done.
5. Touch and hold the access code, tap Share, choose a sharing option, then share the access code with the guest.

You can return to this screen to change the access code, turn off access to some or all of the locks, or remove the guest.

Note: Not all Home app-compatible locks support access codes.

See also

About Apple Wallet on iPhone

Previous
Use Face Recognition

Next
Configure a router

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to view video activity captured by your home's cameras. With any HomeKit-compatible camera, you can view video streams in the Home app, choose who can view those streams, and set up notifications when activity is detected.

See the Home accessories website for a list of compatible security cameras.

If you have one or more HomeKit Secure Video cameras, you can additionally take advantage of these features:

- *Encrypted video:* Video captured by your cameras is privately analyzed and encrypted on your home hub device (Apple TV or HomePod) and securely uploaded to iCloud so that only you and those you share it with can view it.
- *Record video:* If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can view the last 10 days of activity from one to an unlimited number of cameras. The 50 GB iCloud+ plan supports a single camera, the 200 GB iCloud+ plan supports up to five cameras, and the 2 TB, 6 TB, and 12 TB iCloud+ plans support an unlimited number of cameras.

  Note: Video content doesn't count against your iCloud storage limit.
- *Activity Zones:* Create zones that focus your camera on the most important areas within its view.
- *Face recognition:* Receive notifications when people you've tagged in the Photos app are within the camera's view.

See Store encrypted security camera footage in iCloud with HomeKit Secure Video and Set up HomeKit Secure Video on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.



Camera options

When you add a camera in the Home app, you can choose streaming options and assign the camera to a room. With a HomeKit Secure Video camera, you can also choose recording options. By default, up to four cameras are marked as favorites and appear on the Home tab. To edit those settings later, tap the Camera tile, then tap ⚙ to see these options:

- *Room:* A camera can be located in a room inside your home, or you can create a room for an outside location such as your front porch or back yard.
- *Notifications:* Tap Status and Notifications, then choose to receive notifications when the camera detects activity, changes status, or goes offline.
- *Recording options for HomeKit Secure Video cameras:* You can create separate recording settings for when you're home and when you're away. For example, when you're home, you might choose to stop streaming and recording from a camera inside your home, but continue to stream and record from an outdoor camera.

  Note: The Home app uses the location of devices belonging to members of the home to switch between Home and Away modes. For example, when you leave home with

your iPhone, the camera switches from the When Home settings to the When Away settings.

Set up notifications

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Cameras & Doorbells.
4. Tap a camera, then turn on Activity Notifications.

   All HomeKit-compatible cameras can send a notification when motion is detected. HomeKit Secure Video cameras can additionally send notifications based on these factors:

   - The time of day
   - When someone is or isn't home
   - When a clip is recorded
   - When any or a specific type of motion is detected

     When you choose a specific motion, you receive a notification when the camera detects people, animals, or vehicles, or when a package is delivered. For a package to be detected, it must be within the camera's view after delivery.

     Choosing a specific motion, rather than any motion, results in fewer clips (and fewer clip notifications) and less video to review. For example, if you choose to detect people, your camera doesn't capture the movement of leaves on a tree or a squirrel leaping from branch to branch.

Create Activity Zones for HomeKit Secure Video cameras

You can create zones that focus your HomeKit Secure Video camera on the most important areas within its view—your front walkway but not the sidewalk behind it, for example. You can then be alerted when motion is detected in these zones.

Note: You can create Activity Zones only for cameras set up to record when a specific motion is detected. Activity Zones don't affect motion detection automations.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap the camera tile, then tap .
3. Tap Select Activity Zones, then tap the video to create a zone.

   To have your camera detect motion only outside the zone you defined, tap Invert Zone.
4. Create any additional zones you want within the camera's view—one for the driveway and another for the mailbox, for example.
5. Tap Done.

To remove an activity zone, tap Select Activity Zones, tap inside a zone, then tap Clear.

View video

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap the camera tile.

   Live video should play automatically.
3. If you've chosen to record video with your HomeKit Secure Video camera, swipe through the timeline at the bottom of the screen to browse recorded clips.
4. Tap a clip to play it.
5. Tap Live to switch back to live video.

When you set up the camera to detect specific motion, the timeline displays unique symbols for people, animals, vehicles, and packages.

Note: If there are more cameras in your home than Home Hubs that can analyze the cameras' video, video captured from some of the cameras may not be analyzed. Clips are still recorded, but they'll show , which indicates that the video wasn't analyzed for specific motion.

You can also view live and recorded video in the Home app on your Mac with macOS 10.15.1 or later.

Choose access options

To allow other people to view video from your cameras, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.

2. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
3. Below the People heading, tap a person.
4. Tap Cameras, then choose an option.

To learn how to allow other people to view video from your cameras, see Invite others to control accessories in your home on iPhone.

See also

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Previous
Use automations

Next
Use Face Recognition

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Configure a router in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to make your smart home more secure by allowing a compatible router to control which services your HomeKit accessories can communicate with on your home Wi-Fi network and on the internet. HomeKit-enabled routers require that you have an Apple TV or HomePod set up as a home hub. See the Home Accessories website for a list of compatible routers.

Configure your router's settings

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Set up the router with the manufacturer's app on an iPhone or iPad.
3. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
4. Tap Wi-Fi Network & Routers.
5. Turn on HomeKit Accessory Security, tap an accessory, then choose one of these settings:

   - *Restrict to Home:* The router only allows the accessory to connect to your home hub.

     This option may prevent firmware updates or other services.

   - *Automatic:* The router allows the accessory to connect to an automatically updated list of manufacturer-approved internet services and local devices.

   - *No Restriction:* The router allows the accessory to connect to any internet service or local device.

     This provides the lowest level of security.

See also

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Previous
Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone or Apple Watch

Next
Invite others to control accessories

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Invite others to control accessories in your home on iPhone

In the Home app, you can invite other people to control all your smart accessories, or invite a guest to control some or all of your doors, locks, and security system accessories during specific times.

Note: Remote access and guest access require a home hub, such as a HomePod speaker or Apple TV 4K.

Invite residents to control accessories

Home Residents have local and optional remote access to all accessories in the home at any time.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap +, tap Add People, then tap Resident.
3. Tap ⊕ to choose people with an Apple Account from your contacts list, or enter their Apple Account email addresses in the To field.
4. Tap Invite.
5. Ask the invitee to do one of the following:

   - *In the notification:* (iPhone or iPad) Tap Accept.
   - *In the Home app:* (iPhone or iPad) On the Home tab, tap ⋯, tap Home Settings, then tap the invitee's name.
   - *On Apple TV:* Tap Show Me on Apple TV, then turn on one or more Apple TVs.

Invite guests to control accessories

Home Guests have local-only access to specific doors, locks, and security system accessories on a set schedule.

Note: Home Guests access requires iOS 18, iPadOS 18, or later.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap ＋, tap Add People, then tap Guest.
3. Tap ⊕ to choose people with an Apple Account from your contacts list, or enter their Apple Account email addresses in the To field.
4. Select any of the following for the guest schedule:

    - *Anytime:* The guest can access the selected accessories anytime.
    - *Specific Dates:* The guest can only access the selected accessories on the dates specified.
    - *Specific Days & Times:* The guest can only access the selected accessories on the days and during the times specified.
5. Select which doors, locks, and security system accessories the guest can access.
6. Tap Invite.
7. Ask the invitee to do one of the following:

    - *In the notification:* (iPhone or iPad) Tap Accept.
    - *In the Home app:* (iPhone or iPad) Tap ⋯, tap Home Settings, then tap the invitee's name.

Allow others to access your AirPlay-enabled speakers and TVs

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap ⋯, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Speaker & TV, then choose an option.

You can allow everyone, anyone on the same network, or only people you've invited to share the home. You can also require a password that allows speaker access. To learn

more about HomePod speaker and Apple TV access, see the HomePod User Guide and the Apple TV User Guide.

See also

Set up HomePod in Home

Previous
Configure a router

Next
Add more homes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

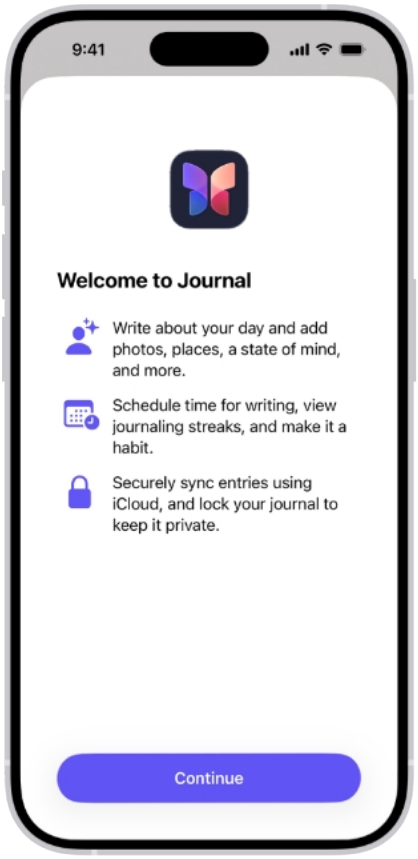
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get started with Journal on iPhone

Learn how to use the Journal app on iPhone to record your experiences. You can add photos, music, drawings, audio recordings, and even your current state of mind.

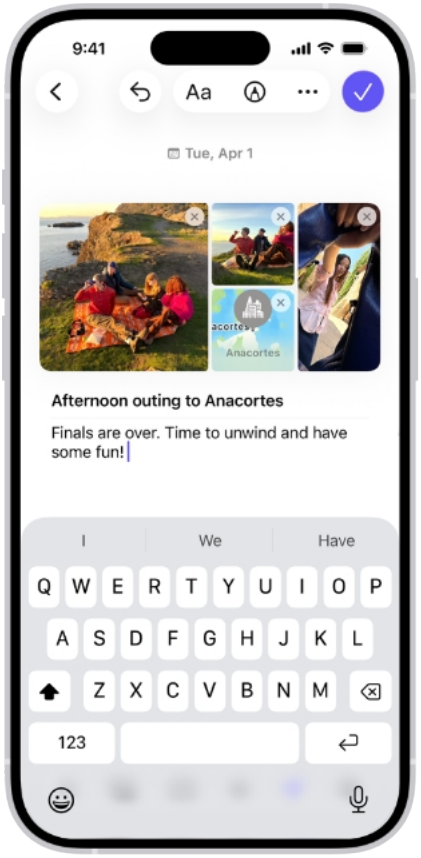


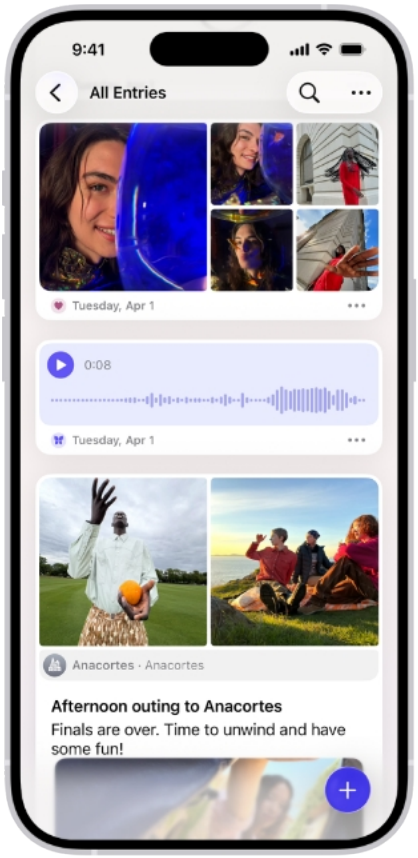
Set up Journal

The first time you open Journal, follow the onscreen instructions to turn on and get customized journaling suggestions.

Create a journal entry

Choose a journal, then tap ⊕. Start writing or choose a journaling suggestion or reflection prompt.



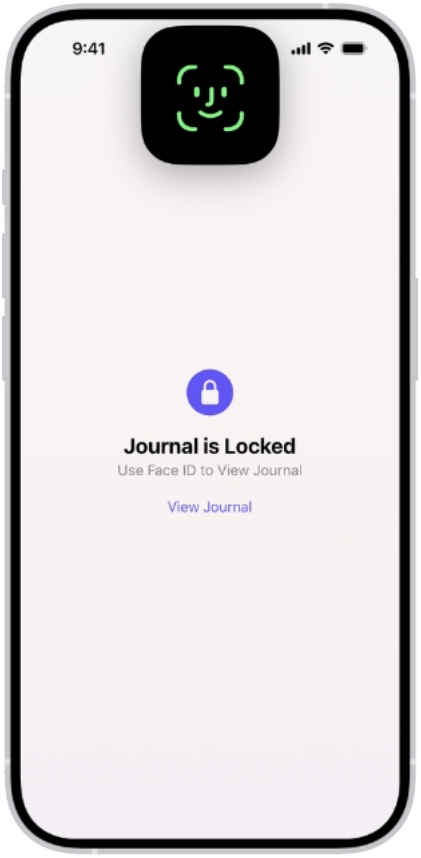


Review your journal entries

Scroll through your journal to see previous entries. To find specific entries, tap 🔍, then either choose a category such as Photos or Drawings, or type the text you're looking for. To find entries for a specific day, tap 📅, then tap a date on the calendar.

Keep your journal private

Protect your journal so only you can access it with with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.



Want to learn more?

- Write in your journal on iPhone
- View and search your journal entries on iPhone
- Change your Journal settings on iPhone
- Add formatting, photos, and more in Journal on iPhone

Previous
Manage purchases and settings

Next
Write in your journal

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get music in the iTunes Store on iPhone

You can use the iTunes Store app to do any of the following:

- Find and buy music (see below)
- Get ringtones (see Get ringtones, text tones, and alert tones)
- See and manage all your purchases (see Manage your iTunes Store purchases and settings)

Note: You need an internet connection to use the iTunes Store. The availability of the iTunes Store and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

To add movies and TV shows to iPhone, see Discover channels and apps.

Find music

1. Go to the iTunes Store app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Music, then do any of the following:
   - *Browse by category:* Scroll to see various categories.
   - *Choose a different genre:* Tap Genres at the top left of the screen, then select one to refine your browsing.
   - *See what's popular on iTunes:* Tap Charts at the top of the screen.
   - *Search:* Tap Search, enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard.
3. Tap an item to see more information about it.
4. To share an item or add it to your wish list, tap, then do any of the following:

- *Share a link to the item:* Choose a sharing option.
- *Give the item as a gift:* Tap Gift.
- *Add the item to your wish list:* Tap Add to Wish List.

  To view your wish list, tap ☰ at the top right, then tap Wish List.

Buy and download content

1. Go to the iTunes Store app on your iPhone.
2. To buy an item, tap the price. If the item is free, tap Get.

   If you see ☁ instead of a price, you already purchased the item, and you can download it again without a charge.
3. If necessary, authenticate your Apple Account with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the purchase.
4. To see the progress of a download, tap More, then tap Downloads.

Redeem or send an App Store & iTunes Gift Card

1. Go to the iTunes Store app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Music, tap Featured (if necessary), then scroll to the bottom.
3. Tap Redeem or Send Gift.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

See also

Apple Support article: Migrate purchases from one Apple Account to another Apple Account

Table of Contents

Add more homes with iPhone

In the Home app, you can add more than one physical space—a home and a small office, for example.

1. Go to the Home app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, then tap Add New Home.
3. Name the home, choose its wallpaper, then tap Save.
4. To switch to another home, tap ⋯, then tap the home you want.

See also

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Previous
Invite others to control accessories

Next
Get music

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Manage your iTunes Store purchases and settings on iPhone

In the iTunes Store app, you can review and download music, movies, and TV shows purchased by you or other family members. You can also customize content restrictions for the iTunes Store in Settings.

Approve purchases with Family Sharing

With Family Sharing set up, the family organizer can review and approve purchases made by other family members under a certain age. See Turn on Ask to Buy.

View and download music purchased by you or family members

1. Go to the iTunes Store app on your iPhone.
2. Tap More, then tap Purchased.
3. If you set up Family Sharing, choose a family member to view their purchases.

   Note: You can see purchases made by family members only if they choose to share their purchases.
4. Tap Music, find the item you want to download, then tap .

To view and download movies or TV shows purchased by you or family members, see Manage your library in the Apple TV app.

View your entire iTunes Store purchase history

To see a chronological list of the apps, songs, movies, TV shows, books, and other items purchased with your Apple Account, view your iTunes Store purchase history.

In your purchase history, you can do any of the following:

- View when an order was billed to your account.
- View the date of a purchase.
- Resend email receipts.
- Report a problem with purchased content.

Set content restrictions

After you turn on content and privacy restrictions, go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > App Store, Media, Web, & Games, then set any of the available restrictions. You can block explicit content, turn off music videos, restrict content by age-appropriate ratings, and more.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

See also

Apple Support article: Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books

Apple Support article: Migrate purchases from one Apple Account to another Apple Account

Previous
Get ringtones

Next
Get started

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get ringtones, text tones, and alert tones in the iTunes Store on iPhone

In the iTunes Store app, you can purchase ringtones, text tones, and other alert tones for clock alarms and more.

Buy new tones

1. Go to the iTunes Store app on your iPhone.
2. Tap More, then tap Tones.
3. Browse by category or tap Search to find a specific song or artist.
4. Tap a tone to see more information or play a preview.
5. To buy a tone, tap the price.

Redownload tones purchased with your Apple Account

If you bought tones on another device, you can download them again.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics (on supported models) or Sounds (on other iPhone models).
3. Below Ringtone and Alerts, tap any item.
4. Tap Download All Purchased Tones. You might not see this option if you already downloaded all the tones that you purchased or if you haven't purchased any tones.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

Table of Contents

Edit or delete a journal entry on iPhone

In the Journal app on iPhone, you can edit your entries, modify the entry date, delete or recover entries, and more.

Edit a journal entry

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Swipe left on an entry, then tap .

Add the same entry to multiple journals

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Tap ••• below the entry, then tap Choose Journals.

Remove or add a title

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap , then tap Remove Title or Add Title.

Edit the entry date

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.

2. While composing an entry, swipe down to show the entry date, then tap the date to edit it.

Delete journal entries

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Swipe left on an entry, then tap .

   Deleted entries are saved for 30 days.
4. To delete multiple entries, tap ••• at the top of the screen, tap Select Entries, select the entries you want to delete, then tap .

Recover journal entries

You can recover deleted entries for up to 30 days.

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Recently Deleted. You may need to tap < first.
3. Tap ••• below the entry, then tap Recover.
4. To recover multiple entries, tap Select, tap the entries you want to recover, then tap .

See also

Add formatting, photos, and more in Journal on iPhone

Previous
Write in your journal

Next
Add formatting, photos, and more

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add formatting, photos, and more in Journal on iPhone

In the Journal app on iPhone, you can create multimedia journal entries by adding photos, drawings, videos, audio, and more.



Format text

You can adjust the color, style, formatting of the entry text.

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap Aa.

3. Apply bold text, italics, underline, strikethrough, bulleted or numbered lists, block quote, or font color.

Add a drawing

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap , then start drawing.

   Tip: To place a drawing inline with text, touch and hold where you want the drawing to go, then choose Insert Drawing.
3. To see other tools, such as Crayon, Reed Pen, or Watercolor Brush, swipe through the toolbar, then tap the one you want.

   Tap any tool a second time to change its qualities, like the thickness or opacity of a stroke.
4. When you're finished drawing, tap .

   You can resize and rearrange inline drawings. To resize, drag the handle on the bottom left. To rearrange, touch and hold the drawing, then drag it to a new location.

Add photos or videos to the grid or inline with text

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, do any of the following:

   - *Choose photos and videos from your library:* Tap .
   - *Take a new photo or video:* Tap .
3. To place photos and videos inline with entry text, touch and hold the photo or video, then drag it from the grid to the entry.

   You can resize inline media by dragging the handle on the frame.

Add a map location

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap .

When you add a location, the entry is visible in Places.

Work with attachments

All attachments—photos, drawings, videos, locations, recordings, and State of Mind tiles—can be reordered, placed inline with entry text, and more.

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, do any of the following:

   - *Place attachments inline with text:* Touch and hold the attachment, then drag it from the grid to the entry.
   - *Move inline attachments to the grid:* Touch and hold the attachment, then drag it up to the grid.
   - *Resize inline attachments:* Drag the handle on the frame.
   - *View an attachment in full screen:* Tap the thumbnail.
   - *Reorder attachments:* Touch and hold a thumbnail, then drag it to a different position.
   - *Remove an attachment:* Tap ⊗ in the top-right corner of the thumbnail.

Record and transcribe audio

You can record audio and have your words transcribed in a journal entry. Audio transcription is available in English only (excluding Singapore and India locales).

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap, tap, then start speaking.
3. When you're done, tap.
4. Tap the audio recording, then tap to review the transcription.
5. To add the text to the entry, tap ⋯, then tap Add Transcript to Entry.

Select version:

iOS 26

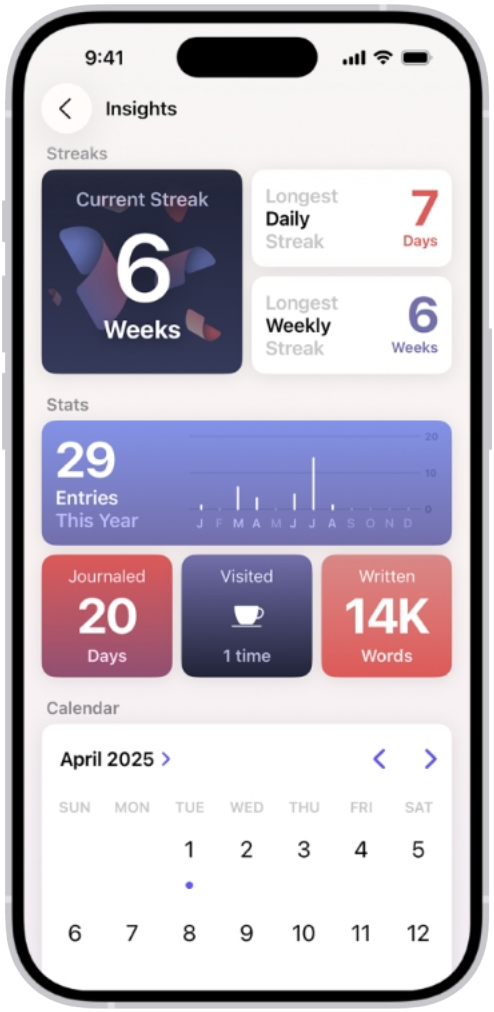
Table of Contents

Build a habit with Journal on iPhone

With the Journal app, you can keep track of your journaling goals and build new habits.

Track your journaling with Insights

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to see your current streak—the number of consecutive days or weeks you've journaled—along with other insights.
3. Tap Insights, then tap any tile to see more details.



Set a journaling schedule

You can be reminded to write with journaling notifications.

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Above the Insights summary, tap ⋯, then tap Notifications. You may need to tap ‹ to see the Insights summary.
3. Tap Custom to set a weekly schedule or tap Smart to receive notifications based on your routine and location.

Use the Journal widget

Add a widget to your Home Screen or Lock Screen with your current streak or writing prompts that change throughout the day, so you can reflect on what's going on in the moment.

1. On the iPhone Home Screen or Lock Screen, add a Journal widget.
2. To change the widget, touch and hold the widget, then tap Edit Widget.
3. Tap the widget to select from different writing prompts, start a new entry, or see details about your current streak.

See also

Write in your journal on iPhone

Change your Journal settings on iPhone

‹ Previous
Journal for your wellbeing

Next ›
View and search journal entries

Helpful? Yes No

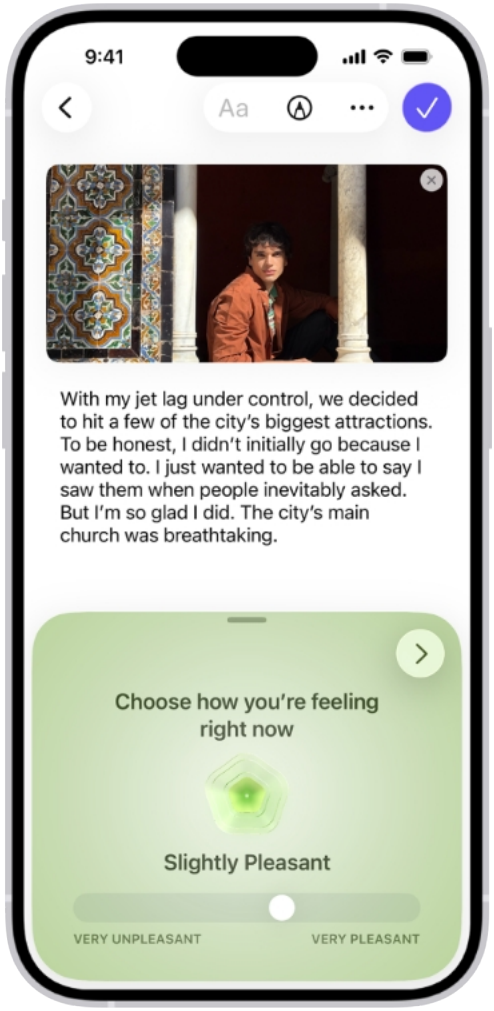
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Journal for your wellbeing on iPhone

You can log your state of mind in the Journal app. You can also automatically add the time you spent journaling as mindful minutes in the Health app.



Log your state of mind

You can reflect on how you're feeling and log your momentary emotions in your journal.

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap .

   You may be asked to turn on Health access.

3. Drag the slider to indicate how you're feeling, then tap >.
4. Tap any words that describe how you're feeling, swipe up to see more words, then tap >.
5. Tap any words that describe what's having the biggest impact on you, then tap ✓.

Your state of mind will be added to Health, where you can review its history over time. See Log your state of mind in Health.

Allow the Health app to access your state of mind and mindful minutes

You can automatically add the time you spent journaling as mindful minutes in the Health app.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Journal.
3. Tap Health Access, then tap Data Access & Devices.
4. Tap Journal, then turn on Mindful Minutes and State of Mind.

See also

Build a habit with Journal on iPhone

Previous
Add formatting, photos, and more

Next
Build a journaling habit

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

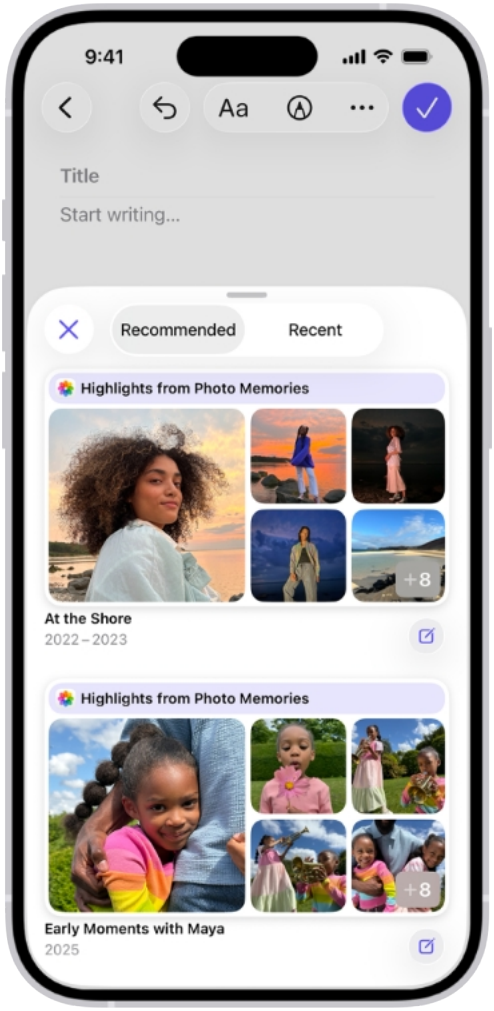
Table of Contents

Write in your journal on iPhone

The Journal app makes it easy to capture your thoughts on everyday moments and special events. You can also get suggestions for topics to write about.

Create a journal entry

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal, then tap .
3. Start writing or choose a journaling suggestion or reflection prompt.



Use Journaling Suggestions

Journaling Suggestions intelligently group outings, photos, workouts, and more to help you remember and reflect on your experiences.

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal, then tap .
3. Browse the recommended suggestions or tap Recent to see suggestions sorted by date.
4. To start a new entry with all the suggested attachments, tap at the bottom-right corner of the suggestion.
5. To preview the attachments before creating the entry, tap the suggestion, then do any of the following:

    - *Browse the attachments:* Swipe through the attachments.
    - *Change to list view:* To see the details for all attachments, tap .

- *Choose the attachments you want:* Tap an attachment to select or deselect it.

6. Tap Add to Entry to start writing or < to return to the suggestions list.

To delete a suggestion, touch and hold the suggestion, then tap Remove.

Create multiple journals

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, then name the new journal.
3. To reorder journals, touch and hold the journal name, then drag up or down.
4. To edit the journal name, color, or icon, touch and hold the journal, then choose Edit Journal.

Take action from the Home Screen

1. On the iPhone Home Screen, touch and hold the Journal app.
2. Choose New Entry, View Suggestions, Add Photos, or Record Audio.

Start a journal entry from another app

When you're doing something in another app—such as listening to a song in the Music app or reading an article in the News app—you can quickly capture your thoughts in a new journal entry.

1. In the app you're using, tap or Share, then tap Journal.

   If you don't see Journal, you may need to add it to the sharing options.

2. Enter your thoughts, then tap .

You can review your entry and add more details later in the Journal app. See Edit a journal entry.

See also

Get journaling suggestions

Table of Contents

Print and export entries in Journal on iPhone

In the Journal app, you can print and export individual entries or your entire journal.

Print a single journal entry

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Scroll to the entry you want to print, then tap ••• below the entry.
4. Tap Print.

Print multiple journal entries

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Tap ⋯ at the top of the screen, then tap Print.
4. Choose All Entries or select a date range, then tap Print.

Export a single journal entry as a PDF file

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Scroll to the entry you want to export, then tap ••• below the entry.
4. Tap Print, then tap ⎙.

Choose an app such as Notes, Files, or Messages, or tap Save to Files.

Export multiple journal entries as PDF files

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Tap ••• at the top of the screen.
4. Tap Export, then choose Export.
5. Choose a location, then tap ✓.

See also

Print from iPhone

Previous
View and search journal entries

Next
Protect your journal entries

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

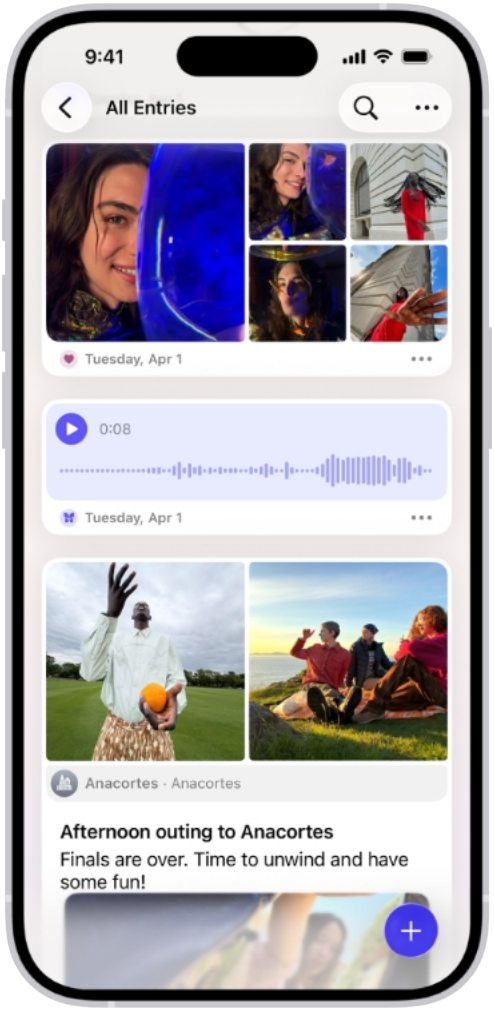
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View and search your journal entries on iPhone

In the Journal app, you can search for text in your entries and filter for details such as photos, drawings, and locations. You can also bookmark entries to revisit later.



Search your journal entries

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Find specific entries:* Tap Search, then choose a category such as Photos or Reflections or type the text you're looking for.
- *Sort entries:* Tap More, tap Sort By, then choose Entry Date or Moment Date.
- *Find entries for a specific day:* Tap Back to show your insights, tap Calendar, then tap a date on the calendar.

View entries by location

You can see your entries based on their location with the map view.

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Back to show your insights, then tap Places.
3. To return to your journal, tap Back.

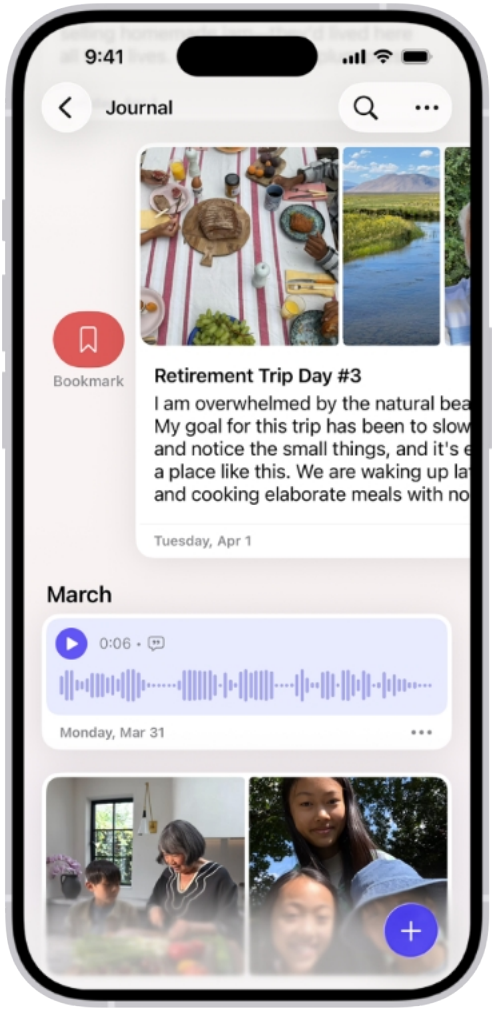
Entries that include a location, or photos with location information, are added to the map. See Add formatting, photos, and more.

Bookmark important journal entries

1. Go to the Journal app on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Swipe right on an entry, then tap Bookmark.

   To bookmark multiple entries, tap More at the top of the screen, tap Select Entries, tap entries to select them, then tap Bookmark.

   Tip: To see only bookmarked entries, tap Search, then tap Bookmarked.



See also

Write in your journal on iPhone

Change your Journal settings on iPhone

Previous
Build a journaling habit

Next
Print and export entries

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Protect your journal entries on iPhone

In the Journal app, there are a number of ways you can protect your journal entries. You can lock your journal, you can sync your journal entries with iCloud, and you can include your journal entries in your iPhone backup if you encrypt your iPhone backup and store it locally on your computer or external storage device.

Keep your entries in sync across your devices with iCloud

Your entries—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and have Journal turned on in iCloud settings.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All, then turn on Journal.

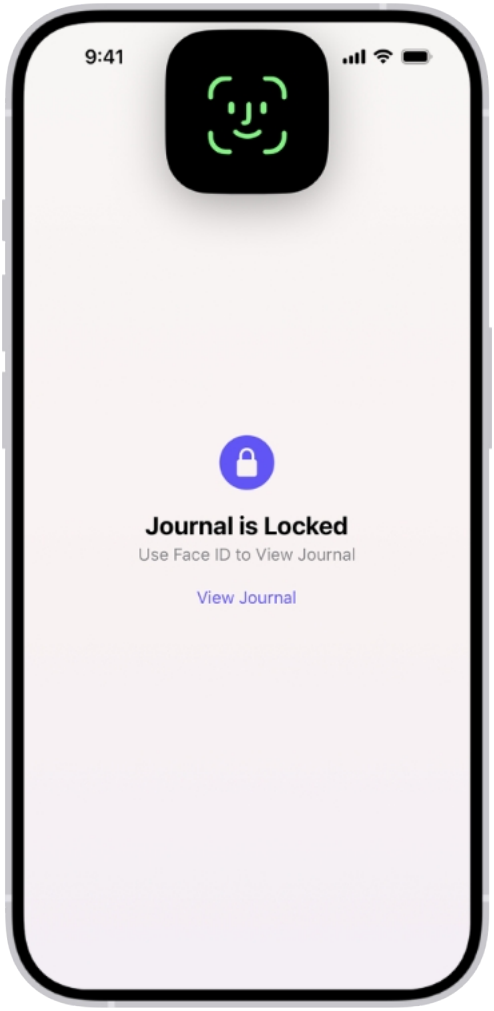
How do I back up my journal entries?

To include your entries in a backup of your iPhone, your iPhone backup must be encrypted and stored locally on your computer or external storage device. Journal entries aren't included in iCloud backups, but you can check that they sync to iCloud in Settings.

When you create encrypted backups, you have a copy of your entries to use in case your iPhone is replaced, lost, or damaged. To learn how to create encrypted backups, see the Apple Support article Back up Journal entries in an encrypted backup.

Lock your journal

You can keep your journal private so only you can access it with with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.



To lock your journal, use any of the following methods:

- *From the Home Screen or App Library:* See Lock or hide an app.
- *In the Journal app:* Above the Insights summary, tap ⋯, then tap Lock Journal.
- *In the Settings app:* Go to Settings > Apps > Journal, then tap Lock Journal.

See also

Change your Journal settings on iPhone

Print and export entries in Journal on iPhone

Previous
Print and export entries

Next
Change Journal settings

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

In the Magnifier app, you can use your iPhone like a magnifying glass to zoom in on text or objects around you.



Magnify nearby text or objects

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Point the iPhone camera at the text or object you want to magnify, then drag the slider to zoom in or out.

3. You can also use any of the following controls:

   - Tap to switch between your default controls and custom sets of controls you've defined for recurring tasks or situations (called *activities*). See Set your preferred controls for an activity.
   - Tap to temporarily freeze the frame.
   - Tap to add more controls, including Detection Mode, or edit activities you've created.

Tip: Set up a shortcut to quickly open Magnifier by clicking or pressing an iPhone button or tapping the back of iPhone, or from Control Center. See Quickly turn accessibility features on or off.

On supported models, you can also customize the Camera Control to open Magnifier. See Use the Camera Control to open another app.

Temporarily freeze the frame

You can temporarily capture what's in the frame, without saving it to Photos.

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then do one of the following:

   - *Take one or more photos:* Press and hold , then select Single Photo or Multi-Photo to take a photo or multiple photos.

     If you select Multi-Photo, you'll see a group of photos in the bottom right corner of the screen.

   - *Capture text and reframe it:* Press and hold , then select Document. Follow the written and spoken instructions to get the text in frame or drag the corners of the box that appear around the text, then tap Confirm.

     After you tap Confirm, tap to view the text with Accessibility Reader. See view your captured text in a format for easier reading or to listen to your captured text.

   - *Customize and listen to text:* If you're magnifying text, tap to view your captured text in a format for easier reading or to listen to your captured text.

   - *Share captured images:* Tap for more options, such as sharing the captured frame or saving it to your photos.

- *Stop viewing captured images:* Tap ⊗ to unfreeze the frame and return to the live Magnifier lens.

To reset Magnifier, press and hold ◎ anytime and select Document, Multi-Photo, or Single-Photo.

View your captured text in a format for easier reading

If you magnify a frame that contains text, you can view it in a format adapted for easier reading. You can even adjust fonts, layouts, and background colors.

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ◎ to capture the frame, then tap .

   Magnifier alerts you if no text is detected in the frame you captured.
3. Tap •••, then tap Customize Reader.
4. Select a theme, then tap Edit.
5. Do any of the following:

   - *Text Color:* Choose a color or tap Custom Color.
   - *Background Color:* Choose a color or tap Custom Color.
   - *Text Size:* Drag the slider left or right to make the text smaller or larger.
   - *Font:* Choose a font.
   - *High Legibility Characters:* Turn on High Legibility Characters.

     Note: This option is only available when using System Font.
   - *Bold Text:* Turn on Bold Text.
   - *Line Spacing:* Choose , , or to customize the space between lines.
   - *Word Spacing:* Choose , , or to customize the space between words.
   - *Character Spacing:* Choose Abc, Abc, or Abc to customize the space between characters.

- *Hyperlinks:* Turn Show Links on or off. When turned on, you can customize the color.
- *Playback:* Turn Highlighting on or off. When turned on, you can customize the style or highlight color.
- *Rename:* Enter a name for the settings you choose.
- *Reset to Default:* Reset all themes to their default settings.

  Tip: Rename a theme with your custom settings so you can easily find it and reuse it later.

You can also use Accessibility Reader to customize the text in apps. See Read or listen to text in apps with Accessibility Reader on iPhone.

Listen to your captured text

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to capture the frame, then tap.

   Magnifier alerts you if no text is detected in the frame you captured.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Listen to the text:* Tap ▶.
   - *Pause the text:* Tap ⏸.
   - *Skip backward or forward:* Tap ↺ or ↻.
   - *Increase or decrease the speed:* Tap 1×, then select a speed.
   - *Go to a specific time:* Drag the slider left or right.

     Note: You can hide or show audio controls: Tap •••, then tap.

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use Detection Mode in the Magnifier app on iPhone to scan your surroundings and get live descriptions of the scenes detected in the

camera view. Live descriptions are available as text or speech.

Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation.

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to start Detection Mode.

   If you don't see , you can add it. See Customize controls.
3. Touch and hold , select Scenes, then do any of the following:

   - On supported iPhone models, detect people, doors, or furniture.
   - On all iPhone models, detect text in the camera frame and have it read out loud or point your finger at text to have it spoken.
4. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

If you use VoiceOver, you can turn on Live Recognition from any screen on iPhone and get descriptions of your surroundings without going to the Magnifier app. See Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver.

See also

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Change Journal settings

Next
Customize controls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change your Journal settings on iPhone

You can customize the settings for the Journal app; for example, personalize the suggestions you receive, set a schedule for journaling, and more.

Turn Journaling Suggestions on or off

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, then tap Journaling Suggestions.

Customize Journaling Suggestions

Do any of the following:

- *Customize the privacy settings:* Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Journaling Suggestions, then turn on or off any of the categories.

  Suggestions use data from apps and services you turn on; data used for suggestions is private and stored on your iPhone. For more information, see the Journaling Suggestions & Privacy website.

- *Change the notification settings:* Go to Settings > Notifications > Journaling Suggestions.
- *Create new entries without viewing suggestions:* Go to Settings > Apps > Journal, then turn off Show Suggested Moments.

Add a title, date, or current location to new journal entries

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apps, tap Journal, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a title to new entries:* Tap Add Entry Title, then choose Always, Only for Moments, or Never.
   - *Use the date from the moment as the entry date:* Turn on Always Use Moment Date.
   - *Add current location to new entries:* Turn on Add Current Location.

Save photos and videos taken in Journal to the Photos app

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Journal.
3. Turn on Save to Photos.

Turn Journal notifications on or off

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Journaling Suggestions.

See also

Write in your journal on iPhone

View and search your journal entries on iPhone

Previous
Protect your journal entries

Next
Magnify or describe things around you

Table of Contents

Detect people around you using Magnifier on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use the Magnifier app on iPhone to detect when people are nearby and get information about how close they are. This can be useful if you want to maintain a physical or social distance from others.

Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation. Detection of people is only available on supported iPhone models.

Detect people near you

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to start Detection Mode.

   If you don't see , you can add it. See Customize controls.
3. Touch and hold , then make sure People is selected.
4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect your surroundings. When a person is detected nearby, you're notified with sounds, speech, or haptic feedback. The feedback becomes more frequent the closer the person is to you.

   If you don't hear sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See Adjust the volume.
5. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

Customize the settings for detecting people

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.

2. Tap ⚙, then tap Detect.

3. Tap People, then customize any of the following:

   - *Units:* Choose Meters or Feet.
   - *Sound pitch distance:* Tap − or + to adjust the distance for sound feedback. When people are detected within this distance, the pitch of the sound feedback increases.
   - *Feedback:* Turn on any combination of Labels, Sounds, Speech, and Haptics. If you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the distance between you and another person.

4. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap ‹, tap it again, then tap ✓.

See also

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Customize controls

Next
Detect furniture around you

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Detect furniture around you using Magnifier on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use the Magnifier app on iPhone to detect furniture around you. You can get information about how far you are from furniture, and when chairs or sofas are detected, find out if they're occupied.

Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation. Detection of furniture is only available on supported iPhone models.

Detect furniture near you

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to start Detection Mode.

   If you don't see , you can add it. See Customize controls.
3. Touch and hold , then make sure Furniture is selected.
4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect furniture around you. When furniture is detected nearby, you're notified with sounds, speech, or haptic feedback. The feedback becomes more frequent as you get closer to the furniture.

   If you don't hear sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See Adjust the volume.
5. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

Customize the settings for detecting furniture

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.

2. Tap ⚙, then tap Detect.

3. Tap Furniture, then customize any of the following:

   - *Units:* Choose Meters or Feet.
   - *Sound pitch distance:* Tap − or + to adjust the distance for sound feedback. When furniture is detected within this distance, the pitch of the sound feedback increases.
   - *Feedback:* Turn on any combination of Labels, Sounds, Speech, and Haptics. If you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the distance between you and the furniture.
   - *Announce Seat Occupancy:* Turn on Announce Seat Occupancy to get information about the number of people occupying chairs and sofas.

4. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap ‹, tap it again, then tap ✓.

See also

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Detect people around you

Next
Detect doors around you

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Customize controls in Magnifier on iPhone

You can choose and customize the controls that are shown in the Magnifier app.

Add or remove controls

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then do any of the following:

   - *Show or hide Activities, Capture, or Detection Mode:* Tap Activities, Capture, or Detect, then turn Show in Control Panel on or off.
   - *Add or remove other controls:* Tap or next to a control.

     You can choose up to two primary controls. Primary controls appear on the main screen when you open Magnifier. If you add more than two controls, you can swipe up on the control panel at the bottom of the screen to access secondary controls.
   - *Reorder other controls:* Drag next to a control to move it up or down.

Control	Description
Brightness	Adjust the brightness.
Cameras	Switch between the front and rear cameras, or choose Close-up when you need to see something very small that's very close to the camera. *Note:* Close-up is available on iPhone 13 Pro and iPhone 13 Pro Max or later.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast.
Filters	Apply a color filter. When you add the Filters control, you can select just the filters you use most often.
Flashlight	Turn on the flashlight.
Focus Lock	Lock the magnifier focus.
Zoom	Zoom in and out.

Set your preferred controls for an activity

You can save the controls you use for recurring tasks or situations, called *activities*, and switch between different activities as needed. For example, you could create an activity for reading a menu at a restaurant.

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Save as New Activity to create a new activity using the current controls.
3. Enter a name for the activity, then tap .

Customize settings for live scene descriptions

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.

2. Tap ⚙, then tap Detect.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *On iPhone models with a LiDAR Scanner:* Tap ⛶, tap ⚙, then tap Image Descriptions.
   - *On other iPhone models:* Tap ⚙, tap Detect, then tap Scenes.
4. Tap Scenes, then turn on any combination of Labels or Speech feedback.
5. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap ‹, tap it again, then tap ✓.

See also

Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

‹ Previous
Magnify or describe things around you

Next ›
Detect people around you

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use the Magnifier app to aim your iPhone camera at nearby text and have it spoken out loud. You can even point your finger at the specific text you want spoken.

Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation. Text Detection and Point & Speak are not available in all languages.



Detect text in the camera frame and have it read out loud

You can use the Magnifier app to detect text in the field of view of your iPhone camera and have it read out loud.

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to start Detection Mode.

   If you don't see , you can add it. See Customize controls.
3. Touch and hold , then make sure Text is selected.
4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect text around you.

   If you don't hear speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See Adjust the volume.
5. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

Point your finger at text to have it spoken

You can use the Magnifier app to point your finger at text near you and have your iPhone speak it out loud. This can be especially useful when you need to interact with an object that has text labels, such as a digital screen at a grocery store self-checkout, or dials, buttons, or keypads on household appliances or ATMs.

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to start Detection Mode.

   If you don't see , you can add it. See Customize controls.
3. Touch and hold , then make sure Point & Speak is selected.
4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect the text, then point your finger to identify which text to read.

   If you don't hear sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See Adjust the volume.
5. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

Customize settings for Text Detection or Point & Speak

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Detect. To detect text in other languages, turn on Detect Languages.
3. Tap Text or Point & Speak, then customize any of the following:

    - *Detection Feedback:* Turn on any combination of Labels and Speech. For Point & Speak, you can also turn on Sound and Haptic feedback.
    - *Location:* For Point & Speak, tap Under (to read text under your fingertip) or Above (to read text directly above your finger).
    - *Automatic Flashlight:* When your environment is too dark to detect text, have Magnifier turn the flashlight on for 10 seconds.
    - *Border and Color:* For Point & Speak, outline the text you're pointing to in a color of your choice.
4. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap, tap it again, then tap.

Text Detection and Point & Speak work with VoiceOver. See Turn on and practice VoiceOver.

See also

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Detect doors around you

Next
Set up shortcuts for Live Recognition

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Detect doors around you using Magnifier on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use the Magnifier app on iPhone to detect doors around you. You can get information about how far you are from the door and hear about the door's attributes, including how to open it.

Important: Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation. Detection of doors is only available on supported iPhone models.



Detect doors near you

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to start Detection Mode.

   If you don't see , you can add it. See Customize controls.
3. Touch and hold , then make sure Doors is selected.
4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect doors around you. When doors are detected nearby, you're notified with sounds, speech, or haptic feedback. The feedback becomes more frequent as you get closer to the door.

   If you don't hear sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See Adjust the volume.
5. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

Customize the settings for detecting doors

1. Go to the Magnifier app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Detect.
3. Tap Doors, then customize any of the following:

   - *Units:* Choose Meters or Feet.
   - *Sound pitch distance:* Tap − or + to adjust the distance for sound feedback. When a door is detected within this distance, the pitch of the sound feedback increases.
   - *Feedback:* Turn on any combination of Labels, Sounds, Speech, and Haptics. If you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the distance between you and the door.
   - *Color:* Select a color to outline detected doors.
   - *Back tap:* When you double-tap the back of your iPhone, you can hear more information about doors around you.
   - *Door Attributes:* Turn on any combination of door attributes, such as the size of the detected door, how to open the door, and if the door is currently open.
   - *Door Decorations:* Turn on Door Decorations to get information about text and signs on or near the detected door, such as a sign for an accessible entrance or a

restroom.

4. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap <, tap it again, then tap ✓.

See also

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Detect furniture around you

Next
Detect text around you and have it read out loud

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set up shortcuts for Live Recognition on iPhone

You can set up a shortcut to quickly start Live Recognition when VoiceOver is on. If VoiceOver is off, the shortcut opens the Magnifier app in Detection Mode.

- *Use a VoiceOver gesture:* When VoiceOver is on, triple-tap the screen with four fingers to turn Live Recognition on or off. To assign a different gesture, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Touch Gestures.
- *Triple-click the side button or Home button:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select Live Recognition. See Quickly turn accessibility features on or off.
- *Tap the back of iPhone:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose Live Recognition. See Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts.
- *Press the Action button:* Customize the Action button to start Live Recognition. See Use and customize the Action button.

  Note: The Action button is available on supported iPhone models.

See also

Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

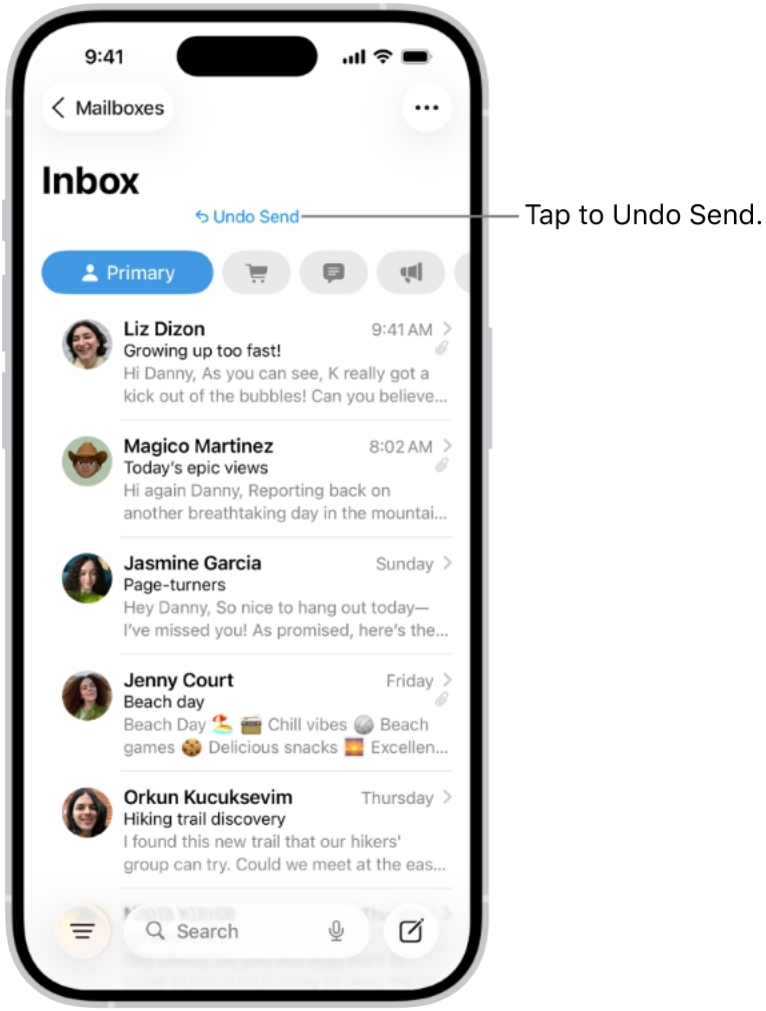
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Unsend email with Undo Send in Mail on iPhone

You can change your mind and unsend an email message in the Mail app. You can also set a delay for all emails to give yourself a little more time to unsend them.



Undo a sent email

You have 10 seconds to change your mind after you send an email message.

Tap Undo Send at the top of the inbox to pull back the message.

Delay sending emails

You can give yourself a little more time to change your mind and unsend emails by setting a delay.

Go to Settings > Apps > Mail, tap Undo Send Delay, then choose a length of time to delay outgoing email messages.

See also

Check your email in Mail on iPhone

Send email in Mail on iPhone

Save a draft in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Send email

Next
Reply to and forward emails

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

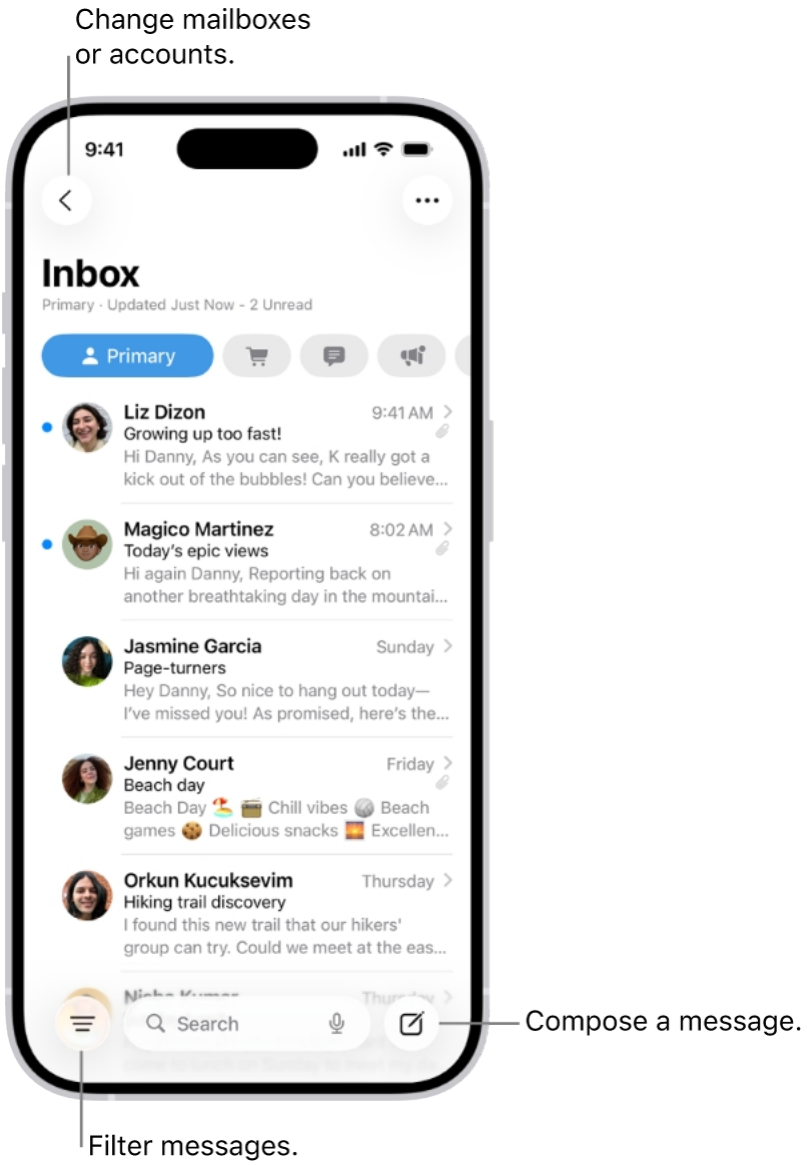
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Check your email in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can read email messages, add contacts, and preview some of the contents of a message without opening it.



Read an email

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.

2. Tap the message you want to read.

Use Remind Me to come back to a Primary message later

If you don't have time to handle a primary message right away, you can set a time and date to receive a reminder and bring the message back to the top of your inbox.

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap a Primary message, tap ↩, tap Remind Me, then choose when to be reminded.

Quickly mark multiple emails as read

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a message list, tap •••, tap Select, then select the messages you want to mark.

   Important: When you select a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, you're selecting all the messages in that category from the sender.
3. Tap ⚑ at the bottom of the message list, then choose Mark as Read.

Note: The number of unread messages shown on your Home Screen reflects the number of unread messages in your Primary category. To show your total number of unread messages in all categories, go to Settings ⚙️ > Notifications > Mail > Customize Notifications, then turn on All Unread Messages.

Preview a Primary message and a list of options

If you want to see what a Primary message is about but not open it completely, you can preview it.

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ on your iPhone.
2. In the Primary message list, touch and hold a message to preview its contents and see a list of options for replying, moving it, and more.

Show a longer preview for every email

In your inbox, Mail displays two lines of text for each email message by default. You can choose to see more lines of text without opening the message.

Go to Settings > Apps > Mail > Preview (below Message List), then choose up to five lines.

Show the whole conversation

Go to Settings > Apps > Mail, then turn on Organize by Thread.

Tip: You can also change other settings here—such as Collapse Read Messages or Most Recent Message on Top.

Show To and Cc labels in your Inbox

Go to Settings > Apps > Mail, then turn on Show To/Cc Labels (below Message List).

You can also view the To/Cc mailbox, which gathers all mail addressed to you. To show or hide it, tap < in the upper-left corner of the Mail app until you see Mailboxes, tap Edit, then select "To or Cc."

Add someone to your contacts or make them a VIP

You can save someone to your contacts to easily find their email messages again in the future, or make them a VIP so any message you receive from them is automatically starred.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In a message, tap a person's name or email address, then do one of the following:

   - *Add a new contact:* Tap View Contact Card, then tap Create New Contact. Fill in any other contact information, then tap .
   - *Add the email address to an existing contact:* Tap View Contact Card, then tap Add to Existing Contact. Select a contact, then tap .
   - *Add to your VIP list:* Tap Add to VIP.

Show or hide contact photos

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In an inbox, tap ••• at the top of the screen, then select or deselect Show Contact Photos.

View email summaries

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use it to summarize the most important points in an email message or email thread. See Use Apple Intelligence in Mail.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Automatically categorize incoming emails in Mail on iPhone

Send email in Mail on iPhone

Reply to and forward emails in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Set up a custom email domain

Next
Use categories

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

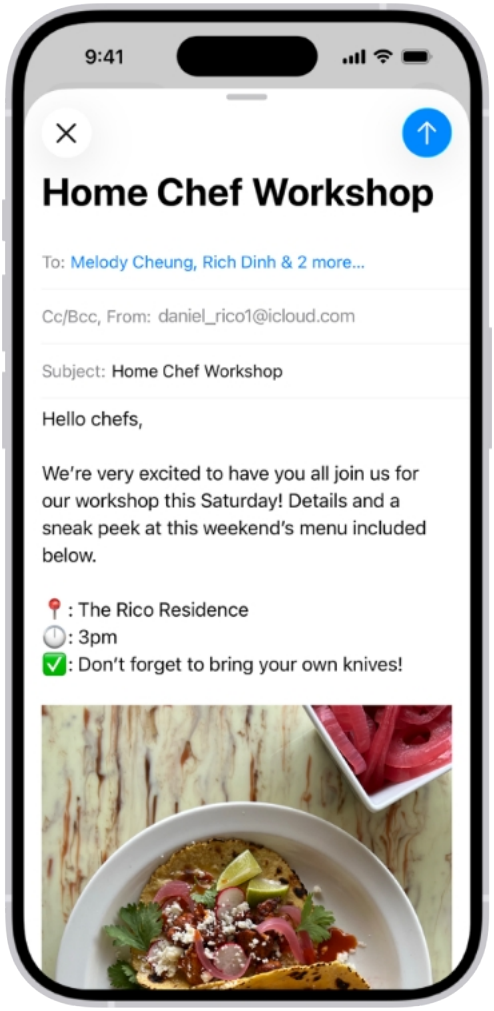
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Send email in Mail on iPhone

You can write, send, and schedule email messages from any of your email accounts.



Write and send an email

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Tap in the email, then type your message.
4. To change the formatting, tap Aa above the keyboard.

You can change the font style and color of text, use a bold or italic style, add a bulleted or numbered list, and more.

5. Tap ↑ to send your message.

Tip: You can create and add stickers to messages as you compose them. See Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard.

Add recipients

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ✎, tap the To field, then type the names of recipients.

   As you type, Mail automatically suggests people from your Contacts.

   You can also tap + to open Contacts and add recipients from there.
3. If you want to send a copy to other people, tap the Cc/Bcc field, then do any of the following:

   - Tap the Cc field, then enter the names of people you're sending a copy to.
   - Tap the Bcc field, then enter the names of people you don't want other recipients to see.

Tip: After you enter recipients, you can reorder their names in the address fields, or drag them from one address field to another—for example, to the Bcc field if you decide you don't want their names to appear.

Add a hyperlink to an email message

1. In Safari or another web browser, copy the URL of a webpage.
2. As you compose a message in Mail, highlight the text you want to link.
3. Tap Paste.

Edit a link in an email draft

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In a message you're writing, tap a link or linked text, then tap ⌄.

3. Do any of the following:

    - *Show Link Preview:* Change the hyperlinked text to a rich embedded website preview image.
    - *Open Link:* Go to that website in a web browser.
    - *Edit Link:* Change the URL of the link.
    - *Remove Link:* Delete the link from your message draft.
    - *Edit Text Description:* Change the text that's linked.

Use Camera to capture an email address

You can use Live Text to scan an email address printed on a business card, poster, and more using the Mail app on iPhone. This allows you to quickly begin emails without entering an address manually.

1. Go to the Camera app on your iPhone.
2. Position iPhone so the email address appears within the camera frame.
3. Tap the email address, then tap in the lower-right corner of the camera field.
4. To draft a message, tap the email address in the lower-left side of the camera field.

Tip: You can also capture an email address from a photo. See Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video.

Schedule an email with Send Later

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In a message you're writing, touch and hold , then choose when you want to send the message.

    To see more options, tap Send Later.

Automatically send a copy to yourself

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.

2. Tap apps, then tap Mail.
3. Turn on Always Bcc Myself (below Composing).

Send an email from a different account

If you have more than one email account, you can specify which account to send email from.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In your message draft, tap the Cc/Bcc, From field.
3. Tap the From field, then choose an account.

Use Writing Tools to summarize, proofread, and modify your email

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use Writing Tools to summarize selected text with a tap, proofread your work, and create different versions of the same text to help you find the right wording and tone. See Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Check your email in Mail on iPhone

Reply to and forward emails in Mail on iPhone

Add and remove email accounts on iPhone

Previous
Automatically clean up iCloud Mail

Next
Unsend email with Undo Send

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Automatically clean up your iCloud Mail inbox on iPhone

You can use iCloud Mail Cleanup to help keep your inbox uncluttered and free up storage by deleting old promotions, unsubscribing from mailing lists, and more. When you set up iCloud Mail Cleanup recommendations, they work on any device that has iCloud Mail turned on.

Note: iCloud Mail Cleanup may not be available in all languages.

Turn on iCloud Mail Cleanup

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap iCloud.
3. Below Saved to iCloud, tap Mail, tap iCloud Mail Cleanup, then turn on Use iCloud Mail Cleanup.

   Note: Your inbox isn't affected until you turn on a cleanup recommendation.

You can also turn on iCloud Mail Cleanup on iCloud.com. See Automatically clean up your iCloud Mail inbox on iCloud.com.

Turn on a cleanup recommendation

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap iCloud.
3. Below Saved to iCloud, tap Mail, then tap iCloud Mail Cleanup.
4. Tap Get Recommendation under one of the cleanup recommendations. For example, you can choose Clean up Transactions or Clean Up Promotions.
5. If necessary, tap the pop-up menu for a rule, then choose another option.

- *Action:* What happens to the email
- *Status:* Whether the action applies to unread emails, read emails, or all emails
- *Age:* How old the emails need to be before the action applies

💡 **Tip:** You can edit the rules for a recommendation at any point. Tap an active recommendation, then tap a pop-up menu to choose an option.

6. Tap Turn On.

Delete a cleanup recommendation

1. Go to the Settings app ⚙️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap iCloud.
3. Below Saved to iCloud, tap Mail, then tap iCloud Mail Cleanup.
4. Tap an active cleanup recommendation, then turn it off.

Use iCloud Mail Cleanup recommendations to unsubscribe

iCloud Mail Cleanup can recommend senders in the Updates and Promotions categories to unsubscribe from in bulk, and automatically move future messages to the Trash.

1. Go to the Settings app ⚙️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap iCloud.
3. Below Saved to iCloud, tap Mail, then tap iCloud Mail Cleanup.
4. Tap Get Recommendations under Unsubscribe Recommendations.
5. Select each sender you want to unsubscribe from, then tap Unsubscribe.

   Note: If you don’t see any recommendations, iCloud Mail Cleanup doesn’t have any recommendations at this time.

Remove a sender from the Unsubscribed list

If you change your mind and want to receive emails from a sender you unsubscribed from, you can remove them from the Unsubscribed list.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap iCloud.
3. Below Saved to iCloud, tap Mail, then tap iCloud Mail Cleanup.
4. Tap Unsubscribed, then tap Edit.
5. Tap ⛔ next to each sender you want to remove from the Unsubscribed list.

   To receive emails again from a sender you were previously unsubscribed from, you can sign up for updates and promotions through their website. After you resubscribe, future messages from that sender will go to your inbox.

Turn off iCloud Mail Cleanup

When you turn off iCloud Mail Cleanup, iCloud Mail stops managing old messages. It also deletes the list of any senders you unsubscribed from and stops deleting their messages.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap iCloud.
3. Below Saved to iCloud, tap Mail, tap iCloud Mail Cleanup, then turn off Use iCloud Mail Cleanup.

See also

Automatically categorize incoming emails in Mail on iPhone

Check your email in Mail on iPhone

Flag or block emails in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Use categories

Next
Send email

Table of Contents

Automatically categorize incoming emails in Mail on iPhone

The Mail app automatically sorts your email messages into categories to help you find and manage messages more quickly (not available in all countries or regions).

- *Primary:* Find personal messages and time-sensitive information.
- *Transactions:* Keep track of your confirmations, receipts, and shipping notices.
- *Updates:* Catch up on news, newsletters, and social updates.
- *Promotions:* Browse your coupon and sales emails.

Note: When a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message includes time-sensitive information, it will also be included in the Primary message list.

View all messages from a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions sender

When you tap a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, a digest view of messages from that sender opens. For example, if you open a Transactions message, all of the other Transactions messages from that sender will appear when you scroll up or down.

Note: You can take action on all messages from a sender when you open the digest view.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message.

   All of your messages in that category from the same sender appear in a list.
3. To view all of your messages from a sender, tap at the top of the sender's message list, then choose Show All Messages.

Note: Primary messages are not grouped by sender.

To view only one Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message when scrolling, go back to your inbox, tap •••, then deselect Group by Sender.

Change the category of a sender

You can manually categorize messages from a sender into the category of your choosing.

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Recategorize Primary messages from a sender:* Tap a Primary message, tap ↩️, then choose Categorize Sender.

   - *Recategorize Transactions, Updates, or Promotions messages from a sender:* Tap a Transactions 🛒, Updates 💬, or Promotions 📣 message. Tap ⋯ at the top of the message list, then choose Categorize Sender.

3. Choose a category, then tap Continue.

   All current and future messages from the sender will appear in the category you choose.

Turn off categories

💡 **Tip:** You can quickly view all emails in an inbox. Swipe left on the categories at the top of the inbox to open All Mail.

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ on your iPhone.
2. In an inbox, tap ••• at the top of the screen, then choose List View.

See also

Check your email in Mail on iPhone

Organize email in mailboxes on iPhone

Flag or block emails in Mail on iPhone

Table of Contents

Save a draft in Mail on iPhone

You can save a draft to finish later and see all draft emails from all of your accounts.

Save a draft for later

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In a message you're writing, tap ×, then tap Save Draft.

   To resume work on a message you saved as a draft, touch and hold, then select a draft.

You can also swipe down on the title bar of a message you're writing to save it for later. When you're ready to return to your message, tap its title at the bottom of the screen.

Tip: You can also hand off unfinished emails between your iPhone and your Mac. See Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices.

Show draft emails from all your accounts

If you have more than one email account, you can show draft emails from all your accounts.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap < in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.
3. Tap Edit at the top of the list.
4. Turn on the All Drafts mailbox.

See also

Send email in Mail on iPhone
Reply to and forward emails in Mail on iPhone
Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Reply to and forward emails

Next
Add email attachments

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

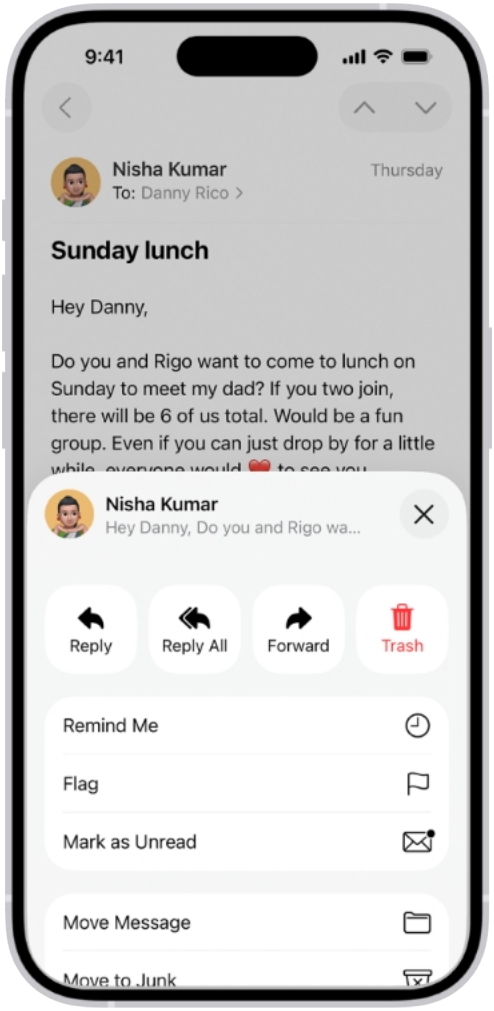
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Reply to and forward emails in Mail on iPhone

You can reply to or forward emails in the Mail app.



Reply to an email

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the message, tap , then do one of the following:

   - *Reply to just the sender:* Tap Reply.
   - *Reply to the sender and the other recipients:* Tap Reply All.

3. Type your response, then tap ↑ to send.

Quote some text when you reply to an email

When you reply to an email message, you can include text from the sender to clarify what you're responding to.

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ on your iPhone.
2. In the sender's message, touch and hold the first word of the text, then drag to the last word. (See Select, cut, copy, and paste text.)
3. Tap ↩, tap Reply, then type your message.

Note: To turn off the indentation of quoted text, go to Settings ⚙️ > Apps > Mail > Increase Quote Level (below Composing), then turn off Increase Quote Level.

Forward an email

You can send an email message forward to new recipients.

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap the message, tap ↩, then tap Forward.

   If there are attachments in the original message—like photos or documents—you can decide whether to include them in the forwarded message. Choose Include or Don't Include.
3. Enter the email addresses of the new recipients.
4. Tap in the message, then type your response. The forwarded message appears below.

Follow up on emails

If you send an email message and don't receive a response for several days, the message automatically moves back to the top of your inbox to help you remember to follow up.

To turn off Follow Up Suggestions, go to Settings ⚙️ > Apps > Mail, then turn off Follow Up Suggestions.

Set up an automatic reply in Mail

On iCloud.com, you can set up an automatic reply to respond to incoming email messages or automatically forward messages to another inbox. See Set up an automatic reply in Mail on iCloud.com.

Use Smart Reply

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use it to suggest a reply to an email you receive. See Use Apple Intelligence in Mail.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Check your email in Mail on iPhone

Send email in Mail on iPhone

Save a draft in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Unsend email with Undo Send

Next
Save an email draft

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

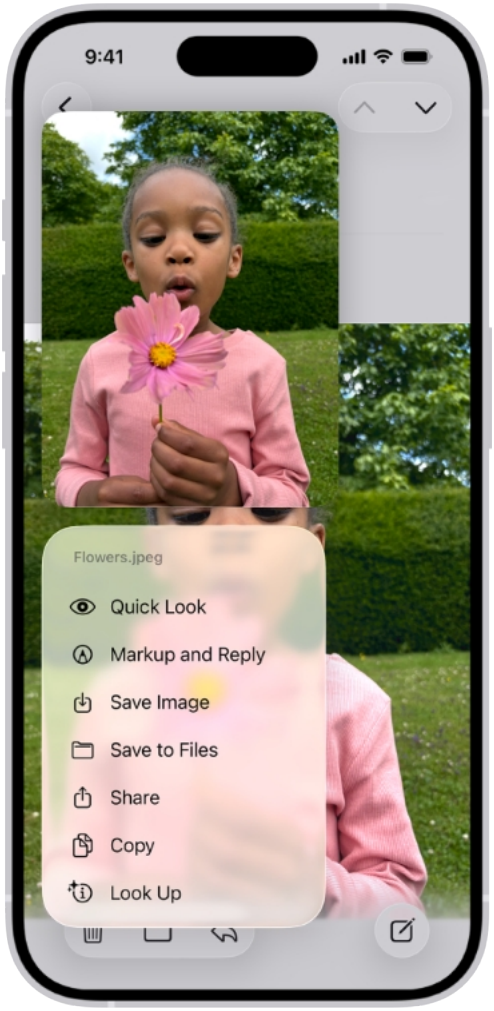
Table of Contents

Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone

You can download attachments that are sent to you in email messages or easily search for messages with attachments in your mailboxes.

Download an attachment sent to you

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In a message, touch and hold the attachment, then do one of the following:
   - *Save it in the Photos app:* Choose Save Image.
   - *Save it in the Files app:* Choose Save to Files.
   - *Open it with another app:* Tap Share, then choose the app.



Tip: You can identify and learn more about objects in photos you receive. Touch and hold the photo, then choose Look Up. See Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone.

Quickly fill out forms you receive in Mail

You can use AutoFill to quickly fill out forms you receive in the Mail app, and then send the form back to the original sender without leaving Mail.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In the message, tap the attachment to open the document.
3. Tap ••• near the bottom of the screen, then tap Form Filling.
4. Tap a blank field to enter text using the onscreen keyboard. To fill out another line, tap it, then enter text.
5. Tap , then tap Reply to [*name*].

Find emails with attachments

If you're having trouble finding an attachment someone sent you, you can filter your email messages to show only those with attachments.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In a mailbox, tap to turn on filtering.
3. Tap "Filtered by," then turn on Only Mail with Attachments.

Tip: You can also show emails messages with attachments from all accounts in one mailbox. To set up the attachment mailbox, tap at the top left, tap Edit, then select Attachments. The attachments mailbox appears in the mailboxes list with your other mailboxes.

See also

Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Annotate email attachments on iPhone

Previous
Add email attachments

Next
Annotate email attachments

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Annotate email attachments on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can give feedback on a draft, decorate a photo, and more. You can also draw and write on a photo, video, or PDF attachment, then save it or send it back.



1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In the message, tap the attachment, then tap .
3. Using the drawing tools, draw with your finger.

4. When you're finished, tap ✓, then choose to reply to the attachment sender, start a new message, save the annotated attachment to your files, or discard your edited attachment.

See also

Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Previous
Download email attachments

Next
Set email notifications

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

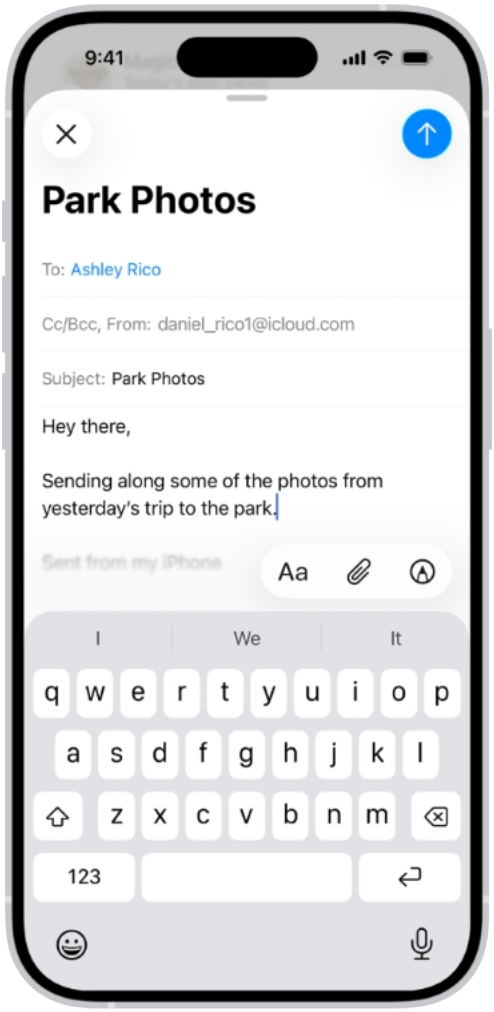
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

You can attach photos, videos, and documents to an email message. You can also scan a paper document and send it as a PDF attachment, or draw directly in a message and send the drawing as an attachment. Depending on the file size, the attachment might appear inline with the text in the message or as at the end of the message.



Attach a photo, video, or document to an email

You can attach and send documents, videos, and photos in your email messages for recipients to easily download and save.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.

2. Tap in the message where you want to insert the attachment, then tap 📎 above the keyboard.
3. Do one of the following:

    - *Attach a document:* Tap Attach File, then locate the document in Files.

      In Files, tap Recent, Shared, or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap a file, location, or folder to open it.

    - *Attach a saved photo or video:* Tap Photo Library, then choose a photo or video. Tap ✅ to return to the message.

    - *Take a new photo or video and attach it to the message:* Tap Take Photo or Video, then take a new photo or video. Tap Use Photo or Use Video to insert it into your message, or tap Retake if you want to reshoot it.

Note: If your file exceeds the maximum size allowed by your email account, follow the onscreen instructions to send it using Mail Drop. See the Apple Support article Mail Drop limits.

Scan and attach a document to an email

You can scan a paper document and send it as a PDF.

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the message where you want to insert the scanned document, then tap 📎 above the keyboard.
3. Tap Scan Document.
4. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen—iPhone automatically captures the page.

   To capture the page manually, tap ⚪ or press a volume button. To turn the flash on or off, tap ⚡.
5. Tap Retake or Keep Scan, scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.
6. To make changes to the saved scan, tap it, then do any of the following:

    - *Crop the image:* Tap ⌗.

    - *Apply a filter:* Tap ⊛.

- *Rotate the image:* Tap .
- *Delete the scan:* Tap .

Create and attach a drawing to your email

You can draw in an email message to demonstrate ideas that are hard to put into words. Your drawing is added to the message as an attachment for recipients to view and download.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the message where you want to insert a drawing, then tap above the keyboard.
3. Choose a drawing tool and color, then write or draw with your finger.

   See Write and draw in documents with Markup.
4. When you're finished, tap , then tap Insert Drawing.

To resume work on a drawing, tap the drawing in the message, tap in the menu that appears, then tap Markup.

See also

Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Annotate email attachments on iPhone

Previous
Save an email draft

Next
Download email attachments

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Table of Contents

Filter emails in Mail on iPhone

You can use filters to temporarily show only certain email messages—the ones that meet all the criteria you select in the filter list. For example, if you select Unread and Only Mail with Attachments, you see only unread messages that have attachments.

You can also specify which email accounts are visible in Mail when a particular Focus is on.

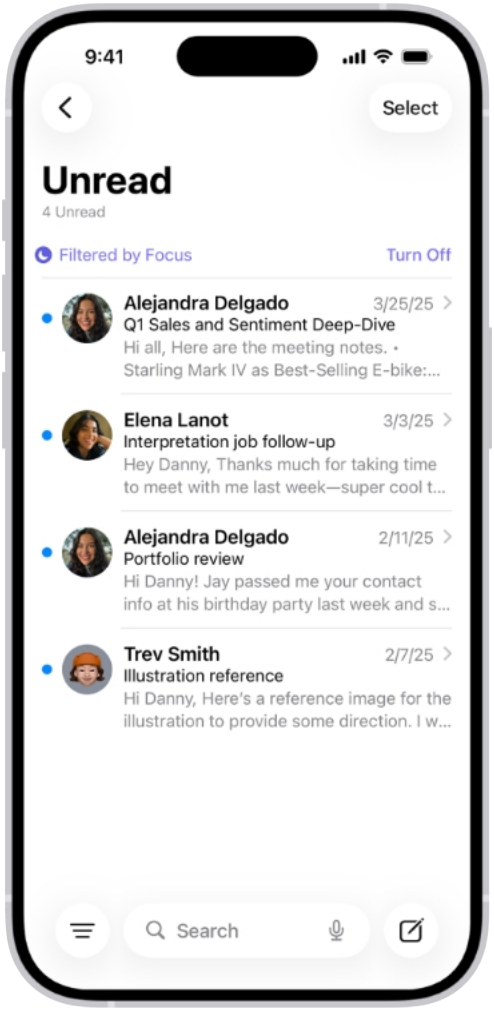
Filter emails

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the bottom-left corner of a mailbox list.
3. Tap “Filtered by,” then select or turn on the criteria for messages you want to view.

To turn off all filters, tap . To turn off a specific filter, tap “Filtered by,” then deselect it.

Match a mail account to a Focus

You can choose which email accounts to receive notifications from when a Focus is on. For example, you can set a filter to show only your work email account and its notifications when your Work Focus is on.



1. Go to Settings > Focus, then tap a Focus.

   If you don't see the Focus option you want, tap +. See Set up a Focus.

2. Tap Add Filter below Focus Filters, then tap Mail.

3. Select the accounts you want to see in your inbox during that Focus.

Prioritize email

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use Priority Messages to quickly view your most urgent emails. See Use Apple Intelligence in Mail.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Flag or block emails in Mail on iPhone

Table of Contents

Organize email in mailboxes on iPhone

You can manage your email in mailboxes.

Manage an email with a swipe

While viewing a message list, you can use a simple swipe to move individual emails to the Trash, mark them as read, and more.

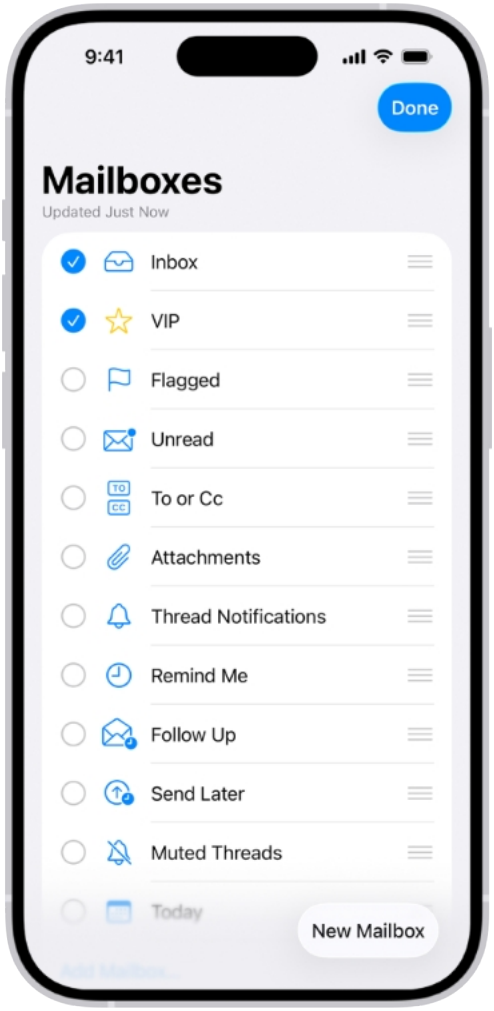
1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In a message list, do any of the following:

   - *Reveal a list of actions:* Slowly drag a message to the left until the menu appears, then tap an item.
   - *Quickly use the rightmost action:* Swipe all the way to the left.
   - *Reveal other actions:* Swipe right.

To choose the actions you want to appear in the menus, go to Settings > Apps > Mail > Swipe Options (below Message List).

Organize your mail with mailboxes

You can choose which mailboxes to view, reorder your mailboxes, create new ones, or rename or delete mailboxes. (Some mailboxes can’t be changed.)



1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. To organize your mailboxes, tap < in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.
3. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:

- *View mailboxes:* Select the checkboxes next to the mailboxes you want to include in the mailboxes list.
- *Reorder mailboxes:* Touch and hold ≡ next to a mailbox until it lifts up, then drag it to the new position.
- *Create a new mailbox:* Tap New Mailbox in the lower-right corner, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Rename a mailbox:* Tap the mailbox, then tap the title. Delete the name, then enter a new name.
- *Delete a mailbox:* Tap the mailbox, then tap Delete Mailbox.

Move emails to a mailbox

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *While viewing a Primary message:* Tap , then choose a mailbox.
   - *While viewing a message list:* Tap Select, then select the messages you want to move by tapping their checkboxes. Tap at the bottom of the message list, then choose a mailbox.

     Important: When you select a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, you're selecting all the messages in that category from the sender.
   - *While viewing a sender's digest view:* Swipe left on a message, tap , tap Move Message, then choose a mailbox.

View emails from one account at a time

If you use multiple email accounts with the Mail app, you can use the mailboxes list to view messages from one account at a time.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes, then tap a mailbox below the email account you want to access.

   Each mailbox listed below a particular email account only displays messages from that email account. For example, to view only messages sent from your iCloud account, tap iCloud, then tap Sent.

Move emails to Junk

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *While viewing a Primary message:* Tap , then tap Move to Junk.
   - *While viewing a message list:* Tap Select, then select the messages you want to move by tapping their checkboxes. Tap at the bottom of the message list, then tap Move to Junk.

Important: When you select a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, you're selecting all the messages in that category from the sender.

- *While viewing a sender's digest view:* Swipe left on a message, tap , then tap Move to Junk.

See also

Automatically categorize incoming emails in Mail on iPhone

Flag or block emails in Mail on iPhone

Filter emails in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Search for email

Next
Flag or block emails

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

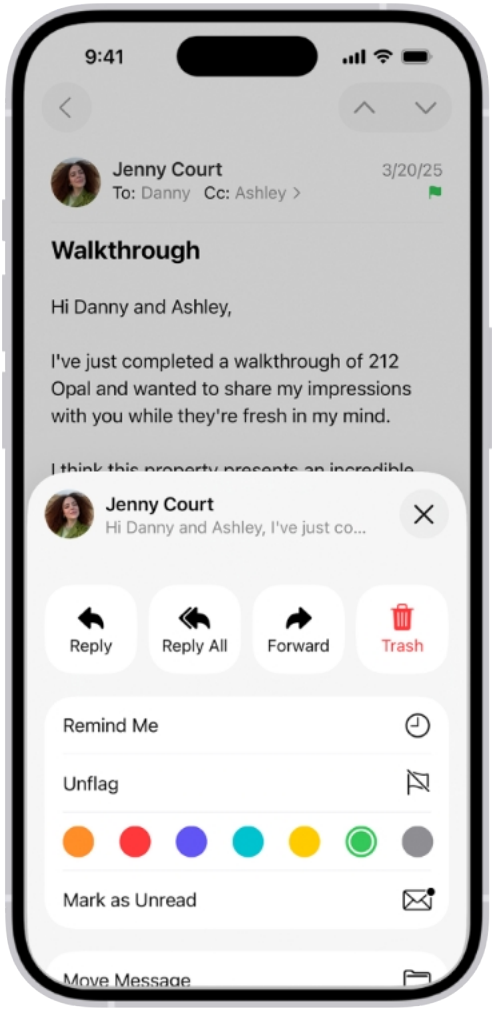
Table of Contents

Flag or block emails in Mail on iPhone

You can flag important email messages, create flagged mailboxes, and flag messages from VIPs. You can also block messages from specified senders.

Flag an email

You can flag an important email message to make it easier to find later. A message you flag remains in your Inbox and also appears in the Flagged mailbox.



1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

- *Flag a Primary message:* Swipe left on the Primary message, then choose Flag.
- *Flag all Transactions, Updates, or Promotions messages from a single sender:* Swipe left on a message in the Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message list, then choose Flag.
- *Flag a single Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message:* Tap a message to open the sender's digest view, swipe left on the message, then tap .

To change or remove a flag, open the message, tap , tap Flag, then select another color, or tap Unflag.

Note: Flags you add to a message appear on that message in Mail on all your Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Create a Flagged mailbox

You can add a Flagged mailbox so all your flagged email messages are easily accessible in one location.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.
3. Tap Edit, then select Flagged.

Flag emails from your VIPs

Add important people to your VIP list, so their email messages appear with a VIP flag and in the VIP mailbox. See Add someone to your contacts or make them a VIP.

Block email from specified senders

You can block an email address to prevent a particular sender from emailing you in the future.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a message from the sender you want to block.
3. Tap their email address, tap View Contact Card, then tap Block this Contact.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Search for email in Mail on iPhone

You can search for email messages using different criteria.

Search for text in an email

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field and type the text you're looking for.
3. Choose between searching all mailboxes or the current mailbox above the results list.
4. Tap a message in the results list to read it.

Mail searches the address fields, the subject, the email body, documents, and links. The most relevant messages appear in Top Hits above the search suggestions as you type.

Tip: To quickly find travel booking confirmations for flights and hotels, enter the three-letter airport code or the city name.

Search by timeframe

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field of a mailbox list.
3. Enter a timeframe, like "September," then tap to see all emails from that timeframe.

   To narrow the search, tap the search field again, then enter a keyword, like "meeting."

Search by email attributes

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In an inbox, tap the search field.

Before you begin typing, you may see suggested recent searches, recent documents, and links listed.

3. Enter your search criteria, then tap one of the listed items, or do any of the following:

   - *Find all flagged messages:* Enter “flag” in the search field, scroll down, then tap “Message is flagged” below Suggestions.
   - *Find all unread messages:* Enter “unread” in the search field, scroll down, then tap “Message is unread” below Suggestions.
   - *Find all messages with attachments:* Enter “attachment” in the search field, scroll down, then tap “Messages with attachments” below Suggestions.

See also

Automatically categorize incoming emails in Mail on iPhone

Set email notifications on iPhone

Organize email in mailboxes on iPhone

Previous
Set email notifications

Next
Organize email in mailboxes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set email notifications on iPhone

You can change your Mail notification settings and choose which mailboxes and email threads to receive notifications from.

Mute email notifications

To reduce interruptions from busy email threads, you can mute notifications from messages in a conversation.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Open a message in the conversation.
3. Tap, then tap Mute.

To specify what you want done with email messages you muted, go to Settings > Apps > Mail > Muted Thread Action, then select an option.

Receive notifications about replies to an email or thread

You can set up mail notifications that let you know when you receive email messages in favorite mailboxes or from your VIPs.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *When reading a message:* Tap, then tap Notify Me.
   - *When writing a message:* Tap the Subject field, tap in the Subject field, then tap Notify Me.

To change how notifications appear, go to Settings > Apps > Mail > Notifications.

Change your Mail notification settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Notifications, then make sure that Allow Notifications is on.
4. Tap Customize Notifications, then tap the email account you want to make changes to.
5. Select the settings you want, like Alerts or Badges. When you turn on Alerts, you have the option to customize your sounds by changing the alert tone or ringtone.

You can set times when you want to allow notifications from the Mail app. See Change notification settings.

See also

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Flag or block emails in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Annotate email attachments

Next
Search for email

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Add a Mail widget to your iPhone Home Screen

Widgets show you current information from your favorite apps at a glance. On iPhone, you can add a Mail widget and customize which mailbox it shows on your Home Screen. Choose between displaying recent unread emails, new emails from your VIPs, or any other mailbox.

To add a Mail widget, see Add, edit, and remove widgets.

See also

Change your Mail settings on iPhone

Previous
Delete and recover emails

Next
Print emails

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Change your Mail settings on iPhone

You can adjust your preferences for the Mail app in Settings. Customize your email signature, mark addresses outside specific domains, and more.

Customize your Mail settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Adjust any of the following settings:

- *Accounts:* Add or remove email accounts.
- *Fetch New Data:* Set a fetch schedule for your email accounts.
- *Siri:* Allow Siri to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Mail.
- *Search:* Allow content from Mail to appear in Search.
- *Notifications:* Allow notifications, choose the alert style and Lock Screen appearance, and customize notifications by account.
- *Default Mail App:* Choose the email app for new emails you draft outside of a specific app, such as emails you create using Siri.
- *Message List:* Change settings for your message list, such as showing To/Cc labels, choosing the length of email previews, and assigning swipe actions.
- *Messages:* Turn on Privacy Protection, Ask Before Deleting, and Follow Up Suggestions.

- *Threading:* Turn on Organize by Thread to group emails in a conversation together in your message list. Adjust other settings for how threads appear and muting threads.

- *Composing:* Customize settings for writing emails such as including attachments with replies, showing link previews, and more.

- *Undo Send Delay:* Set a time period of up to 30 seconds to allow yourself to unsend a message.

Customize your email signature

You can customize the email signature that appears automatically at the bottom of every message you send.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Signature (below Composing).
4. Tap the text field, then edit your signature.

   You can only use text in your Mail signatures.

Tip: If you have more than one email account, tap Per Account to set a different signature for each account.

Mark addresses outside certain domains

When you're addressing an email message to a recipient who's not in your organization's domain, you can have the recipient's name appear in red to alert you.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mark Addresses (below Composing).
4. Enter the domains that are in your organization—ones that you don't want marked in red.

   You can enter multiple domains separated by commas (for example, "apple.com, example.org").

The names of recipients in domains outside your organization appear in red, whether you send them an email or receive one from them.

See also

Organize email in mailboxes on iPhone

Set email notifications on iPhone

Previous
Use Mail Privacy Protection

Next
Delete and recover emails

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

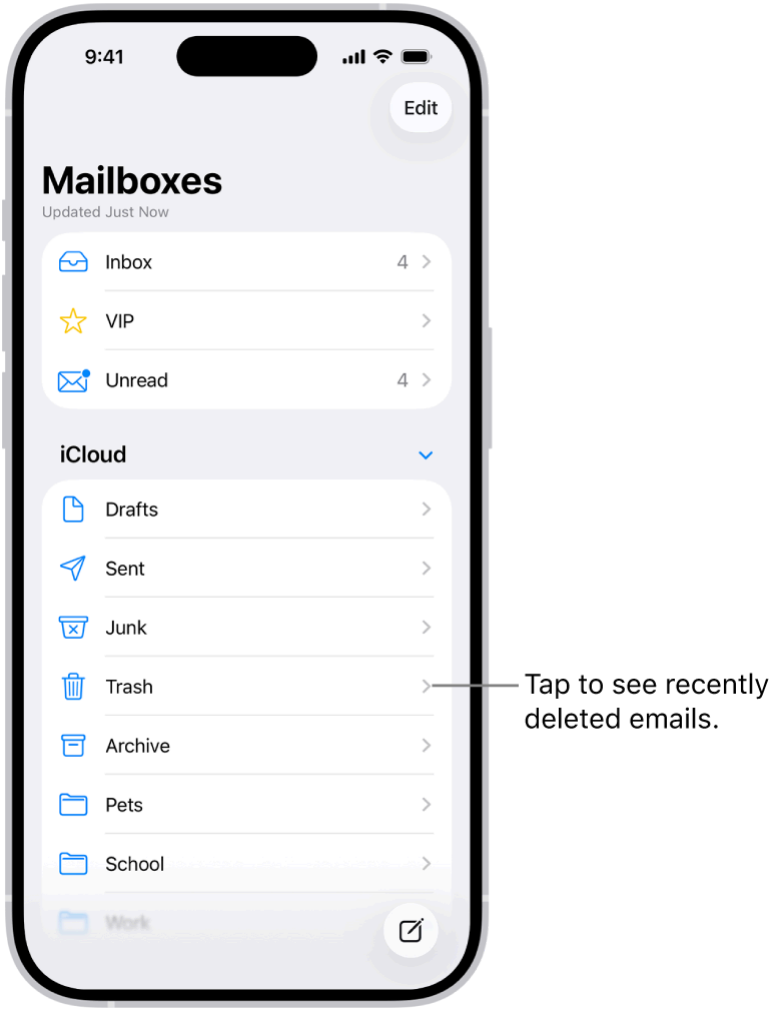
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Delete and recover emails in Mail on iPhone

You can delete or archive email messages you no longer need. If you change your mind, you can recover deleted messages.



Delete emails

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

    - *While viewing a Primary message:* Tap .

- *While viewing a message list:* Tap Select, then select the messages you want to delete by tapping their checkboxes. Tap 🗑 at the bottom of the message list.

  Important: When you select a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, you're selecting all the messages in that category from the sender.

- *While viewing a sender's digest view:* Swipe left on a message, then tap 🗑.

To turn off the deletion confirmation, go to Settings ⚙ > Apps > Mail, then turn off Ask Before Deleting (below Messages).

Recover a deleted email

1. Go to the Mail app ✉ on your iPhone.
2. Tap ‹ in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.
3. Tap Trash, then tap the message you want to recover.
4. Tap 🗀, then choose another mailbox.

💡 **Tip:** To easily see all deleted messages, you can add a mailbox with deleted messages across all your accounts. Tap ‹ in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes, tap Edit at the top right, then select the All Trash mailbox.

Archive instead of delete

Instead of deleting email messages, you can archive them in the Archive mailbox.

1. Go to the Settings app ⚙ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mail Accounts, then do one of the following:

   - *If you're using an iCloud email account:* Tap iCloud, then tap Mailbox Behaviors.

   - *If you're using another email account:* Tap an email account, tap Account Settings, then tap Advanced.

4. Select Archive Mailbox (below Move Discarded Messages Into).

When this option is turned on, to delete a message instead of archiving it, touch and hold , then tap Trash Message.

Decide how long to keep deleted emails

With some email clients, you can set how long deleted messages stay in the Trash mailbox.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mail Accounts, then do one of the following:
   - *If you're using an iCloud email account:* Tap iCloud, then tap Mailbox Behaviors.
   - *If you're using another email account:* Tap an email account, tap Account Settings, then tap Advanced.
4. Tap Remove, then select a time interval.

Note: Some email services might override your selection; for example, iCloud doesn't keep deleted messages longer than 30 days, even if you select Never.

See also

Organize email in mailboxes on iPhone

Change your Mail settings on iPhone

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Previous
Change Mail settings

Next
Add a Mail widget to your Home Screen

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use Mail Privacy Protection on iPhone

In the Mail app, turn on Mail Privacy Protection to make it harder for senders to learn about your Mail activity. Mail Privacy Protection hides your IP address so senders can't link it to your other online activity or determine your exact location. It also prevents senders from seeing if you've opened the email message they sent you.

1. Go to Settings > Apps > Mail.
2. Tap Privacy Protection, then turn on Protect Mail Activity.

   Note: When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can also use Hide My Email to generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your personal email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters. See Use Hide My Email.

See also

Flag or block emails in Mail on iPhone

Change your Mail settings on iPhone

Previous
Use Hide My Email

Next
Change Mail settings

Helpful? Yes No

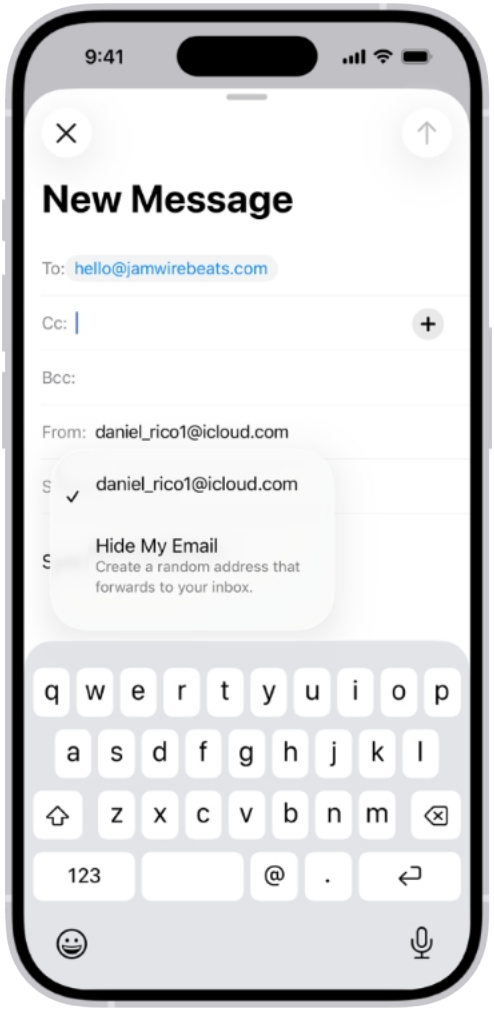
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Hide My Email in Mail on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, Hide My Email lets you send and receive email messages that forward to your real email account, to keep your real email address private. You can also generate unique email addresses on demand in the Mail app.



Send an email with Hide My Email

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Add a recipient and subject for your message.

Note: You can only send a message using Hide My Email to one recipient at a time.

4. Tap the From field, tap it again, then tap Hide My Email. A new, unique email address appears in the From field.

Tip: When the recipient replies to a message you sent with Hide My Email, their reply forwards to your real email address. To set a Forward To address, see Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings.

Reply to an email using Hide My Email

When you receive an email message sent to one of your unique, random addresses, you can reply using the same address. This allows you to continue the conversation and keep your real email address private. To reply, do the following:

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the message, tap, then tap Reply.
3. Type your response.

   You can tap the From field to view the email address the recipient sees.

Manage the addresses generated by Hide My Email

You can create, deactivate, reactivate, and manage the random addresses you create with Hide My Email. See Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings.

See also

Use Mail Privacy Protection on iPhone

Send email in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Filter emails

Next
Use Mail Privacy Protection

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Set your location and map view in Maps on iPhone

You can find your location on a map and switch to different map views for different details. You can choose from Explore, Driving, Transit, and Satellite views. In select cities, Maps provides enhanced detail for elevation, roads, trees, buildings, landmarks, and more.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries or regions. For more information, see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



WARNING: For important information about navigation and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information.

Allow Maps to use your precise location

To find your location and provide accurate directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Precise Location must be on.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *If Maps displays a message that Location Services is off:* Tap the message, tap Turn On in Settings, then turn on Location Services.

   - *If Maps displays a message that Precise Location is off:* Tap the message, tap Turn On in Settings, tap Location, then turn on Precise Location.

Cellular data rates may apply (see View or change cellular data settings).

Note: To get useful location-related information in Maps, leave Significant Locations turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services. See Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services.

Show your current location

See Search for places to navigate from your current location to another.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .

   Your position is marked in the middle of the map. The top of the map is north.

   To show your heading instead of north at the top, tap .

   To resume showing north, tap or .

Switch to a different map view

The button at the lower right of a map indicates if the current map is for exploring , driving , riding transit , or in satellite view . You can change the map type at any time.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Map Modes button (, , ,) at the lower right.

3. Choose another map type, then tap ✕.

You can get driving, cycling, walking, and transit directions or get traffic and weather info in Maps.

Note: Apple is committed to keeping personal information about your location safe and private. Read more about Apple's commitment: go to Settings > Apps > Maps, then tap About Apple Maps & Privacy. You can also clear your location history or delete recent directions.

See also

Set your home, work, or school address in Maps on iPhone

View a route overview or a list of turns in Maps on iPhone

Share your estimated time of arrival in Maps on iPhone

Choose a default travel mode and Maps units on iPhone

Previous
Get started with Maps

Next
Explore 3D maps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Look around places in Maps on iPhone

You can look around some places with 360-degree panoramic views.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries or regions. For availability, see Look Around on the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. In select cities, tap near the bottom of a map.
3. To change the view, do any of the following:
   - *Pan:* Drag a finger left or right on the scene.

- *Move forward:* Tap the scene.
- *Zoom in or out:* Pinch open or closed.
- *View another point of interest:* Switch from full-screen view, then tap elsewhere on the map, or drag the map.
- *Switch to or from full-screen view:* Tap or .
- *Remove labels in full-screen view:* Swipe up from the place name near the bottom of the screen, then tap Hide Labels .

4. When finished, tap Done.

See also

Set your location and map view in Maps on iPhone

View 3D maps on iPhone

Previous
Explore 3D maps

Next
Set your home, work, or school address

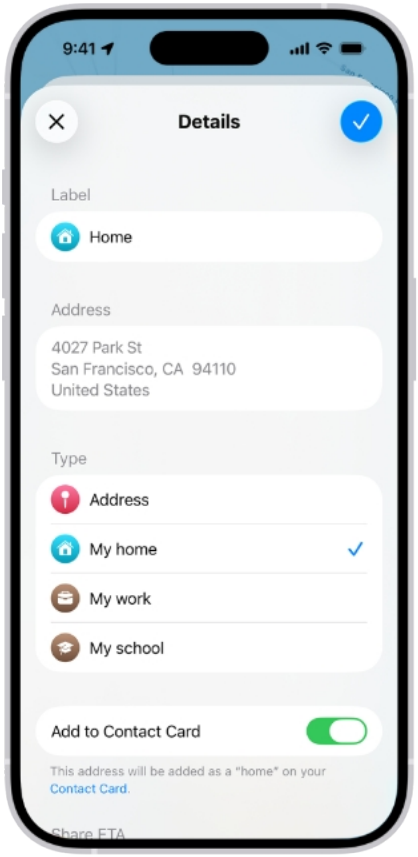
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get started with Maps on iPhone

The Maps app helps you navigate the world around you, whether you're getting directions to a new destination, discovering local businesses, or exploring unfamiliar areas with real-time traffic updates.

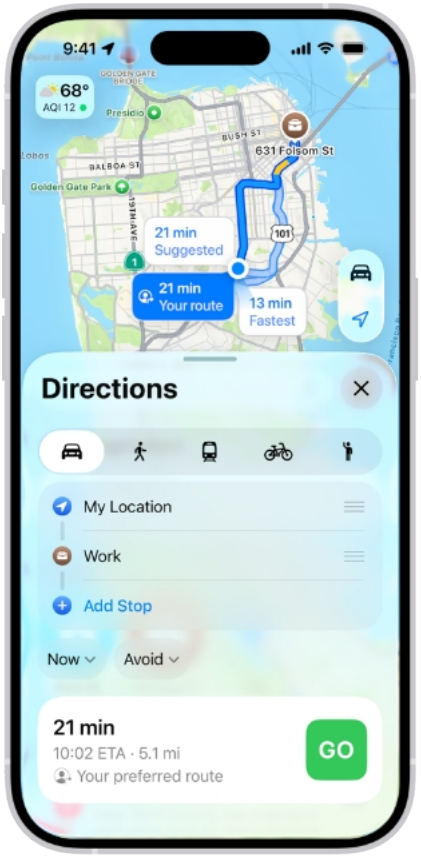


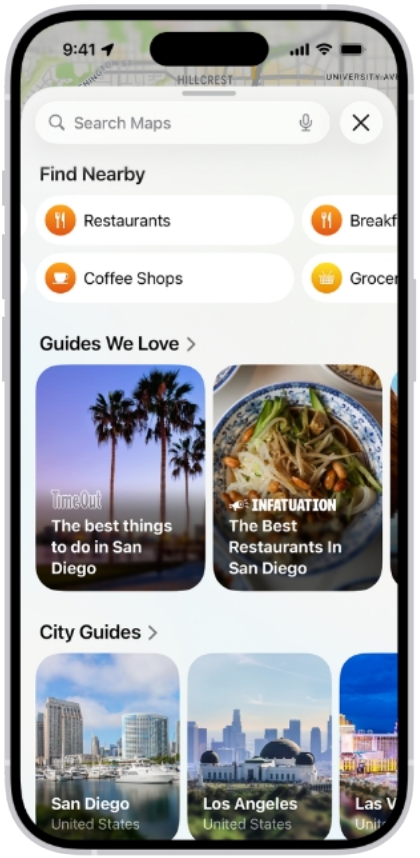
Set your go-to addresses

Quickly access directions by saving the locations you travel to and from most. Below Places, tap +. Tap the search field, enter an address, then tap a result. Assign it to a type—home, work, or school—then tap ✓.

Navigate with ease

Get step-by-step directions to wherever you're headed, however you want to get there. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter a location in the search field. Tap Directions, tap your travel mode (, , , or), then tap Go.





Discover what's nearby

When you're in an unfamiliar area, find nearby places like restaurants, shops, or services. Tap the search field and simply start typing, or tap a category below Find Nearby, like Restaurants.

See the world in added detail

Depending on the location, you can explore it in 360-degree panoramic views. In select cities, tap 🔭 near the bottom of a map.



Want to learn more?

- Set your home, work, or school address in Maps on iPhone
- Use Maps on iPhone
- Search for places in Maps on iPhone
- Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone
- View 3D maps on iPhone
- Look around places in Maps on iPhone

Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

Previous
Print emails

Next
Set your location and map view

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Print an email or attachment in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can print a message or an attachment.

Print an email

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. In the message, tap, then tap Print.

Print an attachment or picture

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an attachment to view it, tap, then choose Print.

See also

Print from iPhone

Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Add a Mail widget to your Home Screen

Next
Get started with Maps

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View 3D maps on iPhone

While exploring any location on a map, you can rotate the map to see an area with extra dimensions.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries or regions. For availability, see Detailed City Experience on the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Move, zoom, or rotate a map or globe

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Move around in a map:* Drag the map.
   - *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap, then drag up to zoom in or drag down to zoom out. Or pinch open or closed on the map.
   - *Rotate the map:* Touch and hold the map with two fingers, then rotate your fingers.

     To show north at the top of the screen after you rotate the map, tap .

View a 3D map

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. To turn a 2D map into a 3D map, do one of the following:

   - Drag two fingers up.
   - On the Satellite map, tap 3D near the lower right.

- In select cities, tap 3D near the top right. (See Detailed City Experience on the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.)

3. While looking at a 3D map, you can do any of the following:

   - *Adjust the angle:* Drag two fingers up or down.
   - *See buildings and other small places in 3D:* Zoom in.
   - *View the Earth:* Zoom out until the map changes to a globe. Drag the globe to rotate it, or zoom in or out to explore details for mountain ranges, deserts, oceans, and more.
   - *Return to a 2D map:* Tap 2D near the lower right.



You can also look around places.

See also

Set your location and map view in Maps on iPhone

Look around places in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Set your location and map view

Next
Look around places

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

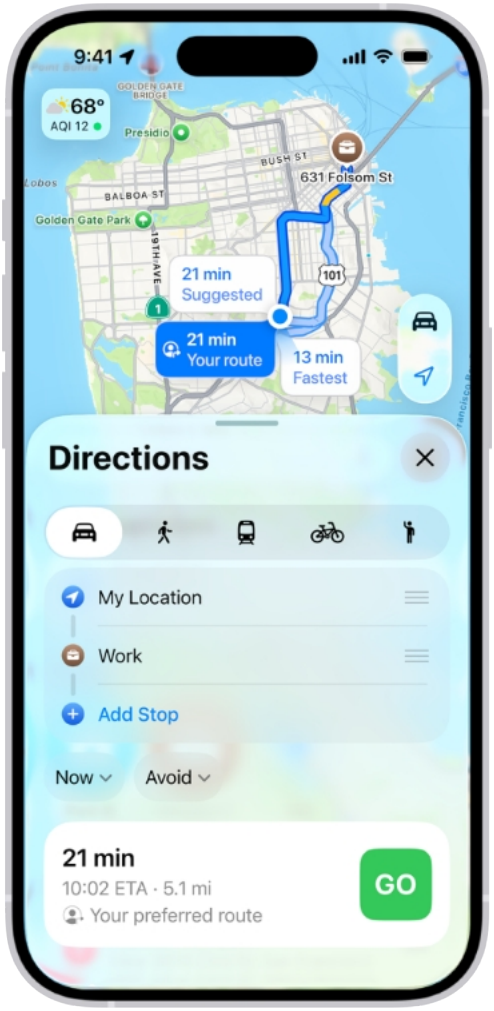
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Maps on iPhone

You can get travel directions using the Maps app, the Maps widget, Siri, CarPlay, or other devices. You can also get them on your Mac before you leave.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Important: To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Precise Location must be turned on. Cellular data rates may apply (see View or change cellular data settings).

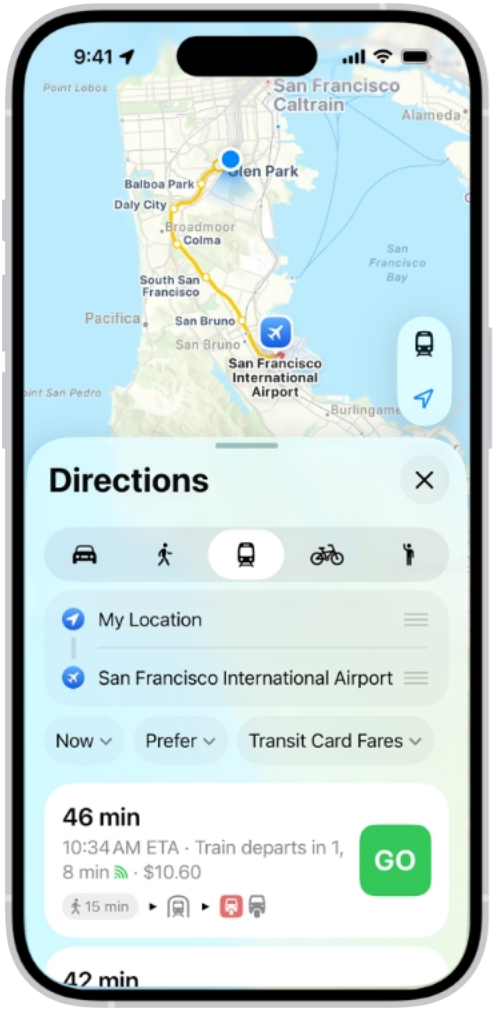
Get directions

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter a location in the search field.
3. Tap Directions or tap your travel mode (driving, walking, transit, cycling, or rideshare.)
4. Do one of the following:

   - *If your starting point is My Location:* Tap Go for the route you want to take. As you travel along your route, Maps speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.
   - *If your starting point is another location:* Tap Steps for the route you want to take.

You can add stops to your route.

Tip: If you know you'll lose your internet connection on your route, you can send yourself a list of upcoming directions or download offline maps.



Select travel mode.

Use the Maps widget

To get directions to a likely destination and track your ETA during navigation, add the Maps widget to your Home Screen. The Maps widget shows you a preview of your commute so you know what to expect before you leave.



See Add, edit, and remove widgets.

Get directions using CarPlay, your Mac, or your Apple Watch

In addition to using your iPhone, you can also get directions from the following:

- *Your car:* After you connect your iPhone to CarPlay, you can use CarPlay to get driving directions, estimate your arrival time, and more. See Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay.
- *Your Mac:* Before a big trip or a day of cycling, you can plan your route on your Mac, then choose File > Share > Send to [*your iPhone*]. See Plan a route in the Maps User Guide for Mac.

- *Your Apple Watch:* You can use Apple Watch to get driving, walking, transit, and cycling directions, which you can follow on the watch face and your iPhone. See Get directions on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

When you sign in to your Apple Account, you can hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices to see directions elsewhere.

Siri: You can use Siri to get directions and stay focused on the road. For example, ask Siri something like, “Find a charging station” or “Give me directions home.” See Use Siri to get directions.

See also

Share your estimated time of arrival in Maps on iPhone

View a route overview or a list of turns in Maps on iPhone

Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Set your home, work, or school address

Next
Get driving directions

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

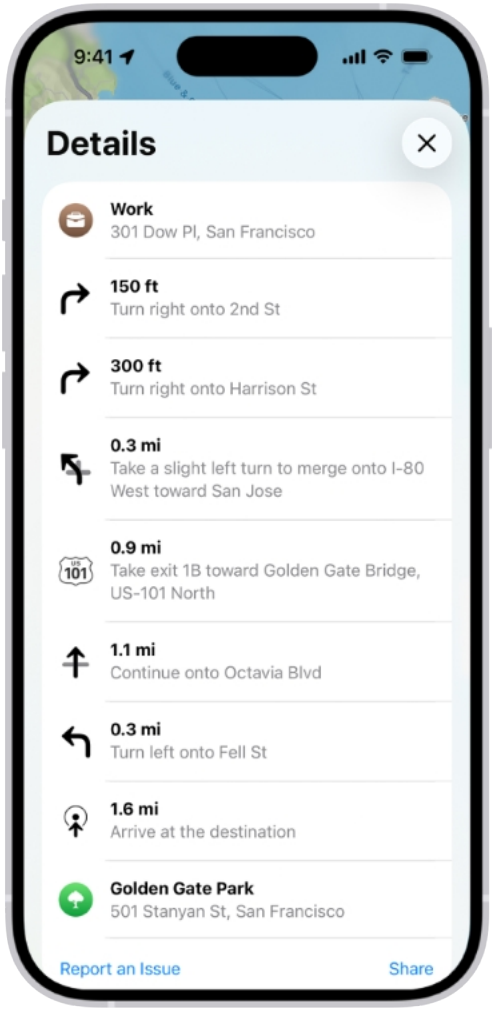
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View a route overview or a list of turns in Maps on iPhone

While following driving, cycling, transit, and walking directions, you can get an overview of your route and a list of upcoming turns.



Get an overview of your route

You can zoom out to see your entire route onscreen, from the starting point to the destination.

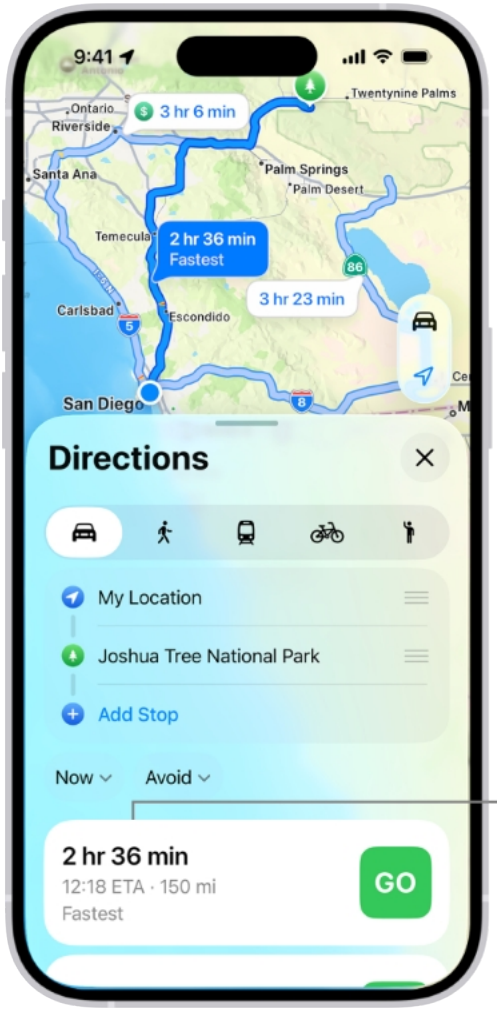
1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Get directions.
3. Tap .

To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap .

View a list of upcoming directions

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Get directions.
3. Tap anywhere on the route card *except* the Go button.
4. Scroll down to see more directions.
5. When finished, tap .



View the directions in a list.

Share a route with someone

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Get directions.
3. Tap anywhere on the route card *except* the Go button.
4. Scroll to the bottom of the card, tap Share, then choose a way to share the route.

See also

Use Maps on iPhone

Share your estimated time of arrival in Maps on iPhone

Save walks or hikes in Maps on iPhone

Download offline maps on iPhone

Previous
Set up electric vehicle routing

Next
Change or add stops to your route

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

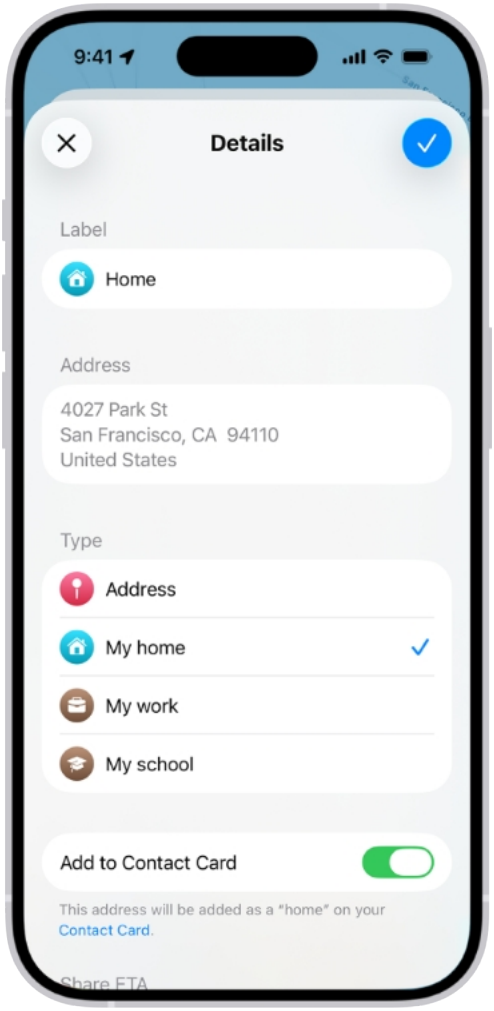
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Set your home, work, or school address in Maps on iPhone

You can set your home, work, or school address for one-tap access to real-time traffic updates, directions, and notifications, making your travel more efficient.



Set your home, work, or school address

You can set a home or work address that's different from the home or work address on your contact card in the Contacts app.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Below Places, tap + (you may need to swipe left).
3. Tap the search field, then enter the address you're looking for.
4. Tap the address, then assign it to a type: My home, My work, or My school.
5. Tap ✓.

Note: If you change your home, work, or school address after you're asked to sync Maps to My Card, you may need to update your address in Contacts. See Add or edit your home address.

Refine the location of an address

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Below Places, touch and hold the address you want to refine.
3. Tap Edit Details.
4. Tap Refine Location on the Map, then drag the map.
5. Tap ✓.

Change the details of a set address

You can change the details of your set addresses if those addresses change.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Below Places, touch and hold the address you want to change.
3. Tap Edit Details, then do any of the following:

   - *Change the name of the pin:* Enter a new name in the Label field.
   - *Assign the address to your home, work, or school:* Choose an option below Type.
   - *Change the location of the pin:* Tap Refine Location on the Map.

Remove a set address

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Below Places, touch and hold the address you want to remove.

3. Tap Unpin.

See also

Mark a location with a pin in Maps on iPhone

Add or edit your contact info and photo on iPhone

Previous
Look around places

Next
Use Maps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone

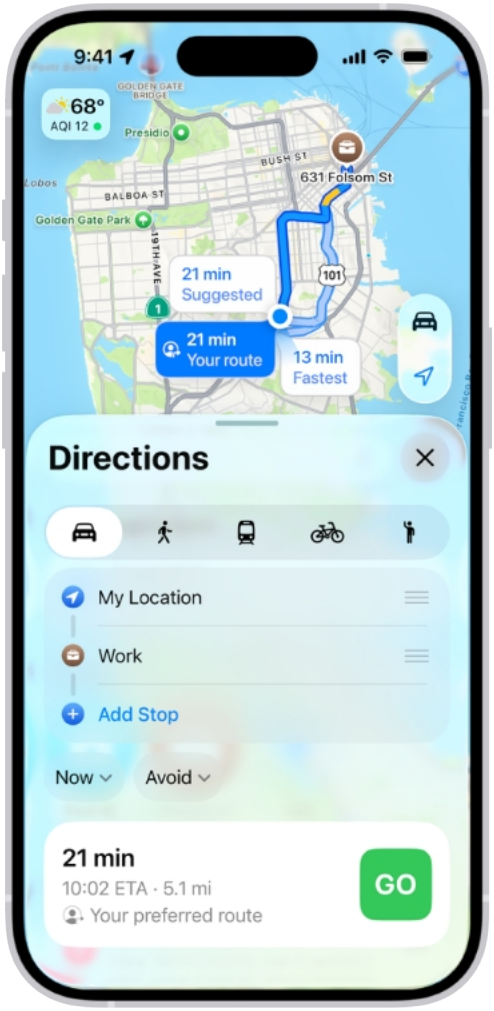
You can get detailed driving directions to your destination.

When you drive in select cities, you see enhanced details for crosswalks, bike lanes, buildings, and a street-level perspective that helps you find the right lane as you approach complex intersections. If you often drive the same route, Maps may suggest it as My Route and alert you to delays in advance.

Note: Turn-by-turn spoken directions and the preferred route option aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Get driving directions

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Go or Steps for the route you want to take.



Siri: You can also ask Siri something like, "Give me driving directions home." Learn how to use Siri.

If you regularly drive the same route—such as between home and work—Maps may show it as "Your route," making it easier to start navigation. This preferred route option appears based on your driving patterns and destinations, and may alert you to delays before you even leave. To turn off the option, go to the Settings app, tap Apps, tap Maps, tap Location, then turn off Preferred Routes & Predicted Destinations.

When Driving Focus is turned on, or if iPhone locks automatically, Maps remains onscreen and continues to speak directions. Even if you open another app, you continue to receive turn-by-turn directions. (To return to Maps from another app, tap the directions banner at the top of the screen or the navigation indicator 9:41 in the status bar.)

Estimate travel time for a future departure or arrival

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or .

3. Tap Now (below the destination), select a time or date for “Leave at” or “Arrive by,” then tap .

   The estimated travel time may change based on predicted traffic.

Avoid tolls or highways

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Avoid (below the destination), choose your options, then tap .

Show or hide the compass or the speed limit

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Below Directions, tap Driving, then turn Compass or Speed Limit on or off.

See also

Stay focused while driving with iPhone

Get directions to your parked car in Maps on iPhone

Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Previous
Use Maps

Next
Set up electric vehicle routing

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone

You can plan trips that include stops for charging your electric vehicle (EV) and monitor changes in your charge while driving.

Important: EV routing is available on select vehicles and in select areas. Features vary by country and region. Refer to your vehicle's owner guide for compatibility information.

When you get driving directions, Maps can track your vehicle's charge. By analyzing elevation changes along the route and other factors, Maps identifies appropriate charging stations along the way, and, for select charging providers and countries, it provides real-time charging station availability. If you drive until your charge gets too low, you're offered a route to the nearest compatible charging station.

Set up EV routing through CarPlay

For a compatible electric vehicle (EV) that doesn't require an app from its manufacturer, use CarPlay to set up EV routing in the Maps app.

Note: Refer to the owner's guide for your vehicle for compatibility information.

1. Connect iPhone to CarPlay.
2. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
3. Get driving directions.
4. Tap Connect (above the list of routes), then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Intro to CarPlay and iPhone.

Set up EV routing using a vehicle manufacturer's app

For a compatible vehicle that requires an app from its manufacturer, use the app to set up EV routing in Maps.

Note: Refer to the owner's guide for your vehicle for compatibility information.

1. Go to the App Store on your iPhone.
2. Search for the manufacturer of your vehicle, then download the app that supports EV routing for it. (See Get apps in the App Store.)
3. Open the app, then follow its setup instructions.
4. Go to the Maps app, then tap your picture or initials next to the search field.

   If you don't see your picture or initials, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.
5. Tap Vehicles, tap Connect Your Electric Vehicles, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can designate a preferred charging network for your vehicle. The Maps app provides real-time charging station availability for select charging providers and countries, and you can search by plug type and network.

Choose a different vehicle when you get directions

If you drive several vehicles, you can change which vehicle Maps provides routing instructions for.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Get driving directions.
3. Before you tap Go, scroll down in the route card.
4. Choose another electric vehicle, or if you're driving a vehicle that doesn't have an EV routing app on your iPhone, tap Different Car.

See also

Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone

Choose a default travel mode and Maps units on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

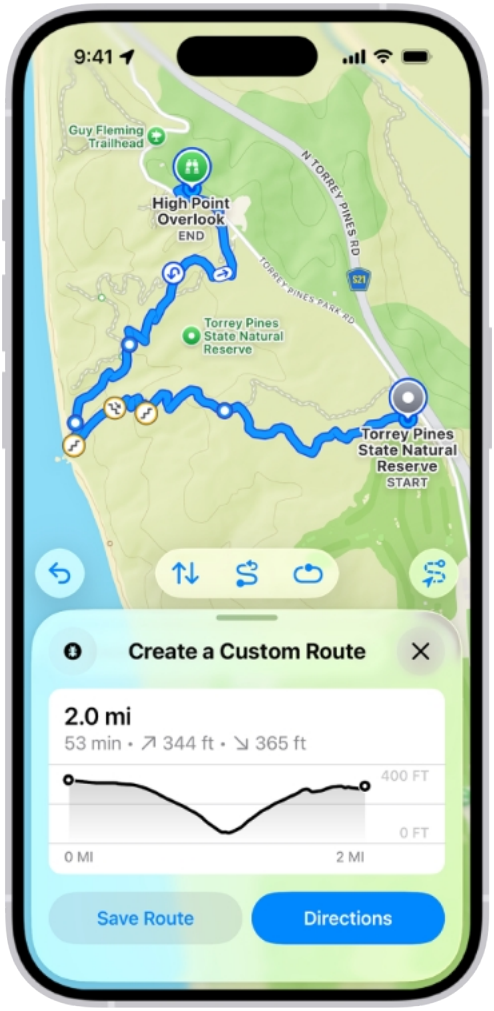
Save walks or hikes in Maps on iPhone

You can customize a walking path to plan a hike, an exercise route, or a city tour. In U.S. national parks, you can browse hikes and filter them by length, elevation, and route type. You can also save the routes—along with any notes you add—to access when you're offline.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries and regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Create your own walking or hiking route

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. To select a starting point on the map, touch and hold any road, path, trail, or other place accessible by walking to drop a pin, tap •••, then tap Create a Custom Route.
3. Tap other points along your route to choose a path, then do any of the following to complete your route:
   - *Reverse a route:* Tap ↑↓.
   - *Retrace your steps:* Tap.
   - *Close a loop:* Tap.
   - *Undo a point:* Tap.



4. Do one of the following:

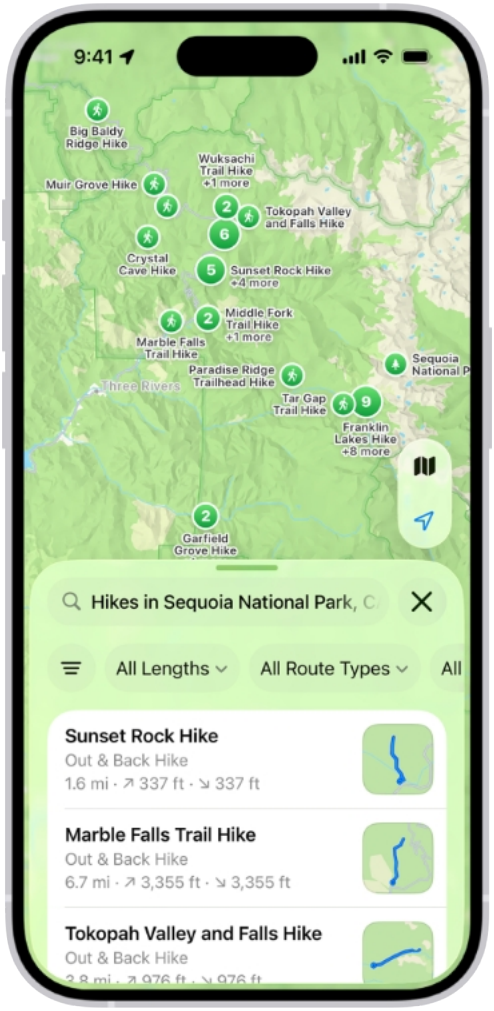
   - *Navigate to the starting point:* Tap Directions (available near the start of the route).
   - *Start turn-by-turn walking directions:* Tap Go (available if you're not near the route).
   - *Save the route for later:* Tap Save Route, name the route and add notes (optional), then tap ✓.

     Tip: Make sure Download Route is turned on if you want to access the route and the surrounding map even when you don't have access to an internet connection.

You can also remove a point by tapping a point, then tapping Remove Point, Remove Start Point, or Remove End Point.

Browse and save hikes

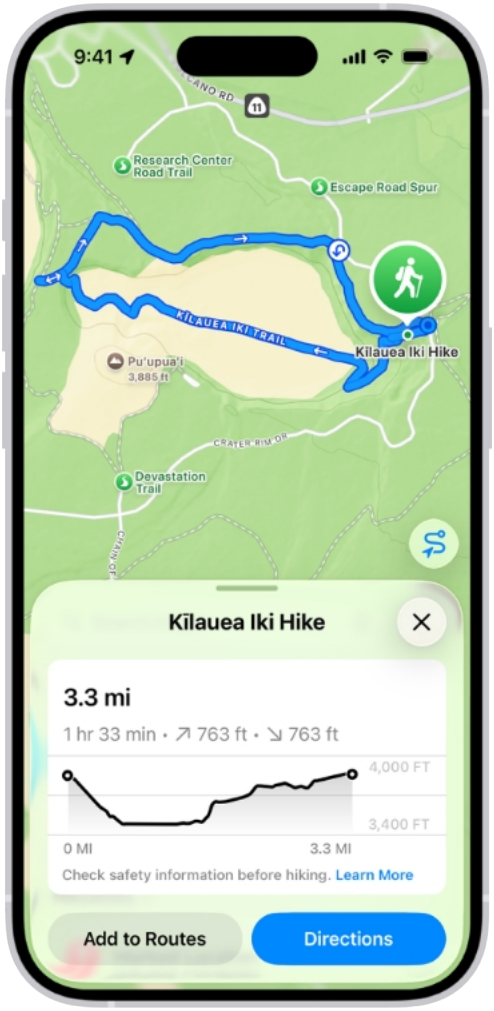
You need to be online to search for hikes.



1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Make sure you're in the Explore map, indicated by at the top right of your map. See Switch to a different map view.
3. Search for "hikes in [*national park name*]," then tap the search result.
4. To narrow down your choices, tap the filters, such as All Lengths or All Route Types. Swipe left to see more options.
5. Tap to open the hike, then tap +.

   You can also do one of the following instead of saving the hike to your Places:

   - *If you're near the start of the route:* Tap Directions if you want to navigate to the trailhead.
   - *If you're not near the route:* Tap Go to start turn-by-turn walking directions.



Tip: Make sure Download Route is turned on if you want to access the route and the surrounding map on your iPhone when you don't have access to an internet connection.

See also

- Get walking directions in Maps on iPhone
- Use Maps on iPhone
- Download offline maps on iPhone
- Change settings for spoken directions in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Get walking directions

Next
Get transit directions

Select version:

iOS 26

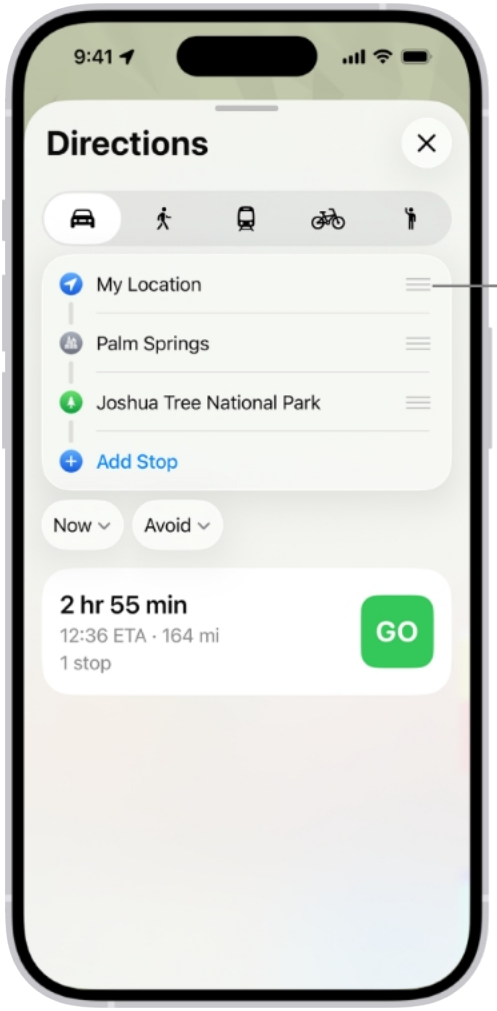
Table of Contents

Change or add stops to your route in Maps on iPhone

While following driving or cycling directions, you can add places to stop along your route.

Note: Turn-by-turn spoken directions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Change the starting point or destination



1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Get directions.

3. Do one of the following:

    - *Switch the starting point and destination:* Touch and hold ☰ for the starting location, then drag it below the destination.

    - *Choose a different starting point or destination:* Tap either the start or destination, then use the search field or a recent search result to find and select a different location.

Create a multistop driving route

You can add up to 14 stops along your route.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Get driving directions, then do one of the following:

    - Tap Add Stop, then search for the place you want to stop.

    - Zoom in and move the map, tap a place (for example, a landmark or business), then tap Add Stop in the place card.
3. To reorder the stops, touch and hold ☰ for the stop, then drag it to a new position in the list.

If you didn't tap Go yet, your selected stop appears as the final destination in your directions.

Add a stop while following driving or cycling directions

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Get driving or cycling directions, then tap the route card at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Add Stop, then tap a category (or, if driving, search for the place you want to stop).
4. Select a place to stop, then tap Add or Add Stop.

    Your route is updated, and the chosen destination is the next stop.

    If you're cycling and you decide not to take the detour, tap Resume Route at the top of the screen.

If you didn't tap Go yet, your selected stop appears as the final destination in your directions. Touch and hold ☰ for the stop, then drag it ahead of your final destination.

Delete a stop from your driving directions

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Create a multistop driving route.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Before you tap Go:* Swipe left on any stops you want to delete, then tap Delete.
   - *After you tap Go:* Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, then tap ⊖ next to the stop.

End directions before you arrive

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Stop navigating." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the card at the bottom of the screen, then tap End Route.

See also

Save walks or hikes in Maps on iPhone

View a route overview or a list of turns in Maps on iPhone

Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone

Previous
View a route overview or a list of turns

Next
Get directions to your parked car

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get walking directions in Maps on iPhone

You can get detailed walking directions to your destination. You can preview the elevation for your walk and choose a route that best avoids hills, stairs, or busy roads.

Note: Turn-by-turn spoken directions and immersive walking instructions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Get walking directions

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or .

3. Tap Go or Steps for the route you want to take.

   If you tap Go, as you walk along your route, Maps speaks walking-specific directions for turns and maneuvers like walking up stairs.

Siri: You can also ask Siri something like, "Give me walking directions home." Learn how to use Siri.

For thousands of trails in parks across the U.S., you can find out their length, preview elevation information, see photos, and more. See Browse and save hikes.

Avoid hills, busy roads, or stairs

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Avoid (below the destination), choose your options, then tap .

Automatically see directions in augmented reality

You can view immersive walking instructions that use the iPhone camera and augmented reality to show you where to turn.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Below Directions, tap Walking, then turn on Raise to View.
4. Get walking directions, as above.
5. Raise iPhone, tap , then follow the onscreen instructions.

To return to the map, tap .

Improve how accurately iPhone determines your location while walking

You can improve how accurately your iPhone determines your location and which way you're facing while walking. This feature uses the camera and the motion sensors (models with Face ID and iPhone SE 2nd generation and later).

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Below Directions, tap Walking, then turn on Enhanced.

You can turn off this feature to decrease battery usage.

See also

Save walks or hikes in Maps on iPhone

Look around places in Maps on iPhone

Get transit directions in Maps on iPhone

Book rides in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Get directions to your parked car

Next
Save walks or hikes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get directions to your parked car in Maps on iPhone

When you disconnect your iPhone from your car's CarPlay or Bluetooth® system and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker is dropped so you can easily find the way back to your car.

Find your parked car

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Choose Parked Car below Siri Suggestions.

If you don't find your parked car in Maps

Make sure your iPhone is paired to CarPlay or Bluetooth in your car, then make sure of the following settings:

- Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security.
- Significant Locations is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.
- Show Parked Location is turned on in Settings > Apps > Maps.

Note: If you park your car at a familiar location, such as your home or work, Maps doesn't mark it as parked.

Don't show your parked location

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. To remove the Parked Car marker for your car's current location, touch and hold the marker, then tap Remove Car.

To never show your parked location, go to Settings > Apps > Maps, then turn off Show Parked Location.

See also

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Use Maps on iPhone

Previous
Change or add stops to your route

Next
Get walking directions

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

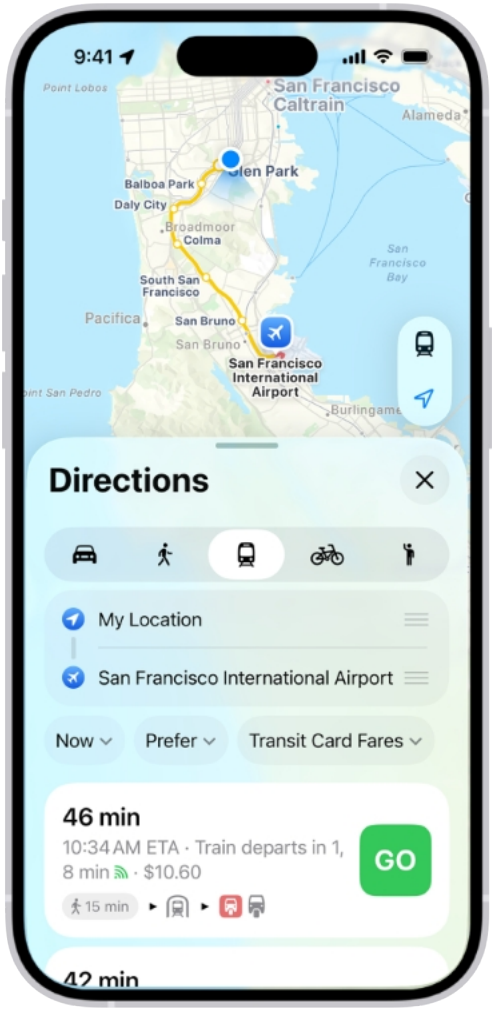
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get transit directions in Maps on iPhone

You can get detailed transit directions to your destination, including departure times, connection information, and fare amounts. You can also add transit cards, see low balances, and replenish your card while using Maps to get directions.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Get transit directions

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or 🚆.
3. Tap Prefer (below the destination), then select the transit methods you want to use.
4. Tap Go or Steps for the route you want to take.

Siri: You can also ask Siri something like, "Give me transit directions to the Ferry Building." Learn how to use Siri.

When you get directions for select transit systems in Maps, you may also get a message that you can use Apple Pay to pay for transit, add a transit card, or add money to your transit card without opening the Wallet app or leaving Maps. See Pay for transit, below.

Plan for a future departure or arrival time

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or 🚆.
3. Tap Now (below the destination), select a time or date for "Leave at" or "Arrive by," then tap ✓.

Show cash fares

In some countries and regions, fares are listed for the suggested routes.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or 🚆.
3. Tap Transit Card Fares (below the destination), then tap Cash Fares.

See nearby transit departures

You can get one-tap access to the departure times for stops and stations near you.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, then tap Nearby Transit to add it to your Places.
3. Tap Transit Nearby, then tap a nearby stop to see schedules and delays.

4. Scroll down, then tap Pin Line to add it to your Places.

Tip: Swipe right to pin a line to the top of the screen.

See major transit lines

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. With a map showing, tap the Map Modes button (, , ,) at the lower right.
3. Tap Transit, then tap .

Pay for transit with your iPhone

With many transit agencies, you can use your iPhone to pay for your fare.

- *Use Apple Pay:* With Apple Cash, credit cards, and debit cards in the Wallet app , you can make contactless transit payments with agencies that support Apple Pay.
- *Use transit cards:* With participating transit systems, you can pay for your fare when you store your transit cards in Wallet. See the Apple Support article Where you can ride transit using Apple Pay.
- *Use transit apps:* Many systems that don't support Wallet have apps that allow you to add a card for payment. Go to the transit agency's official website for more information or get apps in the App Store.

See also

Get walking directions in Maps on iPhone

Get cycling directions in Maps on iPhone

Get weather info in Maps on iPhone

Book rides in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Save walks or hikes

Next
Get cycling directions

Select version:

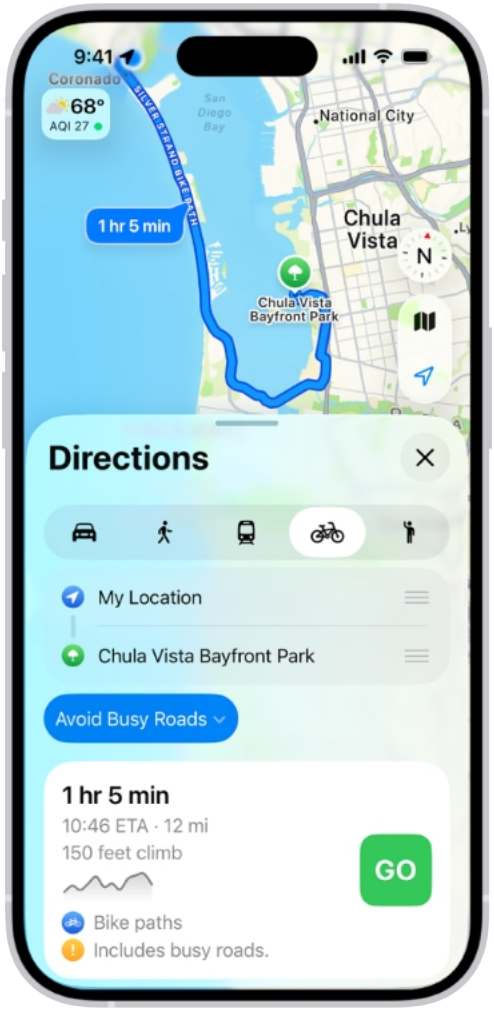
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get cycling directions in Maps on iPhone

You can get detailed cycling directions including routes on bike paths, bike lanes, and bike-friendly roads. You can preview the elevation for your ride, check how busy a road is, and choose a route that best avoids hills.

Note: Cycling directions and turn-by-turn spoken directions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Get cycling directions

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or 🚲.
3. Tap Go or Steps for the route you want to take.

Siri: You can also ask Siri something like, “Give me cycling directions home.” Learn how to use Siri.

Avoid hills or busy roads

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or 🚲.
3. Tap Avoid (below the destination), choose your options, then tap Apply.

See also

Set your location and map view in Maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Get transit directions

Next
Book rides

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share your estimated time of arrival in Maps on iPhone

You can share your estimated time of arrival (ETA) while following driving, cycling, and walking directions to let friends and family know when you're likely to arrive. Your ETA updates automatically if there are major delays, so you don't have to send follow-up messages along the way.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Share your estimated time of arrival (ETA)

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Share my ETA." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Search for the place you want to go, then tap Go.
3. Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, then tap Share ETA.

   If you don't see Share ETA, make sure you turned it on in Settings > Apps > Maps.
4. Choose one or more suggested contacts, or tap Open Contacts to find a contact.
5. To share your ETA with more contacts, tap "Sharing with" at the bottom of the screen, then tap Open Contacts.

You can also use the Messages, Find My, and Contacts apps to share your ETA with others. See Share your location in Messages, Share your location in Find My, or Edit contacts.

Stop sharing your ETA

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Open the route card for a trip in progress.
3. Tap “Sharing with” at the bottom of the screen, then tap Stop Sharing ETA below each contact’s name.

Automatically share your ETA to a pin

When you add a contact to a pinned place in your Places, that contact automatically receives your ETA whenever you start turn-by-turn navigation to that location.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, then tap Pinned. See Add a pin to your Places.
3. Tap ⓘ, then tap Add Person.
4. Search for a contact, tap to add them, then tap ✓.
5. Tap the pinned location, then tap Go to start sharing your ETA.

Your location, route, and ETA are viewable until you arrive.

Turn off ETA sharing

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Scroll down, then turn off Share ETA.

Note: Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.

People using iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message.

When you’re near the person you’re looking for and both of you have a supported model, you can use Find My to get precise directions to each other’s location. See Use Precision Finding to meet up with a friend.

See also

Table of Contents

Book rides in Maps on iPhone

You can request a ride with a compatible ridesharing app. If you don’t have one installed, you can see which ones are available from the App Store.

Note: Ridesharing isn’t available in all countries or regions.

Find a ride

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the search field, then tap Directions or at the right.
3. Tap Open to see the option in the ridesharing app, then book your ride in that app.

Stop sharing your location with a ridesharing app

To estimate wait times and fares, Maps may share your location with ridesharing apps. You can stop sharing your location with ridesharing apps.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Tap Ride Booking, then turn off any app.

See also

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you’ve arrived

Get transit directions in Maps on iPhone

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

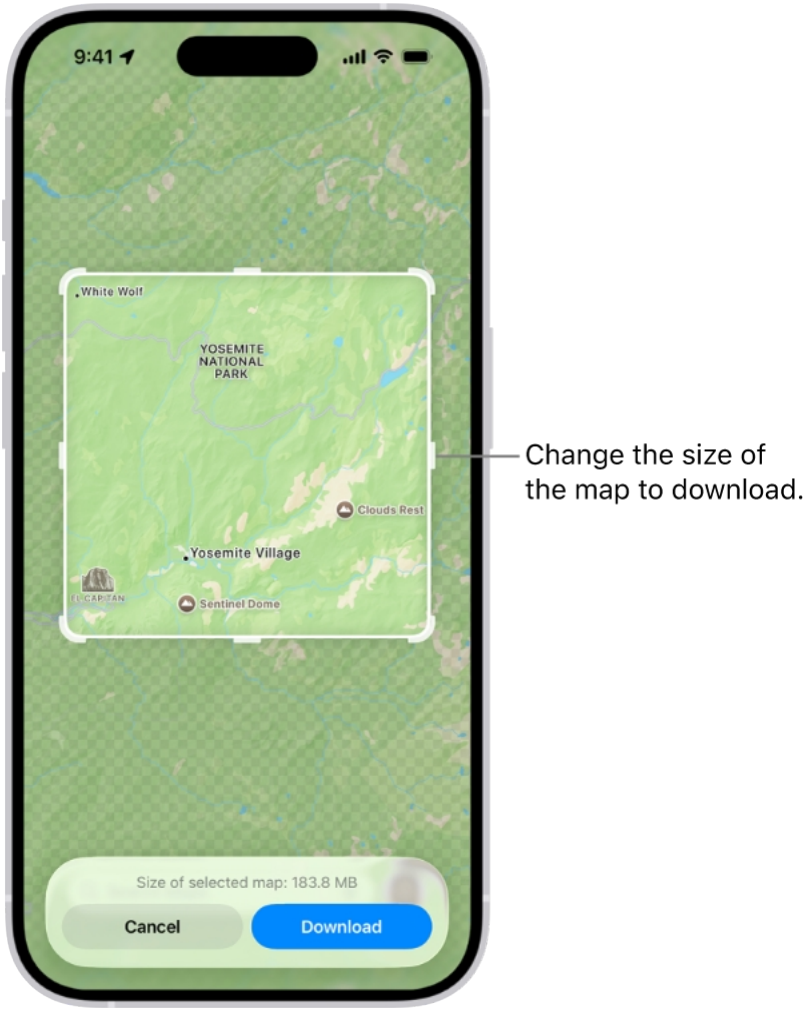
Table of Contents

Download offline maps on iPhone

You can save a map of an area and use it when your iPhone is offline.

Even when you can't access Wi-Fi or cellular service, you can view information like hours and ratings on place cards, get turn-by-turn directions for driving, walking, cycling, or riding transit, and see your estimated time of arrival.

Note: Offline maps aren't available in all countries or regions. Automatic Updates is on by default.



Download maps

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears, then tap Download.
   - Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, tap Offline Maps, tap +, then enter a location in the search field or tap Current Location.

3. Adjust the selected area, then tap Download.

   To reduce the size of the map you download, select a smaller area.

Downloaded maps update automatically, unless you change your settings.

Tip: You can sync your iPhone with Apple Watch and carry downloaded maps with you wherever you go—even without your iPhone nearby. See Use offline maps on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Open or edit a map you downloaded

Any maps you download to use offline appear in your list of offline maps.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Offline Maps.
3. Select a map, then do any of the following:

   - *Rename a map:* Tap Rename, enter a new name, then tap Save.
   - *Change the area covered by a map:* Tap Resize on the image of the map, adjust the selected area, then tap Download.
   - *Delete a map:* Tap Delete Map.

Control map data downloads

You can change your settings—like when to download or update a map—depending on your data storage needs and preferences.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Offline Maps.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Download over cellular:* Tap Wi-Fi Only, then tap to select Wi-Fi + Cellular.
- *Automatically update all maps:* Turn on Automatic Updates.
- *Automatically delete unused maps:* Turn on Optimize Storage.
- *Use online maps:* Turn off Only Use Offline Maps.

Remove downloaded maps

You can remove downloaded maps to free up storage space on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Offline Maps.
3. Do one of the following:

- *Manually remove a map:* Swipe left on the map, then tap Delete.
- *Automatically delete unused maps:* Turn on Optimize Storage.

See also

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

Send a text message via satellite on iPhone

Apple Watch User Guide: Use offline maps on Apple Watch

Previous
Book rides

Next
Share your estimated time of arrival

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Change settings for spoken directions in Maps on iPhone

You can turn off spoken directions, adjust their volume, change their voice or language, and more.

Note: Turn-by-turn spoken directions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Turn spoken directions on or off

You can turn spoken directions on or off after you've started following a set of directions.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Get driving, cycling, or walking directions, then tap the Go button to begin following them.
3. Tap the Audio Control button on the map (for example,), then choose an option.

Button	Description
	All directions are spoken.
	Only driving alerts are spoken.
	No directions are spoken.
	Voice volume for spoken directions is loud.
	Voice volume for spoken directions is normal.
	Voice volume for spoken directions is soft.

Note: If you start with a location other than My Location, you see a Steps button instead of Go, and no directions are spoken. You can also change the default volume in Settings > Apps > Maps. Tap Spoken Directions, then choose an option below Voice Volume.

Hear spoken directions in a different language or voice

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then change any of the following:
   - *Language:* Tap Language, then tap a language to select it as your primary Siri language.
   - *Voice:* Tap Voice, then tap to hear the different options.

Change other settings for spoken directions

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.

3. Tap Spoken Directions, then turn on or off the following options:

- *Directions Pause Spoken Audio:* Turn on this setting to pause spoken audio (like podcasts and audio books) when you receive spoken directions.
- *Directions Wake Device:* Turn on this setting to wake the iPhone display when you receive spoken directions while following driving or cycling directions.
- *Directions on Radio:* On supported cars, turn on this setting to hear spoken directions when you're listening to the radio.

To use turn-by-turn spoken directions, your iPhone must be connected to the internet, and precise location must be turned on. Cellular data rates may apply (see View or change cellular data settings).

See also

Use Maps on iPhone

Allow Maps to use your precise location

Previous
Share your estimated time of arrival

Next
Choose a default travel mode and units

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

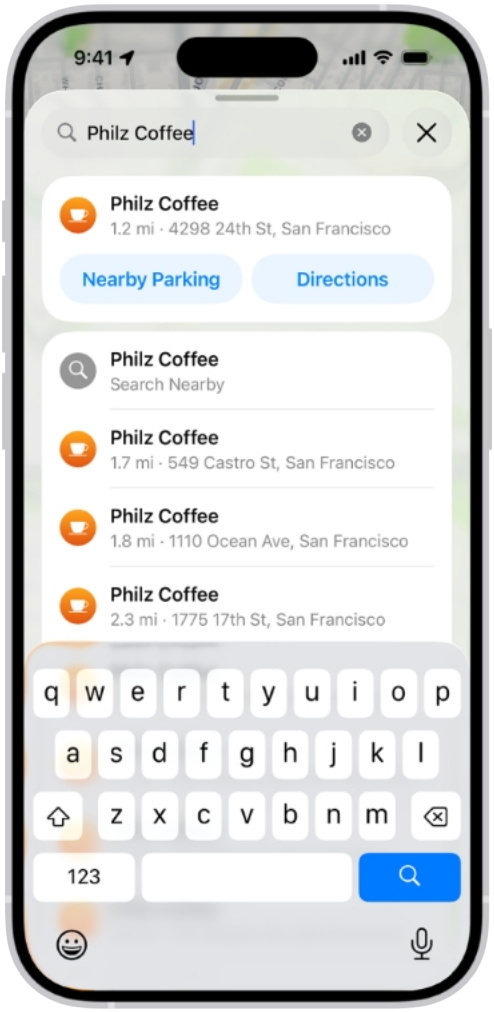
Table of Contents

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

You can search for addresses, landmarks, services, and more.

Search for a place

Tap the search field (at the top of the card), then begin typing.



You can search in different ways. For example:

- Intersection (“8th and Market”)
- Area (“Greenwich Village”)
- Landmark (“Guggenheim”)

- Zip code (“60622”)
- Business (“movies,” “restaurants San Francisco CA,” “Apple Inc New York”)
- A request or question using natural language (“Find cafes with free Wi-Fi”)

If you get a list of results, scroll the list to see more. To learn about a place or get directions to it, tap a search result.

Display, lengthen, or shorten the card

If you see a different kind of card instead of the one with the search field, tap ⊗ at the top right of the card.

To resize the card, drag the top of the card up or down.

See also

Use Maps on iPhone

Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

Explore airports or malls in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Get weather info

Next
Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Choose a default travel mode and Maps units on iPhone

You can review and change your settings for the Maps app, including travel mode and units.

Choose a default travel mode and preferences

Maps defaults to your preferred travel mode when providing directions. You can choose driving, walking, transit, or cycling.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, tap Preferences, then tap options.

   (If neither your picture nor initials appear next to the search field, tap Cancel next to the field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.)
3. To find more options, tap Maps Settings at the bottom of the screen.

Depending on the mode of travel, you may have other route options, such as choosing an arrival time when driving, avoiding heavy traffic or hills when cycling or walking, or choosing which transit method you prefer.

Change the units used in Maps

On a 2D map, a scale appears in the upper left as you zoom out. You can change the units used for the scale.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Language & Region.
3. Tap Measurement System, then select an option.

See also

Change settings for spoken directions in Maps on iPhone

Report an issue with Maps on iPhone

Add places and notes to your Places in Maps on iPhone

Organize places with custom guides in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Change settings for spoken directions

Next
Check traffic conditions and report traffic incidents

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Check traffic conditions and report traffic incidents in Maps on iPhone

You can view traffic conditions and report accidents, hazards, and speed checks (where allowed), and you can report when they're cleared.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers—such as for hazards and accidents—are displayed (or cleared) for other Maps users too.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries and regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Find out about traffic conditions

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. With a map showing, tap the button at the top right, choose Driving or Satellite, then tap .

   Yellow indicates slowdowns, and red indicates stop-and-go traffic.
3. To view an incident report, tap an incident marker.

   Markers indicate incidents such as:

   - Accidents
   - Speed checks
   - Traffic
   - Roadwork
   - Hazards

- Road closures ⛔

Report traffic incidents

Siri: Ask Siri something like, “Report an accident.” Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *When following turn-by-turn driving directions:* Tap , then choose an option. You can also tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, then tap Report an Incident.

   - *When not following directions:* Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Reports. Tap Report a New Issue, tap Report an Incident, then choose an option.

     If neither your picture nor initials appear, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

Report on the status of a hazard or accident

When you’re near the incidents in select countries or regions, you can report on their status.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, “Clear the accident.” Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the incident marker.
3. Tap Cleared or Still Here.

   You can’t clear reports of speed checks.

See also

Get weather info in Maps on iPhone

Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Choose a default travel mode and units

Next
Get weather info

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

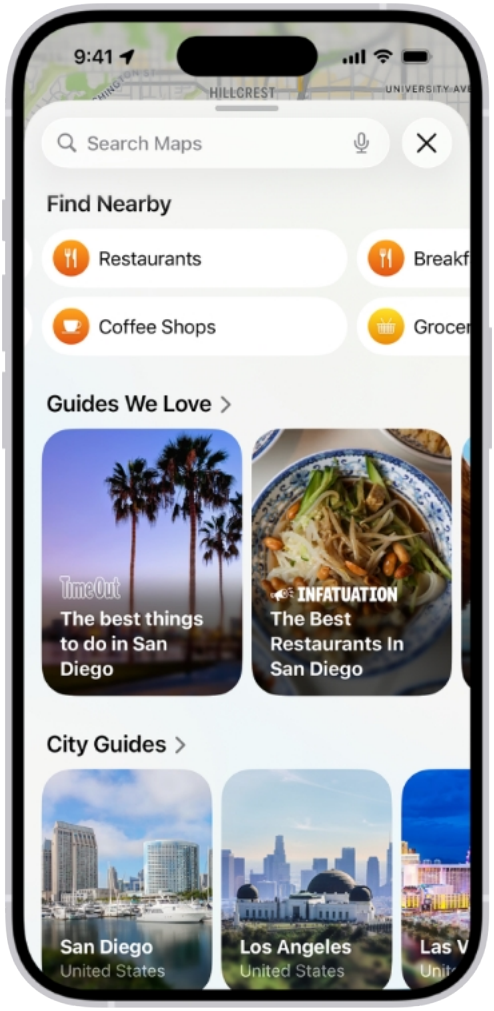
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

You can find nearby attractions, services, and more.

Note: Nearby suggestions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Find a nearby attraction, restaurant, or service

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Find coffee near me." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field, then do one of the following:

   - Tap a category like Grocery Stores or Restaurants below Find Nearby.
   - Enter something like “playgrounds” or “parks” in the search field, then tap the Search Nearby result.

   Tip: You can also touch and hold the Maps app icon on the Home Screen, then tap Search Nearby. See Perform quick actions from Control Center, the Home Screen, and App Library.

   Depending on what you’re looking for, you may be able to apply more search criteria, tap a suggestion to get additional information, and more.
3. To change the nearby area, drag the map.

To get recommendations for where to eat, shop, and explore in great places around the world, see Explore places with guides.

Images of Las Vegas, San Francisco, and Portland in City Guides courtesy of Wikipedia.

See also

Use Maps on iPhone

Previous
Search for places

Next
Explore airports or malls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Get weather info in Maps on iPhone

You can find out about the weather and air quality.

Note: Air quality and weather data aren't available in all countries or regions.

Find out about the weather and the air quality

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Zoom in on a map until the weather icon appears in the upper-left corner.

   The icon shows the current conditions for that area. In some regions, the air quality index (AQI) also appears in the lower-right corner.
3. To get the hourly forecast, touch and hold the weather icon. Tap the hourly forecast to get a multiday forecast in the Weather app.

If you don't want to get air quality or weather information in Maps, go to Settings > Apps > Maps, then turn off Air Quality Index or Weather Conditions.

See also

Set your location and map view in Maps on iPhone

View weather maps on iPhone

Check traffic conditions and report traffic incidents in Maps on iPhone

Table of Contents

View and manage Visited Places in Maps on iPhone

The Visited Places feature helps you keep track of places you've been, so you can easily revisit or share them later. Use it to find past locations—like restaurants from a recent trip—and organize them into guides or share them with others. Visited Places are end-to-end encrypted, can't be read by Apple, and appear on all your synced devices.

Note: Visited Places isn't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Turn on Visited Places

When you open the Maps app, you may be asked to turn on Visited Places. If not,

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Tap Location, then turn on Precise Location and Visited Places.
4. Go back to the Settings app, then tap Privacy & Security.
5. Tap Location Services, then turn on Location Services.
6. Tap System Services, tap Significant Locations & Routes, then turn on Significant Locations & Routes.

View a visited place

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, tap Visited Places, then do any of the following:
   - *Search:* Search a place by name, category, address, or notes.
   - *Filter:* Search using a filter for date, category, or city.
   - *Show all visits:* Tap All Visits.

Manage a visited place

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, then tap Visited Places.
3. Next to a place, tap More ••• (on the right side of the place card), then do any of the following:
   - *Add to your Places:* Tap Add to Places.
   - *Share a visited place:* Tap Share.
   - *Add a personal note:* Tap Add a Note.
   - *Correct a visited place:* Tap Wrong Location.

- *Remove a visited place:* Tap Remove.

Change how long Maps keeps your visited places

If you choose a duration for saving visited places when you set up the feature, you can change it at any time.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, then tap Visited Places.
3. Scroll to the bottom, tap Keep Visits, then choose a duration.

Clear your visited places history

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, then tap Visited Places.
3. Scroll to the bottom, then tap Clear History.

See also

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Get information about places in Maps on iPhone

Add places and notes to your Places in Maps on iPhone

Share places in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Get information about places

Next
Add places and notes to your Places

Helpful? Yes No

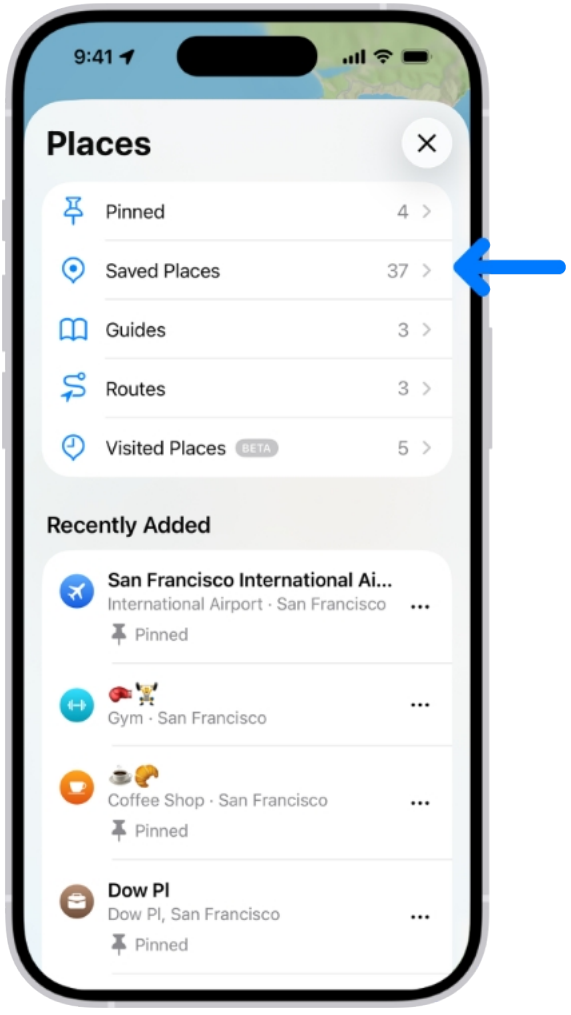
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add places and notes to your Places in Maps on iPhone

You can find pins, places, guides, and routes in one place: your Places in the Maps app. Add your own personal notes—visible only to you—to saved places, or pin your most frequently visited places for easier access.



Save a place

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. While looking at a place card, do one of the following:

- Tap ＋. It turns to ✓.
- Tap •••, then tap Add to Places.

Add notes to a place

You can read the notes you add to a place at any time. When you share a place, your note appears as text with the shared link, but it doesn't save to the other person's notes for that place.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. While looking at a place card, tap •••, then tap Add a Note.
3. Write something, then tap ✓.

Adding a note to a place saves the place to your Places.

Add a pin to your Places

You can pin frequently visited places for easier access in Maps and CarPlay. They appear as icons in your Places and also under Pinned.



1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Below Places, tap + (you may need to swipe left), then search for or tap a suggestion. You can also drop a pin.
3. If the pins are for your Home, Work, or School, you can do any of the following:
   - *Assign it to a type:* Select Home, Work, or School.
   - *Sync to My Card:* Tap Add to Contact Card.
4. Tap ✓.

See Edit a pin.

Remove a place from your Places

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places.
3. Tap •••, then tap Delete From Places.

If you're in the place card, tap ✓. It returns to +.

Removing a place from your Places deletes any personal notes you added to it.

See also

Organize places with custom guides in Maps on iPhone

Get transit directions in Maps on iPhone

Previous
View and mange Visited Places

Next
Share places

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get information about places in Maps on iPhone

You can find street addresses and other information about places that appear.

Get information about a place

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place (for example, a city or landmark on a map, a spot that you marked with a pin, or a search result in Maps), then do any of the following:

   - *Get a route to the location:* Tap the directions button.
   - *View more information:* Scroll down in the place card.

     The information might include the street address, a phone number, a webpage link, customer reviews, and more. Many restaurants and other businesses offer App Clips that allow you to order or make a reservation by tapping buttons on their place cards.



Save information about a place

You can save a place or add it as a pin to one of your custom guides, or as one of your contacts.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on a map or a search result, tap •••, then choose an option.

Stop sending restaurant names to a third party

If you install an app that has a table-booking extension, it can also help you make reservations at restaurants. You can stop sending the names of restaurants that you view to the extension.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.

3. Tap Restaurant Booking, then turn off the app extension.

See also

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

Add places and notes to your Places in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Explore airports or malls

Next
View and mange Visited Places

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share places in Maps on iPhone

You can share places with others. For example, you can send a message or email to show people where to meet you.

Tip: To share your current location when you don't have the Maps app open, just touch and hold the Maps icon on the Home Screen, then tap Send My Location. See Perform quick actions.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on the map or a search result.
3. Tap (at the top of the place card), then choose an option.

You can also touch and hold the place, then tap Share Location.

See also

Set your location and map view in Maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

Previous
Add places and notes to your Places

Next
Mark a location with a pin

Select version:

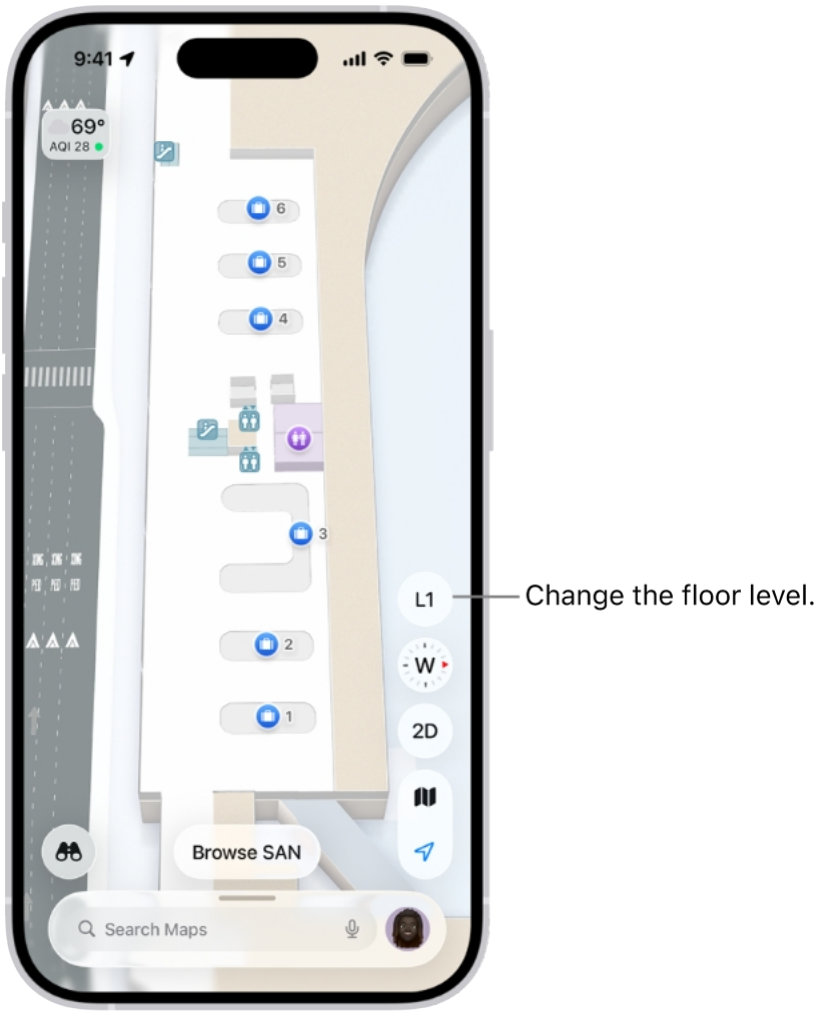
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Explore airports or malls in Maps on iPhone

For some large spaces like airports or shopping malls, you can look at detailed, interior maps to help you get around.

Note: Indoor maps aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Before you get there:* Search for the airport or mall, then tap Indoor Map if it appears in the search result. Or drag the map to show it, zoom in, then tap Look

Inside.

- *When you're at the airport or mall:* Tap  , then tap Look Inside.

3. To find nearby services, tap a category (like Food, Restrooms, or Gates).

   To get more information about a result, tap it.

4. To get a map of a different floor, tap the button showing the floor level (zoom in if the button doesn't appear).

See also

Look around places in Maps on iPhone

Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services

Next
Get information about places

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

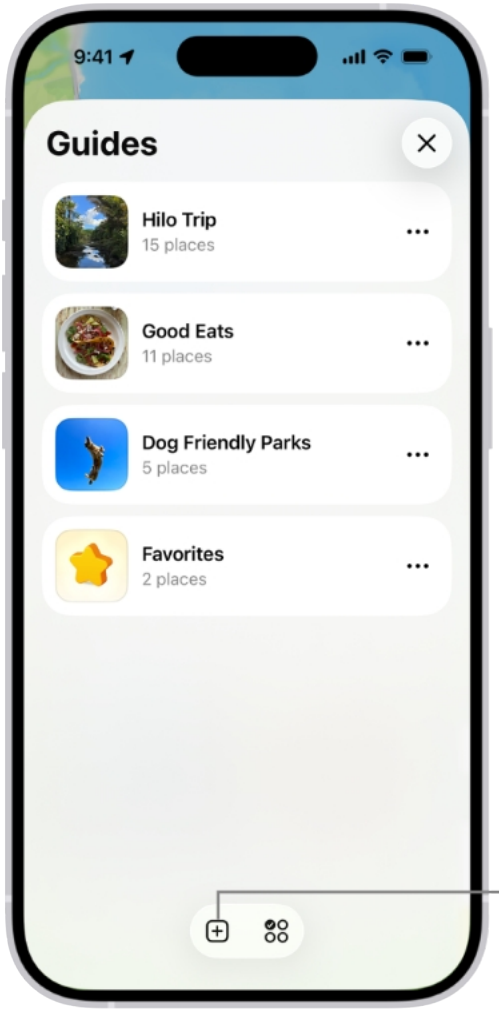
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Organize places with custom guides in Maps on iPhone

You can organize places into your own guides for easy reference, and you can share your guides with others.



Create a guide to your places of interest.

See your favorites

A guide called Favorites always appears in your guides. This makes it easier for you to save places to a guide.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Your Guides, then tap Favorites.

Tip: You can pin any places that you want to see in your Places when you open Maps. See Add a pin to your Places.

Create a guide

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Your Guides, then tap ⊞.
3. Enter a name for the guide, then tap 📷 to add an image from your photo library (optional).
4. Tap ✓.

Add a place to a guide

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on the map or a search result.
3. In the place card, tap •••, then tap Add to Guides.
4. Choose one of your guides, then tap ✓.

You can also add Publisher Guides to your guides. See Explore places with guides.

Share a guide

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Your Guides, tap the guide you want to share.
3. Tap ⬆, then choose an option.

Edit a guide that you created

For any guide that you create, you can supply a cover image, change the title, and remove places.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Your Guides, then tap the guide you want to edit.
3. Tap , make your changes, then tap .

Remove a guide

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Your Guides, tap ••• on the guide you want to remove, then tap Delete from Places.

See also

Set your location and map view in Maps on iPhone

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

Add places and notes to your Places in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Explore places with guides

Next
Clear location history

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Clear your location history in Maps on iPhone

The Maps app uses information about your significant locations from Location Services to provide you with personalized services like predictive traffic routing. Your significant locations are end-to-end encrypted and can't be read by Apple. You can delete your significant locations at any time—for example, to reset predictive traffic routing and similar personalized services.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, then tap Location Services.
3. Tap System Services, then tap Significant Locations.
4. Tap Clear History.

   This action clears all your significant locations everywhere you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

See also

Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone

Mark a location with a pin in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Organize places with custom guides

Next
Delete recent directions

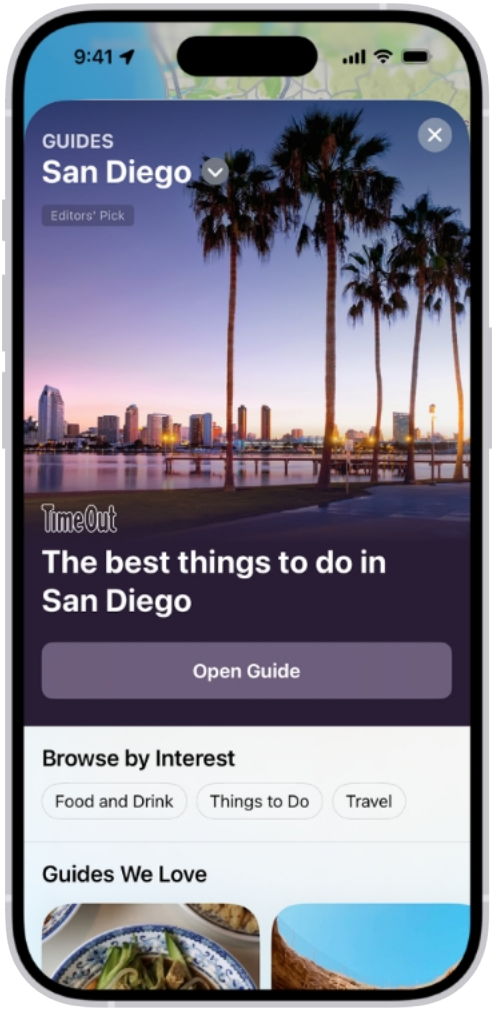
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Explore places with guides in Maps on iPhone

Guides are available to help you discover great places around the world to eat, shop, and explore. Guides are automatically updated when new places are added, so you always have the latest recommendations.



Explore the world with guides

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down, then tap Guides We Love.
3. Browse by any of the following:

- *City:* Tap near the top of the screen, then tap a city. You can also scroll down to the Cities category.
- *Interest:* Tap an interest, then tap to browse guides in that group.
- *Publisher:* Scroll down to the Browse by Publisher category, then tap a Publisher.

View, share, and save a guide

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. To open a guide, tap its cover. To view its contents, scroll down.

   You can also do the following:

   - *Save the guide:* Tap Add to Guides.
   - *Share the guide:* Tap Share, then choose an option.
   - *See saved guides:* Tap Places, then tap Guides. See Organize places with custom guides.
   - *Close the guide:* Tap .

Tip: Look for App Clips buttons. These allow you to do things like reserve a table directly from a guide.

See also

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

Organize places with custom guides in Maps on iPhone

Rate places and add photos in Maps on iPhone

Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Rate places and add photos

Next
Organize places with custom guides

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Rate places and add photos in Maps on iPhone

You can provide ratings and photos of places you visit to help other Maps users.

Your ratings and photos appear everywhere you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Note: The Apple Ratings and Photos feature isn't available in all countries or regions.



Rate a place

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on the map or a search result, then tap 👍.

Note: If you don't see ratings categories or the Rate button, you can't rate the location.

3. Tap 👍 or 👎 for the available categories, then tap ✓.

You can edit your ratings later if you change your mind.

Add photos for a place

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on the map or a search result, then tap •••.
3. Tap Add Your Photos, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   To upload your photos to Apple, you need to have an Apple Account.

   Note: If you don't see ratings categories or the Rate button, you can't add a photo.
4. To credit yourself for the photos you contribute, tap Photo Credit, then turn on Show Credit.

   The photo credit option you choose applies to all photos you previously submitted and continue to submit.

Share your photos publicly

You can allow companies to use the photos that you add to Maps in their own products and services.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Turn on Allow Photo Providers to Use Your Photos.

Photos you share include location data, but not your identity. If you turn this setting off, photo providers may no longer use your photos. (It may take a few days to take effect.)

Edit your photos for a place

You can add and remove photos, add or remove your photo credit, and provide a nickname for your photo credit.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Places.
3. Tap the place whose photos you want to edit, then tap Your Photos.
4. Do one of the following:

   - *Submit another photo:* Tap Add Photo.
   - *Remove a photo:* Tap ⋯, then tap Delete Your Photo.
   - *Change your photo credit:* Tap ⋯, then tap Change Photo Credit. The photo credit option you choose applies to all photos you previously submitted and continue to submit.

Stop getting ratings and photos suggestions

You may receive suggestions in Maps to submit a rating or photo if you recently visited or took a photo of a point of interest. These suggestions use on-device processing and can't be read by Apple. If you don't want to receive these suggestions, you can turn them off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Turn off Show Ratings and Photos Suggestions.

See also

Organize places with custom guides in Maps on iPhone

Add places and notes to your Places in Maps on iPhone

Get information about places in Maps on iPhone

Previous
Mark a location with a pin

Next
Explore places with guides

Helpful? Yes No

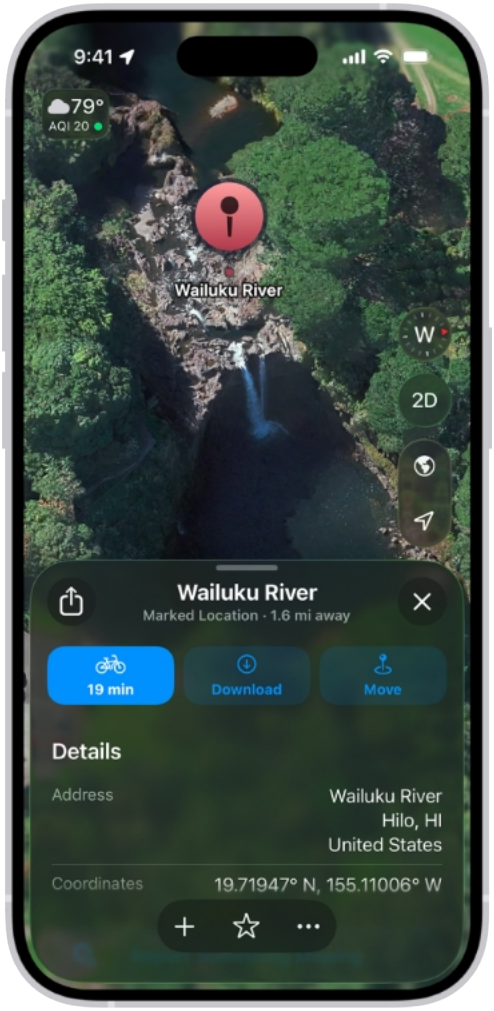
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Mark a location with a pin in Maps on iPhone

You can use pins to mark places so you can more easily find those locations later.



Drop a pin

You can drop a pin to share a location with someone else, or to start or end your route at a location that isn't already marked on the map. Only one pin appears at a time, unless you save them to your Places.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears.

To refine the location, tap Move, then drag the map.

3. Tap Pin. To mark several places with pins, save each pin as you drop it.

To get directions to the pin, tap the pin, then tap the directions button.

Tip: To note your current location when you don't have the Maps app open, touch and hold the Maps icon on the Home Screen, then choose Mark My Location. See Perform quick actions.

Share a pin

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears, then tap (at the top of the card).
   - Tap Places, tap Pinned, swipe left on the pin, then tap Share.
3. Choose how you want to share it.

Get the latitude and longitude of a pin

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, tap Pinned, then tap the pin.
3. Swipe up to Coordinates.
4. Touch and hold the coordinates, then tap Copy.

See your saved pins

Pins appear as a row of icons in your Places when you open the Maps app.

Edit a pin

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, then tap Pinned.

3. Tap ⓘ, then do any of the following:

   - *Change the name of the pin:* Tap in the Label field.
   - *Assign it to your Home, Work, or School address:* Choose an option below Type.

Note: If you change your Home, Work, or School address after you're prompted to sync Maps to My Card, you may need to update your address in both Maps and Contacts. See Add a pin to your Places and Complete or edit My Card.

Remove a pin

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, then tap Pinned.
3. Swipe left on the pinned location, then tap Delete.

You can also tap ⓘ, then tap Unpin.

See also

Report an issue with Maps on iPhone

Download offline maps on iPhone

Organize places with custom guides in Maps on iPhone

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

Previous
Share places

Next
Rate places and add photos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone

You can delete directions that you recently viewed.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down in the card to Recents, then do one of the following:
   - *Delete a single item:* Tap ···, then tap Clear.
   - *Delete all recent:* Tap Recents, then tap Clear.

See also

Clear your location history in Maps on iPhone

Control the location information you share on iPhone

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

Previous
Clear location history

Next
Report an issue with Maps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Report an issue with Maps on iPhone

If you notice something's missing in Maps—an address, business, transit stop, or another feature—you can add it. You can also report other kinds of issues, such as an incorrect step in directions or a business that has closed.

---

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears, scroll to the bottom of the card, then tap Report Something Missing.
   - Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, tap Reports, then tap Report a New Issue.
3. Choose an option, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To change the address used for your home or work, see Add notes to a place.

If you have a business (large or small), you can use Apple Business Connect to help your customers find it in Maps, Apple Wallet, Siri, and more. Learn more about Apple Business Connect.

See also

Apple Support article: If Maps isn't working on your Apple device

Clear your location history in Maps on iPhone

Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone

Table of Contents

Measure a person's height with iPhone

On supported models, you can instantly measure a person's height from the floor to the top of their head, hair, or hat. (You can even measure a person's seated height.)

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Position iPhone so that the person you want to measure appears on the screen from head to toe.

   After a moment, a line appears at the top of the person's head (or hair, or hat), with the height measurement showing just below the line.
3. To take a photo of the measurement, tap ◯.
4. To save the photo, tap the screenshot in the lower-left corner, tap Done, then choose Save to Photos or Save to Files.

   You can easily access and share the height measurement image from Photos or Files on iPhone whenever you want.

To take the measurement again, turn iPhone away for a moment to reset the height.

See also

View photos and videos on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Measure dimensions with iPhone

You can use your iPhone camera to measure nearby objects—automatically detect the dimensions of rectangular objects or manually set the start and end points of a measurement.



For best results, use Measure on well-defined objects located 0.5 to 3 meters (2 to 10 feet) from iPhone. (Measurements are approximate.)

Note: You can use Measure on external displays without turning on Screen Mirroring in Control Center.

Start a measurement

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Use the iPhone camera to slowly scan nearby objects.
3. Position iPhone so that the object you want to measure appears on the screen.

Note: For your privacy, when you use Measure to take measurements, a green dot appears at the top of the screen to indicate your camera is in use.

Take an automatic rectangle measurement

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Use the iPhone camera to slowly scan nearby objects.
3. When iPhone detects the edges of a rectangular object, a white box frames the object; tap the white box or ⊕ to see the dimensions.
4. To take a photo of your measurement, tap ◯.

Take a manual measurement

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Align the dot at the center of the screen with the point where you want to start measuring, then tap ⊕.
3. Slowly pan iPhone to the end point, then tap ⊕ to see the measured length.
4. To take a photo of your measurement, tap ◯.
5. Take another measurement, or tap Clear to start over.

Use edge guides

On supported models, you can easily measure the height and straight edges of furniture, countertops, and other objects using guide lines that appear automatically.

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Position the dot at the center of the screen along the straight edge of an object until a guide line appears.
3. Tap ⊕ where you want to begin measuring.
4. Slowly pan along the guide line, then tap ⊕ at the endpoint to see the measured length.
5. To take a photo of your measurement, tap ◯.

Use Ruler view

On supported models, you can see more detail in your measurements with Ruler view.

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. After measuring the distance between two points, move iPhone closer to the measurement line until it transforms into a ruler, showing incremental units of length.
3. To take a photo of your measurement, tap ◯.

See also

View and save measurements on iPhone

Previous
Report an issue with Maps

Next
View and save measurements

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

View and save measurements on iPhone

On supported models, you can save a list of all the measurements you take in a single session, complete with screenshots, so you can easily share and access them whenever you need them.

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap to see a list of your recent measurements.

   Swipe up from the top of the list to see more measurements.
3. To save the measurements, tap Copy, open another app (for example, Notes), tap in a document, then tap Paste.

   Note: Height measurements aren't included in this list. To save a person's height measurement, see Measure a person's height.

See also

Measure a person's height with iPhone

Previous
Measure dimensions

Next
Measure a person's height

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Set up Messages on iPhone

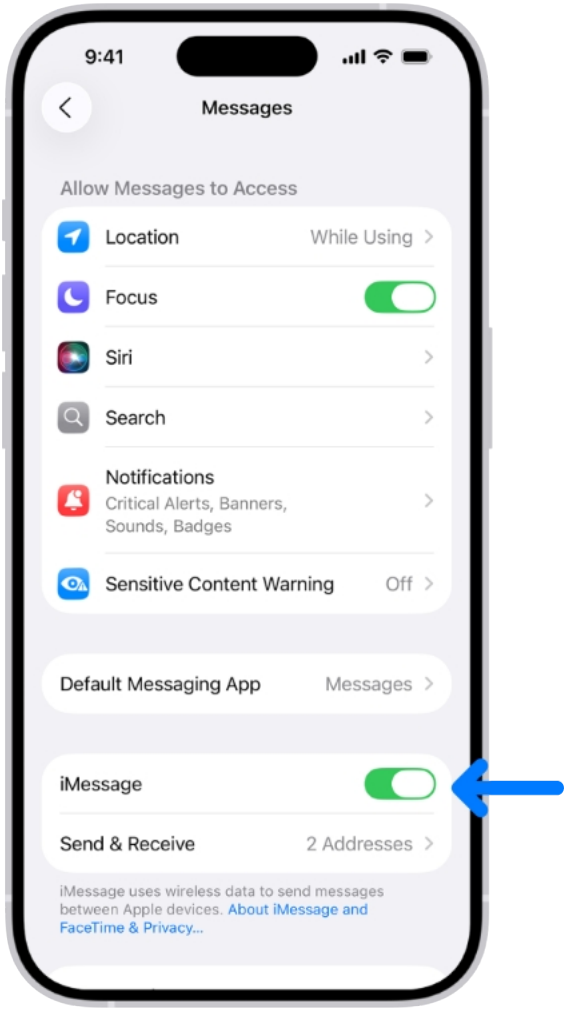
You can send text messages several different ways in the Messages app:

- Over Wi-Fi or cellular service, using iMessage with others who also use iMessage. Your iMessage texts appear in blue bubbles.
- Over cellular service with SMS, MMS, or RCS messages, which appear in green bubbles. See Set up cellular service. (RCS messages aren't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions.)
- Over satellite when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, using iMessage or SMS on supported iPhone models and certain carriers (U.S., Canada, and Mexico only). See Send a text message via satellite.

For more information, see the Apple Support article What is the difference between iMessage, RCS, and SMS/MMS?, the Wireless carrier support and features for iPhone in the United States and Canada website, and the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Turn on iMessage

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn on iMessage.
4. To select which of your phone numbers and email addresses you want to use with iMessage, tap Send & Receive, then choose from the available options below "You can receive iMessages to and reply from."



Learn more about iMessage.

If you're having problems, see the Apple Support article If you can't turn on or sign in to iMessage or FaceTime on your iPhone.

Sync messages on all your Apple devices

When you turn on Messages in iCloud, messages you send and receive on your iPhone are saved in iCloud. When you sign in to the same Apple Account and turn on Messages in iCloud on another device, your conversations show up and sync there too. Your entire messages history is kept up to date across those devices, even when you set up a new device. This includes messages sent or received with SMS, MMS, RCS, or iMessage.

1. Make sure that your iPhone is turned on and connected to a Wi-Fi or cellular network, and that you sign in to the same Apple Account on each device.
2. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
3. Tap your name, tap iCloud, then tap Messages.

   If Messages doesn't appear, tap See All in the Saved to iCloud section.
4. Turn on "Use on this iPhone" (if it's not already turned on).

5. To confirm which devices receive any SMS, MMS, or RCS text messages you get on your iPhone, go to Settings, tap Apps, then tap Messages. Tap Text Message Forwarding, then turn on your other devices.

After you turn on Messages in iCloud, any messages or attachments you delete from iPhone are also deleted from your other Apple devices (iOS 11.4, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.13.5, watchOS 1, visionOS 1, or later) where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See Set up iCloud for Messages on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: Messages in iCloud uses iCloud storage. See Use iCloud.

Choose other devices for SMS, MMS, or RCS messaging

Text message forwarding is built into Messages in iCloud. If you don't want to use Messages in iCloud to save iCloud storage space or to keep messages on only some of your devices, you can still share SMS, MMS, and RCS messages between your Apple devices by using text message forwarding.

When you set up text message forwarding on your iPhone, messages you send or receive appear on your other Apple devices without requiring Messages in iCloud.

Note: Availability varies by region and carrier.

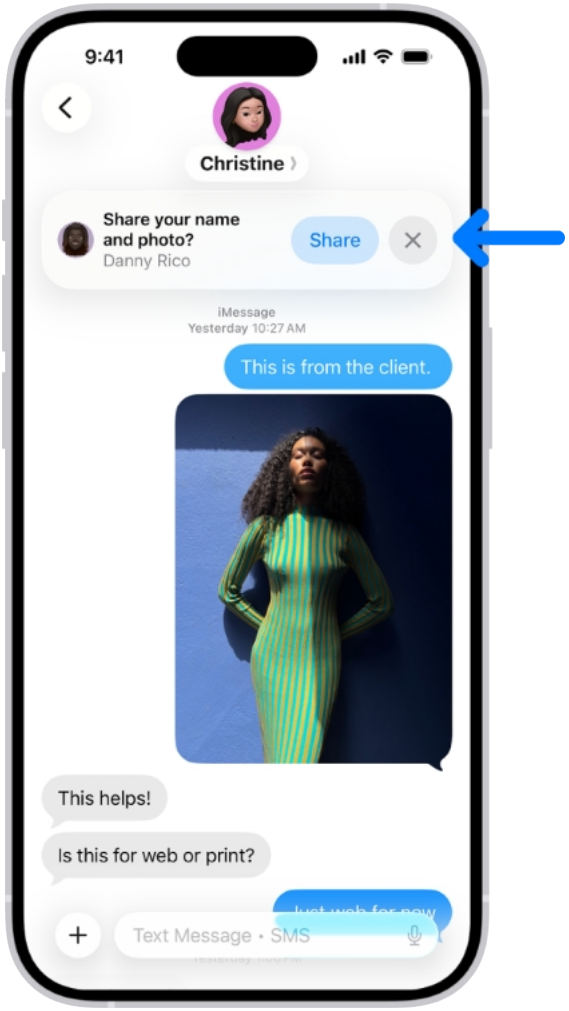
1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Tap Text Message Forwarding, then turn on any devices you want to include.

   If any devices aren't appearing in the list, see the Apple Support article Forward text messages from your iPhone to other devices.

Note: If you're not using two-factor authentication, you need to enter a six-digit activation code that appears on the other device.

Share your name and photo

In Messages, you can share your name and photo with others. You decide whether to share it whenever you send or receive a message from someone new.



1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - At the top of the conversation list, tap Edit, then tap Set Up Name & Photo.
   - Swipe up to the top of the conversation list, then tap Share Your Name & Photo.
3. Choose how you want to be represented, scroll down, then turn on Name and Photo Sharing.
4. Tap Share Automatically, then choose one of the following:
   - *Contacts Only:* Anyone who is a saved contact receives the option of using the name and image you chose when they communicate with you.
   - *Always Ask:* You decide to share your name and photo as you communicate with each contact.
5. Tap to save your changes.

To change these settings after you set them up, tap Edit, then tap Name & Photo.

Note: Your name and photo may not appear as expected when you send messages to recipients who are using non-Apple devices.

See also

Apple Support article: Add or remove your phone number in Messages or FaceTime

Stop, mute, and change message notifications on iPhone

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Set up cellular service on iPhone

Previous
Get started with Messages

Next
About iMessage

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

About iMessage

iMessage is a secure messaging service that you can use to send and receive text messages in the Messages app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple Watch, and Apple Vision Pro.

If someone sends a message to your email address or phone number using iMessage, you receive the message on all your Apple devices that are set up to receive messages sent to that email address or phone number. When you view an iMessage conversation, you see all messages sent from any device, so you can keep in touch with others wherever you are.

You need an Apple Account to use some iMessage features. If you've made purchases from the iTunes Store or App Store or you've signed in to iCloud, you have an Apple Account.

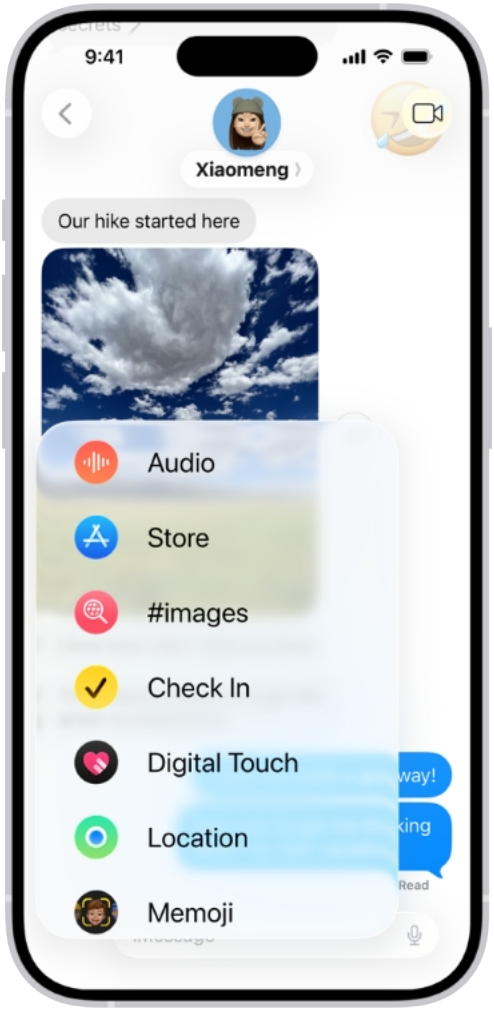


Some things to know about communicating in iMessage:

- You can send texts over Wi-Fi or cellular service.
- Texts you send and receive using iMessage don't count against your SMS, MMS, or RCS allowances in your cellular messaging plan, but cellular data rates may apply.
- When you communicate with others who also use iMessage on an Apple device, the texts appear in blue bubbles. (SMS, MMS, and RCS messages appear in green bubbles.)

  Messages are sent with iMessage when you see a blue send button. A green send button indicates the message is sent with SMS, MMS, or RCS.
- In a conversation, you can see if someone's writing a message. If someone has read receipts turned on, you can also see if they've opened your message.
- You can use a wider range of apps and features, like text formatting, inline replies, editing, unsending, scheduling, backgrounds, polls, Memoji, drawings, collaboration, group conversation management, and more.
- A greater range of options are available when you react with Tapbacks, send audio messages, or send via satellite.

- When you use iMessage, you can report spam messages to Apple and screen unknown senders.
- For security, messages sent using iMessage are end-to-end encrypted before they're sent, and you can also use Contact Key Verification.



See also

Turn on iMessage

Set up Messages on iPhone

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Apple Support article: What is the difference between iMessage, RCS, and SMS/MMS?

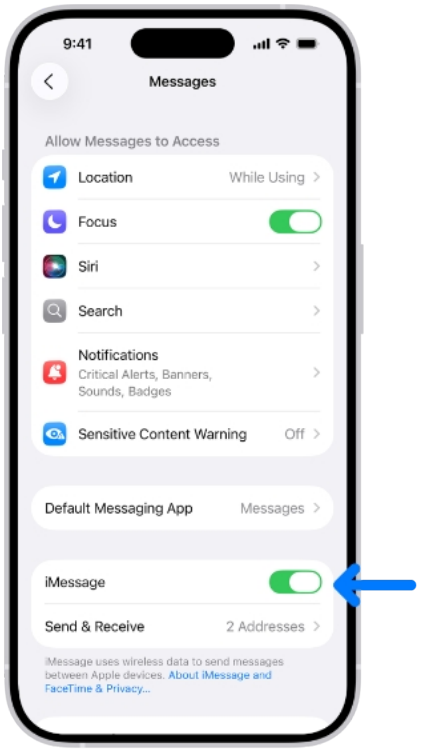
Previous
Set up Messages

Next
Send and reply to messages

Table of Contents

Get started with Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can exchange texts, photos, videos, and more, with individuals, businesses, and groups. You can express yourself with backgrounds and animations, share TV shows and music, and use Messages to collaborate with others.

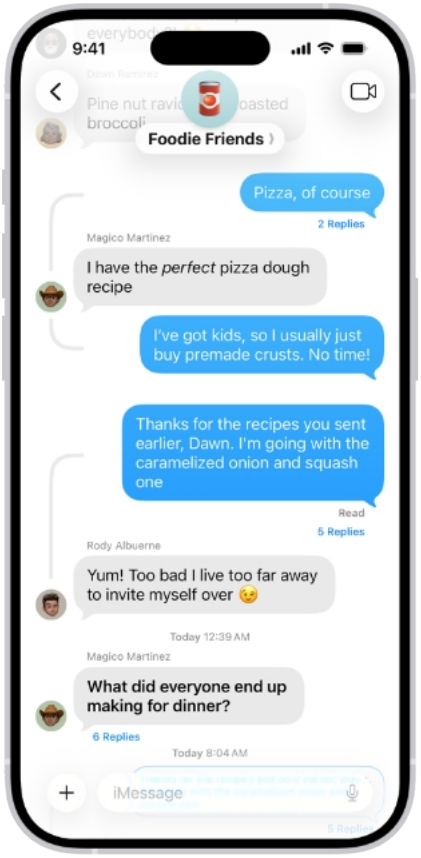


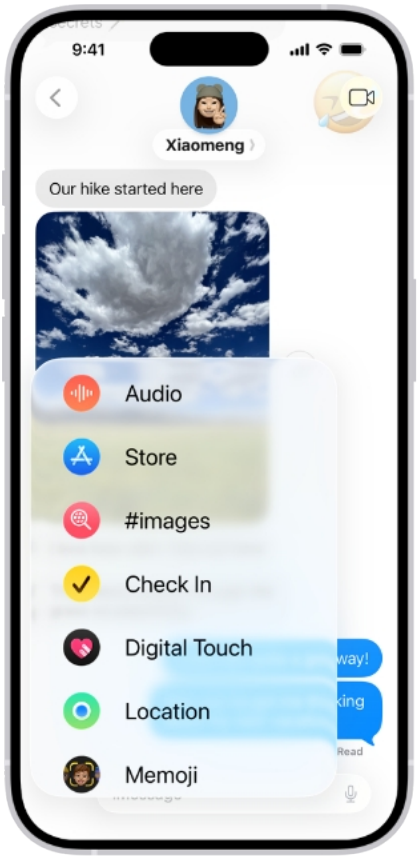
Set up iMessage and sync across devices

When you and a friend both sign in to iMessage, you can send each other unlimited messages, no matter where you are in the world. Go to Settings > Apps > Messages, then turn on iMessage. To see the same messages you get on your iPhone on your other Apple devices, tap Text Message Forwarding, then turn on your other devices in the list. Be sure to sign in to the same Apple Account on the other devices, too.

Chat as a group

You can chat with several people at once—like your family or a work group. Tap , enter the names of the people in the group, then type your message, or tap to dictate it. To name the group, tap the group icons at the top of the conversation, tap Edit, then tap Edit Name and Photo.





Go beyond texting

You don't have to limit your communication to text. To add emoji, tap or on your keyboard. To add media, polls, location sharing, and more, tap next to the text field.

Schedule a message to deliver later

If it's too late at night or too important to forget, schedule your message for a future time, instead of sending it as soon as you finish it. Tap +, tap Send Later, choose a time, then tap ↑.



Want to learn more?

- Set up Messages on iPhone
- Send and reply to messages on iPhone
- Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone
- Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone
- Schedule a text message on iPhone to send later
- Search in Messages on iPhone
- Screen, filter, report, and block text messages on iPhone
- Stop, mute, and change message notifications on iPhone

Availability of Messages features may depend on your carrier, country, or region.

Previous
Use the level

Next
Set up Messages

Select version:

iOS 26

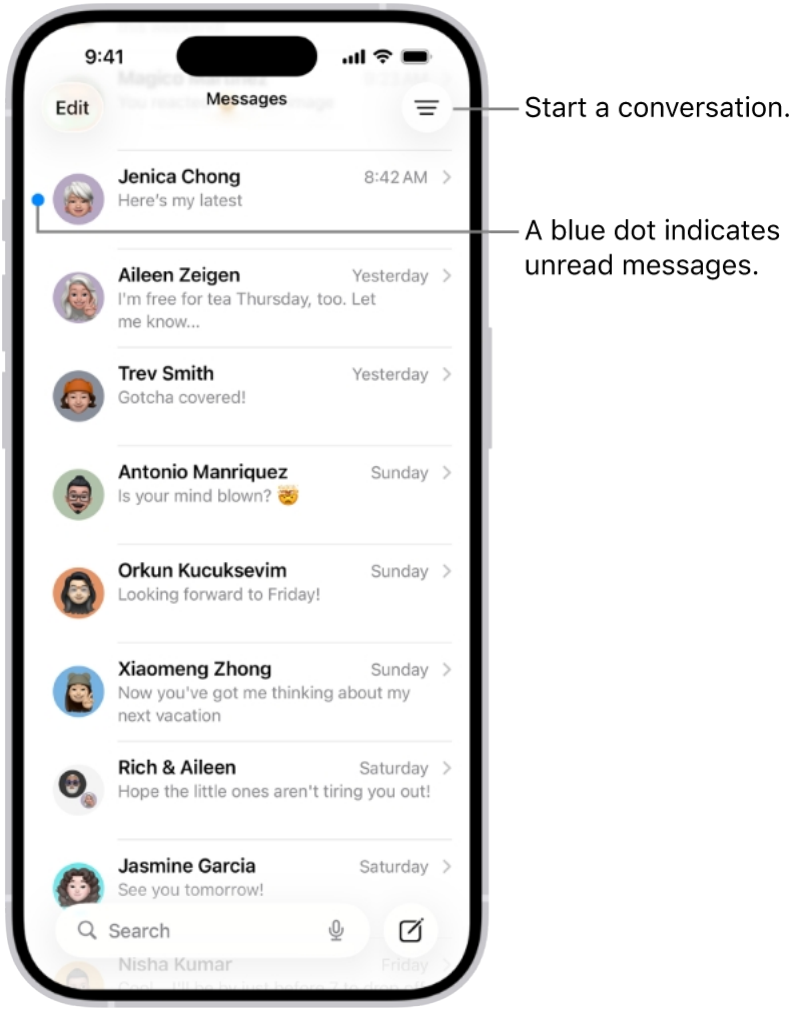
Table of Contents

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

You can send text messages, images, and much more. You can reply within a conversation or to specific comments in a thread. You can even use Siri to listen and respond to your messages.

To fully use all the features in the Messages app, make sure you set up Messages.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Read my last message from Antonio." Learn how to use Siri.



Start a conversation

You can send a text message to one or more people to start a new conversation.



1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, tap at the bottom right of the screen.
3. Tap the To field, then enter the phone number, contact name, or Apple Account of each recipient.

   To choose recipients from your contacts, tap + in the To field.
4. Do any of the following:

   - Tap the text field above the keyboard, then type your message.
   - Tap or to add emoji.
   - Tap to dictate text in the language of your keyboard.
   - Tap + (to the left of the text field) to send photos, videos, stickers, polls, audio messages, your location, and more with iMessage apps.
5. Tap to send.

If a message can't be sent, an alert appears. Tap ⓘ to try sending the message again.

To return to the conversation list from a conversation, tap <.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can create custom emoji—called Genmoji. See Create your own emoji with Genmoji.

If you're having problems, see the Apple Support article If you can't send or receive messages on your iPhone or iPad.

Reply to a message

Messages are grouped by conversation in the conversation list. A dot indicates you haven't yet read one or more messages in that conversation.

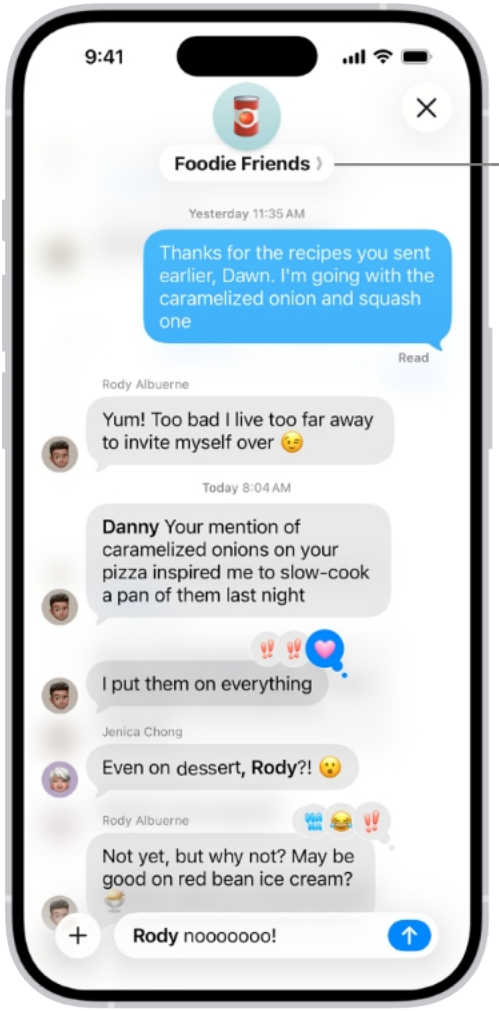
1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation that you want to participate in.
3. Tap the text field, create your message, then tap ↑ to send your message.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use it to suggest a reply to a message you receive. See Use Apple Intelligence in Messages.

Tip: Find out when a message was sent to you. Drag the message bubble to the left to see timestamps for all messages in the conversation.

Reply inline to a specific message

You can respond to a specific message inline. An inline reply quotes the message you're responding to. This keeps a busy conversation organized by clarifying which response relates to which message.



1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, tap the conversation that you want to participate in.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Swipe right on the message bubble that you want to reply to.
   - Touch and hold the message bubble that you want to reply to, then tap Reply.
4. Enter your message, then tap .

   Note: Everyone in a group conversation can see your inline reply. To reply privately, tap the group icon at the top of the conversation, touch and hold the icon of the person you want to message privately, then tap Message.
5. To return to the main conversation, tap the blurred background.

Touch and hold a message to react with a Tapback, such as a thumbs-up or a heart.

Tip: To copy part of a message, touch and hold the message, tap Select, select the text you want to copy, then tap Copy.

Reply to messages from your Lock Screen

You can reply to messages on your Lock Screen without opening Messages. See Turn on Lock Screen features.

Send a text message from your other number

If your iPhone is set up with Dual SIM, you can tap your number to switch to your other outgoing line as you compose your message.

Why are some bubbles blue and others green?

If a message can be sent using iMessage, you see a blue Send arrow, and the message appears in a blue bubble.

If you can't use iMessage (which happens, for example, when a recipient isn't using an Apple device), you can use SMS, MMS, or RCS. Messages sent with SMS, MMS, or RCS appear in green bubbles.

For more information, see the Apple Support article What is the difference between iMessage, RCS, and SMS/MMS?



Note: Content may not appear as expected when you send messages to recipients who are using non-Apple devices.

Use Live Translation

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use it to automatically translate text in Messages. See Translate messages, calls, and conversations.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Unsend and edit messages on iPhone

Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Use the Messages app with CarPlay

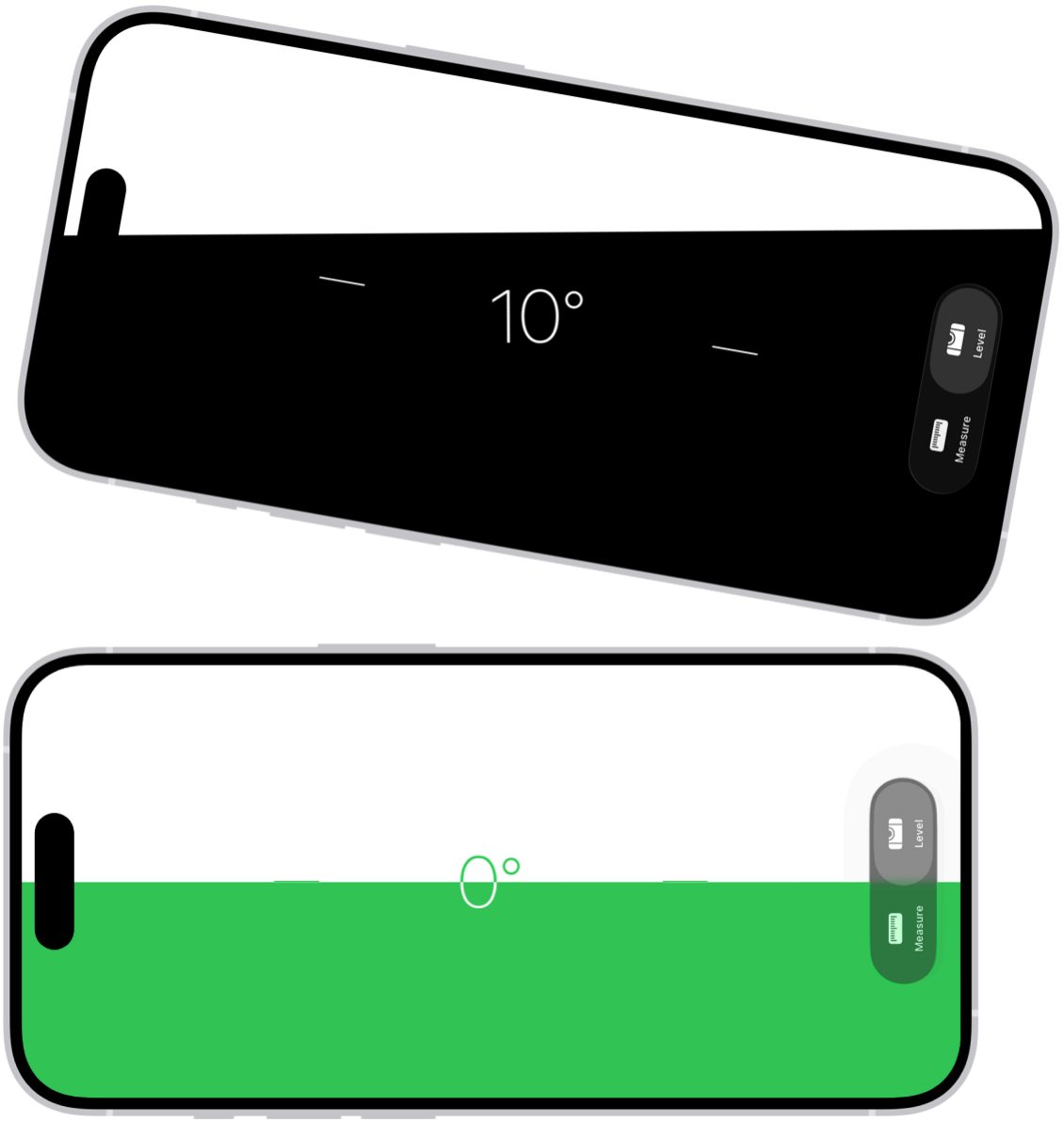
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use iPhone as a level

Use your iPhone to determine whether an object near you is level (parallel to the ground), or how many degrees it varies from level (measurements are approximate).



1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Level, then hold iPhone against an object, such as a picture frame.
   - *Make an object level:* Rotate the object and iPhone until you see green.

- *Match the slope:* Tap the screen to capture the slope of the first object. Hold iPhone against another object and rotate both of them until the screen turns green.

  To reset the level, tap the screen again.

See also

Measure dimensions with iPhone

Previous
Measure a person's height

Next
Get started with Messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

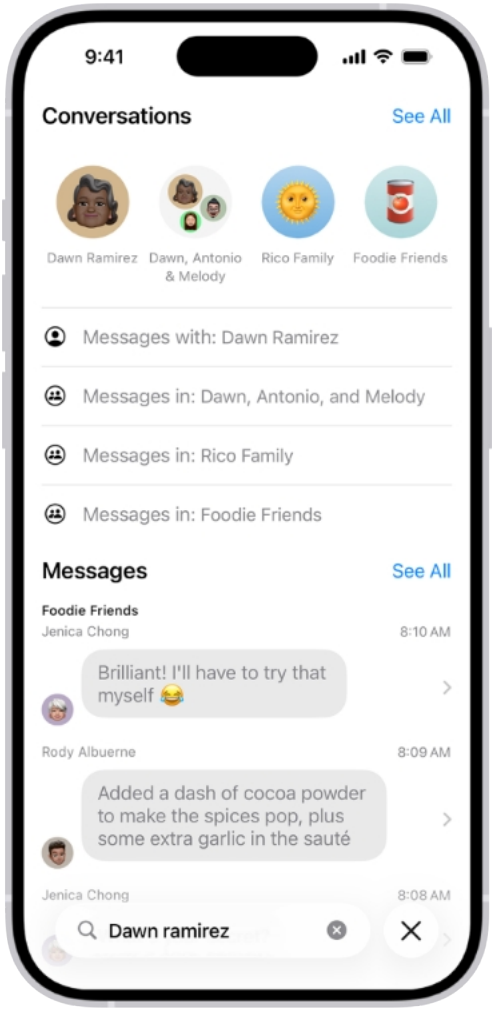
Select version:

iOS 26

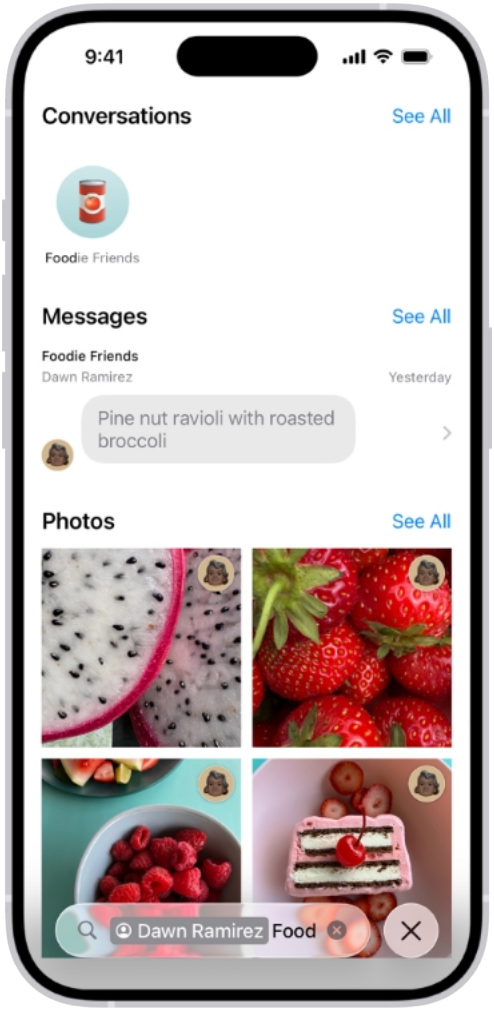
Table of Contents

Search in Messages on iPhone

You can search for text messages and attachments, using different criteria to narrow your results.



1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field below the conversation list.
3. Enter what you're looking for (such as a word or phrase).



4. To filter your search, do any of the following:

    - *Limit your search to one person or conversation:* Start by typing a person's name, tap "Messages with" or "Messages in," then tap other criteria that appear or add any text you want to find in your conversation.

    - *Limit your search to types of shared items:* Begin your search with a search term—such as Photo, Link, Wallet (for passes). When a filter appears near the top of the screen, tap it to add it to filter the search.

    - *Combine search criteria:* Add another search term or filter.

5. Tap 🔍, then tap a message in the results list to read it.

The search field also opens suggestions—such as conversations, photos, locations, links, and more. Tap any suggestion to quickly jump to a conversation.

See also

Search with Spotlight on iPhone

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Keep track of messages on iPhone

Previous
Keep track of messages

Next
Forward and share messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Schedule a text message on iPhone to send later

If it's too late at night or too important to forget, you can schedule a text message to be sent at a later time.

Note: You must be using iMessage. Your recipient can use any device, and they won't know that the message was scheduled. You need to be online to reschedule, edit, or delete a scheduled message.



Schedule a message

You can schedule a message up to 14 days into the future.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation where you want to schedule a message or start a conversation.
3. Tap +, then tap Send Later.
4. Tap the time to open the scheduler, then choose when you want to send your message.

   The border of the text field turns into a dashed line, and the time your message will be sent appears at the top of the message.
5. Enter a message, then tap ↑.

The message appears with a dashed line until it's time to send it, and it's delivered even if all your devices are offline.

Note: Scheduled messages are encrypted and stored on Apple servers only until they're sent. When a message is sent, it's removed from Apple servers, the balloon becomes a solid color, and its dashed line disappears.

Change the time to send a message

You can reschedule a message until its delivery time.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation with the message you want to reschedule.

   If you don't see your message, scroll down to the bottom of the conversation. Scheduled messages may appear below sent messages.
3. Tap Edit beside the date (above your scheduled message), then do any of the following:

   - *Reschedule it:* Tap Edit Time, choose a new time, then tap away from the schedule to commit the new time.
   - *Send it immediately:* Tap Send Message.

Edit a scheduled message

You can edit a scheduled message until its delivery time.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.

2. Go to the conversation with the scheduled message you want to edit.

   If you don't see your message, scroll down to the bottom of the conversation. Scheduled messages may appear below sent messages.

3. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Edit.

4. Make any changes, then tap ✓ to resend with edits or ✕ to revert.

Delete a scheduled message

When you delete a message before its scheduled time, it's canceled and not delivered to the recipient.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.

2. Go to the conversation with the scheduled message you want to delete.

   If you don't see your message, scroll down to the bottom of the conversation. Scheduled messages may appear below sent messages.

3. Touch and hold the message you want to cancel, then tap Delete.

See also

Unsend and edit messages on iPhone

Turn read receipts on or off in Messages on iPhone

Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Text via satellite

Next
Unsend and edit messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Send a text message via satellite on iPhone

On supported models, you can text friends and family via satellite when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage. (Available in the U.S. and Canada with iOS 18 or later and in Mexico with iOS 18.4 or later.)

Important: To connect with emergency services, use Emergency SOS via satellite.

Before you begin

To set up your iPhone to use either iMessage or SMS via satellite, do the following *before* you're outside of cellular or Wi-Fi coverage:

- Turn on iMessage.
- Check that your SIM is active.
- If you want someone to be able to *initiate* an SMS conversation via satellite, add them to your Family Sharing group or emergency contacts (see Set up and view your Medical ID). Anyone else must *first* get an SMS message from you (via satellite) before they can reply.

Send and receive messages via satellite

When you try to send a text message but you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, you get an alert to connect to your nearest satellite. You can then exchange texts, Tapbacks, and emoji over iMessage and SMS.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. If you see an alert that you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, tap Use Messages via Satellite.
3. Follow the instructions to connect to a satellite, while remaining aware of your surroundings. You don't need to raise your phone—just hold it as you normally would,

and make sure that you're outside with a clear view of the sky and the horizon. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

Other satellite-enabled services also become available, including Emergency SOS via satellite, Roadside Assistance, and Find My.

4. Enter your message, then tap ↑. (The Send button is green instead of blue when sending with SMS.)

   It may take a few minutes to send your message via satellite.

When you connect, a green dot and 📡 appear at the top of your screen. If your connection weakens, the green dot turns orange, and < and > tell you where to find the signal.

If you have cellular or Wi-Fi coverage and use iMessage via satellite to communicate with someone who doesn't have either, an alert tells you if your contact is accepting messages via satellite. Tap ↑, then tap Send via Satellite (below the message bubble) to send your message.

How messages via satellite works

When possible, iPhone uses iMessage to send or receive texts via satellite to people in your contact list.

When iMessage isn't available, iPhone uses SMS messaging via satellite to reach any mobile phone number. This may happen if any of the following is true of the person you're texting:

- They don't have iMessage.
- They're not in your contacts.
- They haven't updated their device to iOS 18, iPadOS 18, macOS 15, watchOS 11, visionOS 2, or later.
- You haven't been in contact with them over iMessage recently (in the last month or so).

While using iMessage outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, anyone you communicate with who's in your contacts and has a cellular or Wi-Fi connection sees a status letting them know that you're receiving messages via satellite if they recently updated their iOS.

Messages via satellite is free for 2 years after activation.

To preview how the feature works, go to Settings > Apps > Messages, then tap Satellite Connection Demo.

Note: Not all carriers support SMS messaging via satellite, and some features may vary. Third parties and affiliates provide the network for satellite connection features.

For more information, see the Apple Support article About Messages via satellite.

See also

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone

Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

Previous
Send and reply to messages

Next
Schedule a text message to send later

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Unsend and edit messages on iPhone

You can unsend and edit recent text messages, giving you the opportunity to fix a typo or pull back a message that you accidentally sent to the wrong person.

Note: To unsend or edit text messages, you must be using iMessage with iOS 16, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, visionOS 1, or later. If you unsend a message to someone who's using an earlier operating system, the original message remains in the conversation, and you're notified that the recipient may still see the original message. If you edit a message to someone who's using an earlier operating system, they receive follow-up messages with the preface "Edited to" and your new message in quotation marks. SMS, MMS, or RCS text messages can't be edited or unsent. However, SMS, MMS, or RCS text messages can be edited in a group conversation as long as there's at least one other iMessage user in the group.

Unsend a message

You can undo a recently sent message for up to 2 minutes after sending it.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Undo Send.

   A note confirming that you unsent the message appears in both conversation transcripts: yours and your recipient's.

Unsending removes the message from your recipient's device.

Edit a sent message

You can edit a recently sent message up to five times within 15 minutes of sending it.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Select a conversation with the message you want to edit.

3. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Edit.
4. Make any changes, then tap ✓ to resend with edits or ✕ to revert.

   Note: The message is marked as Edited in the conversation transcript.

The message bubble updates to reflect your edits on both your iPhone and your recipient's device, and both of you can tap Edited to see previous versions of your message.

See also

Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone

Keep track of messages on iPhone

Screen, filter, report, and block text messages on iPhone

Previous
Schedule a text message to send later

Next
Keep track of messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Keep track of messages on iPhone

You can catch up on text messages you missed, mark messages as unread, and pin and unpin conversations to prioritize messages in the conversation list.

Catch up on messages you missed

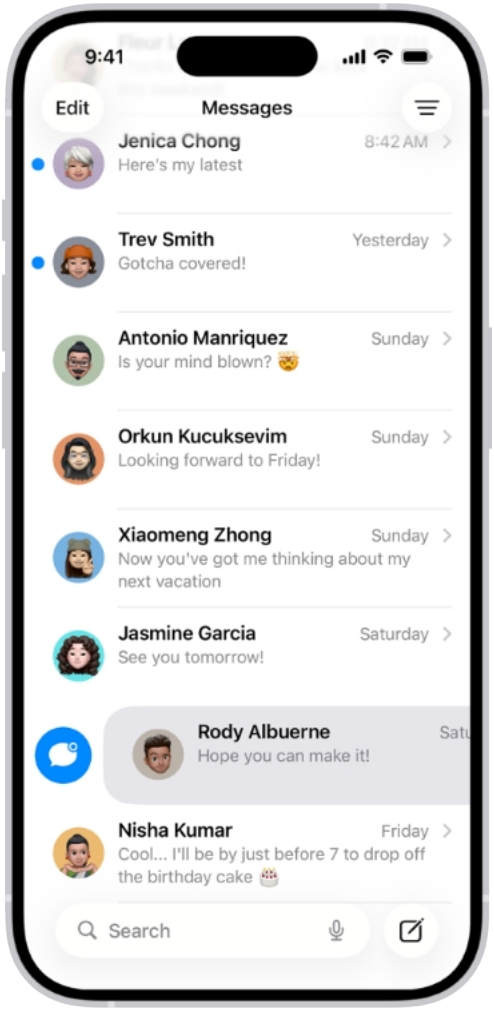
If you receive messages while you have notifications paused or you're away from your iPhone, you can jump to the first message you haven't seen in a conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open an unread conversation, then tap .

   Your view of the conversation moves up to the first unread message.

Mark messages as unread

When you don't have time to respond, you can mark conversations as unread so you can return to them later.



1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, do one of the following:
   - Swipe right on a conversation to mark it as unread.
   - Drag right and tap .

Tip: You can also mark several messages as unread at the same time. Tap Edit, tap Select Messages, select the conversations you want to mark as unread, then tap Unread in the bottom-left corner.

See a list of your unread messages

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, tap , then tap Unread.

   A checkmark appears next to Unread, and the icon turns blue to indicate that filtering is on.
3. To see both your read and unread messages again, tap , then tap to deselect Unread.

💡 **Tip:** To mark all your unread messages as read, tap Edit, tap Select Messages, then tap Read All.

Pin a conversation

You can pin specific conversations to the top of the conversation list so the people you contact most always come first in the list. Pinned conversations appear as larger icons at the top of your conversation list.

1. Go to the Messages app 💬 on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a conversation, then tap Pin.

Unpin a conversation

You can unpin pinned conversations so that they no longer appear at the top of the conversation list.

1. Go to the Messages app 💬 on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a pinned conversation, then do one of the following:
   - Drag the message to the bottom of the list, and let go.
   - Tap Unpin.

Pin shared items

You can pin certain shared items—such as links or collaboration invitations—within a conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app 💬 on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a message, then tap Pin.
3. To find pinned items, tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation, then tap a category (such as Links). Pinned items appear at the top.

To unpin a pinned item, touch and hold it in the message, then tap Unpin. If you're in the Links or Documents tab, touch and hold the item, tap Show in Conversation, touch and hold it in the message, then tap Unpin.

See message summaries

Apple Intelligence* can show you a summary of unread messages in a conversation. See Use Apple Intelligence in Messages.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone

Search in Messages on iPhone

Stop, mute, and change message notifications on iPhone

Screen, filter, report, and block text messages on iPhone

Previous
Unsend and edit messages

Next
Search

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Forward and share messages on iPhone

You can forward one or more text messages in a conversation to a different recipient.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a message bubble you want to forward, then tap More.
3. Tap to select one or more messages to forward, then tap .
4. Enter recipients, then tap .

Tip: To show the message bubbles and timestamps just as they appear in a conversation, send a screenshot as an attached image instead of forwarding messages.

To see the same messages on other devices you use, see Sync messages on all your Apple devices.

See also

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Set up Messages on iPhone

Table of Contents

Add backgrounds in Messages on iPhone

You can add a background to an iMessage conversation. Other people in the conversation see the background on their devices too and can change the background for the group.

Note: To add, view, or change conversation backgrounds, you must use iMessage on iOS 26, iPadOS 26, macOS Tahoe, watchOS 26, visionOS 26, or later.



Use a dynamic background

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation where you want to add a background.
3. Tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation, then tap Backgrounds.

4. Tap Color, Sky, Water, or Aurora.
5. Swipe left to choose an option.

   Tip: For Color, tap the swatches in the bottom corners to adjust the colors.
6. Tap ✓ to add the background to your conversation.

Use a photo as a background

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation where you want to add a photo to the background.
3. Tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation, then tap Backgrounds.
4. Tap Photo, then tap to select a photo from your library.

   Tip: If someone shared a photo you want to use as a background, touch and hold the photo in the message, then tap Set as Background.
5. Do any of the following:

   - *Crop the image:* Pinch in or out.
   - *Remove the color:* Swipe left to Black & White.
   - *Apply a color filter:* Swipe left to Duotone or Color Wash, then tap the color swatch to change the palette.
6. Tap ✓ to add the background to your conversation.

You can set conversations to showcase backgrounds when you return to them. Go to Settings > Apps > Messages, then turn on Start with Photos Visible.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use Image Playground to create one-of-a-kind images for the background of your conversations. See Use Apple Intelligence in Messages.

Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings before a background image containing sensitive content is sent or received. See Receive warnings about sensitive content or Check for sensitive images and videos.

Revert to a plain background

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.

2. Go to the conversation with a background you want to remove.
3. Tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation, then tap Backgrounds.
4. Tap None.

Turn conversation backgrounds off

When you turn conversation backgrounds off, others in a conversation still see any background chosen for a conversation.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn Conversation Backgrounds off.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Format text and animate messages on iPhone

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Previous
Collaborate on projects

Next
Use iMessage apps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share screens using Messages on iPhone

While using Messages on an iPhone that meets minimum system requirements, you can share your screen or ask to see someone else's screen. In supported apps, you can also use SharePlay to get together with friends while you watch the latest episode of your favorite show or listen to a new song in real time.

Show someone else what's on your screen

You can jump from Messages to FaceTime to share your screen to bring apps, webpages, and more into the conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with just one other person, tap .
3. Tap Share My Screen. See Share your screen.

See another person's screen

You can jump from Messages to FaceTime to see another person's screen, or even remotely control it.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with just one other person, tap .
3. Tap Ask to Share Screen. See Request remote control.

Use SharePlay to enjoy content together

You can start a Messages conversation right from a supported app like Apple TV and Music.

To use SharePlay in Messages, you and your recipients must be using iMessage. Shared playback controls keep everyone in sync.

1. In a supported app, find a show, movie, song, album, or other content you want to share, then tap the item to see its details.
2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap , then tap SharePlay.
   - Tap ••• at the top right, tap , then tap SharePlay.
   - Tap ••• next to the content, then tap SharePlay.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap Messages.
4. Tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

   To begin viewing or listening, recipients tap the content's title at the top of the conversation, then tap Open. For everyone who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time.

   Note: If the shared content requires a subscription, the service may ask those who don't have access to subscribe, make a transaction, or sign up for a free trial, if available.

   When you select content to share and tap the Play button, you can also select Play for Everyone (if it appears) to begin it for everyone in the conversation. (Others on the thread may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

Each person in the conversation can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward for everyone, but settings like closed-captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.

Use Messages when you want no interruptions to the sound of the movie, show, song, or podcast, or tap to switch to FaceTime when you want to see and hear other people as you chat.

Tip: After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV.

See also

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

You can send a group text message, name it, and assign it an icon to find it more easily. In a group conversation, you can call people's attention to specific messages and even collaborate on projects.



Start a group conversation

You can send a message to multiple people to start a group conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.

2. In the conversation list, tap at the bottom right of the screen.
3. Tap the To field, then enter the phone number, contact name, or Apple Account of each recipient.

   To choose group members from your contacts, tap + in the To field.

   Note: If one or more of your recipients isn't using iMessage, messages appear in green bubbles instead of blue ones.
4. Tap the text field, enter a message or tap + (to the left of the text field) to send a photo, video, poll, or another item with iMessage apps.
5. Tap ↑.

Add someone to an existing group conversation

If you have at least two other people in a group conversation, you can add additional contacts.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the group conversation you want to add someone to.
3. Tap the group icon at the top of the conversation, then tap Add.



4. Enter the phone number, contact name, or Apple Account of each recipient.

   To add group members from your contacts, tap + in the To field.

5. Tap ✓ to save your changes.

Note: If the group includes someone who hasn't turned on iMessage, follow the onscreen instructions to start a new group.

If you only have one other person in the conversation, you need to start a new group conversation to add someone else.

To remove someone from a group conversation in iMessage, touch and hold their icon, then tap Remove from Group.

In iOS 26 or later, you can add new contacts introduced in group conversations. See Create a contact.

Leave a group conversation

You can leave a group chat if there are at least three other participants in the conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the group conversation you want to leave.
3. Tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation.
4. Scroll down and tap Leave This Conversation or Delete and Block This Conversation. (Learn more about deleting and blocking conversations.)

   Blocked conversations are moved to the Recently Deleted folder, where you can recover them.

If you want to stay in a group chat but stop receiving its notifications, mute the conversation instead.

Mention people in a group conversation

You can mention someone by name in a group conversation to call their attention to a specific message, and they'll get a notification. Depending on their settings, the person you mention may be notified even if they have the conversation muted.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, begin typing a contact's name in the text field.
3. Tap the contact's name when it appears.

   You can also mention a contact in Messages by typing @ followed by the contact's name.

   To change whether you get notifications when your name is mentioned in Messages, go to Settings > Apps > Messages, then turn on or off Notify Me.

Name a group conversation

You can name a group chat and choose an icon to represent the conversation. Everyone who has turned on iMessage sees the new name and icon.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the group icon at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Edit, tap Edit Name & Photo, then choose an option.

Send or request money

In group iMessage conversations in iOS 26 or later, you can send money to someone in a group chat or make a request of the group to split bills, organize gifts, or pay someone back, then track payments in the Wallet app. See Send, request, and receive payments with Apple Cash in Messages.

See also

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Apple Support article: Send a group text message

Previous
Forward and share messages

Next
Share screens

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can send a text message to invite people to collaborate on a project, and everyone in the conversation is added to the document, spreadsheet, or other shared file.

Note: To start collaborating on a project with Messages, you and your recipients must be using iMessage with iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, watchOS 9, visionOS 1, or later, and you must first save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as iCloud Drive. For iPhone apps, you may need to turn on iCloud to use their collaboration features. See Set up iCloud on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

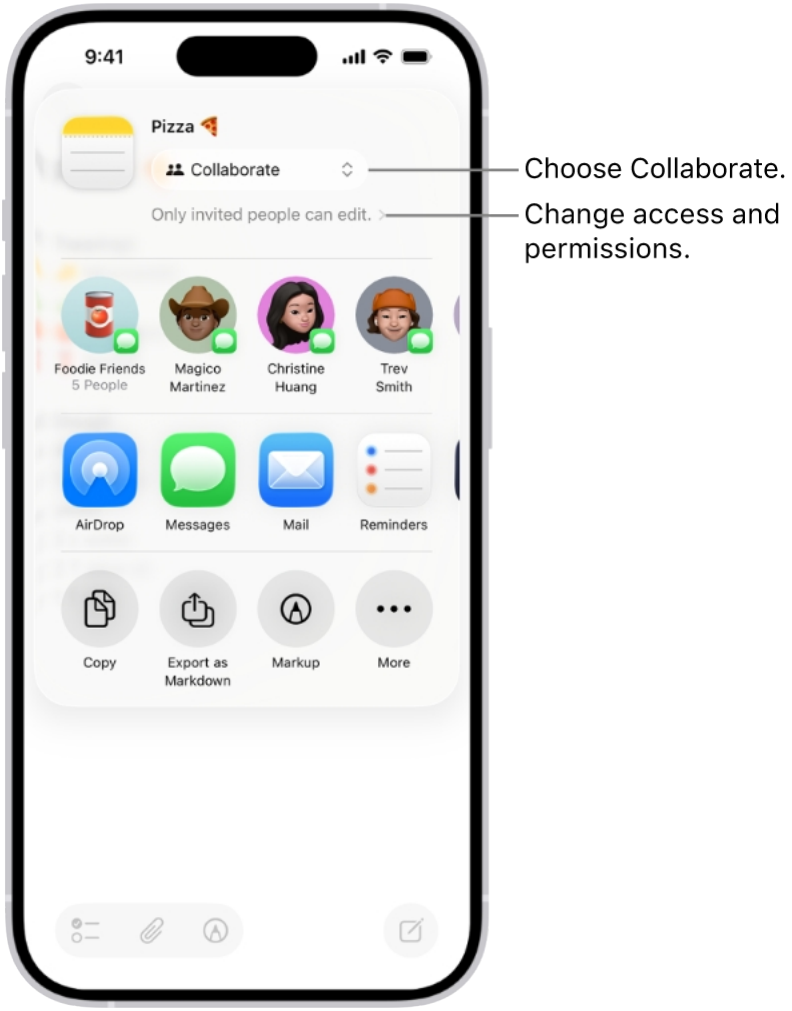
Invite people to collaborate

You can invite people to collaborate on a project from another app, and then discuss your content in Messages. Share files from apps like Notes, Freeform, Reminders, Safari, Keynote, Numbers, Pages, and more, as long as you first turn on their collaboration features in iCloud settings and save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as iCloud Drive.

The process for inviting someone to collaborate depends on the app. Here's one way you might start a collaboration in a supported app:

1. Select the file you want to share, then tap, or tap Collaborate.
2. Make sure Collaborate (rather than Send Copy) is selected, then tap the group or individual you want to collaborate with. If you don't see the group or person listed, tap.

   The suggested icons may correspond with groups or individuals with active FaceTime calls or recent Messages conversations.
3. A Messages conversation opens with the invitation ready to send. Add a note (optional), then tap.



After you invite participants in Messages, you can work on the project in the other app and return to the Messages conversation by tapping the Collaborate button in that app.

When someone edits the file, you see updates at the top of the Messages thread. To return to the shared project and see changes, tap an update.

Note: Your participants may need to accept your invitation or join the shared item before they can interact with it or see any updates.

Collaborate on a project in Messages

After you share your project, you see activity updates at the top of the Messages conversation whenever someone makes an edit.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation that contains the invitation to the project you've started collaborating on, then do any of the following to return to the project:

   - Tap the file in your conversation to open it.
   - If you see an update at the top of the conversation, tap Show.

- Tap the icon of the participant or group at the top of the screen, scroll to Collaboration, then tap the shared project.

When you make any changes or edits to the project, your participants get updates in the conversation.

Note: If you add a new person to a group conversation, you have to grant them access to the projects you're collaborating on. If they've been added to the group conversation recently, you can tap a notification at the top of screen to add them. Or invite them to collaborate.

Manage the collaboration and group

If you share a project with two or more people in a Messages conversation, you can add or remove participants.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation you want to manage, then tap the group icon at the top of the conversation to open details about the group's conversation.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add new participants:* Tap Add, then add contacts. (You may need to scroll down to see Add.)

     If you started collaborating with just one other person, you must start a new conversation to add people to the collaboration.

     Note: You must add new participants to any files that were shared in the conversation before they joined. As you add participants, a notification appears at the top of the conversation. Tap Show in the notification to review the previously shared files you can add new participants to.

   - *Remove a participant from the conversation:* Touch and hold their icon, then tap Remove from Group.

     Important: The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. Check participant access in the app itself to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

The group of people in the Messages collaboration and the group collaborating on the file may not match. For example, you may invite people to collaborate on the file outside of Messages. Or you may have two different groups in Messages, each with its own collaboration conversation.

When you add someone to a document you've shared with others earlier, you have the option of adding them to an existing conversation or keeping the conversations separate. People added to conversations aren't able to read messages sent before they joined the conversation.

Stop collaborating on a project in Messages

The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. For example, if you're collaborating on a document in the Pages app, the Pages settings take precedence over the Messages settings. You can, however, unsend or delete the invitation from the conversation just as you would any other message.

Important: When you delete an invitation from a thread, that conversation is no longer associated with the collaboration, but it doesn't remove participants from the file. Check participant access in the app to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

See also

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Share screens

Next
Add backgrounds

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

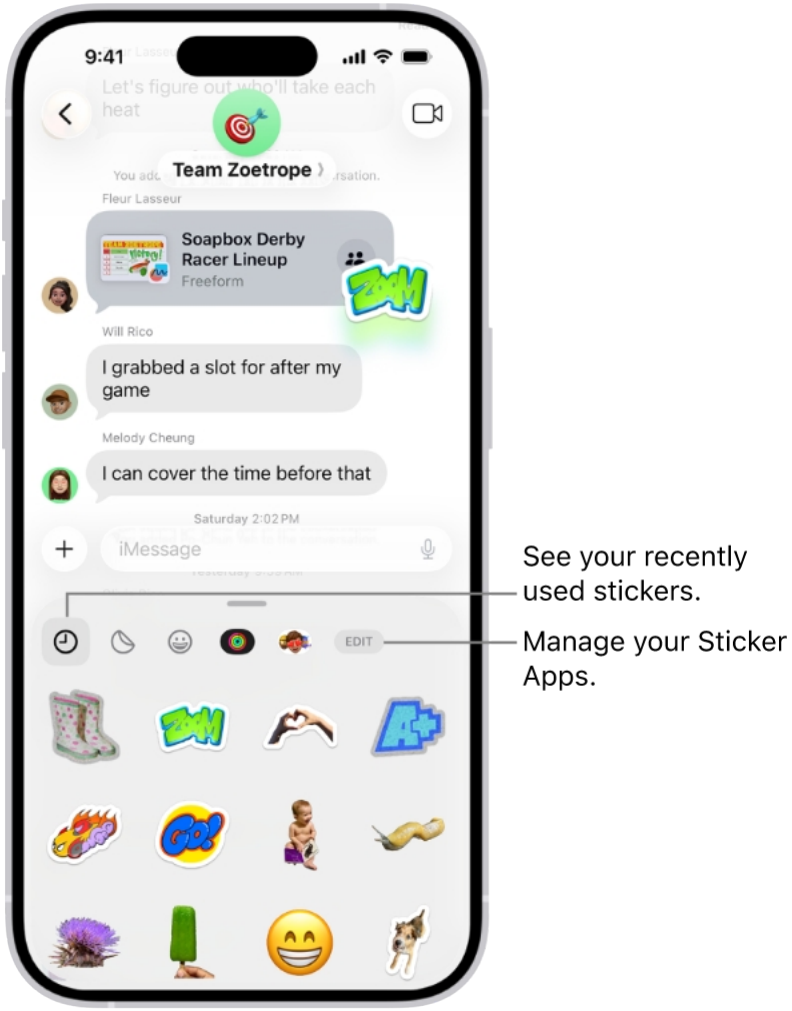
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Express yourself by adding stickers that match your personality and mood to your text messages.



Send a sticker in a message

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +.
3. Tap Stickers, then tap the icon for any of the following sticker packs:

- *Live Stickers you or a friend made:* Tap . See Create Live Stickers and Save other people's Live Stickers, below.
- *Emoji:* Tap .
- *Memoji:* Tap , tap a Memoji in the top row to view the stickers in the sticker pack, then choose a pose or expression. See Create Memoji.
- *Stickers from other creators:* Download a sticker app from the App Store. See Add iMessage apps.

4. Add a message (optional), then tap .

You can also send stickers from the emoji keyboard. See Make a sticker with the iPhone keyboard.

Place stickers on a conversation

You can add stickers on message bubbles in conversations, and angle the stickers or make them different sizes. You can also place a sticker on top of another sticker.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap Stickers, then tap an icon—such as , , or —in the top row to browse a sticker pack.
4. Drag a sticker onto a bubble, then do any of the following:
   - *Adjust the angle:* Rotate a second finger around the finger dragging the sticker.
   - *Adjust the size:* Move a second finger closer to or away from the finger dragging the sticker.

   Your recipients see the sticker as soon as you place it on a message.

   To find out who sent a sticker in a conversation, touch and hold the sticker, then tap Sticker Details.

Tip: Quickly add stickers to messages. Touch and hold a message, tap Attach Sticker, then choose a sticker to appear on a corner of that message bubble.

Move, resize, or delete stickers

After you place a sticker on top of message bubbles in conversations, you can make changes to it.

Do any of the following:

- *Move or resize a sticker:* Touch and hold the sticker, then make any changes.
- *Delete a sticker:* Touch and hold the message bubble, tap Sticker Details, swipe left on the sticker you want to delete (on your iPhone only), then tap 🗑.
- *See any text covered by a sticker:* Double-tap the message bubble.

To change stickers sent in a message bubble, see Unsend and edit messages.

Note: You and your recipients must be using iOS 17.2, iPadOS 17.2, macOS 14.1, watchOS 10.2, visionOS 1, or later, to see these updates to stickers.

Create Live Stickers

You can create your own Live Stickers to use in messages by lifting subjects from photos and adding effects that help bring the stickers to life.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap ＋, then tap Stickers.
3. Tap , then tap ＋.
4. Tap a photo, then tap ＋.

   Tip: To create a Live Sticker that moves, use a Live Photo. See Make stickers from your photos.
5. To add an effect, tap Add Effect, choose an option (such as Comic or Shiny), then tap .

Save other people's Live Stickers

When someone sends you a Live Sticker you like, you can save it to reuse later.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with a sticker you want to save.

3. Touch and hold the sticker, then do one of the following:

   - *For a sticker sent in a message:* Tap Save to Stickers.
   - *For a sticker placed on a message bubble:* Tap Sticker Details, then tap Save.

You can also create and send Memoji that use your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

See also

Create your own emoji with Genmoji on iPhone

Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

Previous
Share photos, links, and more

Next
Create and send Memoji

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

You can capture photos and videos directly in the Messages app. You can also modify the photos and videos before you send them by editing the image, marking it up, or adding effects.

Note: Your carrier may set size limits for attachments; iPhone may compress photo and video attachments when necessary.

Send a photo or video

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *Take a photo:* Tap Camera, then tap to take a picture.

     To change the camera mode, tap Photo, then tap an option.

     To crop the photo, add filters, and more, tap Edit, then use the editing tools.

   - *Take a video:* Tap Camera, tap Video, tap to begin recording, then tap to stop.

     To trim or crop the video, add filters, and more, tap Edit, then use the editing tools.

   - *Add an existing photo or video:* Tap Photos, swipe up to search, browse through all photos, or change albums, then tap the images you want to send.

     To crop, add filters, or make other adjustments, tap the image in the message bubble, tap Edit, then use the editing tools.

4. To add stickers, labels, and shapes to your photo, tap Markup, then use Markup. When you're done, tap Save.

5. Tap Done to add the photo or video to the message bubble, add a comment (optional), then tap ↑ to send your message.

   Note: To send SMS, MMS, or RCS attachments on models with Dual SIM, you need to set up Dual SIM.

You can also send a photo or video with a Digital Touch effect or record a video message in the FaceTime app.

Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings about sensitive content and warn you before it's sent or received. See Receive warnings about sensitive content or Check for sensitive images and videos.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can create original images with Image Playground, or create custom emoji—called Genmoji—in Messages.

Send photos faster

You can send smaller-sized previews of images so your recipients get them right away, before the full-resolution images arrive.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn on Send Low Quality Photo Previews.

When Low Data Mode is on, only the preview is sent. See Manage roaming options and choose other cellular data options.

To remove a photo or video from the message bubble before sending it, tap ⊗.

Note: Attachments you send over iMessage (such as photos or videos) may be uploaded to Apple and encrypted so that no one but the sender and receiver can access them. To improve performance, your iPhone may automatically upload attachments to Apple while you're composing a message. If you decide not to send your message, the attachments are deleted from the server after several days.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

Add backgrounds in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Poll people in a conversation

Next
Share photos, links, and more

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share content in Messages on iPhone

You can share images, links, and other content using the Messages app. When someone shares content with you, you can find it in a Shared with You section in the corresponding apps. Apps that support Shared with You include Photos, Music, News, and more.

Share content with others

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, do one of the following:
   - Copy and paste an image or a link into the text field.
   - Tap +, tap Photos to browse recent photos and videos, then tap to add.
   - Tap a message attachment, tap, then tap a contact or .

     Tip: When you tap, you can also copy, save, or print your attachment.
3. Add a message (optional), then tap .

From another app (like Podcasts, News, or Music), select the content you want to share, tap •••, tap Share, then choose Messages.

Find all the content someone shared with you

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation whose content you want to see.
3. Tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation.
4. Swipe left, then tap Photos, Links, Documents, Locations, or Wallet.

If a category doesn't appear, you didn't receive anything of that type in this conversation.

Note: Content only appears in Shared with You if the person who sent it is in your contacts.

You can find a Shared with You section in Photos, Safari, Music, Podcasts, and other supported apps. If you don't want items someone sends to you to appear in those other apps, tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation, tap Info, then turn off Shared with You.

Review and save photos or videos

If you receive multiple photos or videos at the same time, they're automatically grouped into a collage (two to three items) or a stack (four or more).

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Look inside a stack:* Tap to open, then swipe through a stack to view, reply, or interact with each photo or video individually.

   - *Save a photo or video:* Tap next to the photo or stack.

Pin shared content

If someone shares content that's especially interesting, you can quickly pin it in Messages. This elevates it in the Shared with You section of supported apps, in Messages search, and in the conversation details (the info you see when you tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation).

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the content you want to pin.
3. Touch and hold the message bubble containing the attachment, then tap Pin.

Note: Photos can be saved to your library, but not pinned.

Hide shared content

You can adjust your settings to hide an app's Shared with You section.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Tap Shared with You, then turn off Automatic Sharing, or turn off Shared with You for a specific app.

Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings about sensitive content and warn you before it's sent or received. See Receive warnings about sensitive content or Check for sensitive images and videos.

See also

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Share screens using Messages on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Take and edit photos or videos

Next
Send stickers

Helpful? Yes No

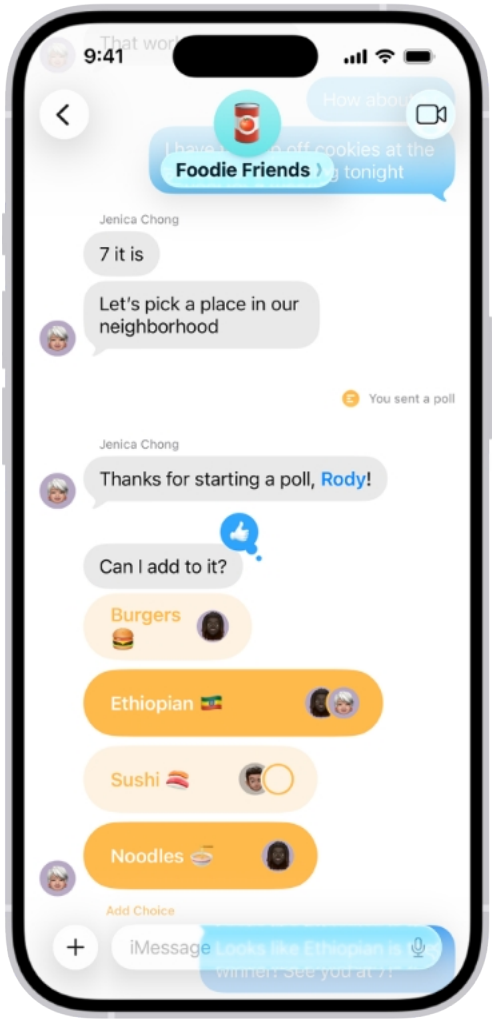
Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Poll people in Messages on iPhone

You can send a poll in any iMessage conversation to decide what to eat, which movie to see, where to travel, when to meet, and more. Everyone in the conversation can contribute options and watch as votes come in.

Note: You must use iMessage on iOS 26, iPadOS 26, macOS Tahoe, watchOS 26, visionOS 26, or later to start, see, or vote in a poll. Those who can't see it receive a message that a poll was sent to the group.



Start a poll

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +, then tap Polls.

3. Tap each row to add options. A poll can have up to 12 options.
4. Tap ↑.

Tip: Turn on Apple Intelligence* to get suggestions for polls.

Vote in a poll

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with a poll in it.
3. Tap an option to add your vote. Tap again to remove your vote. You can vote for none or all of the options.

Add an option to a poll

Anyone participating in a poll can add an option to it.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with a poll in it.
3. Tap Add Choice, then enter another option.
4. Tap ↑ to add the option to the poll.

   Note: Options are added without votes. Tap to vote for any option you add.

Check on the results of a poll

You can see how people voted or who hasn't voted yet.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with a poll in it.
3. Touch and hold the poll, then tap Poll Details.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Use Apple Cash on iPhone

About iMessage

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Use iMessage apps

Next
Take and edit photos or videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

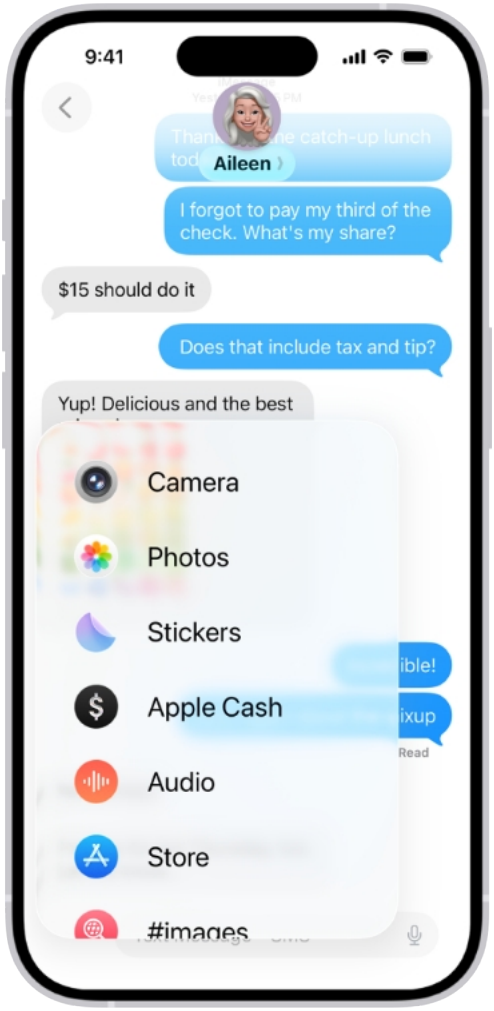
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

You can send a poll, play a game, record audio messages, share songs, and more—all with iMessage apps—without leaving the Messages app. You can customize your list of available apps or add iMessage apps you find in the App Store.



Rearrange iMessage apps

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +.
3. Touch and hold any app icon in the list until it shrinks a little, then drag it to the location where you want it.

To move the app icon to a different page, drag it to the top or bottom edge of the menu. You might need to wait a moment for the new page to appear.

Add iMessage apps

The Messages app comes with iMessage apps you can use to send polls, photos, videos, audio messages, stickers, and more. You can download additional iMessage apps for even more options.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +.
3. Tap Store to open the App Store for iMessage.
4. Tap an app to see more details and reviews, then do one of the following:

   - *Purchase an app:* Tap the price. Payments are made using the method associated with your Apple Account.
   - *Download a free app:* Tap Get.

See also

About iMessage

Set up Messages on iPhone

Share your location in Messages on iPhone

Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

Previous
Add backgrounds

Next
Poll people in a conversation

Helpful? Yes No

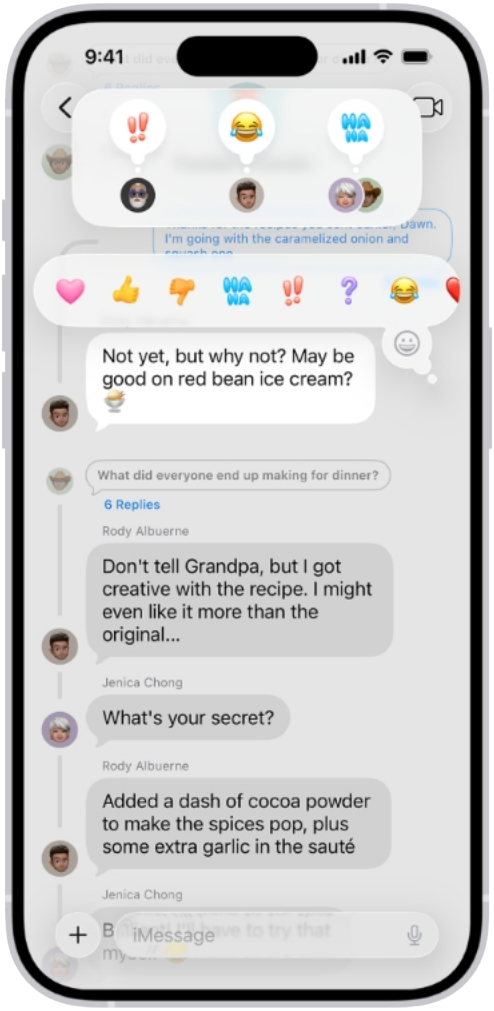
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

React with Tapbacks in Messages on iPhone

Tapbacks give you a quick and easy way to respond to a message, such as a heart, a thumbs-up or thumbs-down, laughter, exclamation points, a question mark, and any sticker, Memoji, or emoji.



React with a Tapback

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation.
3. Double-tap (or touch and hold) a message.

4. Swipe left to see suggested emoji and stickers, or tap 😀, then tap to choose any of the following kinds of Tapbacks:

    - *Other emoji:* Tap 😀 (jump to other emoji categories with icons to the right of 😀).
    - *Stickers:* Tap 🏷️.

The Tapback is attached to a specific message in a conversation, and everyone who's part of the conversation can see it.

Find out who sent a Tapback

If there's more than one Tapback for a message, they appear in a stack. You can find out who added each Tapback.

1. Go to the Messages app 💬 on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with Tapbacks.
3. Tap a stack of Tapbacks.

    Senders and their tapbacks appear near the top of the screen.

Edit or remove your Tapback

You can only edit or remove Tapbacks you added. You can't edit or remove Tapbacks other people added.

1. Go to the Messages app 💬 on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation.
3. Tap your Tapback, then do one of the following:

    - *Use a different Tapback:* Tap a different emoji, Memoji, or sticker.
    - *Remove the Tapback:* Tap the same Tapback you used (so it's not highlighted).

You can only add one Tapback per message. If you want to send additional stickers, see Place stickers on a conversation.

See also

Format text and animate messages on iPhone

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Send and save GIFs in Messages on iPhone

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

Previous
Create and send Memoji

Next
Format text and animate messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

You can send messages with handwriting, doodling, and more.

You need iMessage to exchange drawn or handwritten messages.

Send a Digital Touch gesture, animation, or effect

With Digital Touch, you can send animated sketches, taps, kisses, heartbeats, and more, on their own or as an effect on a photo or video.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +.
3. Swipe up, tap Digital Touch, then do one of the following:

   - *Send an animated gesture:* Tap or touch and hold with one or two fingers. Your gesture is sent automatically when you finish it.

     Touch and hold the color dot to choose a color for the one-finger taps.

     Note: If you have Apple Watch or another sensor that records heartbeat data, Messages may use the recorded data when you touch and hold with two fingers to send a heartbeat.

   - *Send an animated drawing:* Draw with one finger.

     You can change the color, then start drawing again.

   - *Add an effect to a new image:* Tap, then tap to take a photo or to record a video.

     To take a new photo or video, or to erase anything you draw on your preview, tap.

4. Tap to send your drawing or image, or tap to delete it.

To send an animated doodle on a white background, see Send a handwritten message or doodle.

Send a handwritten message or doodle

Use your finger to write a message or draw a doodle. Recipients see what you wrote or drew, re-created before their eyes.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation.
3. Tap on the keyboard.
4. Write a message with your finger or choose a saved message at the bottom, then tap Done.
5. Tap to send your message or to cancel.



After you create and send a handwritten message, the message is saved at the bottom of the handwriting screen. To use the saved message again, tap it. To delete the saved message, touch and hold it until the messages jiggle, then tap .

To send a doodle on a black background, see Send a Digital Touch gesture, animation, or effect.

See also

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Format text and animate messages

Next
Send and save GIFs

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Send and save GIFs in Messages on iPhone

You can search #images to find hundreds of trending GIFs you can add to your text messages and save GIFs others send to you (not available in all countries or regions).

Add a GIF from #images

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +, then tap #images. (You may have to swipe up.)
3. To search for a specific GIF, tap "Find images," enter a keyword (like "birthday"), then tap a search suggestion or .
4. Tap a GIF to add it to your message, then tap .

Note: GIFs from #images animate only in the Messages app on Apple devices.

Save a GIF

You can save a GIF that you receive in a message to use again later.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation that includes the GIF that you want to save.
3. Touch and hold the GIF, then tap Save.

   The GIF is saved to the Photos app. See Send a photo or video.

See also

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

Customize onscreen motion on iPhone

Previous
Draw and handwrite messages

Next
Send and receive audio messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create and send Memoji in Messages on iPhone

You can design your own personalized Memoji—choose skin tone, glasses, body, and more. You can create multiple Memoji to use in different contexts. Each Memoji—even the ones you create—automatically generates a range of poses and expressions. On supported models, you can send animated Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.



Create Memoji

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.

2. In a conversation, tap +.
3. Tap Memoji. (You may have to swipe up.)
4. Tap +.

   Tip: To make a new Memoji whose outfit or appearance differs slightly from one you already have, tap to select it, tap ···, then tap Duplicate.
5. Tap each feature (Skin, Hairstyle, and others to the right) and choose the options you want.
6. Tap ✓ to save the Memoji to your collection.

Send animated Memoji or Memoji recordings

On supported models, you can send Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.



1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +.
3. Tap Memoji, then swipe and tap to choose a Memoji.

4. Tap to record your facial expressions and voice, then tap to stop.

   Tap Replay to review your message.

5. Tap to send your message or to cancel.

You can also capture your movements, facial expressions, and voice in Memoji when you use video effects in a video call.

See also

Create your own emoji with Genmoji on iPhone

Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

Previous
Send stickers

Next
React with Tapbacks

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

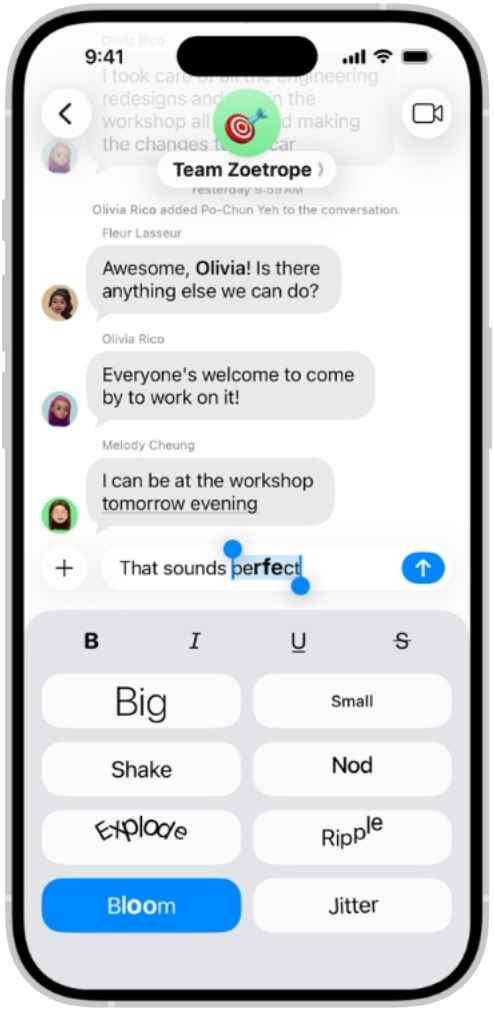
Format text and animate messages on iPhone

You can express yourself in the messages you send by formatting or animating the text in your message, the message bubble, or the entire screen.

Note: To send and receive messages with text formatting or text effects, you and your recipients must be using iMessage. Messages appear in plain text when sent to devices using older or other operating systems.

Format or animate text within messages

Format the text in your messages with bold, italics, and underlining, or add playful, animated effects like explode or shake to any letter, word, or sentence—even emoji—in texts you send using iMessage.



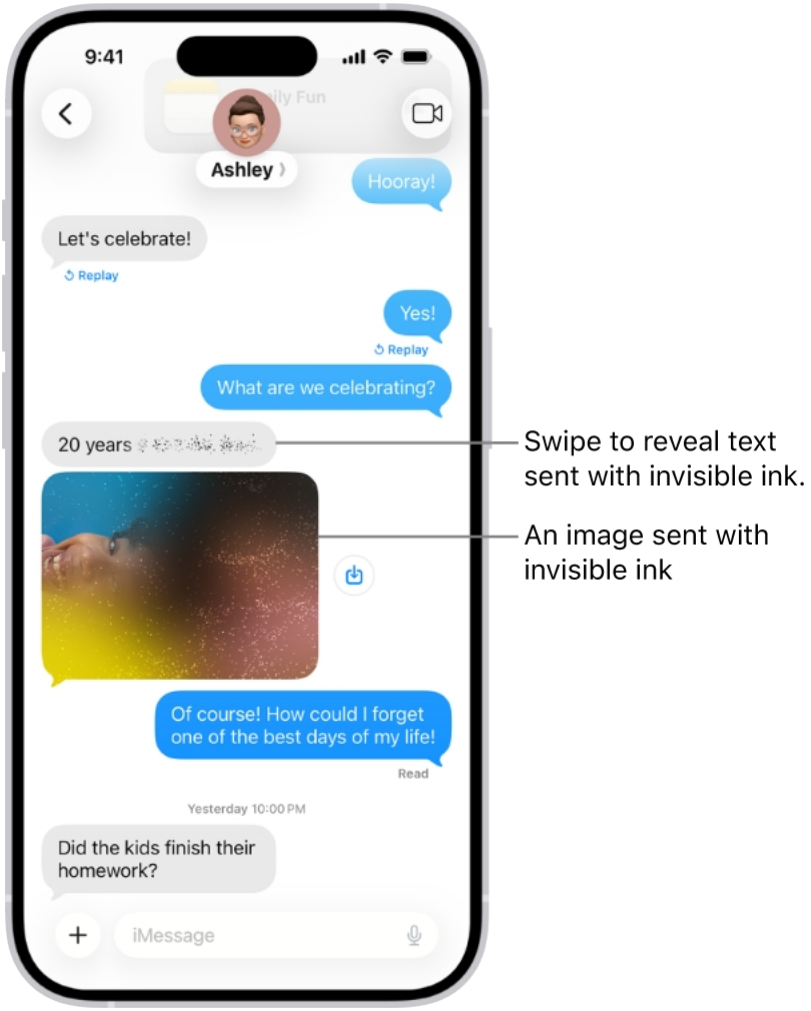
1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, enter a message, then select the text you want to format or animate.

   The Messages app may suggest effects to apply as you enter your message.
3. Tap above the keyboard, then select your preferred formats (bold, italic, underline, or strikethrough) or animated effect (big, small, shake, nod, explode, ripple, bloom, or jitter).
4. Tap .

You can format or apply effects to a single word, emoji, single word, emoji, sentence, or your entire message. Tap before entering the text you want to format or apply effects to.

Animate the message bubble

Use effects to animate the message bubble: you can send a message with Slam or Loud so that it appears to pop out, or use Gentle so it arrives softly. You can even send a personal message with Invisible Ink that remains blurred until the recipient swipes to reveal it.



1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, enter a message or insert an image or link.
3. Touch and hold , then tap a gray dot to preview a bubble effect.
4. Tap to send the message with the effect or to cancel the effect and return to your message.

If you don’t see a bubble effect or want to turn off effects on messages you receive, see Customize onscreen motion.

Animate effects over the full screen

You can send messages with full-screen effects—such as lively lasers, a moving spotlight, or echoing bubbles—that play when your recipient gets your message.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, enter a message or insert a photo or Memoji.
3. Touch and hold , then tap Screen.
4. Swipe left to preview different screen effects.

5. Tap ↑ to send the message or ✕ to cancel the effect and return to your message.

Messages automatically uses the following screen effects for specific text strings:

- Balloons for “Happy birthday”
- Confetti for “Congratulations”
- Fireworks for “Happy New Year”

If you don’t see a full-screen effect or want to turn off effects on messages you receive, see Customize onscreen motion.

See also

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

Previous
React with Tapbacks

Next
Draw and handwrite messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Send and receive audio messages in Messages on iPhone

You can record and send audio messages, along with transcripts of what's said in the message. Audio messages are automatically deleted to save space on your iPhone, but if you want to save them, you can.

Note: Audio message transcription is available in select languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Record and send an audio message

Instead of writing a text message, you can record an audio message that can be played right in the Messages conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +.
3. Tap Audio, then begin speaking.
4. Tap to pause or end your recording, then do any of the following to your message:
   - *Send it:* Tap.
   - *Listen to review it:* Tap.
   - *Add to the end of it:* Tap + (with the message duration).
   - *Cancel it:* Tap ×.
5. Tap Keep to save an incoming or outgoing audio message on your iPhone.

   Otherwise, the recording is deleted from the conversation—on your iPhone only—2 minutes after you send or listen to it. Recipients can play your recording any time after they receive it. To save it, they need to tap Keep within 2 minutes after listening to it.

Tip: Send follow-up audio messages more quickly by touching and holding in the text field.

Audio messages are automatically transcribed in the language chosen in the sender's Settings. To switch to another language for your outgoing messages, see Change the language and region.

Always keep audio messages

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Tap Expire (below Audio Messages), then tap Never.

Listen or reply to a recorded audio message

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with an audio message, then tap to play it.
3. Do any of the following:
   - Slide right and left on the audio message to fast-forward or rewind.
   - Touch and hold or to adjust the playback speed.
4. Tap Keep to save an audio message in the conversation.

   To save the message in the Voice Memos app, touch and hold the audio message, then tap Save to Voice Memos.

Use Raise to Listen

When you receive an audio message, you can move your iPhone to play and reply to the message. Do either of the following:

- *Play an audio message:* Raise your iPhone to your ear.
- *Reply to an audio message:* Lower your iPhone and raise it to your ear again, then speak after you hear a tone. Tap to send your reply.

Turn off Raise to Listen

If you don’t want audio messages to play when you raise your iPhone to your ear, you can turn the feature off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn off Raise to Listen.

Switch to FaceTime from Messages

You can quickly make an audio or video call instead of sending a message by switching to FaceTime. In a Messages conversation, tap .

See also

Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

Make FaceTime calls on iPhone

Dictate text on iPhone

Previous
Send and save GIFs

Next
Share your location

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Turn read receipts on or off in Messages on iPhone

You can use read receipts to automatically let someone know when you've seen their text messages.

When read receipts are turned on, the sender sees the word "Read" below messages they've sent to you, indicating that you've read their message. If you haven't read their message, the sender sees "Delivered."

You can turn on read receipts for everyone or for individual contacts.

Note: To use read receipts, you and your recipient must turn on iMessage.

Turn on read receipts

You can turn on read receipts to let everyone know when you've opened their messages.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn on Send Read Receipts.

Note: If you turned off read receipts for a particular contact, you have to turn the setting back on for that one contact individually. (See Turn on read receipts for one person, below.)

Turn off read receipts

If you don't want others to know that you've opened their messages, you can turn off read receipts.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.

3. Turn off Send Read Receipts.

Note: This action affects only those conversations with contacts whose read receipts you never turned on individually. (See Turn off read receipts for one person, below.)

Turn on read receipts for one person

You can turn on read receipts in a conversation to let that one recipient know when you've seen their incoming messages, even if you turned off read receipts generally.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the contact icon at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn on Send Read Receipts.

Turn off read receipts for one person

If you turned on read receipts for an individual, but you want them to stop getting read receipts, you can turn the setting off for that one contact.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the contact icon at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn off Send Read Receipts.

Get read receipts when someone else sees your messages

You can't turn on read receipts for anyone but yourself. To receive read receipts when your messages are opened, ask the recipient to turn them on. See Turn on read receipts for one person, above.

See also

Keep track of messages on iPhone

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

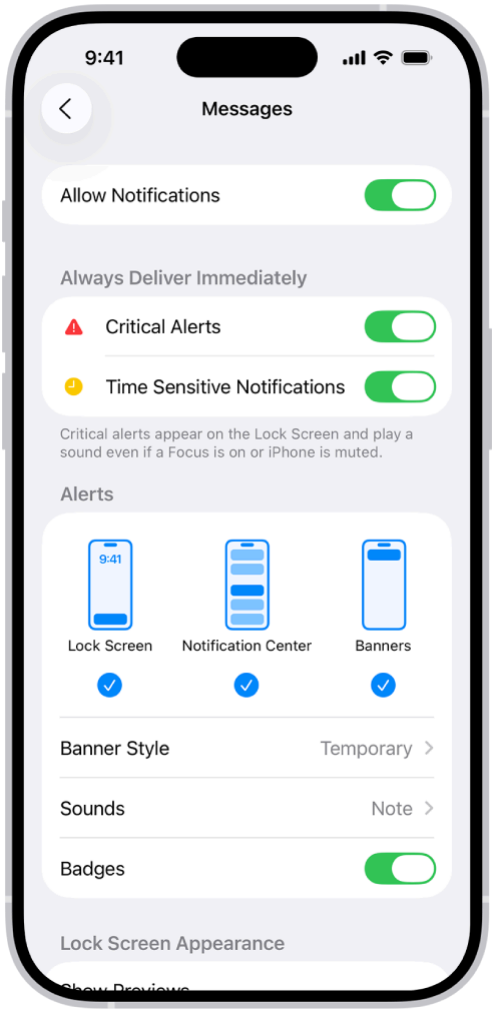
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Stop, mute, and change message notifications on iPhone

You can change whether or not you're notified about text messages you receive, and how the notifications appear or sound. For example, you can turn off message notifications so you aren't distracted by notification sounds when you're in a meeting or other quiet settings, or assign a special sound for certain contacts so you know when you get a message from them.



Stop all notifications

You can stop getting notified about activity in the Messages app while continuing to receive messages. When you're ready to read them, you can open Messages to see the texts you missed while notifications were off, and catch up on messages you missed.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Messages.
3. Turn off Allow Notifications.

Note: Senders receive a note indicating that you have notifications silenced.

To let people know you've read their messages, see Turn on read receipts.

When you want to get notified again, turn on Allow Notifications. If you also want to hear them, make sure the Ring/Silent switch isn't in Silent mode and your volume is audible.

You can also stop notifications from other Apple apps and third-party apps. See Change notification settings.

Stop sharing your Focus Status with one person

When your Focus or sleep schedule pauses notifications, your status appears in the Messages app to let people know you're not receiving messages. You can turn this off in one-to-one conversations.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the contact icon at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn off Share Focus Status.

Mute sounds or vibrations for sent and received messages

When you send a message, a swoosh sound plays by default. When you receive a message, a tone plays. If you don't want to hear these sounds, you can set your text tone to None.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Messages.
3. Do either of the following:

- *Mute sounds:* Tap Sounds, then tap None.
- *Turn off vibrations:* Tap Sounds, tap Haptics (near the top), then tap None.

You can also put the Ring/Silent switch in Silent mode.

Note: The None and the Ring/Silent switch setting affect both incoming and outgoing sounds. (You can't mute only one.)

See also Flash the indicator light for notifications.

Change the sound and vibration for notifications

You can set the sound volume for alerts, choose between a tone or sound for alerts, or change the notification vibration pattern (when the phone is silenced).

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Make notifications quieter or louder:* Adjust the volume with the slider.
   - *Choose a tone or sound:* Tap Text Tone, then tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).
   - *Choose a vibration pattern:* Tap Text Tone, tap Haptics, then choose an option (or tap Create New Vibration to make your own).

   Tip: The tone and vibration you choose apply to both the Messages app and other apps that have notifications on, such as Mail, Phone, and other Apple or third-party apps. To change them just for the Messages app, go to Settings > Notifications > Messages, then tap Sounds.

You can set how many times to repeat a notification (from Never to 10 Times) in Settings > Notifications > Messages > Customize Notifications > Repeat Alerts.

Change the notification sound for certain people

You can choose a specific sound or vibration pattern to play when you get a message from a specific contact.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with one person, tap the contact icon at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Info, tap Edit in the top-right corner, tap Edit Contact Info, then tap Text Tone.

   If you don't see Edit, tap Create New Contact or Add to Existing Contact.
4. Do any of the following:

   - *Specify a tone or sound:* Tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).
   - *Specify a vibration pattern:* Tap Haptics, then choose an option (or tap Create New Vibration to make your own).
   - *Mute notifications for this conversation:* Tap None below both Haptics and Alert Tones.

To give this contact the option to override a Focus, so any important messages can get through, turn on Emergency Bypass. You might turn it on for a family member, caretaker, or colleague, for example.

Mute one conversation

You can stop getting notifications for a conversation while you continue to receive its messages.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, do one of the following:

   - Swipe left on a conversation, then tap .
   - Tap a conversation, tap the contact or icon at the top of the conversation, then turn on Hide Alerts.

To completely stop getting messages for one conversation, you can block a specific person or number or leave a group conversation.

Announce messages

Siri can announce messages on your iPhone speaker, supported headphones, and when using CarPlay.

To hear incoming messages on MFi hearing devices, see Announce calls and notifications for specific apps.

See also

Change notification settings on iPhone

Schedule a Focus to turn on or off

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

Schedule a notification summary

Previous
Turn read receipts on or off

Next
Screen, filter, report, and block texts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Share your location in Messages on iPhone

You can let others know where you are (or find out where they are) by using location sharing.

Share and update your location automatically

When you share your location in a Messages conversation, it updates in real time right in the conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +.
3. Tap Location, then tap Share.
4. Decide how long you want to share your location.

   Tap Indefinitely if you want to share your location until you manually stop sharing it.
5. Tap to send your location. (Or tap if you change your mind.)

Tip: When somebody asks where you are, quickly share your location by tapping Current Location (above the keyboard).

If you share your location to a group and then add other people to the group, you can reshare your location to let everyone see where you are.

When you want to share your location in an SMS conversation, send a pinned location instead.

To use Messages to check in with someone—for example, to notify a family member or friend that you've made it to your destination safely, see Send a Check In.

Messages uses the Find My app when you share your location. Learn how to share your location and locate someone.

Send a pinned location

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap +, then tap Location.
3. Tap in the top left of the map, then drag the map until the pin is in the right place.
4. Tap Send Pin, then tap to send your pin.

Pinned locations don't update as you move.

Ask for someone else's location

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with one other person, do one of the following:
   - Tap +, tap Location, then tap Request.
   - Send a message that ends with the question, "Where are you?" then tap Request Location (above the keyboard).
3. Tap to send your request.

After someone shares their location with you, their location appears below their name at the top of the conversation. Tap their name to see where they are on a map. Tap the map to enlarge it.

When you are near the person you're looking for and both of you are using an iPhone 15 model or later, you can use Find My to get precise directions to their location. See Use Precision Finding to meet up with a friend.

Meet up with a friend

If both you and a friend are using a supported model, you can use Find My to get precise directions to their location once you're near one another. See Use Precision Finding to meet up with a friend.

Stop sharing your location

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with someone you're sharing your location with, then tap the contact icon at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Stop Sharing My Location.

The previous bubble in the conversation no longer displays a map.

Note: Finding people with location sharing isn't available in all countries or regions. If you set up location sharing and others still can't see your location, make sure you've allowed access. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My, then choose an option. See Control the location information you share.

See also

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Share your location with a friend

Previous
Send and receive audio messages

Next
Turn read receipts on or off

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

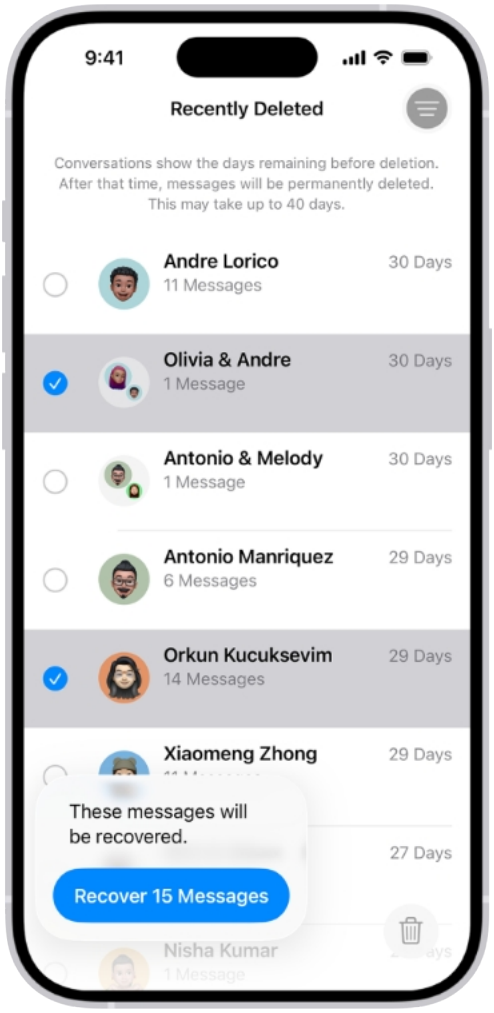
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Recover deleted messages in Messages on iPhone

You can recover deleted text messages you deleted on your iPhone.

You can restore messages you deleted for up to 30 days.



1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top of the conversation list, then tap Recently Deleted.
3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to restore, then tap Recover.

4. Tap Recover Messages.

If you use Messages in iCloud, recovering a message or conversation on your iPhone recovers it on all your devices where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See Keep your messages up to date with iCloud in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: Deleting and recovering messages only affects your iPhone and other Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. You can't recover messages, attachments, and conversations for anyone else.

Once you recover a blocked conversation whose participants haven't all turned on iMessage, incoming messages are no longer automatically deleted.

Any message that you remove from a conversation using Undo Send is permanently deleted. Audio messages that expire before being saved aren't recoverable. See Send and receive audio messages.

See also

Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone

Screen, filter, report, and block text messages on iPhone

Automatically delete one-time verification codes

Apple Support article: Recover deleted text messages on your iPhone or iPad

Previous
Delete messages and attachments

Next
Get started with Music

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Screen, filter, report, and block text messages on iPhone

You can reduce the number of unwanted text messages you receive when you screen messages from unknown senders, filter and report spam messages, block unwanted messages, and turn off business alerts.



Screen and filter messages from unknown senders

You can prevent unknown senders from texting you directly. Their messages are filtered other folders, and you don't get notified about them unless you want to be.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.

2. Tap at the top right of the conversation list, then tap Manage Filtering.
3. Turn on Screen Unknown Senders.
4. If you want to allow notifications from some unknown senders, tap Allow Notifications, then turn on or off those categories. (Options vary by country and region.)

   For example, you can allow notifications for time-sensitive texts, like verification codes.
5. To detect and filter SMS, MMS, and RCS messages from unknown senders into folders for Transactions and Promotions, tap <, tap Text Message Filter, then turn on Text Message Filter and third-party message filtering extensions you install.

   Note: Filters applies to promotions and transactions (or whatever your third-party message filtering extension offer). Text message filtering doesn't apply to any sender you've replied to three times or more. Try blocking and reporting those senders, as below.

Review messages from unknown senders

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top of the conversation list, then tap Unknown Senders.

Make an unknown sender a known sender

A known sender is anyone you've marked as known, added to the Contacts app, or sent a message to. If a message from someone whose messages you want to see was filtered to Unknown Senders, you can mark the sender as known, and this allows their messages to appear in your conversation list. To open a link sent by an unknown sender in iMessage, you must first make them a known sender.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top right of the conversation list, then tap Unknown Senders.
3. Do any of the following:

   - Tap the message from the sender whose messages you want to see, then tap Mark as Known.
   - Add them to Contacts.

Until you mark a sender as known or add them to contacts, any future messages are filtered to Unknown Senders.

Recover messages in the Spam folder

When spam is detected as it arrives to a server or on your iPhone, it's moved to the spam folder and doesn't appear in your conversation list. You can check to see if messages are inadvertently marked as spam.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top right of the conversation list, then tap Spam.
3. To recover a message, tap the message, then tap Not Spam.

   The conversation moves to Messages, where you can send a reply.

Spam filtering is on by default. To turn it on or off, tap , tap Manage Filtering, then turn on or off "Filter spam."

Report spam messages

When you use iMessage, you can report spam messages to Apple. Depending on your carrier and country or region, reporting spam you receive with SMS, MMS, or RCS shares this information with your carrier and its affiliates.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *If you haven't opened the message:* Swipe left on the message, tap , then tap Delete and Report Spam.

   - *If you've already opened the message:* A Report Spam link appears at the bottom of any message from any unknown sender. Tap Report Spam, then tap Delete and Report Spam.

     Note: You can't report a message after you've replied to it.

   - *If you don't see the option to report spam messages you receive with SMS, MMS, or RCS:* Contact your carrier. See the Apple Support article Wireless carrier support and features for iPhone.

If you received the message with iMessage, it's sent to Apple with the sender's information, and the message is permanently deleted from your iPhone.

If you accidentally report and delete messages, you can recover them.

Reporting spam doesn't *prevent* the sender from sending messages, but you can block the contact to stop receiving them.

To avoid getting incoming messages from new numbers, you can filter them. See Screen and filter messages from unknown senders, above.

Block messages from a specific person or phone number

When you block a specific contact or phone number, messages from that person or number aren't delivered. The person sending the message doesn't know that their messages are blocked.

Note: When you block a contact in Messages, that contact is also blocked in Mail, Phone, FaceTime, Calendar, and other apps. See Prevent contacts from communicating with you.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation with the person you want to block, then tap the person's icon at the top.
3. Tap Info, scroll down, then tap Block Contact.

   You can remove someone's access to shared items. See Manage information sharing with Safety Check.

Tip: You can't block a group conversation, so instead of blocking all the people in the group, you can simply leave it or stop its notifications.

If you're still having trouble with unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article Block phone numbers, contacts, and emails on your iPhone or iPad.

Check who you blocked

If you're not getting someone's messages, you can check if they're in your Blocked Contacts.

When you block a contact in Messages, that contact is also blocked in Mail, Phone, FaceTime, Calendar, and other apps.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, tap Blocked Contacts, then do any of the following:

    - *Unblock a number you've blocked:* Tap [*number*] Unknown, swipe left on a number in the list, then tap Unblock. Or tap Edit, then tap ⛔.
    - *Add additional contacts or numbers directly to the list:* Tap Add Blocked Contact.

A sender can't find out if they're blocked.

Turn off business alerts

Some businesses send alerts and updates on your orders and other transactions. You can turn these off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn off any of the following:

    - *RCS Business Messages:* Tap RCS Messaging, then turn RCS Business Messages off. (Availability varies by carrier and country.)
    - *Apple Messages for Business:* Tap Messages for Business, then turn Business Updates off.

You can also report spam messages when you receive them, as above.

See Apple Messages for Business & Privacy.

Tip: Another way to prevent unwanted messages is to allow your contacts only when you block messages with Screen Time.

To change how the notifications appear and more, you can set your notification options.

To pause notifications from Messages, turn on Do Not Disturb or another Focus.

To learn about other ways you can report and prevent unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams.

See also

Keep track of messages on iPhone

Stop, mute, and change message notifications on iPhone

Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Previous
Stop, mute, and change notifications

Next
Delete messages and attachments

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone

You can delete text messages, attachments, and entire conversations from your iPhone anytime, without affecting what your recipients see.

Tip: Use Undo send to retract (within 2 minutes) a message you sent accidentally, deleting it from both your phone *and* your recipient's phone.

Deleted messages and attachments remain in your Recently Deleted folder for up to 30 days, and you can recover them.

Delete messages and attachments

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation, touch and hold a message bubble or attachment, then tap More.
3. Select the messages or attachments you want to delete, then tap .

You can also delete a conversation entirely.

Delete multiple photos, videos, or other attachments

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap a category, such as Photos.

   Tip: To see only only one kind of image, tap at the bottom left, then tap Screenshots, Videos, or Photos.
4. Tap Edit, then tap Select.

5. Tap each attachment you want to delete, tap 🗑, then tap to confirm the number of attachments you want to delete.

Delete a conversation

1. Go to the Messages app 💬 on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, do one of the following:
   - Swipe left on the conversation, then tap 🗑.
   - Touch and hold the conversation, then tap Delete.

Delete multiple conversations

1. Go to the Messages app 💬 on your iPhone.
2. At the top of the conversation list, tap Edit.
3. Tap Select Messages, then select conversations you want to delete.
4. Tap 🗑, then tap Delete.



Permanently remove recently deleted messages and attachments

Deleted messages and attachments remain in the Recently Deleted folder for 30 days, but you can permanently remove them before that.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top of the conversation list, then tap Recently Deleted.
3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to delete permanently, tap , then tap Delete.

   Important: This can’t be undone.

Automatically delete old messages

You can delete messages and attachments that are older than 30 days or a year old, on an ongoing basis.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Scroll down, tap Keep Messages (below Message History), then choose an option.

Important: If you choose an option other than Forever, your conversations (including all attachments) are automatically removed after the specified time period elapses.

If you use Messages in iCloud, deleting a message or conversation on your iPhone deletes it from all your devices where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See Keep your messages up to date with iCloud in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: Deleting messages only affects your iPhone and other Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. You can't delete messages, attachments, and conversations for anyone else.

To delete everything (not just your messages), see Erase iPhone.

See also

Unsend and edit messages on iPhone

Screen, filter, report, and block text messages on iPhone

Automatically delete one-time verification codes

Previous
Screen, filter, report, and block texts

Next
Recover deleted messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

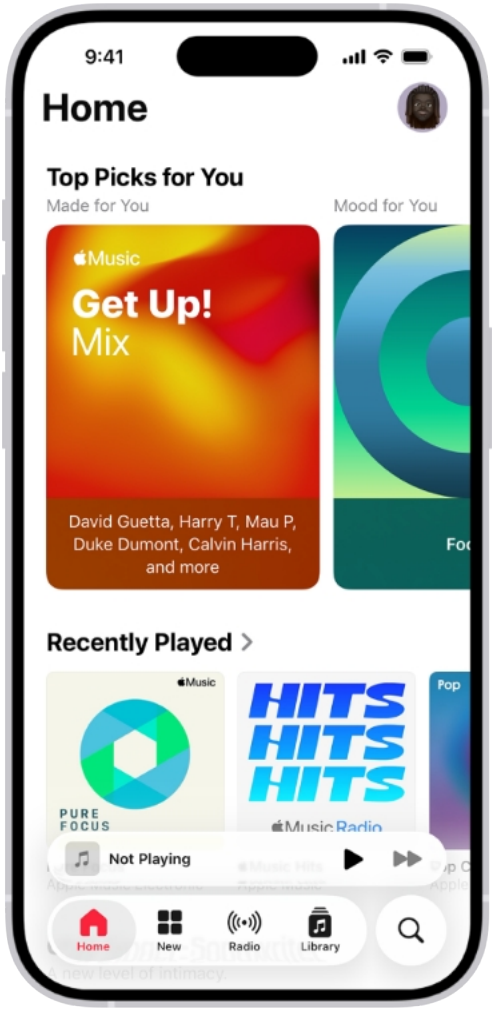
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get personalized recommendations in Music on iPhone

As soon as you subscribe to Apple Music, you can make selections so that you see playlists, albums, and songs based on your preferences. If you don't want Music to make recommendations, you can also turn off your listening history.



Select your favorite genres and artists

When you first tap Home, you're asked to tell Apple Music what you like. Apple Music uses these preferences when recommending music.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.

2. Tap the genres you like (double-tap those you love, and touch and hold the genres you don't care for).
3. Tap Next, then do the same with the artists that appear.

Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits

You can turn off your listening history so that Apple Music ignores your listening habits and adjusts new music recommendations and the contents of Replay playlists.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Turn off Use Listening History.

This action also hides all the music you play from your followers on Apple Music. To hide only certain playlists or albums, see Hide music from your followers.

Tip: You can create a custom Focus to turn off Use Listening History. For example, if you're a parent listening to your favorite songs and your child wants to listen to something they like, you can turn on that Focus so their songs don't influence your recommendations.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPhone

Previous
Subscribe to Apple Music

Next
Mark items as favorites

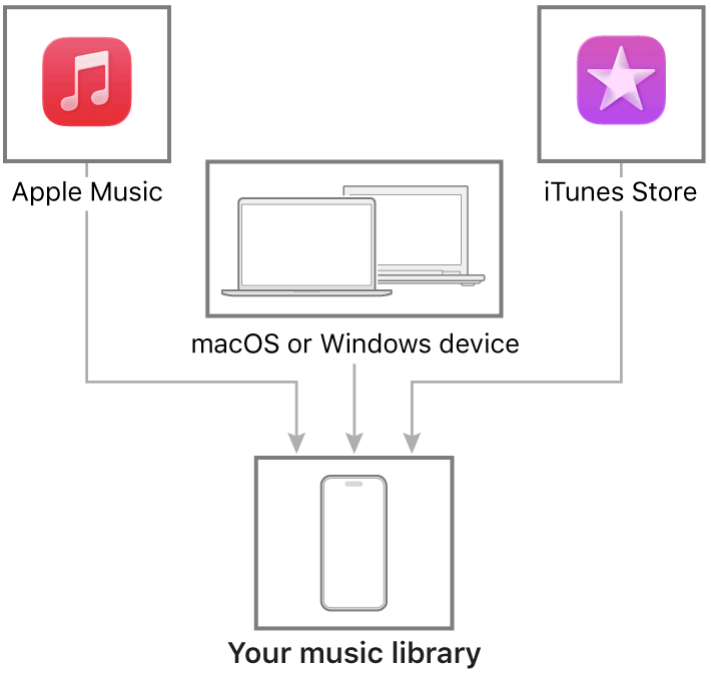
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Table of Contents

Get music on iPhone

Enjoy music stored on iPhone as well as music streamed over the internet. You can build a music library—your collection of songs and albums—in many ways.



Note: Services and features aren't available in all countries or regions, and features may vary by region. Additional charges may apply when using a cellular connection.

Subscribe to Apple Music

When you subscribe to Apple Music, you can start listening to millions of songs from the Apple Music catalog right away. To access your music library on all your devices, turn on Sync Library (go to Settings > Apps > Music). Then, add and download songs so that you can play your favorites any time, even when you're offline.

Tip: Purchase an Apple Music family subscription, and everyone in your Family Sharing group can share an Apple Music subscription.

Buy music from the iTunes Store

If you don’t subscribe to Apple Music and you want to add your favorite songs or albums, you can buy and download music from the iTunes Store. And, if you previously purchased items from the iTunes Store, you can download them to your authorized computers and devices (up to 10 total).

Transfer music from your Mac or Windows device

Connect your Mac or Windows device to transfer and update music between your iPhone and your device. To sync supported content, use Music (macOS 10.15 or later) or iTunes (macOS 10.14 or earlier and Windows devices).

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Intro to playlists in Music on iPhone

Apple Support article: Migrate purchases from one Apple Account to another Apple Account

Previous
Get started with Music

Next
Subscribe to Apple Music

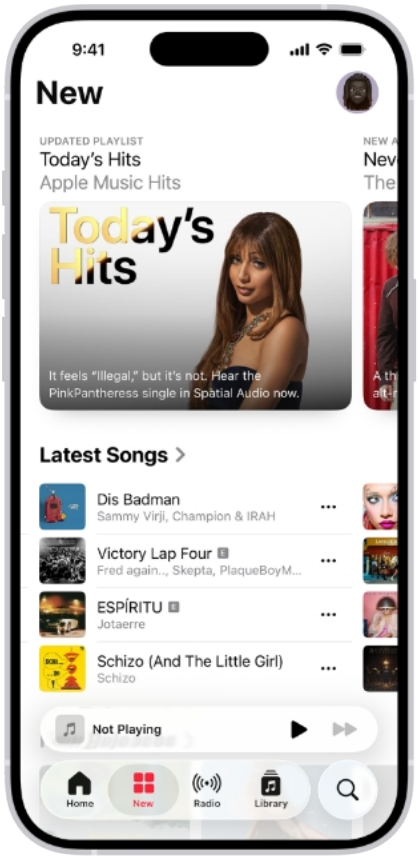
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get started with Music on iPhone

Listen to songs from your iPhone music library with the Music app. Stream music from the Apple Music catalog when you subscribe to Apple Music, and access all your music on all your devices when you sign in to the same Apple Account.

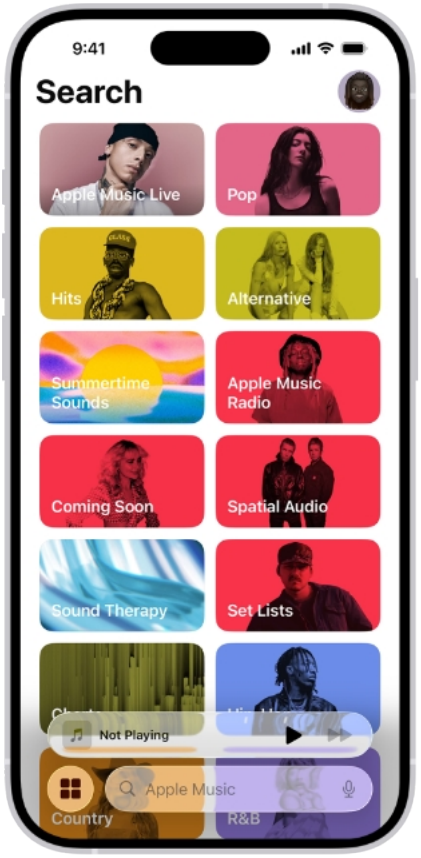


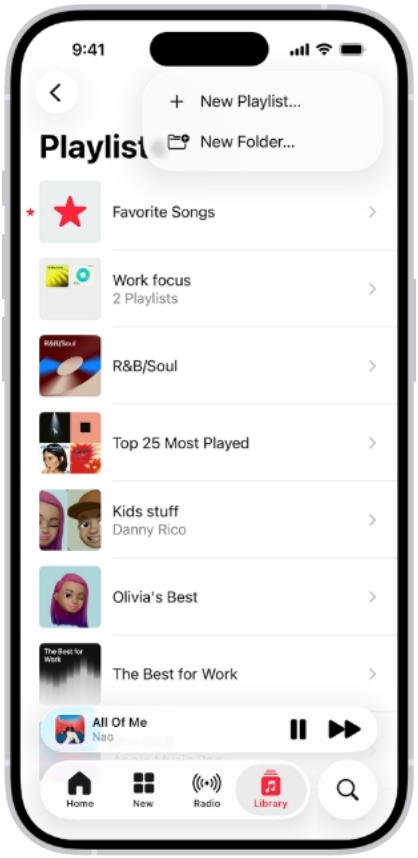
Subscribe to Apple Music

To get the most from the Music app, subscribe to Apple Music, and choose from millions of songs to stream or download. Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then tap Join Apple Music. After you become an Apple Music subscriber, you can select artists as favorites (and receive notifications about them), view song lyrics, and more.

Find music

Use the Search feature to quickly find music. Tap Search at the bottom right of the screen to browse music by category or enter an artist, lyric, or other keyword in the field to find songs, albums, and playlists.



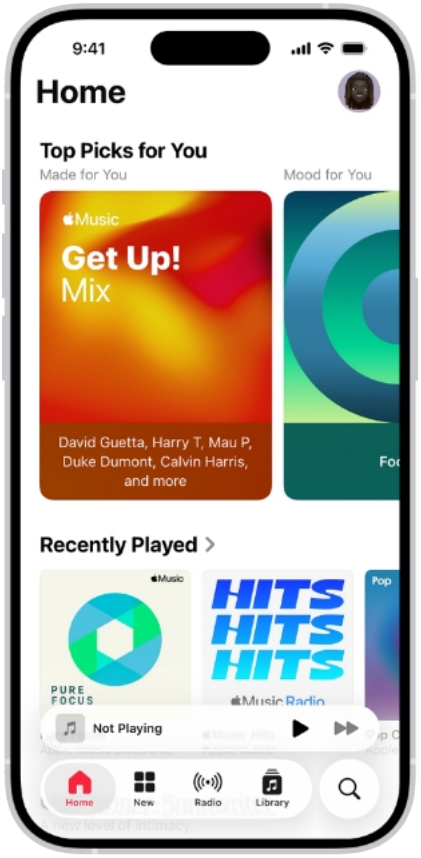


Create a playlist

Organize songs for a specific theme, mood, or occasion with a playlist. Tap Library, tap Playlists, tap + at the top of the screen, then tap New Playlist. To add a song to the playlist, tap ••• next to a song, then tap Add to a Playlist.

Build your library

You can add music to your library in a variety of ways. For example, subscribe to Apple Music or buy your favorite albums from the iTunes Store. If you're already using a Mac, go to Settings > Apps > Music, then tap Sync Library—your entire music library is then available on your iPhone.



Want to learn more?

- Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone
- Search for music on iPhone
- Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone
- Get music on iPhone
- Get music in the iTunes Store on iPhone
- Add music to iPhone and listen offline

Previous
Recover deleted messages

Next
Get music

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Mark items as favorites in Apple Music on iPhone

You can mark items as “favorites” in Music to make them easier to find. If you subscribe to Apple Music, you can get notifications on new releases from your favorite artists, and easily get back to their music from the Home tab.

Add favorite playlists, artists, albums, and songs

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a favorite playlist:* Touch and hold a playlist or tap ••• when viewing a playlist, then tap Favorite.
   - *Add a favorite artist:* Go to an artist page, then tap ☆ at the top of the screen.

     When you mark an artist as a favorite, they appear below Favorite Artists in Home, and their music is recommended more often.
   - *Add a favorite album:* Touch and hold an album, then choose Favorite. Or tap an album, tap •••, then tap Favorite.
   - *Add a favorite song:* Touch and hold a song or tap ••• next to a song, then tap Favorite. Or on the Now Playing screen, tap ☆.

     When you mark a song as a favorite, it appears in the Favorite Songs playlist. To view that playlist, tap Library, then tap Playlists.

You can easily find favorite items in your music library. Tap Library, choose Playlists, Artists, Albums, or Songs, tap ☰, then choose Favorites.

Remove playlists, artists, albums, and songs as favorites

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, choose Playlists, Artists, Albums, or Songs, tap , then choose Favorites.
3. Touch and hold a playlist, artist, album, or song, then tap Undo Favorite.

Tip: To add songs to your library when you make them a favorite, go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Add Favorite Songs.

See also

Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone

Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPhone

Previous
Get personalized recommendations

Next
Add music and listen offline

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone

Apple Music is an ad-free streaming music service that lets you play millions of songs and your music library. As a subscriber, you can listen any time—online or off—and create your own playlists, stream and download lossless and Dolby Atmos music, get personalized recommendations, follow artists, see music your friends are listening to, watch exclusive video content, and more.

You can subscribe to Apple Music or to Apple One, which includes Apple Music and other services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple Music, Apple One, lossless, and Dolby Atmos aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple Music

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to subscribe to Apple Music.

   If you don't subscribe to Apple Music when you first open the Music app, you can subscribe later—go to Settings > Apps > Music, then tap Join Apple Music.

New subscribers can start a trial and cancel at any time. If you end your Apple Music subscription, you can no longer stream Apple Music songs or play Apple Music songs you downloaded.

Qualified students can purchase a student subscription at a discounted price. See the Apple Support article Get an Apple Music student subscription. Go to the Apple Music website to learn more about Apple Music and pricing.

Share Apple Music with family members

When you subscribe to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple Music with up to five other family members. Once your

family is set up, your family group doesn't need to do anything—Apple Music is available to them the first time they open the Music app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple Music with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave a Family Sharing group, or remove a member from a Family Sharing group.

Change or cancel your Apple Music subscription

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap Manage Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you're not a subscriber, you can use Music to play music synced to iPhone from a Mac or a Windows device, play and download previous iTunes Store purchases, and play Apple Music radio for free.

See also

Get personalized recommendations in Music on iPhone

Mark items as favorites in Apple Music on iPhone

Create an Apple Music profile on iPhone

Apple Support article: Subscribe to Apple Music

Previous
Get music

Next
Get personalized recommendations

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Add music to iPhone and listen offline

As soon as you subscribe to Apple Music, you can add and download songs and videos from Apple Music to your music library. You can stream music you add to iPhone when you have an internet connection. To play music when you're not connected to the internet, you need to download it first.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Add this to my library" while playing something. Learn how to use Siri.

Add music from Apple Music to your library

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then tap Add.
   - While viewing the contents of an album or playlist, tap + near the top of the screen to add the album or playlist, or tap ••• next to a song, then tap Add to add that song.
   - On the Now Playing screen, tap ···, then tap Add.

Music you add to iPhone is also added to other devices if you're signed in to the same Apple Account and have Sync Library turned on (go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

Download music from Apple Music to your iPhone

Before you can download music from Apple Music to your library, you need to turn on Sync Library. Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library. Then follow these steps to download music.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Download a song, album, or playlist:* Touch and hold music you added to your library, then tap Download.

     After you add a playlist or album, you can also tap ↓ at the top of the screen.

   - *Always download music:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Automatic Downloads.

     Songs you add are automatically downloaded to iPhone.

   - *See download progress:* On the Library tab, tap Downloading.

Note: If the music you're downloading is available in Dolby Atmos, the Dolby icon appears next to the item, and you can download it either in Dolby Atmos or in stereo. To download music in Dolby Atmos when available, go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Download in Dolby Atmos. See Play Dolby Atmos music.

Delete music from your library

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the song, album, playlist, or music video, then tap Delete from Library.

Manage storage space

To manage storage space, do any of the following:

- *Remove music and videos stored on iPhone:* Go to the Music app on your iPhone, touch and hold an item that you downloaded, then tap Remove Download.

  The item is removed from iPhone, but not from your music library on your other devices.

- *Free up music storage:* If iPhone is low on storage space, you can automatically remove downloaded music that you haven't played in a while. Go to Settings > Apps > Music > Optimize Storage.

- *Remove all songs or certain artists from iPhone:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music > Downloaded Music, tap Edit, then tap ⊖ next to All Songs or the artists whose music you want to delete.

- *Remove all Apple Music songs from iPhone:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn off Sync Library.

  The songs are removed from iPhone but remain in your music library on your other devices. Music you purchased or synced also remains.

Choose cellular data options for Music

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Turn on Cellular Data, then do any of the following:

   - Turn Download over Cellular on or off.

   - Tap Audio Quality, turn on Lossless Audio, then tap Cellular Streaming to choose a setting (None, High Efficiency, High Quality, Lossless, or High-Resolution Lossless).

     High Quality, Lossless, and High-Resolution Lossless use significantly more cellular data than High Efficiency, which may incur additional charges from your cellular carrier. Songs may also take longer to start playing.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

See also

Search for music on iPhone

Apple Support article: Migrate purchases from one Apple Account to another Apple Account

Previous
Mark items as favorites

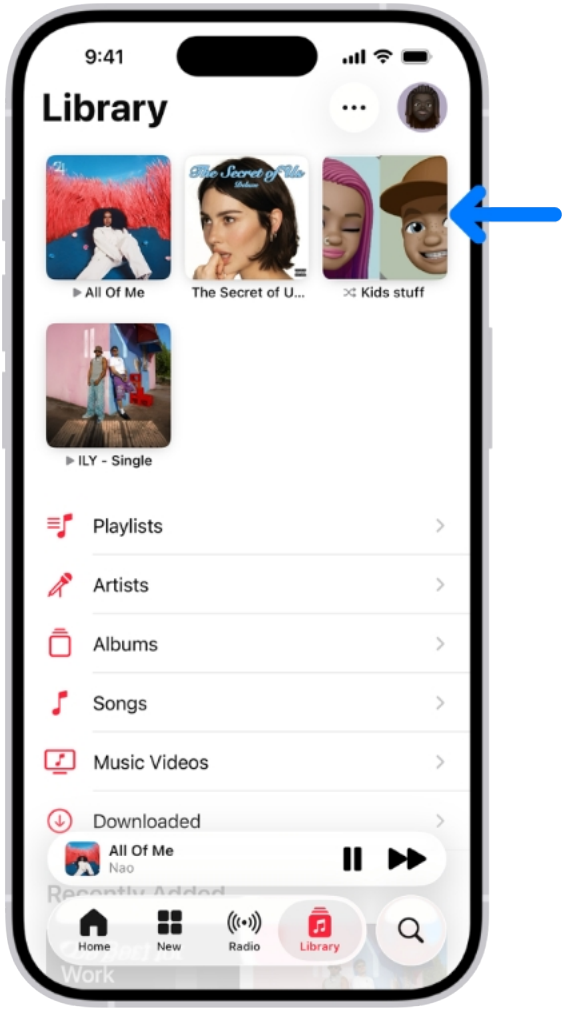
Next
Pin music

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Pin albums, songs, and more in Music on iPhone

After you subscribe to Apple Music, you can pin your favorite music (including music videos) to the top of your library so it's easily accessible.



Pin music to the top of your library

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Pin a playlist:* Touch and hold a playlist or tap ••• when viewing a playlist, then tap Pin Playlist.

- *Pin an artist:* Go to an artist page, tap ••• at the top of the screen, then tap Pin Artist.

- *Pin an album:* Touch and hold an album, then choose Pin Album. Or tap an album, tap •••, then tap Pin Album.

- *Pin a song or music video:* Touch and hold a song or video or tap ••• next to a song or video, then tap Pin [*item*]. Or on the Now Playing screen, tap ⋯, then tap Pin [*item*].

You can only pin content that's in your library. For example, to pin an artist, you must have at least some content by that artist in your library. Pinned items appear at the top of your library.

Unpin an item in your library

1. Go to the Music app 🎵 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, touch and hold a pinned item, then tap Unpin [*item*].

   Optionally, tap •••, tap Edit Pins, then tap ⊖.

Choose what happens when you tap a pinned item

When you tap a pinned item, you can customize what happens. For example, you can choose to open a pinned playlist page, play an album in its default order, or even play and shuffle songs for an artist.

1. Go to the Music app 🎵 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, touch and hold a pinned item, tap Tap Action, then choose an action.

   If you choose Play or Shuffle, you see the icon for the action next to the item name.

💡 **Tip:** To automatically download items to your library when you pin them, go to Settings ⚙ > Apps > Music, then turn on Download Pins.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Previous
Add music and listen offline

Next
Create an Apple Music Profile

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Create an Apple Music profile on iPhone

After you subscribe to Apple Music, you can create an Apple Music profile that features your favorite playlists and what you're currently listening to. You can share your profile with friends you invite or with other Apple Music subscribers.

After you create a profile, you can choose the playlists you want to share. Additionally, you can view profiles created by friends or request to follow them and see what they're listening to.

Create a profile

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Tap Set up Profile, then follow the onscreen instructions to create a profile.

After you finish setting up your profile, you can find friends whose music profile you'd like to follow or choose who you share music with (so you can show friends what you're listening to).

Note: If you're the organizer of a Family Sharing group, you can allow children ages 13 to 18 to create Apple Music profiles (or prevent them from doing so). Children under 13 can't create Apple Music profiles. (Age restrictions vary by region.) See Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases.

Edit your profile

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen, then tap Edit to make updates.

You can edit your profile to choose who you share music with or to choose music to share with your followers.

Delete your profile

You can delete your profile so that your playlists and music no longer appear in searches, and your music or profile isn't visible to your followers.

Note: Your Apple Music subscription, library, and playlists aren't affected if you delete your profile, but you're no longer able to see what your friends are listening to.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen, then tap Edit.
4. Scroll to the bottom, then tap Delete Profile.

   If you create your profile again within 90 days, your previous information and followers will be restored.

Note: If you delete your profile, it might take several minutes before it's no longer visible to your followers or in searches.

See also

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

Previous
Pin music

Next
Share music with friends

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

See what friends are listening to in Music on iPhone

After you create an Apple Music profile, you can find and follow friends to see what they're listening to.

Choose how to find friends

Before you can choose which friends to share music with, you need to allow Music to access your contacts.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Allow Apple Music access to your contacts:* Select the Contacts on Apple Music option so Apple Music can access your contacts and recommend new friends to you periodically.

   - *Allow friends to find you by Apple Account:* Select the Allow Finding by Apple Account option and friends who have your Apple Account information can see you as a recommended friend.

Follow friends

There are several ways to follow people:

- Add friends when you set up a profile.
- After you set up your profile, swipe to the bottom of the profile screen, tap Follow More Friends, then tap Follow next to those you want to follow.

  You can follow friends who are in your contacts list and who use Apple Music.

- On the profile screen, touch and hold a profile picture, then tap Follow.
- Tap Search, enter a friend's name, tap it in the results, then tap Follow.

  Note: You can only find friends who have an Apple Music profile using Search. Additionally, you must be 13 years or older to view Apple Music profiles. (Age restrictions vary by region.)

To see the people you're following and those who follow you, open the profile screen, then swipe up.

If a profile picture has a lock on it, you need to ask that person to follow them. After your request is accepted, you see the person's shared playlists and the music they're listening to.

See what your friends are listening to

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then do any of the following:

   - *See what your friends are listening to:* Scroll down to Friends Are Listening To, then tap an item to play it.
   - *Listen to a mix of songs your friends are listening to:* Swipe left on Made For You, then tap Friends Mix.
   - *See what a follower or person you follow is listening to:* Tap or your profile picture, then tap View Profile. Tap a person's profile picture to see shared playlists and music they're listening to. You also see their followers and the people they follow.

Stop following friends

You can stop following a friend if you no longer want to see what they're listening to.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, touch and hold the profile picture of a person you follow, then tap Unfollow.

See also

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Previous
Share music with friends

Next
Search for music

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share music with friends on iPhone

After you create an Apple Music profile, you can share music with your friends. You can allow anyone to follow you or just those you choose, and block others.

Choose music to share with your followers

By default, your followers see the playlists you create, but you can choose not to share some playlists.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, tap Edit, then turn Shared Playlists on or off.

To share playlists with people who don't follow you, touch and hold a playlist, then tap Share Playlist.

Note: If you make changes to music you share—edit or stop sharing a playlist, for example—those changes are reflected on your followers' devices.

Hide music from your followers

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile.
4. Touch and hold the playlist or album (below Listening To).
5. Tap Hide from Profile.

The listening history for this item won't appear in your profile or be visible to the people who follow you. If you don't want your followers to see any of the music you listen to, tap Edit on the profile screen, then turn off Listening To at the bottom of the screen.

Note: It may take up to 10 minutes before music you hide is no longer visible to your followers.

To hide all the music you play from your followers on Apple Music, see Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits.

Share your profile

You can share your profile using email, Messages, or another app you choose.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile.
4. Tap •••, tap Share, then choose a sharing option.

You can also share the profile of anyone you follow, or who follows you.

Choose who you share music with

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, tap Edit, then tap People You Approve to be followed only by people you choose. (Everyone includes all Apple Music subscribers who have a profile.)

For additional privacy settings, see Hide music from your followers.

Respond to follow requests

If someone requests to follow you, you can accept or decline the request. You receive requests only if you select People You Approve in your profile. See Choose who you share music with.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap Follow Requests, then accept or decline the requests.

You may receive follow requests in other ways—as a link in an email or a text message, for example. To accept, tap the link.

Turn on or off notifications about your friends' activity

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn on (or off) Friend Activity.

   When the option is on, you get notified when friends follow you and add your playlists.

Prevent users from following you

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, touch and hold a profile picture, then choose Block.

   People you block won't see your music or be able to find your profile. They can still play your shared playlists if they added them to their library.

Report a concern

If you have a concern about a follower, touch and hold their profile picture, then tap Report a Concern.

See also

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPhone

Previous
Create an Apple Music Profile

Next
See what friends are listening to

Select version:

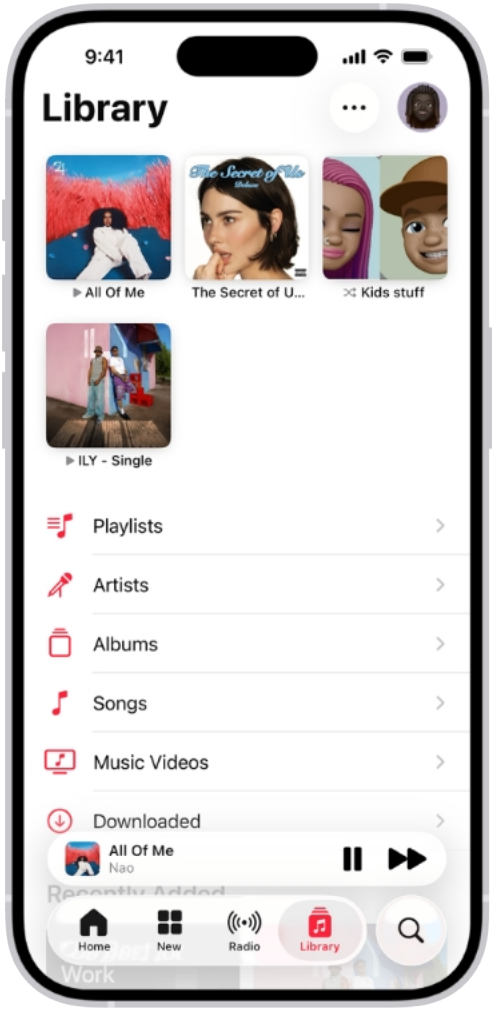
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Play music on iPhone

Play music you added or downloaded from Apple Music, music and videos you synced to iPhone, and your iTunes Store purchases.

Siri: You can use Siri to search for and play music, add music to your library, and more. For example, ask Siri something like, "Play something I like." See Play music and podcasts with Siri.



Play songs from your library

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Library, then tap a category, such as Albums or Songs; tap Downloaded to view only music stored on iPhone.

   Tip: To play songs across an artist's catalog—mixing hits and deep cuts—go to an artist page, then tap next to the artist's name.

3. Scroll to browse—or type in the search field to filter your results—to find what you want to play.

4. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

   You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

To change the list of Library categories, tap •••, tap Edit Sections, then select categories you'd like to add, such as Genres and Compilations. Tap any existing categories to remove them.

Stream recommended songs

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following to find music you want to play:

   - *View recommendations tailored for you:* Tap Home, then tap a playlist or album.

   - *See what's new in Apple Music:* Tap New, then find music by mood, new releases, charts, and more.

   - *Search the Apple Music catalog:* See Search for music.

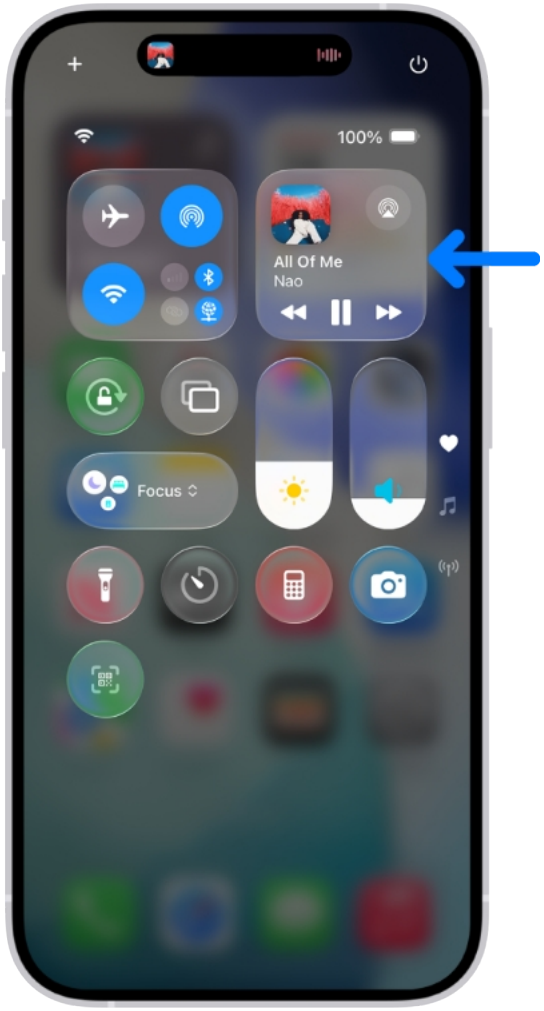
3. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

   You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

Play music from the Lock Screen or when using another app

Open Control Center, then tap the audio card.

Tip: You can also identify a song playing on or near your iPhone by adding the Music Recognition control to Control Center. Open Control Center, tap + at the top left, tap Add a Control at the bottom, then tap the Recognize Music control. With a song playing, open Control Center, then tap .



Play music shared on a nearby computer

If a computer on your network shares music through Home Sharing, you can stream its music to your iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Tap Sign In below Home Sharing, then sign in to your Apple Account.
4. Go to the Music app, tap Library > Home Sharing, then choose a shared library.

Sort your music

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Playlists, Albums, Songs, TV & Movies, or Music Videos.

3. Tap •••, then choose a sorting method, such as Title, Artist, Date Added, or Release Date.

You can also shuffle and repeat songs, queue them up in a specific order, or transition them using Crossfade or AutoMix.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

See also

Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPhone

Use the music player controls on iPhone

Show song credits and lyrics on iPhone

Apple Support article: Migrate purchases from one Apple Account to another Apple Account

Previous
Find new music

Next
Use the music player controls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

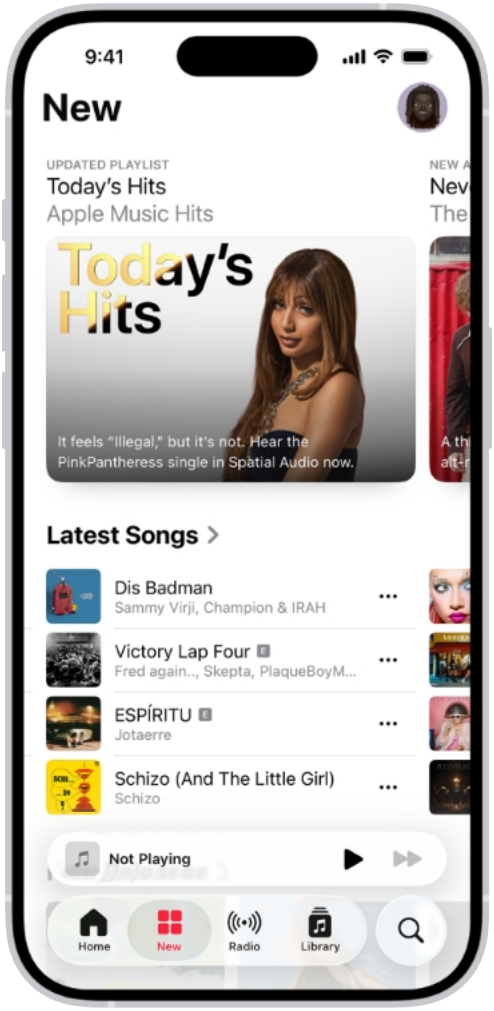
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone

When you subscribe to Apple Music, you can browse new and noteworthy music, music videos, playlists, and more.



Discover new releases, featured music, and more

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap New to find new music, then do any of the following:

   - *Explore featured music:* Swipe through featured songs and videos at the top of the screen.

- *Browse playlists created by music experts:* Tap one of the many playlists created by music experts.
- *Explore new music:* Tap a song below the Latest Songs heading or swipe through the albums listed below New Releases.
- *See what's hot:* Tap a song below the Trending Songs heading. Swipe left to see more songs.
- *Listen to the top songs from around the world:* Tap one of the Daily Top 100 playlists. These playlists reflect the day's most popular songs in countries across the globe.
- *Listen to songs from upcoming albums:* Tap an album below Coming Soon, then tap an available song to play it.
- *Watch music videos:* Tap Music Videos, then tap a featured music video or playlist of music videos.
- *Play the day's most popular songs:* Tap Charts, then tap a song, playlist, album, or music video to play it. Tap All Genres at the top of the screen to see the top songs and music videos in a genre you choose.
- *Browse your favorite genres:* Tap Browse by Genre, choose a genre, then tap a featured playlist, song, album, artist, or radio station to enjoy music handpicked by music experts.
- *Play music that matches your mood:* Tap Moods and Activities, then tap a playlist such as Feel Good, Romance, or Party.

Note: To see more music, swipe left on the album art. To see all the music in a section—New Releases, for example—tap ❯ next to the section's name.

Discover your most-played music of the year

For every year you've subscribed to Apple Music (and played enough music to become eligible), Apple Music creates a Replay personal chart, ranking the songs you've played the most.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, swipe down to Replay: Your Top Music, then tap an option (for example, a year).

You can also see all your insights throughout the year on your iPhone or at replay.music.apple.com. See the Apple Support article How to get your Apple Music Replay.

Discover music you've never played before

Using your listening history and taste profile, Apple Music recommends music you may like that you've never played before.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Play my Discovery Station." Learn how to use Siri.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then swipe down to Stations for You.
3. Tap Discovery Station.

Turn on or off new music notifications

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn on (or off) New Music.

See also

Mark items as favorites in Apple Music on iPhone

Play music on iPhone

Previous
Find music shared with you

Next
Play music

Table of Contents

Find music shared with you on iPhone

When a friend shares music with you in the Messages app, you can easily find it in Shared with You in the Music app.

Note: Music must be turned on in Settings > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.

---

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, swipe up to Shared with You, then do any of the following:
   - Tap a song to listen to it.
   - Tap the name of the person, people, or group that shared the song to reply to them using Messages.
   - Touch and hold the song to take other actions—for example, add it to your library, create a station, reply to the sender, or remove it.

See also

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Table of Contents

Search for music on iPhone

Using Search, you can quickly browse through music categories, see recent searches, and search Apple Music or your library.

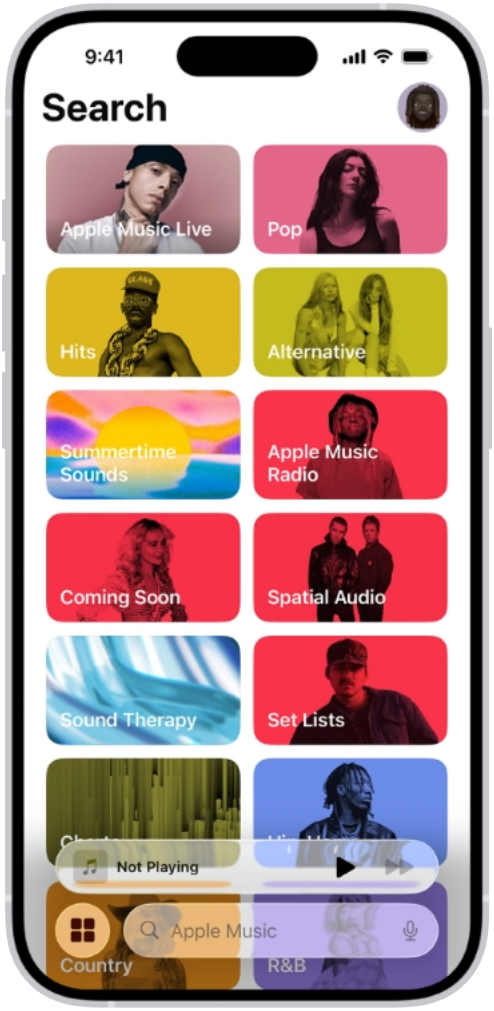
Tip: When you want to search, simply describe what you're looking for using natural language, such as "hit songs from movies" or "nostalgic songs from the '90s."

---

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then do any of the following:
   - Tap a category such as Pop or Fitness.
   - Tap the search field to quickly find items you recently searched for—a song or artist, for example.
   - Tap the search field, tap Apple Music, then enter what you're searching for (such as a song, artist, or lyric).

     Tip: You can search for a song in Apple Music based on its lyrics. In the search field, enter a few of the words you remember to find a song.
   - Tap the search field, tap Library, then enter what you're searching for (such as a song, album, or playlist).
3. Tap a result to play it.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Play the song with the lyrics" and then say a key phrase from the lyrics. Learn how to use Siri.



Services and features aren't available in all countries or regions, and features may vary by region.

See also

Find music shared with you on iPhone

Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone

Previous
See what friends are listening to

Next
Find music shared with you

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

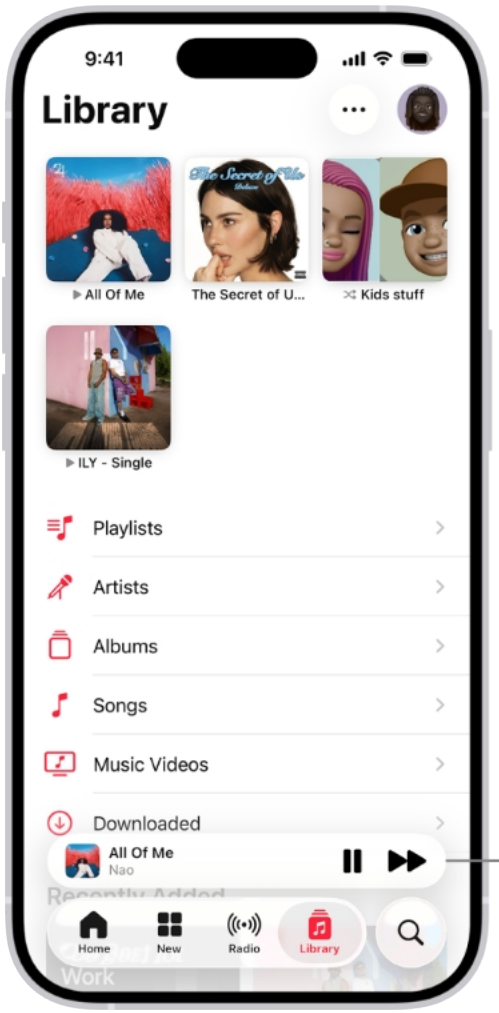
Table of Contents

Use the music player controls on iPhone

You can play and control music in the Music app in two different ways—the MiniPlayer and the Now Playing screen.

Use the MiniPlayer

The MiniPlayer shows the song that's currently playing. You can use the MiniPlayer to play or pause music, or skip to the next track.



Use the controls in the Now Playing screen



1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Do any of the following:

    - *Adjust the volume:* Drag the volume slider.

      You can also use the volume buttons on the side of iPhone.

    - *Scrub to any point in a song:* Drag the playhead.

    - *Navigate to the artist, album, or playlist:* Tap the artist name below the song title, then choose an option.

    - *Turn animated album cover art on or off:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then tap Animated Art and choose an option.

For additional control over your music, tap any of these buttons:

Control	Description
	Dismiss the Now Playing screen.
	Mark the song as a favorite. See Mark items as favorites.
	Tap for more options.
	Tap to play your songs in random order (shuffle).
	Tap to repeat an album, playlist, or the entire queue. (Or double-tap to repeat a single song.)
	Tap to use AutoPlay, which adds similar songs and plays them at the end of the queue.
	Tap to use AutoMix, which seamlessly transitions between songs, like a DJ. (Available for Apple Music subscribers.)
	Tap to use Crossfade, which fades in each song (gradually increase its volume) while the previous song is fading out.
	Tap when you need help pronouncing or translating the lyrics. This button only appears when a translation or pronunciation is available that matches your iPhone device's Preferred Languages list. (You can view this list and add languages directly to it in Settings > General > Language & Region.) Not available in all languages.
	Go back to the beginning of the song. Tap again to play the previous song in an album or playlist. Touch and hold to rewind through the current song.
	Pause playback.
	Play the current song.
	Skip to the next song. Touch and hold to fast-forward through the current song.
	Show time-synced lyrics (lyrics not available for all songs).

	Stream music to Bluetooth or AirPlay-enabled devices.
	Show the queue.

Stream music to Bluetooth® or AirPlay-enabled devices

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then choose a device.

See Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers.

Note: You can play the same music on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices, such as two or more HomePod speakers. You can also pair two sets of AirPods to one iPhone and enjoy the same song or movie along with a friend. See Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices in this user guide and Share audio with AirPods and Beats headphones in the AirPods User Guide.

See also

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Play music on iPhone

Previous
Play music

Next
Play lossless audio

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Listen to radio stations in Music on iPhone

Apple Music features six world-class radio stations (Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, Apple Music Country, Apple Music Club, Apple Música Uno, and Apple Music Chill), as well as a collection of stations based on different genres. These stations provide a great way to explore and enjoy new music or keep up with your favorites.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Play Apple Music 1." Learn how to use Siri.

You can also create your own custom stations, based on your pick of artist, song, or genre.

In addition to radio, you can play Apple Music TV, a free, 24-hour curated livestream of popular new music videos that includes exclusive premieres, music video blocks, live shows and events, chart countdowns, and more.

Play Apple Music radio

You must be signed in to your Apple Account, but you don't need to subscribe to Apple Music, to play live Apple Music radio stations and Apple Music TV.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Radio, then tap one of the currently playing Apple Music radio stations.

   Note: Because Apple Music radio stations are live radio, you can't rewind or skip songs.

Choose a radio station by genre

You must subscribe to Apple Music to play curated radio stations, such as Stations by Genre.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Radio, scroll down, then tap a genre listed below Stations by Genre.

3. Tap a featured station.

Create a station

You can create a radio station based on a particular artist or song. Chances are, if you like that artist or song, you'll like the music the station plays.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold an artist or song.
3. Tap Create Station.

To create a station on the Now Playing screen, tap ···, then tap Create Station.

Play broadcast radio stations

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Play R&B Now Radio." Learn how to use Siri.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Search for a station:* Tap Search, enter the station in the search field, then tap a result to play the station.

     You can search for stations by name, call sign, frequency, and nickname.

   - *Choose a station in the Radio tab:* Tap Radio, scroll up, then choose a station below the Local Broadcasters or International Broadcasters heading.

Note: You don't need a subscription to Apple Music to play broadcast radio. Broadcast radio isn't available in all countries or regions and not all stations are available in all countries or regions.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Play lossless audio in Music on iPhone

Apple Music subscribers can access millions of tracks encoded using lossless audio compression.

Lossless compression is a form of compression that preserves all of the original data. Apple has developed its own lossless audio compression technology called Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC). The entire Apple Music catalog is encoded using ALAC in resolutions ranging from 16-bit/44.1 kHz (CD Quality) up to 24-bit/192 kHz.

What you need to know about lossless in Apple Music

- Streaming lossless audio over a cellular or Wi-Fi network consumes significantly more data. And downloading lossless audio uses significantly more space on your device. Higher resolutions use more data than lower ones.
- AirPods, AirPods Pro, AirPods Max, and Beats wireless headphones use Apple AAC Bluetooth Codec to ensure excellent audio quality. However, Bluetooth® connections aren't lossless.
- To get a lossless version of music that you already downloaded from Apple Music, just delete the music and redownload it from the Apple Music catalog.
- To play songs at sample rates higher than 48 kHz on iPhone, you need an external digital-to-analog converter.

Note: Apple Music and lossless aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Turn on Lossless Audio and choose audio quality settings

You can choose audio quality settings for cellular streaming, Wi-Fi streaming, and downloads.

1. Go to Settings > Apps > Music.
2. Tap Audio Quality, then tap Lossless Audio to turn it on or off.
3. Choose the audio quality for streaming and downloading audio.
    - Choose Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/48 kHz.
    - Choose Hi-Res Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/192 kHz.

The audio quality of streamed music depends on song availability, network conditions, and the capability of connected headphones or speakers.

Identify lossless music

The Lossless icon appears on album pages when the music is available in lossless audio.

To see the Lossless icon for music on the Now Playing screen, go to Settings > Apps > Music > Audio Quality, then turn on Lossless Audio.

For more information, see the Apple Support article About lossless audio in Apple Music.

See also

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Play music on iPhone

Play music in Spatial Audio with Dolby Atmos on iPhone

Previous
Use the music player controls

Next
Play Spatial Audio

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Play music together using SharePlay on iPhone

You can use SharePlay while playing music on a HomePod, Apple TV, or other third-party Bluetooth® speaker, and everyone can control the music with their iPhone.

Before you begin

- The host must have an iPhone with iOS 18 or later and be an Apple Music subscriber.
- Participants must have an iPhone with iOS 18 or later, but don't need to have an Apple Music subscription.
- Everyone must have an internet connection and Bluetooth turned on.
- Everyone must allow their contacts to discover them when playing music to a speaker—go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Discoverable by Nearby Contacts if it isn't on already.

Start SharePlay from Music on your iPhone

To use SharePlay to play music together, you (the host) start on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then select a playback destination.

   The music starts playing to the device you selected. See Stream video and audio with AirPlay.
4. Tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap .

   A QR code appears; tap the QR code to enlarge it.

5. To begin controlling the music, participants can scan the QR code on your iPhone.

Join SharePlay with the iPhone camera

1. Go to the Camera app on your iPhone.
2. Point the camera at the QR code on an iPhone that's already joined SharePlay.

   A button appears below the picture of the QR code.
3. Tap the button, then tap Connect.

   The host receives a notification and must tap on their iPhone to allow you to join.

Tip: After you approve a participant to join SharePlay, they're automatically approved the next time they join.

Leave SharePlay

Tap at the bottom of the Now Playing screen, then tap Leave or End.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Previous
Listen to radio

Next
Play music together in the car

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Play music together in the car using SharePlay and CarPlay on iPhone

Using SharePlay and CarPlay, you and your passengers can all control the music that's playing in the car.

Passengers can join SharePlay in two ways: by tapping a notification on their iPhone or by scanning a QR code, either on the CarPlay Now Playing screen or on the Now Playing screen of another passenger's iPhone.

Before you begin

- The driver must have an iPhone with iOS 17 or later and be an Apple Music subscriber.
- Passengers must have an iPhone with iOS 17 or later, but don't need to have an Apple Music subscription.
- Everyone must allow their contacts to discover them when playing music in the car—go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Discoverable by Nearby Contacts if it isn't on already.

Start SharePlay with CarPlay on your iPhone

To use SharePlay in the car, you and your passengers each play a part.

1. Begin playing music from your iPhone using CarPlay.

   A notification appears on the Lock Screen of passengers' iPhone devices. After they tap Connect, you receive a notification in CarPlay.

2. Tap a passenger's name, then tap to allow the passenger to choose and stream music from your iPhone.

After you approve a passenger, they can join SharePlay in the future without going through the same process unless you end their access.

Use a QR code to join SharePlay

You can also let passengers join SharePlay over Bluetooth® by scanning a QR code.

1. On the Now Playing screen in CarPlay, tap .

   A QR code appears on the CarPlay screen.

2. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPhone and point the camera at the QR code.

   A button appears below the picture of the QR code on their iPhone to request a connection to SharePlay. The passenger taps the button, then taps Connect.

3. Tap on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

Use a QR code to add other passengers

If you're a passenger using SharePlay to control music in a car, you can invite other passengers while the driver focuses on the road.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Open the Now Playing screen, then tap at the bottom of the screen.

   A SharePlay window appears, listing all the participants as well as a QR code for joining.

3. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPhone and point the camera at the QR code, tap the button that appears below the code, then tap Connect.

   The driver taps on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

Leave or end SharePlay in the car

- *If you're a passenger:* Tap at the bottom of Now Playing, then tap Leave.
- *If you're the driver:* Tap End on the CarPlay screen.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Play music in Spatial Audio with Dolby Atmos on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple Music, you can play available tracks in Dolby Atmos, which creates an immersive, three-dimensional (*spatial*) audio experience on stereo headphones and speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.

Albums and songs available in Dolby Atmos have the Dolby icon next to them. If a track is playing in Dolby Atmos, the icon also appears on the Now Playing screen.

Note: Apple Music and Dolby Atmos aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.



Turn on Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings > Apps > Music.
2. Tap Dolby Atmos, then choose Automatic or Always On.

    - *Automatic:* Plays Dolby Atmos whenever iPhone is connected to compatible headphones such as AirPods 3, AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, or to speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.

    - *Always On:* Plays Dolby Atmos on any headphones or speakers. The Music app will attempt to play Dolby Atmos tracks on any headphones or speakers connected to iPhone.

Dolby Atmos will play on any headphones, but not all speakers will play Dolby Atmos as intended.

Control Spatial Audio and head tracking on iPhone

When you play supported music on your iPhone with AirPods 3, AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can use Spatial Audio and head tracking to create an immersive, theater-like environment with sound that surrounds you. Follow these steps to control Spatial Audio and head tracking in Control Center.

1. Wear your AirPods, then open Control Center.
2. Touch and hold the volume control, then tap Spatial Audio at the lower right.
3. Tap one of the following:

    - *Off:* Turns off both Spatial Audio and head tracking.

    - *Fixed:* Turns on Spatial Audio without head tracking.

    - *Head Tracked:* Turns on both Spatial Audio and head tracking. This setting allows the sound to follow the movement of your head.

The settings you choose are saved and applied automatically the next time you use that app. For example, if you tap Fixed while listening to a song in Apple Music, the Fixed setting is automatically used the next time you play a song in Apple Music.

Note: To disable head tracking for all apps on your iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > AirPods, tap your AirPods, then turn off Follow iPhone.

Download songs in Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings > Apps > Music.
2. Turn on Download in Dolby Atmos.

For more information, see the Apple Support article About Spatial Audio with Dolby Atmos in Apple Music.

See also

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Play music on iPhone

Play lossless audio in Music on iPhone

Control Spatial Audio and head tracking

Previous
Play lossless audio

Next
Listen to radio

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Queue up your music on iPhone

Use the queue to see a list of upcoming songs, add songs and videos to the queue, and see what you recently played.

Use the queue

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap, then tap a song to play it and the songs that follow.

   To reorder the list, drag. To do more, see Manage the queue.
4. Tap again to hide the queue.

Add music and music videos to the queue

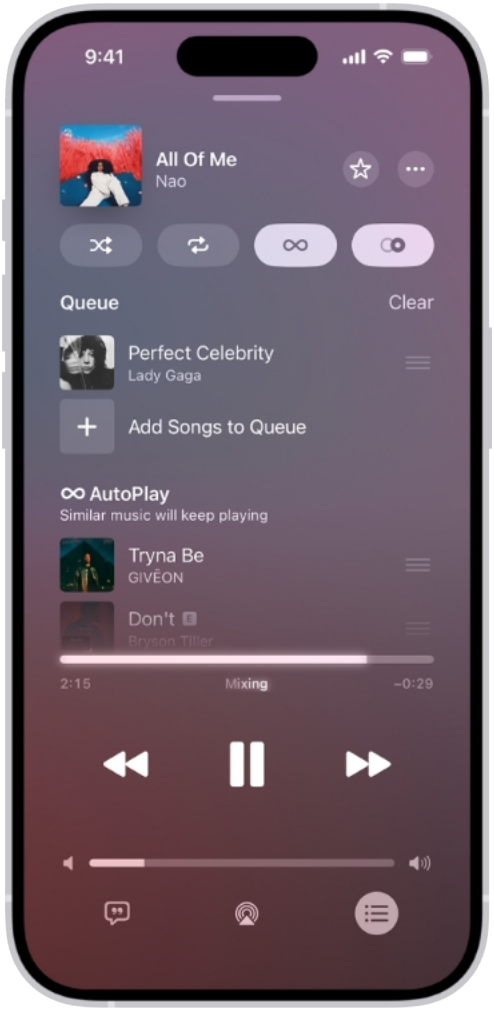
1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While browsing or playing music, touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then choose an option:

   - *Add music right after the currently playing item:* Tap Play Next.
   - *Add music to the end of the queue:* Tap Play After or Add to Queue.

Tip: If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on the same Wi-Fi network, they can add items to the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the HomePod User Guide.

Use AutoPlay to add songs to the queue

If you're an Apple Music subscriber and you're not sure what to play next, use AutoPlay. Once you play something, AutoPlay adds similar songs and plays them at the end of the queue. When AutoPlay is on and a song is playing, the AutoPlay icon ∞ appears at the top of the queue.



1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap ☰, then tap ∞ at the top of the queue to turn AutoPlay on.

   When AutoPlay is on, the button changes color. Tap it again to turn it off.

   Note: When you turn off AutoPlay on a device that uses your Apple Account—your iPhone, for example—AutoPlay is turned off on all other devices that use the same Apple Account.

Manage the queue

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.

3. Tap ☰, then do any of the following:

   - *Change the order of songs in the queue:* Drag the songs into the order you want them to play.
   - *Add more songs to the queue:* Scroll below the Queue section, then tap Add Songs to Queue.
   - *Remove a song from the queue:* Swipe left on the song, then tap Remove.
   - *See how many songs are in the queue:* Scroll to the bottom of the queue.

     When multiple songs are repeating, you can see how many songs will be repeated instead.
   - *Remove all songs from the queue:* Tap Clear at the top of the queue.

Tip: If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on the same Wi-Fi network, they can reorder items in the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the HomePod User Guide.

See what you recently played

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap ☰, then swipe down to see your playing history.

   To play a song in the history, tap it. To remove your playing history, tap Clear.

Turn on or off song transitions in the queue

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰, then tap ∞ or ✕ in the top-right corner to turn on or off AutoMix or Crossfade.

   To change between AutoMix or Crossfade, see Change how music transitions.

Table of Contents

Transition songs in Music on iPhone

Use AutoMix or Crossfade to transition songs seamlessly.

Change how music transitions

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Tap Song Transitions, then choose an option.

About AutoMix

If you're using iOS 26 or later and listening to music from the Apple Music catalog, AutoMix seamlessly transitions between songs, like a DJ.

AutoMix automatically selects the best transition, depending on the music. For example, AutoMix might remove silence at the beginning and end of a track, or perform a simple crossfade, rather than a more complex transition, when appropriate.

Note: Albums and some genres play without transitions.

AutoMix is on by default, but you can turn it off, either in the queue, or in Settings.

Turn on Crossfade

You can set the Music app to fade in each song (gradually increase its volume) while the previous song is fading out—this is called *crossfading*.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Tap Song Transitions, then turn it on.

4. Tap Crossfade, then drag the slider to choose the length of the crossfade.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Adjust the volume on iPhone

Previous
Queue up your music

Next
Shuffle or repeat songs

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Show song credits and lyrics on iPhone

When you subscribe to Apple Music, you can show song credits and view and share lyrics.

Show song credits

You can view song credits that include performing artists, composition and lyrics, production and engineering roles, and available audio quality.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, tap ···, then tap View Credits.
   - Tap ··· next to a song in a list, then tap View Credits.

Show and hide time-synced lyrics

Time-synced lyrics appear for many songs in Apple Music.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap .
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Jump to a certain verse:* Tap a specific lyric—the first line of the chorus, for example—to go to that part of the song.
   - *Get help pronouncing or translating the lyrics:* Tap , then choose Show Pronunciation or Show Translation.

The Translation and Pronunciation button only appears when a translation or pronunciation is available that matches your iPhone device's Preferred Languages list. (You can view this list and add languages directly to it in Settings > General > Language & Region.) Not available in all languages.

Tip: You can have either the lyrics or the pronunciation appear in larger text. Go to Settings > General > Apps > Music.

- *See all of a song's lyrics:* Tap, tap View Credits, then tap View Lyrics.

4. To hide the lyrics, tap.

Share lyrics

You can share up to 150 characters of a song's lyrics if time-synced lyrics are available.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap, then tap Share Lyrics.

   You can also touch and hold a lyrics line to open the sharing screen.
4. Tap the first and last lyrics you want to share, then choose a sharing option.

Report a concern

To report a concern about time-synced lyrics, tap, then tap Report a Concern.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Change the language and region on iPhone

Previous
Sing along with Apple Music

Next
Tell Apple Music what you enjoy

Table of Contents

Sing along with Apple Music on iPhone

Apple Music subscribers can use Apple Music Sing to view real-time, beat-by-beat lyrics for select songs, as well as adjust the volume of a song's vocals—allowing you to sing along with the music while viewing the lyrics as they're highlighted.

Note: Apple Music Sing is available on iPhone 11 or later with iOS 16.2 or later, except for iPhone SE (2nd generation).

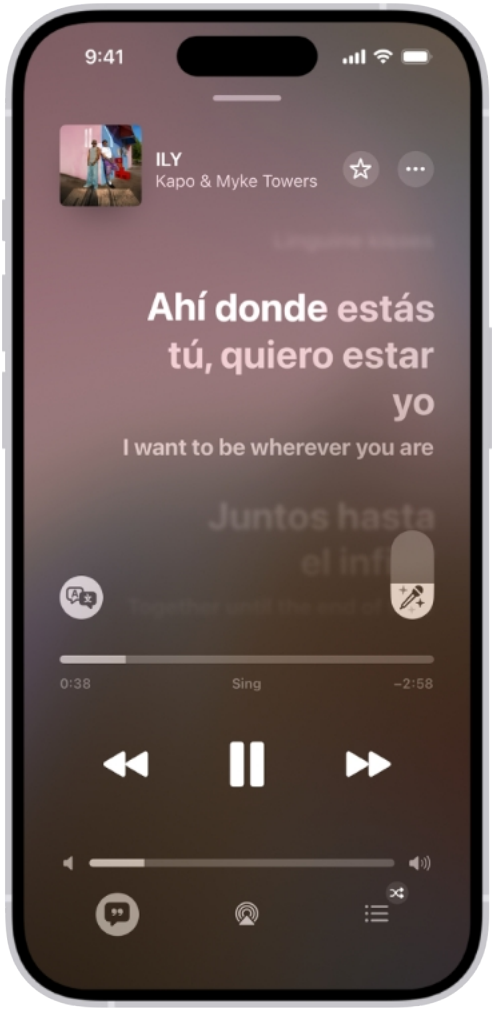
Adjust the volume of a song's vocals

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap .
3. Touch and hold , then drag the slider up or down to adjust the vocal volume.

   When you need help pronouncing or translating the lyrics, tap then choose Show Pronunciation or Show Translation. The Translation and Pronunciation button only appears when a translation or pronunciation is available that matches your iPhone device's Preferred Languages list. (You can view this list and add languages directly to it in Settings > General > Language & Region.) Not available in all languages.

   Tip: You can have either the lyrics or the pronunciation appear in larger text. Go to Settings > General > Apps > Music.
4. To turn off Apple Music Sing for the song, tap the slider.

If you're listening to a song playing with Dolby Atmos and you turn on Apple Music Sing, Dolby Atmos turns off and the song plays without surround sound. If you turn off Apple Music Sing, the song plays with Dolby Atmos.



Sing onscreen with Apple TV 4K

You can pair your iPhone with your Apple TV 4K to enhance your singing experience with either of these features:

- *See visual effects:* Your iPhone becomes a Continuity Camera to see yourself singing onscreen along with the lyrics. Add visual effects to your image and lyrics to enhance the singalong experience.
- *Sing with iPhone Mic:* In iOS 26, your iPhone becomes a microphone to amplify your voice right through your Apple TV 4K (3rd generation).

See Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac and Use Apple Music Sing on Apple TV in the Apple TV User Guide.

"Ily" written by Juan David Loaiza "Kapo," Orlando J. Cepeda Matos, Julio "Bati" Emmanuel Batista Ramos, Juan Diego Medina Vélez, Julian Turizo, Miguel Angel Diaz Velez, and Daniel Rondon.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Table of Contents

Shuffle or repeat songs in Music on iPhone

You can shuffle all songs and albums in your library (play them in random order) or just shuffle a playlist or album. You can also repeat individual songs, playlists, or albums.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
   - *Play your songs in random order (shuffle):* Tap . Tap again to turn off shuffle.
   - *Repeat an album, playlist, or the entire queue:* Tap .

     Note: When multiple songs are repeating, you can view how many songs will be repeated—just scroll to the bottom of the queue.
   - *Repeat a single song:* Double-tap .

See also

Queue up your music on iPhone

Play music on iPhone

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Table of Contents

Intro to playlists in Music on iPhone

A playlist is a custom compilation of songs and music videos. You might want to create a playlist to do the following:

- Suit a specific mood or occasion. For example, you could create a playlist for a dinner party, a wedding, or your morning workout.
- Select certain songs to share with others on your local network or to sync with your Mac or Windows device.
- Organize your music library.

When you subscribe to Apple Music, there are a few other types of playlists available:

- *Favorite Songs playlist:* See Mark items as favorites.
- *Playlists created by any Apple Music contributor:* See Add music to iPhone and listen offline.
- *Playlists created by other subscribers that you follow:* See See what your friends are listening to.
- *Special playlists (like Replay):* See Discover your most-played music of the year.
- *Collaborative playlists:* See Collaborate on a playlist and Join a collaborative playlist.

Changes you make to your music library (creating playlists or playlist folders, for example) are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on (go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library). If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your library the next time you sync with your computer.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Add this song to my Workout playlist" while playing a song or album. Learn how to use Siri.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Table of Contents

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

You can create playlists to suit specific moods or to organize songs with a certain theme.

Create playlists to organize your music

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. To create a new playlist, tap Library, tap Playlists, tap + at the top of the screen, then tap New Playlist.
3. Enter a playlist title.
4. To give your playlist cover art, tap, then take a photo, choose an image from your photo library, or choose a file on your device.
5. Tap, then tap Add Music.

   You can search for music, select music from your library, or choose songs listed at the bottom of the screen.
6. Tap to add music to the playlist.

Tip: To add songs to your library when you add them to a playlist, go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Add Playlist Songs.

Add music to a playlist

After you create a playlist, you can add music to it in several ways.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

- Touch and hold an album, playlist, song, or music video, tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.
- From the Now Playing screen, tap ⋯, tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

Edit a playlist

You can rename playlists, change the artwork, add and remove songs, and more.

Note: The owner of a collaborative playlist can make any changes to the playlist. Other participants can only add, remove, or reorder songs in the playlist.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the playlist, tap ⋯, tap Edit, then do any of the following:

   - *Rename the playlist:* Tap the current name, then enter a new name.
   - *Edit cover art:* Select from a variety of Apple templates or tap to add your own.
   - *Show (or hide) the playlist in your Apple Music profile:* Turn on (or off) the "Show in My Profile and in Search" option.
   - *Add songs from your library:* Tap + at the bottom of the screen, navigate to any place in your library, then tap ⊕ next to the song.

     You can also touch and hold an item (song, album, playlist, or music video), tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.
   - *Add a Suggested Song:* Tap + at the bottom of the screen, scroll below the Library options, then tap ⊕ next to the song.

     Suggested Songs also appears at the bottom of your playlist song list. To refresh the list of suggestions, tap ↻.
   - *Delete a song:* Tap the song, then tap 🗑 at the bottom of the screen. Deleting a song from a playlist doesn't delete it from your library.
   - *Change the song order:* Drag ☰ next to a song.

Changes you make to your music library are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on (go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library). If

you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your music library the next time you sync with your computer.

Sort a playlist

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a playlist, then tap ••• at the top right of the screen.
3. Tap Sort By, then choose an option.

Delete a playlist

If you delete a playlist, the songs in the playlist remain in your library and on your iPhone. If you're the owner of a collaborative playlist and you delete it, the collaboration ends and the playlist is removed from your library, but it remains in the participants' library.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the playlist, then tap Delete from Library.

   You can also tap the playlist, tap •••, then tap Delete from Library.

See also

Organize playlists in folders in Music on iPhone

Play music on iPhone

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Previous
Intro to playlists

Next
Collaborate on a playlist

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPhone

You can make a song or album a favorite so that you can easily find and play it again later. If you dislike a song or album, you receive fewer suggestions for similar music.

Tell Apple Music what you enjoy

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Touch and hold an album, playlist, or song, then tap Favorite or Suggest Less.
   - On the Now Playing screen, tap, then tap Favorite or Suggest Less.

Telling Apple Music what you like and dislike improves future recommendations.

Rate music in your library

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Turn on Show Star Ratings.

   Note: This option only appears if you already added a star rating to a song in your music library on your Mac or Windows device, and Sync Library is enabled on your iPhone (go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library).
4. Go to the Music app, touch and hold a song in your library, tap Rate Song, then choose a rating from one to five stars.

Song ratings sync to all devices that are signed in to the same Apple Account.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Rate songs and other content in Music on Mac

Rate songs and other content in Apple Music on Windows

Previous
Show song credits and lyrics

Next
Adjust the sound quality

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Change the way music sounds in the Music app with EQ and Sound Check.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding hearing loss, see Important safety information.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Tap one of the following:
   - *EQ:* Choose an equalization (EQ) setting.
   - *Sound Check:* Normalize the volume level of your audio.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Adjust the volume on iPhone

Previous
Tell Apple Music what you enjoy

Next
Intro to playlists

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple Music, you can share a playlist and collaborate on it with others. Everyone can add, remove, and reorder music and react with emoji to songs in the collaborative playlist.

Note: Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Invite others to collaborate on a playlist

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a playlist, then tap .
3. To approve people before they can join, turn on Approve Collaborators.

   If you don't turn on this option, anyone with the link can join the collaborative playlist.
4. Tap Start Collaborating, then choose a sharing method, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail, to send a link to the playlist.

   The person who receives the link must tap Join Playlist to start collaborating.

If you're the owner and you turn on Approve Collaborators, notifications appear in the top-right corner when a new person requests to join the collaborative playlist.

Add more people to collaborate on a playlist

If you're the owner of a collaborative playlist, or the owner hasn't turned on Approve Collaborators, you can share the link to the playlist with more people.

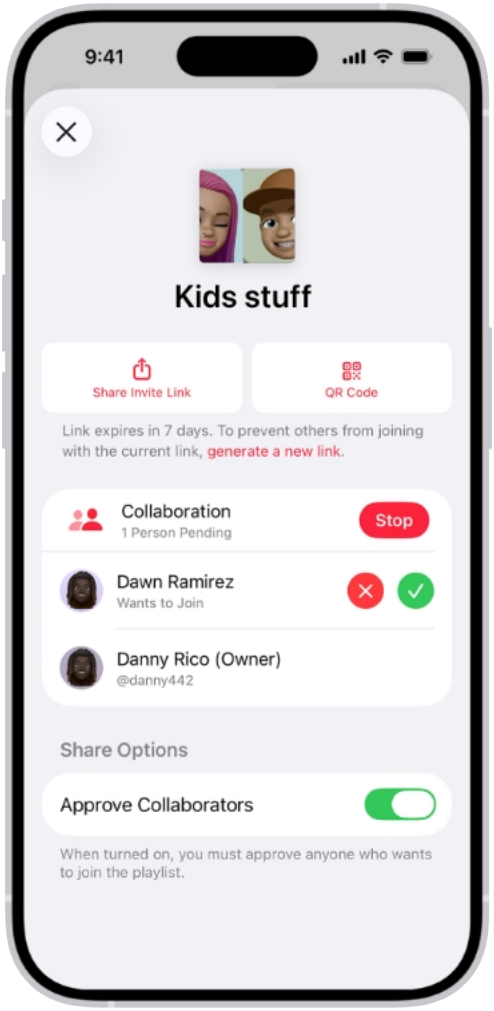
1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap , then do one of the following:

- *Add someone who is nearby:* Tap QR Code. Others can join the playlist by using the camera on their iPhone to scan the code displayed on your iPhone.

- *Add someone else:* Tap “generate a new link” (if necessary), tap Share Invite Link, then follow the steps to invite others to collaborate on a playlist.

Manage shared settings for a collaborative playlist

If you’re the owner, you can change access and permissions for individuals or for everyone after you’ve started collaborating on a playlist.



1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap , then do any of the following:

   - *Invite others:* See Add more people to collaborate on a playlist.

     Note: If you didn’t turn on Approve Collaborators, anyone collaborating on the playlist can share the link to the collaborative playlist.

   - *Approve people before they can join:* Turn on Approve Collaborators.

- *Accept request:* Tap ✅ to allow the person to join the collaborative playlist.
- *Decline request:* Tap ❌ if you don't want the person to join the collaborative playlist.

Stop collaborating on a playlist with one or more people

If you're the owner, you can remove people from the playlist or stop collaborating on it altogether.

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap 👥, then do any of the following:
   - *Remove one person:* Swipe left on the person's name, then tap Remove.
   - *Stop collaborating on a playlist:* Tap Stop.

Remove yourself from a collaborative playlist

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap 👥, then tap Leave.

See also

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

Join a collaborative playlist in Music on iPhone

Previous
Create, edit, and delete playlists

Next
Join a collaborative playlist

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get started with News on iPhone

The News app collects all the stories you want to read—from your favorite sources—about the topics that interest you most. Apple News+ subscribers can also access features like audio stories, puzzles, and recipes.

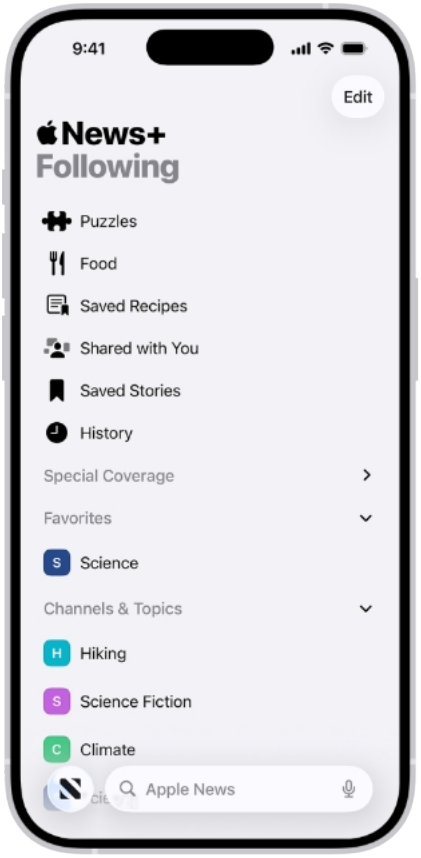


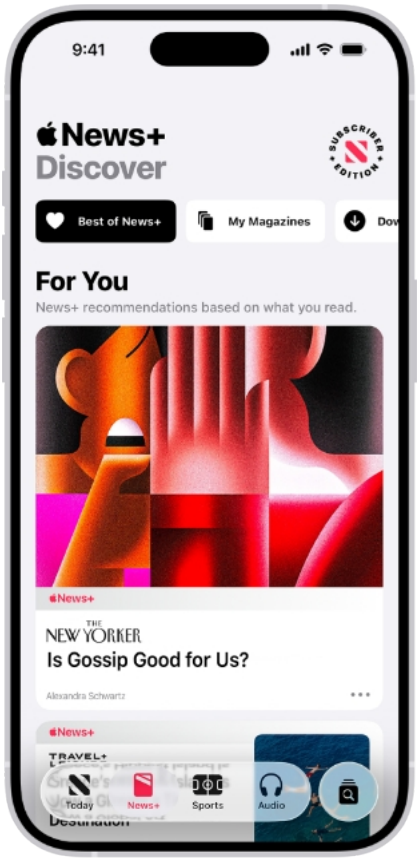
Catch up on the latest news

Open the News app to browse stories—from breaking news to science to entertainment. The more you read, the better Siri understands what's important to you and suggests stories you might like.

Customize your feed

Tap to find a specific channel or topic you're interested in, then tap to follow it. Channels and topics you follow appear in the Today feed. If there's a channel or topic that you *don't* want to see in your Today feed, touch and hold it, then choose Block Channel, Block Topic, or Stop Suggesting.



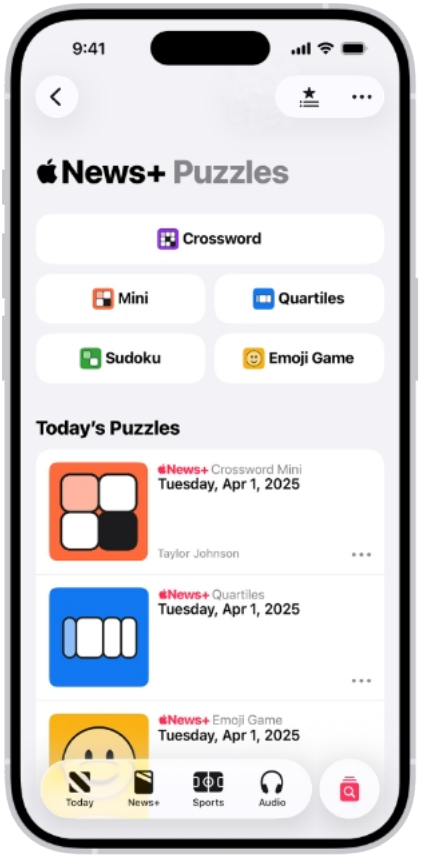


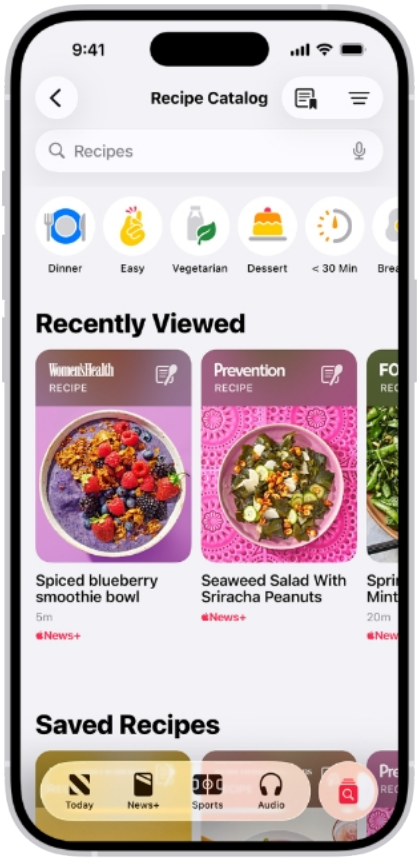
Subscribe to Apple News+

When you subscribe to Apple News+, you can access hundreds of magazines and newspapers, along with puzzles, recipes, and audio stories. You can share issues with others or download them for offline reading. When prompted, tap a subscription button, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Take a break to test your wits

Apple News+ subscribers can solve daily puzzles—such as crosswords, Quartiles, sudoku, and Emoji Game. Tap , tap Puzzles, then tap to open a puzzle. Some puzzles include a tutorial—in Quartiles, for example, tap •••, then tap How to Play.





Cook up a feast

Apple News+ subscribers also have access to thousands of curated and personalized recipes. Tap , tap Food, then tap or Recipe Catalog.

Want to learn more?

- See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone
- Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone
- Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone
- Find recipes and food stories in Apple News+ on iPhone
- Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content on iPhone

Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Previous
Organize playlists in folders

Next
Get News notifications and newsletters

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

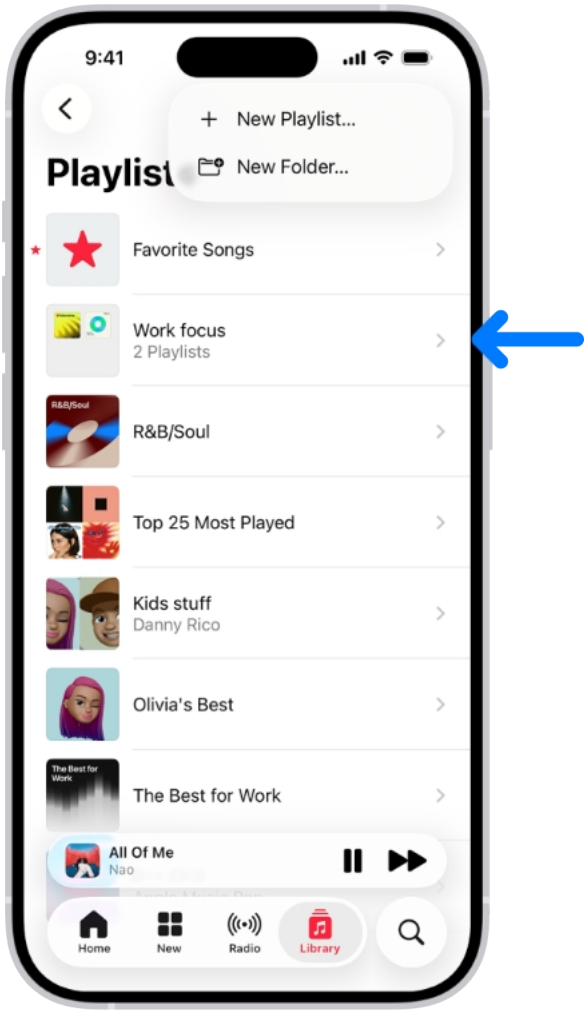
Yes No

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Organize playlists in folders in Music on iPhone

You can create folders for your playlists to keep them organized.



Create a new playlist folder

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Playlists.
3. Tap + at the top right, then tap New Folder.
4. Type a name for the folder, then tap Create.

   To rename a folder, tap ••• at the top right, tap Rename, then type the new name.

Add or remove items from a playlist folder

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Playlists.
3. Touch and hold a playlist or folder, then tap "Move to."

   Tip: You can also drag a playlist or folder into another folder.
4. Tap the folder, then tap Move.

   If a playlist is already in a folder and you want to move it back to the main Playlists list, don't select a folder—just tap Move.

Tip: You can create a new folder and move a playlist into it—just touch and hold a playlist in your library, tap "Move to," then tap New Folder.

Changes you make to your playlist folders are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on (go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library). If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your music library the next time you sync with your computer.

See also

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

Queue up your music on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add a reaction to a collaborative playlist in Music on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple Music and you join a collaborative playlist, you can react to songs in the playlist with emoji.

Note: Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

---

1. Go to the Music app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, then tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap, then choose a reaction (for example, a thumbs up emoji) or tap to find a specific emoji.



See also

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPhone

Previous
Join a collaborative playlist

Next
Organize playlists in folders

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Join a collaborative playlist in Music on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple Music and someone invites you to collaborate on a playlist, you can join it and then add, remove, or reorder music in the collaborative playlist and react to songs with emoji.

Note: Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

---

1. On your iPhone, tap the link you received, then tap Join or Request to Join (if the owner of the collaborative playlist must approve you first).
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Add a song, change the order of songs, or remove an item:* See Edit a playlist.
   - *React to a song with emoji:* See Add a reaction to a collaborative playlist.
   - *Invite others with a link:* Tap Share Invite Link. See Add more people to collaborate on a playlist.

     Note: If you're the owner of a collaborative playlist, or the owner hasn't turned on Approve Collaborators, you can share the link.

See also

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPhone

Table of Contents

Get News notifications and newsletters on iPhone

If you don't want to miss important stories, you can use notifications and newsletters to stay on top of the latest news. Some channels you follow may send notifications. You can also choose to receive newsletters from Apple News editors by email.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Turn on notifications

Some channels you follow may send notifications about important stories.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
3. Turn on notifications for your preferred channels, as well as notifications from Apple News, such as Apple News Top Stories, Apple News Spotlight, and more.

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can additionally receive notifications when new issues are available of publications you follow. You can also receive New Features & Tips notifications.

Receive Apple News newsletters

You can choose to receive newsletters in your email inbox from Apple News editors. Newsletters feature top stories, personalized based on your interests. If you subscribe to Apple News+, newsletters can also include new issues of your favorite magazines.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email.

3. Swipe to the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:

    - Turn on Apple News Newsletters.
    - Tap Sign Up for Newsletters, then tap Sign Me Up.

4. In the U.S., several different newsletters may be available. To choose which ones you want to receive, do one of the following:

    - *Opt in:* Tap Sign Up.
    - *Opt out:* Tap Subscribed.

To stop receiving newsletters, return to the Notifications & Email screen, then turn off Apple News Newsletters. In the U.S., tap Manage Newsletters, then unsubscribe from each newsletter you no longer want to receive.

Note: Personalized newsletters aren't available in all countries or regions. To get the Sports newsletter, you need to first sync My Sports and follow a sports topic.

See also

Get started with News on iPhone

Use News widgets on iPhone

Apple Support article: Manage emails that you receive from Apple

Previous
Get started with News

Next
Use News widgets

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone

With My Sports, you can follow your favorite sports, teams, leagues, and athletes; receive stories from top sports publications, local newspapers, and more; access scores, schedules, and standings for the top professional and college leagues; and watch highlights.

Set up iPhone to use My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you must do the following:

- *Sign in to your Apple Account:* Go to Settings, tap "Sign in to your iPhone," then enter your Apple Account information.
- *Sign in to the App Store:* Go to Settings, tap your name, then tap Media & Purchases.

Get started with My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you need to allow syncing between Apple News, the Apple TV app, and the Apple Sports app. When you allow syncing, you automatically follow the same teams in all three apps.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Sports at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Get Started, then tap Pick Your Teams.
4. On the Manage My Sports screen, tap ⊕ next to sports, teams, leagues, and major sporting events to follow them.

   Sports topics you previously expressed interest in appear below Suggested. To search (by team name or location and more), tap the search field.
5. Tap ✕ to close the Manage My Sports screen, then do any of the following:

   - *View comprehensive sports coverage:* Tap Sports at the bottom of the screen.
   - *Check the most important sports stories at a glance:* Tap Today, then swipe up to the Sports group.
   - *Get stories and team updates:* After you follow a topic or team and allow syncing between Apple News, the Apple TV app, and the Apple Sports app, you can sign up for the Sports newsletter for stories and team updates. (Not available in all countries or regions.) See Receive Apple News newsletters.
   - *Get notified about a team or league you follow:* Allow syncing between Apple News, the Apple TV app, and the Apple Sports app, then turn on notifications for Sports.

Browse all available sports

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports, then tap All Sports at the top of the screen.
3. Tap a sport or league to go to its feed.
4. To follow that sport or league, tap ＋ at the top of the screen.

Manage sports topics

You can follow and unfollow sports topics after you set up My Sports.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports, scroll down to My Sports, tap Manage, then do any of the following:

- *Follow a topic:* Tap ⊕ next to each topic you want to follow.
- *Unfollow a topic:* Tap ⊖ next to topics you want to unfollow, then tap Unfollow.
- *Reorder topics:* Touch and hold ☰, then drag topics to the order you prefer.

3. Tap ✕.

Show scores, schedules, highlights, and more

My Sports offers scores and schedules for your favorite teams, stats and stories for individual games and events, video highlights, and stories related to your favorite teams.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports, then do any of the following:

   - *Show scores and schedule:* Swipe left on the scores at the top of the feed, then tap See More.
   - *Show stats and stories for individual games:* Tap a score at the top of the feed, or swipe down to a sports topics you follow, then tap a game.
   - *Watch a live game:* Tap a score at the top of the feed, then tap Open in Apple TV (before or after the game) or Watch on Apple TV (during a live game). Or swipe down to a topic you follow, tap the game's tile, then tap Open in Apple TV or Watch on Apple TV. If the game is available in your area and you subscribe to a service that broadcasts the game, you can watch it in the Apple TV app or in a supported app.

     Note: Supported sports apps may require a separate subscription. Not all games are available in all areas.
   - *View highlights:* Swipe up to the Highlights section, then tap ▶ in the thumbnail. Tap Highlights to see more highlights.

     Note: Highlights are available only for select leagues.
   - *Read sports stories related to topics you follow:* Swipe up to For You, then tap a story.

Stop syncing My Sports

You can stop syncing between Apple News, the Apple TV app, and the Apple Sports app.

Note: When you turn off Sync My Sports, you can no longer use My Sports.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap News.
3. Turn off Sync My Sports.

See also

Listen to Apple News Today on iPhone

Apple Sports App User Guide

Apple TV User Guide: Sports in the Apple TV app

Previous
Read and share stories

Next
Listen to Apple News Today

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use News widgets on iPhone

You can easily check the day's top and trending stories from the News app, as well as stories about a topic of your choosing, just by tapping the Today or Topic widget.

Access stories from News widgets

In the Today or Topic widget, tap a story headline to open the story in News.

See Add, edit, and remove widgets.

See also

See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

Previous
Get News notifications and newsletters

Next
See news stories chosen just for you

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

The Today feed in the News app presents top stories selected by Apple News editors, the best stories from the channels and topics you follow, and stories and issues from Apple News+. The Today feed also includes stories suggested by Siri, trending stories that are popular with other News readers, My Sports, and more. Depending on your location, the Today feed can also include Apple News Today audio briefings, puzzles, and local news (with your local weather conditions).

Note: Audio briefings, local news, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions.

Access stories in the Today feed

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Open a story:* Tap the story.
   - *Read more stories within a group:* Tap More at the bottom of the group.
   - *Play a video:* Tap in the thumbnail.
   - *Get newer stories:* Pull down to refresh the Today feed with the latest stories.

Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics

You can influence what appears in the Today feed by following and blocking channels and topics.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Open a channel feed:* Touch and hold a story, tap the channel name, then tap Go to Channel. Or tap a story in the Today feed, then tap the channel name at the top of the story.

   - *Open a topic feed:* Tap the topic title—Movies or Travel, for example.

3. At the top of the feed, do any of the following:

   - *Follow:* Tap ＋.

   - *Unfollow:* Tap •••, then tap Unfollow Channel or Unfollow Topic.

   - *Block:* Tap •••, then tap Block Channel or Block Topic.

   - *Unblock:* Tap •••, then tap Unblock Channel or Unblock Topic.

Note: Stories from channels you block show a gray headline and a message indicating that you blocked the channel. To read a story from a blocked channel, tap it, then choose Read Story.

Blocking isn't supported in Top Stories or other groups curated by the Apple News editors, who vet each story in those groups for quality and accuracy.

Manage your favorites

Favorites shows the channels and topics from your Following list that you like best (you can have only a limited number of Favorites). Adding channels and topics to your Favorites makes them easier to access.

Note: Only channels and topics that you currently follow can be added to your Favorites.

The first time you use the News app on your iPhone, you won't see any Favorites. You create your Favorites group by marking channels and topics as favorites. You can customize your list at any time.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.

2. Tap, tap Edit, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a channel or topic to your Favorites:* Tap ★ next to a channel or topic.

- *Remove a favorite:* Tap ★ next to a channel or topic you no longer want as a favorite.
- *Reorder favorites:* Touch and hold ☰, then drag favorites to the order you prefer.

3. Tap ✓.

Note: If you tap Block from Today in the Today feed, your Favorites group still appears in your Following list.

Stop suggesting specific channels and topic groups in the Today feed

Suggested channels and topic groups may appear in the Today feed, but you can stop these suggestions.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Today.
3. Tap ••• in a channel or topic group, then tap Stop Suggesting.

The channel or topic isn't blocked, but News stops displaying the story group in Today.

Tell News what kind of stories you prefer

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Today.
3. Tap ••• below a headline, then tap Suggest More or Suggest Less.

See stories only from the channels you follow

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap News.
3. Turn on Restrict Stories in Today, then confirm your choice.

Note: Restricting stories significantly limits the variety of stories that appear in the Today feed and all other feeds. For example, if you restrict stories and follow only one entertainment-related channel, your Entertainment topic feed will contain stories only

from that channel. When you restrict stories, you don't see Top Stories and Trending Stories.

See also

Read and share stories in News on iPhone

Previous
Use News widgets

Next
Read and share stories

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Listen to Apple News Today on iPhone

You can listen to Apple News Today, an audio briefing of the day's top stories hosted by Apple News editors. With an Apple News+ subscription, you can also listen to audio versions of select Apple News+ stories in the News app and in the Podcasts app.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Play Apple News Today

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap an episode of Apple News Today. To see more episodes, scroll down and tap Apple News Today below Apple News Podcasts.

   Apple News Today briefings also appear in the Today feed below Listen Now.
3. To learn about the audio controls, see Listen to audio stories.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, a preview of an Apple News+ audio story plays when the briefing concludes.

Get Apple News Today show notes notifications

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
3. Turn on notifications for Apple News Today.

See also

Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone

Previous
Follow your favorite teams with My Sports

Next
Subscribe to Apple News+

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Read and share stories in News on iPhone

You can read and share News stories on iPhone.



Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions.

Read a story

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, do any of the following:

- *Read the next story:* Swipe left.
- *Read the previous story:* Swipe right.
- *Return to the list of stories:* Swipe from the left edge or tap ‹ at the top left of the screen.
- *Tell News what stories you prefer:* Tap 👍 or 👎. Your feedback is taken into account for future recommendations.
- *Change the text size:* Tap •••, tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. (Not available in all channels.)
- *Share a story:* Tap ⎙, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.
- *Report a concern:* If you believe that a story you're viewing is mislabeled, inappropriate, offensive, or doesn't display properly, tap •••, tap Report a Concern, then follow the onscreen instructions.

In Apple News+ issues in PDF format, the Suggest More, Suggest Less, Save Story, and Report a Concern options aren't available. See Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues.

Read stories shared with you

When a friend shares stories with you using the Messages app, you can easily find them in the Shared with You section in Apple News. (Your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.)

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Tap Shared with You, then make sure News is turned on.
4. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
5. Tap .
6. Tap Shared with You, then do any of the following:

- Tap a shared story to read it in News.

- Tap the name of the person who shared a story to reply to them in the Messages app. To reply while reading the story, tap the name shown below the channel's logo.

See also

Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

Previous
See news stories chosen just for you

Next
Follow your favorite teams with My Sports

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Manually download Apple News+ issues on iPhone

With an Apple News+ subscription, you can download issues to read when you're not connected to the internet.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Download an Apple News+ issue

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Tap News+, then tap My Magazines. You can also tap Catalog near the top of the screen, then tap a stack of magazines.
   - Tap, then tap a magazine channel you follow.
   - Tap, enter the magazine channel name in the search field, then tap the channel.
3. When you find the issue you want, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Download Issue.

To download multiple issues, tap News+, tap My Magazines, tap, then tap Select. Tap the issues you want to download, then tap.

Read a downloaded issue

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the News+ tab.

3. Tap Downloaded near the top of the screen, then tap an issue.

Remove downloaded issues

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the News+ tab, then tap Downloaded near the top of the screen.
3. Tap ···, tap Select, tap the issues you want to remove, then tap 🗑.

If you remove an issue from the Downloaded tab, you can easily access it again in My Magazines.

Remove an issue from My Magazines

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the News+ tab, then tap My Magazines near the top of the screen.
3. Tap ··· below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), tap Remove, then tap Remove from My Magazines.

The issue's cover and content are removed from iPhone and from any other devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and where News is turned on in iCloud settings.

See also

Read and share stories in News on iPhone

Listen to News stories in News on iPhone

Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content on iPhone

See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

Previous
Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content

Next
Listen to News stories

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content on iPhone

Apple News+ subscribers can automatically download News content, then access it when there's no Wi-Fi or cellular connection—for example, when taking a flight or riding the subway.

Note: Content that can be downloaded for Offline Mode may include stories, issues, audio stories, recipes, and puzzles. Not all content types are available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Turn on Automatic Downloads for Apple News+

1. Sign in to your Apple Account.
2. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
3. Tap Apps, then tap News.
4. Turn on Background App Refresh.
5. Tap Automatic Downloads, turn on Allow Automatic Downloads, then turn on any of the following:

    - *Recent Stories:* Downloads the latest stories in the Today feed, Best of News+ feed, Sports feed, Shared with You, and History.
    - *Saved Stories:* Downloads the latest stories in your Saved Stories list.
    - *Magazine Issues:* Downloads the latest issues of magazines you follow.
    - *Food & Recipes:* Downloads the Food feed, the Recipe Catalog, and Saved Recipes.

- *Puzzles:* Downloads the Puzzles feed, the feed for each puzzle type, and the puzzles in these feeds.

- *Audio Stories:* Downloads audio stories in the Today feed and Audio tab.

Note: To download smaller versions of images in stories and recipes, turn on Optimize Storage.

Your iPhone downloads News content when it has sufficient storage space and is connected to Wi-Fi and power. If you have a cellular connection but not Wi-Fi, only Top Stories in the Today feed are downloaded automatically.

Use News in Offline Mode

If you don't have a Wi-Fi or cellular connection, No Internet Connection appears at the top of the screen and any content in the app that isn't downloaded is dimmed. To switch from the currently loaded version of each feed to the downloaded version, tap Show Stories Downloaded for Offline Mode.

When you reconnect to the internet, tap Check for New Stories at the top of the screen. All feeds in the app are refreshed and display the latest content.

See also

Manually download Apple News+ issues on iPhone

Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone

Connect iPhone to the internet

Previous
Browse and read Apple News+ stories

Next
Manually download Apple News+ issues

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

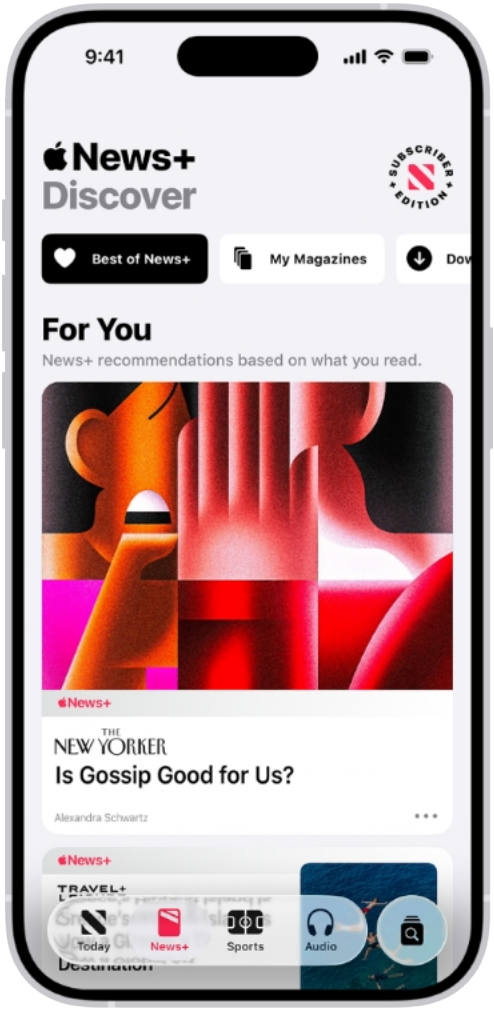
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone

To get the most out of Apple News+, follow your favorite publications and browse through current and back issues.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.



Follow and unfollow publications

You follow an Apple News+ publication by following its channel.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap Today or News+ at the bottom of the screen, tap a story or issue from an Apple News+ publication, tap the publication's name at the top of the screen, then tap +.
   - Tap , enter the publication's name in the search field, then tap .
   - Tap News+, swipe left on the categories near the top of the screen, tap Newspapers or Catalog, then tap Follow below the publication's cover.

To unfollow a publication, tap , swipe left on the publication, then tap Unfollow.

Browse Apple News+ issues and stories

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.

   Stories and issues from Apple News+ appear in the Today feed, Best of News+ feed, and channel feeds. Stories (but not issues) can also be found in topic feeds and search results.

2. To access entire issues, tap the News+ tab at the bottom of the screen, where you can do any of the following:

   - *View News+ content chosen just for you:* Near the top of the screen, tap Best of News+.
   - *View all available publications:* Swipe left on the options near the top of the screen, then tap Catalog.
   - *View a specific content category:* Swipe left on the options near the top of the screen, tap Catalog, tap Featured, then tap a category such as Money & Business, Entertainment, or Sports.
   - *View new and recent issues:* Tap My Magazines. By default, new issues appear near the top of the screen. The issue you most recently read appears first. If you recently downloaded an issue, it appears next. To choose a different sorting option, tap , then tap Sort by Name or Sort by Date.

     Note: If you block an Apple News+ publication, its issues are removed from My Magazines.

Open a story or issue

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap an issue cover in News+ or the Today feed.
   - Tap , enter the name of the Apple News+ channel in the search field, tap the channel, then tap the issue.
   - Follow a link to a story or issue that someone shared with you.

Access back issues

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap News+, tap My Magazines, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Browse Back Catalog.
   - Tap a channel you follow, or search for a channel, then tap it. Below Recent Issues, swipe to the issue you want to read, then tap to open it. You can also tap Sections near the top of the screen, then tap Issues to browse all available issues.

Read Apple News+ issues

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open the issue, where you can do any of the following:

   - *Page through an issue:* Swipe left to go to the next story, or swipe right to go to the previous story.
   - *View the table of contents:* When you're reading a story, tap •••, then tap Go to Issue.
   - *Change the text size:* Tap •••, tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. If the issue is a

PDF, pinch to zoom.

If you sign out in Settings > [*your name*] > Media & Purchases, you can only access free stories—you must sign back in to access stories and download issues that require an Apple News+ subscription.

See also

Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content on iPhone

Manually download Apple News+ issues on iPhone

Previous
Subscribe to Apple News+

Next
Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone

When you subscribe to Apple News+, you can access of hundreds of magazines and newspapers, along with recipes, puzzles, and audio stories. You can share issues with others or download them for offline reading. Learn more about subscriptions on the Apple News+ website.

You can subscribe to Apple News+ or to Apple One Premier, which includes Apple News+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, Apple One, puzzles, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple News+

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap the subscription button shown in a magazine, puzzle, recipe, or story.
   - Tap News+ at the bottom of the screen, then tap the subscription button.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

   You may be asked to sign in to your Apple Account.

Share Apple News+ with family members

When you subscribe to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple News+ with up to five other family members. Your family group members

don’t need to do anything—Apple News+ is available to them the first time they open the News app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn’t renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group’s subscription. If you join a family group that doesn’t subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple News+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave a Family Sharing group, or remove a member from a Family Sharing group.

Cancel or change your Apple News+ subscription

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , scroll down, tap Subscriptions (below Manage), then do one of the following:

    - *Apple News+ only:* Tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.
    - *Apple News+ and individual channels:* Select Apple News+, tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you subscribe to Apple News+ as part of an Apple One Premier subscription and want to cancel your subscription, see the Apple Support article If you want to cancel a subscription from Apple.

See also

See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone

Apple Support article: What is Family Sharing?

Apple News website

Previous
Listen to Apple News Today

Next
Browse and read Apple News+ stories

Select version:

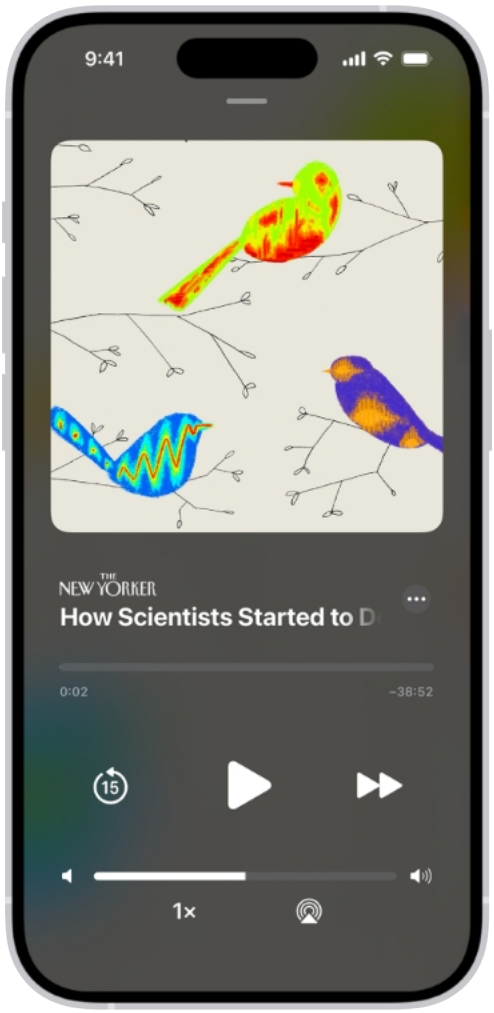
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Listen to News stories in News on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can listen to audio versions of select News+ stories. You can also listen to select Apple News+ audio stories in the Podcasts app.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Browse audio stories

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to show Apple News+ audio stories and Apple News Today.

   If you're a subscriber, you see selections of audio content, including:

- *Up Next:* Stories you're currently listening to or have added to the Up Next queue.
- *For You:* Stories recommended to you based on your interests.

To learn more about a story before listening to it, tap See Details.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, you can hear previews of audio stories.

Play audio stories

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap 🎧, then tap a story.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Access more audio controls:* Tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.
   - *Close the full-screen player:* Tap ···, then tap Close Audio Player.
   - *Return to the mini player:* Swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.
   - *Close the mini player:* Touch and hold the mini player, then tap Close Audio Player.

Audio stories can also appear in a feed. To listen to the story, tap ▶ (Apple News+ subscription required). You can also tap the story to read it, then tap ▶ at the top of the story.

Use any of the following controls:

Control	Description
▶	Play
⏸	Pause
⏭	Next story
15	Jump back 15 seconds
1×	Choose a faster or slower playback speed
	Stream audio to other devices

Add stories to Up Next

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. In the Audio tab or a news feed, tap •••, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

To reorder stories in the Up Next queue, tap See All, touch and hold ☰, then drag stories to the order you prefer.

Read, share, and remove audio stories

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap 🎧, then do any of the following:

   - *Read, save, share, and more:* Tap •••, then choose an option.
   - *Remove stories from the Up Next queue or For You:* Touch and hold the story, then select Remove.

Note: Some of these options are also available when you swipe a story left or right.

See also

Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

Previous
Manually download Apple News+ issues

Next
Find recipes and food stories in Apple News+

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

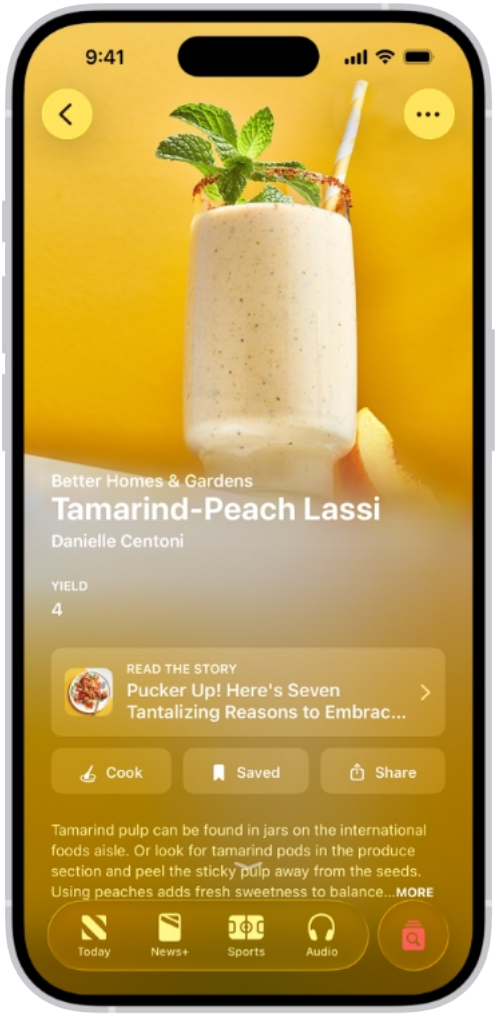
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find recipes and food stories in Apple News+ on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can find personalized food content, including a large catalog of recipes with features like interactive ingredient lists and easy-to-start timers.



Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and food features aren't available in all countries or regions.

Browse stories and recipes

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen, tap Food, then scroll down to see stories and recipes.

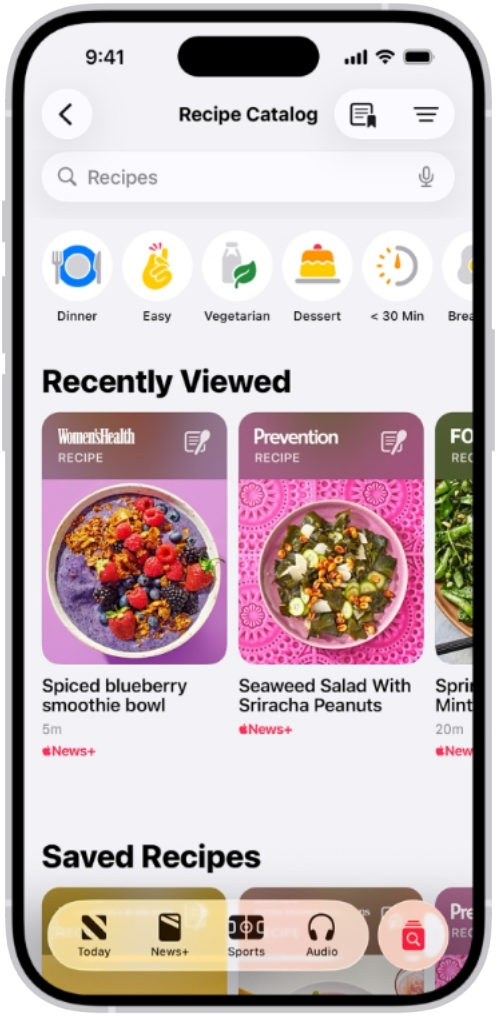
   The more food content and recipes you read, the more personalized your recommendations become.

   Tip: To look at other recipes or stories while you're reading one, swipe left or right.

Search for and filter recipes

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen, then tap Food.
3. Tap Recipe Catalog at the top of the feed or in the top-right corner, then do any of the following:

   - *Search by recipe title, ingredient, or keyword:* Tap the search field, enter a term, then tap .
   - *Filter by category:* Tap a category, such as Vegetarian.
   - *Add and combine filters:* Tap , tap a filter, then tap .
   - *Remove a filter:* Tap next to a filter below the search field.



Save a recipe

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen, tap Food, then scroll down to browse recipes. Or search for and filter recipes, as above.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *While browsing or viewing search results:* Touch and hold the recipe's image, then tap Save Recipe.
   - *While a recipe is open:* Tap Save.
4. To revisit saved recipes, tap Saved Recipes in the Following list or the Food feed, or tap in the Recipe Catalog.

To remove a recipe from your saved recipes, touch and hold the recipe, then tap Unsave Recipe.

Prepare a recipe

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen, tap Food, then scroll down to browse recipes. Or search for and filter recipes, as above.
3. To open a recipe, do one of the following:

   - While reading a food story, tap •••, then tap Go to Recipe. If the story has multiple recipes, tap Recipes, then tap the recipe you want to prepare.
   - Tap a recipe in the search results.

4. Scroll to see the recipe's ingredients and directions, then tap Ingredients or Directions near the top of the screen to jump between them.
5. To focus on the directions, tap Cook.

   Steps appear in a larger font and the display stays on while you're preparing the recipe.

Tip: While viewing directions, you can tap an ingredient to see how much is used in the recipe, without going back to the ingredients list. While viewing ingredients, you can keep track of what you already prepared or used by tapping them.

Use a cooking timer

You can start a cooking timer when a recipe recommends a length of time (highlighted in color)—for example, the time needed to sauté onions or let a cake rest.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Begin preparing a recipe, as above.
3. When a time appears in a step, tap , swipe up or down to adjust the time, then tap Start.

Add ingredients to your groceries list

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a recipe, as above.

3. Tap •••, then tap Add to Grocery List.
4. To choose your grocery list, tap ⇕.
5. Tap ✓ next to each item you don't need to deselect it.
6. Tap ✓ in the top right to save the ingredients to your list.
7. Access your grocery list in the Reminders app. See Make a grocery list in Reminders.

Access food content offline

You can make sure you can access the Food feed, Recipe Catalog, and Saved Recipes in Offline Mode.

1. While you're online, go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap News, then tap Automatic Downloads (below News+ Offline Mode).
3. Turn on Food & Recipes.

See also

Get started with News on iPhone

Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone

Set timers in Clock on iPhone

How to subscribe to individual channels in News on iPhone

Previous
Listen to News stories

Next
Find puzzles in Apple News+

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

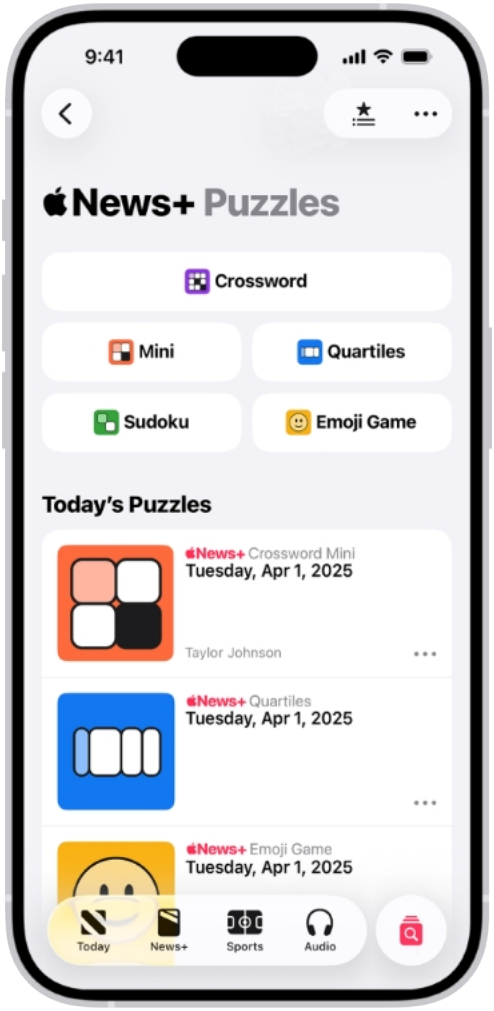
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can access daily and archived crossword, crossword mini, Quartiles, sudoku, and Emoji Game puzzles. Some puzzles may be available without a subscription.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



View the Puzzles feed

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:

- Tap , then tap Puzzles.
- Tap Today, scroll down, then tap the Puzzles group.

Follow the feed for a puzzle type

If you want quick access to a specific type of puzzle, you can follow that type.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. View the Puzzles feed, as above.
3. Tap Crossword, Mini, Quartiles, Sudoku, or Emoji Game.
4. Tap +.

A Puzzles category appears in Following, with the puzzle types appearing below. To make them favorites, tap Edit, tap ★ next to a puzzle type, then tap ✓.

Note: If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can automatically download puzzles in the Puzzles feed and puzzle type feeds to play in Offline Mode.

Choose a puzzle

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Go to one of the following areas to find a puzzle:
   - The Today feed
   - The Puzzles feed
   - The feed for a puzzle type (crossword, crossword mini, Quartiles, sudoku, or Emoji Game)
3. Tap a puzzle to open it.

Crossword and sudoku puzzles have a difficulty rating—easy, moderate, or challenging.

You can see more past puzzles in each puzzle type's complete archive. Scroll down in the puzzle type's feed, then tap › next to Archive.

Tip: To sort or filter a puzzle archive, tap .

View puzzle stats and streaks

In each puzzle feed you can find the Scoreboard. It includes:

- Statistics for each puzzle type—the number of puzzles solved, for example
- Your current streak—the number of consecutive days you solved the daily puzzle
- Your longest streak

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Choose the feed for a puzzle type, then swipe up.

Conditions that affect stats include the following:

- If you use the Reveal command to show all or a portion of a puzzle, the puzzle won't count toward your stats, and completing the puzzle won't start or continue a streak.
- Puzzles you complete on a device with iOS 17.5, iPadOS 17.5, macOS 14.5, or later count toward your stats. Any puzzles you played on older OS versions don't count toward your stats.
- After you open the News app on a device with iOS 17.5, iPadOS 17.5, macOS 14.5, or later, any daily puzzles you complete on a device with an earlier version of the OS are added to your streak. For example, if you complete Monday's crossword and Tuesday's crossword on your iPhone with iOS 17.5, and then solve Wednesday's crossword on your iPad with iPadOS 17.4, your streak is extended.
- Users in the continental U.S. and Canada must complete a puzzle within 24 hours of its publication for it to count toward a streak. Users in Alaska and Hawaii get an extra hour or two; they must complete the day's puzzle before midnight local time.
- To start or maintain a sudoku streak, solve at least one of the current day's sudoku puzzles of any difficulty level without revealing answers.

Your stats and streaks stay up to date on all your Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. Go to Settings, tap your name, then tap iCloud. Tap See All (in the Saved to iCloud section), then turn on News.

Compete with others

To compete against friends and other puzzle solvers in Game Center and the Apple Games app, you need to also turn on Game Center in News.

1. Set up your Game Center profile.

2. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
3. Tap Apps, then tap News.
4. Turn on Game Center.

Your scores appear on the leaderboard for each puzzle type in Game Center. Sudoku has a leaderboard for each difficulty level.

You can also challenge friends to solve crossword, crossword mini, sudoku, and Emoji Game puzzles. See Play together in the Apple Games app.

Share a puzzle

You can send a link to another Apple News+ subscriber so they can solve the puzzle too.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a puzzle.
3. Tap •••, tap Share, then choose Messages, Mail, or another sharing option.

Your answers aren't shown, but the following information is shared for completed puzzles:

- *Crossword, crossword mini, and sudoku:* The time it took you to solve the puzzle
- *Quartiles:* Your rank
- *Emoji Game:* The number of moves you used to solve the puzzle

---

See also

Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in News on iPhone

Solve Quartiles puzzles in News on iPhone

Play Emoji Game in News on iPhone

Solve sudoku puzzles in News on iPhone

Previous
Find recipes and food stories in Apple News+

Next
Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles

Select version:

iOS 26

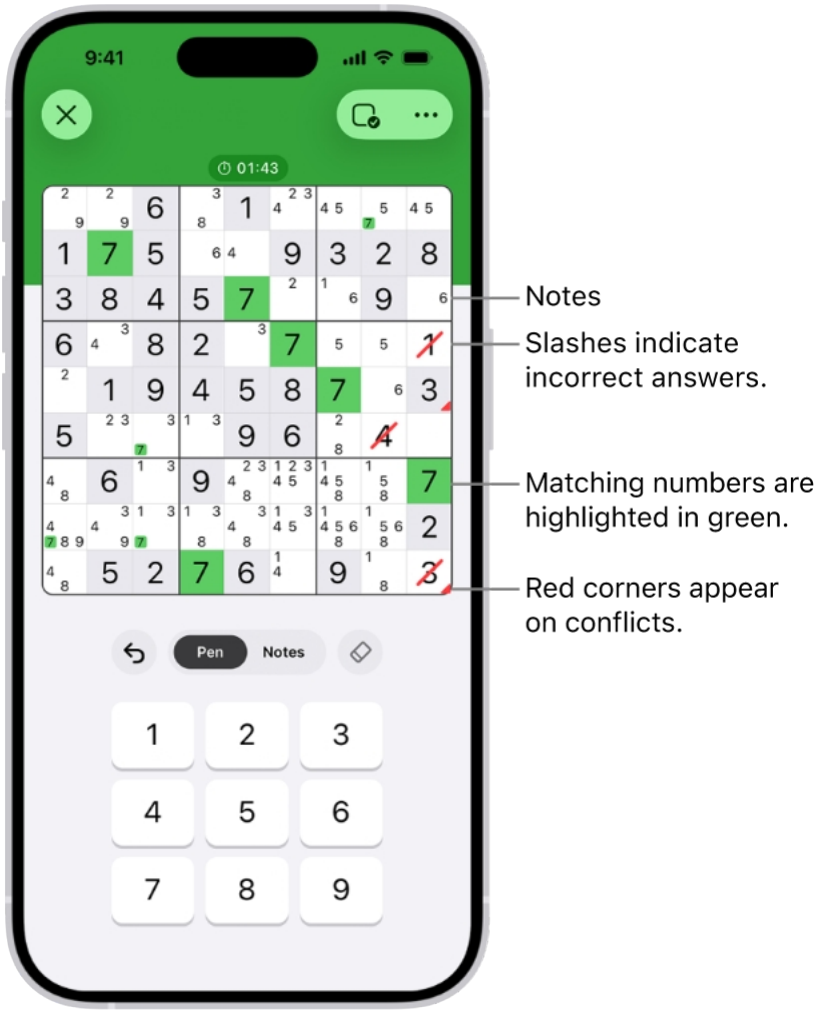
Table of Contents

Solve sudoku puzzles in News on iPhone

In sudoku puzzles, you place the numbers 1 to 9 into squares in a grid consisting of nine blocks with nine squares each, so that every number appears exactly once in each block, row, and column. Each sudoku grid comes with a few *givens*—squares already filled in.

Apple News+ subscribers get access to new sudoku puzzles every day in three difficulties: easy, moderate, and challenging. Easy puzzles include more givens, while challenging puzzles require more complex strategies to narrow down options for each empty square.

Note: Sudoku is available on devices with iOS 18.2, iPadOS 18.2, macOS 15.2, or later. Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Solve a puzzle

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Enter a number:* With the Pen tab selected, tap a square, then tap a number key near the bottom of the screen.
   - *Delete an answer:* Tap a square where you entered a number, then tap .
   - *Step back through your actions:* Tap to undo.
4. Continue entering numbers until every square is filled correctly.

   Tip: Turn on Autocheck to indicate when you successfully complete a block, row, or column. To turn off the vibrations you feel when you fill all the squares in a block, row, or column, see Change iPhone sounds and vibrations.

Track possible answers

You can keep track of which numbers might work in each square by using notes within the puzzle.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Manually enter notes:* Tap a square, tap Notes, then tap numbers to add them to the square. Tap the number again to remove it.

     When you enter an answer, any matching notes in that square's block, row, or column are removed. To turn this feature off, tap •••, tap Settings, then turn off Automatically Remove Notes.
   - *Automatically show notes:* Tap , then tap Autofill Notes. Notes representing possible numbers appear in empty squares, based on all filled squares at that moment—givens and your answers (even if incorrect). You can still add and delete notes manually. Using Autofill doesn't affect stats or streaks.

- *Play with or without notes:* Tap , then tap Show Notes or Hide Notes.

When you think a number in your notes is the right answer, you can commit it by touching and holding the number on the onscreen keypad.

Get help

If you're unsure of an answer, you can get a little help.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Highlight matching numbers:* Tap a number on the keypad, or tap any square with a number in it. (The square you select can be a given or one where you entered or revealed the answer.) Matching numbers are highlighted in answers and notes. To turn this feature on or off, tap •••, tap Settings, then tap Highlight Matching Numbers.

   - *Check for duplicated numbers:* Tap •••, tap Settings, then turn on Show Conflicts. When you enter a number that already appears in a block, row, or column, the squares' bottom-right corners are marked with red triangles.

   - *Mark incorrect answers as you enter them:* Tap , then tap Autocheck. All incorrect answers you already entered have a red slash through them. As you enter additional numbers, the app checks whether or not they're correct.

     When you turn on Autocheck inside a puzzle, it stays on for that puzzle only. To turn Autocheck on for all sudoku puzzles, tap •••, tap Settings, turn on Always Autocheck, tap , tap , then tap Autocheck (if it's not already on).

   - *Check answers:* Tap , then tap Check Square or Check Puzzle. A red slash indicates incorrect answers. Checking a square or puzzle doesn't affect stats or streaks.

   - *Identify a solvable square:* Tap , then tap Get Hint. The square having the most information available to deduce its answer is highlighted. Tap ? to learn the strategy and recommended actions, like obvious pairs and hidden triplets. Using hints doesn't affect stats or streaks.

- *Reveal answers:* Tap , tap Reveal, then tap Square or Puzzle to display the correct answer.

  Note: When you reveal all or a portion of a puzzle, the puzzle isn't counted toward stats in your Scoreboard or as part of a streak. To maintain a sudoku streak, solve at least one of the current day's sudoku puzzles of any difficulty level without revealing answers. Revealing also prevents you from undoing previous actions.

- *Review the sudoku tutorial:* Tap •••, then tap How to Play.

Restart your puzzle

If you'd like a fresh start, you can clear a puzzle's answers and reset the timer.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.
3. Tap , then tap Clear Puzzle.

Show or hide the timer

You can show or hide the timer that appears above your puzzle.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.
3. Do one of the following:

   - Tap .

   - Tap •••, tap Settings, then turn Show Timer on or off.

You don't have to solve puzzles all at once. The timer pauses while you're away.

See also

Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone

Solve Quartiles puzzles in News on iPhone

Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in News on iPhone

Table of Contents

Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in News on iPhone

Apple News+ subscribers get access to a new crossword and crossword mini puzzle every day. Crossword puzzles start out easy but get increasingly challenging as the week goes on. When you want a puzzle you can solve in next to no time, try an always-easy crossword mini puzzle.

You can navigate and solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in multiple ways. For example, you can display puzzles in the traditional grid view, or instead choose to show clues and answers in a list. You can tap squares to select words, or hide the keyboard and choose clues from a list.

You don't have to solve puzzles all at once. You can return at any time. The timer pauses while you're away.

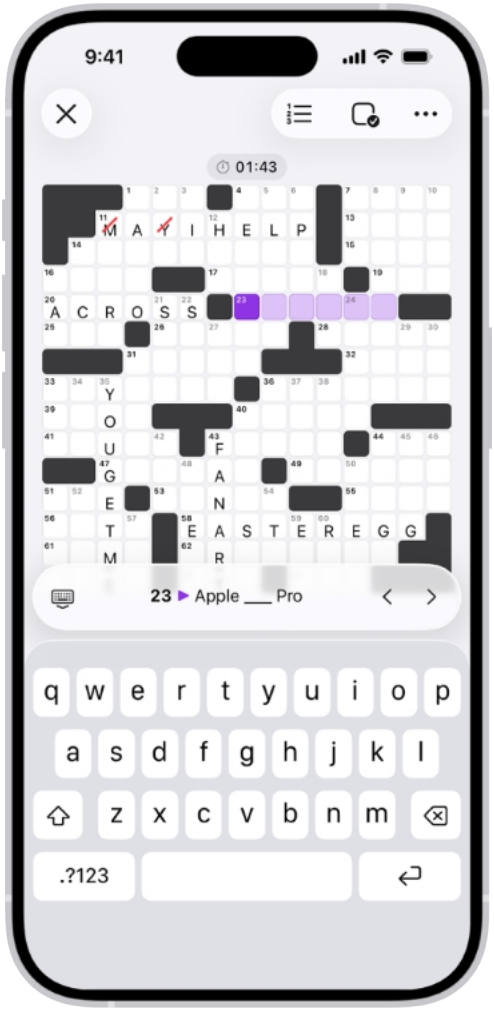
Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Solve in grid view

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap a square to show the clue below the puzzle, then use the keyboard to enter the answer. You move to other squares as you type. You can also tap < or > next to the clue to move to the previous or next clue.

   With the keyboard showing, switch from across to down, or vice versa, by tapping the selected square again or tapping the clue.

   To hide the keyboard and show a scrollable list of all the clues, tap . Tap a clue to show the keyboard and select the corresponding answer in the grid.

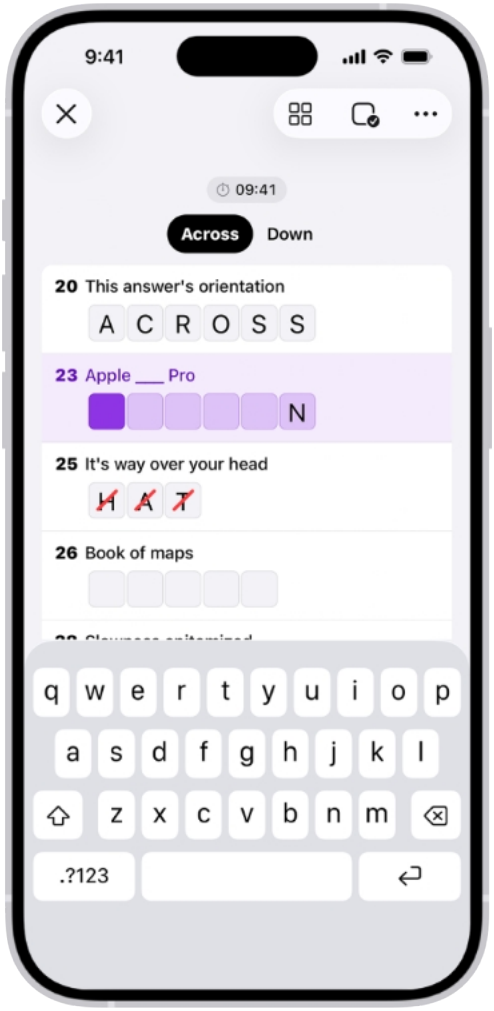


Solve in list view

You can show clues and answers in a list rather than in the traditional grid.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap .
4. Tap Across or Down to switch to the crossing set of clues.

Tap to return to grid view.



Get hints and answers

If you're unsure of an answer you entered, you can get a little help.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:

   - *Mark incorrect answers:* Tap Autocheck, Check Square, Check Word, or Check Puzzle.
   - *Reveal answers:* Tap Reveal, then tap Square, Word, or Puzzle to display the correct answer.

     Note: When you reveal all or a portion of a puzzle, it's not counted toward stats in your Scoreboard or as part of a streak.

Some puzzles have clues that reference other clues. You can highlight these connections. Tap •••, then turn on Highlight Linked Clues.

Sometimes crossword grids include circles. The letters in the circles relate to that puzzle's theme.

Always use Autocheck

When you turn on Autocheck inside a puzzle, it stays on for that puzzle only. If you want Autocheck to stay on all the time, follow these steps:

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap •••, choose Settings, turn on Always Autocheck, then tap .
4. Tap , then choose Autocheck.

   Autocheck stays on for all puzzles of that type until you turn it off.



Restart your puzzle

If you'd like a fresh start, you can clear a puzzle's answers and reset the timer.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap, then tap Clear Puzzle.

Change how you move around the puzzle

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap •••, tap Settings, then choose what happens as you enter a letter or an answer:

   - *Go to the next empty square:* Select Skip Filled Squares.
   - *Go to the next square, whether or not it's filled in:* Deselect Skip Filled Squares.
   - *Go to the next clue:* Next to "At End of Word," choose Advance If Complete or Always Advance.
   - *Don't go to the next clue:* Next to "At End of Word," choose Don't Advance.

Show or hide the timer

You can show or hide the timer that appears above your puzzle.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Do one of the following:

   - Tap .
   - Tap •••, choose Settings, then turn Show Timer on or off.

See also

Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone

Solve Quartiles puzzles in News on iPhone

Solve sudoku puzzles in News on iPhone

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

Previous
Find puzzles in Apple News+

Next
Solve Quartiles puzzles

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

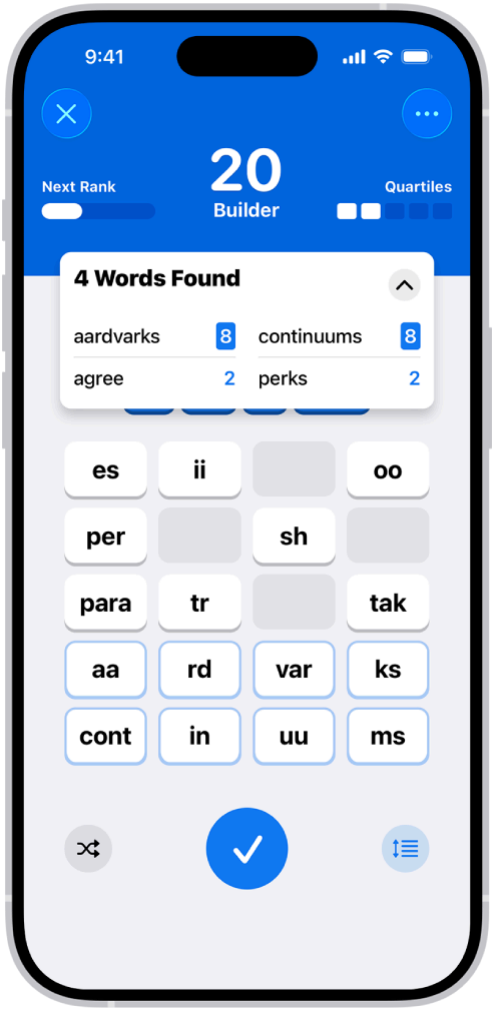
Solve Quartiles puzzles in News on iPhone

Apple News+ subscribers get access to a new Quartiles puzzle every day. Players select tiles containing two to four letters from a four-by-five grid to form words. You can use up to four tiles per word, and the more tiles you use, the more points you score.

A word formed from four tiles is called a Quartile and is worth 8 points. When you find all five Quartiles, you receive an additional 40 points.

The object of the game is to earn the 100 points necessary to reach the Expert rank. You can continue forming words and accumulating points even after you reach Expert.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Play Quartiles

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle.
3. Tap tiles to create a word, then tap to enter it.

   For example, to score a single point, tap “pear,” then tap . To score 2 points, tap “ap,” then “pear” to form the word, “appear.” Go for 4 points by tapping “ap,” “pear,” then “ance.” Complete the Quartile and score 8 points by spelling “disappearance.”

   Completed words appear in the Words Found box, and any Quartiles you find appear in groups of four tiles.

   Not all possible words qualify in Quartiles puzzles. For example, obscure and technical terms, proper nouns, and profanity never appear in the word list.
4. Do any of the following:

   - *Reorder your tiles:* After you tap the tiles to place them above the grid, you can touch and hold, then drag to reorder them.
   - *See points needed to move to the next rank:* Tap Next Rank.
   - *Clear tiles you don’t want to use:* Tap .
   - *See how many words remain:* When you reach the Expert rank, the Words Found box shows how many words you haven’t found.
   - *See each word’s points:* Tap in the Words Found box.

Tip: Tap •••, then tap How to Play to take a quick Quartiles tutorial, or tap More Puzzles to open the Quartiles puzzle feed.

Shuffle or group tiles

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle and start finding words.
3. Quartiles you find are anchored to the bottom of the grid. If you’d rather anchor them to the top of the grid, tap •••, then choose Sort Found Quartiles.
4. Tap to shuffle tiles that aren’t part of found Quartiles.

5. To shuffle all tiles in the grid, tap to turn off anchoring, then tap .

Reveal all words

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle.
3. Tap •••, then tap Reveal All Words. The words you didn't find are shown.

- *If you reveal before you reach Expert rank:* The puzzle doesn't count in your Scoreboard stats and streaks.
- *If you reveal after you reach Expert rank:* Your stats or streaks aren't affected.

See also

Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone

Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in News on iPhone

Solve sudoku puzzles in News on iPhone

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

Previous
Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles

Next
Solve sudoku puzzles

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Search for channels, topics, stories, or recipes in News on iPhone

The News app keeps track of a wide variety of channels, topics, stories, and recipes, which makes it easy to find content that interests you.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap the search field.
3. Enter any of the following:
   - The name of a channel, such as Scientific American or Washington Post
   - A topic, such as fashion, business, or politics
   - An event, such as an upcoming meteor shower
   - A recipe title, ingredient, or keyword
4. Tap.

See also

Save stories in News on iPhone

Get started with News on iPhone

Table of Contents

Save stories in News on iPhone

You can save news stories to read later. Apple News+ subscribers can read saved stories in Offline Mode.

Save a story

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. When reading a story, tap •••, then tap Save Story.

Read a saved story

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, tap Saved Stories, then tap the story.

Delete a saved story

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, tap Saved Stories, then do one of the following:

   - *Delete one story:* Swipe the story left.
   - *Remove all saved stories:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear Saved Stories.

See also

Search for channels, topics, stories, or recipes in News on iPhone

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Play Emoji Game in News on iPhone

Apple News+ subscribers can solve daily Emoji Game puzzles by completing words and phrases with emoji.

The object of this logic and word puzzle is to complete several phrases with as few moves as possible. Each emoji may be interpreted directly, through association, or in combination with other emoji. When you attempt an answer or expand a clue, it counts as a move.

Note: Emoji Game puzzles are available in American English only in the U.S. and Canada on devices using iOS 18.4, iPadOS 18.4, macOS 15.4, or later. Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



---

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open an Emoji Game puzzle.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Try an answer:* Consider the various definitions or associations for the emoji, then drag the most appropriate emoji (or group of emoji) to complete each word or phrase.

     For example, a “pear” emoji 🍐 could complete “DISAP_ _ _ _,” but interpreted as “fruit” it could complete “_ _ _ _ _ FUL.”

     Letters relating to emoji may appear nonconsecutively in an answer. For example, dragging an “earth” emoji 🌍 to “L_ _ _N _ _E ROPES” completes the phrase “learn the ropes.”

     Interpret grouped emoji as a whole. For example, a single 🐠 could mean “fish,” while 🐠🐠🐠 might mean “school.”

   - *Expand a clue:* Tap 👁. This counts as a move.

- *Reveal answers:* Tap •••, then tap Reveal. The answers you didn't find are shown. The puzzle doesn't count in your Scoreboard stats and streaks.

Tip: To take a quick Emoji Game tutorial, tap •••, then tap How to Play. Or choose More Puzzles to open the Emoji Game feed.

See also

Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone

Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in News on iPhone

Solve Quartiles puzzles in News on iPhone

Solve sudoku puzzles in News on iPhone

Previous
Solve sudoku puzzles

Next
Search for channels, topics, stories, or recipes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

How to subscribe to individual channels in News on iPhone

In addition to subscribing to Apple News+, you can subscribe to individual publications from select publishers. There are three ways to access these subscriptions in News:

- *Subscribe within News:* You can purchase a subscription directly in News. In a channel that offers subscriptions, tap the subscription button.
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher's app:* If you downloaded a publisher's app from the App Store, and subscriptions you bought as in-app purchases are also available in News, you're automatically granted access in News. See the Apple Support article Buy additional app features with in-app purchases and subscriptions.
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher:* If you purchased a subscription directly from a publisher's website or from the publisher's app on a non-Apple device, the publisher may allow you to sign in to your account in News to access your subscription there.

  To sign in, tap a story that requires a subscription to read, then tap the "Already subscribed" link. Enter the user name and password for your existing subscription.

When you subscribe to a channel, you automatically follow it, and stories from the channel appear in the Today feed.

To cancel a subscription, tap , swipe up, tap Subscriptions below the Manage heading, select the subscription, then tap Cancel Subscription.

See also

Get started with News on iPhone

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Clear your reading history in News on iPhone

In the News app, you can clear your reading history and adjust how you get reading recommendations.

Clear your history

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , tap History, tap Clear, then do any of the following:

   - *Remove your reading history:* Tap Clear History.
   - *Remove information used to recommend stories:* Tap Clear Recommendations.

     Choosing this option can change the types of channels, topics, and stories shown in the Today and other feeds in Apple News on all your Apple devices.
   - *Remove your history and recommendations:* Tap Clear All.

     Your News history and recommendation information are removed from all devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

When you clear your history, the identifier used by Apple News to report statistics to news publishers is also reset. You can reset the identifier at any time by going to Settings > Apps > News, then turning on Reset Identifier.

Recommend stories based on News app reading only

When you turn off Siri & Search for the News app, recommendations are based on your reading habits in the News app only, not in Safari and other apps.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap News.
3. Tap Siri, then turn off Show in App.

See also

Search for channels, topics, stories, or recipes in News on iPhone

How to subscribe to individual channels in News on iPhone

Previous
Save stories

Next
Subscribe to individual news channels

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

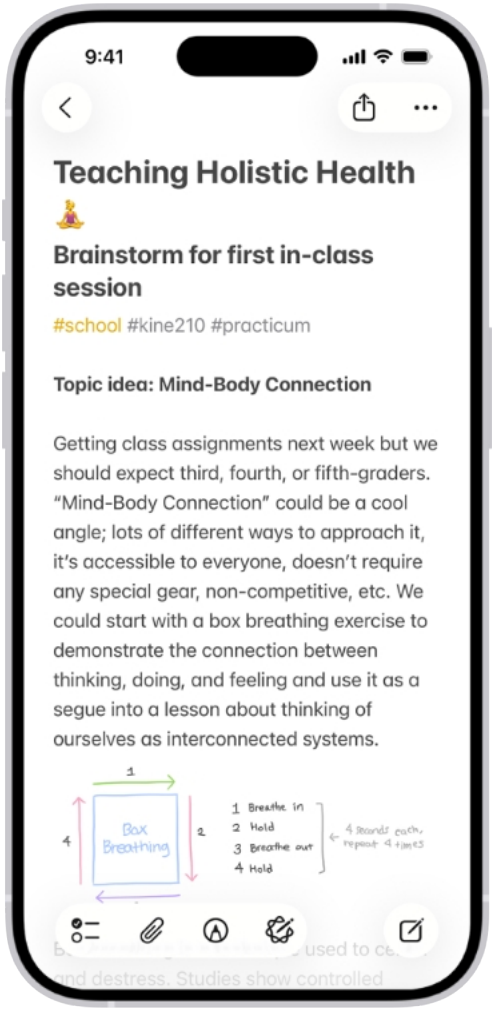
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create and format notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app to jot down quick thoughts or organize detailed information with checklists, images, web links, scanned documents, handwritten notes, and sketches. You can even organize your note with sections and headings.



Create a new note

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then enter your text.

   The first line of the note becomes the note's title.

3. To save the note, tap .

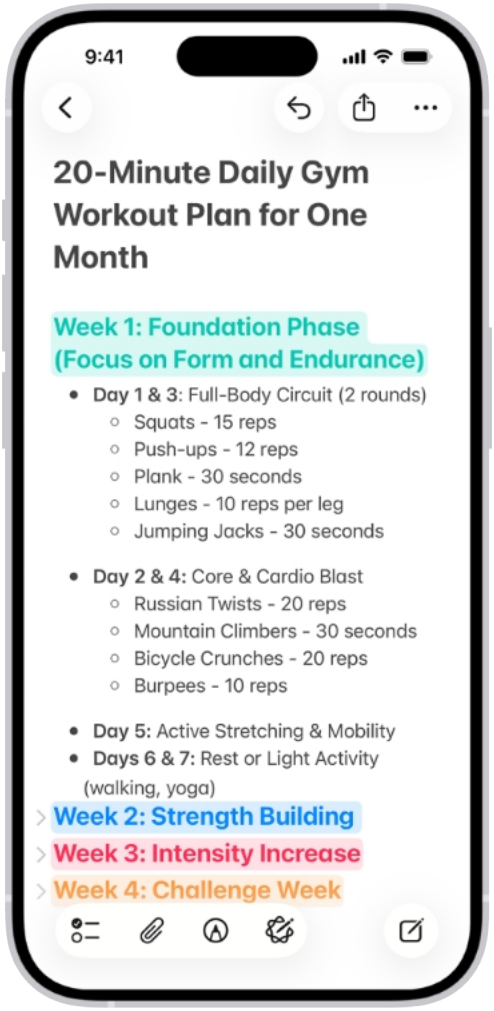
Add formatting, checklists, and tables

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. When writing a note, do any of the following:

   - *Format text:* Tap Aa, then choose a style such as Heading, bold or italic font, highlight, and more. You can also swipe over the format bar options to quickly access commonly used styles.
   - *Make a checklist:* Tap .
   - *Add a table:* Tap .

Organize a note with sections and headings

You can collapse and expand sections, making it easy to manage and outline long notes.



1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, select the text for the heading.
3. Tap Aa, then tap Heading or Subheading.
4. Add content to the section, then do any of the following:
   - *Collapse a section:* Tap ⌄.
   - *Expand a section:* Tap ›.

Use Writing Tools in Notes

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use Writing Tools to summarize selected text with a tap, proofread your work, and create different versions of the same text to help you find the right wording and tone. See Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone

Use Quick Notes on iPhone

‹ Previous
Get started with Notes

Next ›
Use Quick Notes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

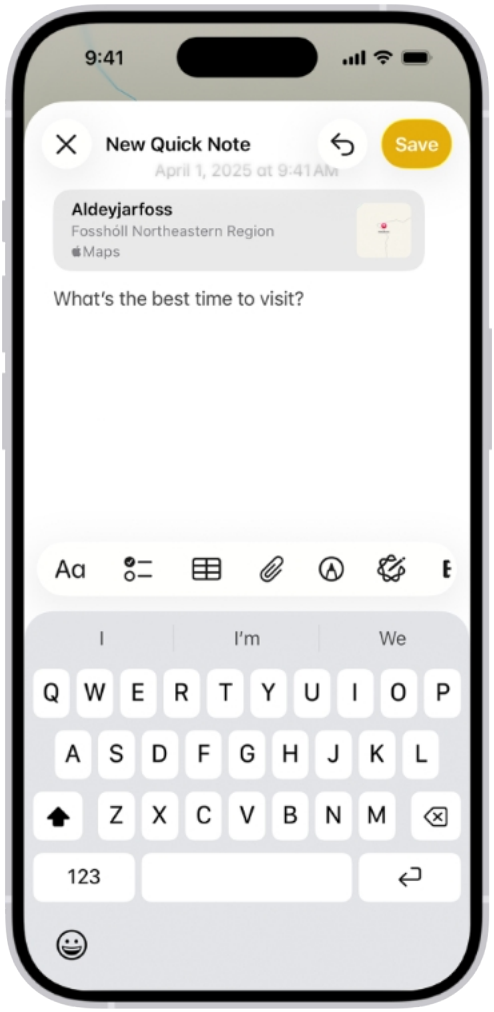
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Quick Notes on iPhone

You can use Quick Notes to jot down information over any app or screen on iPhone. Add links, images, tags, and mentions to a Quick Note so you can get to important names, numbers, and ideas easily. When you highlight text in Safari or add a link from an app, you see a Quick Note thumbnail next time you visit the site, taking you right to what you were viewing before.



You can access all your Quick Notes in the Notes app. And when you make a Quick Note on your iPhone, you can see the note on your iPad and Mac, too.

Take a Quick Note

To make a Quick Note, do any of the following:

- *From any app or screen:* Add to Control Center, then tap in Control Center. Tap Save when you're done.
- *From supported apps:* Tap, then tap Add to Quick Note. Tap Save when you're done.

View and organize Quick Notes

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Quick Notes in the folders list. You may have to tap to see your folders.

Note: You can't lock a Quick Note unless you move it to a different folder.

If you move an individual Quick Note to a different folder, it becomes a standard note and no longer appears as a Quick Note in other apps.

See also

Search through your notes on iPhone

Previous
Create and format notes

Next
Add drawings and handwriting

Helpful? Yes No

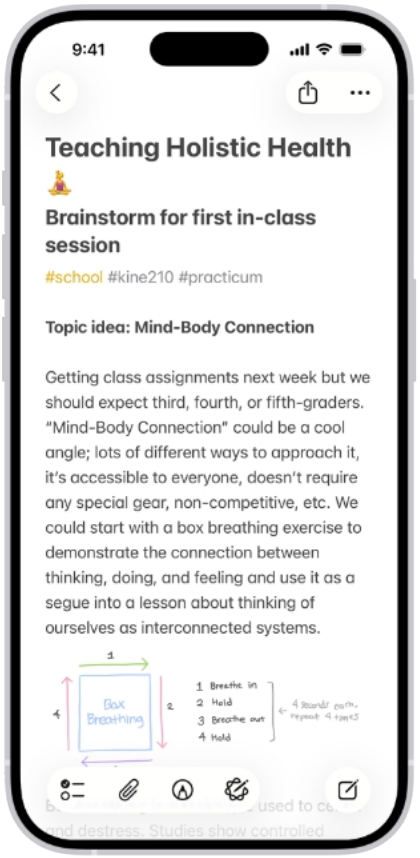
Support > iPhone User Guide > Use Quick Notes on iPhone

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get started with Notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app to quickly capture your thoughts. You can add images and sketches, solve equations, make checklists, or even scan documents. And with iCloud, your notes stay up to date on all your devices wherever you go.

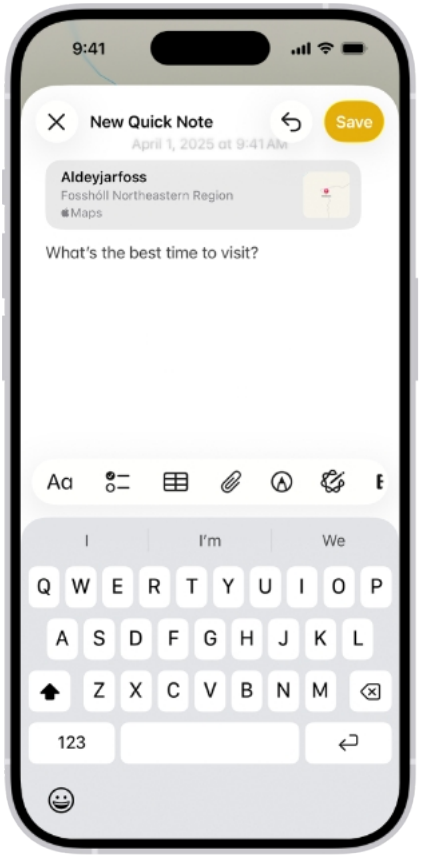


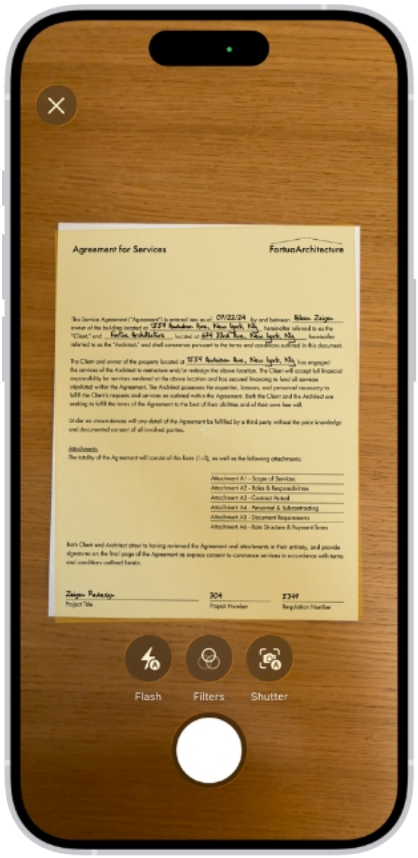
Jot it down

Tap , then enter your text.

Make quick notes anywhere

Use Quick Notes to jot down information from any app or screen. Tap , then tap New Quick Note. Add images, links, and more.



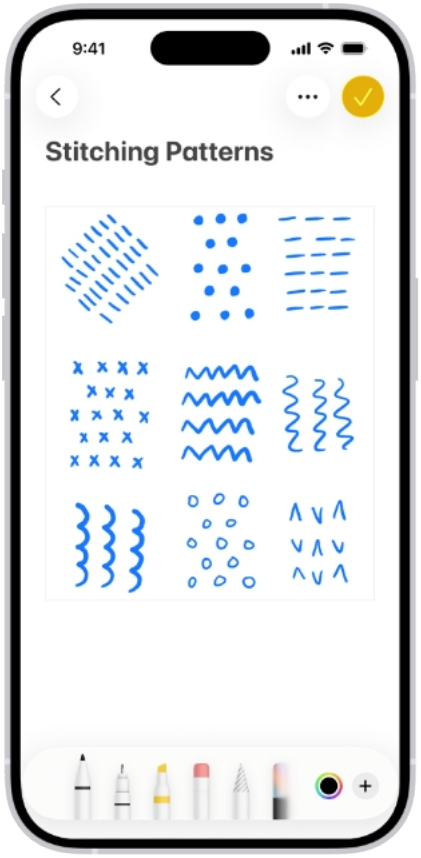


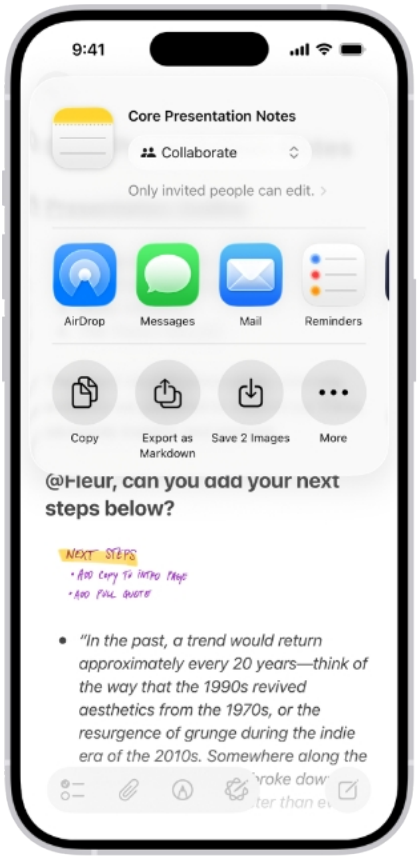
Add almost anything

You can scan documents, record audio, take photos, and more. Tap , then choose an option.

Sketch your thoughts

Tap Ⓐ, then draw or write with your finger. You can choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors and draw straight lines with the ruler.





Invite others to collaborate

Tap ⎙, then choose a sharing option. The people you share with can view or make changes to a note.

Want to learn more?

- Create and format notes on iPhone
- Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone
- Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone
- Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

The availability of Notes features may vary depending on your language and country or region.

Previous
Subscribe to individual news channels

Next
Create and format notes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Select version:

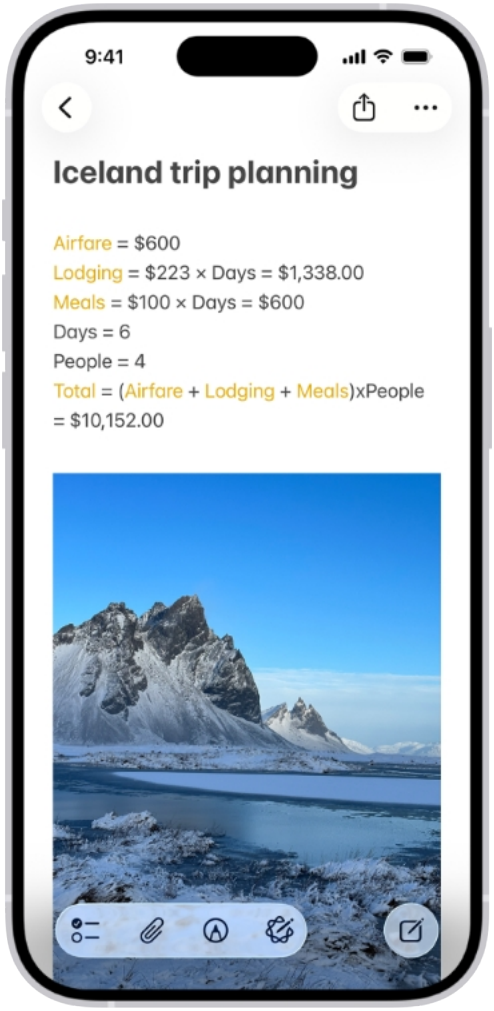
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPhone

With math in the Notes app, you can draw diagrams, solve equations, assign variables, and plot graphs. Mathematical expressions are solved inline when you write or type an equal sign.

Note: The Notes app supports math written using Western Arabic numerals and common mathematical symbols, or typed using Arabic (Eastern & Western) and Devanagari numerals and common mathematical symbols.



Add mathematical expressions to a note

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open a note, or tap to start a new note.
3. Do any of the following:

    - Type a math expression, then include an equal sign.
    - Tap Ⓐ, write a math expression horizontally, then include an equal sign.
    - Tap Ⓐ, write a stack of numbers, then draw a horizontal line below the numbers to add the numbers in the stack. Write a different symbol to the left of each digit if you want a different operation.

4. Tap the equal sign to see what Notes understood in what you wrote, then tap Solve. To correct mistakes, you can fix any of the following:

    - *Unrecognized math and unsolvable expressions:* Tap any dotted red lines to see details about the error.
    - *Ambiguous characters:* Tap any dotted blue lines to clarify what you wrote.

Create a graph

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open a note, or tap to start a new note.
3. Type or write an equation with x and y variables, with the y variable on the left side of the equation. For example, y = 5x + 3.

    You can also tap the equal sign in an equation you already wrote.

4. When you finish the equation, a menu appears. Tap Insert Graph.

    The y variable is represented on the vertical axis, and the x variable is represented on the horizontal axis.

To add another equation to the same graph, type or write a new equation, then tap Add to Existing Graph.

See also Work with graphs in Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone.

Access Math Notes created in the Calculator app

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the Folders list, tap Math Notes. You may have to tap to see your folders.

See Solve math with Math Notes in Calculator.

See also

Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone

Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone

Previous
Add drawings and handwriting

Next
Add photos, video, and more

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

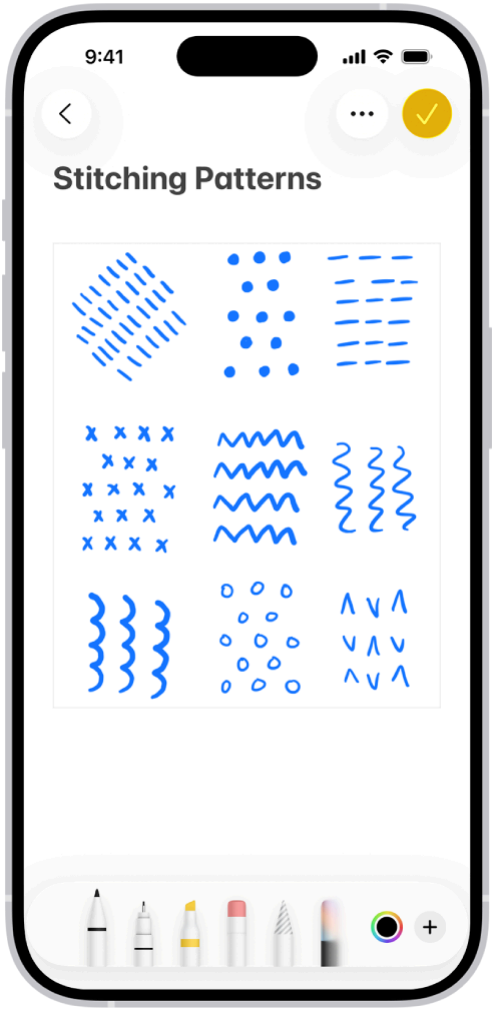
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app to draw a sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger. Choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors, and draw straight lines with the ruler.



Use drawing and handwriting tools

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap Ⓐ, then draw or write with your finger.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Change color or tools:* Use the Markup tools.

- *Adjust the handwriting area:* Drag the resize handle (on the left) up or down.

Tip: You can search handwritten text (in supported languages) in Notes. If the note doesn't have a title, the first line of handwritten text becomes the suggested title. To edit the title, scroll to the top of the note, then tap Edit.

Select and edit drawings and handwriting

With Smart Selection, you can select drawings and handwriting. You can move, copy, or delete the selection within the note. You can even paste it as typed text in another note or app.

Note: Smart Selection and handwriting transcription work if the system language of your iPhone is set to a supported language in Settings > General > Language & Region > iPhone Language. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, select drawings and handwriting with your finger using any of the following methods:

    - *With the Lasso tool:* Tap , tap , then use your finger to outline the objects you want to select.

    - *With gestures:*

        - Touch and hold, then drag to expand the selection.

        - Double-tap to select a word.

        - Triple-tap to select a sentence.

        - Drag the handles to adjust the selection as needed.
3. Choose any of the following:

    - Cut

    - Copy

    - Delete

- Duplicate
- Copy as Text
- Translate
- Insert Space Above

Work with handwritten text

iPhone can straighten your handwriting and suggest spelling corrections.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, select the handwriting.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Make your writing more level:* Tap Straighten.
   - *Correct spelling:* Tap an underlined word, then choose how you want to correct it. The fix appears in your own writing style.
   - *Move handwriting:* Touch and hold the selected text, then drag it to a new position.
4. To erase text, scratch out the writing, then hold down your finger on iPhone. (Supported when using a markup tool such as Pen, Mono line, or Marker.)

Drag images from other apps

You can drag images from other apps to a note and combine them with handwritten and drawn content. After you add an image to the drawing area, you can reposition and resize the image.

Use Image Wand

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use Image Wand in Notes to generate images based on rough sketches you create. You can also select empty space to create an image

based on words and images from the surrounding area. See Use Image Wand with Apple Intelligence.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPhone

Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone

Previous
Use Quick Notes

Next
Enter formulas and equations

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can add photos, videos, and information from other apps, such as maps, links, and documents.

Add a photo or video

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap, then choose an option.

   You can choose a photo or video from your photo library, or take a new photo or video.

Tip: To draw on a photo, tap the photo, then tap.

To save photos and videos taken in Notes to the Photos app, go to Settings > Apps > Notes, then turn on Save to Photos.

Add info from another app to a note

You can add information from another app as an attachment to a note—for example, a location in Maps, a webpage in Safari, a PDF in Files, or a screenshot.

1. In the app you're using, open the item you want to share (for example, a map or webpage).
2. Tap the •••
3. Tap Share or, then tap Notes or New Quick Note.

Change the preview size of attachments

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, you can change the preview size of the following:

   - *A single attachment:* Touch and hold the attachment, tap View As, then choose Small, Large, or Plain Link.
   - *All attachments in a note:* Tap •••, tap Attachment View, then choose Set All to Small or Set All to Large.

View all attachments in Notes

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Above the notes list, tap •••, then tap View Attachments to see thumbnails of photos, links, documents, and other attachments. (Attachments in locked notes aren't shown.)
3. To go to a note with a specific attachment, touch and hold attachment thumbnail, then tap Show in Note.

See also

Record and transcribe audio in Notes on iPhone

Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera

Previous
Enter formulas and equations

Next
Record and transcribe audio

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

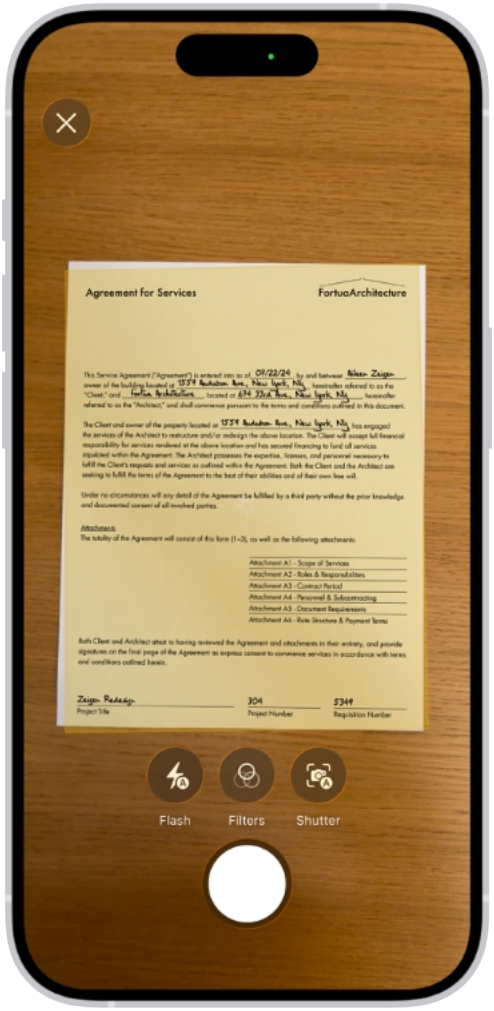
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera

In the Notes app, you can use the camera to scan text and documents.



Scan text into a note

In supported languages, you can insert scanned text using the camera.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap, then tap Scan Text.
3. Position iPhone so that the text appears within the camera frame.

4. Drag or use grab points to select text, then tap Insert.

Scan a document into a note

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap, then tap Scan Documents.
3. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen, adjust any settings such as Flash or Filters, then do one of the following:

   - *Automatic capture:* Keep iPhone steady. iPhone automatically captures the document when it detects the page boundaries. To make adjustments, tap the thumbnail, tap an option such as Adjust, make your changes, then tap.
   - *Manual capture:* Tap, then tap. Adjust the corners as needed, then tap Retake or Keep.

4. Scan additional pages, then tap when you're done.

   The document is saved as a PDF in the note.

See also

Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone

Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone

Previous
Record and transcribe audio

Next
Work with PDFs

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can attach, view, edit, and collaborate on PDFs, including documents you scanned into a note. You can also annotate or sketch directly on PDFs and scanned documents in your note. You can even preview multiple PDFs in the same note.

Attach a PDF to a note

To attach a PDF from an app such as Files or Mail, do any of the following:

- Drag the file into a note.
- Touch and hold the file, tap Share, tap Notes, then choose a note.

View and edit a PDF in a note

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the note with the PDF, tap , then do any of the following:
    - *Change the preview size:* Tap View As, then choose Small, Medium, or Large.
    - *View in full screen:* Tap Quick Look.
    - *Copy, share, rename, or delete the PDF:* Choose an action.
3. When using the Medium or Large preview size, you can also do any of the following:
    - *Show or hide thumbnails:* Tap .
    - *Zoom in and see more:* Pinch the screen or swipe right to see more pages.
    - *Edit a page:* Tap the thumbnail for the page, tap , then choose an action such as Rotate Left, Rotate Right, Filters, Crop Page, or Insert Blank Page. (Filters and Crop

Page are supported only in scanned documents.)

Search in PDFs

See Search through your notes.

Annotate a PDF in a note

- *Small preview size:* Tap the PDF to open it, then tap Ⓐ.
- *Medium and large preview sizes:* Tap Ⓐ.

See Write and draw in documents with Markup.

Collaborate with others

Get real-time updates when you collaborate on a note with other people. As you mark up a document, draw a diagram, or add a sticker, the people you share with can see the changes on their devices.

See also

Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPhone camera

Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone

Previous
Scan text and documents

Next
Add links

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Table of Contents

Add links in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can add links to webpages. You can also link to related notes, like a trip itinerary and a list of recommended restaurants. When you add street and email addresses, phone numbers, and dates, they automatically become underlined text that you can tap to take action on.

Link to a webpage

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the note where you want to insert a link, do either of the following:
   - Select the text, tap >, then tap Add Link. Enter the URL to specify the link destination. Tap .
   - Tap to place the insertion point, tap >, then Add Link. Enter the URL and the name (optional).Tap .

Link to another note using the title

You can create a link to another note using the title of the target note. If the title of the target note changes, the link text updates to the new title.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the note where you want to add a link, type “>>”, then enter the title of the target note.
3. Choose an existing note or create a new note.

To edit or remove the link, touch and hold the link, then choose an action.

Link to another note using custom link text

Instead of using the title of the target note, you can use custom link text. If the title of the target note changes, the link text doesn't change.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the note where you want to add a link, select the link text, then tap Add Link.
3. Enter the title of the target note, then choose a note.

Take action on addresses, phone numbers, dates, and more

In your notes, an underline appears below text that's recognized as a street or email address, phone number, date, or other data. Tap the underlined text to take action on it. For example, you can see a street address in Maps, compose an email, call a phone number, add a calendar event, or convert units and currency.

Note: Data detection is available when the system language of your iPhone is set to a supported language in Settings > General > Language & Region > iPhone Language. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

See also

Use Quick Notes on iPhone

Previous
Work with PDFs

Next
Search notes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Record and transcribe audio in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can record audio and have the spoken words transcribed to text. You can search the transcript, add the text to the note, or copy the text to other documents.

Note: Audio transcription is available on iPhone 12 and later when the device language is set to English, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, French, German, Japanese, Korean, Simplified Chinese, and Traditional Chinese.

Record live audio and see the transcript

You can record audio and have the spoken words transcribed in a note.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap, then tap Record Audio.
3. To start the recording, tap.
4. When you're done, tap.
5. To see the transcript, tap.

   Note: Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see, your iPhone either doesn't meet the minimum requirements or doesn't detect a supported language.

Play an audio recording and review the transcript

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. View a note with an audio recording.
3. To play the audio recording, tap.

4. To review the transcript, tap the audio recording.

   Note: Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see , your iPhone doesn't meet the minimum requirements or detect a supported language.

5. While viewing the transcript, you can do any of the following:

   - *Play the audio at a specific point:* Tap the text you want to hear.
   - *Search the transcript:* Tap , then tap Find in Transcript.
   - *Copy the transcript:* Tap , then choose Add Transcript to Note or Copy Transcript.
   - *Save or delete the audio recording:* Tap , then choose an option.

     Note: Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can summarize an audio recording. See Use Apple Intelligence in Notes on iPhone.

View transcripts of phone and FaceTime audio calls

You can record a call in the Phone or FaceTime app and view the spoken words transcribed in the Notes app (requires iOS 18.1 or later). See the following:

- Record and transcribe a call on iPhone
- Use audio call tools in FaceTime on iPhone

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone

Use Quick Notes on iPhone

Table of Contents

Organize your notes in folders on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can organize your notes into folders and pin the important notes to the top of the notes list.

Create, rename, move, or delete folders

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the folders list, do any of the following:

   - *Create a folder:* Tap , choose an account (if you have more than one), tap New Folder, then enter a name.
   - *Create a subfolder:* Touch and hold a folder, then drag it onto another folder.
   - *Rename a folder:* Touch and hold a folder, tap Rename, then enter a new name.
   - *Move a folder:* Touch and hold the folder, then drag it to a new location. The folder becomes a subfolder if you drag it onto another folder.
   - *Delete a folder:* Swipe left on the folder, then tap . Or touch and hold the folder, then tap Delete.

     If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the notes.

Pin notes

To pin an important note to the top of the notes list, do the following:

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.

2. In the notes list, touch and hold the note, then tap Pin Note. Or swipe right on the note, then tap the pin.

Sort and change the folder view

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, tap •••, then do any of the following:

   - *Change the folder view:* Choose View as Gallery or View as List.
   - *Sort the notes by title:* Tap Sort By, then choose Title.
   - *Sort the notes by date:* Tap Sort By, then choose Date Edited or Date Created.

     By default, the notes are grouped by date. To turn this off, tap •••, then tap Group By Date.
   - *Reverse the sort order:* Tap Sort By, then choose Oldest First (when sorting by date) or Descending (when sorting by title).

     To choose a default sorting method for all your folders, go to Settings > Apps > Notes, then tap Sort Notes By.

Move a note to another folder

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, swipe left on the note, then tap . Or touch and hold the note, tap Move, then choose a folder.

Delete a note

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, swipe left on the note, then tap . Or touch and hold the note, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the note.

See also

Organize your notes with tags on iPhone

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

Previous
Search notes

Next
Organize with tags

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Search through your notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can search through all your notes for typed and handwritten text, objects in images, and text in scanned documents. You can also search for text within a note.

Search for text, objects, and more in all your notes

You can search for tags, typed and handwritten text (in supported languages), objects that appear in images, and text in scanned documents.

Note: If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field, then enter what you're looking for. You can also choose a suggested search, such as "Notes with Drawings," then enter additional text to refine your search.

   If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results. The search includes handwritten text (in supported languages), photos, and scanned documents.

Search within a note or attachment for typed and handwritten text

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to search.
3. Tap •••, then tap Find in Note.
4. Tap Search, then select any of the options. To search PDFs and other attachments, select Include Attachments.

5. Enter the text you're looking for in the search field.

See also

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

Previous
Add links

Next
Organize in folders

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can easily search and filter your notes across folders using Smart Folders.

Create a Smart Folder

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , choose an account (if you have more than one), enter a name, then tap Make Into Smart Folder.
3. Choose one or more filters, then choose to include notes matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, mentions, and more.

You can also create a Smart Folder when viewing a list of tagged notes; tap •••, then tap Create Smart Folder.

Convert a folder to a Smart Folder

When viewing the folder you want to convert, tap •••, scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart Folder.

When you convert a folder, its notes are moved to the Notes folder and tagged with the name of the Smart Folder.

Note: You can't convert a shared folder, a folder with a subfolder, or a folder that contains locked notes.

Edit a Smart Folder

Do either of the following:

- In the folders list, tap Edit, then tap ••• to add, move, and rename folders.
- Touch and hold a Smart Folder, then tap Edit Smart Folder. You can change the name or filters.

See also

Organize your notes with tags on iPhone

Previous
Organize with tags

Next
Share and collaborate

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

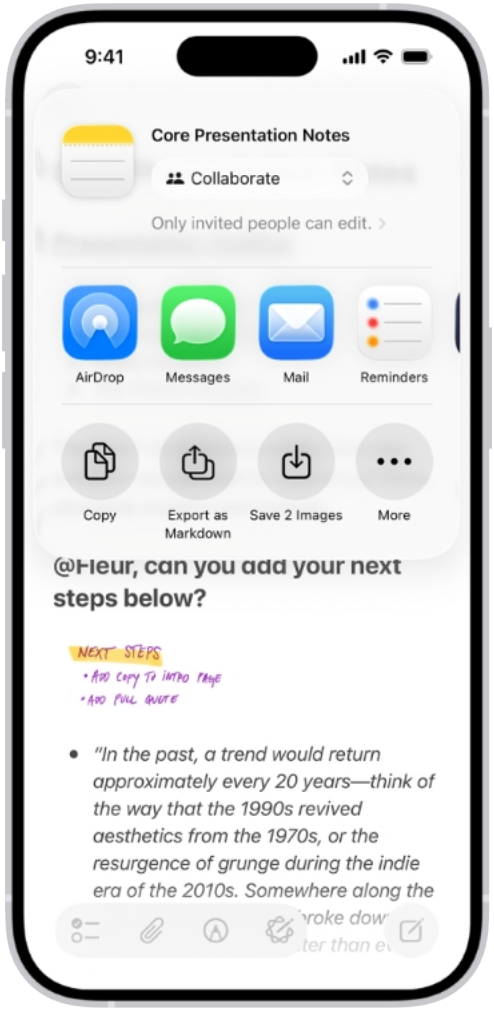
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can send a copy of a note to a friend. You can also invite people to collaborate in real time on a note or on a folder of notes in iCloud, and everyone will see the latest changes.



Share a copy of a note

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to share.

3. Tap , tap Collaborate, tap Send Copy, then choose how to send your note.

Collaborate on a note or folder of notes using iCloud

To collaborate with others, you can share a note or a folder of notes in iCloud. You can set permissions for the participants (such as allowing them to edit notes, add attachments, and create subfolders), and all the participants can see everyone's changes in real time. The participants must be signed in to their Apple Account and have Notes turned on in iCloud settings.

Note: You can't collaborate on a locked note or on a folder with locked notes.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Share a note:* Open the note you want to share, tap , then choose Collaborate.
   - *Share a folder:* Open the folder you want to share, then tap .
3. To change the access and permissions, tap "Only invited people can edit," then set any of the following:
   - *Who can access:* Choose Only invited people or Anyone with the link.
   - *Permissions:* Choose Can make changes or View only.
   - *Allow other to invite:* Turn on to allow participants to invite new people (available only when they have permission to make changes).
4. Choose Messages or Mail to send your invitation. (AirDrop isn't supported for collaboration.)

   If you send the invitation in Messages, you get activity updates in the Messages conversation when someone makes changes in the shared note. Tap the updates to go to the shared note.

See the Apple Support article If you can't share or collaborate in the Notes app on your iPhone or iPad.

View activity in a note

In the notes list, an orange dot to the left of a note title indicates the note has changed since you last looked at it.

1. Go to the Notes app 🗒️ on your iPhone.
2. Open the note, then swipe right on the note or swipe up on the Activity card to see who made changes and when.
3. To adjust how the activity is shown, tap 👤, then choose any of the following:

    - *Show Updates:* Shows changes made since you last opened the note.
    - *Show All Activity:* Shows all activity in the note.
    - *Show Highlights:* Shows names, dates, and changes made by each participant.

💡 **Tip:** To mention a participant and notify them of important updates, type an @ sign followed by their name.

View activity in a folder

1. Go to the Notes app 🗒️ on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the folder, then tap Show Folder Activity.

Change sharing settings

1. Go to the Notes app 🗒️ on your iPhone.
2. The owner of a shared note or folder can change the sharing settings by doing one of the following:

    - *Manage a shared note:* Tap 👤, then tap Manage Shared Note.
    - *Manage a shared folder:* Tap ⋯, then tap Manage Shared Folder.

3. Do any of the following:

    - *Remove participants:* Tap the participant you want to remove, then tap Remove Access.
    - *Change access and permission settings:* To change the settings for all participants, tap Share Options. To change the settings for one person, tap their name.

- *Stop sharing:* When you choose this option, the shared note or folder is deleted from the devices of the other participants.

See also

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Collaborate on a document in FaceTime on iPhone

Previous
Use Smart Folders

Next
Export or print notes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Organize your notes with tags on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your notes. You can add one or more tags to a note, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your notes across folders using the Tag Browser or Smart Folders.

Add tags to notes

When you create or edit a note, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard. A tag can only be one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to a note.

Tip: You can use your finger to write a tag in a note. Tap the underlined tag, then tap "Convert to tag."

View notes with tags

Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, do any of the following:

- *View all notes with tags:* Tap All Tags.
- *View notes with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags; to exclude a tag, tap the tag until the name has a line through it. Then choose to view notes matching any or all of the selected tags.

Rename or delete a tag

Do any of the following:

- Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.

- Tap Edit (at the top of the folders list), scroll down to the tags, then tap a tag to rename it or tap ⛔.

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Folders that use it.

See also

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

Previous
Organize in folders

Next
Use Smart Folders

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Change the Notes view on iPhone

You can change how your notes appear in the Notes app. Add lines or grids to your notes, view your notes as a list or a gallery, and see all the attachments in one place.

Show lines or grids in notes

- *In an existing note:* Tap •••, tap Lines & Grids, then choose a style.
- *In all new notes:* Go to Settings > Apps > Notes, then tap Lines & Grids.

View notes as a list or gallery

When viewing a folder of notes, tap •••, then tap View as List or View as Gallery.

View all attachments

When viewing a folder of notes, tap •••, then tap View Attachments.

See also

Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone

Change your Notes settings on iPhone

Table of Contents

Add or remove accounts in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise-managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo—and keep all your notes in one place. Your notes stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts. You can also have an On My iPhone account for notes you keep only on this device.

Note: All Notes features described in this guide are available when you use iCloud and the On My iPhone account. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Keep your notes up to date on all your devices with iCloud

Your iCloud notes—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to your Apple Account.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Turn on Notes.

Add other accounts

You can use the Notes app to manage your notes in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Tap Notes Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Do one of the following:

   - Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.

- If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add Mail Account, enter your email account information, then turn on Notes for that account.

Set up an On My iPhone account

Notes in this account appear only on your iPhone, and they're included in your iPhone backups to iCloud.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Turn on "On My iPhone" Account.

Remove an account

When you remove or delete an account, the notes in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The notes remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Google) and any other devices you had already set up.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Tap Notes Accounts, then tap the account you want to remove.
4. Do one of the following:

   - *Stop using Notes on the account:* Turn off Notes.

     You can continue to use the account for other services, such as Mail.

   - *Stop using all services on the account:* Tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).

     If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

See also

Change your Notes settings on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change your Notes settings on iPhone

In Settings, you can customize your preferences for the Notes app. Choose the default account for new notes, set a password, and more.

Customize your Notes settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Adjust any of the following:

- *Accounts:* Add or remove accounts in Notes.
- *Siri:* Allow Siri to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Notes.
- *Search:* Allow suggestions and content from Notes to appear in Search and widgets.
- *Default Account:* Choose the default account when creating notes using Siri and the Notes widget.
- *Password:* Lock important notes.
- *"On My iPhone" Account:* Turn on the On My iPhone account.
- *Mention Notifications:* Receive notifications when your name is mentioned in shared notes.
- *Language:* Choose your preferred languages (option appears when multiple languages are added).

- *Viewing:* Choose viewing options such as the sort order, lines and grids, and group notes by date.
- *App Links:* Get suggested app links.
- *Auto Convert to Tag:* Automatically change #text to a tag when typing a space.
- *Save to Photos:* Save photos and videos taken in Notes to the Photos app.
- *Access Notes from Lock Screen:* Choose Always Create New Note or Resume Last Note. Or turn it off to prevent access from the Lock Screen.

See also

Find settings on iPhone

Previous
Change the Notes view

Next
Use passwords

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Export or print notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can open a note in the Pages app and continue working. You can also export the note as a PDF or print the note.

Open a note in Pages

1. Make sure your iPhone has the latest version of Pages.
2. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
3. Open the note you want to export.
4. Tap, then tap Open in Pages.

Note: If the note is locked, you must unlock it before exporting the contents of the note to Pages. You can't edit drawings in Pages. Content such as scanned documents and PDFs appear as thumbnail images in Pages. Tags, mentions, checklists, and links to notes aren't active items in Pages. If a note is shared, the resulting Pages document isn't shared.

Export a note as a PDF

You can create a PDF of a note, using the note's current view settings for its attachments. In a note with a multipage PDF or scanned document, the exported PDF contains only the first page of the original PDF or scanned document.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to export.
3. Tap, then tap Markup.
4. Mark up the pages in the exported PDF as needed, then tap Done to save the PDF.

Export a note as a Markdown file

You can export your notes as Markdown files to integrate your notes into writing, content, and other workflows that support Markdown.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to export.
3. Tap, tap Export as Markup, then choose how to send or save your note.

Print a note

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to print.
3. Tap, then tap Print.
4. Choose the printer and other options, then tap Print.

See also

Print from iPhone

Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

Pages User Guide for iPhone

Previous
Share and collaborate

Next
Lock notes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Lock your notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can lock notes to protect your sensitive information. You can access your locked notes using your device passcode or a custom password. If you have multiple Notes accounts, you choose the locking method for each account (for example, for your iCloud account).

Lock notes with your device passcode

If you use your device passcode to access locked notes, you don't have to create and remember a separate password, which reduces the chance of losing access to your locked notes. If you use your device passcode, you can also use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes.

If you have multiple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, you use each device's passcode (or login password for a Mac) to access your locked notes on that device.

To access notes locked with a device passcode, you must be using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't be able to access the locked notes.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Tap Password.
4. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
5. Tap Use Device Passcode.
6. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

Lock notes with a custom password

Creating a custom password for locked notes can provide additional security, but if you forget the password, you may lose access to your locked notes.

You use your custom password to access your locked notes on all devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. If you have more than one iCloud account or an "On My iPhone" account, you can set a different custom password for each account.

To access notes locked with a custom password, you must be using iOS 9.3, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.11.4, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't see the notes.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Tap Password.
4. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
5. Tap Use Custom Password.
6. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

   Don't rely on Face ID or Touch ID as the only means of unlocking your notes. If you update your Face ID or Touch ID settings, or want to change your Notes password, you have to reenter your Notes password.

Important: If you forget your custom password, and you can't use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes, Apple can't help you regain access to those notes.

You can reset your custom password, but this doesn't give you access to previously locked notes. The new custom password applies to all notes you lock from now on. Go to Settings > Apps > Notes, then tap Password > Reset Password.

See the Apple Support article How to lock or unlock notes on your iPhone or iPad.

Change the locking method

If you're using a custom password, you can switch to using your device passcode. When you change your locking method, notes that you accessed with the previous method begin using the new method.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.

3. Tap Password, choose an account (if you have more than one), then tap Use Device Passcode.

Lock a note

You can only lock notes on your device and notes in iCloud. You can't lock notes that have PDF, audio, video, Keynote, Pages, or Numbers attachments; notes that sync with other accounts; or Quick Notes. You can't lock a note that's shared in iCloud.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open the note, then tap •••.
3. Tap Lock.

When a note is locked, the title remains visible in the notes list.

To remove a lock from a note, tap •••, then tap Remove.

Open your locked notes

Opening one locked note opens all your locked notes in the same account for several minutes so you can easily jump into another note or copy and paste information from other apps.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the locked note, then tap or View Note.
3. To open the note, use Face ID, Touch ID, your device passcode, or your Notes password.

To lock your notes again, do any of the following:

- Tap at the top of the screen.
- Tap Lock Now at the top of the notes list.
- Close the Notes app.
- Lock your iPhone.

See also

Table of Contents

Find your password for a website or app on iPhone

You can find your password for a website or app by searching or sorting your accounts on iPhone.

Find your password for a website or app by searching for the account

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Enter the name of the account in the search field at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the account, then tap the Password field.

Find your password for a website or app by sorting your accounts

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All.
3. Tap ↑↓ in the lower-left corner, then tap how you want to sort your accounts.
4. Locate and tap the account, then tap the Password field.

See also

Use passwords on iPhone

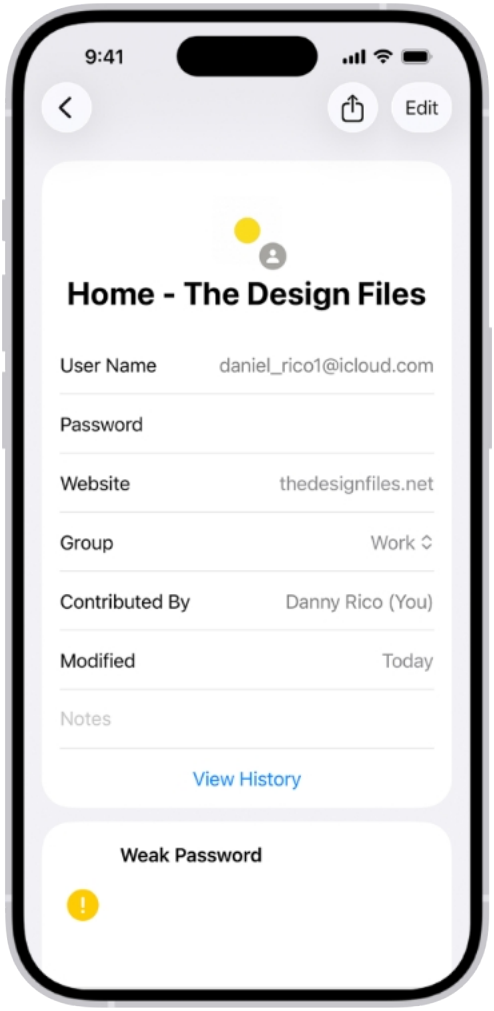
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Remove a password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

You can delete the password you use to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone.



1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap the account for the password you want to delete.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete, then tap Delete Password to confirm.

Note: This action doesn't remove the password from the website or app where you created it.

See also

Recover a password you deleted from your iPhone

Previous
Change the password for a website or app

Next
Recover a deleted password

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create a password for a website or app on iPhone

Your iPhone can generate a password to use on a website or app.

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap + in the lower-right corner.
3. Enter details about the website or app, and a user name for your account.
4. Tap password.

   A strong password is suggested for you.
5. Tap the suggested password (or enter one).
6. Tap .

You can also create a password when you sign up for services on websites and in apps. See Create a strong password for a new account.

See also

Change the password for a website or app on iPhone

Previous
Recover a deleted password

Next
Show passwords in large text

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Recover a password you deleted from your iPhone

If you delete a password from your iPhone, you have 30 days to recover the password before it's permanently deleted.

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Deleted.
3. Locate the account for the deleted password, then tap the account.
4. Tap Recover.

   If you previously shared the password with a group, choose one of the following:

   - *Recover to Group:* Resume sharing the password with the group.
   - *Recover and Stop Sharing:* Stop sharing the password with the group.

The password is added back to your iPhone and iCloud Keychain.

See also

Remove a password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Previous
Remove a password

Next
Create a password for a website or app

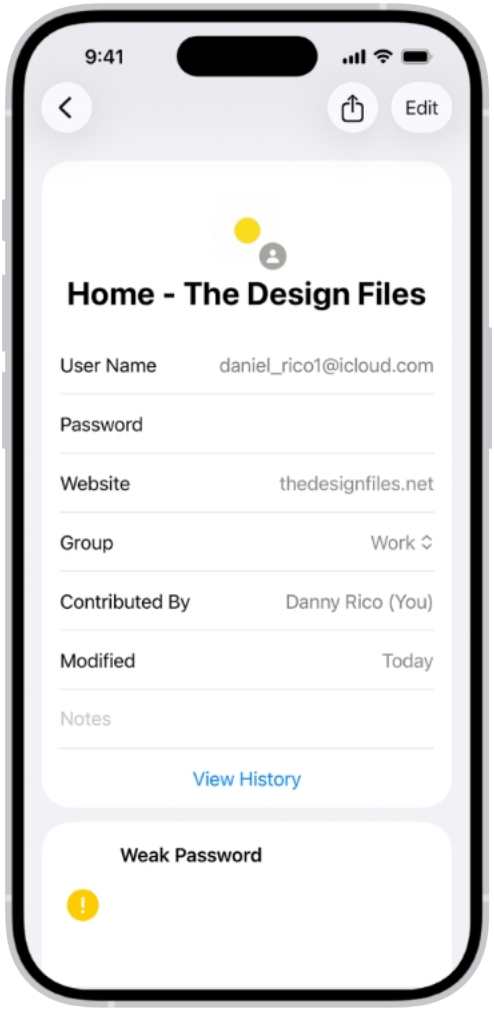
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change the password for a website or app on iPhone

You can change the password you use to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone.



1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then locate the account for the website or app.
3. Tap the account.
4. Tap Edit, tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

If the website or app allows you to upgrade to Sign in with Apple, you can take advantage of the security and convenience of that feature. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPhone to automatically create a strong password that you don't have to remember.

Note: If you get a warning on your iPhone about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone, tap All, swipe left on the account, then tap Delete.

See also

Find your password for a website or app on iPhone

Previous
Find your password for a website or app

Next
Remove a password

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

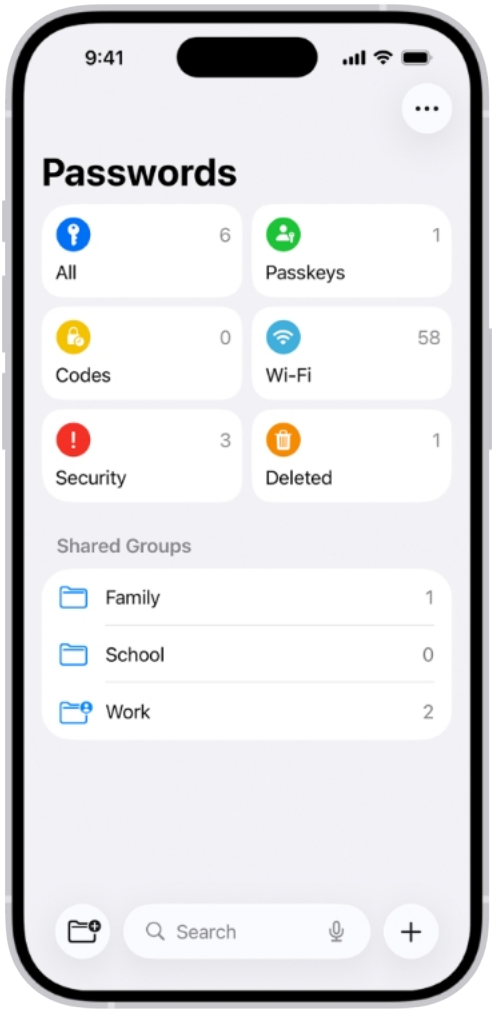
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use passwords on iPhone

In the Passwords app, you can find all your passwords, passkeys, and verification codes in one place. You can use them on all your devices where you sign in to the same Apple Account and turn on Passwords & Keychain in iCloud settings. And if you use AutoFill to sign in to websites and apps, your passwords automatically appear in Passwords.



See all your types of password credentials:

- App passwords
- Website passwords
- Sign in with Apple

- Passkeys
- Verification codes
- Wi-Fi passwords
- Passwords shared with groups

Find a password by sorting or searching. Then tap Edit to reveal the password, or to change or delete the password.

Tip: In Passwords, tap Security for recommendations to change weak passwords.

See also

Make your passwords and passkeys available across devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Fill in your passwords automatically

Find your password for a website or app on iPhone

Previous
Change Notes settings

Next
Find your password for a website or app

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

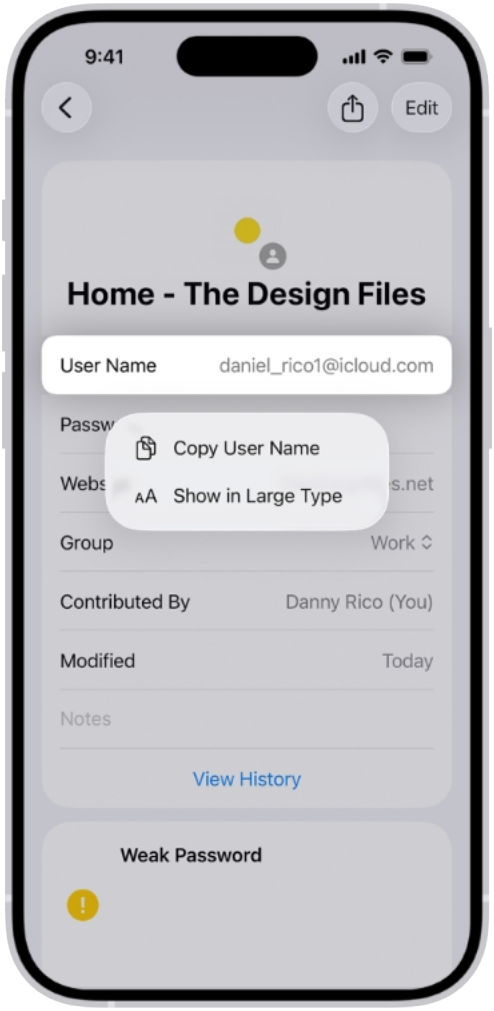
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Show user names and passwords in large text on iPhone

You can show user names, passwords, and verification codes in large text on your iPhone.



1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Touch and hold your user name, password, or verification code, then tap Show in Large Type.

See also

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Make text easier to read on iPhone

Previous
Create a password for a website or app

Next
Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Sign in with Apple on iPhone

With Sign in with Apple, you can sign in to participating websites and apps with your Apple Account. You don't need to create and remember new passwords, and your account is protected with two-factor authentication. You can share your Sign in with Apple access with family and trusted contacts.

Sign in with Apple is designed to respect your privacy. Websites and apps can ask only for your name and email address to set up your account, and Apple won't track you as you use them.

Sign in with Apple requires two-factor authentication for your Apple Account. This protects your Apple Account, your app accounts, and your app content.

Set up or upgrade an account to Sign in with Apple

When a participating website or app asks you to set up or upgrade an account, do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Some websites and apps don't request your name and email address. In this case, you simply authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Others may ask for your name and email address to set up a personalized account. When an app asks for this information, Sign in with Apple displays your name and the personal email address from your Apple Account for you to review.

To edit your name, tap it, then use the keyboard to make changes.

To specify an email address, do one of the following:

- *Use your personal email address:* Tap Share My Email.

If you have multiple email addresses associated with your Apple Account, choose the address you want.

- *Hide your email address:* Tap Hide My Email.

  This option allows you to receive email from the app without sharing your personal email address. When you choose this option, Apple creates a unique, random email address for you, and any email sent from the app to this address is forwarded to your personal address.

After you review your information and choose an email option, tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Sign in to access your account

After you set up an account with a website or app using Sign in with Apple, you typically don't need to sign in to it again on your iPhone. But if you're asked to sign in (for example, after you sign out of an account), do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Review the Apple Account that appears, then tap Continue.
3. Authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model).

Change the address used to forward email

If you chose to hide your email address when you created an account and you have more than one address associated with your Apple Account, you can change the address that receives your forwarded email.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, tap Sign-In & Security, then tap Forward To.
3. Choose a different email address, then tap .

Review or change Sign in with Apple settings for apps

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Sign in with Apple.
3. To change a setting for an app, tap it, then do any of the following:

- *Turn off forwarding email:* Tap Manage Hide My Email, tap the app, then turn off Forward To. You won't receive any further emails from the app.

- *Stop using Sign in with Apple:* Tap Delete, then tap Stop Using. You may be asked to create a new account the next time you try to sign in to the app.

Share your Sign in with Apple access

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then locate and tap the account where you use Sign in with Apple.
3. Tap Group, then tap New Group.
4. Enter a name for the group, then tap Add People.
5. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person or people you want to add, then tap Add.

   Note: To add someone to your group, they must be in your Contacts app and have a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPhone, iPad, or Mac might not support shared password groups.
6. Tap .

Sign in with Apple also works on your other devices—iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, and iPod touch—where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

To sign in from an Android app, a Windows app, or any web browser, tap Sign in with Apple, then enter your Apple Account password.

For more information, see the Apple Support article What is Sign in with Apple?.

See also

Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps on iPhone

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View your passwords and related information on iPhone

You can view and copy passwords, add notes like security question reminders, and more with the encrypted account information stored on iPhone. iCloud Keychain securely keeps this information up to date across all your approved devices.

View and copy a password for a website or app account

1. For an account that uses a password, do one of the following:
   - Ask Siri something like, "Show me my passwords." Learn how to use Siri.
   - Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
   - On a sign-in screen, tap .
2. Tap an account, then tap the Password field.
3. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Password.

Add notes for an account with a password or passkey

You can securely keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details.

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Tap Edit, tap Notes, enter your text, then tap .

To update the notes, tap Edit, then tap the Notes field.

Go to the website for an account

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Do one of the following:

   - Tap .
   - Tap the website URL, tap Copy Website, then paste the URL into the address field of your browser.

Remove an account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Swipe left on the account, tap Delete, then tap Delete Password to confirm.

   For example, you might want to remove the account for a website or app that's no longer available.

Note: This action doesn't remove the account from the website or app where you created it.

Remove a password or passkey from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete, then tap Delete Password or Delete Passkey to confirm.

Note: This action doesn't remove the password or passkey from the website or app where you created it.

See also

Find and share your Wi-Fi password on iPhone

Change weak or compromised passwords on iPhone

Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps on iPhone

Share passwords and passkeys securely with AirDrop on iPhone

Previous
Change weak or compromised passwords

Next
View password history

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find and share your Wi-Fi password on iPhone

You can find the password of the Wi-Fi network you're currently using and see all the Wi-Fi networks and passwords you've previously saved. You can share the password of the Wi-Fi network you're currently using with a nearby friend or family member.

Find a Wi-Fi password

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wi-Fi.

   If you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, its name appears at the top of the screen. You can also see all the Wi-Fi networks you've previously saved.
3. Tap a Wi-Fi network.
4. Tap the Password field.

   To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Password.

Share your Wi-Fi network password with a nearby friend or family member

1. Make sure your iPhone (the one sharing the password) is unlocked and connected to the Wi-Fi network.
2. Have your friend of family member go to Wi-Fi settings on their iPhone, iPad, or Mac, then choose the network.
3. When a message asks if you want to share your Wi-Fi password, tap Share Password.

Note: To share your Wi-Fi network password devices must be within Bluetooth and Wi-Fi range, not using Personal Hotspot, and added to each other's contacts.

You can also go to the Wi-Fi network and tap Show Network QR Code, which friends and family can scan to join the network.

See also

View your passwords and related information on iPhone

Previous
View password history

Next
Share passwords securely with AirDrop

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Change weak or compromised passwords on iPhone

When you create and store your own passwords for websites and apps, iPhone automatically identifies common weaknesses (for example, if they're easily guessed or used multiple times). iPhone can also securely monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Change a weak or compromised password

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Security.

   If an account has a weak or compromised password, a message explains the problem.
3. Tap an account.
4. Tap the Password field, then tap Copy Password, so you can paste it where it's requested—for example, when you create a new password and you're asked to enter your old password.
5. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

   If the website or app allows you to use a passkey or to upgrade to Sign in with Apple, you can take advantage of the security and convenience of those features. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPhone to automatically create a strong password that you don't have to remember.

Note: If iPhone warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone, tap All, then swipe left on the account.

Hide a security recommendation

You can hide a security recommendation so that you don't have to continue reviewing it if you're unable to address it.

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Security.
3. Tap an account, then tap Hide.

To show a security recommendation you've hidden, tap Security, tap at the top of the screen, tap an account, then tap Unhide.

Turn detection of compromised passwords on or off

iPhone can monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Passwords.
3. Turn Detect Compromised Passwords on or off.

See also

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

Previous
See websites excluded from AutoFill

Next
View your passwords and related information

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Share passwords and passkeys with people you trust on iPhone

Shared password groups are an easy and secure way to share passwords, passkeys, and Sign in with Apple credentials with your family and trusted contacts.

Anyone in the group can add passwords, passkeys, and Sign in with Apple credentials. When a shared credential changes, it changes on everyone's device.

Create a group

Note: To create a shared password group, you must be signed in to your Apple Account.

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Enter a name for the group, then tap Add People.
4. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person or people you want to add, then tap Add.

   Note: To add someone to your group, they must be in your contacts and have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac with iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPhone, iPad, or Mac might not support shared password groups.
5. Tap .
6. Select the passwords you want to share with the group, then tap Move in the top-right corner.

   If you don't want to share any passwords yet, tap Not Now in the top-left corner.

   You can notify the people you've invited to the group, and they can also see the invitation in Passwords > Group Invitations.

Your shared passwords are saved in iCloud Keychain, and you can use them like any other saved password.

You receive a notification whenever anyone else is invited to the group.

Manage a group

If you create a group, you can add or remove other members, or delete the group. Other members of the group don't have these options, but they can choose to leave at any time.

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name of your group.

   You can add or remove other members, or delete the group.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a member to the group:* Tap your name, then tap Add People.
   - *Remove a member from the group:* Tap the member's name, then tap Remove From Group.
   - *Remove a shared password or passkey from the group:* Tap Select, select the shared account with the shared password or passkey, then tap .
   - *Delete the group:* Tap your name, then tap Delete Group.
4. When you're finished making changes, tap .

Respond to an invitation to join a group

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the invitation, then tap Accept to join the group. You can also decline the invitation.

Important: Don't accept an invitation if you don't recognize the sender.

See also

Share passwords and passkeys securely with AirDrop on iPhone

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

Previous
Sign in with Apple

Next
Automatically fill in strong passwords

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps on iPhone

You can create and save passkeys to replace the passwords you use to sign in to supported websites and apps on your iPhone.

Passkeys are more secure than passwords, because they're uniquely generated for every account by your own device and are less vulnerable to phishing. And they work on all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Also, websites and apps can automatically create passkeys for your account, so you can use the passkeys the next time you sign in.

Like passwords, passkeys are encrypted and stored in your iCloud Keychain, where they aren't visible to anyone (including Apple).

Note: To use passkeys, iCloud Keychain and two-factor authentication must be turned on.

Create and save a passkey using your iPhone

You can create and save passkeys for websites and apps that support them.

Note: The instructions for creating and saving a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. Go to the sign-in screen for a supported website or app on your iPhone, and do one of the following:

   - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   - *If you already have an existing account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.

2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, tap Continue.

   Your passkey is saved.

Note: If you don’t see a passkey option, it means the website or app doesn’t currently support passkeys.

The passkeys you create are stored on your iPhone in the Passwords app.

You can have a passkey and password for the same website or app, and find them both under the same account in the Passwords app.

You can also save a passkey to a hardware security key. Tap “Other options,” “Save on another device,” or similar (if available), then follow the onscreen instructions for saving a passkey. See Use security keys to sign in to your Apple Account.

Use a passkey to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone

After you create and save a passkey for a website or app, you can use the passkey whenever you sign in.

Note: The instructions for signing in with a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. Go to a website or app on your iPhone, and tap the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Tap the suggested account name that appears at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard. If the account name doesn’t appear, or you want to use a different one, enter it.
3. Use Face ID or Touch ID to complete sign in. If you didn’t set up Face ID or Touch ID on your iPhone, enter your device passcode (the code you use to unlock your iPhone).

   The passkey you saved completes the sign-in automatically.

Use a passkey saved on your iPhone to sign in on another device

If you’re using a device not associated with your Apple Account (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend’s house) and you have your iPhone with you, you can sign in to websites or apps on that device using the passkeys you created for them.

Note: The instructions for using a passkey on another device can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the website or app and enter your user name in the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Select “Other options,” “Passkey from nearby device,” or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
3. Use your iPhone camera to scan the QR code.

   The passkey that’s saved to iCloud Keychain completes the sign-in automatically.

Create a passkey on a device that’s not your own

If you have your iPhone with you, you can create a passkey while using a device not associated with your Apple Account (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend’s house) and save it to iCloud Keychain instead of to the device you’re using to create the passkey.

Note: The instructions for creating a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the sign-in page for a supported website or app, then do one of the following:

   - *If you’re setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then enter a new username.

   - *If you already have an account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.

2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, select “Other options,” “Save on another device,” or similar (instead of Continue).

   Note: If you don’t see a passkey option, it means the website or app doesn’t currently support passkeys.

3. Select “Save a passkey on a device with a camera,” or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
4. Use your iPhone camera to scan the QR code.

   The passkey is saved to your iPhone and iCloud Keychain.

Change a passkey

You might need to create a new passkey to replace the existing one (if, for example, you previously shared it with someone to whom you no longer want to give access).

To change a passkey, follow the steps for an existing account in Create and save a passkey or Create a passkey on a device that's not your own.

Delete a passkey

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Passkeys, then tap the account for the passkey you want to delete.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete, then tap Delete Passkey to confirm.

If you delete a passkey, you can create a new one at any time.

See also

Add notes for an account with a password or passkey

Remove a password or passkey from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Apple Support article: About the security of passkeys

Previous
Show passwords in large text

Next
Sign in with Apple

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create strong passwords for many of your accounts.

iPhone stores the passwords in the Passwords app and fills them in for you automatically, so you don't have to memorize them.

Note: Instead of requiring you to sign in with passwords, participating websites and apps support these alternatives:

- *Sign in with Apple:* Lets you use your Apple Account to sign in, and limits the information shared about you. See Sign in with Apple.
- *A passkey:* Lets you use Face ID or Touch ID to securely sign in without using a password. See Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps.

Create a strong password for a new account

Depending on the website or app, creating a strong password and saving it to the Passwords app usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the new account screen for the website or app, enter a new account name.

   For supported websites and apps, iPhone suggests a unique, complex password.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Choose the suggested password:* Tap Use Strong Password.
   - *Edit the suggested password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, tap the password text field, then make your changes.
   - *Get a different strong password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, then tap the suggested password.

- *Get a strong password consisting of only numbers and letters:* Tap Other Options, then tap No Special Characters.
- *Get a strong password that's easy to type:* Tap Other Options, then tap Easy to Type.
- *Make up your own password:* Tap Other Options, then tap Choose My Own Password.

3. To copy the password so you can paste it into a Confirm Password field if asked, tap Other Options, then tap Copy Strong Password.
4. To securely add and keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details, enter them in the Notes field.

   To view the notes later, go to the Passwords app on your iPhone, tap All, then tap the account.
5. To later allow iPhone to automatically fill in the password for you, tap Yes when you're asked if you want to save the password.

Automatically fill in a saved password

Depending on the website or app, signing in with your saved password usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the sign-in screen for the website or app, tap the account name field.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap the account suggested at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard.
   - Tap , tap Other Passwords, then tap an account.

   The password is filled in. To see the password, tap .

To enter an account or password that isn't saved, tap on the sign-in screen.

Turn Password AutoFill on or off

Go to Settings > General > AutoFill & Passwords, then turn on or off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

You can automatically fill passwords from up to three passwords apps.

See also

Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone

See the websites you've excluded from automatically filling in passwords on iPhone

Previous
Share passwords

Next
See websites excluded from AutoFill

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

See the websites you've excluded from automatically filling in passwords on iPhone

When you enter a password for a website, you're asked if you want the password saved and automatically entered in the future. You can see all the websites for which you've chosen to never save the password.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Passwords.
3. Below Save Passwords, tap "Show excluded websites."

   The list includes all websites for which you've opted not to save your password.

   Tip: You can remove a website from the list. Swipe left on the website, or tap Remove All. The next time you enter your password for the website, you'll be asked if you want the password saved and automatically entered in the future.

See also

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

Previous
Automatically fill in strong passwords

Next
Change weak or compromised passwords

Table of Contents

View your password history for a website or app on iPhone

You can see the previous versions of a password, passkey, or verification code for a website or app, along with the dates they were changed. You can also clear the history of changes.

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All.
3. Locate and tap the website or app account.
4. Tap View History.

To show the password, tap >.

To remove the list of changes, tap Clear, then tap Clear to confirm.

Note: For shared passwords, the history of changes isn't shown.

See also

Change the password for a website or app on iPhone

Previous
View your passwords and related information

Next
Find and share your Wi-Fi password

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Share passwords and passkeys securely with AirDrop on iPhone

You can use AirDrop to securely share passwords and passkeys for website and app accounts with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

Note: To show someone the password you saved for a Wi-Fi network, see Find a Wi-Fi password.

Check the AirDrop requirements

Compared to sharing other types of information, AirDrop has more stringent requirements for sharing passwords and passkeys.

- iCloud Keychain must be set up on your iPhone.
- The person you're sharing with must be in your contacts list in the Contacts app, and they must be listed with the email address they use for iCloud.
- You must be in the other person's contacts list in the Contacts app, and you must be listed with the email address you use for iCloud.

Send a password or passkey

To share with someone on iPhone or iPad, ask them to open Control Center and allow AirDrop to receive items. To share with someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap the account you want to share.
3. Tap , then tap Share with AirDrop.
4. Tap the device or picture of the person you want to send the password or passkey to.

Receive a password or passkey

1. If you haven't already done so, allow AirDrop to receive items.
2. When you receive a request to accept a password or passkey from someone else, tap Accept.

The password or passkey is saved to your iPhone, where you can view its information and let iPhone automatically fill it in on the sign-in screen for the account. The password or passkey is also saved to your iCloud Keychain, so you can use it on other devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account.

See also

Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps on iPhone

Previous
Find and share your Wi-Fi password

Next
Make your passwords available on all your devices

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Table of Contents

Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges on iPhone

Some website and app sign-in screens require you to pass CAPTCHA challenges, such as recognizing letters in unusual shapes. iCloud allows you to bypass many challenges by automatically and privately verifying your iPhone and account. You can turn this bypass on or off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Turn Automatic Verification on or off.

See also

Use the built-in privacy and security protections of iPhone

Previous
Automatically fill in SMS passcodes

Next
Use two-factor authentication

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use security keys to sign in to your Apple Account on iPhone

Security Keys for your Apple Account is an optional security feature designed for people (such as celebrities, journalists, and members of government) who want extra protection from targeted attacks on their account, including phishing and social engineering scams.

A security key is a small third-party hardware device that you can connect to your iPhone and use to verify your identity when signing in to your Apple Account. The physical key replaces the six-digit verification codes normally used in two-factor authentication, which keeps this information from being intercepted or requested by an attacker.

For details about security key requirements, see the Apple Support article About security keys for your Apple Account.

Set up security keys

You need to set up at least two security keys so you can use one of them as a backup in case the other one is lost, damaged, or stolen. You can pair up to six keys with your account.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Tap Two-Factor Authentication, tap Security Keys, then tap Add Security Keys and follow the onscreen instructions.

Sign in to a device, website, or app using a security key

1. When prompted, insert your security key (if it’s an NFC key, hold or place it near the top of your iPhone).

2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Use a security key to reset your Apple Account password

If you forget your Apple Account password, you can use a security key that's paired with your account to reset it.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Sign-In & Security.

   If you aren't already signed in to your Apple Account on your iPhone, first use your paired security key to sign in.
3. Tap Change Password, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Use a security key to unlock your Apple Account

If you try unsuccessfully six times in a row to sign in to your Apple Account, or if your iPhone detects other signs of suspicious activity, you'll receive an onscreen notification that your Apple Account is locked. You can use your security key to unlock it.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Tap Unlock Account, then follow the onscreen instructions to unlock your Apple Account.
4. If you think your account might have been locked because someone else knows your password, tap Change Password and enter a new one.
5. Tap Done.

Remove security keys

You can pair up to six security keys with your Apple Account. If you reach the limit and need to pair additional keys, you can remove one or more of your paired keys. You can replace keys you've removed at any time.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Sign-In & Security.

3. Tap Security Keys.
4. To remove all keys, tap Remove All Keys, then tap Remove.

   To remove individual keys, tap the ones you want to remove, then tap Remove Key.

Note: If you remove all security keys from a device, the device reverts to using six-digit verification codes for two-factor authentication.

See also

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPhone

Keep your Apple Account secure on iPhone

Previous
Use two-factor authentication

Next
See your Mac FileVault recovery key

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Make your passwords and passkeys available across devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Use iCloud Keychain to keep your website and app passwords and passkeys, credit card information, Wi-Fi network information, and other account information up to date across all your approved devices and Mac computers. iCloud Keychain is secured with 256-bit AES encryption during storage and transmission, and its data can't be read by Apple.

iCloud Keychain can also keep the accounts you use in Mail, Contacts, Calendar, and Messages up to date across all your iPhone and iPad devices and Mac computers.

Set up iCloud Keychain

If you didn't set up iCloud Keychain when you first set up your iPhone, you can do so now.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All (next to Saved to iCloud), then tap Passwords & Keychain.
4. Turn on Sync this iPhone, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Set up iCloud Keychain on an additional device

When you turn on iCloud Keychain on an additional device, your other devices using iCloud Keychain receive a notification requesting your approval of the additional device.

On one of your other devices, approve the additional device. Your iCloud Keychain automatically begins updating on the additional device.

To approve iCloud Keychain when you don't have access to your other devices, follow the onscreen instructions to use your iCloud Security Code.

Recover your iCloud Keychain if all your devices are lost or stolen

iCloud Keychain syncs across devices to provide convenience and redundancy in case you lose a single device. If all your devices are lost and you've added a recovery contact to your Apple Account, your contact can help you recover your iCloud Keychain. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, tap Recovery Contacts, then tap Learn More.

You can also recover your iCloud Keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, which is also protected against brute-force attacks. iCloud Keychain escrows a user's keychain data with Apple without allowing Apple to read the passwords and other data it contains. Your keychain is encrypted using a strong passcode, and the escrow service provides a copy of the keychain only if a strict set of conditions is met.

To recover your keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, authenticate with your Apple Account on a new device, then respond to an SMS sent to a trusted phone number. After you authenticate and respond, you must enter the device passcode. iOS, iPadOS, and macOS allow only 10 attempts to authenticate. After several failed attempts, the record is locked and you must contact Apple Support on the Apple Support website to be granted more attempts.

See also

Apple Support article: Set up iCloud Keychain

Previous
Share passwords securely with AirDrop

Next
Automatically fill in verification codes

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

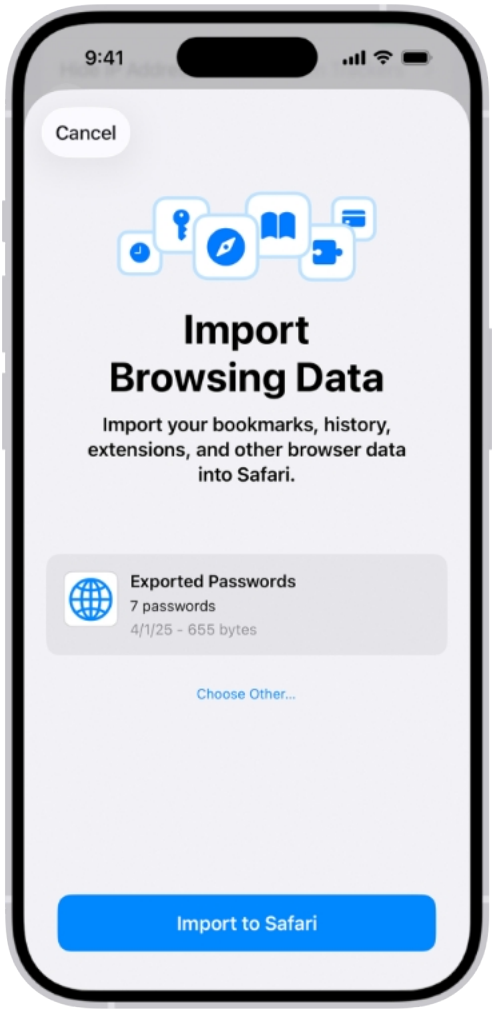
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Import passwords from another password manager into Passwords on iPhone

You can import passwords that you've exported to a CSV file from another password manager.

WARNING: Your imported passwords might not be encrypted and could be visible to anyone who can access the file.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.

3. Below History and Website Data, tap Import.
4. Tap Choose File, then choose the CSV file (or ZIP file) you exported from your other password manager.
5. Tap Import to Safari.
6. Tap Done.

   WARNING: For security, delete the file you imported from.

See also

Export passwords to another password manager on iPhone

Previous
See your Mac FileVault recovery key

Next
Export passwords

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Some websites and apps offer two-factor authentication (also known as *multifactor authentication*), which helps prevent other people from accessing your accounts even if they know your passwords. Passwords are the first authentication factor, and temporary, one-time verification codes are commonly a second factor. iPhone can automatically generate these verification codes without your reliance on SMS messages or additional apps.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by scanning a QR code

If you have another device with a screen, like a computer or iPad, you can use it to display a QR code from a website or app, then use the iPhone camera to scan the code.

1. On your other device, sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.

   A QR code appears to help you set up an authenticator app.

2. On iPhone, use the camera to scan the QR code.
3. On iPhone, select your account for the website or app.

   A verification code appears below the User Name and Password fields.

4. On your other device, enter the verification code that appears on your iPhone.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by entering a setup key

If you can’t scan a QR code from another screen, you can manually enter a setup key.

1. Sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.
2. Choose the option to manually use a setup key (or setup code or similar), then select and copy the setup key.
3. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
4. Tap All, then tap your account for the website or app.
5. Tap Edit, then tap Set Up Code.
6. Visit the website to get a setup key, enter the setup key in Passwords, then tap Use Setup Key.

   If the website offers a QR code, you can touch and hold it, then choose Add Verification in Passwords to do this automatically.

Use a verification code on a website or in an app

1. Sign in to the website or app.
2. If prompted, select the option to use an authenticator app.
3. When asked for a verification code, tap the suggestion that appears above the keyboard.

   If no suggestion appears, go to the Passwords app on your iPhone, select your account for the website or app, tap the verification code, then tap Copy Verification Code. Return to the website or app, then paste the verification code into the field.

Automatically delete one-time verification codes

One-time verification codes are filled in automatically, so you don't need to leave the website or app you're signing in to. You can choose to automatically delete the verification codes after entering them with Autofill, or keep them.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Autofill & Passwords.
3. Under Verification Codes, turn Delete After Use on or off.

See also

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPhone

Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps on iPhone

Previous
Make your passwords available on all your devices

Next
Automatically fill in SMS passcodes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone

When you sign in to some websites and apps, a one-time SMS passcode is sent to your iPhone. As a security measure, you're required to enter the code into the website or app. iPhone can detect the passcode in Messages and display it above the keyboard.

To use the passcode, tap it.

Note: With Continuity, all the SMS and MMS messages you send and receive on iPhone can also appear on your other iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices and your Mac. See the Apple Support article Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch.

See also

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPhone

Previous
Automatically fill in verification codes

Next
Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPhone

Using two-factor authentication helps prevent others from accessing your Apple Account account, even if they know your Apple Account password. When it's on, you need both your Apple Account password and a six-digit verification code to sign in to your Apple Account. The verification code is sent to the phone number associated with your Apple Account, or displayed on your trusted devices.

Note: Certain account types might not support two-factor authentication. Two-factor authentication isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of two-factor authentication for your Apple Account.

Turn on two-factor authentication

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Tap Two-Factor Authentication.
4. Enter a *trusted phone number* (the number you'll use to receive verification codes), then tap Next.

   A verification code is sent to your trusted phone number.
5. Enter the verification code on your iPhone.

   Two-factor authentication is turned on for your Apple Account, and your iPhone is now a trusted device.

Add another trusted device

After you turn on two-factor authentication on your iPhone, you can add other trusted devices to your Apple Account.

1. On the device you want to add, sign in to the same Apple Account you used to turn on two-factor authentication.
2. When prompted, enter the six-digit verification code that appears on your iPhone, another trusted device, a trusted phone number, or your Mac.
3. Enter the verification code on the new device.

   You won't be asked for a verification code again unless you sign out completely, erase your device, sign in to your Apple Account page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple Account password for security reasons.

Add or remove a trusted phone number

Adding trusted phone numbers can be useful if you want to use two-factor authentication but don't have access to the phone number you added when you turned it on.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Tap Two-Factor Authentication.
4. Do one of the following:

   - *Add a number:* Tap Add a Trusted Phone Number, then enter the phone number.
   - *Remove a number:* Tap ⛔ next to the phone number.
5. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

Trusted phone numbers don't automatically receive verification codes. If you can't access any trusted devices when setting up a new device for two-factor authentication, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" on the new device, then choose one of your trusted phone numbers to receive the verification code.

View or remove trusted devices

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name.

   A list of the devices associated with your Apple Account appears near the bottom of the screen.
3. To remove a device, tap it, then tap Remove from Account.

If you remove a trusted device, it can no longer display verification codes and its access to iCloud (and other Apple services on the device) is blocked. To add it back, use two-factor authentication to sign in to your Apple Account again.

Generate a password for an app that signs in to your Apple Account

To sign in to your Apple Account from a third-party app or service (such as an email, contacts, or calendar app) using two-factor authentication, generate an app-specific password.

1. Sign in to your Apple Account.
2. Tap App-Specific Passwords, then tap "Generate an app-specific password."
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you generate your app-specific password, enter or paste it into the password field of the app as you would normally.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Sign in to apps with your Apple Account using app-specific passwords.

See also

Two-factor authentication for your Apple Account

Previous
Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges

Next
Use security keys

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

See the FileVault recovery key for your Mac in Passwords on iPhone

When you secure the data on your Mac with FileVault, you get a recovery key during setup. If you forget the password for your Mac, you can reset your forgotten password by entering the recovery key. You can see the recovery key in Passwords on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap the name of your Mac in the list.
3. Tap the Recovery Key field.
4. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Recovery Key.

Note: You can see the recovery key for your Mac in the Passwords app on your iPhone or iPad where you're signed in to the same Apple Account as your Mac.

See also

Protect data on your Mac with FileVault

Previous
Use security keys

Next
Import passwords

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

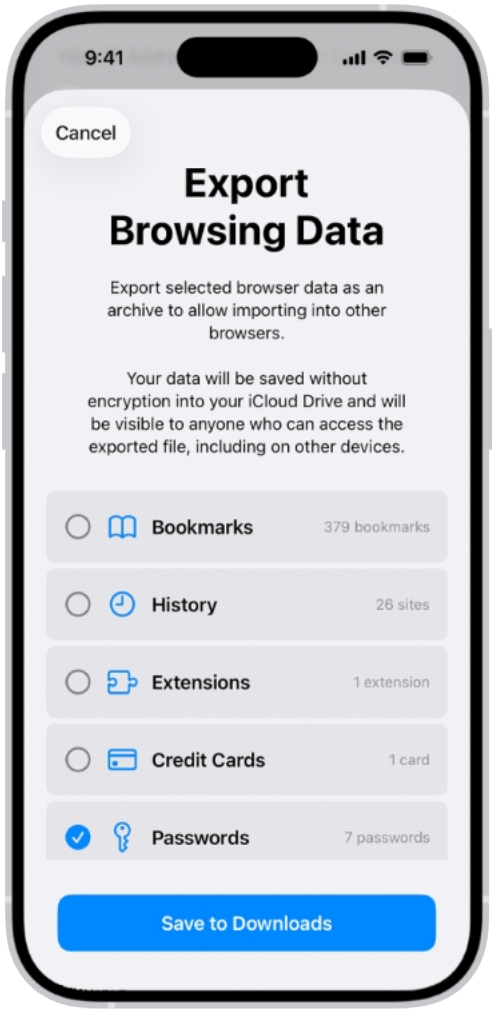
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Export passwords to another password manager on iPhone

You can export your passwords for websites and accounts to a CSV file, and then import them into another password manager.

WARNING: Your exported passwords are not encrypted and are visible to anyone who can access the file. After you import the passwords into another password manager, delete the file you exported.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.

3. Below History and Website Data, tap Export.
4. Select Passwords.

   Deselect the other choices.
5. Tap Save to Downloads.
6. Tap Done.

Note: You can't export Wi-Fi passwords, passwords that you shared with a group (unless you created the group), or Sign in with Apple account passwords.

See also

Import passwords from another password manager into Passwords on iPhone

Previous
Import passwords

Next
Make a call

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

View and delete your call history on iPhone

You can view your call history on your iPhone and delete all your recent calls or just specific calls.

Delete your call history

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Calls, Missed, Unknown Callers, or Spam.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Delete a call one at a time:* Swipe a call all the way to the left.
   - *Delete multiple calls:* Tap Edit, tap Select, tap the calls you want to delete, then tap Delete.

To recover a deleted call history, restore your iPhone from a backup you made before the data was deleted.

Get more details about your call history

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Calls or Missed. If you're in the Classic layout, you can also tap Unknown Callers.
3. Do one of the following, depending on which Phone app layout you're using:
   - *Unified layout:* Tap a call or contact.
   - *Classic layout:* Tap next to a call.

Note: Your carrier may have more information about deleted calls or older call histories.

See also

Screen and block calls on iPhone

Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone

Previous
Change your Phone settings

Next
Answer or decline incoming calls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Share screens during a phone call on iPhone

While using the Phone app on an iPhone, you can share your screen or ask to see someone else's screen. In supported apps, you can also use SharePlay to watch the latest episode of a show or listen to a new song with friends in real time.

Note: Both you and the other participant need iOS 26 or later. SharePlay may not support the sharing of some movies, TV shows, or live sports events across different countries or regions.

Share your screen or see another person's screen

You can share your screen during a phone call to bring apps, webpages, and more into a call. You can also ask to see someone else's screen, or even remotely control it.

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. During a call with just one other person, tap ⋯, then tap Screen Sharing.
3. Do one of the following:

    - *Share your screen:* Tap Share My Screen. To learn more, see Share your screen.
    - *See the other person's screen:* Tap Ask to Share Screen. To learn more about how to remotely control someone's screen, see Request remote control.

    A countdown from 3 to 1 appears on the screen before screen sharing begins.

Tip: During a one-to-one phone call, a participant who is using an iPhone can tap, draw, or write on your screen to call your attention to a specific area. The circle, drawing, or writing disappears after a few seconds.

To stop sharing your screen, tap ⋯, then tap Stop next to Screen Sharing. Ending a call also ends screen sharing.

Use SharePlay to enjoy content together

With SharePlay in the Phone app, you can stream TV shows, movies, and music in sync with friend and family while on a call together. Shared playback controls keep everyone in sync.

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. During a call, tap ⋯, then tap SharePlay.
3. Tap the supported app (like Apple Music or Apple TV), then find the show, movie, song, or other content you want to share.
4. Tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

   For everyone who has access to the content, the content starts playing at the same time.

   Note: If the shared content requires a subscription, the service may ask those who don't have access to subscribe, make a transaction, or sign up for a free trial, if available.
5. To stop sharing the content, go to the call screen, tap ⋯, then tap Stop next to SharePlay.

   The music or video also stops when you end the call.

Each person in the conversation can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward for everyone, but settings like closed-captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.

Tip: After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV.

See also

Share screens using Messages on iPhone

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

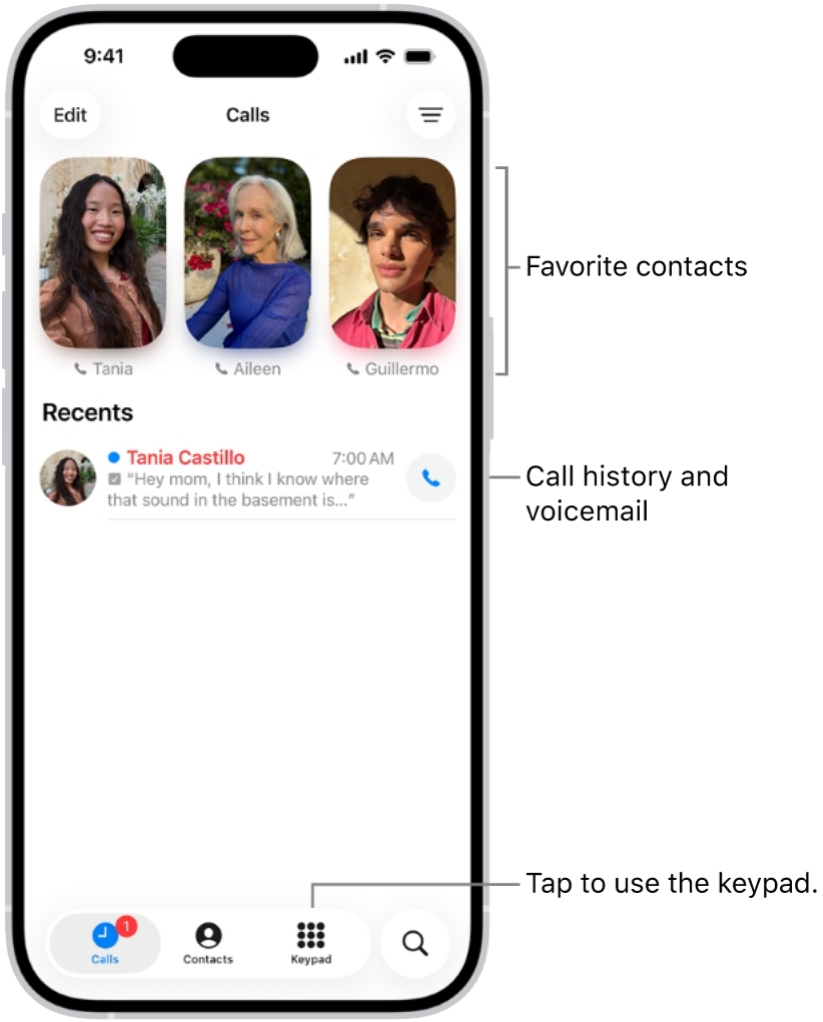
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Make a call on iPhone

There are a number of ways you can make a phone call on your iPhone: dial the number on the keypad, tap a favorite or recent call, or choose a number in your contacts list.



Dial a number

Siri: Ask Siri to call or dial a number. Speak each digit separately—for example, "four one five, five five five...." For the 800 area code in the U.S., you can say "eight hundred." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Keypad at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:

    - *Use a different line:* On models with Dual SIM, tap the line at the top, then choose a line.
    - *Enter the number using the keypad:* If you make a mistake, tap ⌫.
    - *Redial the last number:* Tap to see the last number you dialed, then tap to call that number.
    - *Paste a number you've copied:* Tap the phone number field above the keypad, then tap Paste.
    - *Enter a soft (2-second) pause:* Touch and hold the star (*) key until a comma appears.
    - *Enter a hard pause (to pause dialing until you tap the Dial button):* Touch and hold the pound (#) key until a semicolon appears.
    - *Enter a "+" for international calls:* Touch and hold the "0" key until "+" appears.
3. Tap to start the call.

To end the call, tap .

Add or remove contacts from your Favorites

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following, depending on which Phone app layout you're using:

    - *Unified layout:* Tap Calls at the bottom of the screen, tap Edit, then tap Add Favorite. If you've already added a Favorite, tap Edit, tap Edit Favorites, then tap +.
    - *Classic layout:* Tap Favorites at the bottom of the screen, then tap +.
3. Tap a contact, choose the default method of communication (for example, message, call, or video) and the preferred number, then tap .
4. To remove a contact from your Favorites, do one of the following:

- *Unified layout:* Tap Calls at the bottom of the screen, tap Edit, tap Edit Favorites, tap ➖ in the upper-left corner of the contact you want to remove, then tap ✔️.
- *Classic layout:* Tap Favorites at the bottom of the screen, then swipe their name all the way to the left.

To contact someone in your Favorites, tap their name.

Redial or return a recent call

1. Go to the Phone app 📞 on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following, depending on which Phone app layout you're using:
   - *Unified layout:* Tap Calls at the bottom of the screen, tap the name or number you want to call, tap 📞, then tap the number you want to call.

     Note: To start a call as soon as you tap a name or number in the Recents list, go to Settings ⚙️ > Apps > Phone, then turn on Tap Recents to Call.
   - *Classic layout:* Tap Recents at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name or number you want to call.
3. To get more info about a call and the caller, do one of the following:
   - *Unified layout:* Tap the name or number in the Recents list.
   - *Classic layout:* Tap ⓘ next to the name or phone number in Recents.

Call someone on your contacts list

🎙️ **Siri:** Ask Siri something like, "Call Eliza's mobile." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Phone app 📞 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Contacts at the bottom of the screen, then tap the contact you want to call.
3. Tap 📞, then tap the phone number you want to call.

On models with Dual SIM, the default voice line is used for the call unless you set a preferred line for this contact.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone

Previous
Export passwords

Next
Record and transcribe a call

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone

You can answer, silence, or decline an incoming call. If you decline a call, it goes to voicemail. You can also respond to a call with a text.

Answer a call

Do one of the following:

- Tap .
- If your iPhone is locked, drag the slider.

Tip: You can have Siri announce incoming calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

Silence a call

Press the side button or either volume button when a call is coming in.

You can still answer a silenced call until it goes to voicemail.

Note: You can also automatically screen and silence calls from unknown numbers. See Screen or silence unknown numbers.

Decline a call and send it directly to voicemail

To decline an incoming call, do one of the following:

- Press the side button twice quickly.
- Tap .
- Swipe up on the call banner.

You can also tap the call banner for more options. Do any of the following:

- Tap Voicemail to send the call to voicemail.
- Tap Message, then choose a default reply or tap Custom.

  To create your own default replies, go to Settings > Apps > Phone > Respond with Text, tap any field below Respond With, then type your own reply.

Note: In some countries or regions, declined calls are disconnected without being sent to voicemail.

Ask a caller for more information without answering a call

When you receive a call, you can type a message asking the caller for more information before deciding whether to answer.

Tap Type to Reply, then type the message you want your iPhone to say to the caller. Their reply will appear on your screen as text.

iPhone can help you avoid unwanted calls by identifying callers, blocking certain people, screening unknown callers, or sending spam callers directly to voicemail. You can also filter out unknown callers so they don't appear in your recent and missed calls. To learn more, see Block or avoid unwanted calls.

See also

While on a call on iPhone

Previous
View and delete the call history

Next
While on a call

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Set up your voicemail on iPhone

In the Phone app, Visual Voicemail and Live Voicemail show a list of your messages. You can choose which ones to play and delete without listening to all of them. A badge on the Voicemail icon indicates the number of unheard messages.

Voicemail transcription shows your messages transcribed into text. To view a transcribed voicemail, tap Voicemail in the Phone app, then tap the voicemail.

Note: Voicemail and Visual Voicemail are available from select carriers in select countries or regions.

Set up voicemail

The first time you tap Voicemail, you're asked to create a voicemail password and record your voicemail greeting.

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following, depending on which Phone app layout you're using:
   - *Unified layout:* Tap, tap Voicemails, tap Edit, then tap Edit Voicemail Greeting.
   - *Classic layout:* Tap Voicemail at the bottom of your screen, then tap Greeting.
3. Choose a greeting—Default or Custom; if you choose Custom, you can record a new greeting.

Turn on Live Voicemail

Live Voicemail lets you automatically see a real-time transcription as someone is leaving you a message. You can even pick up the call as they're leaving their voicemail.

To turn on Live Voicemail, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Turn on Live Voicemail.

   When Live Voicemail is on and a caller is sent to voicemail, your iPhone displays a transcription of the caller's voicemail as they speak. (Calling and data rates may apply.) The caller won't be able to hear you and you won't be able to hear them unless you choose to answer the call. To stop the incoming voicemail without answering or blocking the call, tap Stop.

   If your iPhone is turned off or is out of your carrier network's range, the call is sent to carrier voicemail, if available.

   If you have Silence Unknown Callers turned on, unknown numbers go directly to Live Voicemail without ringing you first. Calls identified as spam by your carrier don't go through Live Voicemail and are instead instantly declined.

Note: Live Voicemail isn't available in every region or language. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Store Voicemail in iCloud

You can store and sync your Live Voicemail and Carrier Voicemail in iCloud.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Phone & FaceTime.

See also

Check your voicemail on iPhone

Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

Previous
Have a conference or three-way call

Next
Check voicemail

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

While on a call on iPhone

When you're on a phone call on iPhone, you can switch the audio to the speaker or a Bluetooth® device.

Adjust the audio during a call

To change the volume, press the volume buttons on the side of iPhone. Or swipe down on the call banner, then do any of the following:

- *Mute:* Tap the Mute button.
- *Put the call on hold:* Touch and hold the Mute button.
- *Talk handsfree:* Tap the Audio button, then choose an audio destination.

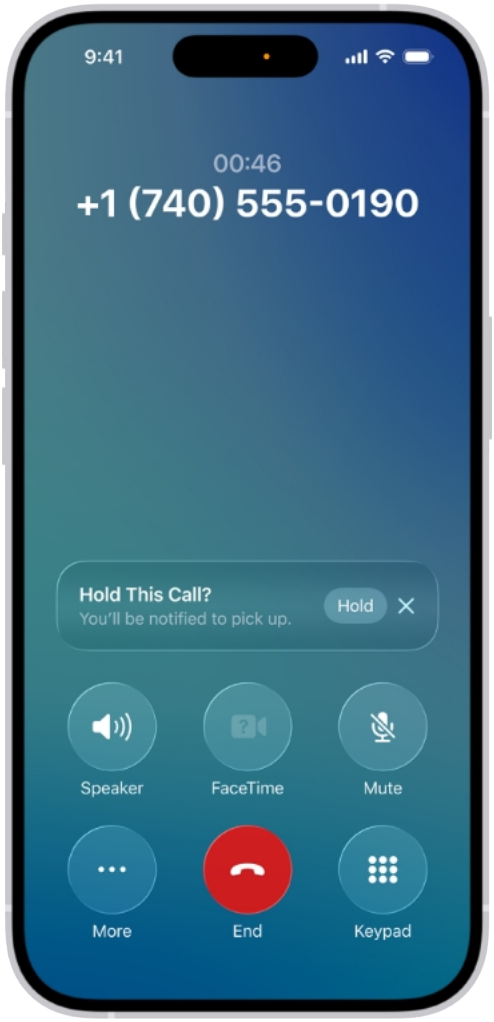
Use another app while on a call

1. Go to the Home Screen, then open the app.
2. To return to the call, tap the green call indicator at the top of the screen.

Receive a notification when you're no longer on hold

When you're placed on hold during a call, you can use Hold Assist to notify you when a live agent is available so you don't have to stay on the line.

Note: Available on iPhone 12, iPhone SE (3rd generation), or later. Hold Assist isn't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. When you're in a call and put on hold, tap ···, then tap Hold Assist.

   Important: Check your ring settings before you step away from the call. If your iPhone is on silent or Do Not Disturb, you won't hear the incoming call when an agent is available. See Silence iPhone.
3. Hold Assist will notify you when an agent is available and transcribe the part of the call you missed. Tap to rejoin the call.

Note: Phone can also automatically detect hold music and prompt you to start Hold Assist. Go to Settings > Apps > Phone, then turn on Hold Assist Detection.

Respond to a second call on the same line

If you're on a call and receive a second call, do one of the following:

- *Ignore the call and send it to voicemail:* Tap Send to Voicemail.
- *Respond to the second call with a text message:* Tap Message.

- *Set a reminder to return the call:* Tap Remind Me, then choose when you want a reminder to return the call.
- *End the first call and answer the new one:* When using a GSM network, tap End & Accept. With a CDMA network, tap End; when the second call rings back, tap Accept, or drag the slider if iPhone is locked.
- *Put the first call on hold and answer the new one:* Tap Hold & Accept.

  To switch between calls when you have a call on hold, tap Swap to switch between calls, or tap Merge Calls to talk with both parties at once. See Start a conference or three-way call.

Note: With CDMA, you can't switch between calls if the second call was outgoing, but you can merge the calls. You can't merge calls if the second call was incoming. If you end the second call or the merged call, both calls end.

On models with Dual SIM, note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that's in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that's in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.
- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

  If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

Use Live Translation

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can use it to get spoken translations during phone calls. See Translate messages, calls, and conversations.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Record and transcribe a call on iPhone

In some countries and regions, you can record a phone call when you're talking to one other person. In select regions and languages, you can view the transcript of the call in the Notes app. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Note: Call recording isn't currently available in Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Egypt, the European Union, Iran, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Morocco, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan, Qatar, Russia, Saudi Arabia, South Africa, Turkey, United Arab Emirates, and Yemen.

Record a call

Before you begin, check the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website to see if call recording is available in your language and region, and make sure the other call participant is willing to be recorded.

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Make a call.
3. During the call, tap ···, then tap Call Recording.

   Both call participants hear an audio notice that the call is being recorded.
4. To stop recording, tap ■ or just hang up.

   iPhone automatically saves call recordings to a Call Recordings folder in the Notes app.

5. To see the call in the Notes app, tap View Saved Call.

Play a recorded call

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a note in the Call Recordings folder, then tap ▶.

View a call transcript

In select region and languages, you can view the transcript of a recorded call in the Notes app. The transcript may not be available immediately—you may see a message that the transcription is in progress.

Note: Verify the accuracy of a transcription before relying on it. It might not be a perfect representation of the conversation.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a note in the Call Recordings folder, then tap .

   Note: Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see a transcript, your iPhone doesn't meet the minimum requirements or detect a supported language.

   In the transcript, the speaker of each statement is identified.
3. While viewing the transcript, you can do any of the following:

   - *Play the audio from a specific point:* Select the text you want to hear.
   - *Search the transcript:* Tap , then tap Find in Transcript.
   - *Copy the transcript:* Tap , then choose Add Transcript to Note or Copy Transcript.
   - *Save the audio recording:* Tap , tap Save Audio Files, then select where you want to save the recording.
   - *Share the audio recording:* Tap , tap Share Audio, then select how you want to share the recording.
   - *Delete the audio recording:* Tap , then tap Delete.

Note: Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.

- *View the waveform of the recording:* Tap .

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can get a summary of a phone call you record in the Phone app. See Use Apple Intelligence in Phone.

Delete a recorded call

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a note in the Call Recordings folder, tap , then tap Delete.

   Note: Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.

Turn off Call Recording

Call Recording is on by default, but you can turn it off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Call Recording, then turn off Call Recording.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Record and transcribe audio in Notes on iPhone

Previous
Make a call

Next
Change your Phone settings

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Change your Phone settings on iPhone

Change the Phone app layout

You can choose to use the Unified layout that combines your Favorites, Recents, and Voicemails in a single tab, or choose the Classic layout to sort them into separate tabs.

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calls (in the Unified layout) or Recents (in the Classic layout) at the bottom of your screen.
3. Tap , then choose one of the following:

   - *Classic:* Your favorite contacts, recent calls, and voicemails are sorted into separate tabs at the bottom of the screen.
   - *Unified:* Your favorite contacts, recent calls, and voicemails are combined and displayed in the Calls tab at the bottom of the screen.

Hide your Caller ID

You can prevent your Caller ID information from showing on outgoing calls on iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Show My Caller ID, then turn it off.

Note: If you don’t see Show My Caller ID, your carrier may not allow you to turn off your caller ID information.

Prioritize caller identification apps

There are multiple main sources of caller ID information:

- *Contacts app:* The people in your contacts app.
- *Name and Photo Sharing:* Callers who have turned on Name and Photo Sharing in Settings > [*their name*] > Personal Information.
- *Carrier Call Directory:* Caller information identified by supported carriers.
- *Business Call Identification:* Caller information identified by Apple Business Connect or your cellular provider.
- *Call Identification apps:* Any caller information identified by supported caller ID apps.

If you have additional caller identification apps installed, you can prioritize them for identifying incoming calls and reorder them at any point. For example, you might want one caller identification app to be the preferred one and the others to come into play only if the primary app can't identify the caller.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap Phone, then tap Call Blocking & Identification.
3. Tap Call Blocking & Identification, then tap Edit at the top of the screen.
4. Drag to reorder the priority of the apps.

Turn on Dial Assist

Dial assist automatically determines the correct international or local prefix when dialing.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Scroll down, then turn on Dial Assist.

See also

View and delete your call history on iPhone

Table of Contents

Request or give remote control in a Phone call on iPhone

During a one-to-one phone call on iPhone, you can remotely control someone else's screen or allow a trusted person to remotely control yours. The person controlling the screen can help with an issue or demonstrate how to use an app.

Note: Remote control is not currently available in the European Union.

Request remote control

You can request control of an iPhone screen that's being shared with you.

Note: Both you and the other participant need iOS 26 or later.

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. During a call, tap the window showing the shared screen, then tap.

   If the other participant accepts your request, you can tap or swipe to interact with the shared screen. You can also use the onscreen keyboard within apps.

Accept a remote control request

A participant can remotely control your screen if they're saved in your contacts and using an iPhone with iOS 26 or later. To help protect your data and privacy, additional restrictions may apply to remote control requests.

When you receive a remote control request notification in the Phone app on your iPhone, tap Allow.

WARNING: The person remotely controlling the screen can perform tasks on your iPhone such as opening and closing apps, changing settings, deleting items, or sending messages. Only approve remote control requests from people you trust.

The person remotely controlling the screen may be restricted from tasks such as changing your Apple Account or Face ID settings, making payments, or erasing your device. Your Face ID and Touch ID will be disabled during a remote control session.

You can still tap, swipe, or type while your screen is remotely controlled—your actions take priority over remote actions.

Decline a remote control request

When you receive a remote control request notification in the Phone app on your iPhone, tap Don't Allow. Screen sharing continues, and the other participant can still tap, draw, or write on your screen to highlight important areas.

Stop remote control

You can end remote control at any time. Do one of the following:

- *If you're allowing someone to control your screen:* Tap Stop at the bottom of the screen sharing window.
- *If you're controlling someone's screen:* Tap at the bottom of the screen sharing window.

Ending a call also ends remote control and screen sharing.

See also

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Have a conference or three-way call on iPhone

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Previous
Share screens during a phone call

Next
Have a conference or three-way call

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Have a conference or three-way call on iPhone

When you're on a phone call, you can add an additional caller or callers if you want to include more people in the conversation. If you get another incoming call, you can also respond to or ignore it.

Start a conference or three-way call

With GSM, you can set up a conference call with up to five people (depending on your carrier).

Note: Conference calls, or some aspects of conference calling, may not be available if your call is using VoLTE (Voice over LTE) or Wi-Fi Calling.

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. While on a call on iPhone, tap , tap Add People, make another call, then tap Merge Calls.

   Repeat this step to add more people to the call.
3. During the call, do any of the following:

   - *Talk privately with one person:* Tap , then tap Private next to the name of the person. Tap Merge Calls to resume the conference call.
   - *Add an incoming caller on the same line:* Tap Hold Call & Answer, then tap Merge Calls.

- *Drop one person:* Tap ⓘ next to the name of the person you want to drop, then tap End.

See also

Set up your voicemail on iPhone

Previous
Request or give remote control in a Phone call

Next
Set up voicemail

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Check your voicemail on iPhone

Use the Phone app to listen to, delete, or share your voicemail messages. You can also check your voicemail messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available.

Play, share, or delete a voicemail message

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Play the voicemail from Eliza." Learn how to use Siri.

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following, depending on which Phone app layout you're using:
   - *Unified layout:* Tap Calls, then tap a message in the Recents list. To view just your voicemail messages, tap, then tap Voicemails.
   - *Classic layout:* Tap Voicemail, then tap a message.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Play the message:* Tap ▶.

     Messages are saved until you delete them (or until your carrier erases them, if they're not stored in iCloud).
   - *Share the message:* Tap.
   - *Delete the message:* Tap.

     Important: In some countries or regions, deleted messages may be permanently erased by your carrier. Your voice messages may also be deleted if you change your SIM card.

To recover a deleted message, tap Deleted Messages, tap the message, then tap.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on and Live Voicemail is available in your region, voicemail summaries appear below each missed call, so you can instantly see who reached out and what they said. See Use Apple Intelligence in Phone.

Check your messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available

- *On your iPhone:* Tap Voicemail, then follow the instructions.
- *On another phone:* Dial your own mobile number, press * or # (depending on your carrier) to bypass your greeting, then enter your voicemail password.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

Set up your voicemail on iPhone

Previous
Set up voicemail

Next
Change voicemail greeting and settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Select ringtones and vibrations on iPhone

You can set the default ringtone and assign distinctive ringtones to certain people. You can also use haptic vibrations and turn the ringer off.

Change the alert tones and vibrations

iPhone comes with ringtones that play for incoming calls. You can also purchase more ringtones in the iTunes Store.

You can change the sounds and haptics that play when you get a call, text, voicemail, email, reminder, or other type of notification.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics, then do any of the following:
   - *Set the volume for all sounds:* Drag the slider below Ringtone and Alerts.
   - *Set the haptics behavior for ringtones and alerts:* Tap Haptics, then choose when you want your iPhone to vibrate when it rings or receives an alert.
   - *Choose a ringtone for incoming calls:* Tap Ringtone, then choose a tone.
   - *Choose a tone for incoming text messages:* Tap Text Tone, then choose a tone.
3. To choose a haptic pattern for incoming calls or text messages, tap Ringtone or Text Tone in the Sounds & Haptics menu, tap Haptics, then do one of the following:
   - Choose a haptic pattern (scroll to see them all).
   - Tap Create New Vibration to create your own.

See Change iPhone sounds and vibrations.

Assign a different ringtone to a contact

1. Open the Contacts app on your iPhone.
2. Select a contact, tap Edit, tap Ringtone, then choose a ringtone.

Turn the ringer on or off

- On supported models: Open Control Center, then tap 🔔.

  You can also configure the Action Button to turn the ringer on or off. See Customize the Action button.

- On other models: Flip the Ring/Silent switch to turn Silent mode on or off.

Clock alarms still play when Silent mode is turned on.

To temporarily silence incoming calls, turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone.

See also

Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

Previous
Change voicemail greeting and settings

Next
Make calls using Wi-Fi

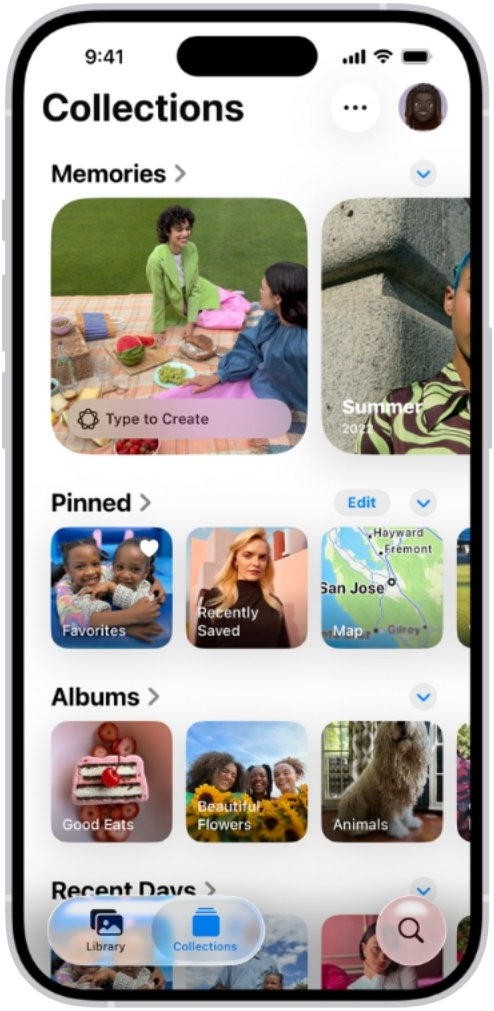
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Browse your photo collections on iPhone

Your photos and videos are organized into curated collections such as Memories, Favorites, People & Pets, and more.



View your collections

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe up to view the collections.

   Under each collection heading, swipe left or right to see different collections. Or tap the heading to see all the collections in that category.

4. Tap a collection to open it.

Change the collections display

Collections can be viewed with larger or smaller image tiles, or without any images at all. You can also change the order collections appear on the screen.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap at the top of the screen, then do any of the following:

    - *Enlarge the size of the collection tiles:* Tap .
    - *Reduce the size of the collection tiles:* Tap .
    - *Show the default display:* Tap .
    - *Hide the collection tiles:* Tap Collapse All.
    - *Reorder collections:* Tap Reorder, touch and drag a collection into a new position, then tap .
    - *Choose which library to include in collections (if you're part of an iCloud Shared Photo Library):* Tap Both Libraries, Personal Library, or Shared Library.

Tip: If you want to hide the image tiles for a single collection, tap . Tap to stop hiding them.

By default, videos and Live Photos automatically play when you tap Collections. To turn autoplay off, tap your account in the top-right corner, then turn off Auto-Play Motion and Loop Videos.

Reorder collections

You can change the order of collections so the ones you go to most frequently appear first. For example, if you frequently view your Shared Albums, you can move them above other collections.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.

3. Scroll to the bottom of the screen, tap Reorder, then drag a collection into a new position.
4. Tap Done.

You can also tap ···, then tap Reorder.

Pin collections and albums

You can choose which collections and albums appear below the Pinned heading at the top of the screen. Pin the collections and albums you view most often, so they're easy to find.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Edit (to the right of the Pinned heading), then do any of the following:

   - *Remove a pinned collection:* Tap ⊖, then tap Delete.
   - *Pin a collection:* Tap the suggested collection you want to add, or scroll down and tap Any Collection or Album to see more options.
   - *Reorder pinned collections:* Touch and hold a pinned collection, then drag it to a new position.

   Note: Collections with ⊖ next to them are currently in your pinned collections. Collections with ⊕ next to them are not yet pinned.
4. When you're done, tap ✕.

Tip: To quickly add a collection to Pinned, touch and hold it, then tap Pin. To remove a collection from Pinned, touch and hold it, then tap Unpin.

See also

View your memories in Photos on iPhone

Create and work with photo albums on iPhone

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

Table of Contents

Set up call forwarding on iPhone

You can set up call forwarding on iPhone if you have cellular service through a GSM network.

If you have cellular service through a CDMA network, contact your carrier for information about setting up call forwarding.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Call Forwarding, then turn on Call Forwarding.

   The Call Forwarding icon appears in the status bar when call forwarding is on.
4. On models with Dual SIM, choose a line.
5. Tap Forward To, enter the number you want to redirect to, then tap Back.

You must be in range of the cellular network when you set iPhone to forward calls, or calls won't be forwarded.

If your carrier supports conditional call forwarding when the line is busy or not in service, contact them for setup information.

See also

Set up call waiting on iPhone

Table of Contents

Make calls using Wi-Fi on iPhone

When your iPhone has a low cellular signal, use Wi-Fi Calling to make and receive calls through a Wi-Fi network.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Cellular, then—if your iPhone has a dual SIM—choose a line (below SIMs).
3. Tap Wi-Fi Calling, then turn on Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone.
4. Enter or confirm your address for emergency services.

   Note: Emergency calls on your iPhone are routed through cellular service when available. In the event that cellular service isn't available, and you have enabled Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls may be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information may be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers may use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location. When connected to Wi-Fi calling, your iPhone may not receive emergency alerts.

When Wi-Fi Calling is available, "Wi-Fi" is displayed after your carrier name in the status bar, and all your calls go through Wi-Fi.

Note: If the Wi-Fi connection is lost when you make calls, calls switch automatically to your carrier's cellular network using VoLTE (Voice over LTE), if available and turned on. See View or change cellular data settings. (VoLTE calls also switch to Wi-Fi when a Wi-Fi connection becomes available.) Contact your carrier for feature availability.

See also

Set up call forwarding on iPhone

Table of Contents

Browse your photo library on iPhone

Browse the library in the Photos app to view your entire collection of photos and videos.



View your library

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Make sure the Library tab is selected in the bottom-left corner.
3. Swipe down to browse photos, then tap Years or Months to go to a specific time in your library.

Change the library display

You can change the size and appearance of the photo thumbnails in the library photo grid, and manage the content displayed in your library.

Tip: While you're viewing the library, pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Tap View Options, then do any of the following:

    - *Enlarge the size of the photo and video thumbnails:* Tap Zoom In.
    - *Reduce the size of the photo and video thumbnails, to see more at the same time*: Tap Zoom Out.
    - *View each photo or video thumbnail in the dimension it was captured in*: Tap Aspect Ration Grid. To return to square thumbnails, tap Square Photo Grid.
    - *Hide screenshots:* Tap Screenshots.
    - *Hide photos and videos shared with you in Messages:* Tap Shared with You.
    - *Hide the thumbnail badge on items in your iCloud Shared Photo Library:* Tap Shared Library Badge
    - *Hide photos and videos you manually added from your Mac:* Tap From My Mac.

To make more customizations to the content shown in your photo library, see Filter and sort the photo library.

See also

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

Locate photos and videos by media type on iPhone

Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

Table of Contents

Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

You can change your voicemail greeting, password, and alert sounds.

Change your voicemail greeting

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following, depending on which Phone app layout you're using:
   - *Unified layout:* Tap Calls, tap Edit, then tap Edit Voicemail Greeting.
   - *Classic layout:* Tap Voicemail, then tap Greeting.
3. Tap Custom, then tap Record (not supported by all carriers on in all countries and regions).

Change your voicemail password

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Change Voicemail Password, then enter the new password.

Change your voicemail alert sound

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics, then tap New Voicemail.

3. Tap a new alert sound from the list, or tap Tone Store to purchase one.

Note: To change your Contact Photo & Poster, see Add or edit your photo and poster.

See also

Select ringtones and vibrations on iPhone

Set up your voicemail on iPhone

Previous
Check voicemail

Next
Select ringtones and vibrations

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set up call waiting on iPhone

You can set up call waiting on iPhone if you have cellular service through a GSM network.

If you have cellular service through a CDMA network, contact your carrier for information about setting up call waiting.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Call Waiting, then turn on Call Waiting.

   If you're on a call and call waiting is turned off, incoming calls go directly to voicemail.

   On models with Dual SIM, call waiting works only for incoming calls on the same line, unless the other line has Wi-Fi Calling turned on and a data connection is available. See Set up cellular service on iPhone.

See also

Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

Set up call forwarding on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get started with Photos on iPhone

Use Photos on your iPhone to find your photos, enjoy your memories, and share your best shots. Here's how to get started.

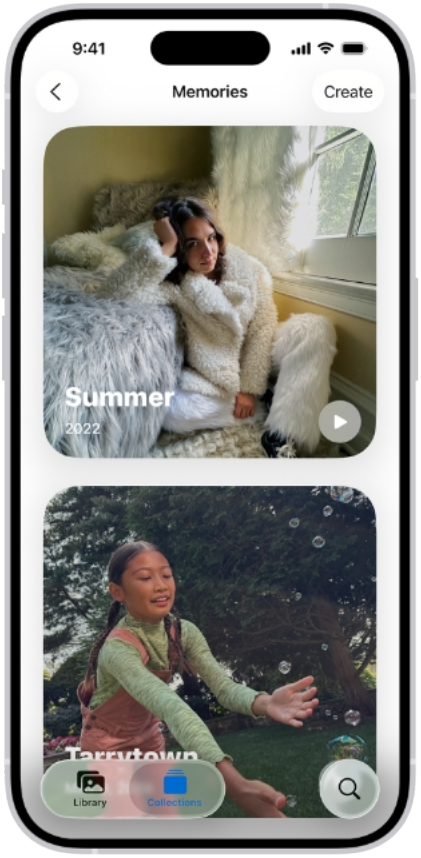


Browse your photos

To get started viewing your photos and videos, go to the Photos app. The Library tab shows all your photos organized by date. To view collections of photos—like Albums, Recent Days, People & Pets, and more—tap the Collections tab.

Enjoy your memories

Relive your favorite memories with personalized collections of photos and videos that are set to music and play like a movie. Tap Collections, tap Memories, then tap a memory. Each memory features photos from your library curated around a theme—like a person, pet, place, event, or activity.





Edit your photos

To make your photos stand out, adjust light and color, crop, rotate, add a filter, and more. Open a photo or video, then tap to start editing.

Share your photos

Open a photo or video, tap , then choose a sharing option like Mail, Messages, or AirDrop. To share all the photos and videos in a collection, tap , then tap Share.



Want to learn more?

- Browse your photo library on iPhone
- Browse your photo collections on iPhone
- View your memories in Photos on iPhone
- Share photos and videos on iPhone
- Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Screen and block calls

Next
Browse your photo library

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Screen and block calls on iPhone

On iPhone you can block specific callers and you can change your setting to automatically identify, screen, filter, and block unknown and spam calls.

Turn on call identification

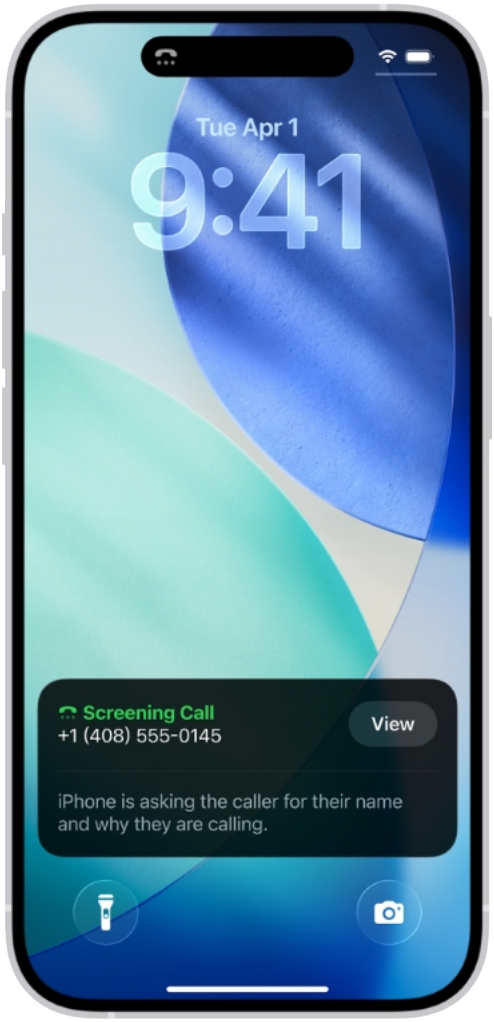
iPhone can help identify incoming calls using information from Apple Business Connect, supported carriers, and supported call identification apps.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap Phone, then tap Call Blocking & Identification.
3. Turn on one or more of the following:

    - *Business Call Identification:* Caller information is identified by Apple Business Connect or your carrier.
    - *Call Identification apps:* Caller information is identified by supported caller ID apps.

Screen or silence unknown numbers

Call Screening automatically answers calls from unknown numbers without interrupting you. Once the caller shares their name and reason for their call, your iPhone rings and shares their response so you can decide if you want to pick up. You can also choose to silence calls from unknown callers and send them directly to voicemail.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Choose one of the following:

    - *Never:* Call Screening is turned off and your iPhone will ring when you receive a call from an unsaved number.
    - *Ask Reason for Calling:* Calls from unknown numbers will be asked for more information before iPhone rings.
    - *Silence:* Calls from unsaved numbers will be silenced, sent to voicemail, and appear in the Recents list.

Note: When answering calls, Siri will speak in your iPhone's default language. See Change the language and region on iPhone.

Filter unknown and spam calls

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Turn on the following:

    - *Unknown Callers:* Calls from unknown numbers are removed from your Recents list and sent to the Unknown Callers list.
    - *Spam:* Calls identified by your carrier as potential spam or fraud are silenced, sent to voicemail, and moved to the Spam list.

You can mark an unknown caller as known to prevent future calls from being sent to the Unknown Callers list. Go to the Phone app, tap , tap Unknown Callers, tap Mark as Known next to the call, then tap Mark as Known.

To remove a number from your known callers, tap Contacts twice, tap Other Known, tap the number you want to remove, then tap Mark as Unknown at the bottom of the contact card.

Block calls from specific people or numbers

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Contacts, tap a contact, then tap Block Contact.

Unblock a blocked contact

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Blocked Contacts, then tap Edit.
4. Tap , then tap Unblock.

View calls from unknown or spam callers

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following, depending on which Phone app layout you are using:

    - *Unified layout:* Tap Calls.

- *Classic layout:* Tap Recents.

3. Tap in the top-right corner of your screen.
4. Tap Unknown Callers or Spam.

See also

While on a call on iPhone

Previous
Set up call waiting

Next
Get started with Photos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find photos and videos by date on iPhone

You can find and browse the photos and videos taken on a particular date—year, month, or day.

View photos and videos you took on a recent day

You can find the photos and videos you took on a particular day in the Recent Days collection.



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then scroll down to Recent Days.

3. Swipe left or right to quickly move between days, or tap Recent Days to view all.
4. Tap a day to open the collection.

When you open a day in Recent Days, you see a summary of the best photos from the day. To see all the photos you took that day, tap Show All.

Browse through your library by year or month

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down on the photo library grid, then tap one of the following:

   - *Years:* Quickly locate a specific year in your photo library.
   - *Months:* View collections of photos that you took throughout a month, organized by significant events—like a family outing, social occasion, birthday party, or trip.

Years and Months views are curated to show your best shots, and visual clutter like similar photos, screenshots, whiteboards, and receipts aren't shown. To see every photo and video, tap All.

You can also search for a specific date. See Search for photos and videos.

See also

View photos and videos on iPhone

Find recently saved photos and videos on iPhone

Sort and filter the photo library on iPhone

Previous
See photo and video information

Next
Find and name people and pets

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

See photo and video information on iPhone

You can find saved metadata information about a photo or video in the Photos app. You can also change certain stored data such as the date, time, and location.

View photo and video metadata

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the photo or video whose metadata you want to see, then swipe up or tap ⓘ.

   Depending on the photo or video, you see the following details:

   - People and pets identified in the photo (see Find and name people and pets)
   - A caption field to describe the photo or video, and make it easier to find in Search
   - Items detected by Visual Look Up
   - Event information for photos and videos taken at concerts or sporting events
   - What device captured the photo or video
   - The date and time the photo or video was taken (tap Adjust to edit the date and time)
   - Camera metadata such as lens, shutter speed, file size, and more
   - Where the photo or video was taken (tap the link to view the location in Maps; tap Adjust to edit the location; tap “Add a location” to enter a location)
   - Who shared the photo or video with you, if it was shared
   - What albums the photo is in (tap to open the album)



3. Swipe down or tap ⓘ to close.

Change the date, time, or location of a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap ···.
3. Tap Adjust Date & Time or Adjust Location.

    - For date and time changes, use the calendar and clock to update, then tap Adjust.
    - For location changes, enter where the photo was taken in the text field, then tap the location when it appears under Map Locations.

To change the date, time, or location of a batch of photos, tap Select, tap the thumbnails you want to change, then follow the steps above.

To revert a photo or video to its original date, time, or location, tap ···, tap Adjust Date & Time or Adjust Location, then tap Revert.

Table of Contents

Find recently saved photos and videos on iPhone

You can find all the photos and videos you've saved from other apps—like Messages, Safari, and Mail—in the Recently Saved collection. Photos and videos that were sent to you using AirDrop also appear here.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Tap Collections, then tap the Recently Saved collection below Pinned.

     Tip: You can also find the Recently Saved collection below Utilities along with the Recently Viewed and Recently Shared collections.

   - Tap Library, tap , then tap Sort by Recently Added.

Tip: To see photos you saved today, tap Collections, then tap the Saved Today collection below Recent Days.

See also

Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more on iPhone

Locate photos and videos by media type on iPhone

Back up and sync your photos and videos with iCloud

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Browse photos and videos by location on iPhone

The Photos app creates collections of your photos and videos based on where they were taken. You can use the Map view to see photos taken in a specific location, look for photos taken nearby, and see collections of photos on a map.



Browse photos and videos by location

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap the Map collection below Pinned.

Only pictures and videos that have embedded location information (GPS data) are included.

Tip: Pinch the map to zoom in and out, or drag to see more locations.

See where a photo or video was taken

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then swipe up or tap ⓘ.
3. Tap the map or address link to see more details.

   Tip: To see more photos or videos from this location, tap Show Nearby Photos.

To add or change the location or address where a photo or video was taken, see Change the date, time, or location of a photo or video.

View photos and videos in a collection on a map

You can see where all of the photos and video in a collection were taken on a map.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap a collection such as a trip or a recent day.
3. Tap ···, then tap Show Map.

   Tip: Pinch the map to zoom in and out, or tap Show Nearby Photos to view more photos taken in the area.
4. Tap ✕ to close the map.

See also

Find your travel photos and videos on iPhone

See photo and video information on iPhone

Previous
Find group photos and videos

Next

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View photos and videos on iPhone

Use the Photos app to view photos and videos on your iPhone.

View photos



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo to view it in full screen.

   Tip: Tap , then move your iPhone in your hand to view the photo with a 3D effect (available on iPhone 12 or later).

3. Swipe left or right on the photo to keep browsing, or swipe the thumbnails below the photo to quickly jump forward or back.
4. Tap ‹ to close the photo and return to the library or collection.

Tip: To focus on the photo you're viewing, tap it to hide the controls onscreen. Tap it again to show the controls.

Play videos



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a video to play it.

   As the video plays, you can pause the video, or drag the white bar to go forward or back in the video.
3. Tap ‹ to close the video and return to the library or collection.

See also

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

Sort and filter the photo library on iPhone

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

See photo and video information on iPhone

Previous
Browse your photo collections

Next
See photo and video information

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find group photos and videos on iPhone

The Photos app recognizes groups of people and pets who often appear together in pictures and videos, and sorts them into group collections. For example, if you have many pictures of your family or a group of friends, Photos creates a collection for each of those groups.



Find group photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap People & Pets.
3. Swipe the collections below Groups to browse, or tap Groups to view them all.

4. Tap a group to view all the photos and videos in that collection.

   Tip: To view pictures of this group with additional people, tap , tap View Options, then tap Other People.

To share the photos of the group, tap , then tap Share.

Create a group collection

You can create a group collection with any combination of people and pets from the People & Pets collection.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap People & Pets.
3. To the right of Groups, tap , then tap Create New Group.
4. Select the people and pets you want in the group, then tap .
5. Optionally, you can enter a new name for the group or add more people and pets to the group.
6. Tap Create.

Edit or delete a group collection

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap People & Pets.
3. Below Groups, touch and hold the group you want to edit, then do any of the following:

   - *Rename the group:* Tap Edit Name and People, enter a new name, then tap .
   - *Remove someone from the group:* Tap Edit Name and People, then tap at the top-left corner of their picture.
   - *Add someone to the group:* Tap Edit Name and People, then tap Add People & Pets. Select who you want to add, then tap .
   - *Edit the group photo:* Tap Edit Name and People, then tap the photo icon in the bottom-right corner of the current group photo. Select a new photo, then tap .

- *Delete the group:* Tap Delete Group.

Change the order of group collections

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, then tap Groups.
3. Touch and hold a group, then drag it to a new position.

See also

Find and name people and pets in Photos on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Previous
Find and name people and pets

Next
Browse photos and videos by location

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

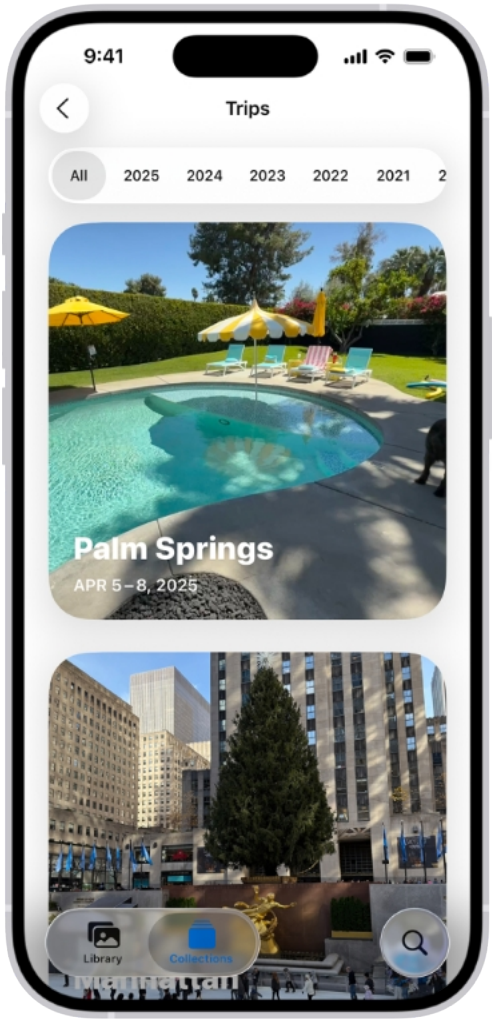
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find your travel photos and videos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can quickly find photos and videos from your trips grouped into collections, based on location data from the photos.



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down to Trips, then tap the trip collection you want to view.

   Tap a year at the top of the screen to help you find older trips.

See also

View your memories in Photos on iPhone

Browse photos and videos by location on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Find recently saved photos and videos

Next
Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

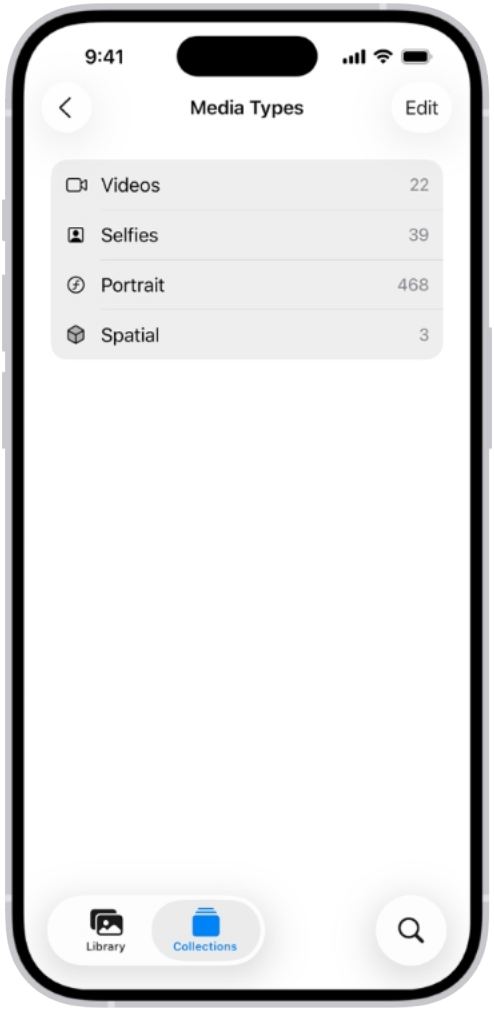
Table of Contents

Locate photos and videos by media type on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can find collections of photos and videos organized by media type. For example, browse all your Portrait mode photos or time-lapse videos in one place.

Browse photos and videos by media type

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Media Types.



3. Tap the type of photo or video you want to view.

Tip: To quickly locate your favorite media type, add it to the Pinned collection. See Pin collections and albums.

Reorder media types

You can reorder the list of media types to help you find the ones you access most often.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Media Types.
3. Tap Edit, touch and hold the collection you want to move, then drag it to a new position.

   To undo your changes, tap Reset.
4. Tap .

See also

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

Find recently saved photos and videos on iPhone

Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more on iPhone

Previous
Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more

Next
Sort and filter the photo library

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

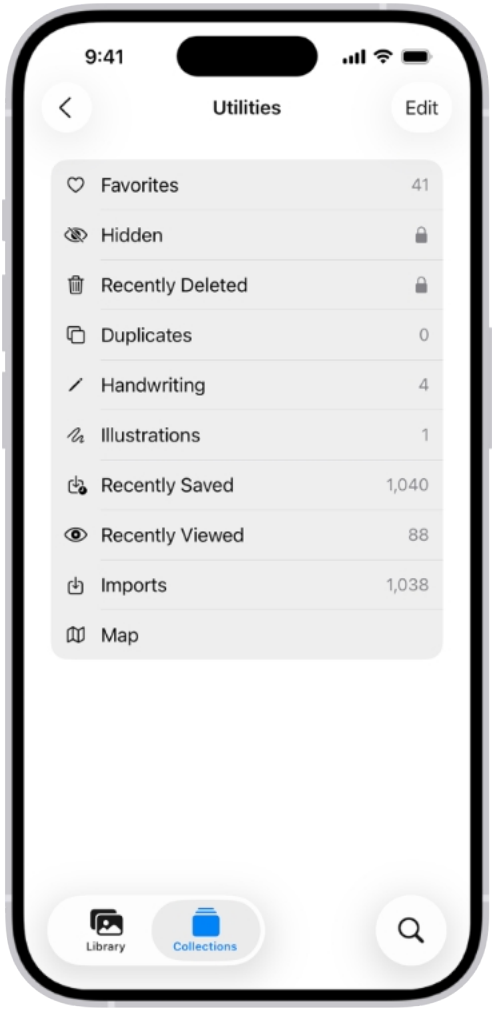
Table of Contents

Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can find collections of photos and videos organized into different categories in Utilities. For example, you can revisit photos you recently edited, saved, viewed, or shared, or find photos based on their content—like documents, receipts, handwriting, illustrations, and QR codes.

Find receipts, QR codes, and more in Utilities

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Utilities.



3. Tap the collection you want to view.

   Note: Some Utilities collections, like Hidden and Recently Deleted, are locked by default for your privacy. See Lock and unlock the Recently Deleted and Hidden collections.

Reorder the Utilities list

You can reorder the Utilities list to help you find the collections you access most often.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Utilities.
3. Tap Edit, touch and hold the collection you want to move, then drag it to a new position.

   To undo your changes, tap Reset.
4. Tap .

Find recovered items and save or delete them

If a photo or video wasn't saved properly and couldn't be added to your library, you may find a copy of it in Recovered.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, scroll down, then tap Utilities.
3. Tap Recovered, then tap the photo or video you want to recover.
4. Tap Permanently Delete or Restore to Library.

   Important: When you delete a recovered photo or video, it's deleted permanently. You can't recover photos that you deleted from the Recovered collection in Utilities.

See also

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

Find recently saved photos and videos on iPhone

Locate photos and videos by media type on iPhone

Previous
Find your travel photos and videos

Next
Locate photos and videos by media type

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find and name people and pets in Photos on iPhone

The Photos app sorts photos and videos of people, dogs, and cats in the People & Pets collection (or the People collection if no pets appear). You can name a person, dog, or cat directly from a photo or video in your photo library, or in the People & Pets collection.

Name a person or pet in a photo or video

When you name a person or pet in a photo or video, they're automatically added to the People & Pets collection and named in other photos and videos in your library.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then swipe up to see the details.

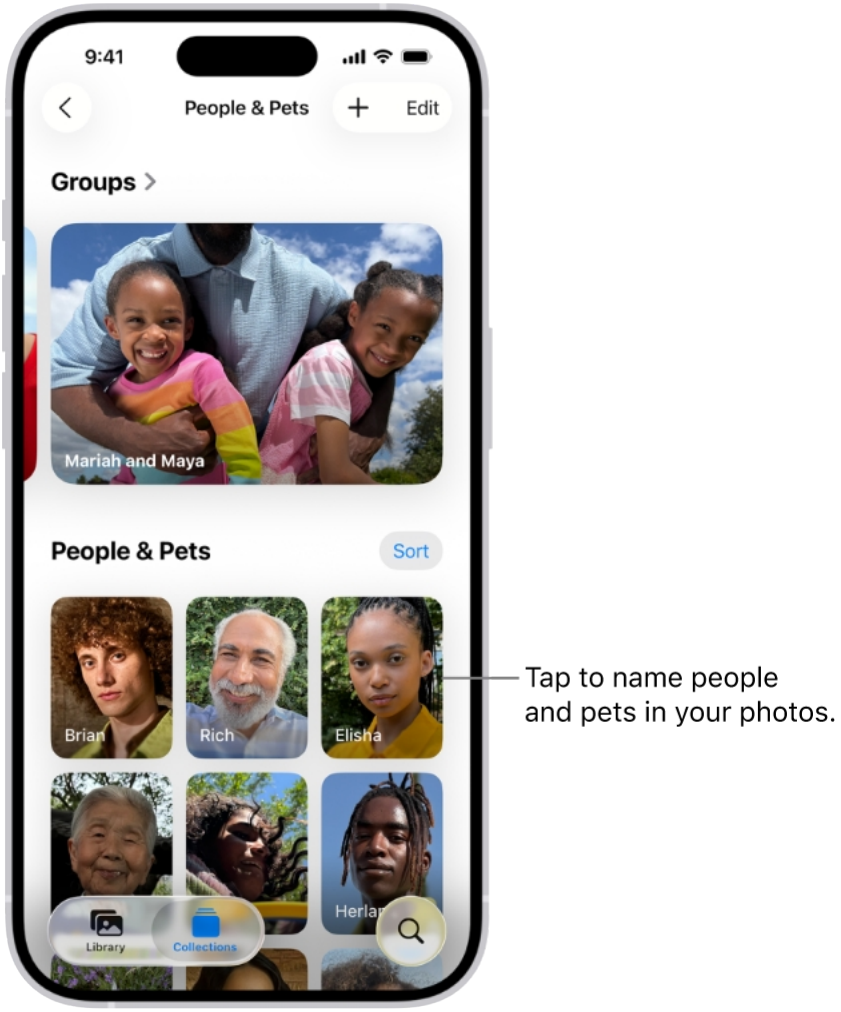
   People or pets in the photo or video appear in the bottom-left corner. A question mark appears next to those you haven't named.
3. Tap the person or pet with a question mark next to their picture, then tap Edit Name and Photos.



4. Tap Name This Person or Name This Pet, enter their name, then tap ✓.

Name a person or pet in the People & Pets collection

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, then tap the person or pet you want to name.



3. Tap Name This Person or Name This Pet, then enter their name.

   If the person is listed in your contacts, you can tap their name below Results.

4. Tap ✓.

If the person or pet you want to name doesn't appear, tap Add People at the bottom of the People & Pets collection to see more faces.

To create a collection of a group of people and pets, see Find group photos.

Change the key photo for a person or pet

You can change the key photo of a person or pet in the People & Pets collection.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, then touch and hold the key photo you want to change.
3. Tap Edit Name and Photos, then tap the photo icon in the bottom-right corner of the current key photo.

4. Select a new photo from the choices in the photo grid, then tap ✓.

Mark a person or pet as a favorite

Mark the people or pets that you interact with the most as favorites so it's easier to find them in the People & Pets collection.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap People & Pets.
3. Touch and hold a person or pet's key photo, then tap Favorite.

To remove a person or pet from your favorites, touch and hold their key photo in the People & Pets collection, then tap Unfavorite.

Fix incorrect names

You can fix misidentifications in the People & Pets collection.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap People & Pets.
3. Tap the misidentified person or pet, then tap ··· at the top of the screen.
4. Tap the incorrect name at the top of the menu, tap the name again, enter the correct name, then tap ✓.

You can also fix misidentifications while viewing a photo or video in your library. Swipe up to see the photo or video information. Tap the misidentified person or pet in the circle at the bottom-left corner. Tap This is Not [*name*], then tap Rename This Person or Rename This Pet.

Sort the People & Pets collection alphabetically or manually

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, tap Sort, then choose one of the following:

   - *Sort alphabetically:* Tap Sort by Name.

- *Sort manually:* Tap Sort by Custom Order, then touch and hold a key photo and drag it to a new position.

Hide or don’t feature a person or pet

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People & Pets, then touch and hold the person or pet’s key photo.
3. Tap Hide [*name*] or Don’t Feature [*name*].

When you use iCloud Photos, People & Pets is kept up to date on all your devices.

See also

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

View your memories in Photos on iPhone

Find group photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Find photos and videos by date

Next
Find group photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Sort and filter the photo library on iPhone

To help you find the photos and videos you're looking for, you can change how items in the library are sorted, filter the library to show only particular items, and hide certain items.

Sort the library

You can sort items in your photo library to appear by the date they were added or by the date they were taken.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then choose one of the following options:

    - *Sort by Recently Added:* Photos and videos you added most recently appear at the bottom of the library.
    - *Sort by Date Captured:* Photos and videos are sorted by the date they were taken, instead of the date they were added to the library.

Filter the library

You can apply filters to your photo library to display only particular items—such as Videos, Favorites, or Not in an Album—and temporarily hide everything else.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Filter.
3. Tap the filter you want to apply.

    Tip: You can apply multiple filters at the same time. For example, tap Photos and Edited to see only photos you've edited.

4. To remove the filters and return to the full library, tap All Items.

Hide screenshots, items from your Mac, and items shared with you

By default, screenshots, photos and videos synced from your Mac, and photos and videos shared with you in the Messages app automatically appear in your photo library. You can hide these items to reduce clutter.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap View Options.
3. Tap Screenshots, From My Mac, or Shared with You to hide these items in your library. To stop hiding them, tap the option again.

See also

Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone

Previous
Locate photos and videos by media type

Next
Back up and sync your photos and videos with iCloud

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

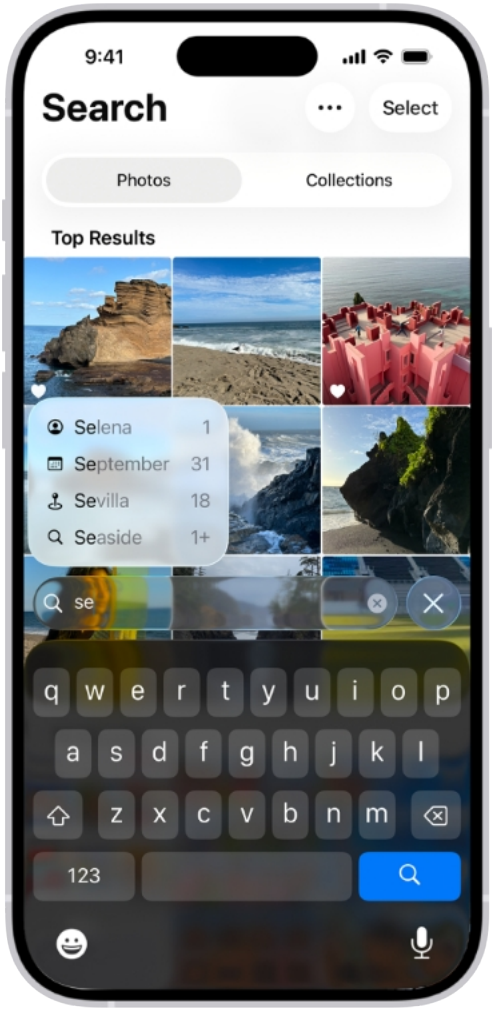
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

When you tap in the Photos app, you see suggestions of dates, people, and locations to help you find what you're looking for. You can search in the Library or Collections tab, or within a specific album or collection.



Search for photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the bottom-right corner.
3. Tap one of the search suggestions or type what you're looking for into the search field, such as:
   - Date (month or year)
   - Place (city or state)
   - Business names (museums, for example)
   - Category (beach or sunset, for example)
   - Events (sports games or concerts, for example)
   - A person identified in the People & Pets collection (see Find and name people and pets)
   - Text (an email address or phone number, for example)
   - Caption (see See photo and video information)
4. Tap one of the suggestions or .
5. Swipe up to browse the complete search results, or tap Collections to view collections that include your search query.
6. Tap to exit search.

Tip: You can narrow your search by including a media type in the search field, such as Video or Portrait.

Search by shared library participant

If you're a participant in an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can also search by the person who added the photo or video to the library.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then enter "Shared by."

3. Tap a suggested name.

Search with Apple Intelligence

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can search for specific images by describing what you want to find. You can also search video clips for key moments. See Search for specific photos and videos with Apple Intelligence.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Sort and filter the photo library on iPhone

Find recently saved photos and videos on iPhone

Find your travel photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Delete or hide photos and videos

Next
Get wallpaper suggestions

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Back up and sync your photos and videos with iCloud

You can use iCloud Photos to keep your photos and videos securely stored in iCloud. If you turn on iCloud Photos on all your devices, you can see the photos and videos you took on iPhone on any device. You can also access your iCloud photos and videos in a web browser.

When iCloud Photos is turned on, the photos and videos you take are uploaded automatically and stored in their original format at full resolution. Any changes you make to your photo collection on one device are reflected on your other devices, too.

Note: Make sure that you're signed in to the same Apple Account on all your devices, and that your devices meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 8.3, iPadOS 13.1, macOS 10.10.3, or later, or a Windows device with iCloud for Windows 7.x or later.

To learn more, see Set up iCloud Photos on all your devices.

Turn on iCloud Photos

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap Photos, then turn on Sync this iPhone.

iCloud automatically uploads every photo and video you take to iCloud, so your photos are backed up and in sync, and you can access your library from any device, anytime.

Check if your photos and videos are backed up to iCloud

You can check that iCloud Photos is syncing your photos to iCloud, so that you have copies if something happens to your iPhone.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. In the top-right corner of the screen, you can see a preview of your syncing status. You may see any of the following:
    - *Yellow badge:* iCloud syncing is paused. Tap your account icon to see the details.
    - *Yellow warning icon:* Your iCloud storage is almost full. Tap your account icon to see the details.
    - *Red exclamation mark:* Your iCloud storage is full. See Get more iCloud storage.
    - *Blue badge:* You have notifications from a shared library or shared album. Tap your account icon to see the details.
    - *Partially filled blue circle around your account icon:* Photos are actively uploading to iCloud. Tap your account icon to see the details.
    - *Partially filled gray outline around your account icon:* Uploads are paused. Tap your account icon to see the details.
4. Tap your account to see more details. The last time your iPhone synced with iCloud appears below the account profile.

Note: If iCloud sync is in progress or paused, a notification also appears in the upper-left corner of the library.

Turn off Optimize Storage on your iPhone

iCloud Photos can help you make the most of the storage space on your iPhone. When Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on, all your full-resolution photos and videos are stored in iCloud in their original formats, with storage-saving versions kept on your iPhone. Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on by default, but you can turn it off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap Photos, then tap Download and Keep Originals.

Get more iCloud storage

If your uploaded photos and videos exceed your storage plan, you can upgrade to iCloud+ for more storage and additional features. See Subscribe to iCloud+.

See also

Use iCloud on iPhone

iCloud User Guide: How iCloud keeps information up to date across all your devices

iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud Photos on all your devices

Previous
Sort and filter the photo library

Next
Delete or hide photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can delete photos and videos from your iPhone or hide them. You can also recover photos you recently deleted. Photos you delete and hide are saved in the Recently Deleted and Hidden collections, which you unlock using Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

When you use iCloud photos, any photos you delete or hide are deleted or hidden on all your devices.

Note: Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted collection for 30 days before being permanently removed from all devices. During that time, you can recover or permanently remove them.

Delete or hide a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a photo or video, do any of the following:

   - *Delete:* Tap to delete a photo from your iPhone and other devices where iCloud Photos is turned on and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.
   - *Hide:* Tap ···, then tap Hide.

     Hidden photos are moved to the Hidden collection. You can't view them anywhere else.

     To turn off the Hidden collection so it doesn't appear in the Photos app, see Hide the Hidden collection.

Delete or hide multiple photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.

2. View your library or open a collection.
3. Tap Select, then tap the photos and videos you want to delete or hide.
4. Do any of the following:

- *Delete:* Tap 🗑 to delete the items from your iPhone and other devices where iCloud Photos is turned on and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

  Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted collection for 30 days. During that time, you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.

- *Hide:* Tap ···, then tap Hide.

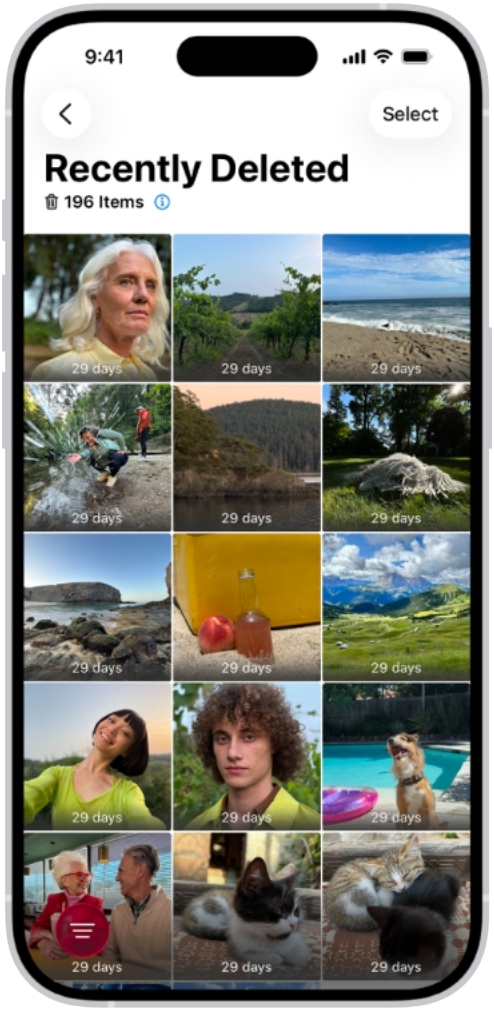
Stop hiding photos and videos

You can stop hiding a photo or video you previously hid, so that it reappears in your photo library.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe up, tap the Hidden collection (below Utilities), then tap View Album.
4. Tap the photo or video you want to stop hiding.
5. Tap ···, then tap Unhide.

Recover or permanently delete recently deleted items

When you delete photos and videos, they're kept in the Recently Deleted collection for 30 days before being permanently removed from your iPhone, iCloud, and other devices associated with your Apple Account. You can recover them or delete them permanently at any time during the 30 days.



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe up, then tap the Recently Deleted collection (below Utilities).
4. Tap View Album, then unlock your iPhone.
5. Tap Select, then choose the photos and videos you want to recover or delete.
6. Tap ···, then tap Recover or Delete.

Note: If the photos or videos you're looking for don't appear in the Recently Deleted collection, they may be in the Recovered collection. See Find recovered items and save or delete them.

Lock and unlock the Recently Deleted and Hidden collections

The Recently Deleted and Hidden collections are locked by default. You can unlock these collections using Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode. To change the default setting from locked to unlocked, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Photos.
3. Turn off Use Face ID, Use Touch ID, or Use Passcode.

Hide the Hidden collection

By default, the Hidden collection is locked. You can add an extra layer of privacy by removing it from view.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Photos.
3. Turn off Show Hidden Album.

See also

Hide people, memories, and holidays in Photos on iPhone

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Back up and sync your photos and videos with iCloud

Next
Search for photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get wallpaper suggestions in Photos on iPhone

You can get wallpaper suggestions for your Lock Screen or Home Screen that stylize photos of your favorite people and pets.



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe up, then tap a suggested wallpaper (below Wallpaper Suggestions).

To customize the Lock Screen, including choosing colors, clock font, and more, see Create a custom Lock Screen.

See also

Make your iPhone your own

Change the wallpaper on iPhone

Previous
Search for photos and videos

Next
View your memories

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

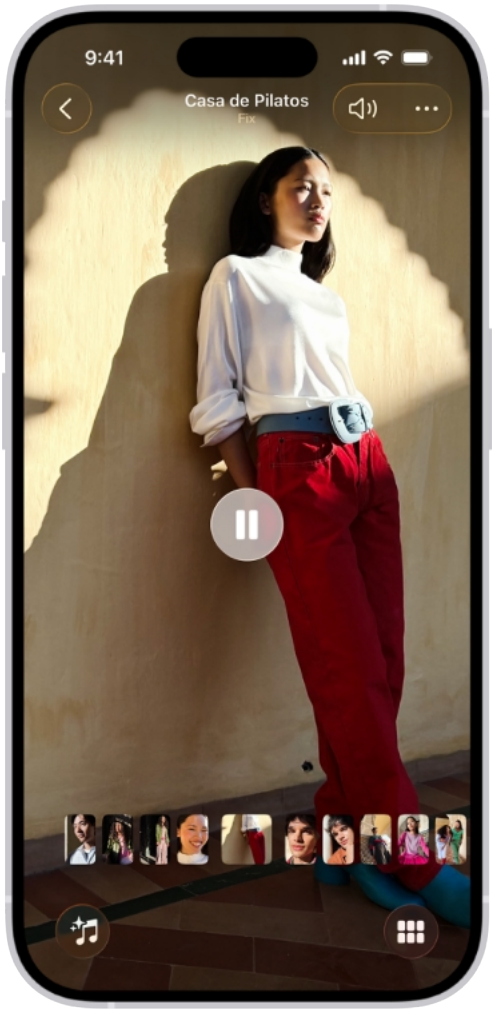
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Personalize your memory movies in Photos on iPhone

You can edit your memory movies to make them even more personal. Try out Memory mixes, which let you apply different songs with a matching photographic look. You can also choose new songs, edit the title of a memory movie, change the length, and add, reorder, or remove photos. Apple Music subscribers can add songs from the millions of songs available in the Apple Music catalog.



Add a Memory mix

Memory mixes are curated combinations of different songs, pacing, and styles that change the look and feel of a memory movie.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Tap in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
5. Tap the screen, then tap .
6. Swipe left to view different Memory mixes.
7. Tap the screen to apply a Memory mix.

Change the look of a memory movie

Use Memory looks to apply consistent color and style adjustments to all the photos in a memory movie.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Tap in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
5. Tap the screen, then tap .
6. Tap , tap a look, then tap Done.

Change the music of a memory movie

You can change a memory movie's music by choosing from memory soundtracks or suggested songs in Apple Music. Apple Music subscribers can also access their Apple Music library and view suggested songs based on musical preferences or the content of the memory.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.

3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Tap ▶ in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
5. Tap the screen, then tap ✨♫.
6. Tap ♫+, tap a song, then tap Done.

   Apple Music subscribers can tap 🔍 to search for songs in the Apple Music library.

Add or remove photos in a memory movie

You can choose the photos that appear in a memory movie—add or remove suggested photos, or choose photos and videos directly from your library.

1. Go to the Photos app 🌸 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Tap ▶ in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
5. Tap the screen, then tap ⋯.
6. Tap Manage Photos, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a photo from your photo library:* Tap All, scroll through your library, select the photos you want to add, then tap ✓.
   - *Remove photos:* Deselect a photo to remove it from the memory, then tap ✓.
   - *Search for photos in your photo library:* Tap All, tap 🔍, then type the name of a person, place, or date. Tap a search result, select the photos you want to add, then tap ✓.
7. Tap ‹ to close the memory movie.

Reorder photos in a memory movie

1. Go to the Photos app 🌸 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.

3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Tap ▶ in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
5. Tap the screen, then tap ⋮⋮⋮.
6. Touch and hold a photo, then drag it to a new position in the grid.
7. Tap ‹ to return to the memory movie.

Change the length of a memory movie

Depending on the number of photos in a memory movie, you can change its length to short, medium, or long. Your choice automatically adjusts the number of photos included.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Tap ▶ in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
5. Tap the screen as the memory plays, tap ···, then tap Short, Medium, or Long.

Edit the memory title, subtitle, and key photo

You can edit the title or subtitle of a memory and change the key photo that appears with the title of the memory.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Tap a memory to view the collection.
5. Tap ···, tap the current title, then do any of the following:

    - *Edit the memory title or subtitle:* Enter a new title or subtitle in the text fields.
    - *Change the key photo:* Tap the photo icon in the bottom-right corner of the current key photo, then select a new photo in the photo grid.

6. Tap Done.

See also

View your memories in Photos on iPhone

Hide people, memories, and holidays in Photos on iPhone

Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone

Previous
Share or delete memories

Next
Make slideshows

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share or delete memories in Photos on iPhone

You can share memory movies and the photos and videos that appear in them with friends and family. You can also delete memories and identify content in memories that you'd like to feature less.

Share a memory movie

You can share a memory movie directly with friends and family, or play it with AirPlay to watch together.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Tap in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
5. As the memory plays, tap at the top of the screen, then do any of the following:

    - *Share a memory using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail:* Tap Share, then choose a sharing option.
    - *Play on a nearby device using AirPlay:* Tap AirPlay, then a choose an available device.

      Tip: Before you tap AirPlay, tap Loop, so the memory automatically plays again.

Share a memory collection

You can share all of the photos and videos that appear in a memory collection.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.

3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Touch and hold a memory, then tap Share Photos.

To share just some of the photos and videos in a memory collection, tap Select, tap the items you want to share, then tap .

Feature people, places, or days in a memory less often

You can identify subjects in a memory that you'd like to see less often (like a person, a place, or a specific day) in your memories and featured photos in the Photos app.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Touch and hold a memory, then tap Feature Less.
5. Depending on the memory, select one of the following:

    - Feature This Day Less
    - Feature This Place Less
    - Feature a Person Less

To reset, open the Photos app, tap Collections, tap your account in the top-right corner, then tap Reset Suggested Memories.

Delete a memory

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Touch and hold a memory, then tap Delete.

See also

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Personalize your memory movies in Photos on iPhone

Hide people, memories, and holidays in Photos on iPhone

Previous
Play memory movies

Next
Personalize your memory movies

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Make slideshows on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can create a slideshow to view a selection of photos and videos that you choose from your photo library. Slideshows are automatically formatted and set to music.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Select, then tap each photo you want to include in the slideshow or video.
3. Tap , then tap Play as Slideshow.

To change the slideshow music, theme, and more, see Personalize your memories.

See also

View your memories in Photos on iPhone

Play memory movies in Photos on iPhone

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

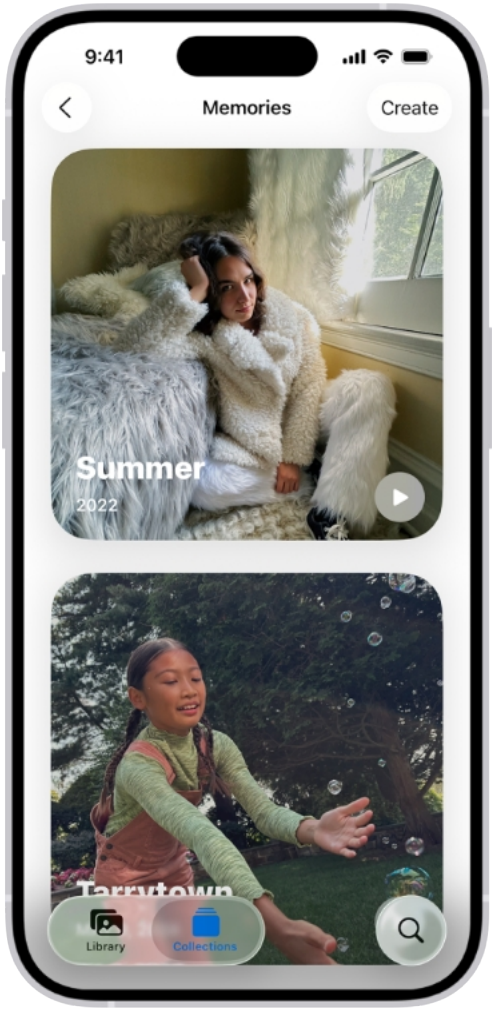
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View your memories in Photos on iPhone

The Memories collection in the Photos app includes personalized collections of photos and videos that feature a significant person, pet, place, activity, or event from your photo library.



View your memories

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.

4. Select a memory to view all the photos and videos included in that memory.
5. As you view a memory, you can do any of the following:
    - *Filter and sort the photos videos in the memory:* Tap .
    - *View all the photos and videos in the memory:* Tap Show All
    - *Search for photos and videos in the memory:* Tap .
    - *Share the memory, delete the memory, or show the memory location on a map:* Tap .
    - *Share specific photos and videos in the memory:* Tap Select, tap the photos and videos you want to share, then tap .
    - *Play the memory movie:* Tap .
6. Tap to close the memory and return to Collections.

Add a memory to Favorites

Identify your favorite memories to make them easier to find.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Touch and hold a memory, then tap Add to Favorite Memories.

To view your favorite memories, go to the Collections tab, tap Memories, then tap Favorites.

See also

Personalize your memory movies in Photos on iPhone

Share or delete memories in Photos on iPhone

Table of Contents

Play memory movies in Photos on iPhone

View each memory in your Memories collection as a movie that's set to music. All the collections and albums you have in the Photos app can also be viewed as a memory movie that you can watch as created, or edit to make more personal.

Play a memory movie

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Swipe left under Memories to scroll through a selection of your memories, or tap Memories to view them all.
4. Tap in the bottom-right corner of a memory to play it.
5. As the memory movie plays, do any of the following:

   - *Pause:* Tap the screen, then tap .
   - *Go backward or forward:* Swipe left or right. Or tap the screen, then slide the frames at the bottom of the screen left or right.
   - *Mute:* Tap the screen, then tap .
   - *Close a memory:* Tap the screen, then tap .

Play a memory movie from a collection or album

All the collections and albums you have in the Photos app can be viewed as memory movies.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.

3. Select an existing collection or album, then tap ▶ to watch the photos and videos as a memory movie.

   To make changes to the memory movie, see Personalize your memories.

   To create a memory movie from scratch, create a photo album, then follow the steps above to watch it as a memory movie.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can create a memory movie. Describe the story you want to see, and Apple Intelligence finds the best photos and videos, crafts a storyline, and sets it to music. See Create a memory movie.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Personalize your memory movies in Photos on iPhone

Previous
View your memories

Next
Share or delete memories

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Hide people, memories, and holidays in Photos on iPhone

You can set the Photos app to show certain people, days, and holidays less frequently or not at all in your memories, featured photos, and the Photos widget. You can also turn off memories and featured photos in the Photos app and the widget on your iPhone Home Screen.

Show a person less frequently or not at all

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo of the person you want to show less often.
3. Tap ⋯, then tap Don't Feature a Person.

   If there's more than one person in the photo, tap the person you want to feature less, then tap Next.
4. Choose Feature This Person Less or Never Feature This Person.
5. Tap Confirm.

To feature someone again, tap Collections, tap your account in the top-right corner, then tap Reset People & Pets Suggestions.

Turn off memories, holidays, and other featured content

You can turn off memories or featured photos in the Photos app, and prevent holiday events in your home country or region from appearing in memories and featured content.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.

3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.

4. Do any of the following:

   - *Hide featured content and memories:* Turn off Show Featured Content to prevent Photos from automatically generating featured photos and memories.

   - *Turn off holiday events:* Turn off Show Holiday Events to prevent Photos from creating memories and featured content about holidays.

See also

Personalize your memory movies in Photos on iPhone

Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Edit Portrait mode photos

Next
Make stickers from your photos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

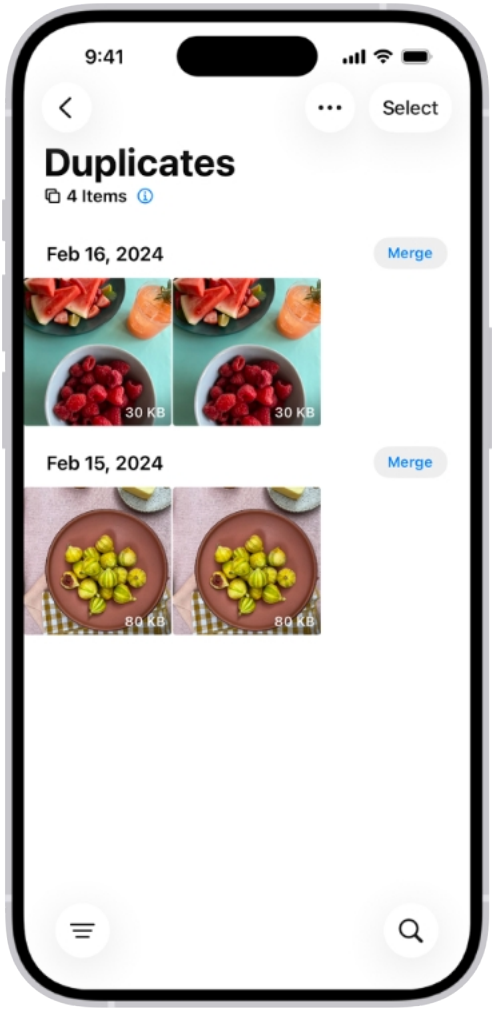
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Merge duplicate photos and videos on iPhone

The Photos app identifies duplicate photos and videos in your photo library in the Duplicates collection. You can merge duplicate photos and videos to save space and clean up your library.



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Utilities, then tap Duplicates.

4. Tap Merge to combine a set of duplicates, then tap Merge [*number*] Items.

If you don’t have any duplicate photos or videos in your library, the Duplicates collection doesn’t appear.

See also

Duplicate and copy photos and videos on iPhone

Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Duplicate and copy photos and videos

Next
Import and export photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Print photos on iPhone to an AirPrint-enabled printer

Print your photos directly from the Photos app on your iPhone with any AirPrint-enabled device.

Print a photo

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then tap .
3. Tap Print.

Print multiple photos at once

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library or open a collection, then tap Select.
3. Select each photo you want to print, then tap .
4. Tap Print.

See also

Print from iPhone

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Table of Contents

Duplicate and copy photos and videos on iPhone

In the Photos app on iPhone, you can duplicate a photo or video while preserving the original version. You can also copy a photo and then paste it into another document such as an email, text message, or presentation.

Duplicate a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap ⋯.
3. Tap Duplicate.

   A duplicate copy appears next to the original in your library.

Copy a photo

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then tap ⋯.
3. Tap Copy, then paste the photo into another document.

Copy multiple photos or videos

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to copy.
3. Tap •••, then tap Copy.

4. Paste the copies into another document.

See also

Merge duplicate photos and videos on iPhone

Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone

Previous
Make stickers from your photos

Next
Merge duplicate photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

You can import photos and videos directly to the Photos app from a digital camera, an SD memory card, or another iPhone or iPad that has a camera. You can also export unmodified versions of your photos and videos directly to an external drive, memory card, or other storage device that's connected to your iPhone.

Import photos and videos to your iPhone

Import photos and videos saved on another device such as a digital camera or an external drive to the Photos app on your iPhone.

1. Insert the camera adapter or card reader into the Lightning or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
    - *Connect a camera:* Connect the adapter to the camera, then turn on the camera and make sure it's in transfer mode. For more information, see the documentation that came with the camera.
    - *Connect an external storage device or insert an SD memory card into the card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.
    - *Connect an iPhone or iPad:* Use the Lightning adapter or the USB-C cable that came with the device to connect it to the camera adapter. Turn on and unlock the device.
3. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
4. Tap Import.
5. Select the photos and videos you want to import, then select your import destination.

- *Import all items:* Tap Import All.
- *Import selected items:* Tap the items you want to import (a checkmark appears for each), tap Import, then tap Import Selected.

6. After the photos and videos have been imported, keep or delete them on the camera, card, iPhone, or iPad.
7. Disconnect the camera adapter or card reader.

Export photos and videos to an external storage device

You can export photos and videos you took on your iPhone directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

Note: For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Connect your iPhone to the storage device using the Lightning or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPhone.
2. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
3. Select the photos and videos you want to export.
4. Tap, then tap Export Unmodified Original.
5. Tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap Save.

Photos and videos in the Hidden album won't be transferred if the album is locked. To unlock the Hidden album, go to Settings > Apps > Photos, then turn off Use Face ID, Use Touch ID, or Use Passcode.

See also

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Share long videos on iPhone

Apple Support article: Import photos using Apple camera adapters

Table of Contents

Make stickers from your photos on iPhone

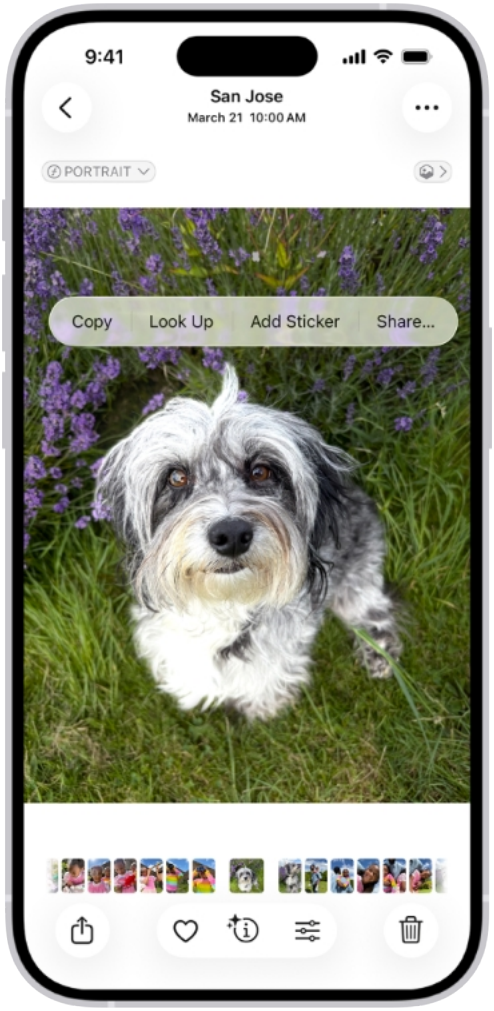
In the Photos app, you can make stickers from the subjects in your photos and animated stickers from the subjects in your Live Photos. Then use your stickers to decorate messages, photos, notes, and more.

Turn a photo or Live Photo into a sticker

You can turn the main subject of a photo into a sticker.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo to open it in full screen.
3. Touch and hold the subject, then release.
4. Tap Add Sticker.

   The sticker appears in your stickers menu, which you can access when you use the iPhone onscreen keyboard or Markup tools.
5. Tap Add Effect if you want to apply a visual effect such as Outline, Comic, or Puffy.



6. Tap ⊗ to close the sticker menu.

Tip: You can use stickers you've created to decorate a photo. See Edit photos and videos.

Delete a sticker

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then tap ⚙.
3. Tap Ⓐ, then tap ⊕.
4. Tap Add Sticker, touch and hold the sticker you want to delete, then tap Remove.

Your stickers sync with iCloud, so they're available on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, and Apple Vision Pro devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

See also

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Hide people, memories, and holidays

Next
Duplicate and copy photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find podcasts on iPhone

Use the Podcasts app to find shows about science, news, politics, comedy, and more. If you find a show you like, you can *follow* it to add it to your library. Then you can easily listen offline, get notified about new episodes, access followed shows on your other Apple devices and on Apple Podcasts on the web, and more.

Note: Shows may offer paid subscriptions that give you access to exclusive episodes, new releases, episodes without ads, and more. You can subscribe to a show or channel and manage your subscriptions. If you already subscribe to Apple Music, Apple News+, or an eligible third-party app, you can listen to its subscriber content in Podcasts. See Listen to subscriber-only content.



Find podcasts

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Search by category, title, person, or topic:* Tap Search, then enter a word or phrase in the search field. Top hits appear as you type.

     Tap Search on the onscreen keyboard to view all results for the word or phrase you typed. Tap a show, channel, or episode to go directly to it.

   - *Discover new shows:* Tap New to see new and trending shows, and the Apple editorial collections. Or tap Search and get a personalized list of categories to choose from, as well as editorial collections.

     Tip: To quickly see the top shows and episodes for a specific category, tap Top Charts, tap the All Categories pop-up menu in the top-right corner, then tap a category.

   - *Add shows by URL:* Tap Library, tap •••, then tap Follow a Show by URL. Enter the URL, then tap Follow.

     Note: The URL must be for a valid podcast RSS feed.

Get personalized recommendations

You can get personalized podcast recommendations based on your listening activity and your favorite categories and channels.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *View recommended shows:* Scroll left or right in the You Might Like row.

   - *Refine your show recommendations:* Tap a show in the You Might Like row, tap •••, then tap Suggest Less.

   - *View suggested episodes based on your listening:* Scroll down to the More to Discover row, then scroll left or right.

- *Opt out of personalized recommendations:* Tap or your profile picture, tap your name, then turn off Personalized Recommendations.

  Note: Your Personalized Recommendations setting also applies to the App Store, Apple Books, iTunes Store, Apple TV, and subscriptions from Apple.

Other recommendations are available based on categories you listen to and any subscriptions you already purchased.

View shared podcasts

When a friend shares a show or episode with you in Messages, you can easily find it in Podcasts.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then scroll down to the Shared with You section.

   If you don't see Shared with You, check to make sure your friend is in your contacts, and that Podcasts is turned on in Settings > Apps > Messages > Shared with You.

See also Find all the content someone shared with you.

Browse episodes within a specific podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Search or browse for a show.
3. Tap a show, then scroll down to see recent episodes, or tap See All (if available).

Filter episodes

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Search or browse for a show.
3. Tap a show, then tap Episodes (or the current filter) above the list of episodes.
4. Choose an option, like Unplayed or Season 1.

Note: Some filter options, such as Unplayed, Downloaded, Saved, and Played, are only available for shows that you follow or shows with downloaded or saved episodes.

See also

Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

Listen to podcasts on iPhone

Previous
Get started with Podcasts on iPhone

Next
Listen to podcasts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Listen to podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can play an episode, change the playback speed, see what's playing next, listen to an episode when you're offline, set a sleep timer, and use other playback controls.



Play a podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Search or browse to find an episode, then tap ▶ for the episode.

Resume playing a previous podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Recently Played section, then tap ▶ below an episode title.

Open the full-screen player

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Play a podcast.
3. Tap the MiniPlayer at the bottom of the screen to open the full-screen player.
4. In the full-screen player, do any of the following:

   - *Jump to a specific time:* Drag the slider below the episode information.
   - *Show or hide the episode transcript:* Tap .
   - *Show or hide the queue:* Tap .
   - *Change the playback speed:* Tap 1× (or the current playback speed), then select a speed, or scroll left or right to adjust the speed. You can also touch and hold 1× (or the current playback speed), then slide your finger up or down to choose a speed.
   - *Hear voices more clearly:* Tap 1× (or the current playback speed), then tap Enhance Dialogue.
   - *Jump to a chapter:* While listening to an episode that has chapters, tap ⌄ next to the name of the current chapter, then select the chapter you want to play.

Save a custom playback speed and enhance dialogue for a show you follow

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows, then select a show. (You can also search or browse for a show you follow.)

3. Tap •••, tap Settings, then scroll down to Speed & Audio Adjustments.
4. Choose Custom for This Show, then select a playback speed and turn Enhance Dialogue on or off.

Choose what to play next

You can add episodes to your queue, then listen to them later.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Find a podcast.
3. Tap ••• for an episode, then choose Play Next or Add to Queue.
4. Tap in the full-screen player.

   If you don't see doesn't, tap the MiniPlayer near the bottom of the screen to open the full-screen player.
5. In the Queue section, do any of the following:

   - *Play an episode:* Tap the episode. The next episode in the queue plays immediately after the previous episode finishes.
   - *Reorder episodes:* Drag to move an episode up or down in the list.
   - *Remove an episode from the queue:* Swipe left on the episode, then tap Remove.
   - *Remove all episodes from the queue:* Tap Clear.

If you listen to multiple episodes of a show in a row, additional episodes appear in the Continue Playing section of the full-screen player. These episodes play after the ones you added to the Queue section, so you can easily pick up where you left off in a show. You can also tap an episode in Continue Playing to start listening right away.

Set a sleep timer

You can set a sleep timer so that playback stops automatically after a specified period of time.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then choose an option.

If you don't see , tap the MiniPlayer near the bottom of the screen to open the full-screen player.

Use the playback controls

In the full-screen player, use any of the following controls.

Control	Description
	Play the current episode.
	Pause the current episode.
1×	Choose a faster or slower playback speed, and turn Enhance Dialogue on or off to adjust voice clarity.
15	Jump back 15 seconds. To change the number of seconds you skip back, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then tap Back.
30	Jump forward 30 seconds. To change the number of seconds you skip forward, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then tap Forward.
	Set a timer for podcasts to stop playing.
	View the transcript for an episode.
	Stream the audio to other devices.
	See what's next in your queue, or play more episodes from a show you recently listened to.
•••	Choose more actions such as sharing or downloading the episode.

See also

Organize your podcast library on iPhone

Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone

Previous
Find podcasts

Next
View podcast transcripts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone

When you find a show you like in the Podcasts app, follow it to add it to your library so you can get notified about new episodes, change the playback order, and more.

Follow a podcast

When you follow a podcast, it's added to your library. You can access podcasts you follow on your other Apple devices, or on the Apple Podcasts app.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Search or browse for a show.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *From search results:* Tap +.
   - *While viewing show information:* Tap +.

     You can also tap •••, then tap Follow.
   - *While viewing episode information, or from Now Playing:* Tap •••, then tap Follow Show.

Unfollow a podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Tap a show you follow, tap ✓, then tap Unfollow Show.

   You can also tap •••, then tap Unfollow.

Get notifications for new episodes

Get notified when new episodes are available for podcasts you follow.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home.
3. Tap or your profile picture.
4. Tap Notifications, then turn Notifications on or off for one or more shows.

See also

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

Find podcasts on iPhone

Organize your podcast library on iPhone

Previous
View podcast transcripts

Next
Rate or review podcasts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

View podcast transcripts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can view and search episode transcripts.

Note: Transcript availability may vary by language, and by country or region. See the Apple Support article Follow and play shows in Apple Podcasts on iPhone and iPad.

View transcripts

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *While viewing episode information:* Scroll down to the Transcripts section. You can also tap •••, then tap View Transcript.
   - *While playing an episode:* Tap . You may need to tap the MiniPlayer near the bottom of the screen to open the Now Playing screen (full-screen player.)
   - *From the Up Next section:* Tap , then tap View Transcript.

Search transcripts

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a transcript, do one of the following:
   - *From episode details or the Up Next section:* Tap .
   - *From the Now Playing screen (full-screen player):* Swipe up on the transcript, then tap Search.

3. Optionally, tap  in the search field to specify whether the whole word or the capitalization needs to match in the search results.

You can read along with an episode as you play it. To jump to a specific time in the episode, tap a paragraph, then tap Play (if it appears).

See also

Listen to podcasts on iPhone

Previous
Listen to podcasts

Next
Follow your favorite podcasts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get started with Podcasts on iPhone

The Podcasts app offers millions of shows on a variety of topics such as news, true crime, comedy, and more. You can listen online or download episodes so you can play them even when you're not connected to the internet.



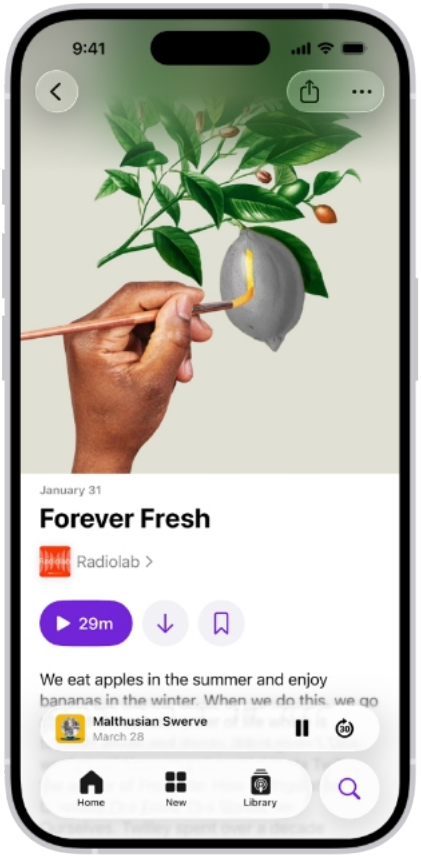
Find podcasts

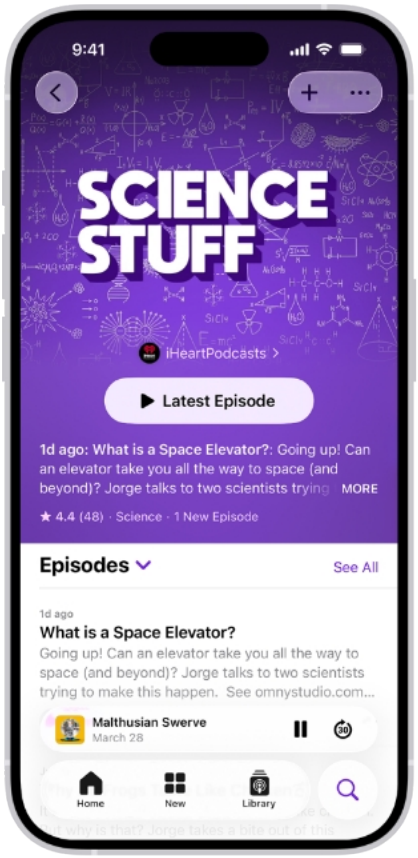
You can use the Search feature to find categories, channels, shows, or episodes that match your interests. Tap or Search to browse shows by category. Enter a word or phrase such as a show name, person, or category to search for something specific.

Listen to podcasts

Tap ▶ to start playing a show or episode, then use the MiniPlayer to pause or resume playing, or skip ahead.

You can also tap the MiniPlayer to open the full-screen player, where you can access more options—change the playback speed, enhance dialogue to hear voices more clearly, and more.





Follow a show

When you find a show you like, tap ＋ to add it to your library. You can choose whether to automatically download new episodes of shows you follow and get notifications when new episodes are available.

Want to learn more?

- Find podcasts on iPhone
- Listen to podcasts on iPhone
- Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone
- Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone
- Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone
- View podcast transcripts on iPhone

Previous
Print photos

Next
Find podcasts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Organize your podcast library on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can organize the podcasts you follow, catch up on the latest episodes, and create your own stations.

View your podcast library

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library at the bottom of the screen to see the following options:

- *Shows:* Tap Followed to view shows you follow. If you downloaded or saved episodes from podcasts you don't follow, tap All to see them. You can tap any show to see its information or the episodes you downloaded or saved.
- *Channels:* See channels you subscribe to, channels you added to your favorites, and channels that have shows you follow. You can tap a channel to browse all of its shows.
- *Categories:* See categories you added to your favorites, along with categories for any shows you follow.
- *Saved:* See episodes you saved.
- *Downloaded:* See episodes you downloaded. You can listen to these episodes without an internet connection.
- *Latest Episodes:* See the most recent episodes from each show you follow. To change how long episodes stay in this playlist, tap •••.
- *Stations:* If you created stations, each one is listed.

Change the episode playback order

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Touch and hold a show, then tap Settings.
4. Choose an option under Episode Order.

   When you play an episode from the show page, the remaining episodes play based on the order you choose.

Limit the number of downloads from each podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Touch and hold a show, then tap Settings.
4. Tap Automatically Download, then choose an option.

Mark an episode as played

Do any of the following:

- *While viewing show information:* Swipe right on an episode, then tap Played.
- *While viewing episode information:* Tap •••, then tap Mark as Played.

Hide episodes you already played

You can change a show's settings to hide episodes you've already played.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Shows, then touch and hold a show.
3. Tap Settings, then turn on Hide Played Episodes.

To automatically hide played episodes for all shows you follow, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then turn on Hide Played Episodes.

Create your own station

Use stations (similar to a music playlist) to group shows you follow based on themes like news, comedy, or morning commute. Episodes from the podcasts you choose are automatically added to your station regularly.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap ••• near the top right.
3. Tap New Station, add a title, then tap Save.
4. Tap Choose Podcasts, then tap the shows you want to add to the station (or turn on Include All Podcasts).
5. Tap <, then tap ×.

Tip: You can adjust the number of episodes from each podcast that are added to your station. Tap the station, tap ···, then tap Station Settings. To use the same settings for all podcasts in a station, tap Episodes, then choose an option. To adjust the settings for a single show, tap the show in the Podcasts list, then choose an option.

See also

Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

Previous
Select your favorite Podcasts categories and channels

Next
Download, save, remove, and share podcasts

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Select your favorite Podcasts categories and channels on iPhone

You can select your favorite categories and channels in the Podcasts app to get better show recommendations and access shows from your subscriptions.

Select your favorite categories

You can add categories to your favorites for better show recommendations and easier access to category pages. Favorite categories rank higher in search results and appear at the top of the Manage Categories screen with a .

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Categories, then tap Manage.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Add a category to your favorites:* Select one or more categories.
   - *Remove a category from your favorites:* Tap .

Select your favorite channels

You can add channels to your favorites to make them easier to find in your library, and remove them if you change your mind. Your favorite channels appear at the top of the Channels section in the Library with a ★.

Note: Channels doesn't appear in the Library tab if you haven't subscribed to a channel, followed a show offered by a channel, or added a channel as a favorite.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Channels.

You can also search or browse for a channel.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a channel to your favorites:* Tap the channel, then tap ☆.
   - *Remove a channel from your favorites:* Tap the channel, then tap ★.

See also

Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

Previous
Use the Podcasts widget

Next
Organize your podcast library

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes.

Download an episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *While viewing show information:* Swipe left on an episode, then tap .
   - *While viewing episode information:* Tap .

You can also tap •••, then tap Download.

Save an episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *While viewing show information:* Swipe left on an episode, then tap .

     You can also tap ••• below an episode in the list, then tap Save Episode.
   - *While viewing episode information:* Tap .

     You can also tap •••, then tap Save.

When you save an episode, it's automatically downloaded so you can listen to it offline. To turn off this option, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then turn off Download When Saving.

Remove a saved episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *From the library:* Tap Saved, then tap near the episode name.
   - *While viewing show or episode information:* Tap near the episode name.

You can also tap ••• near the episode name, then tap Unsave.

Remove a downloaded episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *From the library:* Tap Downloaded, then tap a show. Swipe left on an episode, then tap Remove Download.

     You can also tap or ••• near the episode name, then tap Remove Download.

   - *While viewing show information:* Tap next to Episodes, then tap Downloaded. Tap or near the episode name, then tap Remove Download.

   - *While viewing episode information:* Tap or •••, then tap Remove Download.

Remove all downloaded episodes from a show

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Touch and hold a show, then tap Remove Downloads.

Remove all downloaded episodes

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.
3. Tap •••, then tap Remove All Downloads.

Share a podcast show or episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *While viewing show information:* Tap ••• near the top right, then tap Share.
   - *While viewing episode information:* Tap .
   - *To specify the starting time for a shared episode:* From the full screen player, Tap , then tap Share. Tap From Start, choose From [*time*], then tap .

     The shared episode starts from the point where you're listening when you tap Share.
3. Choose how to share the show or episode.

See also

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

Previous
Organize your podcast library

Next
Subscribe to podcasts

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use the Podcasts widget on iPhone

You can add the Podcasts widget to your Home Screen to view and play episodes without opening the Podcasts app. You can add episodes from the Up Next queue, saved episodes, or episodes from a show you follow.

Add a Podcasts widget to the Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap Edit at the top left, then tap Add Widget to open the widget gallery.
3. Scroll down, then tap Podcasts.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget sizes and layouts. When you see the option you like, tap Add Widget.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

To remove the widget from your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle, tap ⊖ at the top left of the widget, then tap Remove.

See also

Listen to podcasts on iPhone

Table of Contents

Rate or review podcasts on iPhone

You can rate and review a show, read reviews from other listeners, and delete a review you wrote if you later change your mind.

Rate or review a show

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Search or browse for a show.
3. Tap the show you want to rate or review, then scroll down to Ratings & Reviews.
4. Do any of the following:
   - *Rate a show:* Tap a star to rate the show from 1 to 5.
   - *Review a show:* Tap Write a Review. Tap a star to rate the show, enter your review, then tap .
   - *Edit a review:* Tap Write a Review, make any changes, then tap .

Delete a rating or review

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home at the bottom of the screen, then tap or your profile picture.
3. Tap your name (you may need to sign in), then tap Ratings and Reviews.
4. Tap Edit, then tap .
5. Tap Done.

See also

Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

Previous
Follow your favorite podcasts

Next
Use the Podcasts widget

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Save, rename, or move PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF or image.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Save the file and return to the main menu:* Tap <.
   - *Rename the file:* Tap next to the filename, then tap Rename. Enter a new filename, then tap Done on the onscreen keyboard.
   - *Copy the PDF or image to the Clipboard:* Tap, then tap Copy.
   - *Create a duplicate:* Tap next to the filename, then tap Duplicate.
   - *Export PDF or image in a different format:* See Export or compress PDFs and images.
   - *Move the file:* Tap next to the filename, then tap Move. Tap next to Preview, then select a new location.

See also

Open and view PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Lock PDFs in Preview on iPhone

Print PDFs or images in Preview on iPhone

Print PDFs or images in Preview on iPhone

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF or image.
3. Tap next to the filename, then tap Print.
4. Select a printer, then tap .

See also

Open and view PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Scan text and documents in Preview on iPhone

Lock PDFs in Preview on iPhone

Export or compress PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Share PDFs or images

Next
Get started with Reminders

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Create an image in Preview on iPhone

When you create an image in the Preview app, you can start with a blank image or with pasted content that was copied to the Clipboard.

Create an empty image

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Tap New Document, then choose New Empty Image.

Use an image from the Clipboard

1. Do any of the following to copy an image to the Clipboard:
   - *From the Photos app:* Select an image, tap, then tap Copy Photo.
   - *From the Files app:* Touch and hold an image file, then tap Copy.
   - *From the Preview app:* Touch and hold an image file, then tap Copy. You can also open an image file, tap, then tap Copy.
2. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
3. Tap New Document, then choose New from Clipboard.

You can annotate an empty image or an image from the Clipboard. Tap, choose a drawing tool, then draw with your finger. You can also tap, then choose an option such as a shape, sticker, or text.

See also

Duplicate and copy photos and videos on iPhone

Save, rename, or move PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Export or compress PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Scan text and documents

Next
Share PDFs or images

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Reply to an email with a PDF attachment in Preview on iPhone

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Open an email with a PDF attached, then tap the attachment to view it.
3. Tap Preview in the toolbar to open it in the Preview app.
4. Fill out or annotate the PDF.
5. Go back to the Mail app, then open the original email.
6. Tap, tap, then tap Attach File.

   A reply to the sender appears in your inbox in the Mail app, with the updated PDF attached.
7. Locate the updated PDF, then tap to select it.
8. Optionally, add text to the reply.
9. Tap.

See also

Add, delete, rotate, move, or crop PDF pages in Preview on iPhone

Save, rename, or move PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Table of Contents

Export or compress PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

You can export a PDF or image as a HEIC, JPEG, JPEG-2000, PDF, PNG, or TIFF file. You can also compress the file.

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF or image.
3. Tap next to the filename, then tap Export.
4. Select a file format.

   Available formats are HEIC, JPEG, PDF, PNG, and TIFF.
5. Optionally, use the slider to adjust the file size.

See also

Save, rename, or move PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Add, delete, rotate, move, or crop PDF pages in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Lock PDFs

Next
Reply to an email with a PDF attachment

Helpful? Yes No

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then enter a description.

Create a reminder without switching apps

To create a reminder over any app or screen, do any of the following:

- Add to Control Center, then tap in Control Center.
- On supported models, assign Reminders to the Action button, then press and hold the Action button.

Create a reminder in Calendar

See Use Reminders in Calendar.

Get intelligent suggestions

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can get suggested reminders from text in other apps—like tasks, grocery items, and follow-ups—based on emails or other text on your iPhone. See Use Apple Intelligence in Reminders on iPhone.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone

Add details in Reminders on iPhone

Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPhone

Select version:

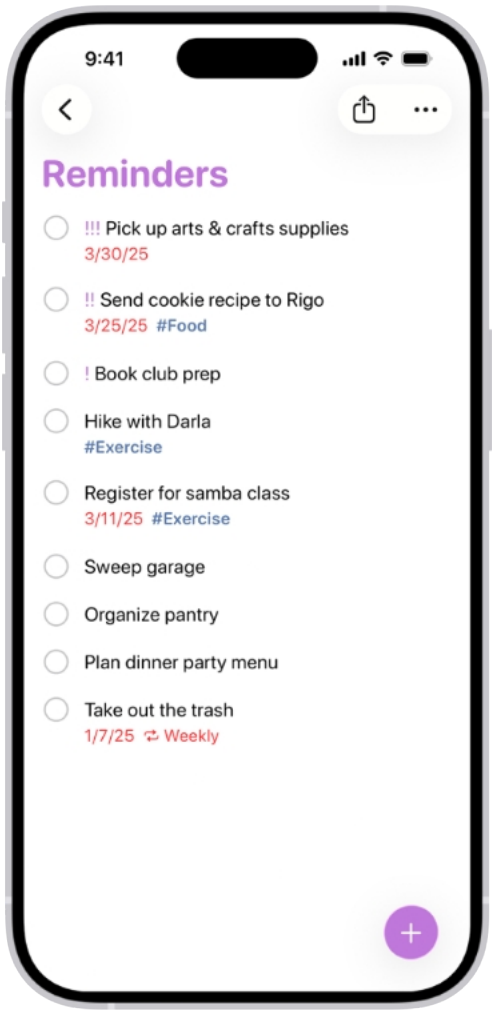
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create reminders on iPhone

It’s easy to create reminders on your iPhone. You can add them in the Reminders and Calendar apps, or create one instantly without leaving the app you’re currently in.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, “Add artichokes to my groceries list.” Learn how to use Siri.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren’t available when using other accounts.

Create a reminder

Table of Contents

Share PDFs or images in Preview on iPhone

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF or image.
3. Tap, then choose whether to collaborate on the file, send a copy of it, or copy it to the Clipboard. When you copy a file to the Clipboard, you can paste it into another app.
4. If you choose Collaborate, tap next to "Only invited people can edit," then do one of the following:
   - *Allow only invitees to view and edit the contents:* Tap "Only invited people," then tap "Can make changes."

     Turn off "Allow others to invite" if you don't want people you share the file with to invite others to view and edit it.
   - *Allow only invitees to view the contents:* Tap "Only invited people," then tap "View only."
   - *Allow anyone with the link to view and edit the contents:* Tap "Anyone with the link," then tap "Can make changes."
   - *Allow anyone with the link to view the contents:* Tap "Anyone with the link," then tap "View only."
5. Tap.
6. Choose a sharing method, such as Mail or Messages.

See also

Reply to an email with a PDF attachment in Preview on iPhone

Lock PDFs in Preview on iPhone

Export or compress PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Create an image

Next
Print PDFs or images

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

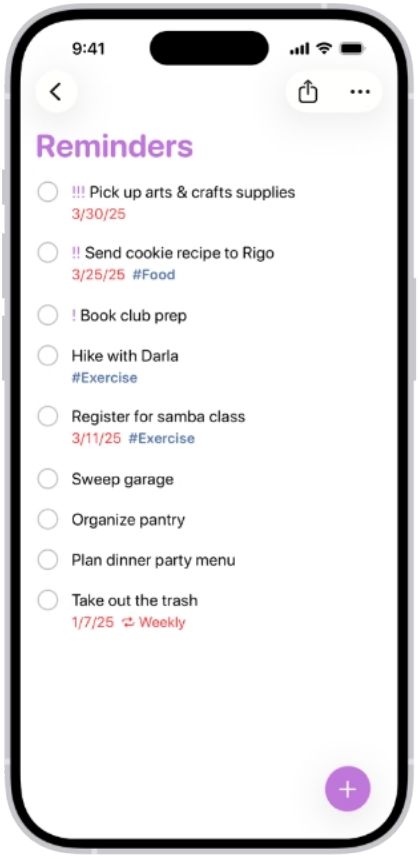
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get started with Reminders on iPhone

The Reminders app helps you remember anything you need to track. You can set reminders, make grocery lists, create checklists for projects, and organize tasks in to-do lists.

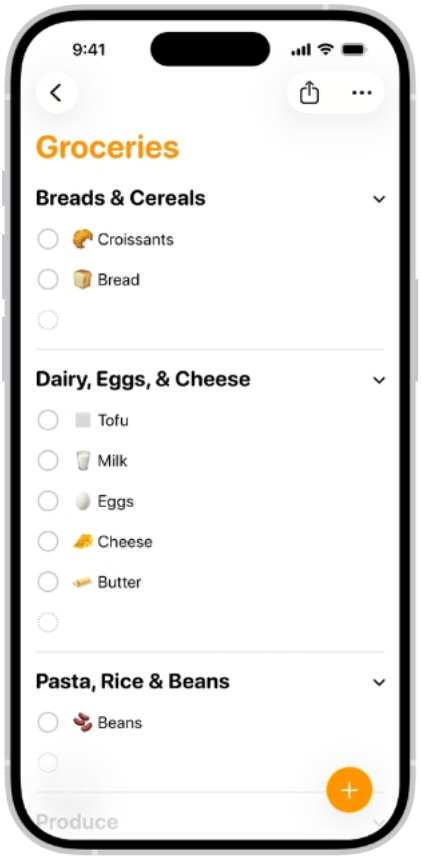


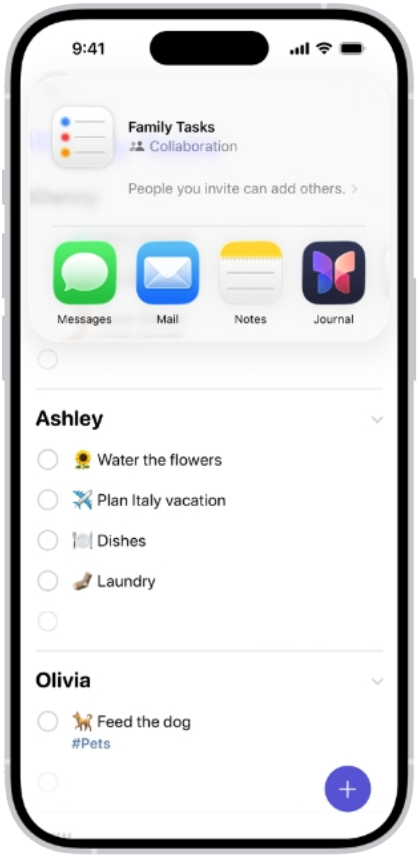
Set a reminder

Simply type, dictate, or ask Siri when you need to remember something.

Create a grocery list

Make your shopping easier with a grocery list that automatically sorts items into categories. To convert a regular list into a grocery list, tap ···, tap Show List Info, tap List Type, then choose Groceries.



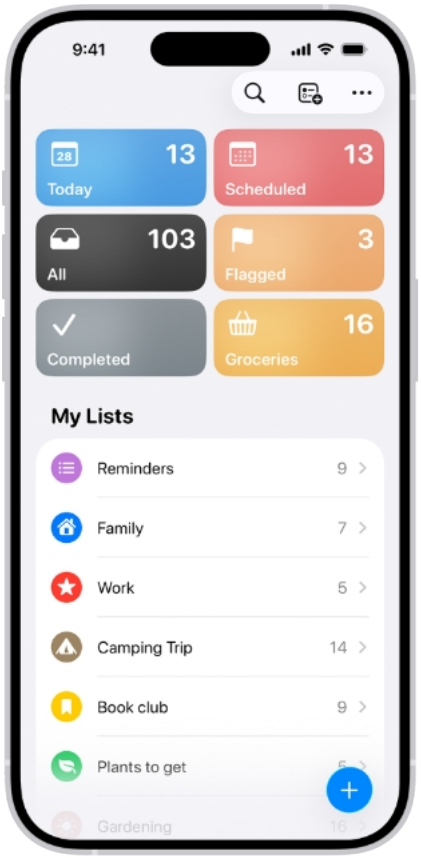


Collaborate on a list

To invite people to work on a list, tap, then choose a sharing option.

Organize your reminders

You can create new lists to suit your needs, categorize with tags, and manage your reminders with Smart Lists.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Want to learn more?

- Create reminders on iPhone
- Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone
- Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone
- Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

Previous
Print PDFs or images

Next
Create reminders

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Scan text and documents in Preview on iPhone

You can scan text or a document to create a PDF.

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Scan Documents.
3. Position the iPhone camera so the text or document appears on the screen.

   iPhone automatically captures the page. To capture the scan yourself instead of automatically, tap Auto (the label changes to Manual), then tap the Shutter button.
4. Repeat the step above to scan additional pages.
5. Tap the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen to crop, rotate, or adjust the coloring of the scan.
6. Tap when you're finished scanning.

See also

Add, delete, rotate, move, or crop PDF pages in Preview on iPhone

Save, rename, or move PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

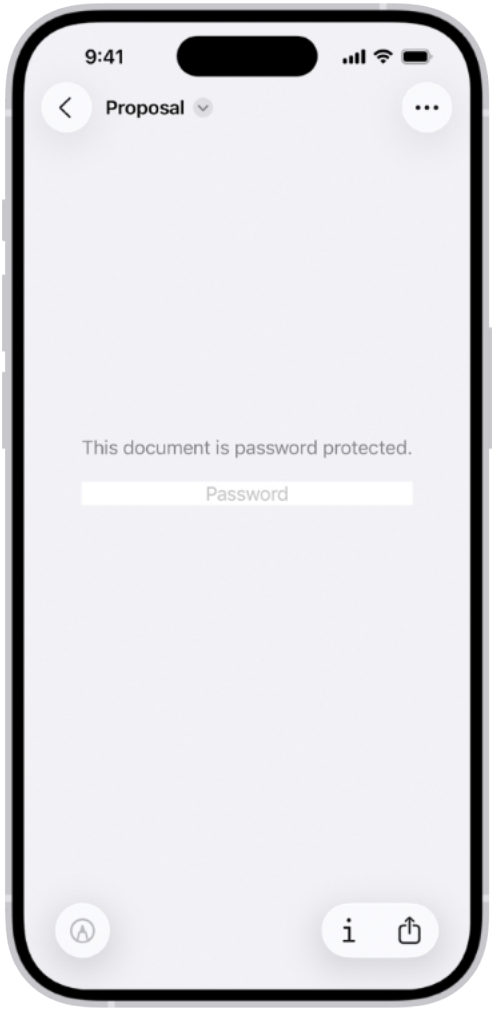
Previous
Reply to an email with a PDF attachment

Next
Create an image

Table of Contents

Lock PDFs in Preview on iPhone

You can lock a PDF document with a password to prevent others from editing or deleting your work.



1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF.

   Important: To keep a copy that's not password-protected, tap , then tap Duplicate.
3. Tap next to the filename, then tap Lock.
4. Turn on Require Password, then enter the same password in the Password and Verify fields.

5. Tap Done.

See also

Add, delete, rotate, move, or crop PDF pages in Preview on iPhone

Export or compress PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Save, rename, or move PDFs and images

Next
Export or compress PDFs and images

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone

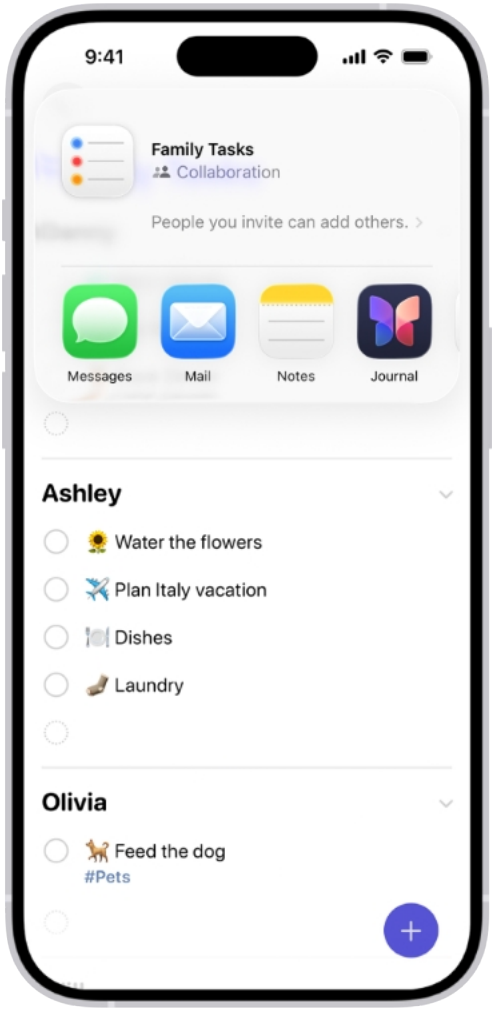
In the Reminders app, you can use iCloud to share to-do lists. You can collaborate and assign tasks to other people who also use iCloud.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Collaborate on a list using iCloud

You can share a list and collaborate with people who use iCloud. People who accept the invitation can add and edit items, mark items as completed, and all the participants can see everyone's changes. Everyone you collaborate with must be signed in to their Apple Account and have Reminders turned on in iCloud settings.

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. View the list you want to share, then tap.



3. By default, participants on the list can invite other people. To restrict sharing, tap "People you invite can add others," then turn off "Allow others to invite."
4. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Messages or Mail).

   If you send the invitation in Messages, you get activity updates in the Messages conversation when someone makes changes in the shared list. Tap the updates to go to the shared list.

Assign items in a shared list

You can assign a task to any person on the list, including yourself.

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. In the shared list, create or edit a reminder, then do either of the following:

   - Type @ followed by the person's name or choose a person from the menu above the keyboard.
   - Tap , then choose a person.

Tip: To quickly see all items assigned to you, use the Assigned to Me Smart List.

Turn notifications on or off for a shared list

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. In the shared list, tap , then tap Manage Shared List.
3. Below Notify When, turn on or off any of the following:
   - *Adding Items:* Receive an alert when someone adds an item to the list.
   - *Completing Items:* Receive an alert when someone completes an item on the list.

See also

Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Previous
Use Smart Lists

Next
Print a list

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

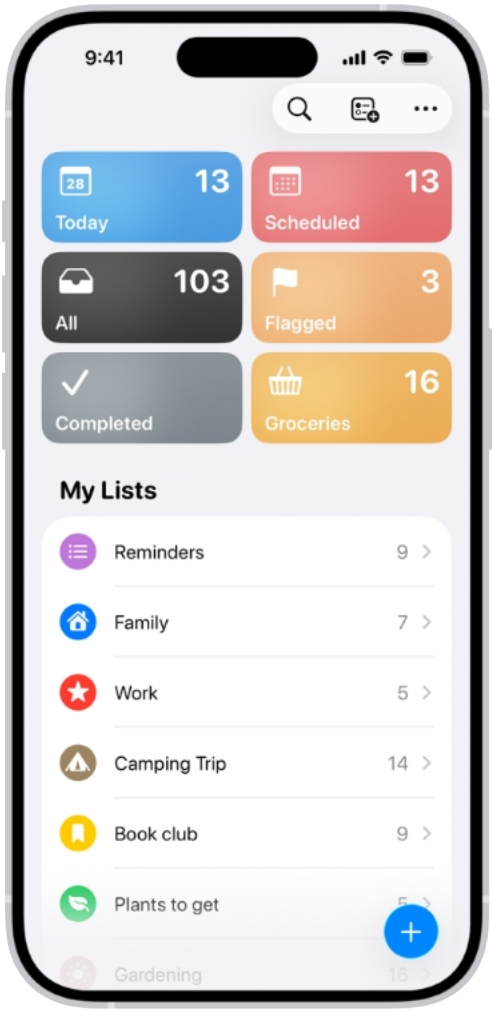
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can create new lists, organize the lists into groups, and pin lists for quick access.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Make a new list

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.
4. Tap List Type, then choose Standard, Groceries, or Smart Lists.
5. Tap .

Pin an important list above the other lists for easy access

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a list, then tap Pin. You can also swipe right on the list, then tap .

   You can have a maximum of nine pinned lists.

To change the position of a pinned list, tap •••, tap Edit Lists, drag ☰ to a new position, then tap .

Create a group of lists

You can organize your lists in groups such as work, school, or shopping.

To create a group, simply drag a list onto another list. You can also do the following:

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap •••, then tap Edit Lists.
3. Tap Add Group, enter a name, select the lists to include in the group (optional), then tap .

Edit and rearrange lists and groups

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, tap Edit Lists, then do any of the following:

    - *Rearrange lists and groups:* Drag a list or group to a new location. You can even move a list to a different group.
    - *Change the name and appearance of a list or group:* Tap ⓘ.

Delete a list or group

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Swipe left on the list or group, then tap .

    When you delete a group, you have the option to keep the lists.

Deleted lists or groups are moved to Recently Deleted. You can recover them within 30 days of deletion. After 30 days, they're permanently deleted.

See also

Tag items in Reminders on iPhone

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

Previous
Search your lists

Next
Tag items

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPhone

In a Reminders list, you can check off items to hide them, or you can permanently delete items. With the Reminders widget, you can complete items from the iPhone Home Screen or Lock Screen.

Mark an item as completed

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, tap the empty circle next to an item to mark the item as completed.

   Completed items are hidden on your list.

To unhide completed items, tap •••, then tap Show Completed. To delete the completed items, tap Clear.

Remove or delete an item

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, swipe left on an item, then tap .

If you change your mind, you can recover the deleted item—tap with three fingers or shake to undo.

Tip: You can recover or permanently delete items in the Recently Deleted list.

Use the Reminders widget

With the Reminders widget, you can complete items from the Home Screen without opening the Reminders app .

1. On the iPhone Home Screen, add the Reminders widget.
2. To change the list shown in the widget, touch and hold the widget, tap Edit Widget, then choose a list.
3. To complete an item, tap the item in the widget.

See also

Edit and organize a list in Reminders on iPhone

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

Previous
Add details

Next
Edit and organize a list

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Print a list in Reminders on iPhone

You can print a grocery list, checklist, to-do items, project tasks, and more.

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. View the list you want to print.
3. Tap •••, then tap Print.

See also

Print from iPhone

Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone

Previous
Share and collaborate

Next
Work with templates

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Tag items in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your reminders. You can add one or more tags to a reminder, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your reminders across lists using the Tag Browser or Smart Lists.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Add tags

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. When you create or edit an item in a list, tap #, then type a tag.

   A tag can be only one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to an item.

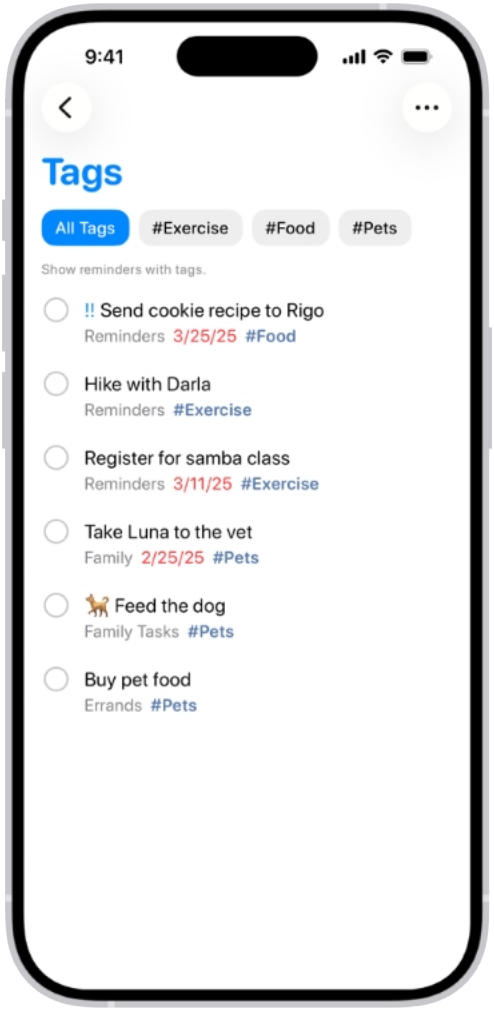
View items with tags

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, do any of the following:

   - *View items with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags, then choose to view items matching any or all of the selected tags.

     Tip: To save this list as a Smart List, tap ···, then tap Create Smart List.

   - *View all items with tags:* Tap All Tags.



Rename or delete a tag

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner).
3. Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.

   When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Lists that use it.

See also

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

Search through all your lists in Reminders on iPhone

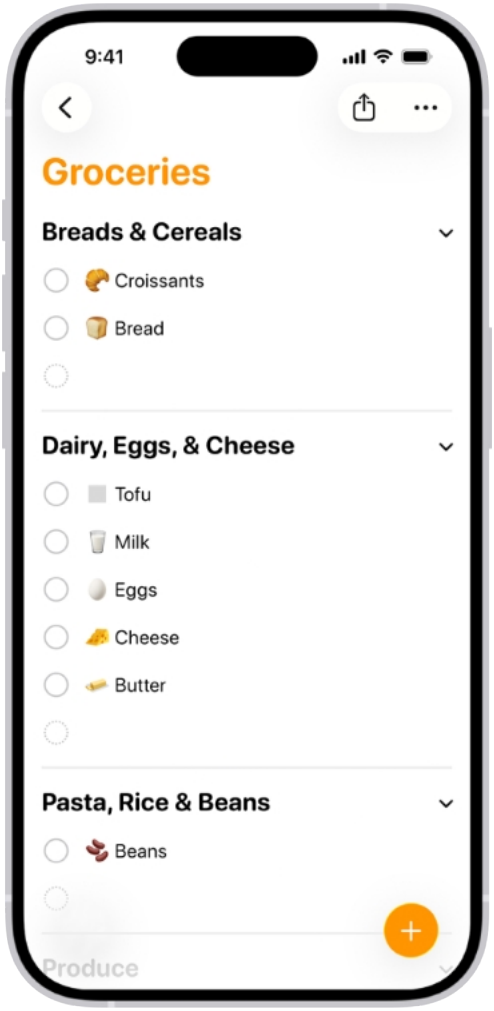
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can create a grocery list to make shopping easier. Items are automatically sorted into categories such as Produce and Seafood. You can change how items are grouped, and the list remembers your preferences.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Create a new grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.

2. Tap .
3. Enter a name for the list, tap List Type, then choose Groceries.
4. Choose a color and symbol for the list (optional).
5. Tap .

Convert an existing list to a grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a list, then tap ···.
3. Tap Show List Info.
4. Tap List Type, then choose Groceries.
5. Tap .

Add an item to your grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. In your grocery list, tap , then enter a description.
3. To enter more information, tap Add Note.
4. Tap ⓘ to edit the item details. For example, you can attach a photo, set a location-based reminder, or flag an important item.
5. Tap .

Items added to the list are automatically placed in categories. If you enter grocery items in a language different from the system language of your iPhone, you can add an additional language in Settings. (Grocery categorization is available for supported languages.)

See also

Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPhone

Edit and organize a list in Reminders on iPhone

Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone

Select version:

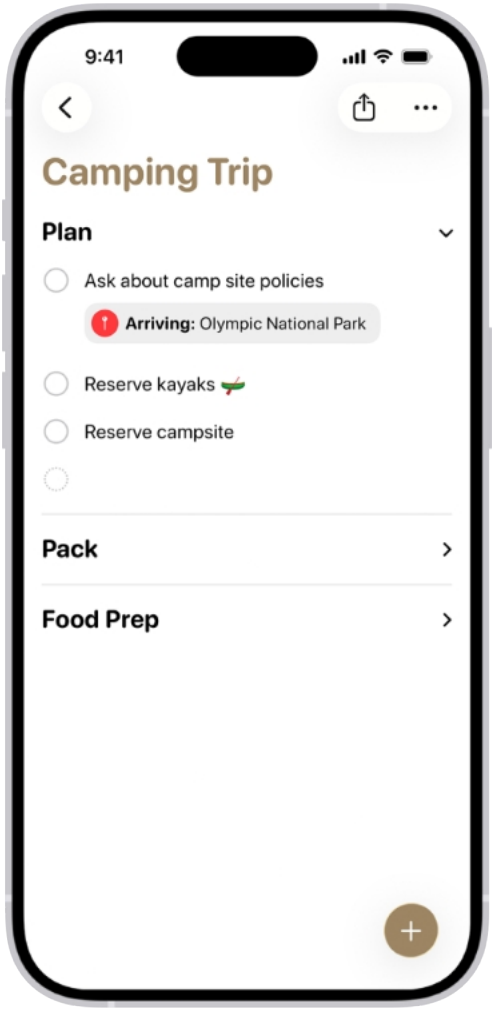
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Edit and organize a list in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can organize a list with sections and subtasks. You can also view the sections as columns and easily move items to different columns.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.



Edit a list

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, tap ···, then do any of the following:

- *Change the list name, type, color, or icon:* Tap Show List Info.
- *Edit multiple items:* Tap Select Reminders or Select Items, then select the items you want to edit. You can also drag two fingers over the items. Use the buttons at the bottom of the screen to add a date and time, move, delete, assign, complete, tag, or flag the selected items.
- *Sort items by due date, creation date, priority, or title:* (not available in all Smart Lists) Tap Sort By, then choose an option.

  When you sort or reorder a list, the new order is applied to the list on your other devices where you're using updated reminders. If you sort or reorder a shared list, other participants also see the new order (if they use updated reminders).
- *Remove the list:* Tap Delete List.

Manually reorder or recategorize items in a list

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, touch and hold an item you want to move, then drag it to a new location.

Organize with sections

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, do any of the following:

   - *Create a new section:* Tap •••, tap New Section, then enter a name.
   - *Collapse a section:* Tap ⌄.
   - *Expand a section:* Tap ›.
   - *Rename section:* Tap the section name, then enter a new name.
   - *Move a section:* Touch and hold the section, then drag it to a new position.

     Note: You can't move the Others section.

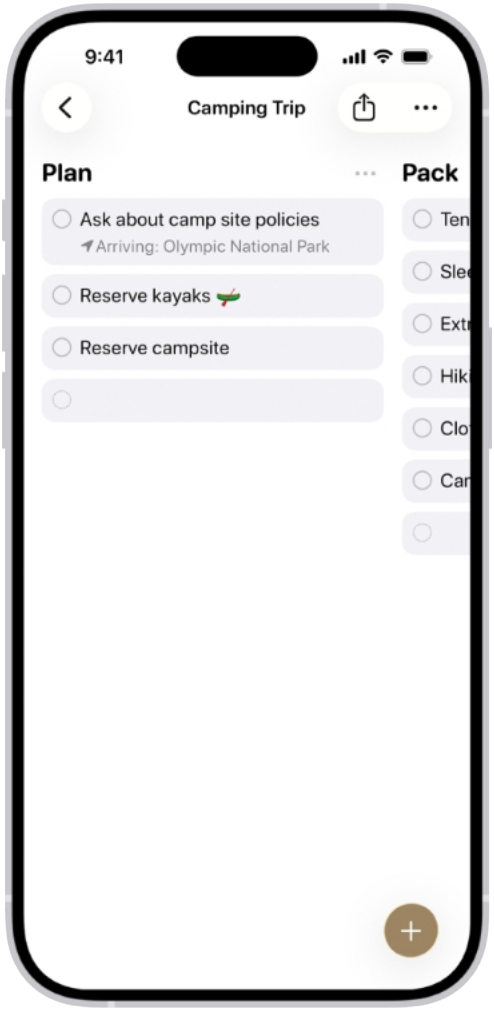
- *Remove a section:* Swipe left on the section, then tap Delete.

  Note: Removing a section will also delete the section's reminders.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, you can automatically categorize related reminders into sections within a list. See Use Apple Intelligence in Reminders.

View the sections as columns

You can view the list in columns, making it easy to visualize and recategorize the items.



1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, tap ···, then tap View as Columns.
3. To recategorize an item, drag it into a different column.

Create subtasks

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.

2. While viewing a list, swipe right on an item, then tap Indent. Or drag an item onto another item.

If you complete a main task, the subtasks are also completed. If you delete or move a main task, the subtasks are also deleted or moved.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPhone

Tag items in Reminders on iPhone

Previous
Complete and remove items

Next
Search your lists

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

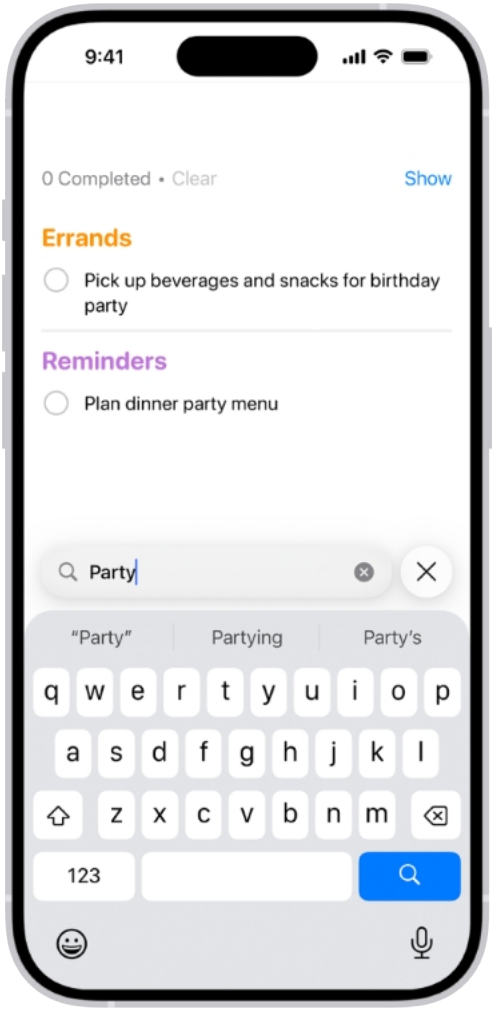
Table of Contents

Search through all your lists in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can easily search through all your lists for items that contain specific text.

Search for items in all your lists

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap
3. In the search field, enter a word or phrase.



See also

Tag items in Reminders on iPhone

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

Previous
Edit and organize a list

Next
Organize multiple lists

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

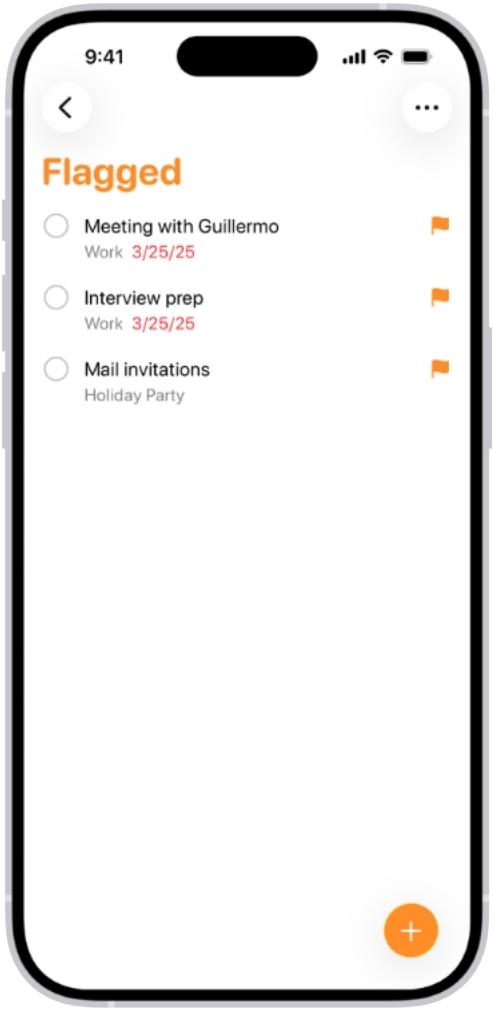
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can easily filter items across all your lists using Smart Lists. You can create custom Smart Lists to automatically include items filtered by tags, dates, times, locations, flags, and priority. You can choose more than one tag (such as #gardening and #errands) and combine them with other filters.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Automatically organize items using the default Smart Lists

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap Edit Lists.
3. Turn on or off the following Smart Lists:

    - *Today:* Items scheduled for today and overdue items
    - *Scheduled:* Items scheduled by date or time
    - *All:* All items across all your lists
    - *Flagged:* Items with a flag

- *Completed:* Items with a checkmark
- *Assigned to Me:* Items assigned to you in shared lists
- *Groceries:* Grocery items
- *Siri Suggestions:* Suggested items detected in Mail and Messages

---

Make a custom Smart List

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Enter a name for the list, tap List Type, then choose Smart List.
4. Tap Edit Filters, choose one or more filters, then choose to include items matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, locations, and more. Tap .
5. Choose a color and symbol for the list (optional).
6. Tap .

Convert a list to a Smart List

When you convert a list, its items are moved to the top level of the default list and tagged with the name of the Smart List.

Note: You can't convert a shared list.

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. View the list you want to convert.
3. Tap •••, tap Show List Info, scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart List.

See also

Tag items in Reminders on iPhone

Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPhone

Select version:

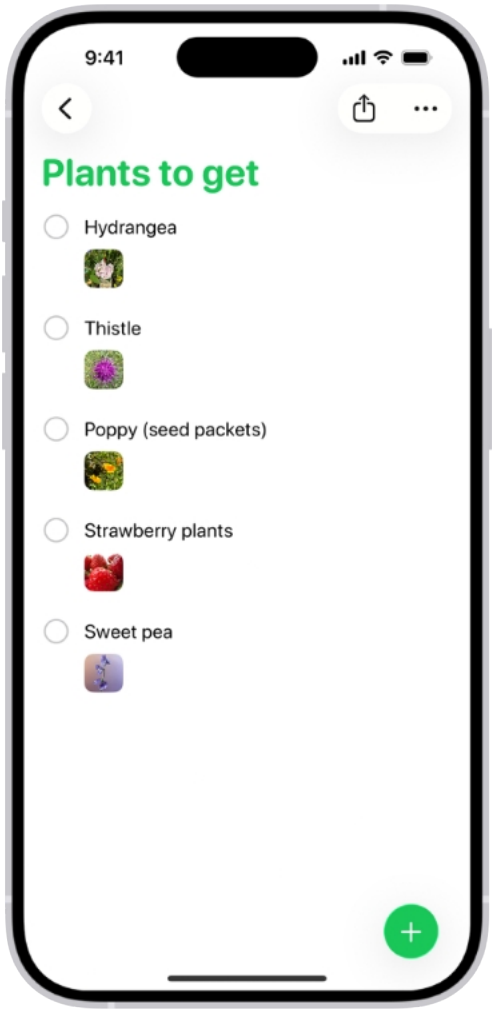
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add details in Reminders on iPhone

You can add details to your reminders such as notes, links, due dates, and photos.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.



Add a note, URL, and other details to a reminder

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item.
3. Tap Add Note, then add more information.

4. Tap ⓘ to edit the item details. For example, you can set a date and time, set a location-based reminder, flag an important item, or attach a photo.

Set when and where to be reminded

You can be reminded on a certain date, at a specific time or location, or when you're texting someone in Messages.

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item, then do any of the following:

   - *Schedule a date and time:* Tap, then choose an option.

     Tip: Reminders with a due date appear as an all-day event in Calendar. See Use Reminders in Calendar.

   - *Set a recurring reminder:* Tap ⓘ, turn on Date or Time, tap Repeat, then choose the frequency.

   - *Get an early reminder before the scheduled date and time:* Tap ⓘ, tap Early Reminder, then choose when you want to be reminded. For example, "5 minutes before," "2 days before," or another choice.

   - *Add a location:* Tap, then choose where you want to be reminded—for example, when you arrive home or get into a car with a Bluetooth® connection to your iPhone.

     Note: To receive location-based reminders, you must allow Reminders to use your precise location. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services. Turn on Location Services, tap Reminders, choose While Using the App, then turn on Precise Location.

   - *Get a reminder in Messages:* Tap ⓘ, turn on When Messaging, then choose someone from your contacts list. The reminder appears the next time you chat with that person in Messages.

Set a flag and priority

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Flag an important item:* Tap ⚐.
   - *Set a priority:* Tap ⓘ, tap Priority, then choose Low, Medium, or High.

Add a photo or scan a document

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item, then tap 📷.
3. Do any of the following:

   - Take a new photo.
   - Choose a photo from your photo library.
   - Scan a document.
   - Scan and insert text.

See also

Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPhone

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

Previous
Make a grocery list

Next
Complete and remove items

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Save webpages to read later in Safari on iPhone

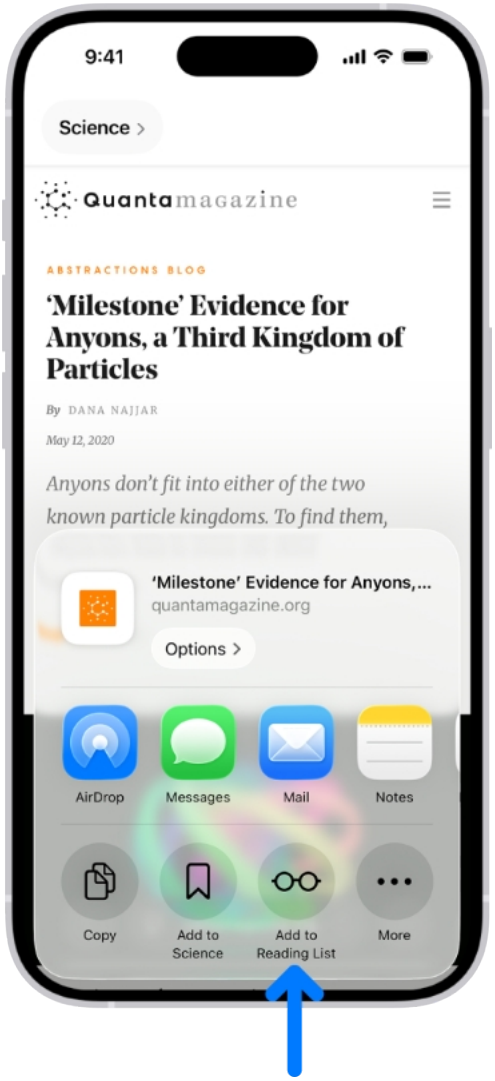
Save interesting items in your Reading List so you can revisit them later. You can even save the items in your Reading List and read them when you're not connected to the internet.

Add the current webpage to your Reading List

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap Share.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap ⬆. See Change the layout in Safari.
3. Tap Add to Reading List.

   Tip: To add a linked webpage without opening it, touch and hold the link, then tap Add to Reading List.



View your Reading List

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Bookmarks.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap .

   Recently saved bookmarks, favorites, and reading list items appear at the top of the screen. The newest is on the left, and you can scroll through the others. Touch and hold a reading list item to copy, open, mark it as read, or delete it.
3. Tap .

To delete an item from your Reading List, swipe left on the item.

Automatically save all Reading List items to iCloud for offline reading

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Turn on Automatically Save Offline (below Reading List).

See also

Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone

Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Open as Web App

Next
Find links shared with you

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone

You can easily find and organize web links that friends share with you in Messages conversations. Links shared with you are added to the Safari start page (the page that first appears when you open a new Safari window) below Suggestions. You can keep those links on your start page, remove them, or organize related links into Tab Groups. (Safari must be turned on in Settings > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts.)

See links from friends in Safari

To find links shared with you, you can display them on your Safari start page. Then, every time you open a new page, you see them listed there.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap New Tab.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap , then tap . See Change the layout in Safari.

   Links shared with you appear below Suggestions. If you don't see a Suggestions section, scroll down, tap Edit, then turn on Suggestions. If you don't see links shared with you, turn on Shared with You below Show In Suggestions.

   To change where Suggestions appears on your start page, drag .

Tip: You can continue the conversation without leaving Safari. Tap the button below the link preview to open the Messages conversation where the link was shared.

Remove a link from the Shared with You section

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. While viewing your shared links, touch and hold the preview image of a link.

3. Tap Remove Link.

Organize shared links in a Tab Group

You can group related shared web links into Tab Groups to make them easier to find.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the preview image of the link you want to move, then tap Open in Tab Group.
3. Tap New Tab Group to create one, or add the link to a Tab Group you already have.

To learn more about Shared with You, see Share content in Messages.

See also

Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF in Safari on iPhone

Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Save pages to a Reading List

Next
Download a PDF

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

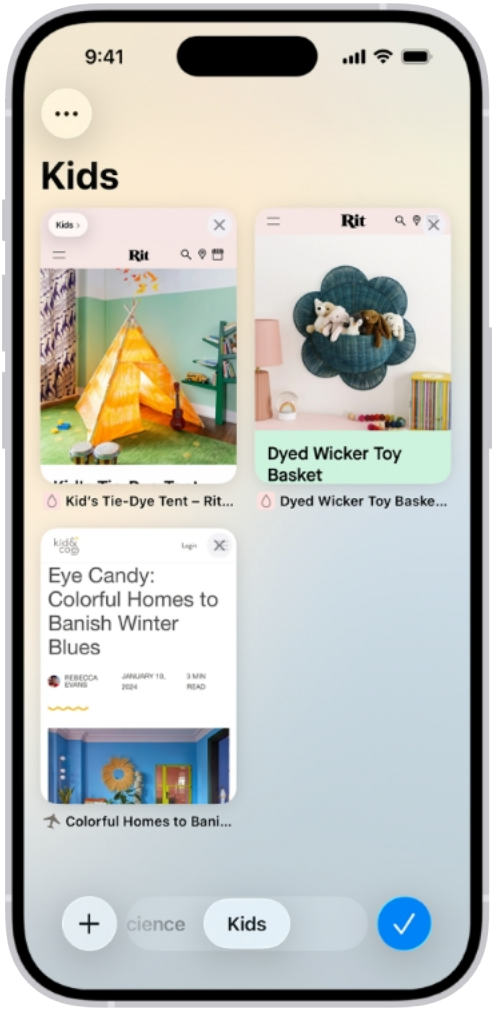
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone

You can create Tab Groups to keep tabs organized and make them easier to find again later.



Create a new Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap All Tabs.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap . See Change the layout in Safari.

3. Touch and hold a tab, tab Move Tab, then tap New Tab Group.
4. Enter a name, then tap ✓.

Tip: To move between your Tab Groups, tap the tab groups in the bottom center of the screen.

Reorder tabs in a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap All Tabs to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap ⧉.
3. Tap ··· in the upper-left corner, tap Arrange Tabs By, then choose an option.

   Or touch and hold the tab, then drag it to a new position.

Rename a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap All Tabs to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap ⧉.
3. Tap ··· in the upper-left corner, then tap Rename Tab Group.
4. Enter a name, then tap ✓.

Pin a tab at the top of a Tab Group

You can customize your Tab Groups with pinned tabs in each group. The pinned tab stays at the top of the Tab Group.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap All Tabs to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap ⧉.
3. Touch and hold the tab you want to pin, then tap Pin Tab.

Move a tab to another Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap All Tabs to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap .
3. Touch and hold a tab, then tap Move Tab.
4. Choose one of the Tab Groups you created previously, or create a new group.

See also

Open and close tabs in Safari on iPhone

View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone

Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Open and close tabs

Next
View your tabs from another Apple device

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

You can bookmark a website, add a website to Favorites, or add a website icon to the Home Screen to easily revisit it later.

Bookmark a favorite website

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Open the webpage you want to bookmark.
3. Tap ···, tap "Add Bookmark to," choose a location, then tap Save.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, touch and hold 📖, then tap Add Bookmark. See Change the layout in Safari.

View and organize your bookmarks

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap Bookmarks.

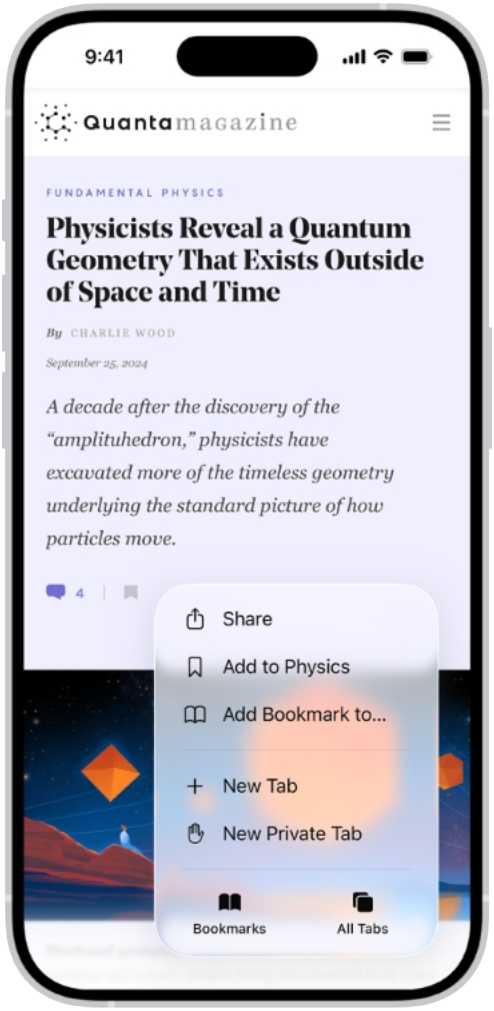
   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap 📖.

   Recently saved bookmarks, favorites, and reading list items appear at the top of the screen. The newest is on the left, and you can scroll through the others. Touch and hold a bookmark to copy, open, edit, or delete it.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Create a new folder:* Tap ···, tap New Folder, enter a name, then tap Save.
   - *Move a bookmark into a folder:* Touch and hold the bookmark, tap Edit, tap below Location, tap a folder, then tap Save.
   - *Delete a bookmark:* Touch and hold the bookmark, then tap Delete.

- *Rename a bookmark:* Touch and hold the bookmark, tap Edit, enter a new name, then tap Save.

- *Reorder bookmarks:* Tap ···, tap Select Bookmarks, touch and hold ☰, then drag the bookmark or bookmarks folder to a new location.



See your Mac bookmarks on iPhone

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All, then make sure Safari is turned on.

Note: You must also have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac and be signed in to the same Apple Account. See Set up iCloud for the Safari app on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

Add a website icon to your Home Screen

You can add a website icon to your iPhone Home Screen for quick access.

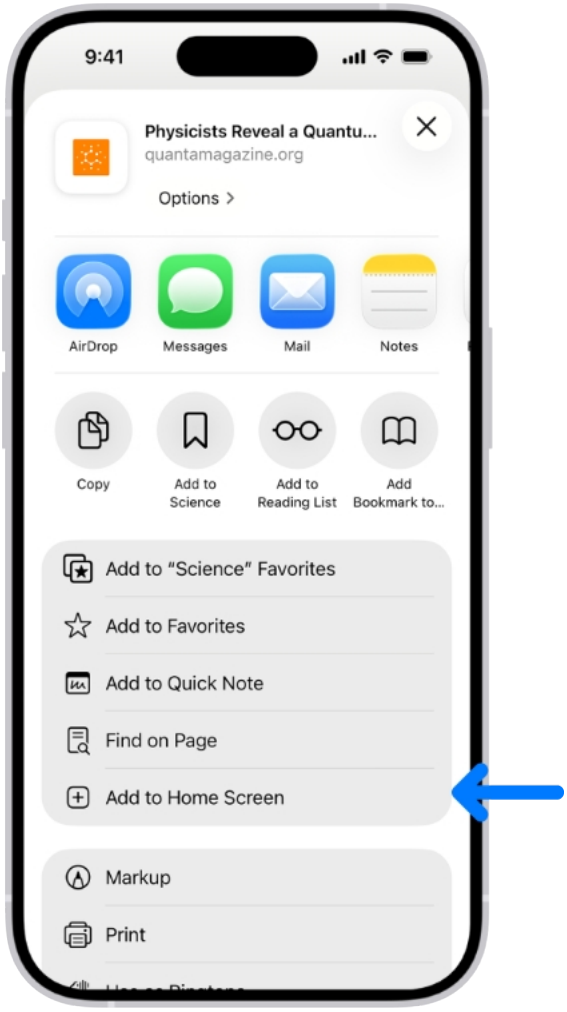
1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the website you want to add to your Home Screen.
3. Tap ···, then tap Share.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap .
4. Scroll down the list of options, then tap Add to Home Screen.

   If you don't see Add to Home Screen, you can add it. Scroll down to the bottom of the list, tap Edit Actions, then tap Add to Home Screen.

   You can choose Open as Web App to use the website as if it's an app. See Turn a website into an app.
5. Tap Add.

The icon appears only on the device where you add it.



Note: Some websites may ask for permission to send you notifications. You can change your notification settings at any time. See Change notification settings.

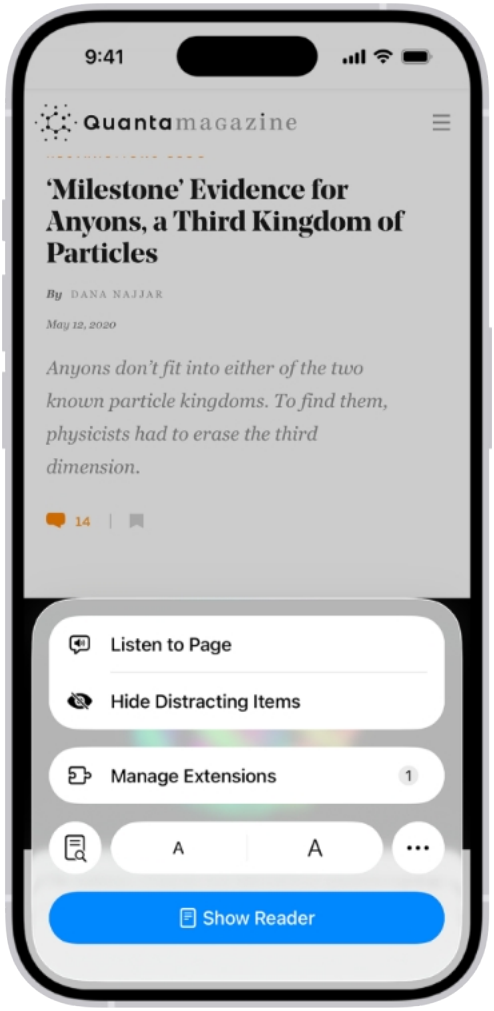
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Listen to a webpage in Safari on iPhone

You can have supported webpages read aloud in the Safari app.



Listen to a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Open the page you want to listen to.
3. Tap, then tap Listen to Page.

Pause listening

While listening to a webpage, tap , then tap .

To start listening again, tap , then tap .

See also

How to use Siri on iPhone

Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Share Tab Groups

Next
Bookmark a website

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Open and close tabs in Safari on iPhone

Use tabs to help you navigate between multiple open webpages.

Open a link in a new tab

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the link, then tap Open in New Tab.

To stay on the current webpage when you open new links in a separate tab, go to Settings > Apps > Safari > Open Links, then tap In Background.

View a tab's history

You can see which webpages you previously visited in this tab.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold < or >.

Close tabs

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap All Tabs.

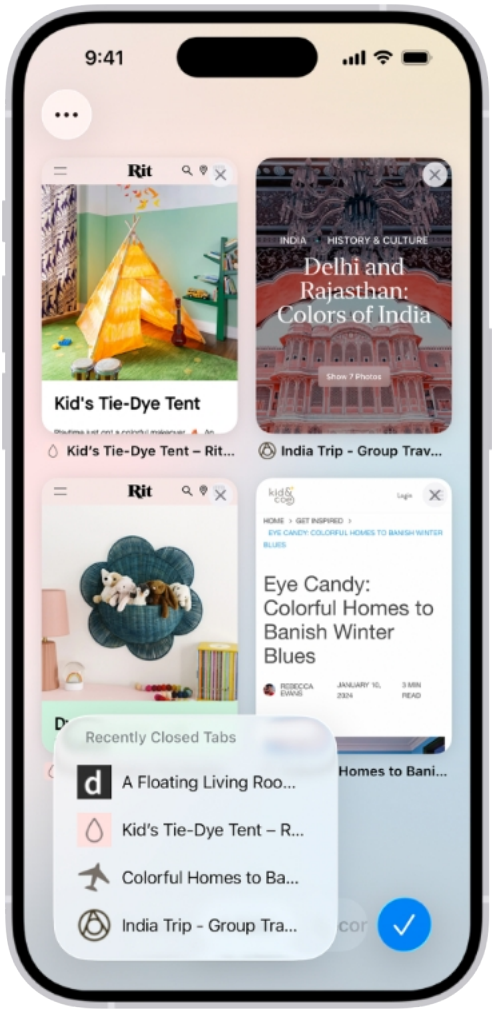
   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap . See Change the layout in Safari.
3. Tap ⊗ in the upper-right corner of a tab to close it.

Tip: To close all tabs in this Tab Group at the same time, touch and hold , then tap Close All [*number of*] Tabs.

Open a recently closed tab

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap All Tabs.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap ⧉.
3. Touch and hold +, then choose from the list of recently closed tabs.



See also

Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone

View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone

Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone

Table of Contents

Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone

You can share a Tab Group and collaborate with people who use iCloud. You can add and remove people from the Tab Group at any time, and even start a message conversation, phone call, or FaceTime call without leaving Safari. Collaborators can add and remove tabs from the Tab Group, and everyone sees updates in real time.

Everyone you collaborate with must be signed in to their Apple Account, have Safari turned on in iCloud settings, and have two-factor authentication turned on.

Share a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap Share.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap . See Change the layout in Safari.
3. Tap Messages, then choose the person or group you want to share it with.

   You get activity updates in the Messages conversation when someone makes changes in the Shared Tab Group. Tap the updates to go to the Shared Tab Group.

Add and remove people from a shared Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap at the top-right corner.
3. Tap Manage Shared Tab Group, then do any of the following:

   - *Remove someone:* Tap a name, then tap Remove Access.
   - *Add someone:* Tap Share With More People, then invite them.

- *Stop Sharing with everyone:* Tap Stop Sharing.

Start a Messages, audio, or video conversation from Safari

You can start a conversation—using Messages, FaceTime audio, or FaceTime video—with everyone that shares the Tab Group, without leaving Safari.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. In Safari, tap , then tap message, audio, or video to start the conversation.

See also

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone

View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone

Previous
View your tabs from another Apple device

Next
Listen to a webpage

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone

You can view the tabs that are open on your other Apple devices and keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across devices. You must be signed in to iCloud with the same Apple Account on all your devices to manage Safari tabs across your devices.

View tabs that are open on your other Apple devices

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap All Tabs.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap . See Change the layout in Safari.
3. Tap , then scroll to see the tabs open on your other devices at the bottom of the start page.

   To close a tab on another Apple device, touch and hold the link, then choose Close.

Note: To view tabs open on your other devices, you must have iCloud Tabs turned on for your start page. See Customize your start page.

Keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across your devices

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All, then make sure Safari is turned on.

Note: To also see tabs open on your Mac, you must have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac, be signed in to the same Apple Account, and use two-factor authentication.

See also

Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone

Open and close tabs in Safari on iPhone

Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Organize your tabs with Tab Groups

Next
Share Tab Groups

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

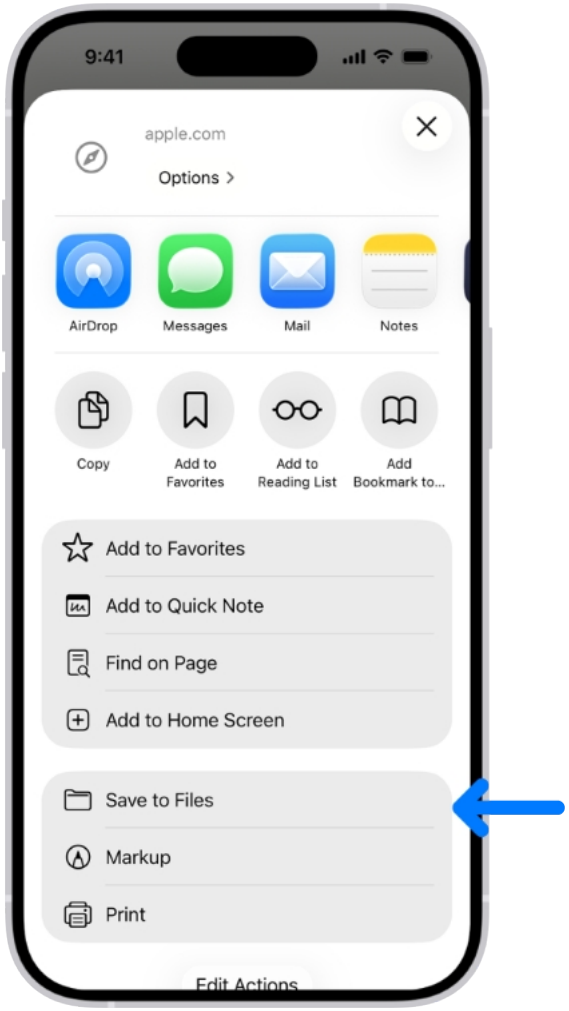
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Download a PDF from Safari to your iPhone

You can save a PDF from Safari to read later or share with others.



1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the PDF.
3. Tap ···, then tap Share.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap ⬆. See Change the layout in Safari.
4. Tap Save to Files.

5. Enter a name for the file, then tap Save.

To choose where your PDFs are saved, see Choose where to save downloads.

Previous
Find links shared with you

Next
Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Fill in personal information in Safari on iPhone

With your personal information saved on iPhone, you can automatically fill in contact information, user names, and passwords.

You can also automatically fill in payment information.

Set up AutoFill

You can save your personal information on your iPhone to speed up filling in online forms.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap AutoFill, then turn on Use Contact Info.
4. Tap My Info, then choose your contact card.

   The contact information from that card is entered when you tap AutoFill on webpages in Safari.

Fill in your contact information automatically

You can quickly add your personal information to online forms using AutoFill.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. In a form on a website that supports AutoFill, tap a blank field.
3. Tap AutoFill Contact above the keyboard, then select a contact.
4. Tap any field to make changes.

Note: You can use AutoFill to enter another person's information from your contact list. For example, if you're purchasing a gift and shipping it to a friend, you can use AutoFill to

enter their address. Tap AutoFill Contact, tap Other Contact, then choose their contact card.

Fill in your passwords automatically

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create and save strong passwords for many of your accounts. See Automatically fill in strong passwords.

Important: Never enter a password on sites with a “Not Secure” warning. See the Apple Support article If you see a “Not Secure” warning while browsing with Safari.

Turn off AutoFill

You can turn off AutoFill for your contact information and for passwords. This is helpful in situations where you don’t want your contact information to be readily available—for example, if you share a device with others.

- *Turn off AutoFill for your contact information:* Go to Settings > Apps > Safari > AutoFill, then turn off Use Contact Info.
- *Turn off AutoFill for passwords:* Go to Settings > General > AutoFill & Passwords, then turn off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

See also

About Apple Wallet on iPhone

Sign in with passkeys in Safari on iPhone

Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Previous
Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF

Next
Get extensions

Table of Contents

Turn a website into an app in Safari on iPhone

You can open and use a website as if it's an app.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the website.
3. Tap ···, then tap Share.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap . See Change the layout in Safari.
4. Scroll down the list of options, then tap Add to Home Screen.

   If you don't see Add to Home Screen, you can add it. Scroll down to the bottom of the list, tap Edit Actions, then tap Add to Home Screen.
5. Turn on Open as Web App.
6. Tap Add.

An icon for the web app is added to your Home Screen. When you tap the icon, the website opens just like an app. You can receive notifications from the web app and quit the web app like you would any app.

See also

Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

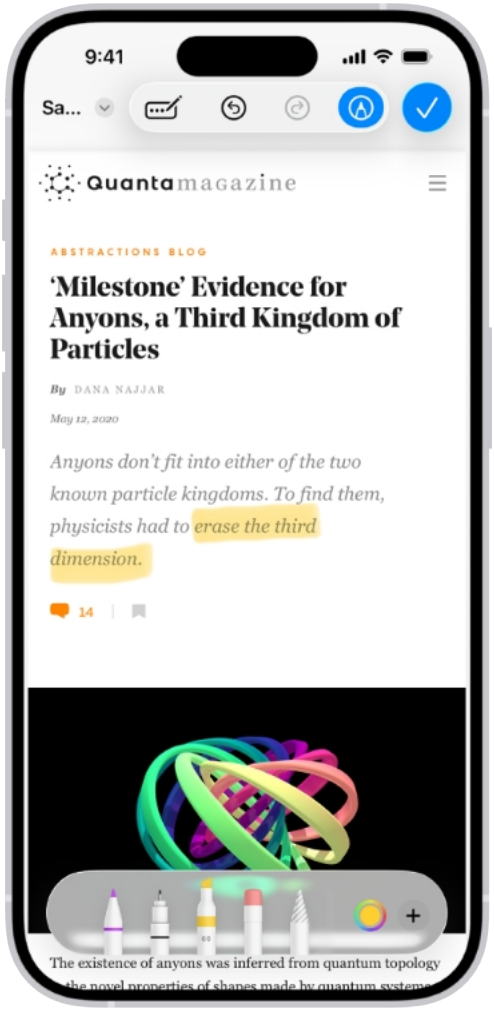
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF in Safari on iPhone

You can mark up a webpage, highlight your favorite parts, draw and write notes, and share your document as a PDF with others.



1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Go to a webpage, tap ···, then tap Share.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap ⬆. See Change the layout in Safari.
3. Tap Markup Ⓐ, then use the tools to annotate the webpage.

4. Tap ···, tap Done, then choose Save File To.

5. Enter a name for the file, then tap Save.

See also

Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone

Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Download a PDF

Next
Fill in forms

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Digital certificates and encrypted websites in Safari on iPhone

A certificate, also known as a “digital certificate” or a “public key certificate,” is a file that helps keep web communications secure.

Certificates are issued by trusted organizations, such as VeriSign, Inc. or RSA Security, Inc. When you visit an encrypted website—for example, to do online banking—Safari checks if the site’s certificate is legitimate. If it’s not, Safari warns you.

An encrypted website and Safari work together to encrypt information you exchange with the site. The key used for the encryption is contained in the site’s security certificate. This protects your sign-in information, credit card numbers, addresses, and other secure data.

If you need to connect to a website that requires a personal certificate, you’re provided with a certificate and instructions for installing it. After it’s installed, you gain authenticated access to the website automatically. If you’re unable to access it, contact the website administrator.

Important: If a website doesn’t use the HTTPS protocol, have a digital identity certificate, or encrypt information, the words “Not Secure” appear in the search field. Don’t enter personal or financial information on a website that isn’t encrypted. The website you’re visiting might not be the website you want, and information you enter is vulnerable to theft. Instead, go back to the webpage where you signed in and check for a link to another version of the site that’s encrypted—for example, “Use our secure site.” If available, use it, even if you don’t expect to view or provide private information.

Encryption ensures that your connection to a website is secure, but encryption doesn’t guarantee the website is trustworthy. Always verify the address in the Safari toolbar to confirm it’s correct. Some fraudulent websites masquerade as trusted websites by changing one or two letters of the website address.

See also

Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

Table of Contents

Enable cookies on iPhone

You can enable cookies. Some websites use cookies to keep track of your activity, such as your settings. Enabling cookies allows websites that require cookies to work normally.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Advanced, then turn off Block All Cookies.

See also

Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone

Previous
Clear your cache and cookies

Next
Hide recent searches

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

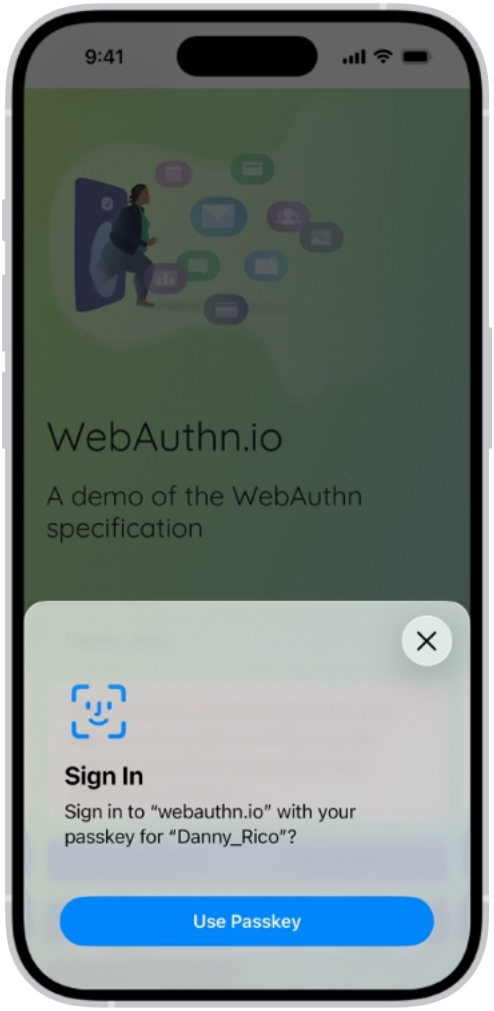
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Sign in with passkeys in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app, you can use Face ID (supported models) or Touch ID (supported models) to securely sign in to supporting websites. See Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps.



See also

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone

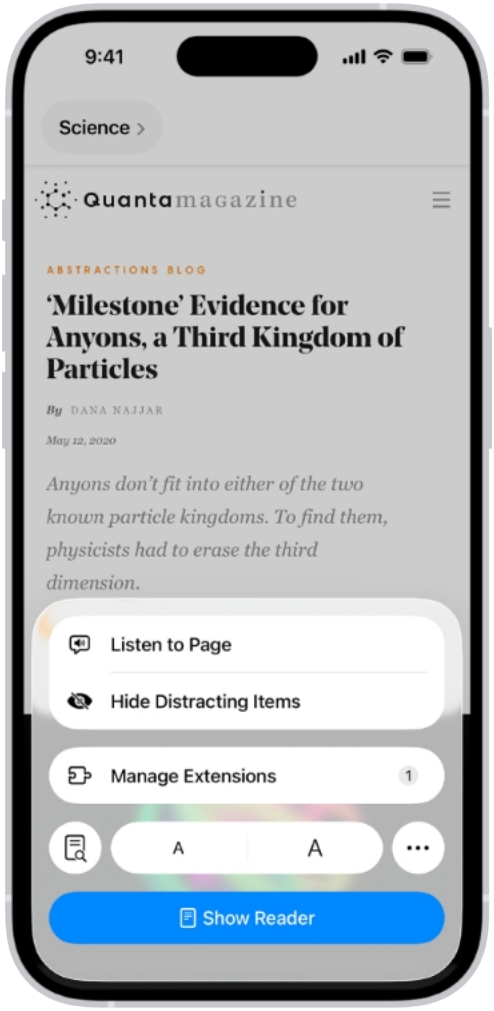
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Hide distractions when browsing webpages in Safari on iPhone

Use Distraction Control to hide menus and other diversions on a webpage.



1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. On a website, tap, then tap Hide Distracting Items.
3. Tap an item you want to hide from the webpage, then tap Hide.

   You can hide as many items as you want.
4. Tap .

To stop hiding items, tap , tap Show Hidden Items, then tap Show to confirm.

See also

Block pop-ups in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Get extensions

Next
Hide distractions when reading

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Hide recent searches in Safari on iPhone

You can hide the recent searches that appear when the search field is empty in the Safari app .

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Below Search, turn off Show Recent Searches.

See also

Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone

Previous
Enable cookies

Next
Browse the web privately

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Block pop-ups in Safari on iPhone

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Turn on Block Pop-ups.

See also

Hide distractions when browsing webpages in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Hide distractions when reading

Next
Clear your cache and cookies

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

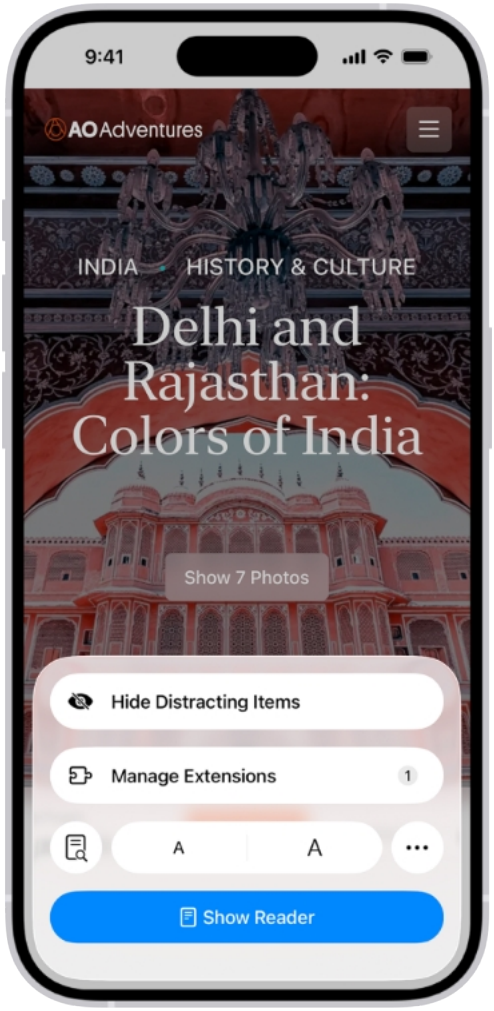
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone

You can install extensions to customize the way your browser works. For example, extensions can help you find coupons when shopping, block content on websites, give you access to features from other apps, and more.



Add Safari extensions

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Search for extensions, scan Recommendations, or tap Browse Extensions to look in the App Store.

4. When you find one you want, tap the price, or if the app is free, tap Get, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Extensions you install for Safari on iPhone that are also available on other platforms will appear in Safari settings on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, to make them easier to find and download.

Change Safari extension settings

You can use an extension to customize the way your browser works. You can turn Safari extensions on or off at any time.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Extensions, then tap an extension.
4. Turn on Allow Extension.

   If you have Safari profiles set up, turn on the extension for each profile you want to use it with.

Important: Check the extensions you have installed and make sure you're familiar with what they do.

Change Safari extension settings for an individual website

You can turn an extension on or off for an individual website without changing your overall Safari settings.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap on the left side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Turn each extension on or off.

Remove a Safari extension

1. Swipe down on the Home Screen, then search for the extension you want to remove.

2. Touch and hold the extension icon, tap “Delete app,” then follow the onscreen instructions.

See also

Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Previous
Fill in forms

Next
Hide distractions when browsing

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

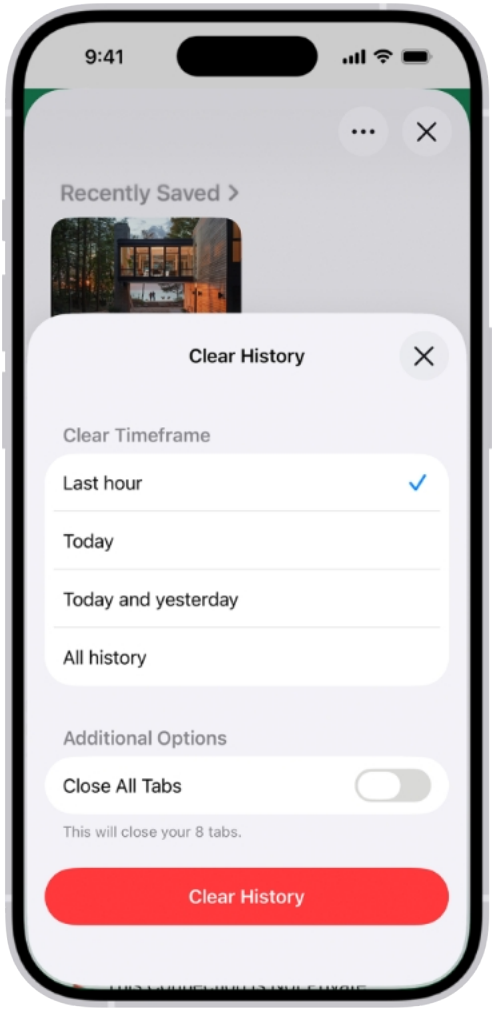
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone

You can erase your browsing history and data to clear the cache on your iPhone. This action removes the history of websites you visited and recent searches from your iPhone. This process also removes the cookies and permissions you granted to websites to use your location or send you notifications.

Note: Clearing your browsing history in Safari doesn't clear any browsing histories kept independently by websites you visited, or your browsing history in other apps.



1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap Bookmarks.

If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap 📖. See Change the layout in Safari.

3. Tap 🕘.
4. Tap ···, then tap Clear.
5. Below Clear Timeframe, choose how much of your browsing history to clear.

   Note: If you have Safari profiles set up, select a profile to clear only the history of that profile, or select All Profiles.
6. Tap Clear History.

See also

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Block pop-ups

Next
Enable cookies

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone

You can view the Privacy Report and adjust settings in the Safari app to keep your browsing activities private, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

Visit sites privately

You can use Private Browsing to open private tabs that don't appear in History on iPhone or in the list of tabs on your other devices. Tabs in Private Browsing aren't shared with your other Apple devices, even if you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

If you have a passcode set on your iPhone, Private Browsing locks when it's not in use. Private Browsing may not lock immediately.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap All Tabs.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap . See Change the layout in Safari.
3. Swipe right on the tab bar at the bottom of the screen until Private Browsing opens, then tap Unlock.

   To exit Private Browsing, tap ···, tap All Tabs, then swipe left to open a Tab Group from the menu at the bottom of your screen. If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap , then swipe left. The websites you have open in Private Browsing stay open, and Private Browsing locks.

To allow Private Browsing to be locked, go to Settings > Apps > Safari, then turn on Require Passcode to Unlock Private Browsing, Require Face ID to Unlock Private Browsing (supported models), or Require Touch ID to Unlock Private Browsing (supported models).

Note: Any Safari extensions you have installed that have access to browsing data are automatically turned off in Private Browsing. To turn on an extension in Private Browsing, see Change Safari extension settings.

Choose a search engine for Private Browsing

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Turn off Also Use in Private Browsing.
4. Tap Private Search Engine, then choose a search engine.

View the Privacy Report

Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites and viewing your IP address. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap .
3. Tap Privacy Report.

Use iCloud Private Relay to browse the web with more privacy

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is turned on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while it prevents network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari.

See Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay to learn how to:

- Turn iCloud Private Relay completely on or off for your iPhone.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a specific Wi-Fi or cellular network.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay off temporarily.
- Set the specificity of your IP address location.

Note: iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address

If a website relies on IP filtering, monitoring, or rate-limiting, it might require your IP address to be visible. You can turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for that website only.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. On the website, tap on the left side of the search field, then tap ···.
3. Tap Show IP Address.

   Your IP address remains visible to that website until you leave the website or close its Safari tab. iCloud Private Relay remains on for other websites.

To turn off or pause iCloud Private Relay for all websites, see Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay.

Control privacy and security settings for Safari

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Turn any of the following on or off:

   - *Prevent Cross-Site Tracking:* Safari limits third-party cookies and data by default. Turn this option off to allow cross-site tracking.

   - *Hide IP address:* Safari automatically protects your IP address from known trackers. For eligible iCloud+ subscribers, your IP address is protected from trackers and websites as you browse in Safari. If this option is off, your IP address isn't hidden.

   - *Fraudulent Website Warning:* Safari displays a warning if you're visiting a suspected phishing website. Turn this option off if you don't want to be warned about fraudulent websites.

   - *Camera:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your camera without asking you first. Tap Camera, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.

- *Microphone:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your microphone without asking you first. Tap Microphone, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.

- *Location:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your location without asking you first. Tap Location, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.

To set exceptions for a specific website, open the website in the Safari app, tap , tap , then tap the setting you want to change below Website Settings For.

See also

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps on iPhone

Previous
Hide recent searches

Next
Sign in with passkeys in Safari

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. When you're asked for your email address on a website, tap the email field.
3. Tap Hide My Email above the keyboard.

   The Hide My Email screen suggests a new, randomly generated Hide My Email address.
4. If you don't want to use the suggested address, tap to get a new randomly generated email address.
5. Tap Continue.

You can delete the Hide My Email address at any time. See Create and manage Hide My Email in Settings.

See also

Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone

Sign in with passkeys in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Sign in with passkeys in Safari

Next
Get HTTP website warnings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

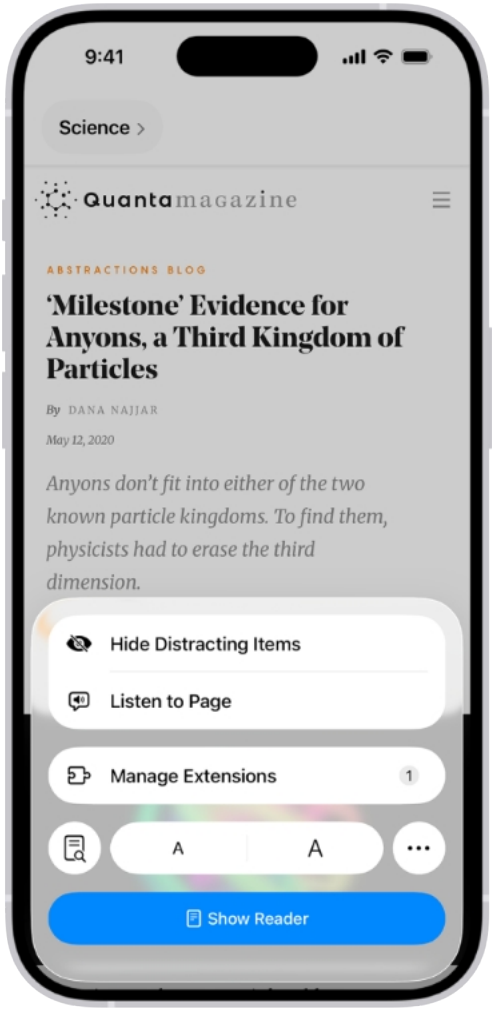
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone

Use Reader to hide navigation menus and other distracting items. Longer pages include a summary and table of contents.



Show Reader

Reader formats a webpage to show just the relevant text and images.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. On a supported website, tap, then tap Show Reader.

To return to the full page, tap , then tap Hide Reader.

Automatically use Reader for a website

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. On a supported website, tap , then tap .
3. Turn on Use Reader Automatically.
4. Tap .

To automatically use Reader for all websites that support it, go to Settings > Apps > Safari > Reader, then turn on All Websites.

See also

Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone

Customize your Safari settings on iPhone

Previous
Hide distractions when browsing

Next
Block pop-ups

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

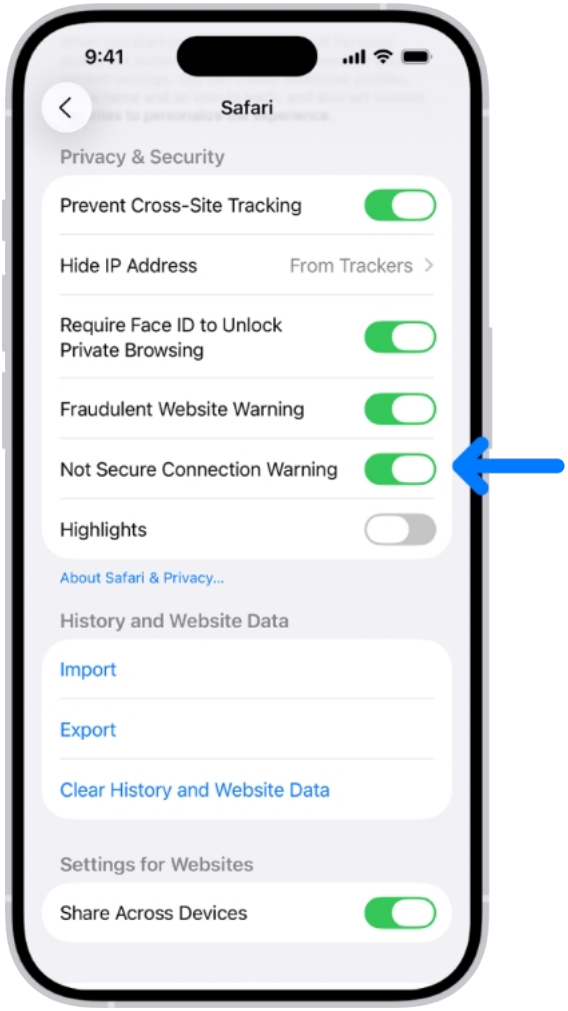
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get a warning when you visit websites that use HTTP on iPhone

Websites use HTTP or HTTPS to transmit information to and from Safari; HTTP doesn't provide a secure connection.

You can choose to receive a warning when you visit websites that use HTTP.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Below Privacy & Security, turn on Not Secure Connection Warning.

See also

Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Use Hide My Email

Next
Digital certificates and encrypted websites

Table of Contents

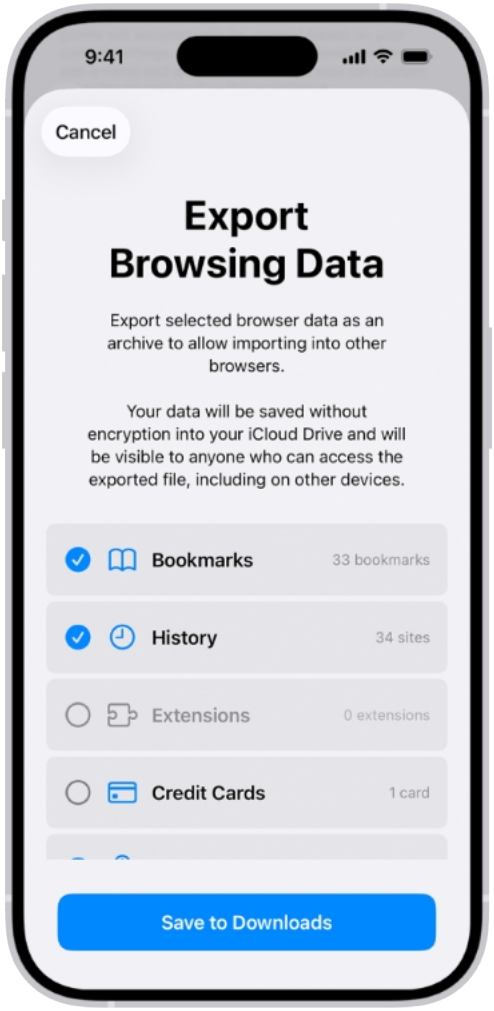
Export Safari data to another browser on iPhone

You can export selected data from Safari, and then import that data into another browser.

Data you can export from Safari includes:

- Bookmarks
- History
- Extensions
- Credit cards
- Passwords

WARNING: Your exported data is not encrypted and is visible to anyone who can access the file. After you import the data into another browser, delete the file you exported.



---

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Below History and Website Data, tap Export.
4. Select the data to export.

   If you created profiles for your browsing in Safari, choose the profile you want to export data from, or choose All Profiles.

   Each profile has its own history and extensions data. The data for bookmarks, credit cards, and passwords is the same across all profiles.
5. Tap Save to Downloads.
6. Tap Done.

The exported data is saved as a .zip file in your Downloads folder.

See also

Import data from another browser into Safari on iPhone

Previous
Import browser data into Safari

Next
Shortcuts

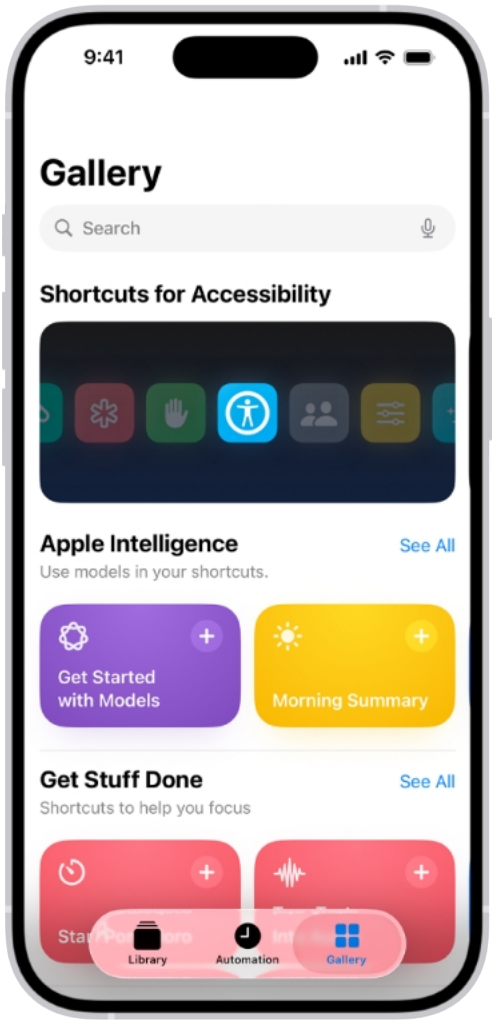
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

The Shortcuts app lets you automate tasks you do often with just a tap or by asking Siri. Create shortcuts to get directions to the next event in your Calendar, move text from one app to another, and more. Choose ready-made shortcuts from the Gallery or build your own using different apps to run multiple steps in a task.



To learn more, see the Shortcuts User Guide.

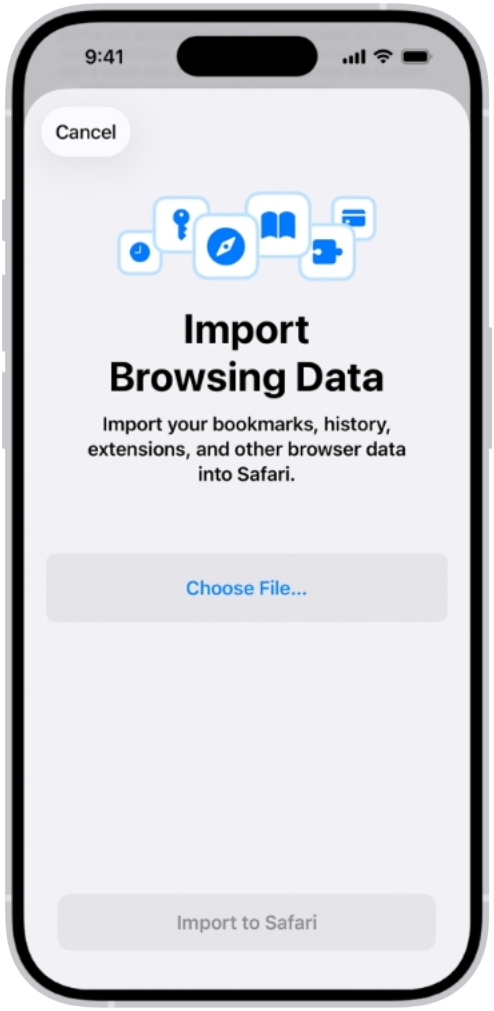
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Import data from another browser into Safari on iPhone

You can import data into Safari that you exported from another browser. Browser data can include bookmarks, history, extensions, credit cards, and passwords.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Below History and Website Data, tap Import.
4. Tap Choose File, then choose a file (or a ZIP file of files) to import.

Individual files might be available for each piece of browsing data, such as bookmarks or history.

5. Tap Import to Safari.

   A description of the browser data you imported appears.

   Note: Any passwords you import go into the Passwords app.

6. Tap Done.

   WARNING: For security, delete the file or folder you imported. It may include unencrypted data and could be visible to anyone who can access it.

See also

Export Safari data to another browser on iPhone

Previous
Verify website encryption

Next
Export Safari data to another browser

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

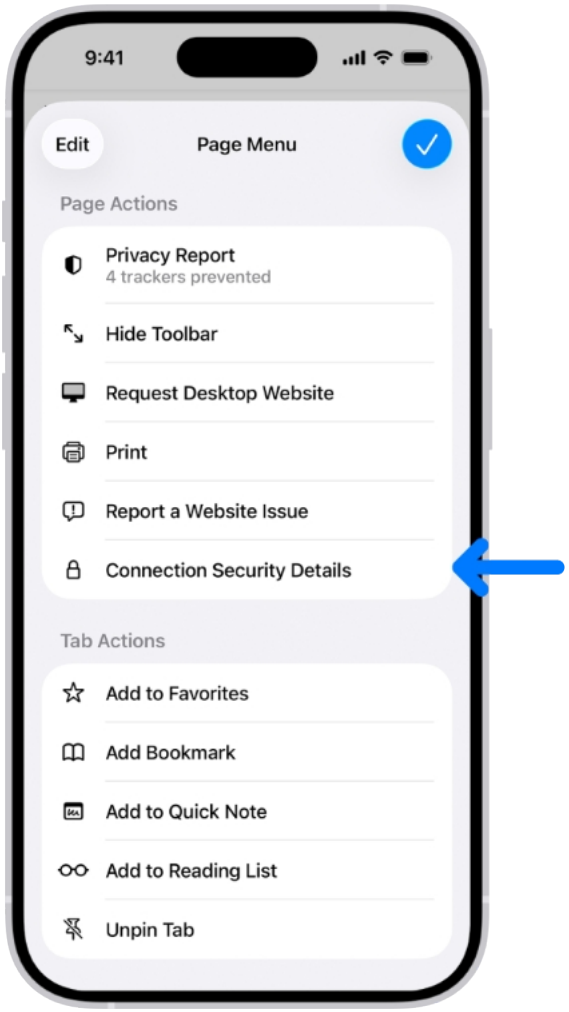
UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Check whether a website is encrypted in Safari on iPhone

Review connection security details to determine whether a website is encrypted. Encrypted websites mask the data you exchange with them, so that only you and they can see it. It's important to use encrypted websites to prevent anyone from "eavesdropping" on you.



1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the website, tap on the left side of the search field, then tap .

3. Tap Connection Security Details.

See also

Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

Previous
Digital certificates and encrypted websites

Next
Import browser data into Safari

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Read or listen to business news in Stocks on iPhone

In the Stocks app, you can read and listen to business news that's driving the market. In countries where Apple News is available, you also see stories selected by the Apple News editors and stories from Apple News+.

To learn more about Apple News+, see Subscribe to Apple News+.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.



Read a story

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Swipe up on Business News or Top Stories to view stories, or tap a symbol in your watchlist to browse related stories. See Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist.
3. Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, do any of the following:

   - *Return to your newsfeed in Stocks:* Tap < or Done in the top-left corner.
   - *See more stories from the publication in Apple News:* Tap the publisher logo at the top of the screen.
   - *Save the story to Apple News:* Tap at the top of the screen.

     Note: In order to save stories to Apple News, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account, then go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on News.
   - *Change the text size:* Tap •••, tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
   - *Share the story:* Tap , then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

   Some news stories include an audio version that you can listen to in the Stocks app or listen to later in the News app (not available in all countries or regions).

   If you subscribe to Apple News+ and turn on News in iCloud in Settings, you can add an audio story from Stocks to your Up Next queue in News.

   Stories from publications you have blocked in Apple News don't appear in the newsfeed. See See news stories chosen just for you.

Clear recommendations

The Stocks app recommends stories based on what you read in the past. You can clear this information.

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap •••, then tap Clear Recommendations Data.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

See also

Check stocks on iPhone

Get started with News on iPhone

Listen to News stories in News on iPhone

Previous
Manage multiple watchlists

Next
Add earnings reports to your calendar

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add earnings reports to your calendar in Stocks on iPhone

You can see when a company has an upcoming earnings report and add it as an event in the Calendar app.



Add an earnings report event to your calendar

If a stock has an upcoming earnings report, you can add it in the Calendar app.

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a ticker symbol in your watchlist, or use the search field to search for a symbol.
3. If an earnings report is upcoming, tap Add to Calendar, then tap .

The earnings report is saved as an all-day event in the Calendar app. Calendar sends you an event reminder on the day of the earnings report.

Delete an earnings report event from your calendar

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the ticker symbol in your watchlist or use the search field to search for the symbol.
3. Tap View to switch to the Calendar app.

4. In the Calendar app, tap the event, tap Edit, tap Delete Event (you may have to scroll down), then confirm by tapping Delete Event again.

See also

Check stocks on iPhone

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Previous
Read or listen to business news

Next
Use a Stocks widget

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

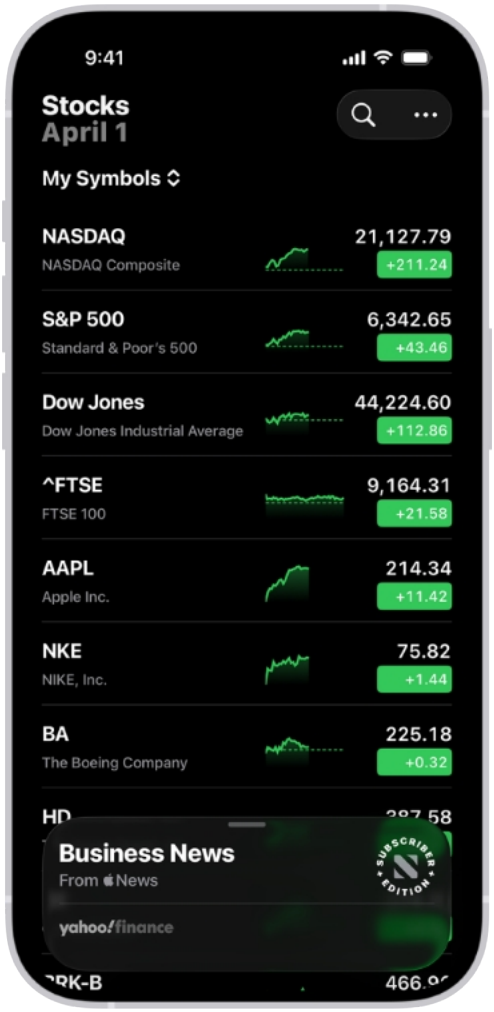
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Check stocks on iPhone

Use the Stocks app to track market activity and view the performance of stocks you follow.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, “How are the markets doing?” Learn how to use Siri.



Check stocks

You can see a stock's most recent price, daily percentage change, market capitalization value, and more.

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.

2. Tap a ticker symbol in your watchlist, or tap to search for a symbol, then tap the symbol in the search results.

For more details, see View charts, details, and news, below.

Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist

When you first open the Stocks app, a list of ticker symbols appears on the screen; this is called the My Symbols watchlist. You can update and manage the My Symbols watchlist and create your own watchlists.

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

- *Add a symbol:* Tap , then in the search field, enter a ticker symbol, company name, fund name, or index. In the search results, tap , then tap .
- *Delete a symbol:* Swipe left on the symbol in your watchlist, then tap Remove.

  Note: If you delete a symbol from the My Symbols watchlist, that symbol is also deleted from your other watchlists (see Manage multiple watchlists).
- *Reorder symbols:* Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist, then drag it to a new position.
- *Display the currency a stock is traded in:* Tap •••, tap Watchlist Shows, then tap Show Currency.
- *Share a symbol:* Swipe left on a symbol in your watchlist, tap Share, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

View charts, details, and news

You can view interactive charts, performance details, and related news stories about the ticker symbols in your watchlist and the symbols you search for.



1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a symbol you want to see more details about, then do any of the following:
   - *View the performance over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart.
   - *View the value for a specific date or time:* Touch and hold the chart with one finger.
   - *View the difference in value over time:* Touch and hold the chart with two fingers.
   - *View more details:* Swipe the data below the chart to see additional details like 52-week high and low, Beta, EPS, and average trading volume.
   - *Read news:* Swipe up to see additional news stories, then tap a story.
3. To return to your watchlist, tap ✕.

Tip: Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist to see a quick view of its performance.

See also

Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone

Read or listen to business news in Stocks on iPhone

Use a Stocks widget on your iPhone

Previous
Shortcuts

Next
Manage multiple watchlists

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

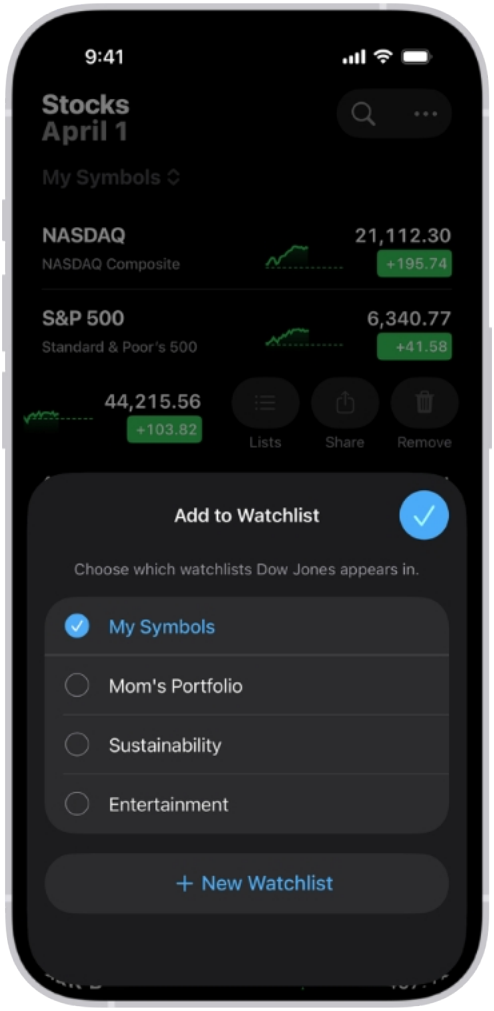
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone

You can create your own watchlists to organize the stocks you follow. For example, you could organize them according to categories such as entertainment or sustainability. You can switch between watchlists, and view them on your other devices.



Create a new watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap •••, then tap New Watchlist.

3. Name the watchlist, then tap Save.

To switch between watchlists, tap ⇕ next to name of the current watchlist you're viewing, then tap the name of the watchlist you want to see.

Add symbols to a watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap 🔍, then enter the name of a ticker symbol, company, fund, or index in the search field.
3. Tap ➕ next to the symbol in the search results.
4. Tap ✕.

💡 **Tip:** To quickly add a symbol in one watchlist to other watchlists, swipe left on the symbol, tap Lists, select the watchlists, then tap ✔.

Each symbol you add to a watchlist is also added to the My Symbols watchlist.

Remove symbols from a watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Swipe left on the symbol, then tap Remove.

   Note: When you remove a symbol from a watchlist you created, that symbol remains in the My Symbols watchlist. If you remove a symbol from the My Symbols watchlist, that symbol is also removed from your other watchlists.

Rearrange or sort symbols in a watchlist

You can choose how the symbols in your watchlists are sorted.

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Rearrange a watchlist manually:* Touch and hold a symbol, then drag to place it elsewhere in the list.

- *Sort a watchlist automatically:* Select the watchlist you want to sort, then tap •••, tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap how you want to sort the list. To return to manual order after automatically sorting, tap Manual.

  To reverse the order of the symbols in an automatically sorted watchlist, tap •••, tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap Ascending or Descending.

Change the value displayed in a watchlist

You can change the value displayed below each symbol's price in a watchlist.

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. In the watchlist you want to change, tap •••.
3. Tap Watchlist Shows, then tap one of the following options:

   - Price Change
   - Percentage Change
   - Market Cap

Reorder, rename, or remove watchlists

1. Go to the Stocks app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name of the watchlist, tap Manage Watchlists, then do any of the following:

   - *Reorder your watchlists:* Touch and hold ☰, then drag the watchlist to a new position.
   - *Rename a watchlist:* Tap ✎, type a new name, then tap Save.
   - *Remove a watchlist:* Tap ⊖ next to the symbol, tap Delete Watchlist, then tap Delete Watchlist to confirm.
3. Tap ✓.

View your watchlists on all your devices

You can view your watchlists on any iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

- *On your iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, tap See All (next to Saved to iCloud), then turn on Stocks.
- *On a Mac with macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, click iCloud, then turn on Stocks.

See also

Check stocks on iPhone

Read or listen to business news in Stocks on iPhone

Previous
Check stocks

Next
Read or listen to business news

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use a Stocks widget on your iPhone

Use a widget to check stocks at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose the size of the widget and the amount of information the widget displays.

Add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap Edit, then tap Add Widget at the top of the screen to open the widget gallery.
3. Swipe up, then tap Stocks.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget types (Watchlist and Symbol) and sizes. When you see the option you want, tap Add Widget, then tap Done.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

Change the widget display

After you add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen, you can change its appearance and the information it displays.

1. Touch and hold the Stocks widget on your Home Screen.
2. Tap Edit Widget, then depending on the type of widget (Watchlist or Symbol) do any of the following:

   - *Change the widget symbol:* Tap the current symbol, then tap the new symbol you want from the watchlist. Or use the search field to search for a new symbol.

   - *Change the widget watchlist:* Tap the name of the current watchlist, then tap the watchlist you want to display.

- *Change when news stories appear:* Tap In Off Hours, Always, or Never, then choose an option.
- *Show the watchlist name:* Turn on Show Watchlist Name.
- *Show more symbols or additional symbol information:* Turn on Show More Details.

Tip: You can add more than one Stocks widget to your Home Screen—and choose a different size for each—so you can quickly see updates for different symbols or watchlists.

Stocks widgets are also available for the iPhone Lock Screen. See Create a custom Lock Screen.

See also

Check stocks on iPhone

Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone

Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

Previous
Add earnings reports to your calendar

Next
Tips

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

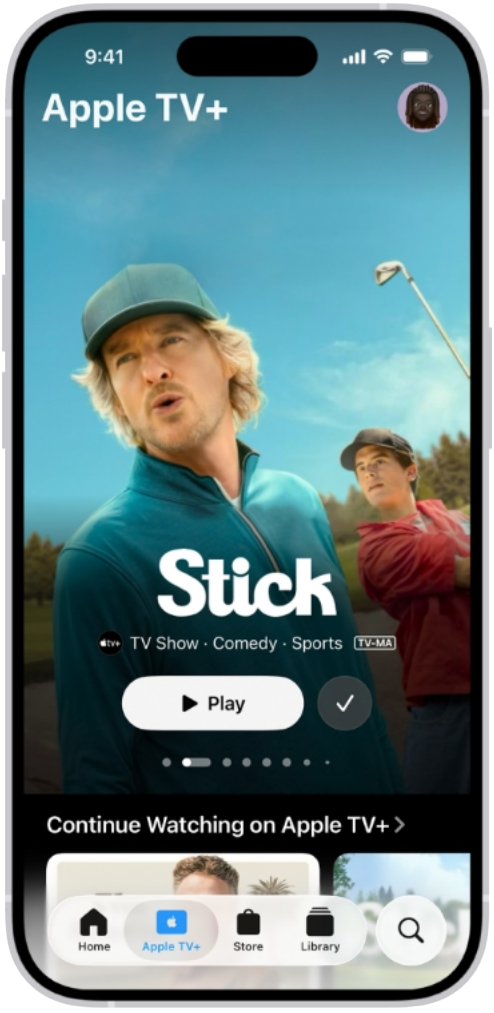
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

You can use the Search tab in the Apple TV app to look for TV shows and movies by specific categories like title, sport, and cast. The Apple TV+ tab gives you easy access to Apple TV+, a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning films, series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more.

Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.



Stream *Stick* on the Apple TV app with a subscription ↗

Browse Apple TV+

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple TV+, then do either of the following:

   - Swipe left at the top of the screen to browse featured items.
   - Scroll down to see new releases, curated collections, and personalized recommendations, then swipe left or right to view available options.

     Tip: Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.

You can also tap the Home, Store, and Library tabs to see content specific to those categories.

Search for specific shows, movies, and more

When you're looking for something specific—like a show or actor—use the Search tab.

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then either tap a category, or tap the search field to see previous searches or enter a new search.

   Tip: When you want to search, simply describe what you're looking for using natural language—for example, "Popular dramas with a twist."

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

See also

Start watching and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

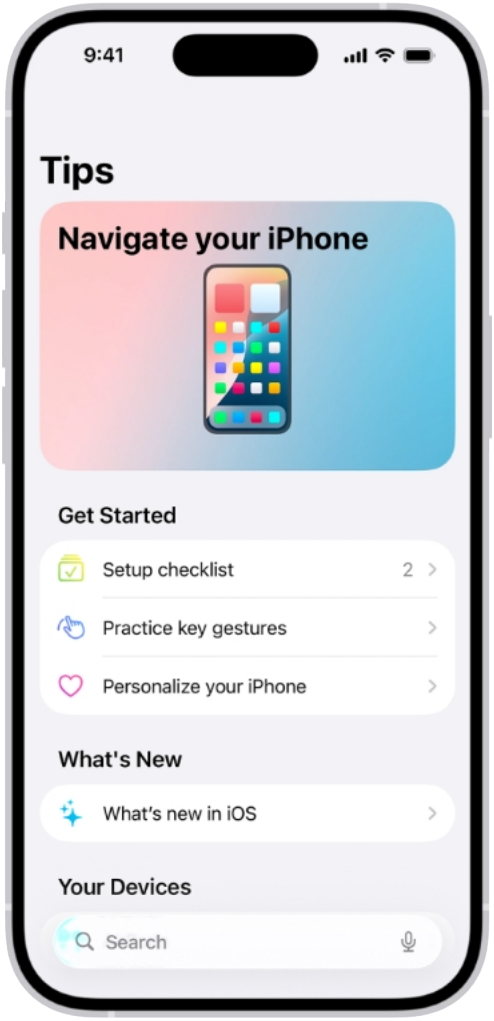
Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Table of Contents

Use the Tips app on iPhone

View collections of tips in the Tips app that help you get the most from your iPhone. You can also get notifications every once in a while so you can keep learning new things over time.



Get tips

In the Tips app, you can learn how to personalize your Lock Screen, how to schedule a text message to send later, how to mute calls with your AirPods, and much more. New tips are added regularly.

To start learning, go to the Tips app, tap a collection, then tap a tip.

Get notified when new tips arrive

1. Go to Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notification, tap Tips below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.
3. Choose options for the style of notifications you want to receive, how they should appear, and more.

Save tips

You can add tips to your personal Saved tips collection, so you can quickly find them later.

1. Go to the Tips app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a tip, then tap to add it to your saved collection. Tap again to remove the tip from your saved collection.

To view all the tips you saved, tap < twice, then tap "Saved tips."

Share a tip

You can share a tip with a friend over Messages and Mail, or AirDrop it to someone nearby. You can also add tips to documents like Notes and Freeform boards.

1. Go to the Tips app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a tip, tap, then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

Learn more about your other Apple devices

If you have other Apple devices—like an Apple Watch, AirPods, or a HomePod—you can read about them in the Tips app.

1. Go to the Tips app on your iPhone.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the Tips app, then tap the user guide you want to browse.

See also

Get apps in the App Store

Change notification settings

Previous
Use a Stocks widget

Next
Translate text, voice, and conversations

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Translate text in apps on iPhone

On iPhone, you can translate text in apps such as Camera, Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Translate text in apps

You can select any text to translate in apps such as Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. When you enter text on your iPhone, you can even replace what you wrote with a translation.

1. Go to an app like Safari, Messages, or Mail on your iPhone.
2. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

   If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.
3. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.
4. Below the text translation, choose any of the following:

   - *Replace with Translation:* Replace your original text with the translation (available only when translating editable text).
   - *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
   - *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
   - *Open in Translate:* Do more with the translation in the Translate app.
   - *Download Languages:* Download languages for offline translation.
   - *Listen to Original Text:* Tap More, then tap ▶ to listen to the original text.

- *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap to listen to the translated text.

Translate text in photos

When you view a photo that includes text, tap, touch and hold the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap to see more options.

Translate text with the iPhone camera

You can use Camera to translate text around you—like a recipe, for example.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Position iPhone so that the text appears on the screen.
3. When the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap.
4. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

   If you don't see Translate, tap to see more options.

See also

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone

Change your Translate settings on iPhone

Previous
Translate text, voice, and conversations

Next
Translate with the camera view

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

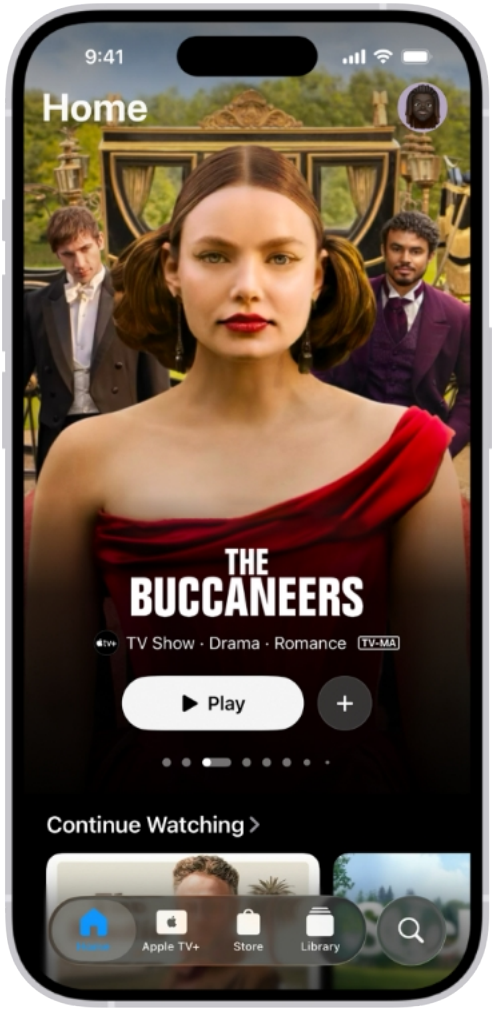
Start watching and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app, you can stream TV shows, movies, sports, and more. You can also download movies and episodes of a TV show. You can also download a full season of a TV show.

Content from Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels plays in the Apple TV app, while content from other providers plays in their video app. Use the playback controls to play or pause what you're watching, skip backward or forward, and more.

When you watch with your friends using SharePlay, the playback controls are shared by everyone on the FaceTime call. To learn more about using SharePlay in the Apple TV app, see Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime.

Play a TV show or movie



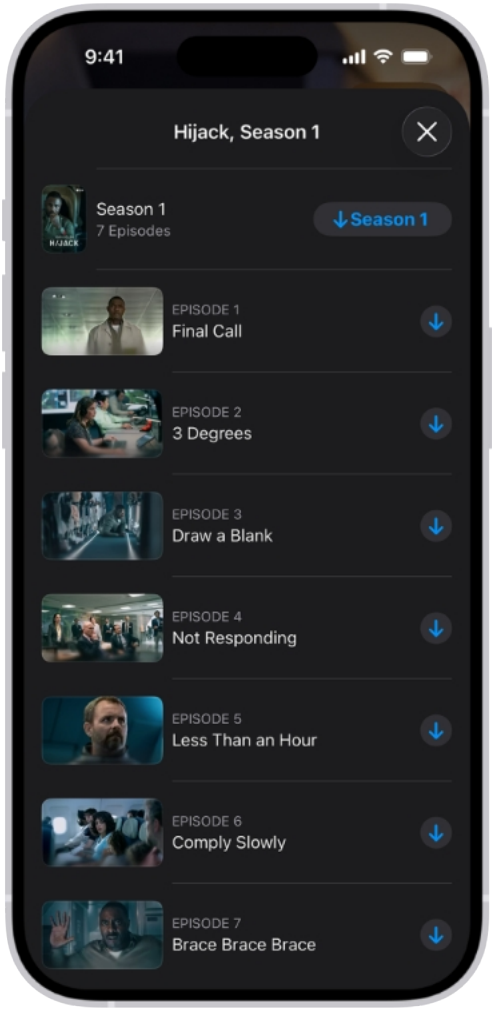
Stream *The Buccaneers* on the Apple TV app with a subscription ↗

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

    - Swipe left or right at the top of the screen to browse featured items, then tap the Play button (if available).
    - Tap Home, then tap an item in the Continue Watching row to immediately pick up where you left off.
    - Scroll down to view more rows, then tap an item you want to watch. When the page for that item opens, tap the Play button (if available) or tap a specific episode or trailer you want to watch.

      Tip: Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.

Download content



Stream *Hijack* on the Apple TV app with a subscription ↗

In the Apple TV app, you can download movies and episodes of a TV show. You can also download a full season of a TV show.

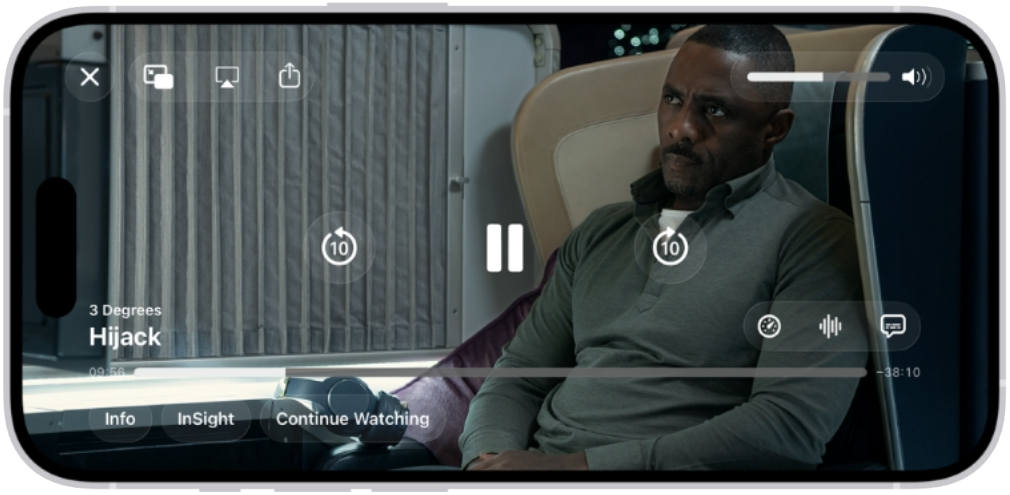
1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item to see its details.
3. Do any of the following (not all options are available for all titles):

    - *Download movies:* Tap in the top-right corner.
    - *Download an episode of a TV show:* Tap in the top-right corner, tap a season, then tap next to the episode you want to download.
    - *Download a full season of a TV show:* Tap in the top-right corner, tap a season, then tap the season button above the list of episodes.

You can find the downloaded item in your library and watch it even when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

Use the playback controls

During playback, tap the screen to show the controls.



Stream *Hijack* on the Apple TV app with a subscription ↗

Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Skip backward 10 seconds; touch and hold to rewind
	Skip forward 10 seconds; touch and hold to fast-forward
	Change the playback speed
	Change the audio track and enhance dialogue
	Display subtitles and closed captions
	Share an episode, movie, trailer, or sporting event
	Stream the video to other devices
	Start Picture in Picture—you can continue to watch the video while you use another app
	Stop playback

When the audio is muted, subtitles automatically appear. And if you skip backward 10 seconds, subtitles appear. To turn off subtitles, tap , then tap Off.

Change audio options during playback

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.
2. Tap , then tap Enhance Dialogue.
3. Tap one of the following:

- *Enhance More:* Makes dialogue very prominent in the mix.
- *Enhance:* Makes dialogue more prominent in the mix.
- *Off:* Turns Enhance Dialogue off.

Get information about shows, characters, actors, and music

During playback, you can get more information about the movie or TV show you're watching or go directly to Continue Watching.

With InSight, you can get information in real time about actors, characters, and music currently onscreen while you're watching an Apple TV+ movie or TV show (Apple TV+ subscription required). You can tap an actor to view their background and filmography page, or quickly view a song that's playing in the background and add it to an Apple Music playlist (Apple Music subscription required).

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.
2. Tap any of the following options:

    - *Info:* See more information about what you're watching.
    - *InSight:* Tap an actor or character to see more info. If music information appears, tap the song to add it to a playlist in the Music app (Apple TV+ and Apple Music subscriptions required).
    - *Continue Watching:* Go directly to Continue Watching, then tap an item to start watching it.
    - *Live Sports:* View live and upcoming sports events.

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

See also

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

Previous
Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or a channel

Next
Find shows, movies, and more

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

The Home tab brings your favorite shows, movies, channels, and sports together in one place. Pick up where you left off with Continue Watching, or discover Apple TV channels and streaming apps—personalized just for you.

Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Pick up where you left off in the Continue Watching row

The Continue Watching row displays content you've already started to watch or plan to watch. Shows and movies appear in the order you're most likely to want to watch them. For example, when a TV episode finishes, the next episode automatically appears in Continue Watching. When a live sports event for a team you follow is in progress, it appears first in the Continue Watching list if it's available to watch in the Apple TV app.

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, swipe through the Continue Watching row, then tap an item.

   If the item is available for you to watch, it begins playing immediately.

Note: The Continue Watching row on the Home tab displays movies, TV shows, and live sports events from any app or channel you connected to the Apple TV app. For more information on connecting apps and channels, see Discover channels and apps.

Add or remove an item in your Watchlist

You can add movies and TV shows that you want to save for later to your Watchlist. Movies and TV shows in your Watchlist appear in the Continue Watching and Watchlist rows.

Note: When you add sports events, they appear in the Continue Watching and Watchlist rows when they're live.

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Add an item to your Watchlist:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Add to Watchlist.
   - *Remove an item from your Watchlist:* Touch and hold the item in the Continue Watching or Watchlist row, then tap Remove from Watchlist.
   - *Resume watching on another device:* You can see your Watchlist in the Apple TV app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, or supported smart TV where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Items added to your Watchlist appear in the Continue Watching row and the Watchlist row on the Home tab.

Tip: You can also add an item to your Watchlist by tapping ⊕ when you see this option in the featured items at the top of the Home tab.

Discover channels and apps

The Apple TV app recommends new content or the next episode in a series you watch from a connected app (supported streaming apps only).

1. Go to Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Channels & Apps row, then swipe left to browse either of the following:

   - *Channels & Apps:* Directly access all the channels you subscribe to or apps you connected to the Apple TV app.
   - *More to Explore:* Find new channels or apps to subscribe to or watch.
3. Tap an item to open it.

Your channels and apps appear in the Channels & Apps row in the Home tab across all your devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account.

For a list of video apps available with the Apple TV app, see the Apple Support article Availability of supported apps in the Apple TV app.

See also

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Previous
Find shows, movies, and more

Next
Buy, rent, or pre-order items

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

In the Apple TV app, you can subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels. A subscription gives you access to content on demand on iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices. You can also download content to watch offline on iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

You can choose to bundle your Apple TV+ subscription with other Apple services by subscribing to Apple One. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple TV+

Apple TV+ is a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more—with new items added every month.

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple TV+, then tap the subscription button.
3. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Subscribe to MLS Season Pass

MLS Season Pass is a subscription streaming service featuring every match of the Major League Soccer season, all in one place, with consistent match times, and no blackouts.

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.

2. Tap 🔍, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Tap the subscription button.
4. Review the subscription details, tap a subscription option, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps

You can subscribe to Apple TV channels to get the shows you want, without downloading any apps.

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then scroll down to the Add Channels & Apps row.
3. Swipe left to browse, then tap an item.
4. Tap the subscription button, review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To disconnect supported streaming apps, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Connected Apps, then tap the button next to the streaming app to disconnect it.

Change or cancel your subscriptions to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or Apple TV channels

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Manage Subscriptions.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to change or cancel your subscription.

Share Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels with family members

When you subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, you can use Family Sharing to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—a shared subscription is available to them the first time they open the Apple TV app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing your subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group, or (if you're the family group organizer), stop using Family Sharing.

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

See also

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Previous
Change your Translate settings

Next
Start watching and control playback

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

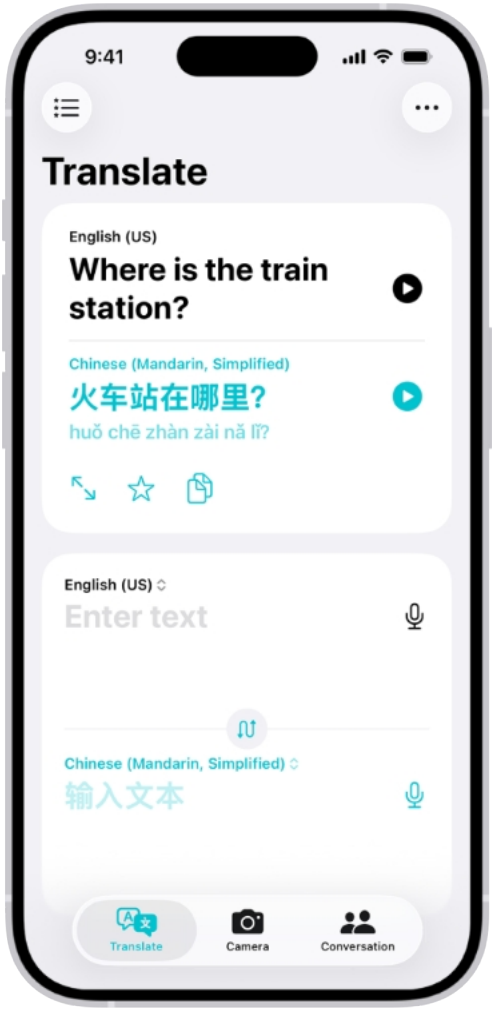
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Translate text and voice for conversations across languages using iPhone

With the Translate app, you can translate text and voice to have conversations across supported languages. You can also download languages to translate entirely on a device, even without an internet connection.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



Translate text or your voice

1. Go to the Translate app on your iPhone.

2. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.

   To swap languages, tap .

3. Tap one of the following:

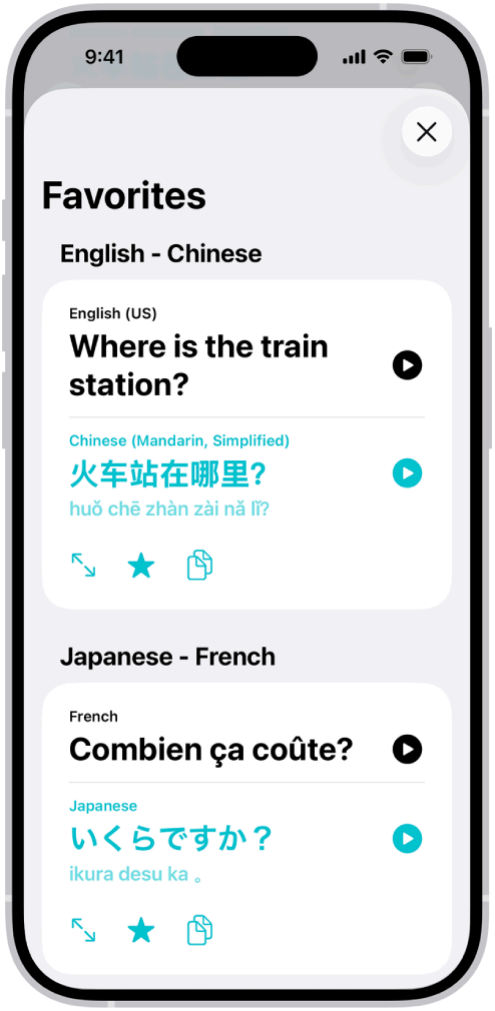
   - *Translate text:* Tap "Enter text," type a phrase (or paste text), then tap on the keyboard or in the top-right corner.
   - *Translate your voice:* Tap , then say a phrase.

   Note: Words are translated as you type or speak.

4. When the translation is shown, do any of the following:

   - *Play the audio translation:* Tap .
   - *Adjust the playback speed:* Touch and hold , then choose a speed.
   - *Show the translation to someone else:* Tap .
   - *Save the translation as a favorite:* Tap .
   - *Copy the translation:* Tap .
   - *Delete the translation:* Swipe left, then tap .

View your favorite translations

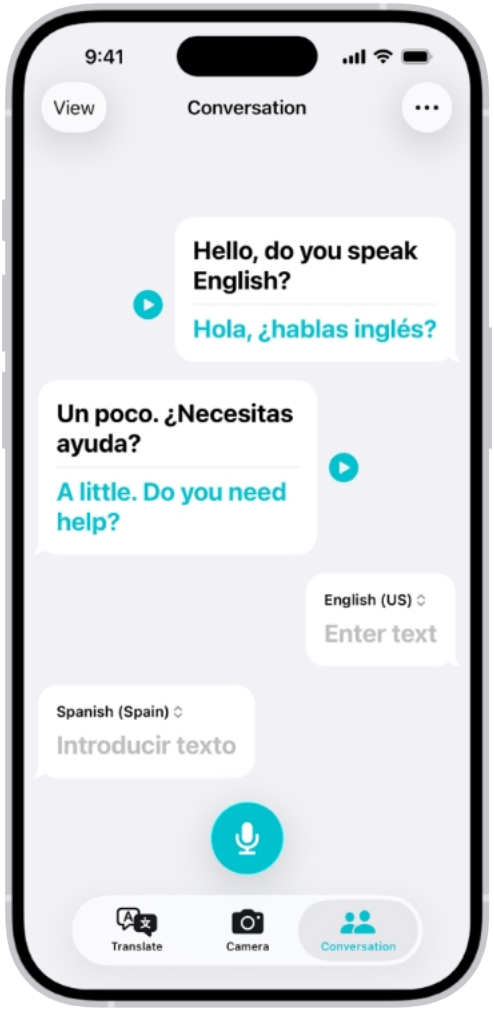


1. Go to the Translate app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰, then scroll to view translations you marked as favorites.

Note: Your favorite translations are kept up to date in the Translate app on your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Translate a conversation

iPhone shows the translated text bubbles from both sides of the conversation. Conversations work for downloaded languages when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.



1. Go to the Translate app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Conversation.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *Type text:* Tap "Enter text," type a phrase (or paste text), then tap ✓.
   - *Use your voice:* Tap, then say a phrase.

   Note: Words are translated as you type or speak.
4. Tap to hear the audio translation.

   To hear audio translations automatically, tap, then tap Play Translations.

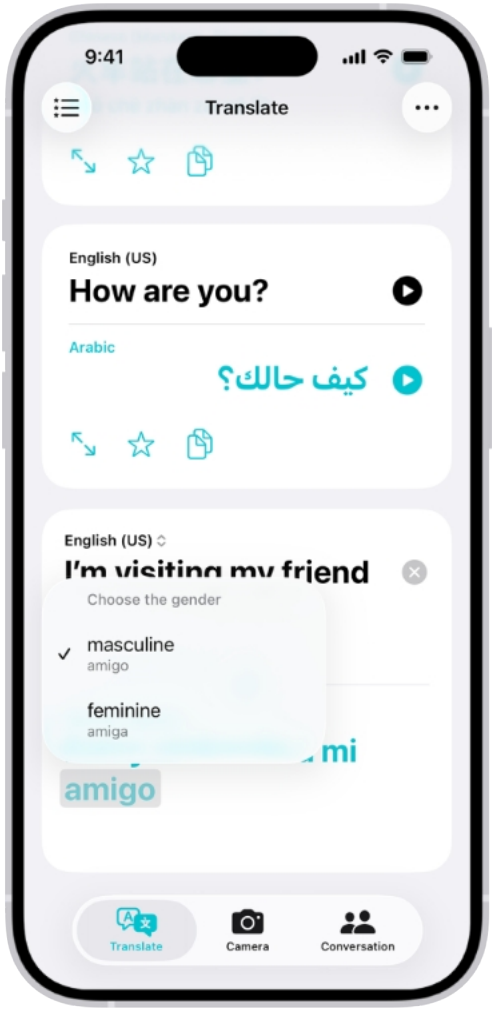
Tip: You can translate a conversation without tapping the microphone button before each person speaks. Tap, tap Auto Translate, then tap to start the conversation. iPhone automatically detects when you start speaking and when you stop.

When chatting face to face, tap View in the top left, then tap Face to Face so that each person can see the conversation from their own side.

Review words with multiple meanings

When translating a word that has several meanings, you can choose the one you want. You can also select feminine or masculine translations for words that have grammatical gender variations.

Note: When gender hasn't been specified, translations automatically default to the gender-neutral form of a word.



1. Go to the Translate app on your iPhone.
2. Translate a word or phrase, then tap Next on the keyboard.
3. When available, do any of the following:

    - *Choose a different meaning:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select the intended meaning.

    - *Choose grammatical gender translations:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select a feminine or masculine translation.

To turn off grammatical gender translations, tap ⋯, then tap Show Grammatical Gender.

Listen to translations through your AirPods

If you have an Apple Intelligence-enabled iPhone* paired to AirPods, you can also use Live Translation with AirPods. Live Translation allows you to have a conversation with someone who doesn't speak the same language. You can hear a conversation translated into your preferred language, and have your voice translated into their language. See Hear translations for nearby conversations using AirPods.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Translate text in apps on iPhone

Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone

Change your Translate settings on iPhone

Previous
Tips

Next
Translate text in apps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Change your Translate settings on iPhone

You can customize your preferences for the Translate app in Settings. Download languages, use On-Device Mode, or choose a different default translation app.

Download languages

To use the translate feature when you're not connected to the internet, you need to download both the input and output languages.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Translate.
3. Tap next to the languages you want to download.

Always translate offline

You can choose to always translate offline using downloaded languages.

Note: Offline translations may not be as accurate as online translations.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Translate.
3. Turn on On-Device Mode.

Choose a default translation app

If you have multiple translation apps, you can change the default.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Translate.
3. Tap Default Translation App, then choose an app.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone

On iPhone, you can use the camera view in the Translate app to translate text around you—for example, a restaurant menu or street signs. You can also translate text in photos from your photo library.



Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Translate text using the camera view

1. Go to the Translate app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
3. Position iPhone so the rear camera can translate text around you.

   Note: As you move the rear camera, text is translated in real time.
4. Tap ◯ to pause the view.

   You can zoom in to get a closer look at the overlaid translations.
5. Tap an overlaid translation to show the translation card, then do any of the following:

   - *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
   - *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
   - *Listen to Original Text:* Tap More, then tap to listen to the original text.
   - *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap to listen to the translated text.
6. When you're finished, tap .

Translate text in photos from your photo library

1. Go to the Translate app on iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
3. Tap , then select a photo that contains text from your photo library.
4. When you're finished, tap .

Share and save a translated image

1. Go to the Translate app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then do one of the following:

   - *Use the camera view:* Tap ◯.
   - *Use a photo from your photo library:* Tap , then tap a photo.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:

- *Share the translation:* Choose a share option.
- *Save the translation as an image:* Tap Save Image.

See also

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Translate text in apps on iPhone

Change your Translate settings on iPhone

Use visual intelligence on iPhone

Previous
Translate text in apps

Next
Change your Translate settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

You can buy, rent, or pre-order TV shows and movies in the Apple TV app. Once you find something you want to watch, you can purchase it, rent it (if it's a movie), or choose how to watch it (if it's available on multiple channels and apps).

Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Browse movies and TV shows in the Store tab

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Store, then do either of the following:
   - Swipe left or right at the top of the screen to browse featured items.
   - Scroll down to see top charts, new releases, great deals, and more, then swipe left or right to view available options.

     Tip: Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.
3. Tap an item to see previews, ratings, descriptions, and viewing information.

Buy, rent, or pre-order items

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Store, then tap an item to see its details.
3. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):

- *Buy:* Purchased items are added to your library.
- *Rent:* When you rent a movie, you have 30 days to start watching it. After you start watching the movie, you can play it as many times as you want for 48 hours, after which the rental period ends. When the rental period ends, the movie is deleted.
- *Pre-order:* When the pre-ordered item becomes available, your payment method is billed, and you receive an email notification. If you turned on automatic downloads, the item is automatically downloaded to your iPhone.

4. Confirm your selection, then complete the payment or pre-order.

You can find your purchases and rentals in your library and play them in the Apple TV app.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

See also

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Previous
Personalize the Home tab

Next
Watch sports

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

View a Voice Memos transcription on iPhone

Speech in your audio recordings can be transcribed to text in Voice Memos. You can view the transcription while you're recording or after.

Note: Audio transcription is available on iPhone 12 or later in English (all variants), Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, French, German, Japanese, Korean, Simplified Chinese, and Traditional Chinese. It's not available in all countries or regions.

If you open a recording made in an earlier version of Voice Memos (iOS 17 or earlier), Voice Memos will transcribe it automatically if it includes recorded speech.

View a transcription while recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap to begin recording.
3. Swipe up from the top of the waveform, then tap to watch the transcription live.

   The waveform disappears temporarily, and the transcription appears, with the current word highlighted. To return to the waveform view, tap.
4. Tap to pause recording; tap Resume to continue.
5. To save the recording, tap.

View or copy transcribed text after recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording with the transcript you want to view.
3. Tap, then do one of the following:

- *Copy part of the transcript:* Choose View Transcript, select the text you want to copy, then tap Copy.

- *Copy the entire transcript:* Choose Copy Transcript.

  You can open another document—a Mail message or text file, for example—and paste the text into it.

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use Writing Tools to summarize transcripts with a tap, proofread your work, and find just the right wording and tone. See Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence.

Search for text in titles and transcriptions

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down from the top of the list of recordings to show the search field.
3. In the search field, enter the text you want to find.

   The list shows only recordings with that text—either in the title or in the audio transcription.

When you select a term in the transcription, the playhead appears at that location in the audio waveform. To return to the waveform, tap .

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Previous
Make a recording

Next
Play it back

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

You can add your favorite teams to My Sports to see their games in Continue Watching and receive notifications when they're about to play.

When you turn on syncing for My Sports, the teams you follow in Apple TV are automatically followed in Apple News, Apple Sports, and other supported apps. If you already set up My Sports in the News app, the teams you follow appear in the Apple TV app.

If you have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac signed in to the same Apple Account, you can also see the teams you're following with My Sports in the Apple TV app and in the News app on those devices.

Note: My Sports isn't available in all countries or regions.

Follow your favorite teams

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down, then tap Sports.
3. Scroll down, then tap Follow Your Teams.
4. Tap Turn On to sync your teams across Apple News, Apple TV, and other supported apps.
5. Tap a sports league (MLS, MLB, or NBA, for example), then tap next to a team to follow it.
6. When you're finished, tap .

Manage My Sports

You can follow and unfollow teams after you set up My Sports.

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down, then tap Sports.
3. Scroll down, tap Manage My Sports at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:

    - *Follow teams:* Tap a league, tap next to a team you want to follow, then tap Done.
    - *Unfollow teams:* Tap next to a team you want to unfollow, tap Unfollow, then tap .

See also

Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone

Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Previous
Watch sports

Next
Watch MLS

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

To watch the item later when iPhone isn't connected to the internet, Tap in the top-right corner.

Share purchases made by family members

If you use Family Sharing, you and your family members can share purchases in the Apple TV app.

Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.

Remove a downloaded item

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.
3. Swipe left on the item you want to remove, then tap Delete.

Removing an item from iPhone doesn't delete it from your purchases in iCloud. You can download the item to iPhone again later.

Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

See also

Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

Previous
Watch MLS

Next
Add your TV provider

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved. UK

Table of Contents

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Your library contains shows and movies you purchased, rented, and downloaded. If you use Family Sharing, you can also view purchases made by family members.

Browse your library

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then do any of the following:
   - *Browse recently purchased items:* Tap Recent Purchases.
   - *Browse movies:* Tap Movies. To browse content available in 4K, tap 4K HDR.
   - *Browse rented items:* Tap Rentals.
   - *Browse downloaded items:* Tap Downloaded.
   - *Browse content in your library by genre:* Tap Genres.

Watch purchases, rentals, and downloaded content

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Purchases, Downloaded, or Rentals, then tap an item to see its details.
3. To start watching, tap the Play button.

   Note: For rentals, the time remaining in the rental period is shown.

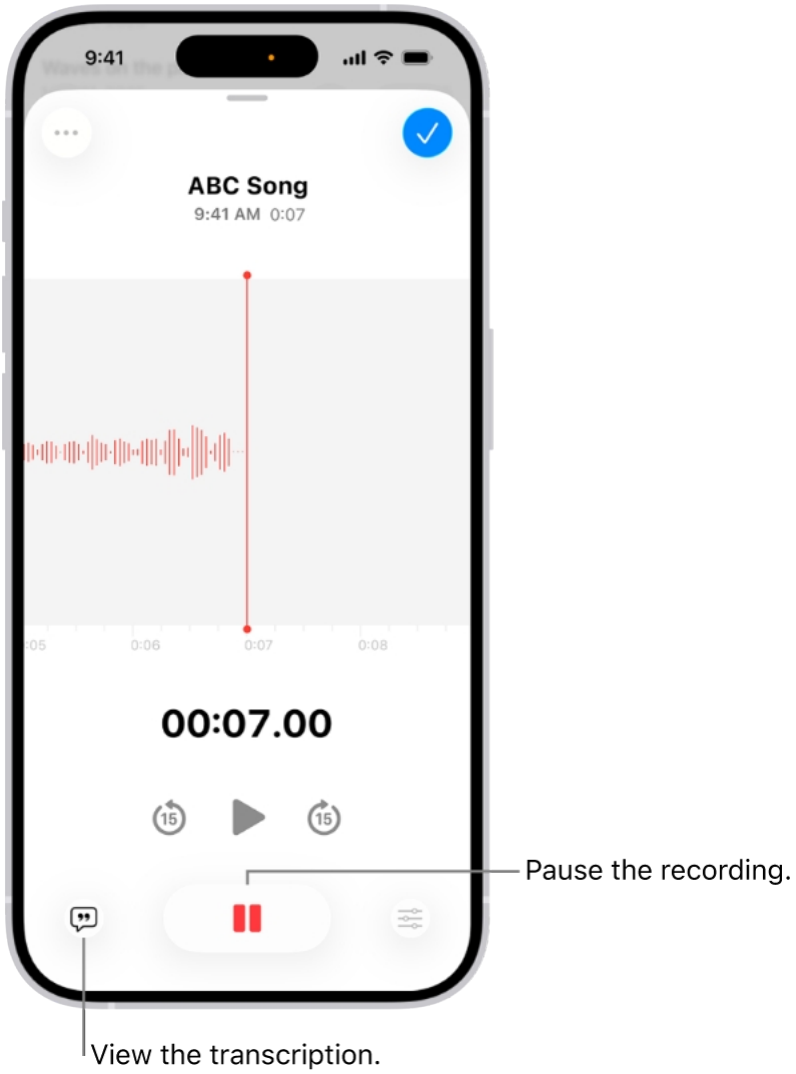
Table of Contents

Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can use iPhone as a portable recording device to record personal notes, classroom lectures, musical ideas, and more. You can also fine-tune your recordings with editing tools like trim, replace, and resume.

Record voice memos using the built-in microphone, a supported headset, or an external microphone.

When Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recordings appear and update automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.



Make a basic recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

   Note: To make it easier to find and open the Voice Memos app, you can move it from the Utilities folder to the Home Screen.

2. Tap to begin recording.

   To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther from what you're recording.

3. Tap to stop recording.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see Edit or delete a recording.

Note: For your privacy, when you use Voice Memos to make recordings, an orange dot appears at the top of your screen to indicate your microphone is in use.

Filter out background sounds

You can include or exclude background sounds in your recording.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Open Control Center.
3. Tap Voice Memos at the top of Control Center.
4. To filter out background sounds in your recording, select Voice Isolation.
5. To include the background sounds, select Wide Spectrum.

   Note: Wide Spectrum isn't available on all iPhone models.

Record stereo, mono, or Spatial Audio

The recording mode you select determines how the recording sounds when it's played.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Voice Memos.

3. Tap Recording Mode, then choose one of the following:

   - *Mono:* Audio playback is the same in both ears.
   - *Stereo:* Separates audio playback between the left and right ears.
   - *Spatial Audio:* Audio playback is immersive—it seems to play from all directions.

     Note: Spatial Audio isn't available on all iPhone models.

   When Stereo or Spatial Audio is selected, Voice Memos records using multiple microphones on your iPhone and with right and left audio channels. If you listen to the recording through headphones, you hear different sounds from different microphones; however, the waveform display still looks the same.

Use the advanced recording features

You can make a recording in parts, pausing and resuming as you record.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap to begin a recording.

   To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther away from what you're recording.

   To see more details while you're recording, swipe up from the top of the waveform.
3. Tap to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.
4. To review your recording, tap ▶.

   To change where playback begins, drag the waveform left or right across the playhead before you tap ▶.
5. To save the recording, tap Done.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new name.

To fine-tune your recording, see Edit or delete a recording.

Mute the start and stop tones

You can mute the start and stop tones by turning on Silent mode.

Open Control Center, then tap to turn on Silent mode.

Use another app while recording

While you're recording, you can use another app as long as it doesn't play audio on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap to begin recording.
3. While you're recording, go to the Home Screen, then open another app.

   If the other app starts playing audio, Voice Memos stops recording.

   On supported models, you can see your recording in progress in the Dynamic Island at the top of the Home Screen and in other apps. Tap the Dynamic Island to expand it, or navigate back to Voice Memos. See Use the Dynamic Island.



If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recording is saved in iCloud and appears automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. See Keep recordings up to date.

On supported iPhones, recordings using the built-in microphone automatically record in Spatial Audio. Earlier iPhone models record in Mono, unless you turn on Stereo Recording in Settings. You can also use an external stereo microphone or audio interface that works with iPhone to record in Stereo. Look for accessories marked with the Apple "Made for iPhone" or "Works with iPhone" logo.

See also

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

View a Voice Memos transcription on iPhone

Previous
Change the settings

Next
View a transcription

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone

MLS in the Apple TV app gives you access to Major League Soccer events when you subscribe to MLS Season Pass.

You can also follow your favorite MLS clubs using My Sports (not available in all countries or regions), catch up on key plays during a live game, and watch on-demand content—including MLS club profiles, player profiles, league and club highlights from the last season, and more.

Note: Some MLS games may be available to watch on a promotional basis, but full access to all games, shows, and features requires an MLS Season Pass subscription. MLS Season Pass isn't available in all countries or regions.

Watch Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Do either of the following:

   - *Explore featured matches:* Swipe left or right at the top of the screen.
   - *Browse available matches, league standings, and more:* Scroll down to a category row, then swipe left or right to view available options.

     Tip: Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.

4. To start watching, tap an event or match.

   If a match is in progress, tap Watch Live to tune in to the live broadcast, or Start Over to watch from the beginning.

   Note: Sports events added to your Watchlist appear in the Continue Watching row when they're live.

To hide the scores of live games, go to the Settings app, tap Apps, tap TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

Follow your favorite MLS clubs

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Scroll down, then tap Browse All Clubs.
4. Touch and hold a club, then tap Follow Team.

   Note: Clubs you follow appear at the front of the Browse All Clubs row

You can also follow MLS clubs with My Sports. See Follow teams with My Sports.

Note: When you follow a club, their matches automatically appear in Continue Watching.

Catch up with Key Plays

When you start watching a live match in progress, you can catch up to the action by watching all the key plays you missed. You can also browse and watch key plays at any time during the match.

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Do either of the following:

   - *Catch up to a match in progress:* Tap a match, then tap Catch Up.
   - *Go to key plays during a match:* While watching a match, tap the screen to show the playback controls, tap Key Plays, then select a key play from the collection row.

     Key plays start playing in order from the beginning of the match if you're catching up, or from the key play you select from the Key Play menu.
4. While watching key plays, you can do either of the following:

   - *Browse the collection:* Swipe left or right.

- *Return to the match:* Tap Jump to Live in the lower-left corner of the screen, or to resume playback from the last spot you were watching, tap <.

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

See also

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Start watching and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Previous
Follow your favorite teams with My Sports

Next
Manage your library

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

The Sports row gives you access to a wide array of live and scheduled sports events, including access to subscription-only features such as Friday Night Baseball and Sunday Night Soccer included with an Apple TV+ subscription, or Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass.

You can see live games with up-to-the-minute scores, browse upcoming games, and access pregame and postgame shows.

Browse sports

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down, then tap Sports.
3. Do either of the following:

   - Swipe left at the top of the screen to browse featured events.

     Tap an event to get more information, or tap Add to add it to your Watchlist.

   - Scroll down to a category row, then swipe left or right to view available options.

     Tip: Tap a row title to view all items in a category or view more information about a collection.

Watch live sports

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down, then tap Sports.
3. To start watching, tap a sports event in progress, then tap Watch Live to tune in to the live broadcast, or Start Over to watch from the beginning.

If you haven't subscribed to the channel or app, tap Open In, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Sports events added to your Watchlist appear in the Continue Watching row when they're live.

If you want to receive live updates for a game on the Lock Screen, tap Follow Live. See Access features from the iPhone Lock Screen.

Select games may also show the current score and play-by-play updates on the game page.

To hide the scores of live games, go to Settings > Apps > TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

Subscriptions required for Apple TV+ (which in some countries and regions includes Friday Night Baseball, Sunday Night Soccer, or both) and MLS Season Pass (which includes Sunday Night Soccer). MLS Season Pass, Sunday Night Soccer, and Friday Night Baseball require iOS 16.2 or later. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

See also

Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Previous
Buy, rent, or pre-order items

Next
Follow your favorite teams with My Sports

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPhone

You can add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app and watch shows and movies on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices.

Note: Support for this feature may vary depending on your TV provider.

Add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app

Single sign-on provides immediate access to all the supported video apps in your subscription package.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap TV Provider.
3. Choose your TV provider, then sign in with your provider credentials.

If your TV provider isn't listed, sign in directly from the app you want to use.

See also

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Table of Contents

Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

You can adjust streaming and download settings for the Apple TV app. You can also change how the Apple TV app uses your viewing history to provide personalized recommendations and choose what appears in the Apple TV app, including live sports scores and items in Continue Watching.

Change streaming and download options

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap TV.
3. Choose streaming options:
   - *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit streaming to Wi-Fi connections.
   - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Data Saver.

     High Quality requires a faster internet connection and uses more data.
4. Choose download options:
   - *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit downloads to Wi-Fi connections.
   - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.

     High Quality results in slower downloads and uses more data.
   - *Languages:* Choose a language. Each added audio language increases the download size. To remove a language, swipe left on the language you want to remove, then tap Delete.

The default language is the primary language for your country or region. If you turned on Audio Descriptions in Accessibility Settings, audio descriptions are also downloaded.

Change how your viewing history is used

By default, what you watch on your iPhone affects your personalized recommendations and Watchlist on all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

You can do any of the following:

- *Clear your viewing history:* Go to the Apple TV app, tap Home, tap your picture or initials at the top right, then tap Clear Play History.
- *Turn off personalization features based on your viewing history:* Go to the Settings app, tap Apps, tap TV, then turn off Use Play History.

Change autoplay settings

By default, when you finish watching an episode of a TV show, the next episode automatically plays. And when you finish a series, movie, or sporting event, recommended content automatically plays. You can change these settings.

1. Go to the Apple TV app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Do any of the following:

    - *Automatically play the next episode:* Turn Play Next Episode on or off.
    - *Automatically play content recommended for you after you finish a series, movie, or sporting event:* Turn Play a Recommendation on or off.

Change your device preferences

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap TV.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Show or hide live sports scores:* Turn off Show Sports Scores.
- *Use your viewing history for personalized recommendations and Continue Watching:* Turn on Use Play History.

Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

See also

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Previous
Add your TV provider

Next
Make a recording

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

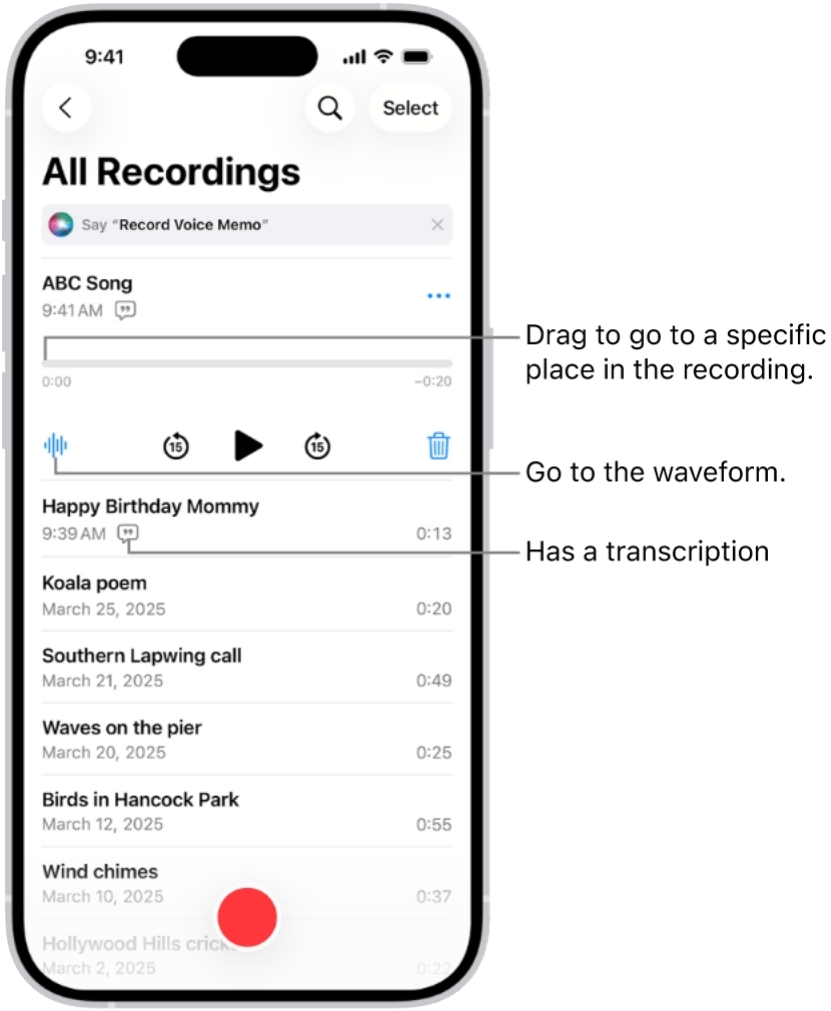
Table of Contents

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can play audio you recorded on your iPhone using the playback controls.

You can also adjust the playback options to change playback speed, reduce background noise, and fill in silences.

Note: Changing these settings doesn't affect the recording itself. The setting you choose for a recording stays with that specific recording and is applied each time you play the recording. It doesn't apply to other recordings.



Control	Description
▶	Play
⏸	Pause
15	Skip backward 15 seconds
15	Skip forward 15 seconds

Tip: While the recording is open, you can tap its name to rename it.

Change the playback speed

You can play a recording at a faster or slower speed.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to play, then tap ••• .
3. Tap , then drag the slider toward the tortoise for a slower speed, or toward the rabbit for a faster speed.
4. Tap , then tap ▶ to play the recording.

Enhance a recording

You can turn on Enhance Recording to reduce background noise and echo when you play Mono and Stereo recordings.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to enhance, then tap ••• .
3. Tap Options, then turn on Enhance Recording.
4. Tap , then tap ▶ to play the recording.

Skip over gaps when playing back a recording

Voice Memos can analyze your Mono and Stereo recordings and automatically skip over gaps when playing them.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording you want to play, then tap •••.
3. Tap Options, then turn on Skip Silence.
4. Tap ✓, then tap ▶ to play the recording.

Turn on Studio Voice to reduce background noise and reverb

You can turn on Studio Voice to automatically reduce background noise and reverb on your spatial audio recordings, and make it sound more like you're recording in a professional studio (available on supported iPhones models).

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording you want to play, then tap •••.
3. Tap Options, turn on Studio Voice, then drag the slider to increase or decrease the effect and background noise levels.
4. Tap ✓, then tap ▶ to play the recording.

Reset the playback options

You can return all the playback options for a recording to their original settings at the same time.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording you want to turn off playback options for, then tap •••.
3. Tap Options, then tap Reset.

See also

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

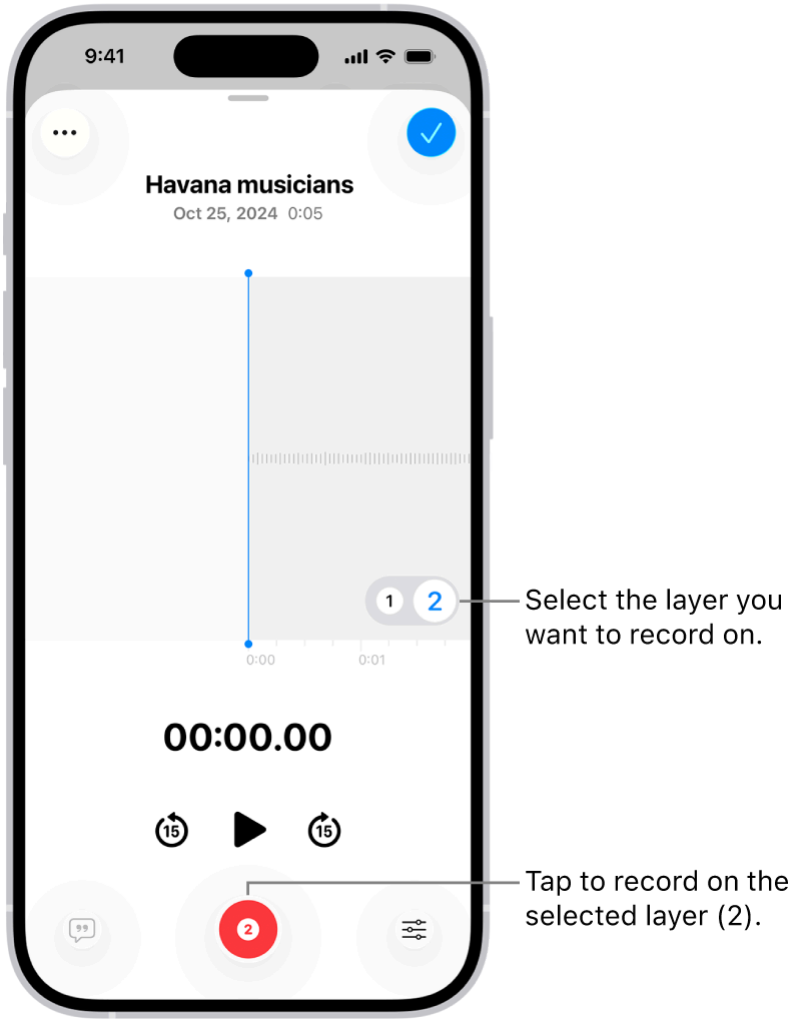
Table of Contents

Add a second layer to a Voice Memos recording on iPhone

On supported models, you can record a vocal layer on top of an instrumental recording without using headphones. This allows you to capture a musical inspiration—add vocals or a voiceover to an existing instrumental recording, try out lyrics, harmonize with instrumental music, and more.

Add a second layer

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to add a vocal layer to, then tap to view the waveform.
3. Tap .



4. Tap , then record your second layer.

   In the list of recordings, layered recordings are indicated by .

Although you can only create a layered recording on supported models, you can play a layered recording on any device.

Note: Layered recordings are in QTA (QuickTime Audio) format. They won't appear on devices with iOS 18.1, iPadOS 18.1, macOS Sequoia 15.1, or earlier. However, when you separate the layers, each layer is in .m4a format and *will* appear on devices with iOS 18.1, iPadOS 18.1, macOS Sequoia 15.1, or earlier.

Only the first layer can be transcribed or recorded in stereo or Spatial Audio. (See View a Voice Memos transcription for the hardware, software, and languages that support transcription.) You can edit both layers of a layered recording together, unless you separate them.

Mix the layers

After recording the second layer, you can mix the two layers.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap the layered recording you want to mix.
3. Tap to view the waveform, then tap .
4. Drag the Layer Mix slider to mix the layers.

Separate the layers

After recording the second layer, you can separate the two layers to edit or play them separately.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. While viewing the waveform, tap •••, then tap Separate Layers.
3. Tap Done to return to the list of recordings.

   The two layers appear as separate recordings in the list. You can select them, edit them, and play them separately.

Import layered recordings into Logic Pro

If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings, you can open a layered recording from your iPhone on your iPad where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and export the recording to Files. Then you can import the layered recording into Logic Pro for iPad for editing. The two layers open automatically as two distinct tracks in Logic Pro 11.1.1 or later.

See also

Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos

Previous
Play it back

Next
Export a recording to Files

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album on iPhone

You can add and delete photos and videos that you added to a shared album. You can also save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library.

Add photos and videos to a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Shared Albums, then tap an album.
4. Tap , tap the album name, then tap Add Photos.
5. Select photos and videos, then tap .

When you add new photos, the people you share the album with are automatically notified.

Delete photos, videos, and comments from a shared album

Creators of a shared album can delete any photos, videos, or comments in the album. Participants can delete anything that they personally added. Anything that gets deleted is automatically deleted from the shared album on all your devices and the devices of all participants.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Shared Albums, then tap an album.
4. Tap a photo or video, tap , then tap Delete from Shared Album.

To delete a comment, touch and hold it, then tap Delete.

Save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Shared Albums, then tap an album.
4. Touch and hold a photo or video thumbnail.

   To select multiple photos or videos, tap Select, then tap the items you want to save.
5. Tap Share, swipe up on the share menu, then tap Save Image or Save Video.

See also

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Add and remove people in a shared album

Next
Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

After you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can share photos and videos with friends and family in the Photos app. You and up to five other participants can add photos and videos to the library, and any edits, comments, or other adjustments made to them are seen by everyone in real time. Content in a shared library is also added to everyone's memories, featured photos, and the Photos widget.

Photos and videos added to a shared library are separate from your personal library. You can easily switch between viewing the shared library, your personal library, or both in the Photos app.

Switch between viewing your iCloud Shared Photo Library and personal library

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Make sure Library is selected in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap , then select the following:

   - *View your Photos content and iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap Both Libraries.
   - *View only your personal Photos content:* Tap Personal Library.
   - *View only iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap Shared Library.

When you view both your personal and shared library, content that's part of the shared library has a badge in the top-right corner of the thumbnail.

Make edits and changes to content in an iCloud Shared Photo Library

When you make the following changes to photos and videos in an iCloud Shared Photo Library, all participants see the changes:

- Edits; see Edit photos and videos.
- Favorites, captions, keywords, or date and time adjustments; see See photo and video information.
- Deleted content; see Delete or hide photos and videos.

  Note: You receive notifications if content you added to the shared library is deleted. To turn off notifications, tap your account in the top-right corner of the screen in Photos, tap Shared Library, then turn off Deletion Notifications. If content you added is deleted, you can move it from Recently Deleted back to your personal library within 30 days.

Move shared content from an iCloud Shared Photo Library to your personal library

Photos that are stored in your shared library have a badge in their top-right corner. You can move photos and videos that you contributed to the shared library back to your personal library.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video in your shared library.
3. Tap ··· at the top of the screen, then tap Move to Personal Library.

Add storage space to your iCloud Shared Photo Library

The content in an iCloud Shared Photo Library is available to all participants, but the iCloud storage used to store the content counts against the library organizer's storage space.

If the shared library content exceeds the organizer's available storage space, the organizer can upgrade to iCloud+ or add additional storage to their existing iCloud+ subscription. See Subscribe to iCloud+.

Table of Contents

Share long videos on iPhone

Some long video files are too large to send in a standard text message. You can use AirDrop, iCloud, or Mail Drop to send long videos that you record with your iPhone camera.

Send a video using AirDrop

The simplest way to send a large video to a nearby iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Vision Pro is with AirDrop. AirDrop sends information using Wi-Fi and Bluetooth®, so before sending, make sure both you and the recipient have these controls turned on in Control Center.

1. If the person you're sending the video to isn't in your contacts, have them do one of the following:

   - *On iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings > General > AirDrop, then tap Everyone for 10 Minutes.

   - *On a Mac:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, then click General in the sidebar. Click AirDrop & Handoff, then click the pop-up menu next to AirDrop and choose Everyone.

2. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.

3. Tap the video you want to send, then tap.

   If you want to send the video in its original format, including metadata, location, and any associated edit history or captions, tap Options, then turn on All Photos Data.

4. Tap AirDrop, then tap the contact or device you want to share with.

   After you share, the recipient receives an alert to accept or decline the AirDrop transfer.

Send a video using an iCloud Link

An iCloud Link is a URL that you can use to send a large video with Messages or Mail.

To send an iCloud Link, make sure you have iCloud Photos turned on. Then follow these steps:

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the video you want to send, then tap .
3. Tap Options, then tap Copy iCloud Link.
4. Go to Messages, Mail, or another communication app, then enter the recipient of the iCloud Link. Paste the iCloud Link into a message, and send it.

   Recipients have 30 days to download a video sent with an iCloud Link.

Send a video using Mail Drop

With Mail Drop, you can send a large video as an attachment in Mail.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the video you want to send, tap , then tap Mail.
3. Tap the To field, then enter the name or email of the recipient.

   If you want to add a subject or message, tap the Subject field or email body.
4. Tap to send.

   Recipients have 30 days to download Mail Drop attachments.

See also

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

Apple Support article: How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad

Apple Support article: Mail Drop limits

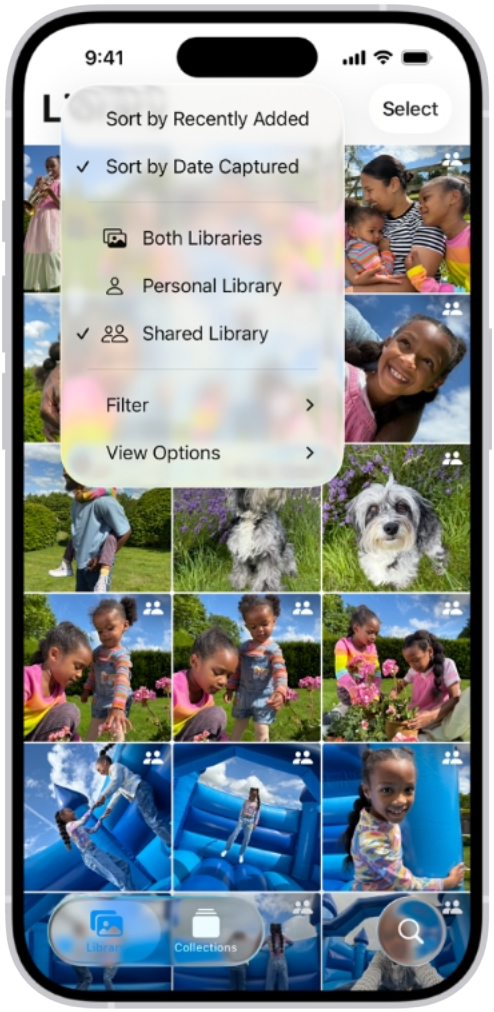
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

With the iCloud Shared Photo Library feature, you can set up or join a shared library to share photos and videos with up to five friends or family members. You and those close to you can collaborate on the photo collection and enjoy more complete memories, all in one place. You can belong to one shared library at a time.



When you join a shared library, the photos and videos that you contribute move from your personal library to the shared library, and all members of the library can view, edit, and delete them. Shared library photos and videos are integrated seamlessly in the Photos app alongside your personal content, but you can also use a filter to quickly switch between your personal and shared libraries.

Note: iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are the minimum system requirements to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a shared library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

Before you begin

Before you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, make sure you have iCloud Photos turned on.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, then make sure Sync this iPhone is on.

Note: You don't need Family Sharing turned on to set up a shared library.

Set up an iCloud Shared Photo Library

The person who sets up a shared library is the organizer.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Shared Library, then follow the onscreen instructions to add participants and move photos and videos into the shared library.

   Note: Photos and videos you add to the shared library don't appear in your personal library; see Switch between viewing your iCloud Shared Photo Library and personal library.

   You can preview the photos and videos you add to the shared library and make changes before you invite participants using Messages or a web link.

Join an iCloud Shared Photo Library

To join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, tap the invitation sent from the organizer, tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions. During setup, you can add photos and videos to the shared library the same way as the organizer (see Set up an iCloud Shared Photo Library).

After you join a shared library, you can add photos and videos to it in several ways, and access the same content within it as the organizer and other participants. See Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library.

Add participants to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

The person who sets up an iCloud Shared Photo Library (the organizer) can add new participants to the shared library.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Manage, then tap Add Participants.

   Note: A shared library can include up to six participants including the organizer; you can belong to one shared library at a time.

Delete or leave an iCloud Shared Photo Library

If you're the organizer of an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can delete it. If you aren't the organizer, you can leave the shared library.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Manage, then tap one of the following:

   - *Delete Shared Library:* When a shared library is deleted, participants who have been members of the shared library for more than 7 days can copy everything from the shared library into their own libraries. Participants who have been members for less than 7 days can copy only the content they contributed.

   - *Leave Shared Library:* When you leave a shared library, you can copy everything from the shared library into your own library, or just the content you contributed.

All content added to a shared library counts toward the iCloud storage space of the library organizer. See Add storage space to your iCloud Shared Photo Library.

See also

Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

Use iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

Apple Support article: How to use iCloud Shared Photo Library

Previous
Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album

Next
Use iCloud Shared Photo Library

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

With Shared Albums, you can create albums to share with just the people you choose—and they can add their own photos, videos, and comments for everyone to see. If you set up a shared album, you can also rename or delete it.

Before you begin

Make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account on your iPhone and any other devices you want to use with Shared Albums.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, tap iCloud, then tap Photos.
3. Turn on Shared Albums.

Create a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then tap Shared.
4. Tap +, then do the following:

   - *Add photos and videos to the album:* Tap Add Photos, select the items you want to add, then tap .
   - *Name the album:* Type a name in the Shared Album Name text field.
   - *Invite people to join:* Tap Add Participants, enter the name of a contact you want to add, or type the email address or phone number associated with the recipient's Apple Account, then tap Done. See Invite or remove people.

5. Tap Create.

Join a shared album

When you're invited to join a shared album, a notification appears on your iPhone screen.

Tap the notification, then tap Accept on the album in the Photos app.

If you don't join the shared album by tapping the notification, you can also do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, tap Activity, then tap Accept on the new album.

Note: The person who created the album receives a notification when someone accepts the invitation to join the shared album.

View shared albums

You can view all of your shared albums in one place.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Shared Albums to see all of your shared albums, then tap an album to view it.

   Tip: Tap Activity to view updates to your shared albums, such as new photos and comments.

Rename a shared album

The creator of a shared album can change its name.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Shared Albums, then tap an album.
4. Tap , then tap the current album name.

5. Enter a new name in the text field, then tap ✓.

Delete or remove yourself from a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Shared Albums, then tap an album.
4. Tap ···, then tap Delete Shared Album if you created the album, or tap Unsubscribe if you're a subscriber.

Photos that you saved or downloaded from a shared album to your photo library stay in your library even if the shared album is deleted, or the person who created the album stops sharing it. See Save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library.

See also

Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album on iPhone

Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Previous
Share long videos

Next
Add and remove people in a shared album

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone

You can filter and sort photos and videos in the albums you create in the Photos app. For example, you can filter an album to show only photos, only videos, or photos and videos you marked as favorites. You can also sort photos and videos in an album by newest to oldest, oldest to newest, or in a custom order.

Filter photos and videos in an album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then open an album.
4. Tap , tap Filter, then choose an option.

To remove a filter from an album, tap the icon that replaced at the bottom of the screen, then tap Remove Filter.

Sort photos and videos in an album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then open an album.
4. Tap , then choose a sort option.

   If you choose Sort by Custom Order, touch and hold the photo or video thumbnail, then drag it into a new position.

See also

Create and work with photo albums on iPhone

Add, delete, and find photos and videos in albums on iPhone

Sort and filter the photo library on iPhone

Previous
Add, delete, and find photos and videos in albums

Next
Share photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPhone

If you're the creator of a shared album, you can invite more participants to join the album. You can also remove participants from the album, manage album notifications, and turn posting for participants off and on. The creator of a shared album can also choose to let participants add additional participants to the album. If you have friends and family who don't use iCloud, you can share the album with them by sending an iCloud URL.

Invite or remove people

The creator of a shared album can invite new participants to join the shared album.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Shared Albums, then tap an album.
4. Tap, tap the album name, then do any of the following:
   - *Invite someone:* Tap Add Participants, then enter the name of the contact you want to add, or type an email address or phone number.
   - *Remove someone:* Tap the name, then tap Remove Subscriber.
   - *Resend an invitation:* Tap the name, then tap Resend Invitation.
5. Tap.

Share an album with people who don't use iCloud

The creator of a shared album can create a unique iCloud URL to share the album with people who don't use iCloud.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Shared Albums, then tap an album.
4. Tap ···, tap the album name, then turn on Public Website.
5. Tap Share Link, then choose how you want to share the iCloud URL—Mail or Messages, for example.
6. Tap ✓.

When Public Website is turned on, anyone with the URL can access the album.

Manage posts and notifications

The creator of a shared album can manage participant posting and album activity notifications by turning those settings off and on.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Shared Albums, then tap an album.
4. Tap ···, tap the album name, then do any of the following:

    - *Only allow yourself to post photos and videos*: Turn off Participants Can Add Photos; tap again to turn participant posting back on.

    - *Turn off notifications:* Turn off Notifications to stop notifications when subscribers like, comment, or add photos and videos to the album; tap again to turn album notifications back on.

5. Tap ✓.

When participants post or comment in a shared album you're a part of, notifications about the activity appear in the Albums Activity tab.

See also

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album on iPhone

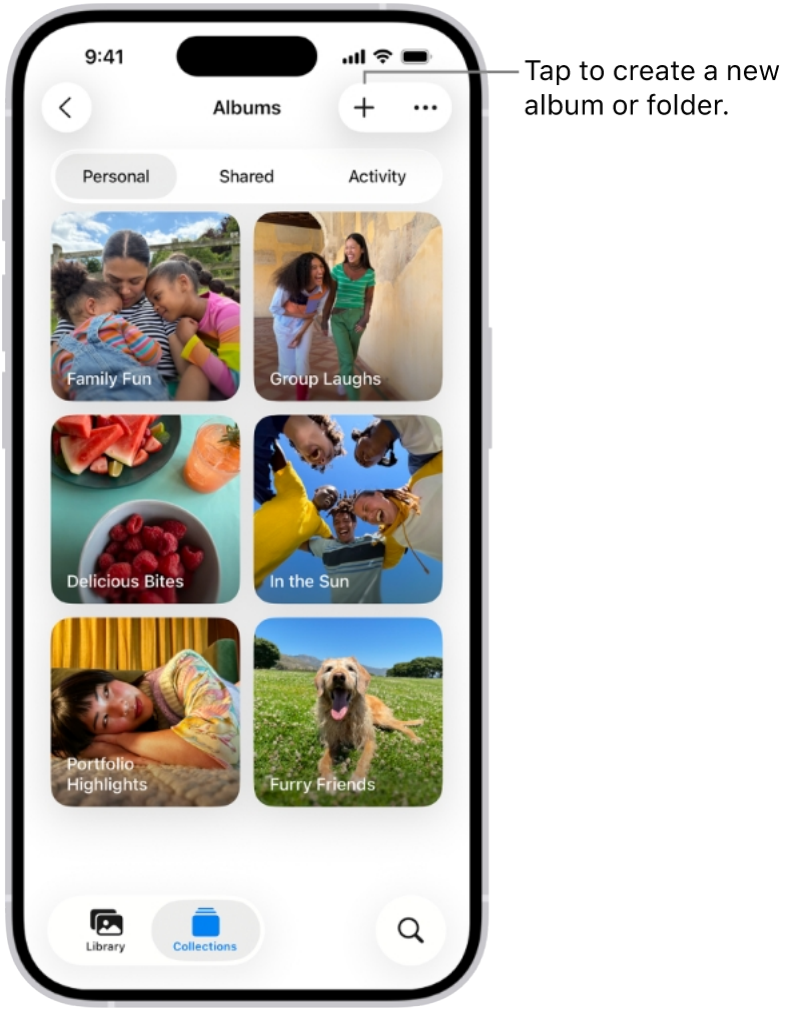
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create and work with photo albums on iPhone

Use albums in the Photos app to view and organize your photos and videos. You can also rename, rearrange, and delete albums and create folders to contain multiple albums.



If you use iCloud Photos, albums are stored in iCloud. They're up to date and accessible on devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. See Back up and sync your photos and videos with iCloud.

Create a new album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then tap ＋.
4. Tap New Album, then name the album, add photos, and choose a key photo to represent the album.
5. Tap Create.

To create an album that you can collaborate on with other people, see Create shared albums.

Sort albums

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, tap ···, then choose a sort option.

   If you choose Sort by Custom Order, touch and hold an album, then drag it to a new position.
4. To show only albums or only folders, tap ···, tap Filter, then choose an option.

To change the format of the albums list, tap ···, then select List View or Key Photo.

Rename an album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then touch and hold the album you want to rename.
4. Tap Edit Title and Photos.
5. Enter the new name in the text field, then tap Done.

Share photos from an album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap the album to open it, then tap Select.

4. Tap the items you want to share, or tap Select All to share everything in the album.
5. Tap ⎙, then choose a sharing option such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

Delete an album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then touch and hold the album you want to delete.
4. Tap Delete Album.

Note: When you delete an album, the photos and videos within it remain in your photo library and any other albums they were added to.

Organize albums in folders

You can create folders to organize your albums. After you create a folder, it appears in the Albums collection.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then tap +.
4. Tap New Folder, then name the folder and add albums to it.
5. Tap Create.

To remove an album from a folder, tap the folder to open it, touch and hold an album, then tap Remove from Folder.

See also

Add, delete, and find photos and videos in albums on iPhone

Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Table of Contents

Add, delete, and find photos and videos in albums on iPhone

You can add photos and videos to and delete them from the albums you create in the Photos app. You can also search within an album to quickly find specific photos and videos.

Add photos and videos to an existing album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then tap an album.
4. Tap + after the last photo in the album's photo grid.
5. Select the photos or videos you want to add to the album, then tap ✓.

Tip: Tap to find photos from a specific time or place.

You can also add individual photos and videos directly to an album. Tap the photo or video to view it in full screen, tap ···, tap Add to Album, then tap the album you want to add to.

While viewing your library, you can add multiple items to an album at once. Tap Select, then tap the items you want to add. Tap, tap Add to Album, then tap the album you want to add the items to.

Remove photos and videos from an album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then tap an album.
4. Touch and hold the photo you want to remove, then tap Remove from Album.

To remove multiple photos or videos from an album, tap Select, then select the items you want to remove. Tap ⋯, then tap Remove from Album.

Search for photos in an album

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap Albums, then tap the album you want to search in.
4. Tap, enter the person, object, or place you're looking for, then tap.
5. Tap to close the search results.

See also

Create and work with photo albums on iPhone

Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPhone

Search for photos and videos on iPhone

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Previous
Create and work with photo albums

Next
Filter and sort photos and videos in albums

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Share photos and videos on iPhone

You can share photos and videos in Mail or Messages, or other apps you install. You can also use AirDrop to instantly share photos with anyone nearby on an iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Vision Pro.

To learn about transferring photos and videos to an external storage device, see Import and export photos and videos.

Note: Sharing a photo or video includes sharing its associated metadata, such as date and time, location, device, and captions.

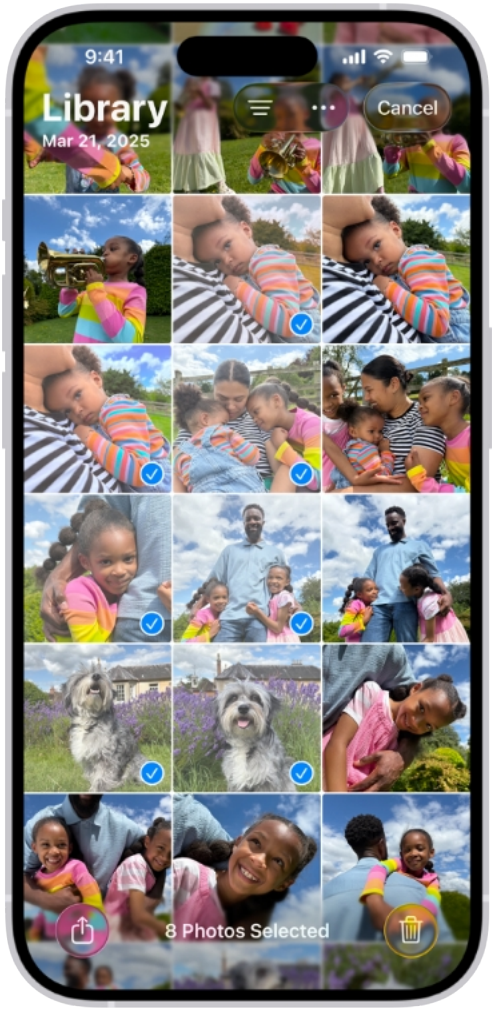
Share photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

    - *Share a single photo or video:* Open the photo or video, tap, then choose a sharing option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.



- *Share multiple photos or videos:* While viewing a screen with multiple thumbnails, tap Select, then tap the thumbnails of the photos and videos you want to share. Tap ⎋, then choose a sharing option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.



- *Share all the photos in a collection:* While viewing a collection—like a collection from Recent Days, Memories, or Trips—tap ···, tap Share, then choose a sharing option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

You can also create a shared album so that you can collaborate on the album with just the people you choose. See Create shared albums.

Note: The size limit of attachments is determined by your service provider. For devices or services that don't support Live Photos, a Live Photo is shared as a still photo.

Adjust the information you share about a photo or video

Before you share a photo or video, you can adjust the format, file type, and information that gets shared with it.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, tap ⎙, tap Options, then do any of the following:

- *Turn off location data:* Turn off Location.

- *Adjust the file format:* Tap Automatic for the best file format for the destination, tap Current to prevent a file format conversion, or tap Most Compatible and files may convert to JPEG or MOV.

- *Send as iCloud link:* Turn on iCloud Link to share a URL to view or download the photos or videos. iCloud links are available for 30 days.

- *Send all photo data:* Turn on All Photos Data to share the original file with edit history and metadata; the recipient can view and modify the current version (available with AirDrop and iCloud links only).

3. Tap .

Save or share a photo or video you receive

You can save photos shared with you from other apps.

Depending on the app, tap next to the image, or touch and hold the photo or video, then tap .

You can view your saved photos and videos in your photo library, or see Find recently saved photos.

Note: Photos and videos shared with you in the Messages app are automatically saved in your photo library. To turn off this feature, go to Settings > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, then turn off Photos.

See also

Use AirDrop to send items to nearby Apple devices

Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Previous
Filter and sort photos and videos in albums

Next
Share long videos

Table of Contents

Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, you can listen to audio content from Apple Music, Apple News+, and eligible third-party subscription apps.

Note: Not all apps offer audio content that's available in Podcasts.

Connect app subscriptions to Podcasts

Your eligible app subscriptions are automatically connected to Podcasts if you subscribed through the App Store and the app offers audio content in Podcasts.

If you subscribed using another method, do the following:

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Browse or search for a channel with an eligible subscription.
3. On the Channel page, tap the Already a Subscriber link, then follow the instructions to connect your app subscription.

After an app subscription is connected, you can find the channel in your library. You can use Podcasts to play all subscriber-only shows and episodes.

See also

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change your download settings for Podcasts on iPhone

Podcasts you follow are automatically downloaded to your Apple device. Episodes you've played are automatically deleted from your device. You can change these settings, and adjust other download options.

Turn automatic downloads on or off

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Podcasts.
3. Tap Automatically Download, then tap an option.

Tip: To automatically download episodes from a particular podcast, go to the Podcasts app, tap Library, then tap Shows. Touch and hold the show, tap Settings, then tap Automatically Download to choose a download option.

Remove downloaded podcasts after you listen to them

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Podcasts.
3. Turn on Remove Played Downloads.

   To adjust this setting for a particular podcast you follow, tap Library, tap Shows, then touch and hold the show. Tap Settings, then turn on Remove Played Downloads.

Resume automatic downloads

If you haven't listened to a show you follow in a while, automatic downloads are automatically paused. You can resume automatic downloads at any time.

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Shows, then tap a show.
3. Tap , then tap Turn On Automatic Downloads.

Turn off automatic syncing across Apple devices

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Podcasts.
3. Turn off Sync Library.

See also

Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

Previous
Listen to subscriber-only content

Next
Get started with Preview on iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Interact with text in an image in Preview on iPhone

You can use Live Text in the Preview app to copy or translate text within an image, make a call, open a website, or start an email.



1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open an image that shows text, then select the text. See Select, cut, copy, and paste text.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Copy text:* Tap Copy. You can then paste the text into another document or app.

- *Look up the meaning of text:* Tap Look Up.
- *Translate text:* Tap Translate, then choose a language.

  Note: Translation isn't available in all languages and may not be available in some countries or regions.
- *Search the web for the text:* Tap >, then tap Search Web.
- *Call or text a phone number:* Tap Call or Message. (You may need to tap > to see all options.)
- *Save a phone number or email address:* Tap >, then tap Add to Contacts.
- *Send an email or message to an email address:* Tap Email or Message. (You may need to tap > to see all options.)
- *Go to a website:* Tap Open Link. (You may need to tap > to see the option.)

See also

Open and view PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Edit an image in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Open and view PDFs and images

Next
Fill out and sign PDF forms

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get started with Preview on iPhone

Learn how to use the Preview app to fill out and sign PDF forms, scan documents, and make changes to PDF documents and images.

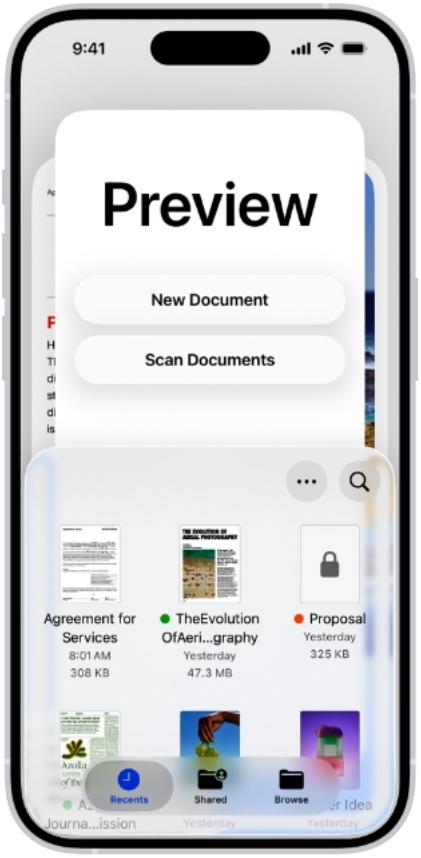


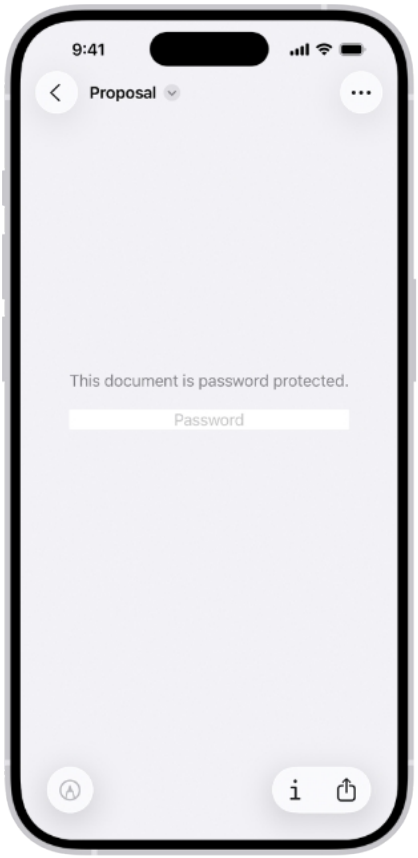
Fill out PDF forms

To fill out a PDF form in Preview, tap and select a field. Enter text, or tap a suggestion that appears above the onscreen keyboard. If the field is a signature field, you can use your finger to add a signature.

Scan and save to create a PDF file

You can scan text or a document to create a PDF. Tap Scan Documents in the middle of the screen, position each page in the camera to capture it, then tap .



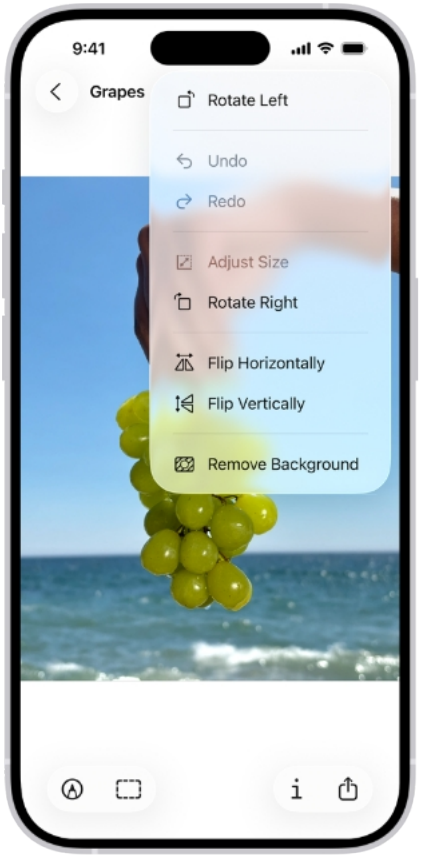


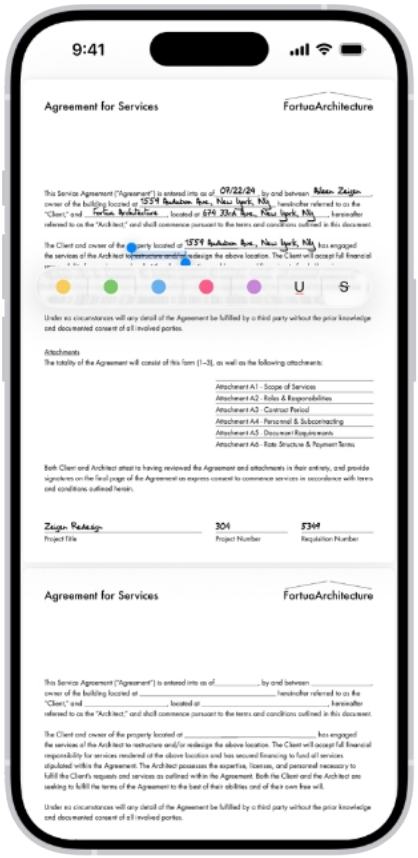
Protect a PDF document with a password

You can lock a PDF with a password. Open a PDF, tap next to the filename, then tap Lock. Turn on Require Password, then enter a password in the Password and Verify fields.

Remove the background from an image

You can remove image backgrounds to focus on what's important. Tap ••• at the top of the screen, then choose Remove Background.





Highlight, underline, or strike through text

You can highlight, underline, or strike through text in a PDF. Open a PDF, then select text. Tap Highlight, then tap a highlight color, the underline button, or the strike through button.

Want to learn more?

- Fill out and sign PDF forms in Preview on iPhone
- Lock PDFs in Preview on iPhone
- Edit an image in Preview on iPhone
- Annotate a PDF or image in Preview on iPhone
- Open and view PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Change download settings

Next
Open and view PDFs and images

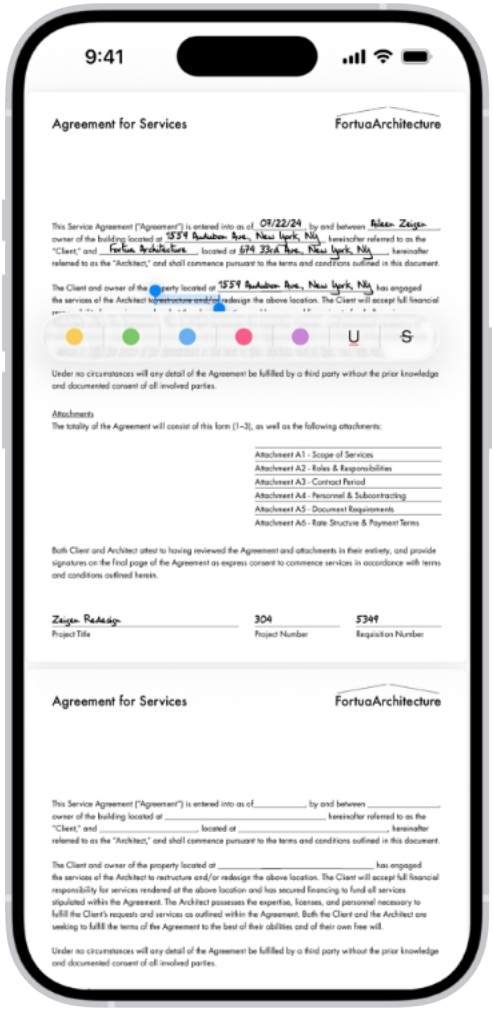
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Annotate a PDF or image in Preview on iPhone

You can copy, highlight, underline, or strike through text in a PDF file. You can also annotate a PDF or image with stickers, signatures, shapes, or text.



Select and copy text

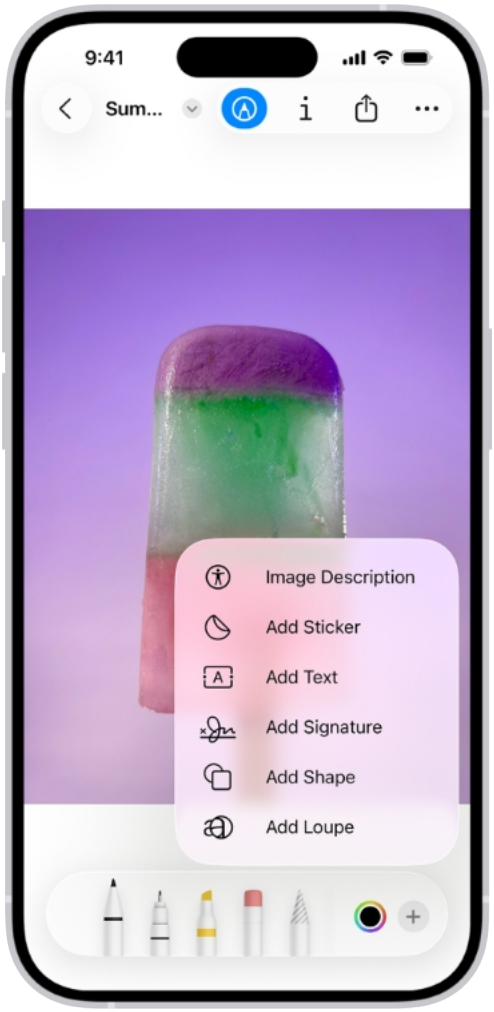
1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF.
3. To select text, touch and hold the first word, then move the grab points.
4. To copy the selection, tap Copy.

You can then paste the text into another document or app. See Select, cut, copy, and paste text.

Highlight, underline, or strike through text

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF.
3. Select and copy text, then tap Highlight.
4. Choose a highlight color, or tap the underline or strike through button.

Add an annotation



1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF.
3. Tap Ⓐ at the top of the screen, tap ⊕ at the bottom of the screen, then choose an option, such as a sticker, signature, shape, or text. For images, you can also add an

image description or a loupe.

To undo a change, tap •••, then tap Undo.

See also

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Previous
Fill out and sign PDF forms

Next
Add, delete, rotate, move, or crop PDF pages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

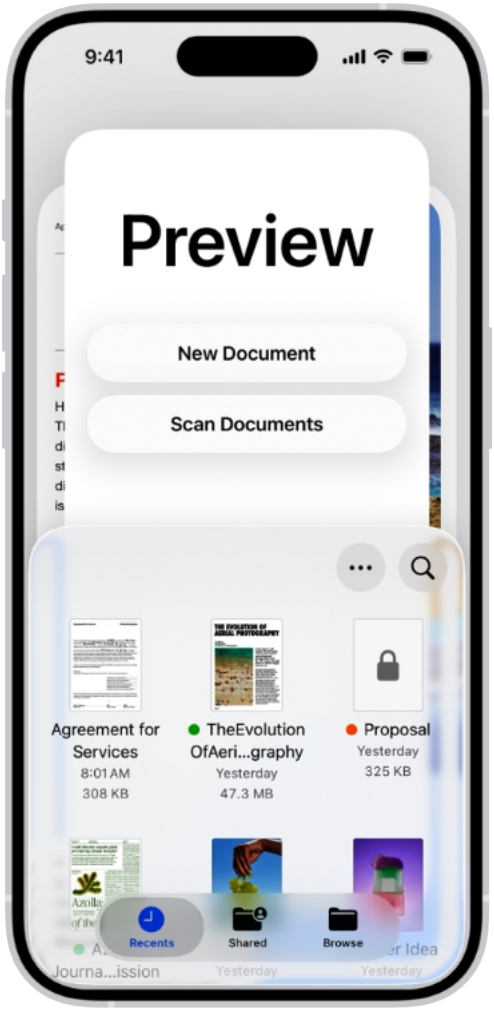
UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Open and view PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

You can use the Preview app to open and view PDF documents and images.



Open a PDF or image

You can browse and open PDFs and images directly in Preview, without opening the Files app first.

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following to find a file:

   - *View files you opened recently:* Tap Recents.

- *View shared files:* Tap Shared.
- *Browse available files:* Tap Browse.
- *Choose a location to browse:* Tap Browse, tap ‹, then tap an option under Locations.
- *Browse by tag:* Tap Browse, tap ‹, then tap an option under Tags.

3. Optionally, tap •••, then select how items appear (icons or list) or how items are sorted.
4. Tap a file to open it.

Tip: If someone emails you a PDF form to fill out, you can tap the attached file in the Mail app to open and complete the form in Preview. You can then reply to the sender and attach the completed form. See Reply to an email with a PDF attachment.

View a PDF or image

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open the PDF or image you want to view.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Zoom in or out:* Pinch two fingers open or closed on a page or image.
- *Show thumbnails for a PDF:* Tap the page count. (If the page count doesn't appear, tap the screen.)
- *Hide thumbnails for a PDF:* Pinch two fingers open on a page until the thumbnails disappear.
- *Scroll pages in a PDF:* Swipe up or down.
- *Go to a specific page in a PDF:* Tap •••, then tap Go to Page. Enter a page number, then tap Go.

Find text in a PDF

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.

2. Open a PDF you want to search.
3. Tap Search.
4. Optionally, tap Search in the search field and do any of the following:
    - *Exclude matches where the search text is part of another word:* Select Whole Word.
    - *Only include results that match the capitalization of the search text:* Select Match Case.
5. Enter a word or phrase in the search field.

    If you enter a phrase, Preview searches for that exact phrase.
6. Tap Down or Up to go to the next or previous search result.
7. Tap Done to close the search results.

View information about a PDF or image

You can get information about PDF documents and images, such as creation date, filename, and more. When location information is available for a photo, you can also view the latitude and longitude where the photo was taken.

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF or image.
3. Tap i.

See also

Annotate a PDF or image in Preview on iPhone

Fill out and sign PDF forms in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Get started with Preview on iPhone

Next
Interact with text in an image

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app, subscribe to, change, cancel, and share your podcasts subscriptions. Paid subscriptions allow you to support the shows you love, and they often include premium extras, early access to new episodes, or ad-free listening.

Note: Not all subscriptions and channels are available in all countries, regions, or languages. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to a show or channel

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Select the show or channel you want to subscribe to.
3. Tap the subscription button (if available).

When you subscribe to a show, you automatically follow it. You can access shows you subscribe to or follow on your other Apple devices or on the Apple Podcasts app. See Follow your favorite podcasts. When you subscribe to a channel or follow one of its shows, the channel appears in the Channels section of your library.

Change or cancel your subscriptions

1. Go to the Podcasts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home.
3. Tap or your profile picture, then tap Manage Subscriptions.
4. Tap a subscription to change or cancel it.

Share Apple Podcasts subscriptions

When you subscribe to podcast channels, you can use Family Sharing to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members will automatically have access to the channels you subscribe to.

If you join a family group and a family group member subscribes to a show you already subscribe to, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing a show subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription or leave a Family Sharing group.

See also

Apple Support article: Get and manage your Apple Podcasts Subscriptions

Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone

Previous
Download, save, remove, and share podcasts

Next
Listen to subscriber-only content

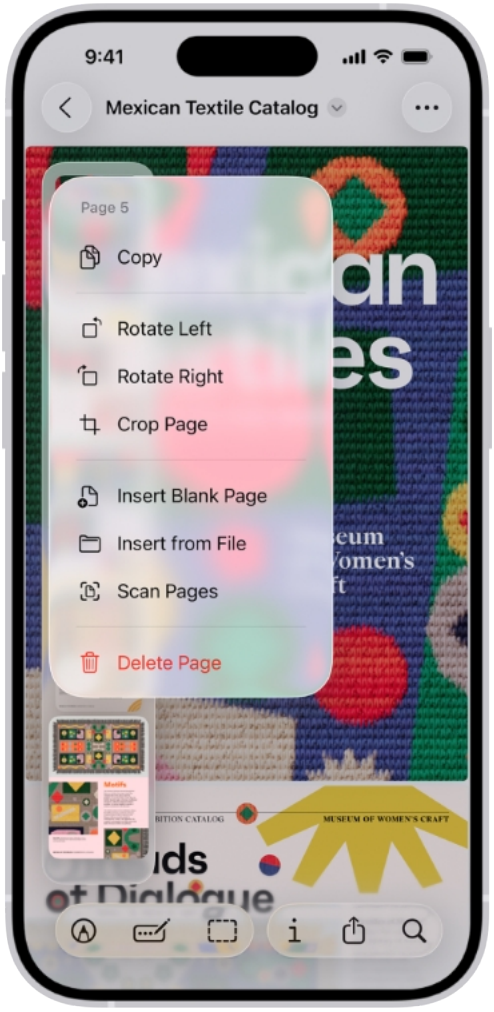
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Add, delete, rotate, move, or crop PDF pages in Preview on iPhone

You can add, delete, rotate, reorder, or crop pages in a PDF.



Add or delete pages

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF.
3. Tap the page count to show thumbnails. (If the page count doesn't appear, pinch two fingers together or apart on the page.)
4. Touch and hold a thumbnail, then do any of the following:

- *Insert a blank page:* Tap Insert Blank Page.
- *Insert a PDF or image:* Tap Insert from File.
- *Insert a scanned document:* Tap Scan Pages, scan the document, then tap ✓. See Scan text and documents.
- *Delete the selected page:* Tap Delete Page.

Rotate a page

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF.
3. Tap •••, then tap Rotate Left or Rotate Right.

Move a page

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF.
3. Touch and hold a thumbnail until menu options appear, then drag the page thumbnail above or below another one. (If you don't see thumbnails, tap the screen to show the page count, then tap the page count.)

Crop a page

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF.
3. Scroll to the page you want to crop, then tap ⬚.
4. Drag the blue handles to select an area, tap within the selected area, then tap Crop.

To undo a change, tap •••, then tap Undo.

See also

Open and view PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Annotate a PDF or image in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Annotate a PDF or image

Next
Edit an image

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Fill out and sign PDF forms in Preview on iPhone

You can fill out and sign PDF forms in the Preview app.



1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open a PDF form.
3. Tap .
4. Tap a field, then enter information (or tap the AutoFill suggestion above the onscreen keyboard to add that information).

5. To add a signature or a text form box, tap ⊕.

See also

Lock PDFs in Preview on iPhone

Annotate a PDF or image in Preview on iPhone

Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures iPhone

Previous
Interact with text in an image

Next
Annotate a PDF or image

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Edit an image in Preview on iPhone

You can crop, rotate, or flip an image in Preview. You can also remove the background or adjust the image size.

Crop an image

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open an image.
3. Tap ⬚.
4. Drag the blue handles to select an area, tap within the selected area, then tap Crop.

Rotate or flip an image

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open an image.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Rotate the image:* Tap •••, then choose Rotate Left or Rotate Right.
   - *Flip the image:* Tap •••, then choose Flip Horizontally or Flip Vertically.

Remove the background from an image

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open an image.
3. Tap •••, then tap Remove Background.

Adjust the size of an image

1. Go to the Preview app on your iPhone.
2. Open an image.
3. Tap •••, then tap Adjust Size. Choose options, then tap Done.

To undo a change, tap •••, then tap Undo.

See also

Export or compress PDFs and images in Preview on iPhone

Add, delete, rotate, move, or crop PDF pages in Preview on iPhone

Previous
Add, delete, rotate, move, or crop PDF pages

Next
Save, rename, or move PDFs and images

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Change your Reminders settings on iPhone

You can customize your preferences for the Reminders app in Settings. Choose the default list for new items, adjust notifications, and more.

Customize your Reminders settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Reminders.
3. Adjust any of the following:

- *Accounts:* Add or remove accounts in Reminders.
- *Location:* Control the location information you share.
- *Siri:* Allow Siri to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Reminders.
- *Search:* Allow suggestions and content from Reminders to appear in Search and widgets.
- *Notifications:* Change notification settings.
- *Language:* Choose your preferred languages (option appears when multiple languages are added).
- *Default List:* Choose the list for new reminders you create outside of a specific list, such as reminders you create using Siri.
- *Today Notification:* Set a time to see notifications for all-day reminders that have been assigned a date without a time.

- *Show as Overdue:* The scheduled date turns red for overdue all-day reminders.
- *Time Zone:* Set the time zone used to display and create reminders.
- *Include Due Today:* The badge count includes overdue items and items due today.
- *Mute Notifications:* Turn off notifications for assigned reminders.
- *Show Suggestions:* If you type text that matches a previously completed reminder, that reminder appears as a suggestion.
- *Add Language:* Set an additional language that Reminders uses to automatically place grocery items into categories.
- *Reset Categories:* Clears the categorization that was learned as you manually moved items in grocery or auto-categorized lists. This applies to new items you add on any of your devices, including in lists you've shared. Existing items and lists shared with you won't be affected.

See also

Find settings on iPhone

Previous
Add or remove accounts

Next
Get started with Safari

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

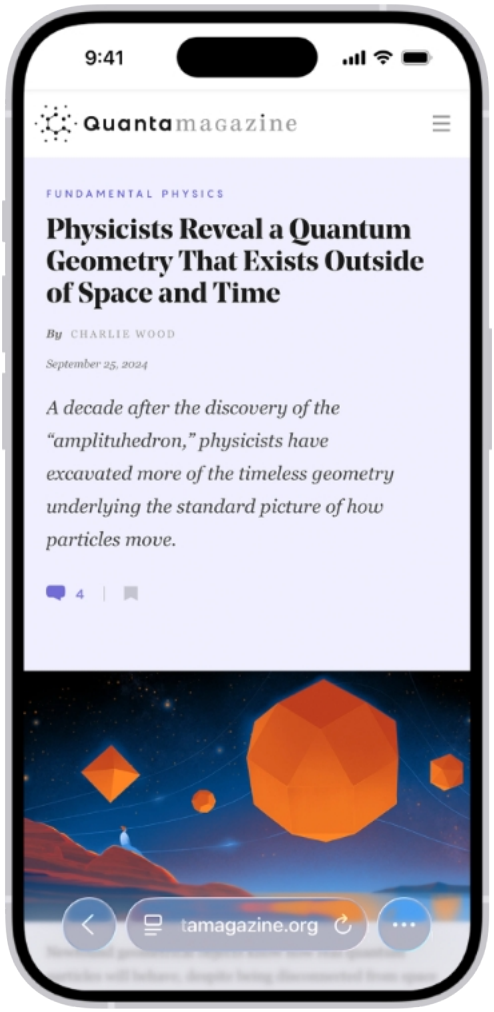
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

You can browse the web, view websites, preview website links, translate webpages, and add the Safari app back to your Home Screen if it gets removed. Sign in to iCloud with the same Apple Account on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, history, and Reading List up to date across all your devices.



Go to a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Enter the name or web address (URL) of the webpage in the search field.

View websites with Safari

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Get back to the top:* Double-tap the top edge of the screen to quickly return to the top of a long page.
   - *See more of the page:* Turn iPhone to landscape orientation.
   - *Refresh the page:* Pull down from the top of the page.
   - *Share links:* At the bottom of the page, tap , then tap Share.

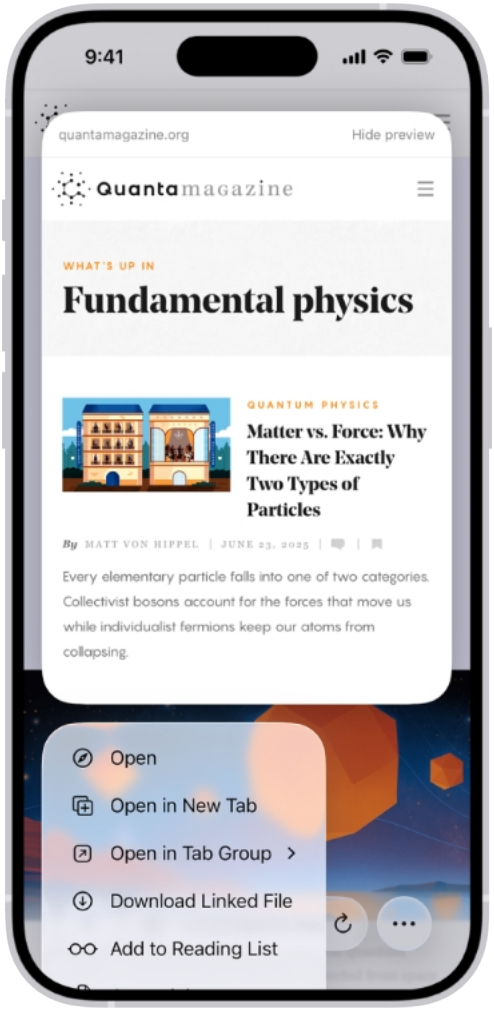
     If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap . See Change the layout in Safari.

Preview website links

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a link in Safari to see a preview of the link without opening the page.

   To open the link, tap the preview, or choose Open.

To close the preview and stay on the current page, tap anywhere outside the preview.



Translate a webpage or image

When you view a webpage or image that's in another language, you can use Safari to translate the text (not available in all languages or regions).

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Translate to [*language*] (if translation is available).

Add Safari back to your Home Screen

If you don't see Safari on your Home Screen, you can find it in App Library and add it back.

1. On the Home Screen, swipe left until you see the App Library.
2. Enter "Safari" in the search field.
3. Touch and hold , then tap Add to Home Screen.

See also

Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone

Previous
Get started with Safari

Next
Search for websites

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Work with templates in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can save a list as a template to reuse it for routines, packing lists, and more. Create a link to publish and share a template with others, or download templates that others have shared.

Save a list as a template

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. When viewing a list, tap ···, then tap Save as Template.
3. Enter a name for the template.
4. Turn on or off Include Completed Reminders, then tap .

After you make a template from a list, any changes you make to that list don't affect the template.

Make a new list from a template

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, tap Templates, then tap the name of a template.
3. Enter a name for the list, then tap Create.

Edit or delete a template

Any changes you make to a template don't affect lists previously created from the template.

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, tap Templates, then tap ⓘ next to the template you want to manage.

3. Choose one of the following:

   - *Edit Template:* Add, edit, or delete any items in the template. You can also change the name, color, and icon for the template.
   - *Delete Template:* Remove the template.

Share a template

When you share a template, Apple servers have access so that anyone with the link can download a copy of the template on a device using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. You can choose whether to keep any dates, tags, or locations in the shared template; images are removed.

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, tap Templates, then tap ⓘ next to the template you want to share.
3. Tap Share Template, then choose a method for sharing.

To manage a shared template, tap ···, tap Templates, tap ⓘ, then tap Manage Link.

If you make changes to the template after sharing, you can update the shared version. Anyone who downloaded the previous version needs to download the template again to get the updates.

If you stop sharing a template, this doesn't affect anyone who has already downloaded the template.

See also

Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPhone

Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone

Previous
Print a list

Next
Add or remove accounts

Select version:

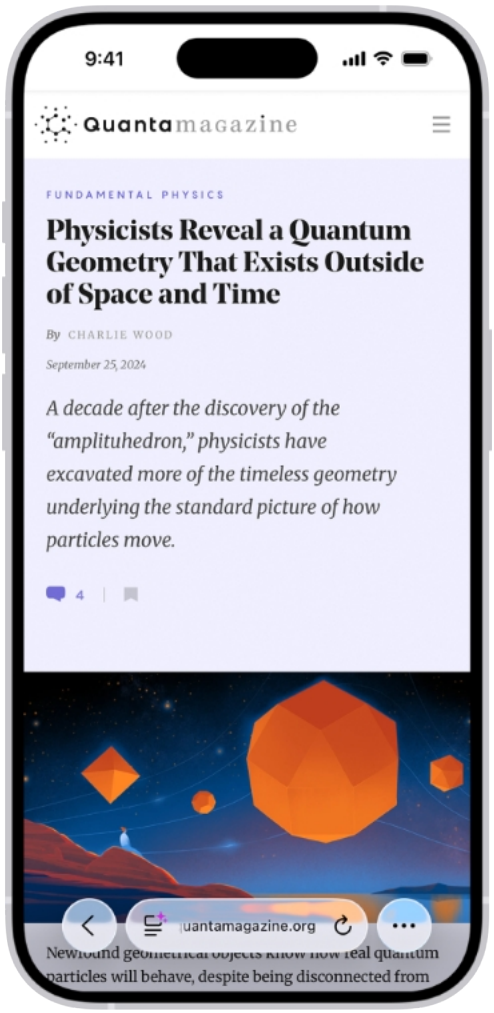
iOS 26

Table of Contents

See a webpage’s highlights in Safari on iPhone

You can learn more about the current webpage by looking at Highlights. Highlights share helpful information, such as directions, summaries, and links to additional details about people, music, movies, and TV shows.

Note: Highlights aren’t available in all countries or regions.



1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Open a webpage.

   If Highlights are available for the webpage, replaces on the left side of the search field.

3. Tap .

See also

Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

Previous
Search for websites

Next
Customize your Safari settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

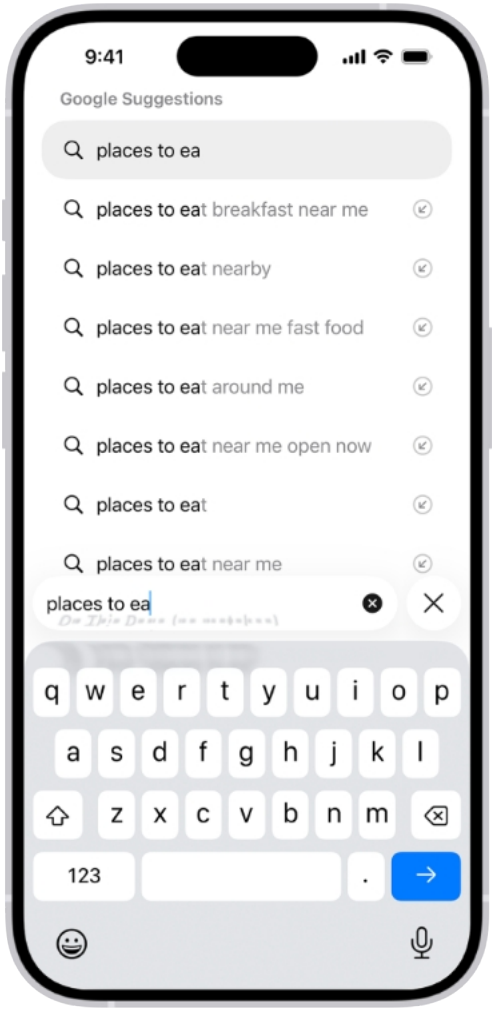
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

Enter a URL or a search term to find websites or specific information.



Search the web

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Enter a search term, phrase, or URL in the search field.
3. Tap a search suggestion, or tap → on the keyboard.

If you don’t want to see suggested search terms, go to Settings > Apps > Safari, then turn off Search Engine Suggestions.

See your favorite websites while you search

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Start Page Favorites, then select the folder with the favorites you want to see.

Search a webpage

You can find a specific word or phrase on a webpage.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap.
3. Enter the word or phrase in the search field.
4. Tap to jump to other mentions.

Choose a search engine

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Search Engine, then choose a search engine.

Search for objects in your photos

With Visual Look Up, you can identify and learn about popular landmarks, plants, pets, and more that appear in your photos and videos. See Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos.



Tip: You can use the same feature to scan text and search online. See Use Live Text with your iPhone camera.

See also

Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Browse the web

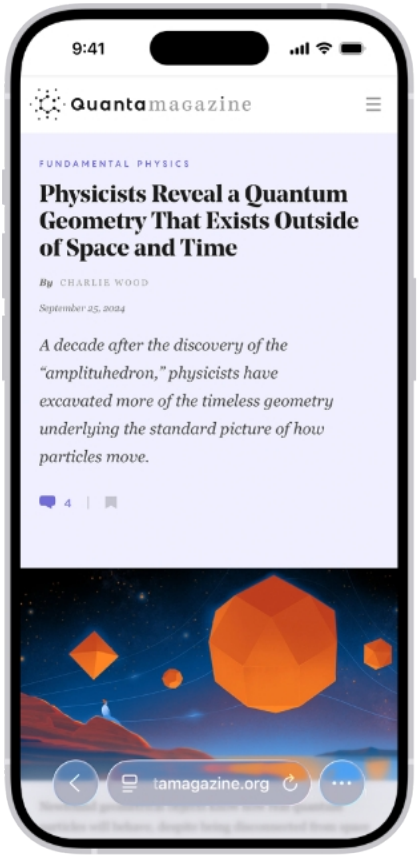
Next
See highlights

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Get started with Safari on iPhone

The Safari app brings the internet to your iPhone. You can browse the web, bookmark websites to revisit later, keep your browsing activity private, and much more.

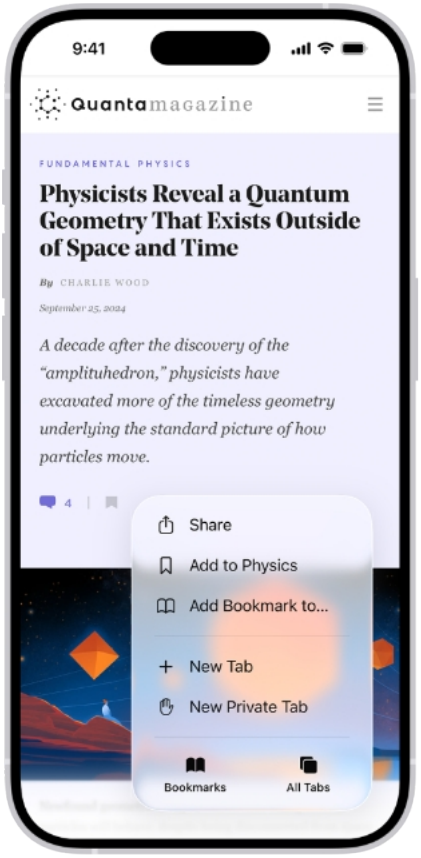


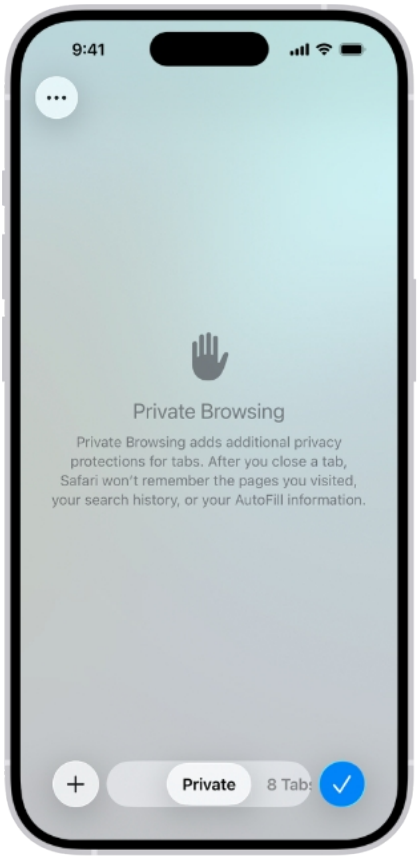
Browse the web

Surf the web or look for answers to specific questions. In the search field, enter the name or web address of a webpage, or type in a few words, a phrase, or a question.

Bookmark a website

Save a website to revisit later. Tap ···, then tap “Add Bookmark to.”



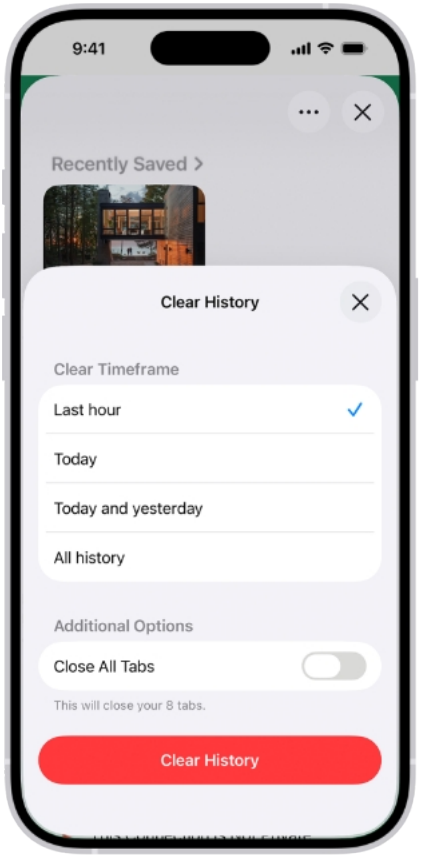


Browse privately

Keep your browsing activities to yourself. When you use Private Browsing, the tabs you open don’t appear in History on iPhone or in the list of tabs on your other devices. Tap ···, tap All Tabs, then swipe right on the tab bar until Private appears.

Remove cookies and clear your cache

Remove cookies and clear the cache on your iPhone to remove permissions you granted to websites to use your location (or send you notifications) and to erase your browsing history. Tap ···, tap Bookmarks, tap 🕘, tap ···, then tap Clear.



Note: Clearing your browsing history in Safari doesn't clear any browsing histories kept independently by websites you visited, or your browsing history in other apps.

Want to learn more?

- Browse the web using Safari on iPhone
- Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone
- Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone
- Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone
- Customize your Safari settings on iPhone
- Save webpages to read later in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Change Reminders settings

Next
Browse the web

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add or remove accounts in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app, you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise-managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and Yahoo—and keep all your to-do lists in one place. Your reminders stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Keep your reminders up to date on all your devices with iCloud

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name.
3. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then turn on Reminders.

Your reminders stored in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Update your reminders stored in iCloud

If you've been using Reminders with iOS 12 or earlier, you may need to update your reminders stored in iCloud to use features such as attachments, flags, list colors and icons, and more.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name.
3. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then make sure Reminders is turned on.
4. Go to the Reminders app.

5. On the Welcome to Reminders screen, choose one of the following options:

    - *Update Now:* Begin the update process.
    - *Update Later:* A blue Update button appears above your lists; tap it when you're ready to update your reminders.

Note: Updated reminders aren't backward compatible with the Reminders app in earlier versions of iOS and macOS. See the Apple Support article Update the Reminders app in iOS 13 or later.

Add other accounts

You can use the Reminders app to manage your to-do lists in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange and Yahoo.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Reminders.
3. Tap Reminders Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Do one of the following:

    - Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.
    - If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account, enter your account information, then turn on Reminders for that account.

Remove an account

When you remove or delete an account, the reminders in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The reminders remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Microsoft Exchange) and any other devices you had already set up.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Reminders.
3. Tap Reminders Accounts, then tap the account you want to remove.
4. Do one of the following:

    - *Stop using Reminders on the account:* Turn off Reminders.

You can continue to use the account for other services, such as Calendar.

- *Stop using all services on the account:* Tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).

  If you don’t see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

See also

Use iCloud on iPhone

Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts on iPhone

Previous
Work with templates

Next
Change Reminders settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

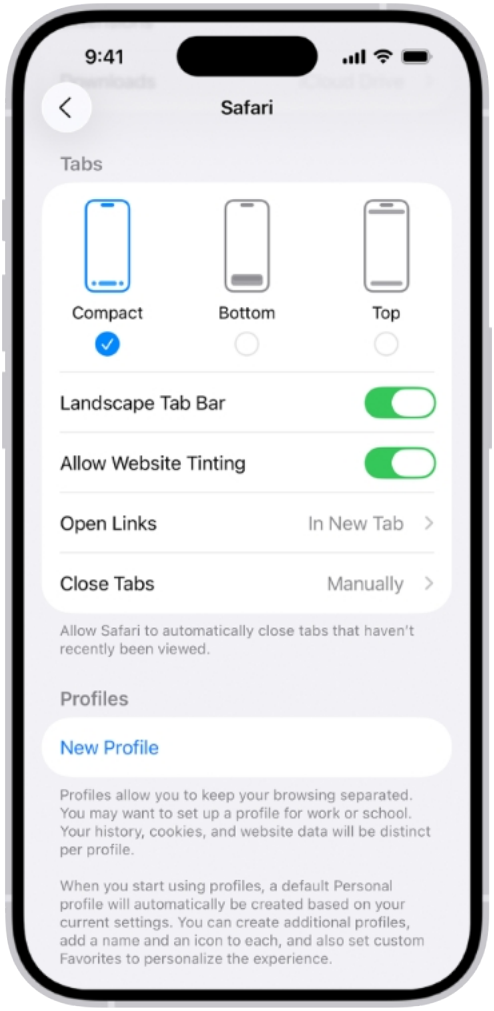
Table of Contents

Change the layout in Safari on iPhone

You can choose the tab bar layout that works best for you.

---

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Scroll down to Tabs, then choose one of the following:
   - *Compact:* Select this option to compress the tab bar, show it below webpages, and show additional controls on both sides of the tab bar.
   - *Bottom:* Select this option to expand the tab bar, show it below webpages, and show additional controls at the bottom of the screen.
   - *Top:* Select this option to expand the tab bar, show it above webpages, and show additional controls at the bottom of the screen.



See also

Customize your Safari settings on iPhone

Previous
Customize your Safari settings

Next
Create multiple Safari profiles

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

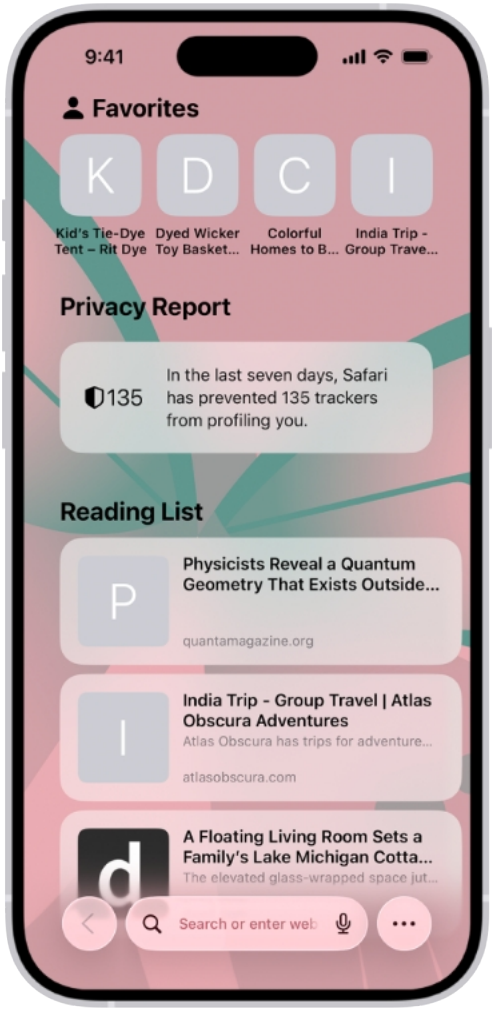
Table of Contents

Customize your Safari settings on iPhone

You can customize your start page, change the text size on websites, and change display and privacy settings. Sign in to iCloud with the same Apple Account on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, browsing history, and Reading List up to date across all your Apple devices.

Customize your start page

When you open a new tab, you begin on your start page. You can customize your start page with new background images and options.



1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.

2. Tap ···, then tap New Tab.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap ⧉, then tap +. See Change the layout in Safari.

3. Scroll to the bottom of the page, then tap Edit.

4. Choose the options you want to appear on your start page:

   - *Use Start Page on All Devices:* Use these settings on all your Apple devices where you have Use Start Page on All Devices turned on and you're signed in to the same Apple Account using two-factor authentication.

   - *Tab Group Favorites:* Display shortcuts to your favorite bookmarked websites in the current Tab Group. See Create a new Tab Group.

   - *Favorites:* Display shortcuts to your favorite bookmarked websites. See Bookmark a favorite website.

   - *Suggestions:* See websites you visit most, websites shared in other apps (such as Calendar and Maps), and links shared with you in Messages, Mail, and more. See Find links shared with you.

   - *Privacy Report:* Stay updated on how many trackers and websites Safari blocked from tracking you. See View the Privacy Report.

   - *Reading List:* Show webpages currently in your Reading List. See Add the current webpage to your Reading List.

   - *Recently Closed Tabs:* Go back to tabs you previously closed.

   - *iCloud Tabs:* Show open tabs from other Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and Safari is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences. See Organize your tabs with Tab Groups.

   - *Background Image:* Choose the image you want to appear in the background each time you open a new start page in this Tab Group. To use a photo as your background, tap +.

Customize the Page menu

You can add your favorite Page and Tab Actions to the Page menu ⊟.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap on the left side of the search field, then tap .
3. Tap Edit, then tap to add Page or Tab Actions to the Page menu.

   Tap to remove an action.
4. Tap , then tap again.

Change the text size for a website

Use the Page Menu button to increase or decrease the text size.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap on the left side of the search field.
3. Tap the large A to increase the font size or the small A to decrease it.

Change the display controls for a website

You can hide the search field, switch to Reader, and more.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then do any of the following:

   - *Hide the search field:* Tap , then tap Hide Toolbar (tap the bottom of the screen to get it back).
   - *See a streamlined view of the webpage:* Tap Show Reader (if available).

     To return to the normal view, tap , then tap Hide Reader.
   - *See what the webpage looks like on a desktop computer:* Tap , then tap Request Desktop Website (if available).
   - *See a summary of the webpage:* If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, tap Summarize at the top of the page. See Summarize a webpage.

You can also adjust Safari settings in Accessibility settings. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Per-App Settings. Tap Safari to adjust settings. If Safari isn't listed, tap Add App, then tap Safari to add it.

Choose where to save downloads

When you download a file in Safari, you can choose whether to save it to iCloud or on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Downloads, then choose one of the following:

- *iCloud Drive:* Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder in iCloud Drive. This allows you to access the downloaded file on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.
- *On My iPhone:* Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder on your iPhone.
- *Other:* Select this option to save downloads in a location other than a Downloads folder.

Share website passwords with a group

You can create a group of trusted contacts and share a set of passwords. Passwords stay up to date for everyone in the group, and you can remove someone at any time.

See Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust.

Adjust privacy settings

You can choose what privacy settings you want across Safari, and create individual exceptions for websites. See Browse privately.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone

Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone

Previous
See highlights

Next
Change the layout

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

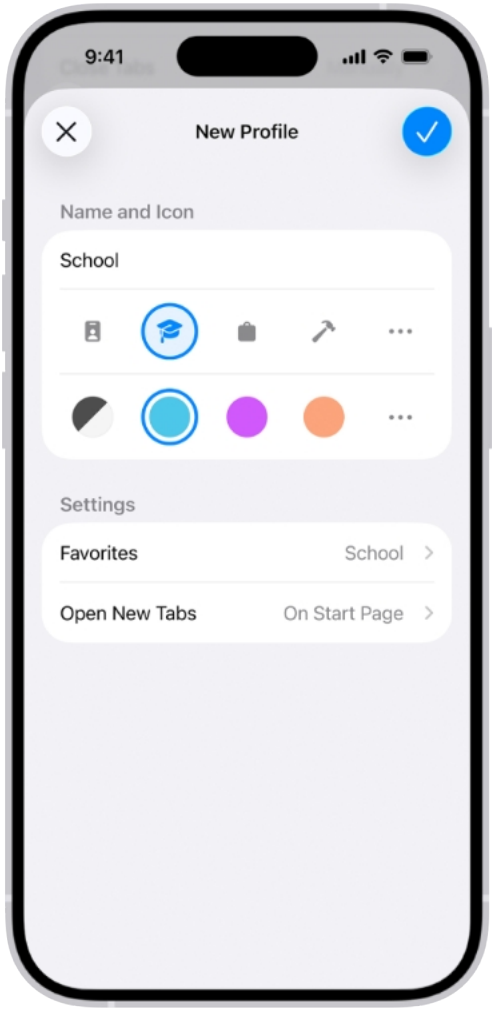
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create multiple Safari profiles on iPhone

You can create multiple Safari profiles—like Personal, Work, and School—and use them to separate your internet browsing into different themes. Each profile has separate favorites, histories, tabs, and Tab Groups. You can add, edit, or remove a profile at any time.



Create a profile

The profiles you create on iPhone also appear in Safari settings on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.

3. Tap New Profile, then tap Name.
4. Enter a name for this profile, then choose an icon and color.
5. Below Settings, tap Favorites to choose a bookmarks folder.

   If you have multiple folders of bookmarks, this option selects the folder of bookmarked websites that are recommended as you enter an address, search, or create a new tab. For example, if you have a folder of bookmarks related to work, you can create a work profile and use this field to ensure that those websites are suggested as you type in the address field.
6. Tap Open New Tabs and choose the page you want new tabs to open to.
7. Tap .

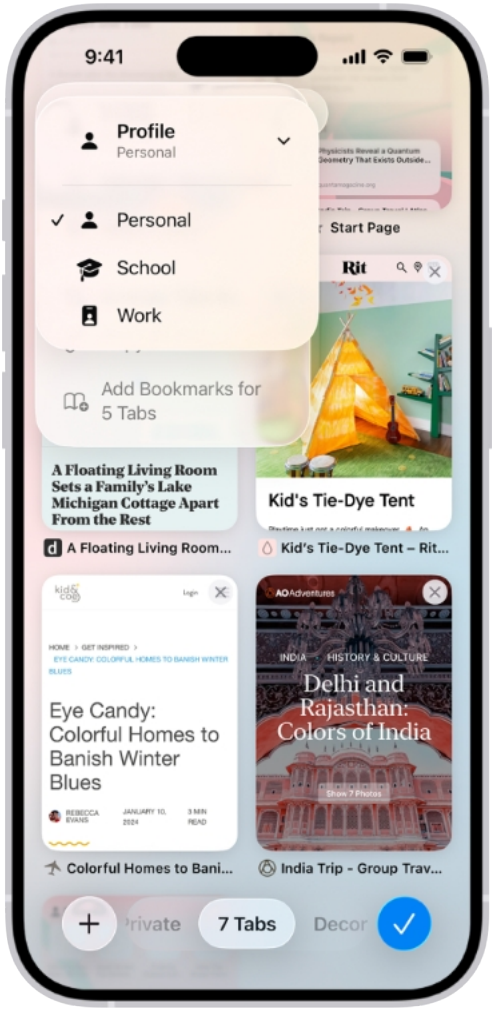
Use profiles in Safari

You can easily browse the internet with a profile, or move between profiles.

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap All Tabs.

   If your Tabs layout is Bottom or Top, tap . See Change the layout in Safari.
3. Tap in the upper-left corner.
4. Tap Profile, then select the profile you want to use.

Note: You can access your saved bookmarks and passwords in iCloud keychain from any profile.



Edit a profile

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap the profile you want to edit.

Choose which extensions to use with a profile

You can install extensions to customize the way your browser works on iPhone. See Get extensions to customize Safari.

If you have extensions installed on your iPhone, you can customize which extensions you want to use with each profile.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap Extensions, then tap an extension.

4. Turn on the profiles you want to use with this extension (below Allow Extension In).

Remove a profile

You can delete a profile at any time. This action also erases the favorites, history, and Tab Groups associated with the profile, and closes all websites open in the profile.

Important: This action can't be undone.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Tap a profile.
4. Tap Delete Profile, then tap Delete to confirm.

See also

Customize your Safari settings on iPhone

Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone

Previous
Change the layout

Next
Open and close tabs

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos on iPhone

You can use the tools in the Photos app to crop, rotate, flip, straighten, or adjust the size of a photo or video.

When you use iCloud Photos, any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Crop, rotate, or flip a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .
3. Tap , then do any of the following:

- *Crop manually:* Drag the rectangle corners to enclose the area you want to keep in the image, or pinch open or closed.

  Note: When you drag a corner, the crop tool keeps the original aspect ratio of the photo. To change the aspect ratio, tap the lock at the top-right corner of the photo to unlock the aspect ratio.

- *Crop to a standard preset ratio:* Tap , then choose an option such as Square, Wallpaper, 9:16, or 5:7.

- *Rotate:* Tap to rotate the image 90 degrees.

- *Flip:* Tap to flip the image horizontally.



4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Tip: To quickly crop a photo while you're viewing it, pinch the photo to zoom in. When the photo appears as you want it cropped, tap Crop in the top-right corner of the screen. Make any further adjustments with the crop tools, then tap Done.

Straighten a photo or video and adjust its perspective

You can straighten a photo or video, or tilt it vertically or horizontally.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .
3. Tap .
4. Swipe left under the photo to view editing options.
5. Tap the effect you want to edit, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

   The level of adjustment you make is displayed by the slider. Tap the button to switch between the edited photo or video and the original.

6. Tap Done to save your edits.

Tip: To undo edits after you save, open the photo or video, tap , then tap Revert.

Remove distractions using Apple Intelligence

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use the Clean Up tool to help identify and remove distracting objects in a photo. See Remove distractions from your photos.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Undo and revert photo edits on iPhone

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

Apple Support article: How to edit with third-party apps and extensions in Photos

Previous
Edit photos and videos

Next
Undo and revert photo edits

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Trim video length, adjust speed, and edit audio on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can trim a video you recorded on your iPhone to change where it starts and stops. You can also adjust the playback speed, and change the portion of a video that appears in slow motion when you record in Slo-mo mode.

When you capture a video on iPhone 16 or later (except iPhone 16e), you can edit Spatial Audio in the Photos app.

Trim a video

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a video, then tap .
3. Drag either end of the frame viewer below the video to adjust the start and stop times, then tap Done.
4. Tap Save Video to save only the trimmed video, or Save Video as New Clip to save both versions of the video.



To undo edits after you save, open the video, tap ⚙, then tap Revert.

Note: A video saved as a new clip can't be reverted to the original.

Edit the video playback speed

You can slow down videos that were captured at a high frame rate for a dramatic effect.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a video, tap ⚙, then tap Video.
3. Tap ⏱, then tap a playback speed.

   Note: The playback options available depend on the format of the video you captured. The larger the format you capture, the more options are available.

Edit the slow-motion section of a video shot in Slo-mo mode

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.

2. Open a video shot in Slo-mo mode, then tap .
3. Drag the black vertical bars beneath the frame viewer to set where the video is played in slow motion.

Edit sound with Audio Mix

When you record a video on iPhone 16 or later (except iPhone 16e), it's recorded in multiple formats like Spatial Audio and Stereo to allow more audio customization. If you record video with Spatial Audio turned on, you can later edit the video sound—for example, reduce background noise to focus on the person speaking.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a video, then tap .
3. Tap Audio Mix, then choose one of the following:

    - *Standard:* Play the original audio you recorded.
    - *In-Frame:* Reduce sounds and voices from sources not visible in the video frame.
    - *Studio:* Reduce background sounds and reverb, to make it sound more like you're recording in a professional studio.
    - *Cinematic:* Put all the voices onto a front-facing track and leave environmental noises in surround, like the audio in movies.
4. Drag the slider below the mix options to increase or decrease the effect and background noise levels.
5. Tap Done.

To learn more about Spatial Audio, see Change sound recording options on iPhone.

See also

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Edit Cinematic mode videos on iPhone

Undo and revert photo edits on iPhone

Table of Contents

Edit Cinematic mode videos on iPhone

On supported models, Cinematic mode in Camera applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. After capturing the video, you can adjust or remove the Cinematic mode effects in the Photos app.

Turn off the Cinematic effect

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap .
3. Tap Cinematic at the top of the screen, then tap Done.

To turn Cinematic mode back on, repeat these steps.

Change the focus subject in a Cinematic mode video

Camera automatically identifies where to focus while you record in Cinematic mode and can automatically change focus if a new subject is identified. You can also change the focus subject manually.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap .

   White dots under the frame viewer indicate where Camera automatically changed the focus while recording. Yellow dots indicate where the focus was manually changed.
3. Play the video, or slide the white vertical bar in the frame viewer, to the point where you want to change the focus.
4. Tap a subject, outlined in yellow, to change the focus; double-tap to set automatic focus tracking on the subject.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Undo and revert photo edits on iPhone

While you edit a photo or video, you can undo and redo changes. After saving, if you don't like how your changes look, you can revert back to the original.

When you use iCloud Photos, any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Undo and redo as you edit

As you edit a photo or video, tap and at the top of the screen to undo and redo multiple edit steps.

Tip: You can tap the photo or video to compare the edited version to the original.

Revert an edited photo or video

To undo edits after you save, you can revert to the original.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open the edited photo or video, then tap .
3. Tap Revert to Original.

See also

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos on iPhone

Edit Portrait mode photos on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Edit Portrait mode photos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can change and adjust the lighting effects, depth of field, and focus point of the photos you take in Portrait mode.

Adjust the background blur in Portrait mode photos

Use the Depth Control slider to adjust the level of background blur in your portraits.



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap any Portrait mode photo to view it in full screen, then tap .

3. Drag the Depth Control slider at the bottom of the screen to increase or decrease the background blur effect.

   A black dot marks the original depth value for the photo.

4. Tap Done.

Apply portrait effects to photos taken in Photo mode

On supported models, photos with a person, dog, or cat taken in Photo mode can become portraits in the Photos app.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap any photo taken in Photo mode to view it in full screen, then tap .
3. If portrait effects are available, select Portrait at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap Portrait at the top of the screen to turn on portrait effects.
5. Tap or to adjust the portrait lighting or background blur.
6. Tap Done.

To undo edits after you save, open the photo, tap , tap Revert, then tap Revert to Original.

Note: When the portrait effect is applied to a Live Photo taken in Photo mode, the Live Photo effects aren't available. Tap Live to view the Live Photo or apply a Live Photo effect without the portrait effect applied.

Change the Portrait Lighting effect

You can apply, change, or remove the Portrait Lighting effects in portraits.



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a Portrait mode photo to open it, then tap .
3. Tap at the top of the screen.

   The Portrait Lighting effects appear at the bottom of the screen.
4. Touch , then slide your finger left or right to choose a lighting effect:

   - *Natural Light:* The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.
   - *Studio Light:* The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.
   - *Contour Light:* The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.
   - *Stage Light:* The face is spotlit against a deep black background.
   - *Stage Light Mono:* The effect is like Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.
   - *High-Key Light Mono:* The effect creates a grayscale subject on a white background.

5. Drag the slider below the lighting effects left or right to adjust the intensity of the lighting effect.
6. Tap Done.

To undo edits after you save, tap , tap Revert, then tap Revert to Original.

Change the focus point of a portrait

You can change the subject (or focus point) of a portrait (available on iPhone 13 or later). When you select a new subject, the background blur automatically adjusts so the new subject appears sharp and in focus. Make sure that the new subject isn't blurred or too far in the distance.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap any Portrait mode photo to view it in full screen, then tap .
3. Tap a new subject or focus point in the photo.
4. Tap Done.

Remove the portrait effect

You can remove the portrait effect from a photo taken in Portrait mode.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap any Portrait mode photo to view it in full screen.
3. Tap Portrait in the top-left corner of the screen, then tap Portrait Off.

See also

Take portraits with your iPhone camera

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Edit Cinematic mode videos on iPhone

A yellow dot appears under the frame viewer to indicate the focus was changed.

Note: You can also touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a specific distance from the camera.

5. Repeat the steps above to change focus points throughout the video.

   To remove a manual focus change, tap the yellow dot under the frame viewer, then tap .

6. Tap Done to save your changes.

Tap to switch between automatic focus tracking and your manually selected focus points.

After you save your changes, you can revert a Cinematic mode video to the original version if you don't like your edits. Open the video, then tap Revert.

Adjust the depth of field in a Cinematic mode video

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap .
3. Tap at the top of the screen.

   A slider appears below the video.

4. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the depth of field effect, then tap Done.

To undo your edits after you save, open the video, then tap Revert.

Export Cinematic mode videos to your Mac

You can use AirDrop to transfer Cinematic mode videos—with depth and focus metadata—from your iPhone to your Mac to edit in other apps.

Note: To edit Cinematic mode videos recorded on an iPhone with iOS 16 or later, make sure your Mac is using macOS 13 or later.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open the Cinematic mode video, then tap .
3. Tap Options at the top of the screen, turn on All Photos Data, then tap .
4. Tap AirDrop, then tap the device you want to share with (make sure the device you're sharing with has AirDrop turned on).

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Photos, see Edit a Cinematic mode video.

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Final Cut Pro, iMovie, or Motion, see the Apple Support article Edit Cinematic mode video in Final Cut Pro, iMovie, and Motion.

Export Cinematic mode videos to an external storage device

You can export Cinematic mode videos directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

Note: For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Connect your iPhone to the storage device using the Lightning or USB-C connector.
2. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
3. Select the video you want to export.
4. Tap, then tap Export Unmodified Original.
5. Tap Browse, tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap.

See also

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Record video in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

Undo and revert photo edits on iPhone

Previous
Trim video length, adjust speed, and edit audio

Next
Edit Live Photos

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

After you take a photo or video, use the tools in the Photos app to edit it on your iPhone. You can adjust the light and color, add a filter, and more.

When you use iCloud Photos, any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Adjust light and color

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .
3. Tap Adjust.
4. Swipe left under the photo to view the lighting adjustments you can make—for example, Exposure, Brilliance, Highlights, and Shadows.
5. Tap the lighting setting you want to adjust, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

   The level of adjustment you make for each lighting setting is indicated by the outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which lighting settings have been increased or decreased. Tap the lighting button to switch between the edited photo or video and the original so you can see the difference your edits made.



6. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Tip: Tap to automatically enhance light and color in a photo or video.

Edit the Photographic Style

On supported models, you can edit the Photographic Style or apply a new style to photos in your library.

Note: To edit Photographic Styles in the Photos app, Camera needs to capture photos with High Efficiency image capture. To turn on High Efficiency, go to Settings > Camera > Formats, then tap High Efficiency.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo taken with a Photographic Style, then tap .
3. Make sure Styles is selected at the bottom of the screen, then do one of the following:

- *Choose a new style:* Swipe left or right on the style choices below the image.

- *Adjust the tone and color:* Tap , then drag your finger to simultaneously adjust the tone and color. Drag your finger on the slider below to adjust the intensity level. When you're done making adjustments, tap the image.

  Note: As you make adjustments, the values for tone, color, and intensity are shown at the top of the screen. Tap to reset these values.

4. Tap Done.

Apply filter effects

On iPhone 16e, iPhone 15 models, or earlier, you can apply filter effects to change the tint of a photo.

Note: On iPhone 16 or later, use latest generation Photographic Styles instead of filters to give your photos a customized look. Filter effects are available on these models if you haven't turned on Photographic Styles.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap .
3. Tap to apply filter effects such as Vivid or Dramatic.

   To remove a filter that was applied when you took the photo, tap Original.



4. Tap a filter, then drag the slider to adjust the effect.

   To compare the edited photo to the original, tap the photo.

5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Copy and paste edits to multiple photos

You can copy the edits you made to one photo (or video) and paste them onto another photo, or a batch or photos, all at the same time.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open the photo or video that contains the edits you want to copy.
3. Tap ···, then tap Copy Edits.
4. Review and turn off any edits you don't want to copy, then tap Copy.
5. Tap ‹ to return to your library.
6. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails of the photos you want to paste the edits onto, or open a single photo or video.

7. Tap •••, then tap Paste Edits.

Note: Photos automatically adjusts the white balance and exposure of the edited photos to create a better match and make the photos look even more similar.

Add stickers, text, and more

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo to open it.
3. Tap, then tap.
4. Tap to add stickers, captions, text, shapes, or even your signature.
5. Tap to save your edits.

Set the background color of Edit mode

By default, the background of Edit mode matches the light or dark appearance of your iPhone. You can change the background color of Edit mode—for example, set it to always appear dark if you prefer to edit photos against a dark background.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap.
3. Tap, tap Appearance, then do one of the following:

   - *Match Edit mode to the light or dark appearance of your iPhone:* Tap System.
   - *Make Edit mode always appear dark:* Tap Dark.
   - *Make Edit mode always appear light:* Tap Light.

Remove distractions using Apple Intelligence

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use the Clean Up tool to help identify and remove distracting objects in a photo. See Remove distractions from your photos.

---

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos on iPhone

Undo and revert photo edits on iPhone

Use Markup to add text, shapes, signatures, and more to documents on iPhone

Apple Support article: How to edit with third-party apps and extensions in Photos

Previous
Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

Next
Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPhone

After you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library in the Photos app, you can continue to add photos and videos in several ways:

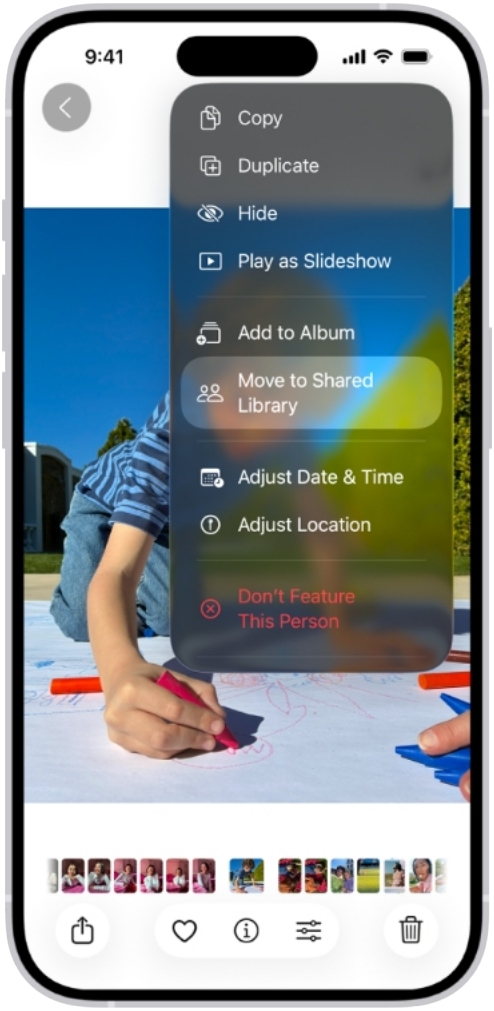
- Manually move photos from your personal library
- Save photos and videos you take directly to the shared library from Camera
- Share photos you take when other members of the shared library are nearby
- Share photos and videos you take at home

Note: iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are the minimum system requirements to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a shared library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

Manually add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

You can add individual photos and videos from your personal library to the iCloud Shared Photo Library.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the photo or video you want to add. Or to add multiple photos and videos at the same time, tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to add.
3. Tap ···, then tap Move to Shared Library.



Tip: To see suggestions for photos and videos you might want to add to your Shared Library, tap Collections, tap your account in the top-right corner, then tap For Your Shared Library.

After content is moved to the shared library, it's no longer in your personal library and it's visible to all of the shared library participants. To move content from the shared library back to your personal library, follow the steps above, but tap Move to Personal Library instead of Move to Shared Library.

Add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library directly from Camera

After you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, when you open Camera, a Shared Library button appears at the top of the screen to let you switch between saving photos and videos to your personal library and saving them to the shared library. By default, Camera saves to your personal library. To switch, tap to save to the shared library; tap to switch back to your personal library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, go to Settings > Apps > Photos > Shared Library > Sharing from Camera, then turn Sharing from Camera

on or off.

Add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library when participants are nearby

When you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can choose an option so that photos you take when you're near other participants of the shared library are automatically added to the shared library.

To allow iPhone to detect when participants of your shared library are nearby, participants need to be signed in to their Apple Account on their device, and have Bluetooth® turned on in Settings > Bluetooth.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Shared Library, then tap Sharing from Camera.
5. Tap Share Automatically.

Automatically add photos and videos taken at home to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

When you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can choose an option to automatically add photos and videos you take at home to the shared library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Shared Library, then tap Sharing from Camera.
5. Turn Share When At Home on or off.

Turn iCloud Shared Photo Library sharing suggestions on or off

Sharing suggestions recommends photos you might want to add to your iCloud Shared Photo Library, such as photos you took when participants of the shared library were nearby, or photos of people you indicated interest in during the setup process. iPhone sends a notification to review sharing suggestions. To turn suggestions on or off, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Shared Library, then turn Shared Library Suggestions on or off.

If you want to get sharing suggestions for additional people, tap Add People, tap a person, then tap Add. The person doesn't have to be a member of the shared library.

For more information about accessing content in a shared library, see the Apple Support article If you are missing photos after joining an iCloud Shared Photo Library.

See also

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Create shared albums in Photos on iPhone

Previous
Use iCloud Shared Photo Library

Next
Edit photos and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

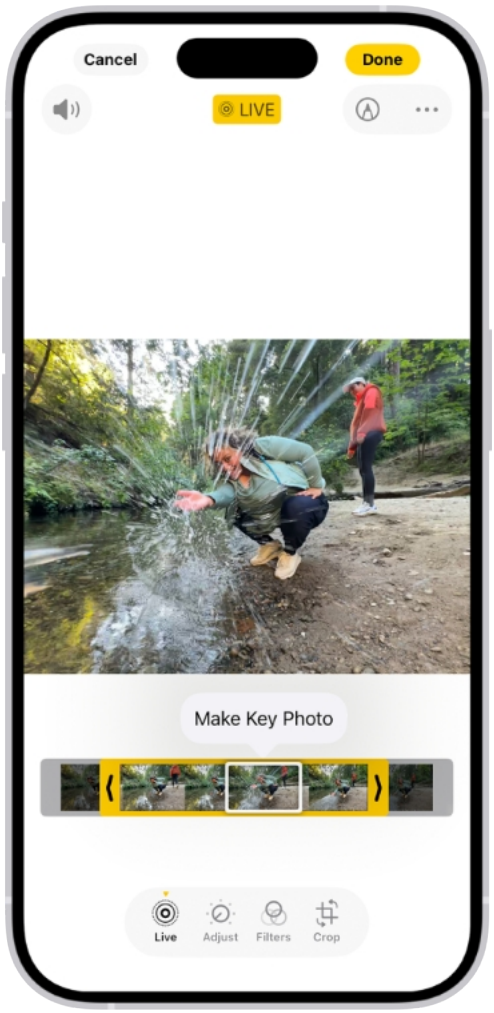
Table of Contents

Edit Live Photos on iPhone

In the Photos app, you can edit Live Photos, change the key photo, and add fun effects like Bounce and Loop.

Make Live Photo edits

In addition to the photo editing tools, you can also change a Live Photo's key photo, trim its length, mute the sound, and turn a Live Photo into a still photo.



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo, then tap .

3. Tap ◎, then do any of the following:

    - *Set a key photo:* Move the white frame on the frame viewer, tap Make Key Photo, then tap Done.
    - *Trim a Live Photo:* Drag either end of the frame viewer to choose the frames the Live Photo plays.
    - *Make a still photo:* Tap the Live button at the top of the screen to turn off the Live feature. The Live Photo becomes a still of its key photo.
    - *Mute a Live Photo:* Tap 🔊 at the top of the screen. Tap it again to unmute.

Note: Live Photos taken on an iPhone 15 model or later with a portrait effect lose the portrait effect if you change the key photo.

Add effects to a Live Photo

You can add effects to Live Photos to turn them into fun videos.

1. Go to the Photos app 🌸 on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo.
3. Tap Live in the top-left corner, then choose one of the following:

    - *Live:* Applies the Live video playback feature.
    - *Loop:* Repeats the action in a continuous looping video.
    - *Bounce:* Rewinds the action backward and forward.
    - *Long Exposure:* Simulates a DSLR-like long exposure effect by blurring motion.
    - *Live Off:* Turns off the Live video playback feature or applied effect.
    - *Portrait:* Applies the Portrait effect.
    - *Portrait off:* Turns off the Portrait effect.

Turn a Live Photo into a video

You can turn a Live Photo into a short video to save or share—for example, to share with people not on Apple devices.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo.
3. Tap ⋯ in the top-right corner, then tap Save as Video.

See also

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Undo and revert photo edits on iPhone

Previous
Edit Cinematic mode videos

Next
Edit Portrait mode photos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can search for recordings or rename any recording.

Search for a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down from the middle of the list of recordings to reveal the search field.
3. Tap the search field, enter part or all of the recording name, then tap Search.

Note: You can also search for a word or phrase in a transcript by entering it in this field.

Rename a recording

A recording is initially saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security. You can change the name.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new one.

See also

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can keep your audio recordings up to date automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings.

To turn on Voice Memos in iCloud on your devices, do the following:

- *iOS or iPadOS:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.
- *macOS 15 or later:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, then click your name in the sidebar. If you don't see your name, click "Sign in" to sign in to your Apple Account or create one. Click iCloud, click See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.

See also

Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can share one or more audio recordings with others (or send it to your Mac or another device) using AirDrop, Mail, Messages, and more.

Share a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to share, then tap •••.
3. Tap Share, then tap Options and choose one of the following:
   - *Rendered:* Create a single .m4a file with all audio effects and layers mixed in.
   - *Editable:* Share a file that lets a recipient with a compatible device and software update configure effects and layers.
4. Tap
5. Choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap or .

Share more than one recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Select above the list of recordings, then select the recordings you want to share.
3. Tap , tap Options, then choose a file option (Rendered or Editable.)
4. Choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap or .

See also

Table of Contents

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can mark audio recordings as favorites and organize your recordings into folders.

Note: Apple Watch recordings, recently deleted recordings, and favorites are grouped into Smart Folders, which automatically gather files by type and subject matter.

Mark recordings as favorites

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, do any of the following:
   - Tap the recording you want to mark as a favorite, tap •••, then tap ♡.
   - Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, tap, tap Move to Folder, then tap Favorites. (If there isn't a Favorites folder, create one by entering Favorites in the field.)

Recordings marked as favorites automatically appear in the Favorites folder.

Organize recordings into folders

You can group related recordings together into folders so you can locate them easily.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Edit above the list of recordings.
3. Select one or more recordings, tap, tap Move to Folder, then choose a folder.

   To create a new folder, tap, type a name for the folder, then tap Save.

To view your folders, tap <; tap a folder to check its contents.

To return to the list of recordings, tap All Recordings.

Delete or reorder folders

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap < to go to the list of folders.
3. Tap Edit above the folders, then do any of the following:
   - *Delete a folder:* Tap ⊖ next to the folder, then tap 🗑.
   - *Change the order of the folders:* Drag ☰ next to any folder.
4. Tap Done.

See also

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Previous
Keep recordings up to date

Next
Search for or rename a recording

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Export a Voice Memos recording to Files on iPhone

Recordings can be exported from Voice Memos to the Files app on your iPhone. By default, recordings are exported in .m4a format — so layered recordings are flattened and Spatial Audio becomes stereo. However, when you share, you can choose to adjust your sharing options to retain any layers or recording effects.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording you want to export, tap •••, then tap .
3. To export a file where the effects and layers can be adjusted later (QuickTime Audio format), tap Options, then tap Editable. Choose if you want your layers merged or separated, then tap .
4. Scroll down, tap Save to Files, navigate to the location where you want to save the recording, then tap Save.

See also

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Previous
Add a second layer to a recording

Next
Edit or delete a recording

Select version:

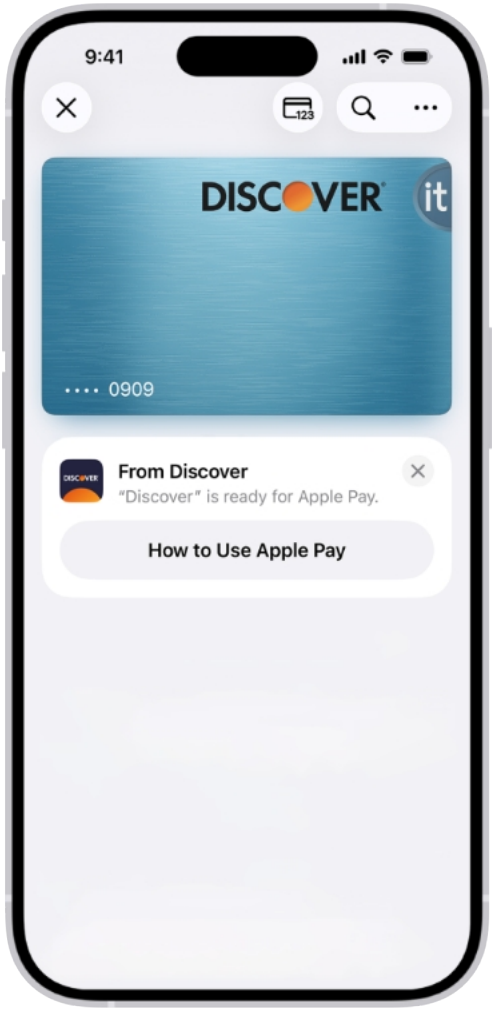
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Using Apple Pay can be simpler than using a physical card, and safer too. Apple Pay is designed with your privacy and security in mind. Your actual card numbers are never stored on your device or shared with merchants, and each transaction uses a unique security code. With your cards stored in Apple Wallet, you can use Apple Pay to make secure payments in stores, for transit, in apps, and online wherever Apple Pay is accepted.

Note: Apple Pay and its features aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.



Add a debit or credit card for Apple Pay

You can add an eligible card from a participating card issuer. Many major credit and debit cards from banks and credit unions are supported. You can check with your card issuer or try adding your card to see if it's accepted.

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +. You may be asked to sign in to your Apple Account.
3. Add any of the following types of cards:

   - *A new card:* Tap Debit or Credit Card, tap Continue, then hold iPhone near the chip on the card. If the card doesn't have a chip, tap Enter Card Details Manually, then enter the card number or tap Scan Card with Camera.

     Note: If you can't add your card, it may not be supported by Apple Pay, or your issuer may need to approve it first. Contact your bank or card issuer, or see the Apple Support article If you can't add a card to Apple Wallet to use with Apple Pay.

   - *Apple Card:* See Use Apple Card on iPhone.

   - *Your previous cards:* Tap Previous Cards, then choose any cards you previously used. These cards may include the card associated with your Apple Account, cards you have in Apple Wallet on your other devices, and cards you saved for AutoFill. Tap Continue, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   - *A card from a supported app:* Below "From Apps on Your iPhone", tap the app of your bank or card issuer.

4. Verify your information with your bank or card issuer. This might include receiving a text message, answering security questions, or confirming through your bank's app.

Tip: If you have a paired Apple Watch, you have the option to also add the card to your watch.

Connect your account to Wallet

With an eligible account, you can see your account balance, available credit, full transaction history, and more in Wallet.

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the card you want to connect.
3. Tap Get Started below the card (or tap ···, tap Card Details, then tap Get Account Balance & Activity), then follow the onscreen instructions to connect your account.

If you don't see Get Started or Get Account Balance & Activity, the card issuer doesn't support this feature.

For more information, see the Apple Support article View your account balance and full transaction history in the Wallet app.

Pay later or with installments

With pay later options in Apple Wallet, you can split purchases into installments when using Apple Pay in stores, in apps, and online. (Subject to credit approval.)

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +. You may be asked to sign in to your Apple Account.
3. Tap Pay Later Options, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article Pay with installments using Apple Pay.

View card details and change settings

If you have Apple Card, see Use Apple Card on iPhone. For other cards, do the following:

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a card.

   Note: The latest transactions may appear, showing authorized amounts that may differ from the amount of the payment charged to your account. For example, a gas station may request an authorization of $99, even though you pumped only $25 worth of gasoline. To see the final charges, see the statement from your card issuer, which includes all Apple Pay transactions.
3. Tap 123 to see any of the following:

   - The last four digits of the device account number—the number transmitted to the merchant when you use Apple Pay
   - The physical card number (if you added the card information for AutoFill)
   - The virtual card number (if supported)
4. To see more details, tap ···, then tap any of the following:

- *Card Details:* See more information, contact the card issuer, change your billing address, or remove the card from Wallet.

- *Notifications:* Turn on or off the transaction history and notifications.

See also

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

Remove cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Previous
About Apple Wallet

Next
Use Apple Pay for contactless payments

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

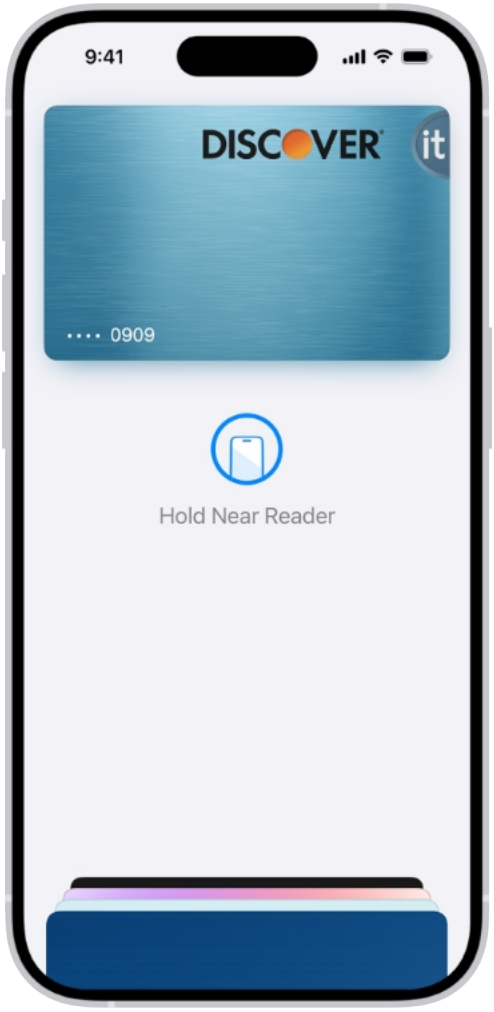
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

With your eligible cards stored in the Wallet app on iPhone, you can use Apple Pay for secure, contactless payments in stores, restaurants, and more.

Note: Apple Pay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.



Find places that accept Apple Pay

You can use Apple Pay where you see contactless payment symbols such as the following:



Note: In addition to accepting Apple Pay, the merchant must accept your payment card and payment network.

In other countries and regions, you may see different contactless payment symbols. See the Apple Support article Learn where to use Apple Pay.

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Face ID

1. Double-click the side button.
2. When your default card appears, authenticate with Face ID or your passcode.

   Tip: With a connected account such as Apple Card, you can quickly check the account balance and remaining credit by tapping the card. Tap the card again when you're ready to pay.
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Touch ID

1. Double-click the Home button, then rest your finger on Touch ID.

   Tip: With a connected account such as Apple Card, you can quickly check the account balance and remaining credit by tapping the card. Tap the card again when you're ready to pay.
2. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Pay with a different card instead of your default card

1. When your default card appears, tap the cards at the bottom of the screen, then choose another card.

   Tip: To quickly check your card account balance or available credit (if supported), tap the card. Tap the card again when you're ready to pay.

2. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your iPhone at the time you make a payment may be sent to Apple and the card issuer to help prevent fraud. See Control the location information you share.

See also

Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

Previous
Set up Apple Pay

Next
Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Duplicate a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can duplicate a recording if you need another copy of it. You can also make changes to the copy, save it, and give it a new name.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap a recording, tap •••, then tap Duplicate.

The duplicate appears right below the original version in the list and has “copy” added to its name. To change the name, tap it, then type a new one.

See also

Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Previous
Share a recording

Next
About Apple Wallet

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

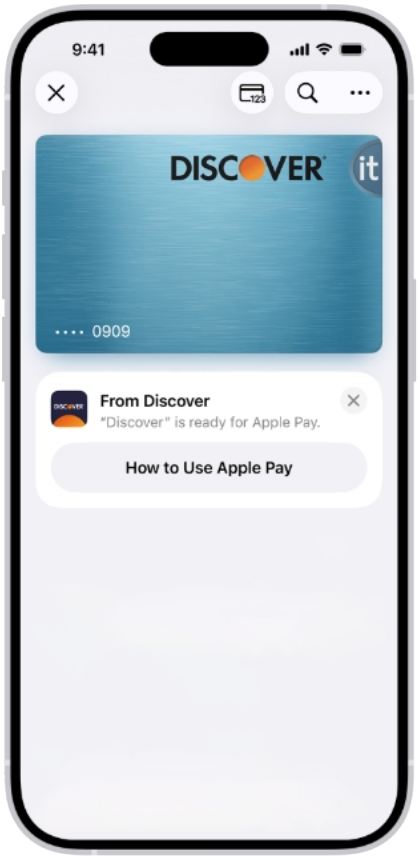
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

About Apple Wallet on iPhone

Use the Wallet app to securely keep your eligible cards in one convenient place for easy access.



Credit and debit cards

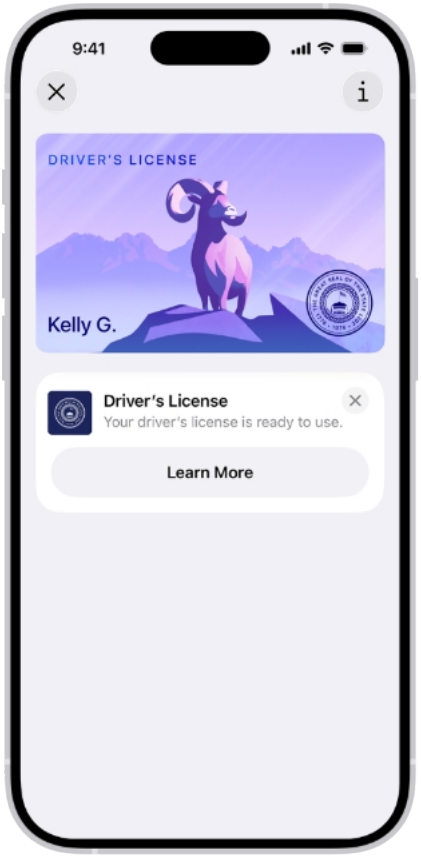
Add your credit and debit cards to make purchases with Apple Pay in stores, in apps, and online. You can even pay with rewards or choose a flexible payment option. (Requires eligible cards from participating issuers.)

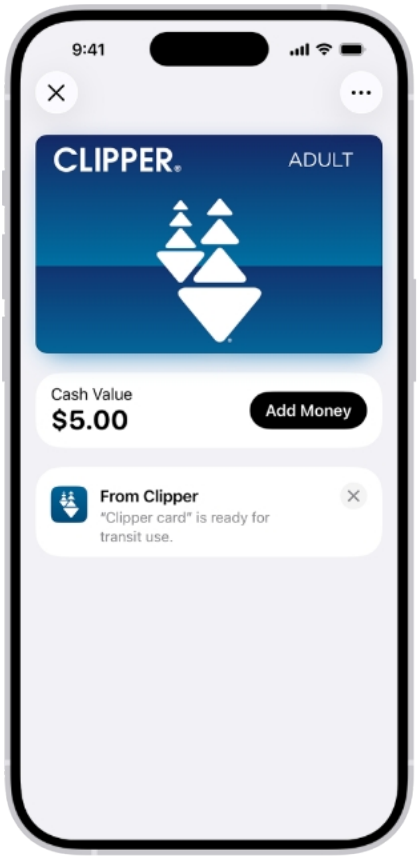
Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone ›

ID in Wallet

Easily and securely present your ID at select locations in-person, in-app, and online.

Add your ID to Wallet on iPhone ›





Transit and tickets

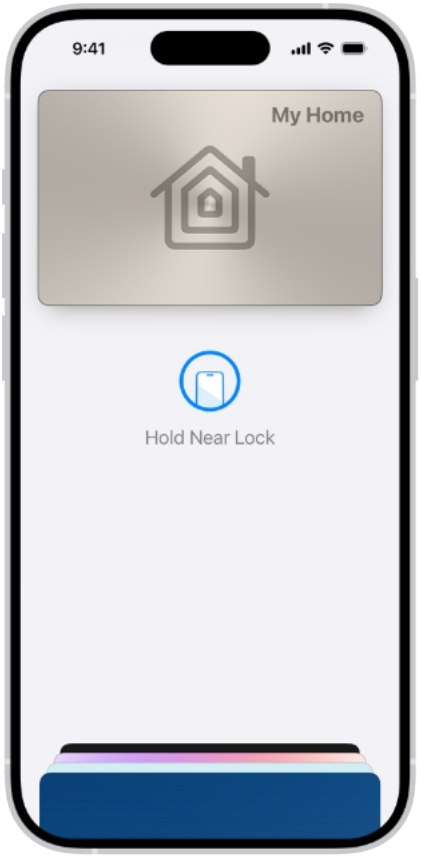
Breeze through turnstiles by simply holding your iPhone to the reader. You can conveniently check the balance and top up a transit card, or see the latest gate information on a boarding pass. (Requires a supported card or pass.)

Pay for transit using iPhone ›

Keys

Unlock your home, hotel room, car, and more with compatible digital keys.

Use digital keys in Wallet on iPhone ›





And more

- Passes, coupons, reward cards, and loyalty cards ›
- Verifiable COVID-19 vaccination cards ›
- Apple Account balance ›
- AutoFill cards ›

Previous
Duplicate a recording

Next
Set up Apple Pay

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can fine-tune your recordings using the editing tools. Remove parts, record over parts, or replace an entire recording. You can also delete a recording you no longer need.

Edit a voice recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to edit, tap •••, then tap .
3. Drag the yellow trim handles to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

   You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise editing.



To check your selection, tap ▶.

4. To keep the selection (and delete the rest of the recording), tap Trim, or to delete the selection, tap Delete.
5. Tap Apply, then tap Done.
6. Tap Save Recording to overwrite the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the edited version as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).

Replace a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to replace, tap •••, then tap Edit Recording.
3. Drag the waveform to position the playhead where you want to start recording new audio.

   You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise placement.
4. Tap Replace to begin recording (the waveform turns red as you record).

Tap ⏸ to pause; tap Resume to continue.

5. To check your recording, tap ▶.
6. Tap Done, then tap Save Recording to replace the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the changes as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).

Delete a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to delete, then tap 🗑.
   - Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, then tap 🗑.

Deleted recordings move to the Recently Deleted folder, where they're kept for 30 days by default. To change how long deleted recordings are kept, go to Settings > Apps > Voice Memos > Clear Deleted, then select an option.

Recover or erase a deleted recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Recently Deleted folder, then tap the recording you want to recover or erase.

   If you don't see the Recently Deleted folder, tap ‹ at the top left.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Recover the selected recording:* Tap Recover.
   - *Delete the selected recording:* Tap Delete.
   - *Recover everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Recover All.
   - *Delete everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Delete All.

See also

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

Previous
Export a recording to Files

Next
Keep recordings up to date

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

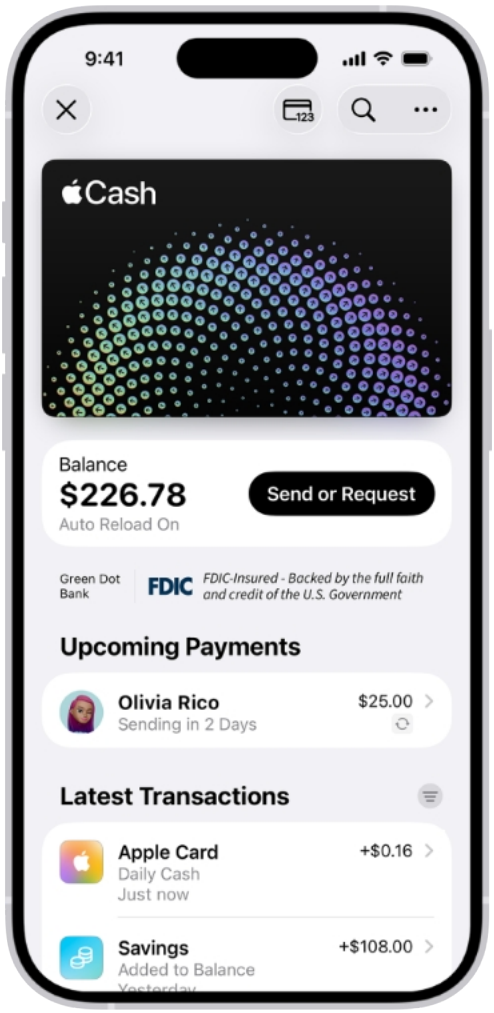
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Apple Cash on iPhone

With Apple Cash, you can send and receive money, get cash back from Apple Card transactions, make purchases, and transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.

Note: Apple Cash is only available in the U.S.



Set up Apple Cash

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, turn on Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Set up Apple Cash.

Make purchases with Apple Cash

Where Visa is accepted, you can make purchases with Apple Cash in the following ways:

- *With Apple Pay:* Use Apple Pay for purchases at contactless payment terminals and in apps and on the web.
- *With the virtual card number:* If Apple Pay isn't supported, use AutoFill during checkout. Or go to the Wallet app, tap Apple Cash, then tap 123 to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.

Send, request, and receive payments with Apple Cash in Messages

Use Apple Cash to send and receive money with people who use iMessage.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. In an iMessage conversation, do one of the following:
   - Tap +, tap Apple Cash, then enter the amount.
   - If there's an underlined monetary amount in a message bubble, tap it to open Apple Cash preset to the underlined amount.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Send or request a one-time payment:* Tap Send or Request.
   - *Set up a recurring payment:* Tap Show Keypad, tap Send Recurring Payment, enter the start date, frequency, and memo, then tap Send. (Recurring payments aren't available in a group conversation.)
4. Add a comment (optional), then tap ↑.

You can also send or request Apple Cash in the Wallet app—tap the Apple Cash card, tap Send or Request, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Send and receive money with Apple Cash.

Send Apple Cash with Tap to Cash

With Tap to Cash, you can send Apple Cash to someone by holding your iPhone or Apple Watch near their iPhone or Apple Watch, without having to share your phone number or email address.

Note: Tap to Cash is supported on all iPhone models with iOS 18 or later and all Apple Watch models with watchOS 11 or later.

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Apple Cash card, tap Send or Request, then tap Tap to Cash.
3. Enter the amount, add a note (optional), then tap Continue.
4. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
5. Hold your iPhone near the recipient's iPhone or Apple Watch.
6. Continue holding the devices near each other until the payment information appears on the recipient's screen.
7. The recipient can choose Accept or Decline.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Use Tap to Cash.

See transactions, set up recurring payments, transfer funds, and contact support

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Apple Cash card, then tap ···.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add money or set up Auto Reload:* See the Apple Support article Add money to Apple Cash.
   - *Transfer funds to your bank:* See the Apple Support article Transfer money in Apple Cash to your bank account or debit card.
   - *Set up and manage recurring payments:* See the Apple Support article Send and receive money with Apple Cash.

- *View card details:* Update your bank account information, request transaction statements, contact support, and more.

Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

See also

Use Apple Card on iPhone

Apple Support article: Use your virtual card number for Apple Cash

Apple Support article: Set up and use Apple Cash Family

Apple Cash Support website

Previous
Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web

Next
Use Apple Card

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Remove cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can remove cards and passes that you don't use anymore. You can also remove debit and credit cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen.

Note: If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [*your name*], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPhone. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in to your Apple Account.

Remove a card or pass from your iPhone

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the card or pass you want to remove, then tap ···.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *Remove a debit or credit card:* Tap Card Details, then tap Remove Card.

     Note: If you remove a payment card on your iPhone, it's not removed from Apple Wallet on your other devices. You can add the card again later.

   - *Permanently delete a pass:* Tap Remove Pass.

     Note: If you delete a pass on your iPhone, it's permanently removed from Apple Wallet on your other devices.

Remove your cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen

If you turned on Find My iPhone, you can use it to help locate and secure your iPhone.

To remove your cards from Apple Pay, do any of the following:

- *On another iPhone or iPad:* Go to the Settings app, tap your name, select the lost iPhone, then tap Remove Items (below Wallet & Apple Pay).
- *Using a web browser:* Sign in to your Apple Account. Click Devices, then select the lost device. In the Wallet & Apple Pay section, click Remove Items.
- Call the issuers of your cards.

Hide or archive expired passes

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn on Hide Expired Passes.

View, unhide, or delete expired passes

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap Expired.
3. Tap a pass, then do any of the following:
    - *See the details:* Tap ⓘ.
    - *Restore the pass:* Tap.
    - *Permanently remove the pass:* Tap.

See also

Update or remove AutoFill cards

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Organize and search in Wallet

Next
Fill in payment information

Select version:

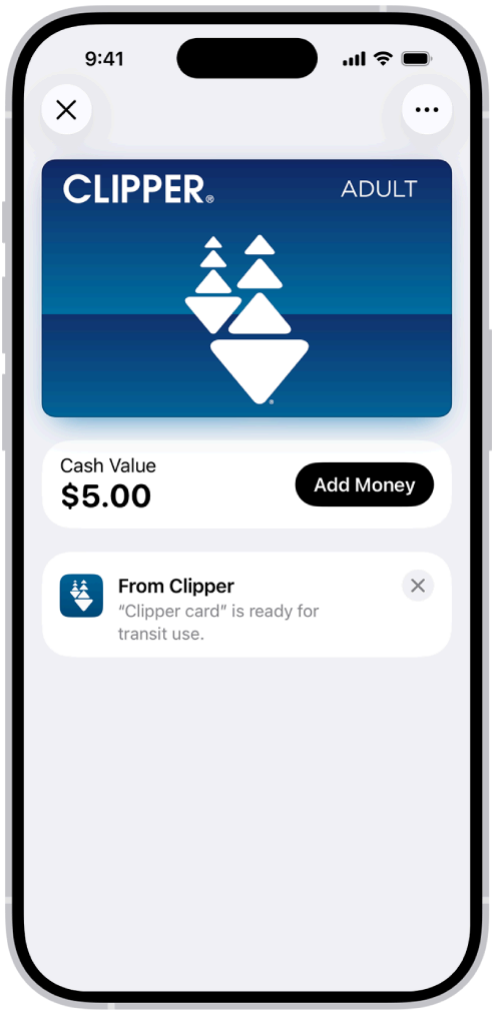
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Pay for transit using iPhone

Depending on your local transit system, you can use your iPhone to pay for your fare with a payment card in Apple Pay or a transit card stored in the Wallet app.

Note: Not available in all countries or regions; see Where you can ride transit using Apple Pay.



Add a transit card to Wallet

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, then tap Transit Card.

3. Choose a transit card in the list—or search by location or card name—then follow the onscreen instructions.

To learn how to transfer your transit card, see the Apple Support article Add a transit card to Apple Wallet.

See your balance and add money

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your transit card to see the balance and transactions.
3. Tap Add Money, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To learn more, see the Apple Support article Top up your transit card with Apple Pay.

View transit card details and change settings

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your transit card, then tap ···.
3. Tap any of the following:

   - *Card Number:* View your account number.
   - *Card Details:* View your account balance; turn on Service Mode to get help at stations and kiosks; turn Express Transit on or off; or remove the card from Wallet.
   - *Notifications:* Turn notifications on or off.

Pay for your ride with Express Transit

With Express Transit, you don't need to authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode, and you don't need to wake or unlock your device or open an app.

Note: Express Transit isn't available in all countries or regions.

1. If you have multiple cards for a transit network, set the default Express Transit card in Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay > Express Transit Card.

   By default, Express Transit is turned on when you add an eligible card.

2. As you approach a fare gate or board the bus, make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to the internet).
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the middle of the ticket gate scanner until you feel a vibration.

You might be able to use your Express Transit card even when your iPhone needs to be charged.

Pay for transit at a fare gate

If you're not using Express Transit, do the following:

1. Make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to the internet).
2. As you approach a fare gate or board a bus, do one of the following:

    - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.

    - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* With the Lock Screen showing on your device, double-click the Home button, then rest your finger on Touch ID.

3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the middle of the ticket gate scanner until you feel a vibration.

See also

Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

Previous
Add your ID

Next
Use digital keys

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Check your Apple Account balance in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can check the balance of your Apple Account, add money, and redeem Apple Gift Cards. Use your Apple Account balance to buy products, accessories, games, apps, subscriptions like iCloud+ and Apple Music, and more. You can even use your Apple Account balance as a quick, convenient way to pay at the Apple Store or apple.com.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

Add Apple Account to Apple Wallet to see your balance and transactions

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, then tap Add Apple Account.

The account balance and transactions appear below the card.

Add money to your Apple Account balance

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account, then tap Add Money.
3. Choose the amount, then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the payment.

Redeem an Apple Gift Card or code

When you receive an Apple Gift Card or code, you can add the funds to your Apple Account balance.

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account, tap ···, then tap Redeem.
3. Tap Use Camera, then position iPhone so that the gift card appears in the frame.

   Alternatively, you can tap Enter Code Manually, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Use your Apple Account balance at the Apple Store

During checkout at the Apple Store, you can pay with your Apple Account balance using Apple Pay.

Note: This feature isn't available in all countries or regions.

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account, then double-click the side button.
3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
4. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

See also

Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone

Use Apple Card on iPhone

Apple Support article: What you can buy with your Apple Gift Card or Apple Account balance

Previous
Use passes, loyalty cards, tickets, and more

Next
Organize and search in Wallet

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

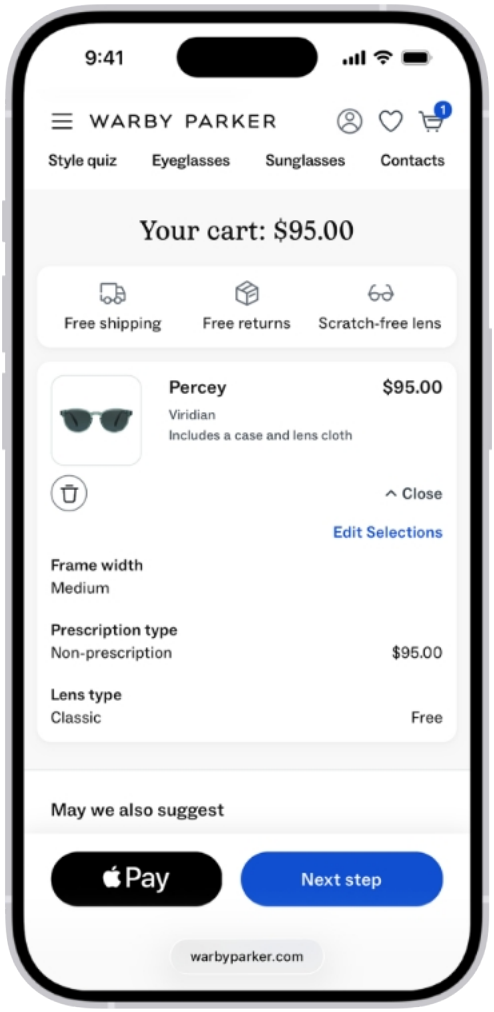
Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone

You can make purchases using Apple Pay in apps, in App Clips, and on the web wherever you see the Apple Pay button.

Note: Apple Pay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.

Pay in apps, App Clips, or Safari

1. During checkout, tap the Apple Pay button.



2. Review the payment information and set any of the following:

   - Payment method

     You can choose a different payment card; you can also pay with rewards or installments (available on cards from participating banks and card providers in certain markets; subject to eligibility and approval).

   - Billing and shipping addresses

   - Contact information

     Tip: If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use Hide My Email to keep your real email address private.

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

See the Apple Support articles Pay with rewards using Apple Pay and Pay with installments using Apple Pay.

Use Apple Pay in third-party browsers on Mac, Windows devices, and other devices

When you shop in a supported third-party web browser, you can complete the purchase with Apple Pay using the payment information on your iPhone. (Not available in all countries or regions.)

1. At checkout, click Apple Pay, then scan the code using your iPhone camera.
2. On your iPhone, review the payment information and set any of the following:

   - Payment method

   - Billing and shipping addresses

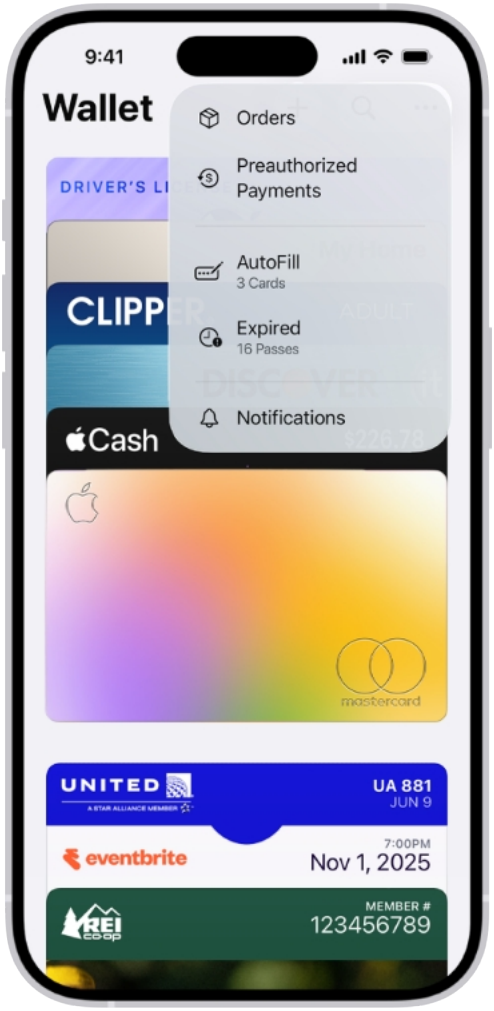
   - Contact information

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

View preauthorized payments

You can see preauthorized payments made with Apple Pay for future and recurring charges such as subscriptions.

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap Preauthorized Payments.



3. Tap a payment to see the details.
4. To cancel your service or manage the payment methods, contact the merchant directly. (For participating merchants, tap Manage.)
5. To prevent the merchant from automatically charging your card, tap Revoke Payment Authorization.

   Note: Revoking the payment authorization doesn't cancel your service.

Turn on order tracking

When you make purchases from participating merchants, you can track your orders in the Wallet app on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, then scroll down and tap Order Tracking.
3. Turn on any of the following:

- *Apple Pay:* Orders from participating merchants will be automatically added to Wallet when you use Apple Pay on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

- *Mail:* Allow Apple Intelligence* & Siri to update Wallet with order tracking information from your emails on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

  Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

To see your tracked orders, go to the Wallet app, tap ···, then tap Orders.

For details, see the Apple Support article Track orders and purchases in Apple Wallet.

---

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

Previous
Use Apple Pay for contactless payments

Next
Use Apple Cash

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

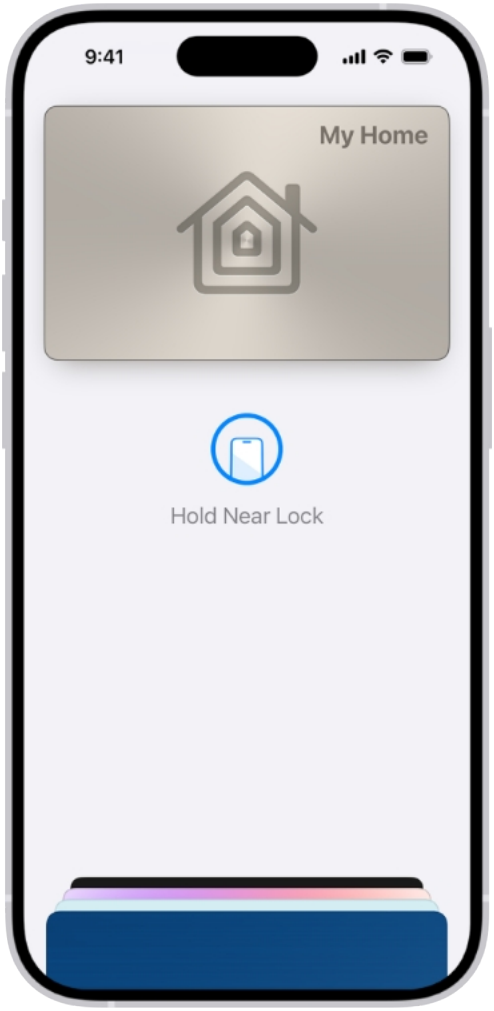
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use digital keys in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can store digital keys to your home, hotel room, car, and scooter. iPhone automatically presents the right key when you arrive at your door or vehicle, giving you access with just a tap using Near Field Communication (NFC).



Unlock your home

With a compatible smart lock and a home key in Wallet, you can unlock your door with just a tap of your iPhone or Apple Watch.

See Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone or Apple Watch.

Access your apartment building or condominium

Follow the instructions from your property company to add a resident key for your apartment building, condominium, or other shared living space to your iPhone or Apple Watch.

See the Apple Support article Add a resident key to Apple Wallet on iPhone or Apple Watch.

Unlock your hotel room

At participating hotels, you can add your room key to Apple Wallet from the hotel provider's app, check in without going to the lobby, and use your iPhone or Apple Watch to unlock your room.

See the Apple Support article Add a hotel room key to Apple Wallet on your iPhone.

Unlock and start your car

With a digital car key in Apple Wallet, you can lock, unlock, and start your compatible car using iPhone or Apple Watch.

See the Apple Support article Add your car key to Apple Wallet on your iPhone or Apple Watch.

Unlock and start your scooter

With a digital scooter key in Apple Wallet, you can lock, unlock, and start your compatible scooter using iPhone or Apple Watch.

See the Apple Support article Add your scooter key to the Wallet app on your iPhone or Apple Watch.

See also

Apple Support article: Use Express Mode with transit cards, passes, and keys in Apple Wallet

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

Previous
Pay for transit

Next
Use passes, loyalty cards, tickets, and more

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

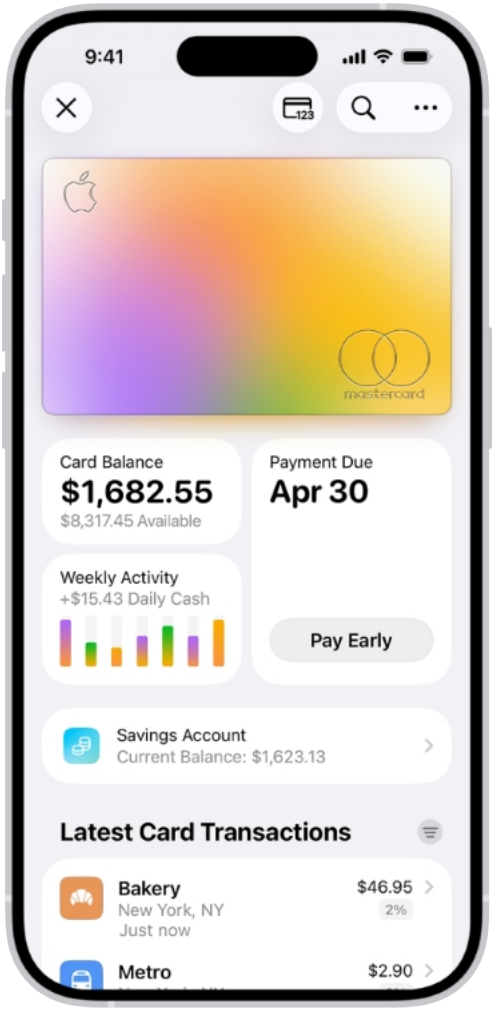
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Apple Card on iPhone

Apple Card is a credit card created by Apple and designed to help you lead a healthier financial life. You can sign up for Apple Card in the Wallet app on iPhone in minutes and start using it with Apple Pay right away in stores, in apps, or online worldwide. Apple Card gives you easy-to-understand, real-time views of your latest transactions and balance right in Wallet, and Apple Card support is available anytime by simply sending a text from Messages.

Note: Apple Card is only available in the U.S.



Apply for Apple Card

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, then tap Apply for Apple Card.

For more information, see the Apple Support article How to apply for Apple Card.

Make purchases with Apple Card

You can make purchases with Apple Card in the following ways:

- *With Apple Pay:* At contactless payment terminals and in apps and on the web.
- *With the virtual card number:* If Apple Pay isn't supported, use AutoFill during checkout. Or go to the Wallet app, tap Apple Card, then tap 123 to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.
- *With the titanium card:* In stores, restaurants, and other locations where Apple Pay isn't yet accepted, use the physical card.

View transactions, make payments, and manage your Apple Card

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Card.
3. Do any of the following:

    - *Review your spending:* Scroll down to see recent transactions or tap to search. Tap Activity to see your weekly, monthly, or yearly spending.

      See the Apple Support article See your Apple Card spending history.

    - *Make a one-time payment or schedule automatic payments:* Tap the payment button. See the Apple Support article How to make Apple Card payments.

    - *Manage your account:* Tap ··· to review rewards and offers, see account details, contact support, manage notifications, and more.

Tip: Add the Apple Card widget to your Home Screen to see your balance, available credit, and spending activity at a glance.

Daily Cash may not be divided between Apple Cash and a Savings account. Apple Card owners and co-owners may individually change where their Daily Cash is deposited at any time. To open Savings, you must add Apple Card to Wallet on an iPhone or iPad with the latest version of

iOS or iPadOS. Apple is not a financial institution. Apple Card and Savings are issued and provided by Goldman Sachs Bank USA, Salt Lake City Branch. Member FDIC.

Apple Cash is provided by Green Dot Bank. Member FDIC.

See also

Apple Support article: Set up and use Savings in Apple Wallet

Apple Support article: Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants

Apple Card Support website

Previous
Use Apple Cash

Next
Add your ID

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

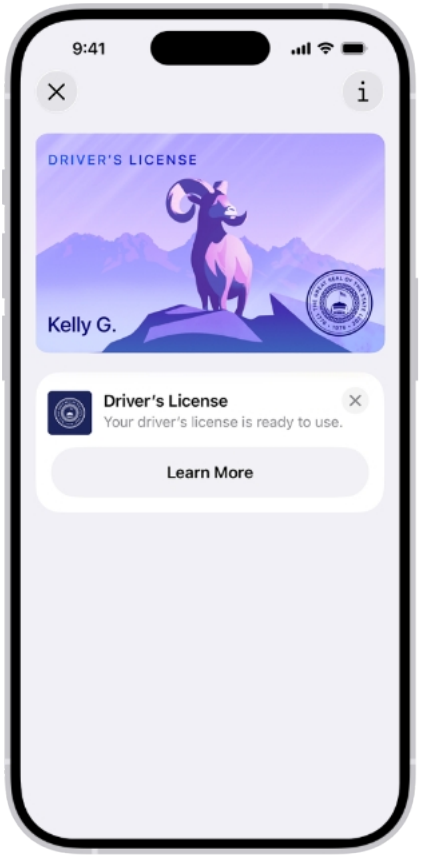
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Add your ID to Wallet on iPhone

With your identity card in the Wallet app, you can easily and securely present your ID at select locations in-person, in-app, and online. You can also keep supported identity cards on Apple Watch.

Add your driver's license or state ID (U.S. only)



You can easily and securely add your driver's license or state ID to the Wallet app, then use your iPhone or Apple Watch to present your license or ID at select Transportation Security Administration (TSA) security checkpoints and at participating businesses. You can also present your ID in select apps and websites that require identity verification. (Supported on iPhone 8 or later with iOS 15.4 or later, and on Apple Watch Series 4 or later with watchOS 8.4 or later. The driver's license or state ID must be issued by a participating state. See the IDs in Wallet website.)

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +.
3. Tap Driver's License and ID Cards, then choose your state. (Available for participating states.)
4. Add your license or ID to your iPhone only, or to both your iPhone and paired Apple Watch.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to scan the front and back of your license or ID, then follow the prompts to confirm it's you.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Add your ID to Apple Wallet.

Add a My Number Card (Japan only)

You can seamlessly add your My Number Card to Apple Wallet on iPhone and present it at convenience stores to print government-issued certificates, to check in at hospitals and clinics, and prove your age or identity in person, in apps and online. (Supported on iPhone XR, iPhone XS, or later with iOS 18.5 or later).

See the Apple Support article Use your My Number Card in Apple Wallet.

View the information on your ID

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your ID.
3. To see more details, tap ⓘ.

See also

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

Apple Support article: IDs in Apple Wallet: privacy and security overview

Apple Support article: Use Express Mode with transit cards, passes, and keys in Apple Wallet

Previous
Use Apple Card

Next
Pay for transit

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Organize and search in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app, you can easily organize and reorder your cards, keys, and passes. You can also search for cards, passes, transactions, merchants, and more.

Rearrange your cards, keys, and passes

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a card you want to move.
3. Drag the card to a new position in the stack.

   Tip: To make a credit or debit card your default payment card, drag it to the front of the card stack.

Search for cards, passes, and transactions

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then enter what you're looking for. You can search by merchant, date, transaction amount, location, and more.

See also

Remove cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

About Apple Wallet on iPhone

Previous
Check your Apple Account balance

Next
Remove cards and passes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use the Wallet app to keep all your passes—such as loyalty and rewards cards, coupons, boarding passes, movie and event tickets, and more—in one convenient place for easy access. Passes can include useful information, such as the points on a loyalty card, the balance on your coffee card, a coupon's expiration date, or airport and boarding information for a flight.

Add a pass to Apple Wallet

When you do something like purchase a ticket, you often have the option to add it to Apple Wallet. You may also get a supported pass from a website, app, QR code, AirDrop sharing, or after using Apple Pay with a participating merchant.

1. Tap Add to Apple Wallet.



Note: If you don't see Add to Apple Wallet, contact the merchant or company to make sure they support passes in Apple Wallet.

2. Tap Add in the upper-right corner or follow the onscreen instructions.

View the pass details and settings

Passes can include useful information, such as the points on a loyalty card, the balance on your coffee card, a coupon's expiration date, or airport and boarding information for a flight.



1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the pass.
3. To see more information, tap ···, then tap Pass Details.

Use a pass

1. Access the pass on your iPhone in any of the following ways:
   - On the Lock Screen, tap the pass notification. If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
   - If Automatic Selection is turned on for the pass, double-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or double-click the Home button (on iPhone SE). If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
   - Go to the Wallet app, then tap the pass.
2. To present the pass, do one of the following:

- *Contactless pass:* Hold the top of your iPhone near the pass reader until Done or a checkmark appears on the screen.

- *Pass with a barcode or QR code:* Present the code to the reader.

Use a loyalty card with Apple Pay

At participating stores, you can receive or redeem rewards when you present the loyalty card during checkout.

1. Add your loyalty card to the Wallet app.
2. To have your loyalty card appear automatically when you're in the store, tap ··· on the card, tap Pass Details, then turn on Automatic Selection.
3. At the payment terminal in the store, present your loyalty card by holding iPhone near the contactless reader.

   Wallet then switches to your default payment card so you can complete the purchase. In some stores, you can present your loyalty card and payment card in one step. In other stores, you need to wait until the terminal or cashier asks for payment.

See also

Remove cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Apple Support article: Add, use, and share boarding passes, tickets, and other passes in Apple Wallet

Apple Support article: Use Express Mode with transit cards, passes, and keys in Apple Wallet

Previous
Use digital keys

Next
Check your Apple Account balance

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

View weather maps on iPhone

You can view full-screen precipitation, temperature, air quality, and wind maps in your location or other areas.

Note: Not all features are available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Feature availability and data sources in the Weather app.



View a full-screen weather map

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Select a location, then tap at the bottom of the screen.

Note: The type of weather map shown can change depending on the weather conditions for the selected location.

3. To switch to a precipitation, temperature, air quality, or wind map, tap in the upper right.
4. In a precipitation or wind forecast map, do any of the following:
   - *Show the timeline:* Tap near the bottom of the map.
   - *Change the duration of the timeline:* While viewing a precipitation map, tap , then switch between 12-Hour Forecast and Next-Hour Forecast.
5. Tap to close the map.

Change the location of the weather map

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. View a full-screen weather map, then do any of the following:
   - *Move the map:* Drag it.
   - *Zoom in and out:* Pinch the screen.
   - *View another location from your list:* Tap in the upper right, then tap a location.
   - *Return to your current location:* Tap in the upper right.
   - *Add a location to your list, view its current conditions, or view it in Maps:* Touch and hold the location on the map, then tap Add [*location*], View [*location*], or Open in Maps.
3. Tap to close the map.

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Manage weather notifications on iPhone

Use Weather widgets on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Check the weather on iPhone

Check the weather for your current location. View the upcoming hourly and 10-day forecast, see severe weather information, and more.



Note: Some Weather app features—such as severe weather alerts, air quality, next-hour precipitation, and news—aren't available in all countries and regions. To learn about the data sources for the Weather app, see the Apple Support article Feature availability and data sources in the Weather app.

Before you begin

Weather uses Location Services to get the forecast for your current location. You can turn on Precise Location to increase the accuracy of the forecast.

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather.
2. Turn on Precise Location.

Check the local forecast and conditions

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.

   The details for your current location are shown. See Learn the weather icons.

   If you don't see the details for the location you want to know about, tap , then tap My Location or another location.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Look at different times in the hourly forecast:* Swipe the hourly display left or right.

     Note: The air quality scale appears above the hourly forecast when air quality reaches a particular level for that location. For some locations, the air quality scale always appears above the hourly forecast.

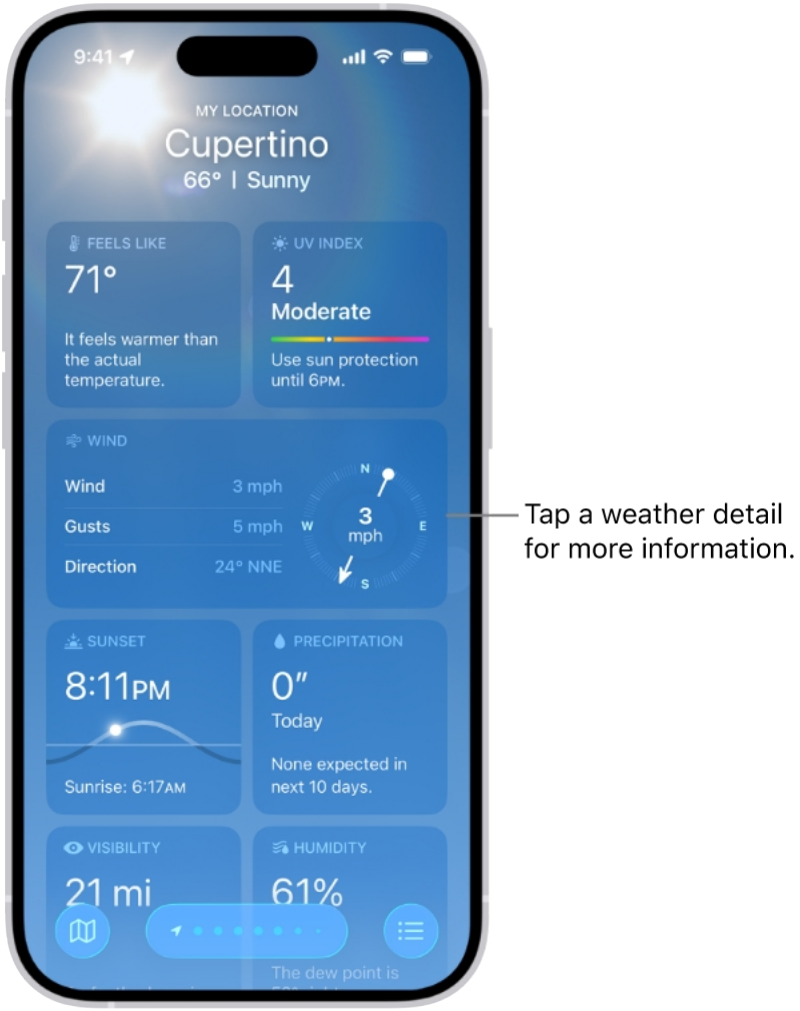
   - *See chance of precipitation, high and low temperatures, and more:* Tap the hourly forecast, then tap to change the displayed weather condition.

     Tip: Swipe left to see the same information for the days ahead.

   - *See more weather details:* Each location's weather page includes detailed information, including potential severe weather alerts, weather-related news, air quality, UV index, wind, visibility, moon phases, and more.

     To receive notifications about precipitation or certain severe weather events, see Manage weather notifications.

     Tip: Tap the Averages weather detail to see more information about how today's temperature or precipitation compares to the historical average.



Customize the weather units

You can change the units used in weather data. This includes Fahrenheit or Celsius for temperature, and miles per hour, kilometers per hour, knots, or Beaufort for wind.

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰.
3. Tap •••, tap Units, then do any of the following:

   - *Change temperature units:* Tap Fahrenheit, Celsius, or "Use system setting."
   - *Change wind, precipitation, pressure, or distance units:* Tap ⇕ next to the current measurement unit, then choose an option.

Send a report about the weather

You can report the weather in your location if it doesn't match what's shown in the Weather app.

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰, tap •••, then tap Report an Issue.
3. Tap the options that best describe the weather conditions in your location, then tap Submit.

The information you share with Apple isn't associated with your Apple Account.

See also

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

View weather maps on iPhone

Use Weather widgets on iPhone

Previous
Change Wallet & Apple Pay settings

Next
Check the weather in other locations

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Manage weather notifications on iPhone

You can receive notifications when precipitation or certain severe weather events are forecasted in your current location. You can also receive notifications for locations you saved in your list.

Note: Weather notifications aren't available in all countries or regions.

Turn on Precise Location

When you turn on Precise Location, you receive more accurate notifications for your current location.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, then tap Location Services.
3. Tap Weather, then tap Always.
4. Turn on Precise Location.

Get weather notifications

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap to display your list.
3. Tap •••, then tap Notifications.

   If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.
4. Do any of the following:

   - *Get notified about the weather at your current location:* Below Current Location, turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation.

- *Get notified about weather in other locations:* Below Your Locations, tap a location, then turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation.

5. Tap ✓.

Get weather notifications for a suggested location

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, tap Location Services, then tap System Services.
3. Tap Significant Locations & Routes, then turn on Significant Locations & Routes.
4. Tap ‹ four times to return to Settings.
5. Tap Apps, then tap Weather.
6. Below Locations, turn on Suggested Locations.
7. Scroll up, tap Location, then select Always.
8. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
9. Tap ☰, tap •••, then tap Notifications.
10. Below Suggested Locations, turn on notifications for Severe Weather.

Weather widgets can display conditions at locations significant to you when you also have a widget stack with Smart Rotate and Widget Suggestions turned on.

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

‹ Previous
View weather maps

Next ›
Use Weather widgets

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Learn the weather icons on iPhone

The icons in the Weather app indicate different weather conditions, like fog or haze. Here's a list of some of the weather icons and what they mean.

Icon	Description
	Sunrise
	Sunset
	Clear / Mostly clear
	Partly cloudy
	Haze
	Fog
	Windy / Breezy
	Cloudy
	Thunderstorm
	Rain
	Heavy rain
	Drizzle / Freezing drizzle

	Snow
	Heavy snow / Blizzard
	Freezing rain / Sleet / Wintry mix
	Clear / Mostly clear (night)
	Partly cloudy (night)
	Drizzle (night)

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Previous
Use Weather widgets

Next
How to use Siri

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Weather widgets on iPhone

Use Weather widgets to check the forecast and other weather conditions at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose from a variety of widget sizes and displays.

Tip: You can add more than one Weather widget to your Home Screen so you can quickly see weather conditions and forecasts in different locations.

Change the location shown in the Weather widget

You can change the location that a Weather widget displays on your iPhone Home Screen.

1. Add a widget to your Home Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Weather widget on your Home Screen.
3. Tap Edit “Weather” or Edit Stack.
4. Tap My Location, then search for a city or tap a location from your list that you want to display.
5. Tap the screen outside the widget to return to your iPhone Home Screen.

Display conditions at locations significant to you

Weather widgets can display conditions at locations significant to you.

1. Turn on severe weather notifications when you set up notifications. See Get weather notifications for a suggested location.
2. Set up a widget stack with Smart Rotate and Widget Suggestions turned on. See Edit a widget on your Home Screen.

You can also put Weather widgets on your iPhone Lock Screen.

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone

Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

Customize apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

Previous
Manage weather notifications

Next
Learn the weather icons

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

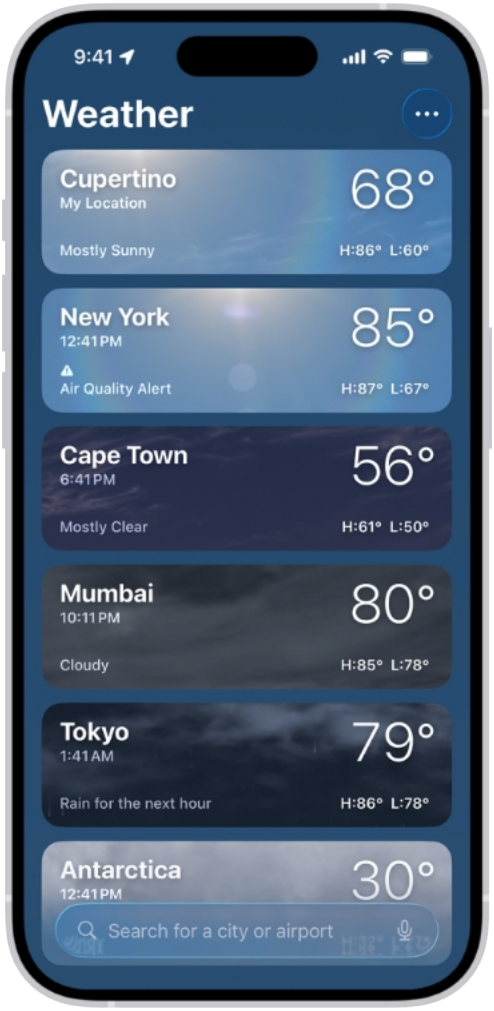
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Check the weather for any location around the world and quickly access forecasts for locations you save to your list.



Search for another location

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the bottom-right corner of the screen.

3. Tap the search field at the top or bottom of the screen, then enter the name of the city, neighborhood, or location.

   Tip: To see your Home and Work locations in search results, go to Settings > Apps > Weather, then turn on Home and Work. Also make sure to turn on Location Services for Weather.

4. Tap the location in the search results to display the forecast.
5. Do one of the following:

   - *Add the location to your list:* Tap +.
   - *Return to the list without adding the location:* Tap ×, then tap × again.

To check the weather in locations you added to your list, swipe left or right when viewing a location, or tap ☰, then tap a location.

Your list of locations stays up to date across your devices when you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Note: Neighborhood search results aren't available in all locations.

Add a location from the weather map

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. While checking a forecast and conditions, tap in the bottom-left corner of the screen, then change the location of the weather map.
3. Touch and hold where you want to add a location, then tap ⊕.

Rearrange locations in your list

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰ to display your list.
3. Touch and hold the location, then move it up or down.

Remove a location from your list

1. Go to the Weather app on your iPhone.

2. Tap to display your list.

3. Swipe left on the location, then tap .

See also

Check the weather on iPhone

View weather maps on iPhone

Previous
Check the weather

Next
View weather maps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

How to use Siri on iPhone

Siri is an intelligent assistant that's built into your iPhone to help you get things done. After you turn on Siri, you can use it to get everyday tasks done with your voice, or by typing requests to Siri. The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need.

Below are some examples of what you can use Siri to do. Additional examples appear throughout the guide. Want even more examples? Ask Siri something like, "What can I do here?"



Get information

Ask Siri to spell or translate a word, perform calculations, get information from the web, and more.

Ask Siri to get information ›

Call, text, and email

Use Siri with the Phone, FaceTime, Messages, and Mail apps to stay connected with friends and family, near and far.

Call, text, and email with Siri ›





Play music and podcasts

Ask Siri to play your favorite music and podcasts and control audio playback. For example, ask Siri to play, pause, or skip songs.

Play music and podcasts with Siri ›

Control Apple devices and smart home accessories

Control your iPhone and other Apple devices with just your voice. You can also control smart home accessories that you set up in the Home app.

Control your Apple devices and smart home accessories with Siri ›



Navigate on and off the road



You can ask Siri to get travel directions, report traffic incidents, share your estimated time of arrival (ETA), find nearby attractions, and more.

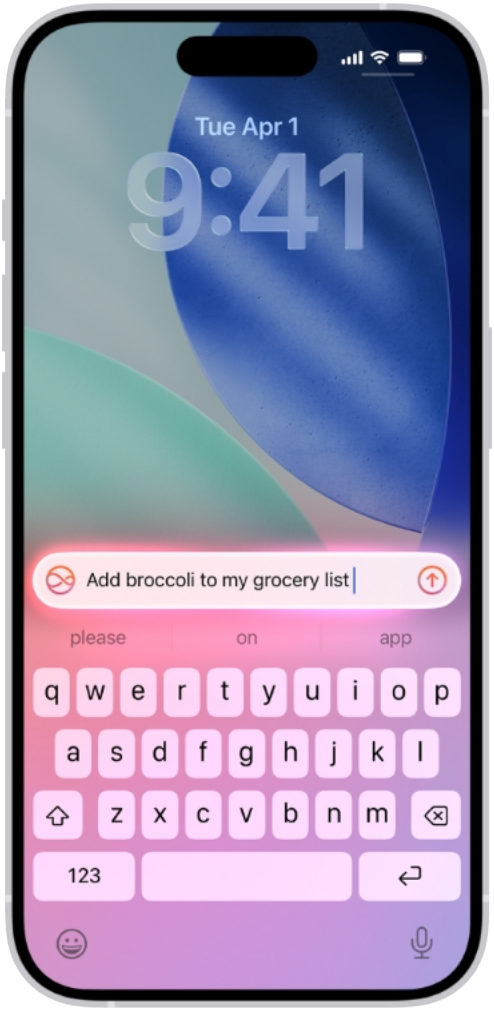
Use Siri to get directions

Use Siri with apps

Ask Siri to complete actions in apps to help you complete everyday tasks. For example, while you have your hands full prepping dinner, ask Siri to add items to your grocery list.

Use Siri with apps ›





Do more with Apple Intelligence

With Apple Intelligence,* you can type requests to Siri, get answers to questions about your Apple products, tap into ChatGPT's expertise, and more.

Use Apple Intelligence with Siri ›

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Siri, Dictation & Privacy website.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Change Siri settings on iPhone

‹ Previous
Learn the weather icons

Next ›
Get information with Siri

Table of Contents

Get information with Siri on iPhone

You can use Siri to get information from the web, your contacts, and apps. You can also ask Siri to spell or translate words, perform calculations and conversions, and more. When Location Services is turned on in Privacy & Security settings, Siri even provides information based on location—like coffee shops near you.

On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.



Get information from the web

- "What causes a rainbow?"
- "Who made the first rocket that went to space?"



Spell or translate

- "How do you spell [*X*]?"
- "How do you say 'Thank You' in Mandarin?"



Ask questions about time and place

- "What time is it?"
- "What time is it in London?"



Find people and other Apple devices connected to your Find My app

- "Where's Gordon?"
- "Where's my iPad?"



Get sports updates

- "What was the score of last night's game?"
- "How are the San Francisco Giants doing this season?"



Get calculations and conversions

- "What's 18 percent of 225?"
- "How many centimeters are in an inch?"



Get information about your contacts

- "When is my uncle's birthday?"
- "Show me Jane's information"



Check the weather

- "Hey Siri, what's the weather for today?"
- "What's the weather like in San Francisco?"

Table of Contents

Fill in payment information on iPhone

With your physical and virtual card numbers saved in Apple Wallet, you can use AutoFill to automatically fill in payment information in apps and online where Apple Pay isn't available. You can add, edit, and remove AutoFill cards to manage your saved payment methods.

Your AutoFill cards are saved in iCloud Keychain so you can access them on your other devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Save a physical card number in Apple Wallet

Even if your debit or credit card doesn't support Apple Pay, you can add the card number to Apple Wallet.

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap AutoFill.
3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode, then tap Add Card.
4. Position your card in the frame to scan the information, or enter the card details manually.

Update or remove AutoFill cards

You can edit or delete the payment information and manage your AutoFill cards.

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap ···, then tap AutoFill.
3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode, then tap a card to see the details.
4. Do any of the following:

   - *Update the card information:* Tap Edit.

- *Delete the card information:* Tap Remove From AutoFill.

  Note: Removing a card from AutoFill doesn't remove it from Apple Pay.

See a virtual card number

To hide your real card number and prevent fraud when shopping in apps or on websites where Apple Pay isn't available, use a virtual card number (available for supported cards).

1. Go to the Wallet app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a supported card (such as Apple Cash or Apple Card).
3. Tap , then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
4. Tap the virtual card number to copy it.

Fill in your payment information during checkout

When Apple Pay isn't available, you can use AutoFill to enter the card number, expiration date, and security code of a debit or credit card saved in Apple Wallet. You can also use the iPhone camera to scan the information on a new card.

1. During checkout, tap a payment information field.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Choose a card saved in Apple Wallet:* Tap a payment card above the onscreen keyboard.

   - *Use a new card:* Tap Scan Card, then position your card in the frame.

See also

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

In Settings, you can customize your preferences for Wallet app and Apple Pay.

Customize your Wallet & Apple Pay settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, then set any of the following:

- *Location:* Control the location information you share.
- *Siri & Search:* Allow Siri to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Wallet & Apple Pay. You can also allow suggestions and content from Wallet & Apple Pay to appear in Search and widgets.
- *Notifications:* Change notification settings.
- *Live Activities:* Turn on or off Live Activities on the Lock Screen.
- *Cellular Data:* Turn on or off cellular data usage.
- *Apple Pay Defaults:* Change your default card, address, and preferences for Apple Pay.
- *Apple Cash:* Turn on or off Apple Cash.
- *AutoFill Cards:* Fill in payment information.
- *Express Transit Card:* Choose cards to pay for transit automatically without requiring authentication. See Pay for your ride with Express Transit.

- *Hide Expired Passes:* Turn on to archive old passes.
- *Order tracking:* Purchases from participating merchants are automatically added to Wallet for order tracking.

Change your default card, address, and preferences for Apple Pay

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wallet & Apple Pay, then tap Apple Pay Defaults.
3. Set any of the following:
   - *Transaction defaults:* Set the default card, your shipping address, email, and phone number.
   - *Available payment options:* Turn on or off Pay Later, Rewards, Offers, and Other Pay Later Options.
   - *Allow Payments on Mac:* Use Apple Pay on your iPhone to confirm payments on your nearby Mac.
   - *Double-Click Side Button:* (on an iPhone with Face ID) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the side button.
   - *Double-Click Home Button:* (on an iPhone with a Home button) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the Home button.

Keep your passes up to date on your other devices

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, tap iCloud, then turn on Wallet.

Allow access to passes when iPhone is locked

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Face ID & Passcode or Touch ID & Passcode, enter your passcode, then turn on Wallet (below Allow Access When Locked).

See also

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Fill in payment information on iPhone

Previous
Fill in payment information

Next
Check the weather

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Siri with apps on iPhone

You can ask Siri to complete actions in apps to help you perform everyday tasks and shortcuts with your voice. When you turn on Siri Suggestions, you can also get suggested actions in your apps before you ask. When Location Services is turned on in Privacy & Security settings, Siri even provides information based on location—like reminding you of something when you leave a specific location.

Use Siri across your apps

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

Add a reminder

Ask Siri to add an ingredient to the groceries list or remind you to do something at a specific time or place. For example, “Add artichokes to my groceries list.” or “Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home.”

Set an alarm or timer

Ask Siri to set alarms and timers. For example, “Set an alarm for 7 a.m.” or “Set the timer for 3 minutes.”

Create or change calendar events

Ask Siri to set up a calendar event. For example, “Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9” or “What’s on my calendar for Friday?”

See your passwords

Ask Siri to view your passwords. For example, “Show me my passwords.”

Get info about stocks

Ask Siri to get information about the stock market. For example, “How are the markets doing?” or “How’s Apple stock today?”

Use Siri to listen to a webpage

You can use Siri to read supported webpages aloud in the Safari app.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, “Read this” or “I want to listen to this page.”

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Open the page you want to listen to, tap, then tap Listen to Page.

While listening to a webpage, tap, then tap.

To start listening again, tap, then tap.

Keep track of your health and fitness

You can use Siri to keep track of your health and fitness and log data.

Siri: On supported models, activate Siri, then say something like:

- "How much did I sleep last night?"
- "Log my 6AM medications as taken"
- "Log that my period started today"
- "How are my Activity Rings?"
- "What's my heart rate?"
- "How far have I walked today?"

Let Siri make suggestions in apps

Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as call into a meeting or confirm an appointment, based on your routines and how you use your apps.

For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:

- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.
- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.
- *Receive calls:* If you get an incoming call from an unknown number, Siri lets you know who might be calling—based on phone numbers included in your emails.
- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places, or anything you viewed on iPhone recently. If you tell a friend you're on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.
- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.

To turn off Siri suggestions for an app, see Siri Suggestions.

Run shortcuts with Siri

Apps can offer shortcuts for things you do frequently. You can use Siri to initiate these shortcuts with just your voice. Some apps have Siri Shortcuts set up automatically. You can also create your own.

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

To run a shortcut with your voice on your iPhone, activate Siri, then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See Turn on and activate Siri.

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri Shortcuts. See the Shortcuts User Guide.

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, see Change Siri settings on iPhone.

See also

How to use Siri on iPhone

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Previous
Use Siri to get directions

Next
Use Siri in your car

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Siri in your car on iPhone

CarPlay uses Siri voice control, so you can ask for what you want. You can also use your car's built-in controls to control CarPlay.

You can also use Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone.

Use Siri on CarPlay

1. Do one of the following until Siri beeps:

   - Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel.
   - Touch and hold or on a touchscreen displaying CarPlay.
   - You can also say "Hey Siri" to activate Siri in supported vehicles.

2. Use Siri to ask a question or to do something.

   Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

   - "Get directions to the nearest coffee shop"
   - "Call Eliza Block"
   - "Play more songs like this one"
   - "Show me the map"
   - "What's my next meeting?"
   - "What's the weather for today?"

- “Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home”

Tip: Instead of waiting for Siri to notice that you’ve stopped talking, you can press and continue to hold the voice command button on the steering wheel while you speak, then release it when you finish.

Siri also makes suggestions in CarPlay for what you might want to do next, such as operate the garage door when you arrive home or drive to your next meeting. See About Siri Suggestions.

Use Siri Eyes Free

To connect iPhone to your car, use Bluetooth® (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To activate Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

See also

Use your vehicle’s built-in controls to control CarPlay

Use Siri to get directions on iPhone

Previous
Use Siri with apps

Next
Turn on and activate Siri

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Siri to get directions on iPhone

You can ask Siri to get travel directions, report traffic incidents, share your estimated time of arrival (ETA), find nearby attractions, and more. When Location Services is turned on in Privacy & Security settings, Siri even provides information based on location—like reminding you of something when you leave a specific location.

Get travel directions

You can keep focused on the road by using Siri to get directions. And by listening to turn-by-turn spoken directions, you can follow driving, cycling, and walking directions without even looking at your iPhone.

Siri: On your iPhone, ask Siri something like, "Give me directions home," or see the ideas below for requests you can make.

Get driving directions

- "Give me driving directions home"

Get walking directions

- "Give me walking directions home"

Get transit directions

- "Give me transit directions to the Ferry Building"

Get cycling directions

- "Give me cycling directions home"

Tip: You can ask for directions to your home, work, or school address when using Siri or searching in Maps. See Edit a pin.

Use Siri on the road

While you're on the road, you can use Siri to report traffic incidents, report the status of incidents in select countries or regions, share your estimated time of arrival (ETA), and more.

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.



Share your ETA

- "Share my ETA"



Report traffic incidents

- "Report an accident"
- "There's something on the road"
- "There's a speed check here"



Report on the status of a hazard or accident

- "The hazard is gone"
- "Clear the accident"



End directions before you arrive

- "Stop navigating"

Find nearby attractions, restaurants, or services

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Find coffee near me"
- "Find a gas station"
- "Find a charging station"

See also

How to use Siri on iPhone

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Table of Contents

Control your Apple devices and smart home accessories with Siri on iPhone

Use Siri to control your iPhone and other Apple devices with just your voice—like opening apps, adjusting settings, and locating your other Apple devices or items with AirTags. You can also control smart home accessories that you set up in the Home app.

Control your iPhone

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

Open apps and settings

- "Open Camera"
- "Open Accessibility settings"
- "Open Calculator"

Adjust settings

- "Siri, turn on the flashlight"
- "Turn up the volume"
- "Turn on the Work Focus"

Adjust accessibility settings

- "Siri, hang up"
- "Speak screen"
- "Turn on Voice Control"
- "Turn on VoiceOver"
- "Turn on AssistiveTouch"
- "Turn on Guided Access"

Control your home

Ask Siri to turn on lights, adjust the thermostat, and control the products that you use in your home—even when you're not there.

To get started, find accessories that work with Apple Home. For information on how to set up smart home accessories with your iPhone or iPad, see the Apple Support article Add a smart home accessory to the Home app.

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.



Turn accessories on and off

- “Turn on the lights”
- “Turn on the security system”



Adjust an accessory

- “Set the temperature to 68 degrees”
- “Turn down the kitchen lights”
- “Set my reading scene”



Control a room or zone

If you organize your accessories by room or zone, you can control areas of your house with a single command.

- “Turn off the lights downstairs”
- “Turn on the fan in the office”
- “Start heating the upstairs”



Check your home’s status

- “Did I lock the front door?”
- “Show me the entryway camera”
- “Did I close the garage door?”



Play audio anywhere, or everywhere

- “Play a song I like in the kitchen”
- “Move the music to the den”
- “What’s playing in the kitchen?”



Control audio

- “Set the dining room volume to 10 percent”
- “Remove the music from the kitchen”
- “Stop playing music everywhere”



Control your accessories remotely

If you have a home hub set up, you can ask Siri to control your home while you’re away.

- “Turn off the lights in the Chicago house”
- “Lock the front door”
- “Close the garage”

See also

How to use Siri on iPhone

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Turn Siri Suggestions on or off on iPhone

When you turn on Siri Suggestions, you get suggested actions in some apps even before you ask. For example, when you get an invitation in Mail, you're asked if you want to add it to your calendar. Or when you browse webpages, you get suggestions for related webpages. You can also customize the apps Siri has access to.

Turn Siri Suggestions on or off for an app

Siri Suggestions are on by default for your apps. You can turn them off or change the settings at any time.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then tap Apps.
3. Tap an app, then turn settings on or off.

Change Siri Suggestions settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then turn on or off any of the following:
   - Show in App
   - Show on Home Screen
   - Suggest App
   - Suggestion Notifications

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don't want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices.

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy website.

See also

How to use Siri on iPhone

Previous
Have Siri announce calls and notifications

Next
Change Siri settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Call, text, and email with Siri on iPhone

You can use Siri with the Phone, FaceTime, Messages, and Mail apps to stay connected with friends and family, near and far. When Location Services is turned on in Privacy & Security settings, Siri even provides information about your location when you ask.

Make calls

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Call Eliza's mobile"
- "Return my last call"
- "Redial that last number"
- "FaceTime mom"

WARNING: Avoid distractions while driving. See Important safety information.

Send, read, and reply to text messages

You can use Siri to send messages, read your incoming texts out loud, and reply to messages.

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- "Send a message to Mayuri saying, how about tomorrow?"
- "Read my last message from Antonio"
- "Reply, that's great news!"

Siri can send a message right after it has been read back to you. Go to Settings > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri) > Messaging with Siri, then turn on Automatically Send Messages.

WARNING: Avoid distractions while driving. See Important safety information.

Read and write emails in the Mail app

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

- “Read me my emails”
- “Email this photo to mom”
- “Send an email to Ashley”

Share content with your contacts

You can share onscreen items like photos, webpages, content from Apple Music or Apple Podcasts, Maps locations, and more with people in your contacts.

For example, when looking at a photo in your photo library, activate Siri, then say something like “Send this to mom” to create a new message with the photo.

See also

How to use Siri on iPhone

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Previous
Get information with Siri

Next
Play music and podcasts with Siri

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone

Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages on supported headphones and when using CarPlay. You can answer or reply using your voice without needing to say "Hey Siri."

Announce Calls and Announce Notifications also work with supported third-party apps.

Have Siri announce calls

With Announce Calls, Siri identifies incoming phone calls and FaceTime calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri).
3. Tap Announce Calls, then choose an option.
4. When a call comes in, Siri identifies the caller, and asks if you want to answer the call. Say "yes" to accept the call or "no" to decline it.

Have Siri announce notifications

Siri can automatically announce incoming notifications from apps like Messages and Reminders. Siri automatically enables app notifications for apps that use time-sensitive notifications, but you can change the settings at any time. To learn more about time-sensitive notifications, see Set up a Focus.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri).
3. Tap Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.

4. Tap an app you want Siri to announce notifications from, then turn on Announce Notifications.

   For some apps, you can also choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

For apps where you can send a reply, like Messages, Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, turn on Reply Without Confirmation.

Respond to Siri announcements hands-free

You can nod or shake your head to respond to Siri announcements while you're wearing supported AirPods. So if you're on the bus to work, you can still use Siri for managing calls, messages, and notifications without having to speak out loud. See Use controls and gestures with your AirPods in the AirPods User Guide.

See also

Change notification settings on iPhone

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Previous
Tell Siri about yourself

Next
Turn Siri Suggestions on or off

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Siri is an intelligent assistant that's built into your iPhone to help you get things done. To get started, learn the basics—like how to turn Siri on and get its attention.

Note: Siri is designed to protect your information and to let you choose what you share. To learn more, see the Siri, Dictation & Privacy website and the Improve Siri and Dictation & Privacy website.

Turn on Siri

Siri needs to be turned on before you can use it to get information. If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then tap Talk to Siri.
3. Choose one of the following:

    - *"Siri" or "Hey Siri":* iPhone listens for "Siri" or "Hey Siri" at the beginning of requests.
    - *"Hey Siri":* iPhone listens for "Hey Siri" at the beginning of requests.

    To activate Siri with the side button, turn on Press Side Button for Siri.

To change additional Siri settings, see Change Siri settings on iPhone.

Activate Siri

After you turn on Siri, you need to *activate* it, then ask a question or make a request.

Note: You must be connected to the internet to use Siri.

1. Do one of the following:

- *With your voice:* Say “Siri” or “Hey Siri.”
- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Press and hold the side button.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.
- *With EarPods:* Press and hold the center or call button.
- *With CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel, or touch and hold the Home button on the CarPlay Home Screen. See Use Siri in your car on iPhone.
- *With Siri Eyes Free:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.

2. Ask a question or make a request—for example, say something like “What’s 18 percent of 225?” or “Set the timer for 3 minutes.”

   Tip: To change how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking, go to the Settings app, tap Accessibility, tap Siri, then choose Default, Longer, or Longest below Siri Pause Time.

When you activate Siri with a button, Siri responds silently when iPhone is in silent mode. When silent mode is off, Siri responds out loud. When you activate Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud. To change this behavior, see Change how Siri responds.

You can also activate Siri with a touch or your voice on supported AirPods. See Set up Siri in the AirPods User Guide.

Tip: To prevent iPhone from responding to “Siri” or “Hey Siri,” place your iPhone face down, or go to the Settings app, tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), tap “Listen for,” then choose Off.

Make back-to-back requests

After you activate Siri, you can make follow-up requests without reactivating it (not available in all countries or regions).

1. Activate Siri, then make a request.
2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

   For example, say “Hey Siri, what’s the weather like in San Francisco? What about Cupertino?”

To override a request, interrupt Siri while Siri is speaking.

Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- *While making back-to-back requests:* Repeat your request in a different way.
- *If you aren't making back-to-back requests:* Tap , then repeat your request in a different way.
- *Spell out part of your request:* Tap , then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn't understand. For example, say "Call," then spell the person's name.
- *Change a message before sending it:* Say "Change it."
- *Edit your request with text:* If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.

Tip: To correct your request without reactivating Siri, make the corrected request immediately after the original one. (Available on supported iPhone models in some countries and regions.)

Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
3. To type a request, activate Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask a question or make a request.

Turn off Siri

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then tap Talk to Siri (or Talk & Type to Siri).
3. Tap Off, then turn off Press Side Button for Siri.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article If Siri isn't working on your iPhone.

See also

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

Previous
Use Siri in your car

Next
Tell Siri about yourself

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Play music and podcasts with Siri on iPhone

Use Siri to play the music and podcasts you love and control playback on your iPhone.

Use Siri with Apple Music

If you have an individual, family, or student subscription to Apple Music, you can ask Siri to play anything from the Apple Music catalog, find songs by lyrics, add music to your library, and more.

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.



Play a specific song, album, artist, or playlist

- “Play ‘Everything Is Peaceful Love’ by Bon Iver”
- “Play the playlist, Olivia’s Favorites”
- “Play songs by Ariana Grande”



Play hits from a decade or genre

- “Play some '90s alternative music”
- “Play some popular hip-hop songs”
- “Play some '80s music”



Play music that fits your mood

- “Play some mellow music”
- “Play music for a rainy day”
- “Play something happy”



Play music for an activity

- “Play music to study”
- “Play some workout music”



Tell Siri what you like and don’t like

- “Favorite this song”
- “I don’t like this song”
- “Play more music like this”



Play music picked just for you

- “Play my Chill Mix”
- “Play my Discovery Station”
- “Play something I like”



Find out what’s playing

- “What’s playing?”
- “Who sings this song?”
- “What album is this on?”



Add music to your library or playlist

- “Add this to my library”
- “Add this song to my Workout playlist”
- “Add this album to my Sunday Morning playlist”



Listen to live and on-demand radio

- “Play R&B Now Radio”
- “Play Apple Music 1”
- “Play Rap Life Radio”



Control what’s playing

- “Pause music”
- “Resume music”
- “Skip this song”
- “Turn up the volume”
- “Shuffle music”



Play songs based on their lyrics

Ask Siri something like “Play a song with the lyrics” and then say a key phrase from the lyrics.

Tip: You can also identify a song playing on or near iPhone by adding the Music Recognition control to Control Center. Open Control Center, tap ＋ at the top left, tap Add a Control at the bottom, then tap the Recognize Music icon. With a song playing, open Control Center, then tap .

Play songs based on their lyrics

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.

Use Siri with Apple Podcasts

Listen to your favorite podcasts, follow shows, and control playback—all with Siri.

Siri: On your iPhone, activate Siri, then see the ideas below for requests you can make.



Play and follow podcasts

- “Play the latest episode of ‘The Rest is History’ podcast”
- “Play the next episode”
- “Follow ‘The Rest is History’ podcast”



Control playback

- “Skip ahead three minutes”
- “Play this twice as fast”
- “Continue playing podcast”

See also

How to use Siri on iPhone

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Table of Contents

Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone

You can provide information to Siri—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—for a more personalized experience so you can say things like “Give me driving directions home” and “FaceTime mom.”

Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts, then fill out your contact information.
2. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
3. Tap My Information, then tap your name.

Tell Siri how to say your name

1. Open Contacts, then tap your contact card.
2. Tap Edit, scroll down and tap “add field,” select a pronunciation name field, then type how to say your name.

You can also add a pronunciation for any other contact card in Contacts. See Edit contacts.

Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like “Sarah Milos is my sister” or “Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom.”

Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to the Settings app, then sign in to the same Apple Account.

If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption.

If you don’t want Siri personalization to stay up to date across iPhone and your other devices, you can turn off Siri in iCloud settings.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All, then turn off Siri.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is also sent to Apple to help Siri improve the accuracy of its response to your requests. To deliver relevant responses, Apple may use the IP address of your internet connection to approximate your location by matching it to a geographic region. See Control the location information you share.

See also

Add or edit your contact info and photo on iPhone

Edit contacts on iPhone

Previous
Turn on and activate Siri

Next
Have Siri announce calls and notifications

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create original images with Image Playground on iPhone

In the Image Playground app, you can use Apple Intelligence* to combine concepts, text descriptions, and people from your photo library to create images within seconds. You can also use Image Playground to create images in Messages, Freeform, and more.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.



Create or edit an image

1. Go to the Image Playground app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Create a new image:* Tap New Image.
   - *Edit an existing image:* Tap an image, then tap Edit.
3. Add what you want to your image. You can combine up to seven elements to create original images.
   - *Concepts:* Swipe left to browse concepts—themes, expressions, costumes, accessories, or places—then tap an option.
   - *A description:* Tap "Describe an image," enter a description, then tap .
   - *A person:* Tap , choose a person from your photo library, then choose a starting point.

     To add a person from Photos, you need to name them in the Photos app. If you already added a person and want to change how they look, tap , tap Edit, choose a new starting point, then tap . See Customize a person's appearance.

     If you provide a description that's different from the image you use—for example, the name in Photos doesn't match the name in your description—your image is personalized based on the photo you selected rather than the text description.

     Tip: You can also create an image of a person without using a photo from your library. Tap , tap Appearance, choose a skin tone and appearance, then tap .
   - *A photo of something—like a pet, nature, or food:* Tap , then choose an option.
4. Tap Style, then select a style.
   - *Apple Intelligence styles:* Select Animation, Illustration, or Sketch, or create Genmoji. When you create Genmoji, they're saved with your stickers.
   - *ChatGPT styles:*** Tap ChatGPT, then select a style, or choose Any Style to describe what you want. For example, you could enter "a realistic image of a stork" for a baby shower invitation.

   Note: Changing the image style creates a new set of previews.
5. Refine your image by doing any of the following:
   - *See variations:* Tap the preview bubble, then swipe left or right.

- *Remove a concept:* Tap ⊖.

6. When you're happy with your image, tap Save in the top-right corner to save it to your gallery. If you created a Genmoji, tap Add Emoji to add it with your stickers.

   If you're editing a previously saved image, tap Done—you're asked if you want to update it or save it as a new image.

To view the image in your gallery, tap <.

In addition to using the Image Playground app, you can also use Image Playground features to create original images in apps like Freeform and Messages. See Create and send original images in Messages and Create original images in Freeform.

Customize a person's appearance

When you create an image based on a person from your photo library, you can change their appearance by choosing a different photo as a starting point or changing personal attributes like hairstyle, facial hair, and eyewear.

1. Go to the Image Playground app on your iPhone.
2. Tap New Image, or tap an image, then tap Edit.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Choose a different photo:* Tap Choose Other Photo, then tap a photo to choose it.
   - *Choose the hairstyle, facial hair, or eyewear:* Tap Customize Appearance, then choose options from the pop-up menus.

     Tip: If the starting point still isn't quite right, try entering a description in the "Additional details" field. For example, if you added prescription glasses, but they're the wrong color, you can enter "blue glasses" or "make the glasses yellow."
   - *Return to the original starting point:* Tap Reset Appearance.

4. When you're happy with your starting point, tap ✓.

Copy, share, or save an image

1. Go to the Image Playground app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an image, then do any of the following:

- *Copy or duplicate your image:* Tap •••, then tap Copy or Duplicate.
- *Add a caption to your image:* Tap •••, tap Add Caption, enter an image description, then tap Done.
- *Share your image:* Tap, then choose a share option.
- *Save your image to your photo library:* Tap, then tap Save Image.

Delete an image

Note: If you delete an image from Image Playground, it's deleted on all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to the Image Playground app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an image in the gallery, then tap.

Create and send original images in Messages

You can create images with Image Playground directly in the Messages app.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation.
3. Tap, then tap Image Playground.
4. Do one of the following:
   - *Select an image you previously created:* Tap Gallery at the top, select your image, then tap.
   - *Create a new image:* Tap Create at the top, follow instructions to create an image, then tap.
5. When you're ready to send your image, tap.

Create original images in Freeform

You can create images with Image Playground directly in the Freeform app.

1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap to start a new one.
3. Do one of the following:

    - *Create a new image:* Tap in the toolbar, tap Image Playground, then follow instructions to create an image.
    - *Use elements from your board:* Select up to six images, drawings, text boxes, stickies, or shapes that you want to use, tap them, then tap Add to Playground.
    - *Replace an existing image with an image created in Image Playground:* Add an image, select the image, tap , tap Replace, tap Image Playground, then follow instructions to create an image.
4. Tap to add the image to your board.

You can also use Image Playground in other apps—such as Keynote, Pages, Apple Invites, and supported third-party apps.

You can block access to image creation features, like Image Playground, in Screen Time settings. See Block access to image creation features.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

***When using the ChatGPT extension, you choose what content to send to ChatGPT. Your request and attachments, as well as limited data associated with the request, such as current time zone, country, device type, language, and feature being used when making the request, are sent to ChatGPT to answer your request and enable ChatGPT to provide you accurate and relevant results.

See also

Create your own emoji with Genmoji on iPhone

Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time on iPhone

Use Apple Intelligence in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Use visual intelligence

Next
Create your own emoji with Genmoji

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

If you choose to allow Apple Intelligence to work with ChatGPT from OpenAI,* you can do the following:

Get more answers from Siri: Siri can tap into ChatGPT to provide more in-depth answers for certain requests—for example, insights about photos and documents.

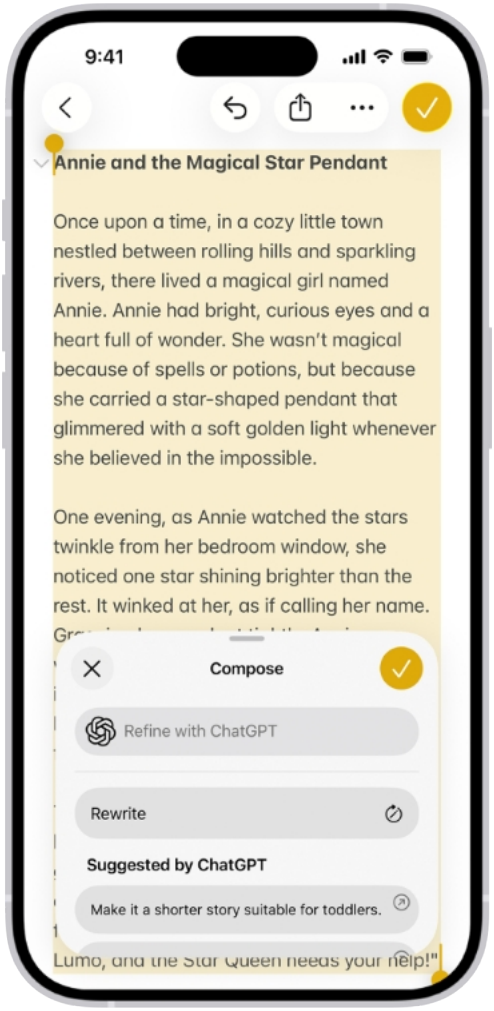
Compose text in Writing Tools: Writing Tools can use ChatGPT to create text or images from just a description.

Use new styles in Image Playground: Image Playground uses ChatGPT to give you an expanded range of visual styles for image creation.

Use ChatGPT with visual intelligence: Use visual intelligence with Camera Control to quickly learn more about the places and objects around you.

Use a model in Shortcuts: Shortcuts can use ChatGPT to handle even more complex requests.

Connect your ChatGPT account: You don’t need a ChatGPT account, but if you have one—free or paid—you can connect to your account. With a ChatGPT paid account, your iPhone can use advanced ChatGPT capabilities more often.



Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on. The ChatGPT extension is available only in regions where the ChatGPT app and service are available. Refer to OpenAI for ChatGPT availability.

Set up ChatGPT

When you first compose text in Writing Tools, access ChatGPT with visual intelligence, or use Siri to get answers from ChatGPT, you may be prompted to turn on the ChatGPT extension. You can also set up the extension in Settings.

Note: You must be at least 13 years old or the minimum age required in your country to consent to use ChatGPT. For more information, see OpenAI Terms of Use.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Intelligence & Siri.
3. Below Extensions, tap ChatGPT, then tap Set Up.

4. Do one of the following:

    - *Use ChatGPT without an account:* Tap Enable ChatGPT.
    - *Use ChatGPT with an existing account:* Tap Use ChatGPT with an Account, then follow the onscreen instructions.

      Note: If you want your requests saved to your ChatGPT chat history, you must be signed in to a ChatGPT account.

If you later decide to use ChatGPT with an account, go to Settings > Apple Intelligence & Siri, tap ChatGPT, then tap Sign In.

Compose text with Writing Tools

After you set up the ChatGPT extension, you can compose text with Writing Tools.

1. While typing, tap the text field, then tap .
2. Swipe up, then tap Compose.
3. Describe what you want ChatGPT to write—for example, "A bedtime story about a girl who visits a magical world where she befriends a caterpillar on its journey to becoming a butterfly"— choose Include All Text or Selected Text, then tap .
4. If you're asked for more details, tap a field, enter a response, then tap —or tap Ignore to continue without adding details.
5. After viewing the text, do any of the following:

    - *Rewrite text:* Tap Rewrite.
    - *Incorporate suggestions by ChatGPT:* Tap an option, then tap .
    - *Revert to the unedited version of your text:* Tap .
6. When you're finished, tap .

Use visual intelligence to ask ChatGPT for information

After you set up the ChatGPT extension, you can use visual intelligence to ask ChatGPT for information about things around you.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control (on supported models), or use an alternate option.

2. Point your iPhone camera at an object in front of you.
3. Tap to ask ChatGPT about the object.

   After you tap, you can type or dictate a follow-up question in the text field at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap to close the ChatGPT results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Use Siri to get answers from ChatGPT

After you set up the ChatGPT extension, Siri can tap into ChatGPT when it might be helpful to get the information you're looking for.

Activate Siri, then, in a supported language, say or type something like:

- "Hey Siri, ask ChatGPT to compose a haiku about dragons."
- "What should I get my uncle for his 70th birthday? He loves to fish."
- "Hey Siri, ask ChatGPT for some ideas of how to spend a free afternoon in Malibu if I don't feel like hitting the beach."
- "Hey Siri, compose a limerick about a tiger named Terry."
- "What kind of recipes can I make with this?" with a photo of fruit open in the Photos app.
- "Hey Siri, ask ChatGPT to summarize this document for me," with a document—like a PDF of a home inspection report—open in the Files app.

If Siri determines that ChatGPT would be helpful, it asks if you want to use ChatGPT to fulfill the request. You're always asked to confirm before any photos or files are sent to ChatGPT.

Tip: If you want to have Siri send a request without confirming, you can start your question with "Ask ChatGPT." You can also turn off Siri confirmations in Settings. See Send requests to ChatGPT without confirming.

Send requests to ChatGPT without confirming

You control when ChatGPT is used and are asked before any of your information is shared. You can choose to let Siri send requests to ChatGPT automatically without asking.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apple Intelligence & Siri.
3. Below Extensions, tap ChatGPT.
4. Turn off Confirm ChatGPT Requests.

You're always asked before any photos or files are sent to ChatGPT.

Turn off ChatGPT

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Intelligence & Siri.
3. Tap ChatGPT, then turn off Use ChatGPT.

If you want to prevent Siri from suggesting ChatGPT when you make a request, turn off ChatGPT, then turn off Setup Prompts.

You can block access to the ChatGPT extension in Screen Time settings. See Block access to Intelligence Extensions.

ChatGPT and privacy

When using the ChatGPT extension, you choose what content to send to ChatGPT. Your request and attachments, as well as limited data associated with the request, such as current time zone, country, device type, language, and feature being used when making the request, are sent to ChatGPT to answer your request and enable ChatGPT to provide you accurate and relevant results. Your IP address is obscured from ChatGPT, but your general location is provided for purposes such as enabling ChatGPT to prevent fraud and comply with applicable law.

If you access the ChatGPT extension without an account, only the information described above will be sent to ChatGPT. OpenAI does not receive any information tied to your Apple Account. OpenAI must process your data solely for the purpose of fulfilling your request, and not store your request or any responses it provides unless required under applicable laws. OpenAI also must not use your request to improve or train its models.

When you are signed in to a ChatGPT account, your ChatGPT account settings and OpenAI's data privacy policies apply.

For more information, see ChatGPT Extension & Privacy.

---

*Apple Intelligence and ChatGPT use generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Create original images with Image Playground on iPhone

Use a model to build custom shortcuts

Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time on iPhone

Previous
Find the right words with Writing Tools

Next
Summarize notifications and reduce interruptions

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Use visual intelligence on iPhone

Use visual intelligence to quickly learn more about what's in front of you, whether in your physical surroundings or on your iPhone screen.

To learn more about your physical surroundings using your iPhone camera on models that have the Camera Control, just click and hold it to do things like look up details about a restaurant or business;* have text translated, summarized, or read aloud; identify plants and animals;* search visually for objects around you; ask questions; and more. On iPhone 16e, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can access visual intelligence by customizing the Action button or Lock Screen, or opening Control Center. See Alternate options to using the Camera Control.

To learn more about the content on your iPhone screen across your apps, simply press the same buttons you use to take a screenshot. You can search visually, ask questions, and take action, like turning a flyer or invite into a calendar event.



Note: Apple Intelligence** is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.*** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Get information about a place

You can use visual intelligence to get details about a business in front of you, such as hours of operation, available services, and contact information. Depending on the business, you can also view reviews and ratings, make a reservation, or place an order for delivery. (Available in English only.)

1. Click and hold the Camera Control (on supported models), or use an alternate option.
2. Point your iPhone camera at the business in front of you.
3. Click the Camera Control again or tap the name of the business at the top of the screen, then depending on the business, do any of the following:

    - *View the hours of operation:* Tap Schedule.

- *Place an order for delivery:* Tap Order.
- *View the menu or services offered:* Tap Menu.
- *Make a reservation:* Tap Reserve.
- *Call the business, view its website, and more:* Tap ⋯.

4. Tap ⊗ or swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Get information about animals and plants

You can use visual intelligence to identify animals and plants. (Available in English only.)

1. Click and hold the Camera Control (on supported models), or use an alternate option.
2. Point your iPhone camera at an animal or plant in front of you.
3. Tap the result at the top of the screen.
4. Tap ⊗ to close the results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Learn more about the content on your iPhone screen

You can use visual intelligence to learn more about what you're viewing on your iPhone. You can search across apps, go straight to relevant websites, add an event to your calendar, and more.

To access visual intelligence for onscreen content, do the following:

1. Quickly press and release the side button and the volume up button at the same time to take a screenshot.
2. Use the visual intelligence tools at the bottom of the screen to do any of the following:
   - Tap 🖼 to search the web for similar items.
   - Swipe your finger on a specific item to highlight it and search for that particular item.
   - Tap 💬 to ask ChatGPT a question about what's onscreen.

- Tap Add to Calendar to create a calendar event.
- Tap the website to go to the relevant website.
- Tap Summarize for a short summary of the text.
- Tap Read Aloud to play audio of the text.
- Tap the plant or animal identified to learn more about it.

3. Tap ✕ to delete the screenshot or tap ✓ to save it.

Interact with text

You can use visual intelligence to interact with text around you in a variety of ways. For example, you can have visual intelligence summarize and translate text or read it aloud. Visual intelligence can also identify contact information in text such as phone numbers and email addresses, websites, and take action depending on the type of text.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control (on supported models), or use an alternate option.
2. Point your iPhone camera at text in front of you.
3. Click the Camera Control again or tap the circle at the bottom of the screen to analyze the text.
4. Depending on the text, do any of the following:
   - *Read a short summary of the text:* Tap Summarize at the bottom of the screen.
   - *Translate text:* Tap Translate at the bottom of the screen.
   - *Hear the text read aloud:* Tap Read Aloud at the bottom of the screen.
   - *Call a phone number, start an email, create a calendar event, or go to a website:* Tap the phone number, email address, date, or website at the bottom of the screen. Tap ⋯ to see all of the available options.
5. Tap ✕ to close the text results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Create a calendar event from details on a poster or flyer

You can use visual intelligence to create an event in the Calendar app when you see an event on a poster or flyer. (Available in English only.)

1. Click and hold the Camera Control (on supported models), or use an alternate option.
2. Point your iPhone camera at a poster or flyer that contains a date in the future, then tap Add to Calendar.
3. Tap Create Event.

   Tap Edit to modify the event details, then tap ✓.
4. The event is automatically added to your Calendar app.
5. Tap ✕, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Search for visually similar images

You can use visual intelligence to search for items similar to those around you.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control (on supported models), or use an alternate option.
2. Point your iPhone camera at an object in front of you.
3. Tap to search for similar images.
4. Tap ✕ to close the search results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Note: Subject to your search provider's terms of use and data privacy policies.

Alternate options to using the Camera Control

On iPhone 16e, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can choose any of the following options as an alternative to using the Camera Control for visual intelligence:

- *Action button*: Customize the Action button on the left side of your iPhone to use visual intelligence. See Customize the Action button.
- *Lock Screen*: Add a visual intelligence control to the bottom of your Lock Screen to use visual intelligence. See Edit your Lock Screen or create a new one.

- *Control Center*: Swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen to open Control Center, then tap  to use visual intelligence.

If you turn on the ChatGPT extension, you can use visual intelligence to ask ChatGPT for information about things around you. To turn on the extension and learn about availability, see Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence.

*Available in English only.

**Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

***Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Use the Camera Control on iPhone

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Previous
Translate messages, calls, and conversations

Next
Create original images with Image Playground

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence with Siri on iPhone

Siri is the intelligent assistant that's built into your iPhone to simplify and accelerate everyday tasks. With Apple Intelligence,* Siri has a new design, and is more natural and helpful. When Siri is activated, the Siri search field appears and remains until you close it, so you can continue what you're doing while you talk to Siri.

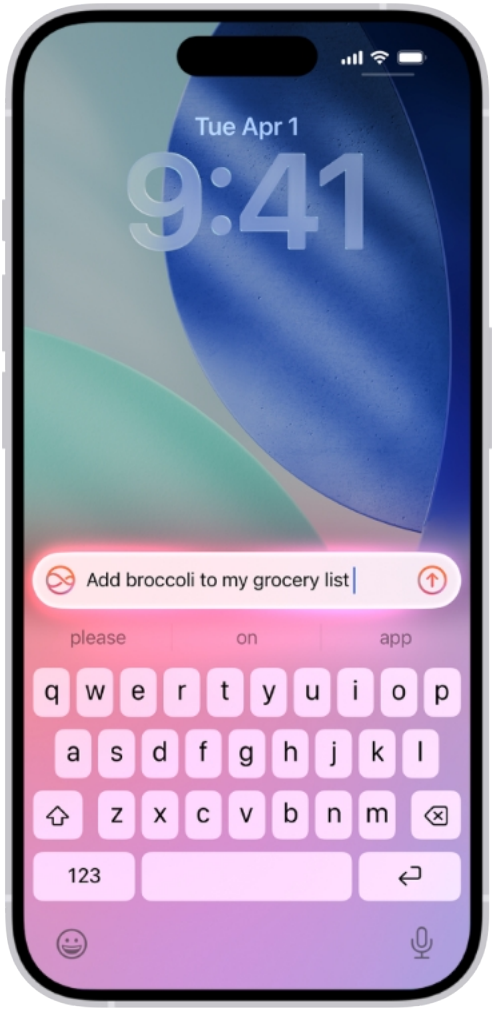
Siri also follows along if you stumble over your words while making a request. For example, you might say, "Siri, set an alarm—wait no, sorry, I meant a timer for 10 minutes—actually, let's make that 15." Siri understands what you meant and starts a timer for 15 minutes.

In addition to using your voice, you can type requests to Siri. You can also tap into Siri's product knowledge to get answers to questions about your Apple products.

And with your permission, Siri can tap into ChatGPT to get even more expertise. See Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on. Siri availability and features vary by language, and by country and region. For more information, see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Type to Siri



When you don’t want to speak out loud, you can type to Siri—for example, when you’re in a quiet place like a meeting or a library.

To quickly type to Siri, double-tap the bottom of the screen, then enter your request.

If Apple Intelligence is turned off or unavailable in your language or region, you can still type to Siri by changing accessibility settings. See Change Siri accessibility settings.

Make requests to Siri that maintain context

With Apple Intelligence, you can make requests to Siri that build on your previous requests, maintaining the context of what you just said.

For example, you can say or type something like “How are the San Francisco Giants doing this season?” Then ask, “When are they playing next?” And finally: “Add that to my calendar.”

1. Activate Siri, then make a request.
2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

Ask Siri questions about your Apple products

You can tap into Siri's product knowledge to get answers to questions about your iPhone—as well as other Apple products like iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Watch, AirPods, and HomePod.

Activate Siri, then, in a supported language, say or type something like:

- "Where do I name a group text on iPhone?"
- "I want to block someone from texting me on my iPhone. How do I do that?"
- "How do I make the text on my iPhone bigger?"
- "Tell me how to connect my AirPods to iPhone?"
- "How do I change what shows up in Control Center on my iPhone?"
- "How do I play sound from my TV through HomePod?"
- "How do I use Apple Pay on iPhone?"
- "How do I take a screenshot?"

Note: To learn more about Apple Intelligence and Privacy, see Apple Intelligence and privacy. To learn more about Privacy and Siri, see Siri, Dictation & Privacy.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

How to use Siri on iPhone

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Previous
Use Image Wand with Apple Intelligence

Next
Find the right words with Writing Tools

Table of Contents

Translate messages, calls, and conversations on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use Live Translation for text messages, audio and video calls, and face-to-face conversations across different languages. For example, when you're traveling abroad and need to communicate with people you meet, Live Translation can help bridge language barriers in real time. Live Translation is integrated into the Messages, FaceTime, and Phone apps. You can also use it with AirPods. Live Translation uses Apple-built models that run entirely on device, so your personal conversations stay private.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

For more information on Apple Intelligence and privacy, see Apple Intelligence and privacy.

Download languages

Before using Live Translation features in the Messages, FaceTime, and Phone apps, you need to download the input and output languages.

Translate texts in Messages

In the Messages app, you can use Live Translation—enabled by Apple Intelligence*—to see incoming texts in other languages, automatically translated to your preferred language.

Note: Live Translation in Messages is available in Chinese (Simplified), English (UK, U.S.), French (France), German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish (Spain).

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. When you receive a message in a different language, do any of the following:

- *Choose a different language:* Tap the contact or group icon at the top of the conversation, scroll down, then tap Translate From or Translate To.

- *View the original text:* At the bottom of the conversation, tap Translating [*language*], then choose to see the original text in addition to the translated text.

- *Turn off Live Translation for the conversation:* At the bottom of the conversation, tap Translating [*language*], then tap Stop Translation.

See translated captions in FaceTime

During a FaceTime call with someone who speaks a different language, you can use Live Translation—enabled by Apple Intelligence*—to see translated captions in your preferred language.

Note: Live Translation in FaceTime is available for one-on-one calls in English (UK, U.S.), French (France), German, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish (Spain).

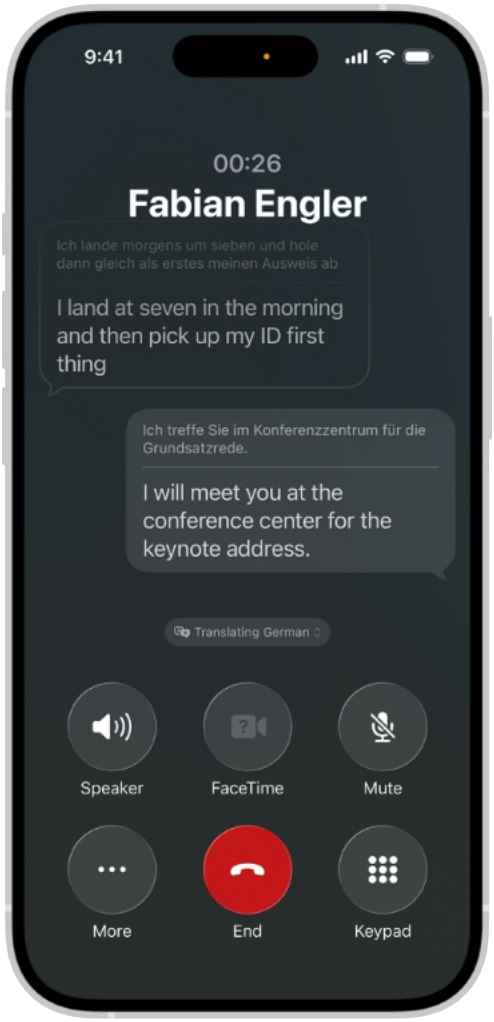
1. Go to the FaceTime app on your iPhone.
2. During a call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren’t visible).
3. Tap , then tap Live Captions.

   A Live Captions window appears, showing the automatically transcribed dialogue of the call near the top of the screen.

See translations during phone calls

During a call in the Phone app with someone who speaks a different language, you can use Live Translation—enabled by Apple Intelligence*—to follow along with spoken and text translation in your preferred language.

Note: Live Translation in Phone is available for one-on-one calls in English (UK, U.S.), French (France), German, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish (Spain).



1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. During a phone call, tap •••, then tap Live Translation.
3. Choose the language spoken by the caller and your preferred language.
4. Tap Start Translation.

Hear translations for nearby conversations using AirPods

When someone nearby speaks to you in a different language, you can use Live Translation with AirPods—enabled by Apple Intelligence*—to hear what they're saying translated into your preferred language in real time. The translated dialogue also appears on your iPhone.

Note: Live Translation with AirPods is supported on AirPods 4 (ANC), AirPods Pro 2, or AirPods Pro 3 paired with an iPhone 15 Pro or later when Apple Intelligence is turned on. AirPods must have the latest firmware. Live Translation isn't available in all languages or regions**; this feature isn't available in the EU. For more information on availability, see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

1. Go to the Translate app on your iPhone.

2. Wear your AirPods, and make sure they're connected to your device.

3. Tap Live.

See Listen to translations of in-person conversations in the AirPods User Guide.

---

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Use Apple Intelligence in Messages on iPhone

Use Apple Intelligence in Phone on iPhone

Previous
Intro to Apple Intelligence

Next
Use visual intelligence

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

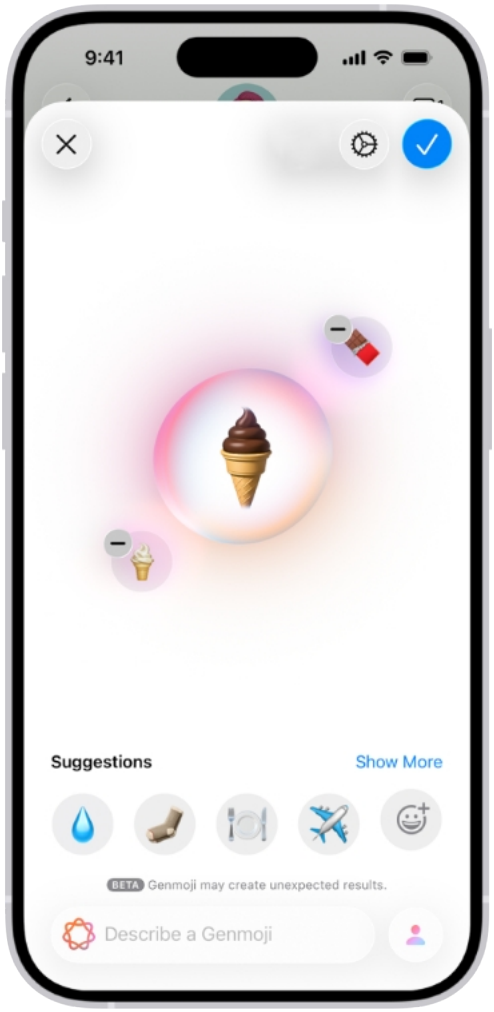
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Create your own emoji with Genmoji on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,* you can create custom emoji—called Genmoji. Simply describe what you want the Genmoji to look like, combine existing emoji with descriptions, or create one of friends and family based on their photos. You can add Genmoji to messages, share them as a sticker or Tapback, and more.



Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Create Genmoji

1. Tap a text field, then tap or to switch to the emoji keyboard.
2. Tap Genmoji at the top right of the onscreen keyboard.
3. Add what you want to your Genmoji. You can mix and match up to seven elements to create original Genmoji.

    - *Concepts:* Swipe left to browse concepts—themes, expressions, costumes, accessories, or places—then tap an option.
    - *Existing emoji or Genmoji:* Tap an emoji below Suggestions, or tap to choose a different emoji.
    - *A description:* Tap Describe a Genmoji, enter a description, then tap .
    - *A person:* Tap , then choose a person from your photo library or an emoji. To add a person or pet from Photos, you need to name them in the Photos app.

      If you already added a person and want to change how they look, tap , tap Edit, choose a new starting point, then tap . See Edit the starting point of a Genmoji.

      If you provide a description that's different from the image you use—for example, the name in Photos doesn't match the name in your description—your image is personalized based on the photo you selected rather than the text description.

      Tip: You can also create a Genmoji of a person based on an emoji. Tap , tap Edit, choose a skin tone and appearance, then tap .
4. Refine your image by doing any of the following:

    - *See variations:* Tap the preview bubble, then swipe left or right.
    - *Remove a concept:* Tap .
5. When you're happy with your Genmoji, tap .

    Genmoji you create are saved with your stickers.

You can also create a Genmoji in Image Playground. See Create original images with Image Playground.

Edit the starting point of a Genmoji

You can change the appearance of a person by choosing a different photo as a starting point or changing personal attributes like hairstyle, facial hair, and eyewear.

1. While creating a Genmoji based on a person, tap , then tap Edit.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Choose a different photo:* Tap Choose Other Photo, then tap a photo to choose it.
   - *Choose the hairstyle, facial hair, or eyewear:* Tap Customize Appearance, then choose options from the pop-up menus.

     Tip: If the starting point still isn't quite right, try entering a description in the "Additional details" field. For example, if you added prescription glasses, but they're the wrong color, you can enter "blue glasses" or "make the glasses yellow."
   - *Return to the original starting point:* Tap Reset Appearance.
3. When you're happy with your starting point, tap .

Delete Genmoji

1. Tap a text field, then tap or to switch to the emoji keyboard.
2. Swipe right or tap .
3. Touch and hold a Genmoji, then tap Delete.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

Create and send Memoji in Messages on iPhone

Previous
Create original images with Image Playground

Next
Use Image Wand with Apple Intelligence

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

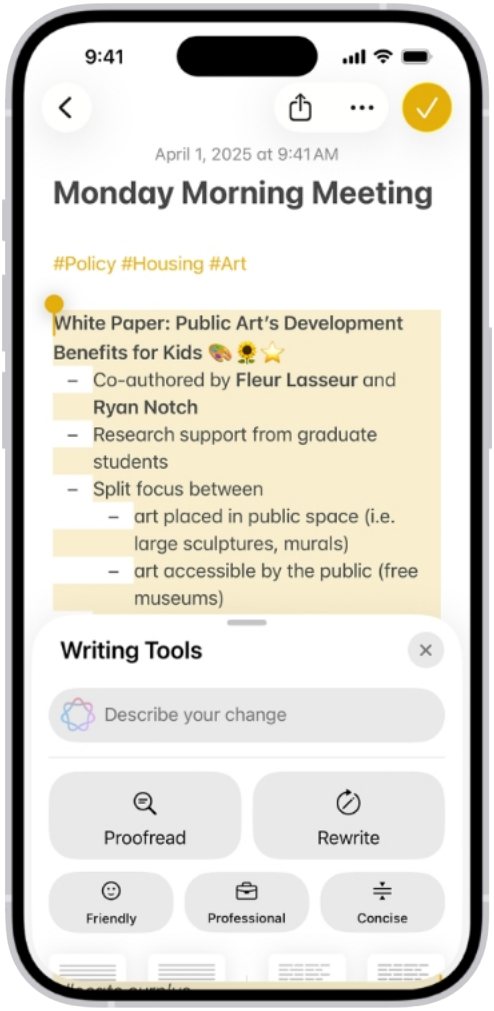
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use Writing Tools to proofread your work, create different versions of the same text to help you find the right wording and tone, and summarize selected text. Writing Tools are available in most places you write, including third-party apps and websites.



Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Proofread text

1. While writing, select the text you want to refine, then tap .

   Tip: You can also tap in the top-right corner of the keyboard.

2. Tap Proofread.

   Apple Intelligence checks your text for grammatical and spelling errors. All changes are underlined with a glowing line.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *View changes and an explanation for each change:* Tap and at the bottom.
   - *Discard a change:* Tap Use Original.

- *Switch between the updated and original versions of your text:* Tap Original.
- *Revert to the unedited version of your text:* Tap ✕.

4. When you're finished, tap ✓.

Rewrite text

After writing or reading text—like class notes or a blog post—you can rewrite it to ensure everything reads just right. You can also adjust the tone of your writing to suit the audience and task at hand.

1. Select the text you want to refine, then tap .

   Tip: You can also tap in the top-right corner of the keyboard.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Rewrite text:* Tap Rewrite.
   - *Rewrite the text in a particular tone:* Tap Friendly, Professional, or Concise.
   - *Rewrite the text based on a description:* Tap "Describe your change," then enter a description—"Make this more enthusiastic," for example.

   A rewritten version of your text appears inline. If you selected text in a read-only document, like a PDF, the text appears in the Writing Tools dialog.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Try the rewrite again:* Tap Rewrite.
   - *Switch between the updated and original versions of your text:* Tap Original.
   - *Undo a change:* Tap ↩ to show the previous change.
   - *Revert to the unedited version of your text:* Tap ✕.
   - *Copy the rewrite of read-only text:* Tap Copy in the Writing Tools dialog.

4. When you're finished, tap ✓.

Summarize and organize text

After writing or reading text, you can use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary. You can also have the summary presented as bulleted key points, or have the original text organized in a list or table.

1. Select the text you want to summarize or organize, then tap .

   Tip: You can also tap in the top-right corner of the keyboard.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Summarize text:* Tap Summarize.
   - *Summarize the key points of the text:* Tap Key Points.
   - *Organize the original text in a list:* Tap List.
   - *Organize the original text in a table:* Tap Table.

   A rewritten version of your text appears.

3. After viewing the summary, do any of the following:

   - *Copy the summary:* Tap Copy.
   - *Replace the original text with the summary:* Tap Replace.

     Note: Replace is not an option if the source text is not editable.
   - *Share the summary:* Tap Share, then choose a share option.

4. When you're finished, tap .

If you turn on the ChatGPT extension, you can compose text with Writing Tools. To turn on the extension and learn about availability, see Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Table of Contents

Use Image Wand with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use Image Wand in the Notes app to create images based on rough sketches you create. You can also select empty space to create an image based on words and images from the surrounding area.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Create an image from a rough sketch

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open an existing note or tap to start a new note.
3. Tap, then create a sketch.
4. Swipe left on the toolbar, then tap the Image Wand button.
5. Circle your sketch, enter a description, then tap.
6. Swipe through the created images to find one you like.
7. Tap Style to choose a different style—Animation, Illustration, or Sketch.

To refine your image, tap a description, then edit it. To save it, tap.

Create an image from surrounding content

Apple Intelligence can create images based on the words and images around it.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open a note, tap, then tap the Image Wand button.

3. Circle an area near the content you want to illustrate.

Re-create an existing image

When you create an image with Image Playground, all the elements used to create it are saved—sketches, descriptions, characters, and people. You can modify, add, or subtract elements in an existing created image.

1. Tap a created image.
2. Tap .

   The image shows the elements used to create it.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a new element:* Enter a description, then tap .
   - *Modify an element:* Tap a description, edit the text, then tap .
   - *Remove an element:* Tap .
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Create original images with Image Playground on iPhone

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

Previous
Create your own emoji with Genmoji

Next
Use Apple Intelligence with Siri

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence on your iPhone

With iOS 26, Apple Intelligence* is integrated across your apps and experiences to help you communicate, express yourself, and get things done more easily. It delivers intelligence that's useful and relevant for you, all while protecting your privacy.

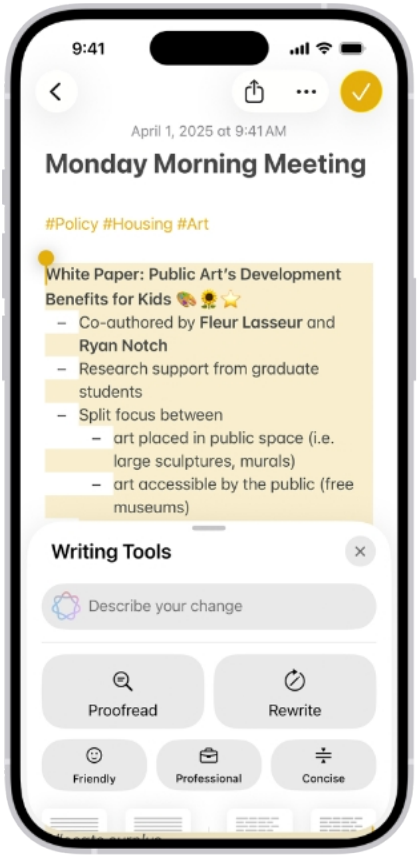
Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS.

Turn on Apple Intelligence

If Apple Intelligence is off, you can turn it on to access the latest features across iOS 26. Go to the Settings app, tap Apple Intelligence & Siri, then do one of the following:

- Tap the button next to Apple Intelligence.
- Tap Turn on Apple Intelligence.

  The option you see is based on the version of iOS you have and if you've previously set up Apple Intelligence.



Find the perfect words

Transform how you communicate using Writing Tools that can summarize text, proofread your work, and help you find the right wording and tone.

How to use Writing Tools ›

Create one-of-a-kind images and your own emoji

Produce fun, original images in moments with Image Playground or Image Wand. You can also make custom emoji from simple text descriptions with Genmoji.

How to create original images ›

How to create your own emoji ›

How to use Image Wand ›



Table of Contents

Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can change the voice Siri uses, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, retrain Siri with your voice, and more.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see Turn on and activate Siri. To change settings for Siri Suggestions, see Siri Suggestions.

Change how Siri responds

You can customize Siri by choosing the language and voice Siri uses. You can further customize Siri responses by choosing to mute Siri, show what Siri says onscreen, and show what you say onscreen.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then do any of the following:

   - *Change the voice for Siri:* Tap Voice, then choose a different variety or voice (not available for all languages).
   - *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.
   - *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.
   - *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.
   - *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Request.

Tip: To change how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking, go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri, then choose Default, Longer, or Longest below Siri Pause Time.

Change when Siri responds

You can customize when Siri responds to your voice.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then do any of the following:

   - *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice request "Siri" or "Hey Siri":* Tap Talk to Siri (or Talk & Type to Siri), then tap Off.
   - *Prevent access to Siri when iPhone is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.

You can also make requests by typing. See Type instead of speaking to Siri.

Retrain Siri with your voice

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri).
3. Tap Talk to Siri, then tap Off.
4. Turn on "Siri" or "Hey Siri" again, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Change Siri settings for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages

You can perform tasks for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages with just your voice. With Siri, you can hang up calls and skip the confirmation step when sending messages. You can enable these features in Settings.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then do any of the following:

   - *Hang up Phone and FaceTime calls:* Tap Call Hang Up, then turn on Call Hang Up. For more information, see End calls with Siri.
   - *Send messages without confirmation:* Tap Messaging with Siri, then turn on Automatically Send Messages. See Send and reply to messages.

On supported headphones, Siri can also announce calls, messages, and more.

Change which apps appear in search

You can change which apps appear when you search with Siri.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then scroll down and select an app.
3. Turn settings on or off.

To change Siri accessibility settings, see Change Siri accessibility settings.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article If Siri isn't working on your iPhone.

See also

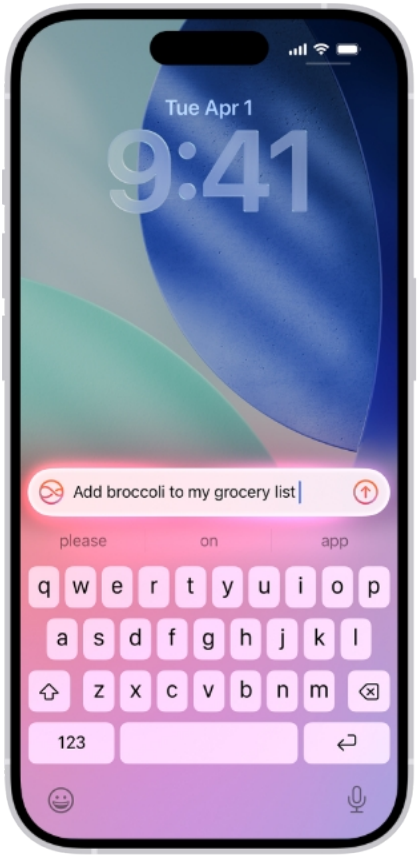
Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Previous
Turn Siri Suggestions on or off

Next
Intro to Apple Intelligence

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies



Do more with Siri

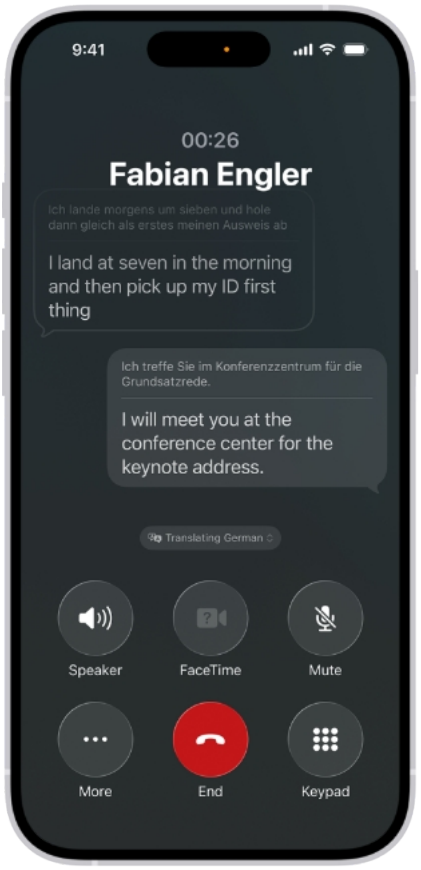
Type requests to Siri, get answers to questions about your Apple products, and more.

How to use Apple Intelligence with Siri ›

Communicate across languages in real time

With Live Translation, you can automatically translate messages in the Messages app, display live translated captions in FaceTime, and get spoken translations for calls in the Phone app.

Translate messages, calls, and conversations ›





Use visual intelligence

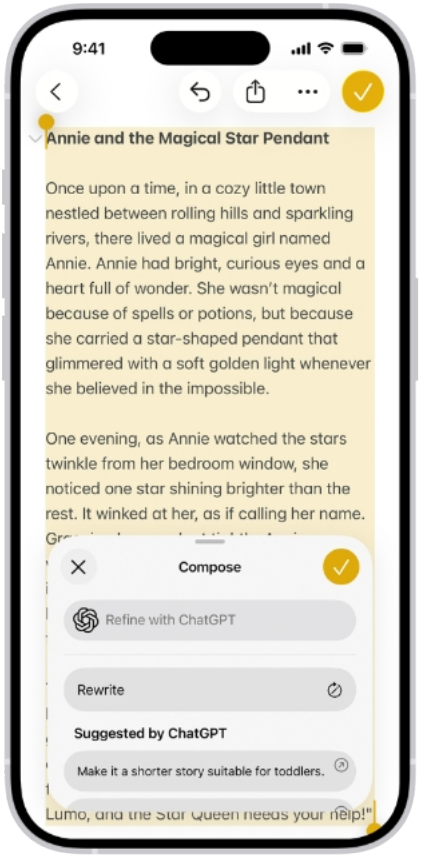
Use visual intelligence to quickly learn more about what's in front of you. Just click and hold the Camera Control or Action button to search visually for objects around you, ask questions, and take action like creating a calendar event from a poster, translating a restaurant menu, and more. You can also access visual intelligence for content on your screen across your apps, simply by taking a screenshot.

Use visual intelligence ›

Tap into ChatGPT

Access ChatGPT within Apple Intelligence experiences, and tap into even more expertise when you use Siri, Writing Tools, Image Playground, and more.

How to use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence ›



Use Apple Intelligence with apps



Mail

View your most urgent emails, craft quick email responses with Smart Reply, and summarize long emails.

Use Apple Intelligence in Mail



Messages

See summaries of unread conversations, send original images and customize backgrounds with Image Playground, craft fast responses with Smart Reply, and more.

Use Apple Intelligence in Messages

Notes

After you record audio, use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary of the transcript.

Use Apple Intelligence in Notes



Phone

Generate a summary of a phone call you record, and view voicemail summaries.

Use Apple Intelligence in Phone



Photos

Find photos with natural-language search, create memory movies, and remove distracting objects with Clean Up.

Use Apple Intelligence in Photos

Reminders

Use Apple Intelligence to get suggested reminders, and automatically categorize related reminders into sections within a list.

Use Apple Intelligence in Reminders



Safari

Use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary of a webpage in the Safari app.

Get webpage summaries with Apple Intelligence



Shortcuts

Intelligent actions in Shortcuts can summarize text, create images, and tap directly into Apple Intelligence models.

Use Apple Intelligence in Shortcuts



And more...

Check the Apple Intelligence website for more information about features, supported devices, and languages.

Turn off Apple Intelligence

Go to the Settings app  , tap Apple Intelligence & Siri, then tap the button next to Apple Intelligence.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models, and outputs may be inaccurate, unexpected, or offensive. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

Previous
Change Siri settings

Next
Translate messages, calls, and conversations

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Summarize notifications and reduce interruptions with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

With its deep understanding of language, Apple Intelligence* can help condense the information most important to you. Notifications are summarized so you can scan them for key details, such as when a group chat is particularly active. Your iPhone can also determine which notifications have priority over others. And the Reduce Interruptions Focus shows you only the notifications that might need immediate attention, like a text about an early pickup from daycare.



Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest

version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Customize notification summaries

Your iPhone can summarize long or stacked notifications, making them easier to understand at a glance.

1. Go to Settings, then tap Notifications.
2. Tap Summarize Notifications, turn on Summarize Notifications, then tap Choose Notifications to Summarize.
3. Tap the notifications you want to summarize, then tap Summarize Selected Notifications.

To change which notifications you want to summarize, tap the button next to an app.

Turn notification summaries on or off

1. Go to Settings, then tap Notifications.
2. Tap Summarize Notifications, then turn Summarize Notifications on or off.

Turn priority notifications on

Your iPhone can determine which notifications have priority over others. Priority notifications appear at the top of the stack, so you can catch up on what you may have missed.

1. Go to Settings, then tap Notifications.
2. Tap Prioritize Notifications, then turn Prioritize Notifications on.

   To turn off priority notifications, turn Prioritize Notifications off.

To change which notifications you want to prioritize, tap the button next to an app.

You can also change settings when you receive a priority notification on the Lock Screen. When a priority notification appears, do one of the following:

- *Turn off Priority Notifications for a specific app:* Swipe left, tap Options, then tap Turn Off All [*app*] Notifications.

- *Turn off all Priority Notifications:* Swipe left, tap Options, then tap Turn Off Prioritization.

Use the Reduce Interruptions Focus

The Reduce Interruptions Focus understands the content of your notifications and shows you the most important ones, but silences notifications that are less important.

You can customize a Reduced Interruptions Focus.

1. Go to Settings > Focus.
2. Tap + at the top right, then tap Reduce Interruptions.
3. Tap Customize Focus, then tap People or Apps.
4. Choose the people and apps to allow notifications from.

Note: When you turn on Intelligent Breakthrough & Silencing for any Focus, any notifications specifically allowed or silenced will always be allowed or silenced.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Change notification settings on iPhone

Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

Previous
Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence

Next
Use Apple Intelligence in Mail

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence in Phone on iPhone

You can use Apple Intelligence* to generate a summary of phone and FaceTime audio calls you make on your iPhone. If you record a phone call on your iPhone, you can also view those summaries in the Notes app. You can copy and share summaries.

You can also view summaries of voicemails that appear inline with missed calls, so you can instantly see who reached out and what they said.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

View a summary of a phone call

After you record a call in the Phone app or record a FaceTime audio call, you can see a summary of the recording.

Note: Call recording isn't available in all countries or regions. Check the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website for more information.

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Record a call.

   Your recording is saved in the Notes app.
3. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
4. Open the recording of your call (in the Call Recordings folder).
5. Tap the recording, then tap Summary.

To copy or share a summary, tap at the top of the summary, then tap Copy Summary or Share Summary.

View voicemail summaries

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calls, tap , then tap Voicemail.
3. Look below the Voicemail list to see a summary of unread voicemails.

To turn off voicemail summaries, turn off Summarize Notifications for FaceTime and Phone. See Customize notification summaries.

---

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Use Apple Intelligence in Notes on iPhone

Previous
Use Apple Intelligence in Notes

Next
Use Apple Intelligence in Photos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time on iPhone

You can turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions in Screen Time to restrict access to certain Apple Intelligence* features like Writing Tools, image creation features, and intelligence extensions on supported devices.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Block access to Writing Tools

1. Go to Settings, then tap Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap Intelligence & Siri, tap Writing Tools, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

Block access to image creation features

You can restrict access to image creation features like Image Playground, Genmoji, and Image Wand.

1. Go to Settings, then tap Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap Intelligence & Siri, tap Image Creation, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

Block access to Intelligence Extensions

You can restrict access to third-party AI provider extensions—like ChatGPT.

1. Go to Settings, then tap Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap Intelligence & Siri, tap Intelligence Extensions, then tap Allow or Don’t Allow.

---

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases on iPhone

Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPhone

Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Create original images with Image Playground on iPhone

Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Previous
Apple Intelligence and privacy

Next
Contact emergency services

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence in Notes on iPhone

You can record audio in Notes—like a class lecture or an important meeting—then use Apple Intelligence* to generate a summary of the transcript, so you can get to the most important information at a glance. You can also copy and share summaries.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

View a summary of an audio recording

After you record an audio note in the Notes app, you can see a summary of the recording. In some countries and regions, you can record a phone call in the Phone app when you're talking to one other person. You can also use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary of a phone call you record in the Phone app.

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open a note with a recording.
3. Tap the recording, then tap Summary.

Tip: You can also summarize an audio recording in Voice Memos using Writing Tools. Tap a recording, tap •••, tap View Transcript, then follow the steps to summarize and organize text.

Copy or share a summary

1. Go to the Notes app on your iPhone.
2. Open a note with a recording.
3. Tap the recording, then tap Summary.

4. Tap ⋯ at the top of the summary, then tap Copy Summary or Share Summary.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Get started with Notes on iPhone

Use Apple Intelligence in Phone on iPhone

Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Previous
Use Apple Intelligence in Messages

Next
Use Apple Intelligence in Phone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence in Safari on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,* you can generate summaries of webpages in the Safari app.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Summarize a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Tap, then tap Show Reader.
3. Tap Summarize at the top of the page.

   To return to the normal view, tap, then tap Hide Reader.

You can also use Writing Tools to summarize webpages. See Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence in Messages on iPhone

Apple Intelligence* allows you to get through your messages even faster with summaries that show you the key points of each conversation, and Smart Reply, which helps you quickly craft a response.

You can also use Apple Intelligence to personalize your conversations by doing any of the following:

- Create original backgrounds
- Create and send original images
- Create your own emoji with Genmoji

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

View message summaries

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Look under a conversation in the Messages list to see a summary of unread messages in that conversation.

Use Smart Reply in Messages

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, tap the text field, then tap a suggested reply in the keyboard.

   Apple Intelligence drafts a reply in the text field. To refine your reply, see Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone.

3. When you're ready to send your reply, tap .

Turn message summaries on or off

When you turn on Apple Intelligence, summaries automatically appear under your message conversations. You can turn off summaries if you want to see the most recent message in each conversation instead.

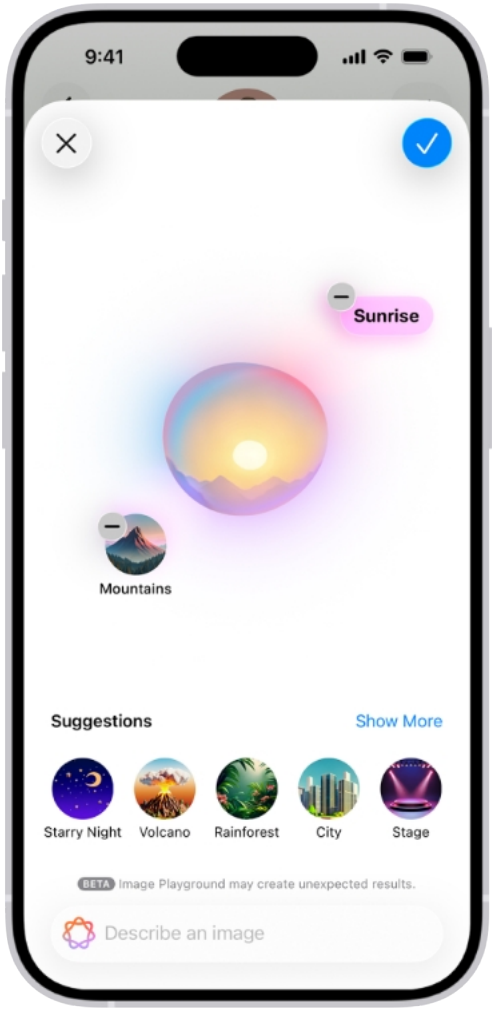
1. Go to Settings > Apps > Messages.
2. Turn Summarize Messages on or off.

Get suggested polls

You can start a poll in any iMessage conversation—for example, to decide what a group wants to eat, which movie to see, or where to travel. Apple Intelligence can suggest a poll when it detects different options in a conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Start a new group message or open a group conversation to discuss different options.
3. Click Create a Poll when it appears.

Create and edit original backgrounds with Image Playground



You can use Image Playground to create backgrounds for your Messages conversations.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation where you want to add a photo to the background.
3. Tap the name of the person or group at the top of the conversation, then tap Backgrounds.
4. Tap Playground, then do any of the following:

    - *Add a concept:* Swipe left to browse concepts—themes, expressions, costumes, accessories, or places—then tap an option.
    - *Add a description:* Tap “Describe an image,” enter a description, then tap .
    - *Remove a concept:* Tap .
5. When you’re happy with your image, tap .

    Tip: Customize your background even more by choosing a filter for your image—just swipe left to Black & White, Duotone, or Color Wash. You can also pinch the image in and out to crop it.

6. Tap ✓ to add the background to your conversation.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Send and reply to messages on iPhone

Add backgrounds in Messages on iPhone

Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Previous
Use Apple Intelligence in Mail

Next
Use Apple Intelligence in Notes

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence in Shortcuts on iPhone

You can create more powerful shortcuts than ever with Apple Intelligence.* Intelligent actions in shortcuts can summarize text, create images, or tap directly into Apple Intelligence or Extension models to provide responses that feed into your shortcut.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Find Apple Intelligence shortcuts

If you're looking for new shortcuts to add to your collection, or if you want to see what's possible and how particular Apple Intelligence shortcuts are built, check out the Apple Intelligence category in the Shortcuts Gallery.

1. Go to the Shortcuts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Gallery, then tap + on a shortcut in the Apple Intelligence category to add it to your collection.

Use a model to build custom shortcuts

You can create your own custom shortcuts that use an Apple Intelligence model—either on-device or Private Cloud Compute—or ChatGPT to handle simple or complex requests in your shortcuts. You can use a model to provide input to an action, parse the output of an action, and more.

You can choose from three models:

- *On-Device:* Uses the on-device Apple Intelligence model to handle simple requests without the need for a network connection.
- *Private Cloud Compute:* Uses Apple's Private Cloud Compute to handle complex requests while protecting your privacy.
- *Extension Model:* Uses ChatGPT to handle your requests.

To get started, try out something similar to the following:

1. Go to the Shortcuts app on your iPhone.
2. Tap +.

   Tip: Tap the Apple Intelligence category, then choose a specific intelligent action.
3. Search for an action, then tap it to add it to your shortcut.

   For example, search for Get Current Weather, then tap it. If Shortcuts prompts you for access to your location, tap Allow Access.
4. Search for the Use Model action, then choose a model.

   For example, choose On-Device.
5. In the text field below "Use Model," enter your prompt.

   For example, enter "Write a concise, funny summary of today's weather with emoji."

   If you'd like to be able to interact with the model to further refine your request, tap the arrow next to "Use model," then tap the Follow Up checkbox.
6. To add another action, search for it, then tap it to add it.

   For example, search Show Content, tap it, then select Response.
7. To test your new shortcut, tap ▶.

Your shortcut is saved automatically. To learn about the different ways you can run your shortcut, see Launch a shortcut from another app on iPhone or iPad.

Learn more about input, Follow Up, and output

Here are some details about using the Use Model action:

- The text input into models can include variables, outputs from previous actions, calendar events, reminders, photos, and more.
- If you select Follow Up, when you run the shortcut, it shows you the model's response and allows you to refine your input before the final response is passed to the next action. For example, you could make additional requests or provide more information.
- The output responses are automatically optimized for the actions they're passed to. You can also specify how the response is output: When you add the Use Model action, click the Output pop-up menu and choose an option.

---

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Previous
Use Apple Intelligence in Safari

Next
Apple Intelligence and privacy

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

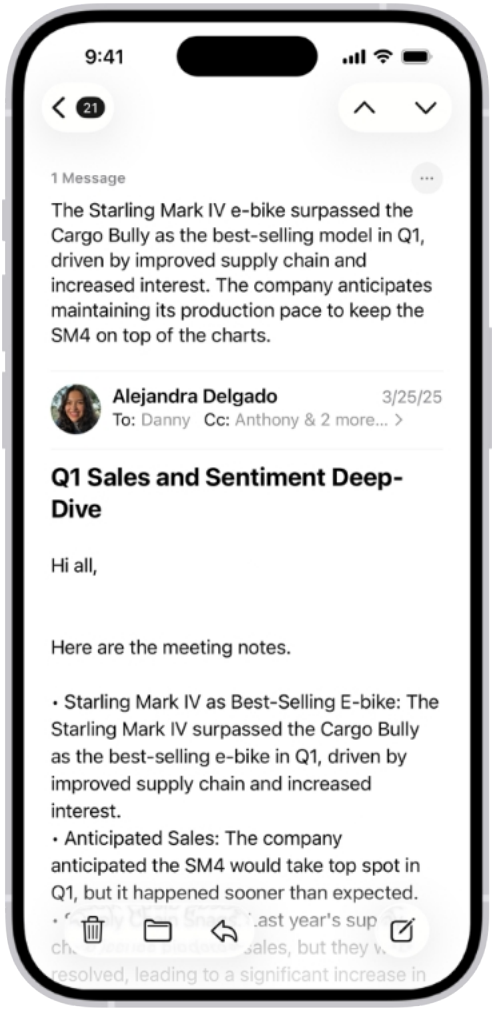
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence in Mail on iPhone

Apple Intelligence* makes it easier than ever to stay on top of your email. In addition to using Writing Tools to craft your outgoing messages, you can use Priority Messages to quickly view your most urgent emails, like a same-day dinner invitation or boarding pass. Smart Reply helps you compose a fast email response to make sure you covered everything. You can also view summaries that automatically appear in your inbox, and generate summaries of complex emails and long email threads to view all the pertinent details.



Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

View Priority Messages in your inbox

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your inbox, tap ···, then tap Show Priority.

   Time-sensitive emails appear at the top of your inbox.

   Note: Priority Messages appear in the Primary category or in List View.

Use Smart Reply in Mail

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.
2. Tap an email, tap ↩, then tap Reply.
3. In the keyboard, tap a suggested reply.

   Apple Intelligence drafts a reply in the email. To refine your reply, see Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone.
4. When you're ready to send your reply, tap ↑.

Summarize your email

Apple Intelligence can help you summarize a complex email, or catch up on a long email thread in seconds.

1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.

   A short summary automatically appears under each email in your inbox.
2. Tap an email, then tap Summarize.

A summary appears at the top of the screen. If the message is part of an email thread, the contents of the thread are summarized.

Turn email summary previews on or off

When you turn on Apple Intelligence, summaries automatically appear under your emails. You can turn off summaries if you want to see the first lines of the most recent message instead.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Turn Summarize Message Previews on or off.

---

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Check your email in Mail on iPhone

Automatically categorize incoming emails in Mail on iPhone

Previous
Summarize notifications and reduce interruptions

Next
Use Apple Intelligence in Messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

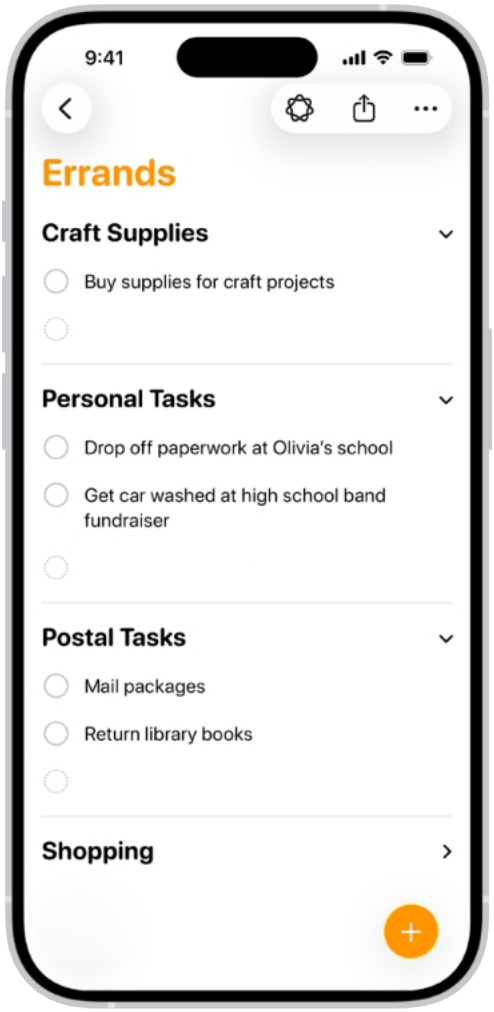
UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence in Reminders on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,* you can get suggested reminders from text in other apps—like grocery items from an online recipe in Safari or your action items from an email message in Mail. The Reminders app can also automatically categorize related reminders into sections within a list.



Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Get suggested reminders

1. Open the information you want added to a list—for example, a recipe in Safari or meeting notes in Notes.
2. Tap , then tap Reminders.

   Tip: You can also select specific text or bullets you want Apple Intelligence to review. Select text, tap Share, then tap Reminders.

   Suggested reminders may appear below the text you selected.
3. To change which list the reminders are added to, tap the pop-up menu at the top of the screen, then choose a list.
4. Tap next to a suggestion to add it to your list, or tap Include All to add all suggestions.
5. Tap .

   Your reminders are added to the list you chose.

Turn Auto-Categorize on or off

With Auto-Categorize, Apple Intelligence automatically sorts related reminders into sections within a list.

1. Go to the Reminders app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a list.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *Turn Auto-Categorize on:* Tap , then tap Auto-Categorize.
   - *Turn Auto-Categorize off:* Tap , tap Turn Off, then choose whether to keep or remove the sections.

     Note: Removing the sections doesn't delete any reminders.

If you don't like how the sections are categorized, try turning off Auto-Categorize and removing the sections, then turning it back on. This resets your section titles and organization within a list.

---

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Create reminders on iPhone

Previous
Use Apple Intelligence in Photos

Next
Use Apple Intelligence in Safari

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Apple Intelligence and privacy on iPhone

Apple Intelligence* delivers intelligence that is relevant for you and grounded in your personal context while protecting your privacy with a groundbreaking step forward for privacy in AI. The cornerstone of Apple Intelligence is on-device processing, so it is aware of your personal information without collecting your personal information.

For more complex requests that require more computational capacity, Apple Intelligence can use Private Cloud Compute, which extends the privacy and security of your Apple products like iPhone into the cloud to unlock even more intelligence. Private Cloud Compute uses larger, server-based models powered by Apple silicon. Your data is never stored. It is only used to fulfill your requests. And independent privacy and security researchers can verify this privacy promise at any time.

Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

About Private Cloud Compute

When a user makes a request, Apple Intelligence analyzes whether it can be processed on device. For more complex requests, it can draw on Private Cloud Compute, which extends the privacy and security of your iPhone into the cloud. With Private Cloud Compute, only the data that is relevant to your request is processed on Apple silicon servers, before being removed. When requests are routed to Private Cloud Compute, data is not stored or made accessible to Apple, and is only used to fulfill the user's requests. Independent privacy and security researchers can inspect the code that runs on Apple silicon servers that enable Private Cloud Compute to verify this privacy promise at any time.

The Apple silicon servers that form the foundation of Private Cloud Compute provide unprecedented cloud security. This starts with the Secure Enclave, which protects critical encryption keys on the server just as it does on a user's iPhone, while Secure Boot ensures the OS running on the server is signed and verified, just like in iOS. Trusted Execution Monitor makes sure only signed and verified code runs, and attestation enables a user's device to securely verify the identity and configuration of a Private Cloud

Compute cluster before sending a request. And to verify Apple's privacy promise, independent experts can inspect the software that runs on Private Cloud Compute servers.

Note: To learn more, go to Private Cloud Compute: A new frontier for AI privacy in the cloud.

Create an Apple Intelligence Report

You can generate a report of requests your iPhone has sent to Private Cloud Compute.

1. Go to Settings, then tap Privacy & Security.
2. Tap Apple Intelligence Report, then choose a report duration for the last 15 minutes (default) or last 7 days. Choose off to disable the report.

   Note: The report may be empty if there haven't been any Private Cloud Compute requests since you changed the duration.
3. Tap Export Activity, choose a place to store the file, then tap Export.

   The report is saved as a file named Apple_Intelligence_Report.json.
4. Open the file with a text reader.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

Previous
Use Apple Intelligence in Shortcuts

Next
Block access to Apple Intelligence features

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

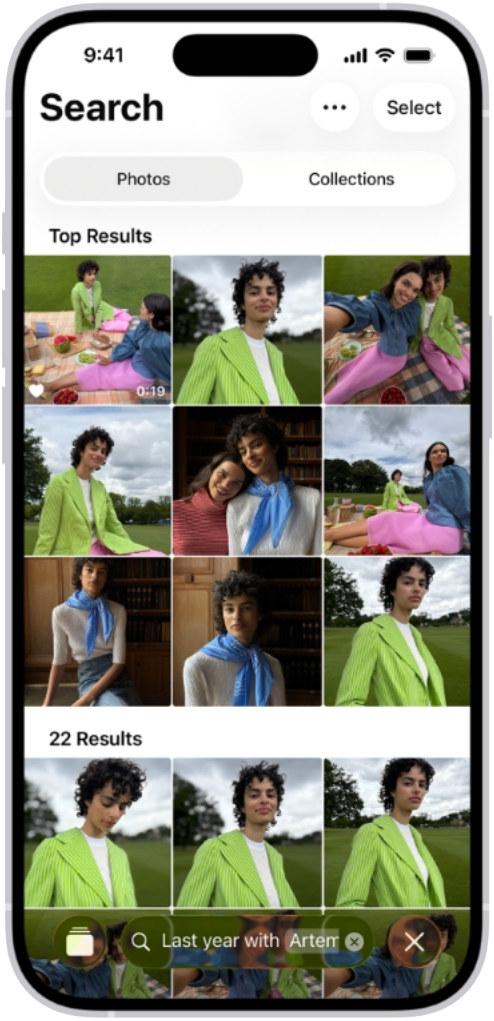
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Apple Intelligence in Photos on iPhone

With Apple Intelligence,* you can find just about anything in the photos and videos you capture, create memory movies of stories you want to see, and focus on the most important parts of your photos by removing distracting objects.



Note: Apple Intelligence is not available on all iPhone models or in all languages or regions.** To access the most recent available features, make sure you're using the latest version of iOS and have Apple Intelligence turned on.

Search for specific photos and videos with Apple Intelligence

Apple Intelligence makes it even easier to find a specific photo or a key moment in a video—just describe what you want to find.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then enter a description using natural language—"Maya skateboarding in a tie-dye shirt," or "Sadie cartwheeling on the grass," for example.

   Note: For more information on naming people and pets in photos, see Find and name people and pets in Photos.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *See all search results:* Tap See All.
   - *Select specific search results:* Tap Select, then select the photos and videos you want to share or add to an album.
   - *Sort search results:* Tap More, then tap Sort by Recently Added or Sort by Date Captured.
   - *Filter search results:* Tap More, tap Filter, then tap an option—like Favorites or Edited.
4. When you're finished, tap Close.

Create a memory movie

You can create a custom memory movie of a story you want to see, right in Photos. Just type a description, and Apple Intelligence finds the best photos and videos, crafts a storyline with unique chapters and a narrative arc, and sets it to music.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap Memories, then tap Create.
3. Enter a description of the movie you want to create from your library, then tap Done.

Remove distractions from your photos

You can use the Clean Up tool to remove distracting objects in the background of a photo.

Note: Clean Up is not available in all languages or regions. For more information, see the Apple Support article Requirements to use Clean Up in Photos.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, tap , then tap Clean Up.

   Note: After you tap Clean Up, some items may be highlighted automatically so you can quickly tap to remove them.
3. Tap, brush, or circle what you want to remove.

   Use two fingers to pinch to zoom or pan the image.

   Note: If you brush over a person's face, the face may become blurred with a pixelated effect.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

---

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

Previous
Use Apple Intelligence in Phone

Next
Use Apple Intelligence in Reminders

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

With Family Sharing, the organizer, or another adult designated as parent/guardian, can set up parental controls for children in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to manage how much time your children spend in apps and on websites, what content they can access, and who they can communicate with. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, which requires parents to approve eligible purchases and free downloads for their children.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Note: When you set up a device for a child under 18, Communication Safety and web content limits are turned on by default and can later be managed in Screen Time settings. (This age varies by country or region.)

Customize parental controls during setup

When you add a child to your Family Sharing group or set up a device for a child, you can customize parental controls from the start. You can change those settings at any time.

Follow the onscreen instructions during setup to add any of the following:

- Age-related restrictions for content in apps, books, TV shows, and movies
- Downtime and limits for specific apps
- Restrictions for who your child can communicate with
- Approvals for purchases or free downloads

See the Apple Support article Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Receive warnings about sensitive content

Screen Time can check whether you or other family members have received or sent any sexually explicit photos or videos in certain apps like Messages, AirDrop, and FaceTime. See Turn on or off checking for sensitive images and videos in communications on a family member's iPhone.

You can also block sensitive content and set restrictions on purchases. See Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases.

Set up Screen Time for a child

Screen Time allows you to manage settings for downtime, app use, contacts, content ratings, and more. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article System Requirements for iCloud.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then select the child for whom you want to set up Screen Time.
3. Tap Screen Time, tap Continue, then do any of the following:

    - *Change restrictions for web content:* Tap Web Content, then select an option.
    - *Set a rating for using apps:* Tap Apps, then choose an age-appropriate rating for allowing app use (for example, Don't Allow, 4+, 9+) or choose Don't Allow to block the app regardless of age.
    - *Allow or block media content:* Tap a type of media content, then choose an age-appropriate rating for it.
4. Continue following the onscreen instructions to set up Screen Time options.

    For information about Screen Time, see Set up Screen Time for a family member.

    To learn more about the different content and privacy restrictions, see the Apple Support article Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings > Screen Time or in Messages.

Turn on Ask to Buy

When you set up Ask to Buy, a child's purchases must be approved by the family organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then select the child for whom you want to set up Ask to Buy.
3. Tap Ask To Buy, then tap Turn on Ask to Buy.

For information on how to respond to Ask to Buy requests, see the Apple Support article Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy.

Note: Age restrictions for Ask to Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask to Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's on by default.

Respond to a child's App Exception request

If you have Ask to Buy and App Restrictions set up, your child can ask for an exception to download an app that's above the app restrictions set for them.

For information on App Restrictions, see Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone.

- *Respond using the notification or Messages:* In the notification or message with your child (or your child and another parent/guardian), tap Approve or Deny (or click the Options pop-up menu to choose an option).
- *Respond directly on their device:* On the child's device, go to the App Store, then click or tap the relevant app. Click or tap "approve in person," then enter your Apple Account and password.

You can view and manage a list of your child's previously approved App Exceptions by going to Settings > Screen Time > [*your child's name*] > Content & Privacy Restrictions > App Store, Media, Web, & Games > Apps.

You can also set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing (U.S. only).

See also

Apple Support article: If you forgot your Screen Time passcode

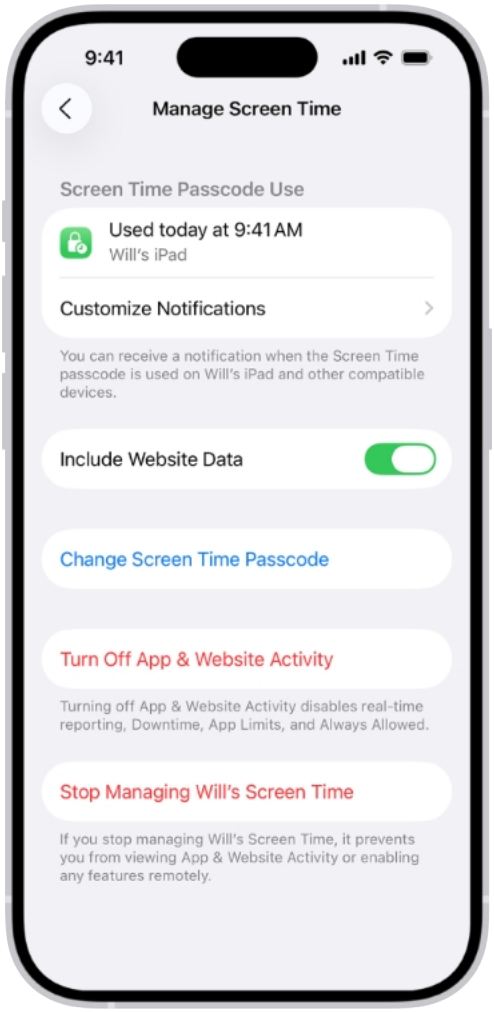
Apple Support article: If Ask to Buy isn't working

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Table of Contents

Create, manage, and keep track of a Screen Time passcode on iPhone

You can create a passcode that must be entered before changing Screen Time settings you selected for yourself or a family member under 18 (age varies by country or region). Once you set a passcode for yourself or a family member, you can change or remove it later in Settings. You can also get notifications if your family member's passcode is used.



Create a Screen Time passcode

When you set up a Screen Time passcode, it must be entered before you can change the settings you've chosen for yourself or a family member.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then do one of the following:

   - *Set up a passcode for yourself:* Scroll down, then tap Lock Screen Time Settings.
   - *Set up a passcode for a family member:* Scroll down, then select a family member from your Family Sharing group. Scroll down, tap Manage Screen Time, then tap Lock Screen Time Settings.

     If you don't see your Family Sharing group, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account and have Family Sharing set up. See Sign in to your Apple Account and Set up Family Sharing on iPhone.
3. Enter a four-digit passcode, then enter the passcode again to verify it.

   Note: After setting a passcode for yourself, you can also set up Screen Time Passcode Recovery. If you set this feature up, you can use your Apple Account to reset your Screen Time passcode if you ever forget it.

Change a Screen Time passcode

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then do one of the following:

   - *Change a passcode for yourself:* Scroll down, tap Change Screen Time Passcode, then select Change Screen Time Passcode.
   - *Change a passcode for a family member:* Scroll down, then select a family member from your Family Sharing group. Scroll down, tap Manage Screen Time, tap Change Screen Time Passcode, then select Change Screen Time Passcode.

     If you don't see your Family Sharing group, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account and have Family Sharing set up. See Sign in to your Apple Account and Set up Family Sharing on iPhone.
3. Enter your current passcode (if changing a passcode for yourself) or your six-digit passcode for your iPhone (if changing a passcode for a family member).
4. Enter a new four-digit passcode, then enter the new passcode again to verify it.

Remove a Screen Time passcode

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then do one of the following:

   - *Remove a passcode for yourself:* Scroll down, tap Change Screen Time Passcode, then select Turn Off Screen Time Passcode.

   - *Remove a passcode for a family member:* Scroll down, then select a family member from your Family Sharing group. Scroll down, tap Manage Screen Time, tap Change Screen Time Passcode, then select Turn Off Screen Time Passcode.

     If you don't see your Family Sharing group, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account and have Family Sharing set up. See Sign in to your Apple Account and Set up Family Sharing on iPhone.

3. Enter your current passcode (if changing a passcode for yourself) or your six-digit passcode for your iPhone (if changing a passcode for a family member).

Check the last time a Screen Time passcode was used

If you set up a Screen Time passcode for a family member, you can also view when the passcode was last used, and on which device.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, scroll down, then choose a family member from your Family Sharing group.

   If you don't see your Family Sharing group, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account and have Family Sharing set up. See Sign in to your Apple Account and Set up Family Sharing on iPhone.

3. Scroll down, then tap Manage Screen Time.

   If a child's Screen Time passcode is used on their device, the parent/guardian will receive a notification. Screen Time Passcode Use notifications can be turned off by going to Settings > Screen Time > [*the child's name*] > Manage Screen Time > Customize Notifications > Turn off Screen Time Passcode.

   Note: Screen Time Passcode Use will only appear on an iPhone with iOS 18.5 or later when the family member's passcode is used on a device with iOS 18.5, iPadOS 18.5, macOS 15.5, or later.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPhone

With Family Sharing, the organizer can set up purchase sharing to share App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

The organizer adds a payment method that's shared with the family; when a family member makes a purchase, the organizer is billed. The purchased item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.

The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing.

Turn on purchase sharing

When the family organizer turns on purchase sharing, they pay for family members' purchases and must have a valid payment method on file.

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Access shared content

When purchase sharing is turned on, you can download eligible apps and content that your family members buy. See any of the following Apple Support articles:

- How to download apps and content that your family members purchased
- What types of content can I share with my family?
- If you can't find your family's shared content

Turn off purchase sharing

If you're the family organizer, you can turn off purchase sharing. Family Sharing members won't see your purchases, but you can still see items other members have shared with you.

Note: Even though your items aren't shared, any purchases you make still use the shared family payment method.

1. Go to Settings > Family > Purchase Sharing.
2. Tap [*your name*], then turn off Share Purchases.

   If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books.

You can also share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members.

See also

Manage App Store purchases, settings, and restrictions

Apple Support article: Remove a payment method from your Apple Account

Previous
Share subscriptions

Next
Share locations with family and locate lost devices

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone

With Family Sharing, you can share your location with members of your Family Sharing group and help them find lost devices. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in Family Sharing settings, the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family, including any new members added later. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.

Share your location with family members

When you share locations with your family, they can see your location in Find My. You can also get notified when family members change their locations—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

1. Go to Settings > Family > Location Sharing.
2. Turn on Location Sharing for the family member you want to share your location with.

   You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

   You can stop sharing your location with any family member at any time.
3. If you want to share your location with new members that join later, turn on Automatically Share Location.

Note: Children and teens with Screen Time turned on may not be able to change their own location sharing settings.

To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security. See Control the location information you share.

Locate a family member's device

After you share your location with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate a missing device added to the Find My app.

See Locate a device in Find My.

Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.

Ask a family member to share an AirTag with you

If you receive a notification in the Find My app that says AirTag Detected Near You or Unknown AirTag, you can ask the family member who owns it to share the AirTag with you.

1. In the notification, tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.
2. Tap Ask Owner at the bottom of the screen.

You can also use Find Devices on iCloud.com to locate a family member's missing device. See Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

See also

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

Previous
Share purchases

Next
Set up Apple Cash Family and Apple Card Family

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone

When you're in a Family Sharing group, you can share Apple subscriptions and eligible App Store subscriptions with other family members.

If your Family Sharing group has purchase sharing turned on, any subscriptions shared with the group are billed directly to the organizer's default payment method.

Note: Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in Screen Time.

Share Apple subscriptions

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Tap Subscriptions, then do one of the following:
   - Tap a subscription you want to share, then follow the onscreen instructions.
   - Tap Manage Subscriptions, then tap a subscription.

See any of the following to learn more.

- *Apple Arcade:* See Subscribe to Apple Arcade. All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account—your progress is carried over between devices.
- *Apple Fitness+:* See Apple Fitness+ at a glance in the Apple Fitness+ User Guide. All members of your family can access workouts in the Fitness app on their iPhone or iPad.
- *Apple Music:* See Subscribe to Apple Music. With a family subscription, each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.
- *Apple News+:* See Subscribe to Apple News+. All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.

- *Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels:* See Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel and Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps. Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple Account and password.
- *iCloud+:* See Subscribe to iCloud+. When you share iCloud+, all family members have access to iCloud+ features and storage. For storage, you only share the space—your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Share App Store subscriptions

You can choose which eligible App Store subscriptions you share with family members. For information about the App Store, see Get apps in the App Store.

1. Go to Settings > Family > Subscriptions > Manage Subscriptions.
2. Do either of the following:

   - *Share all new subscriptions:* Turn on Share with Family. When you purchase a new subscription that's eligible for sharing, it's shared with your Family Sharing members by default.

   - *Change the settings of a specific subscription:* Tap a subscription, then turn Share with Family on or off.

     If you don't see Share with Family, the subscription isn't eligible for sharing.

See also

Apple Support article: What types of content can I share with my family?

Previous
Remove Family Sharing members

Next
Share purchases

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPhone

Viewing a device (or a book) too closely for an extended period of time can increase the risk of myopia (nearsightedness) for younger users, and eyestrain for users of all ages. In Screen Time, the Screen Distance feature uses the TrueDepth camera (on supported models) to detect when you hold iPhone closer than 12 inches for an extended period, and encourages you to move it farther away.

Screen Distance can remind younger users to engage in healthy viewing habits that can lower their risk of myopia. It gives adult users the opportunity to reduce digital eyestrain.

Note: Screen Distance is turned on by default for children under 13 in a Family Sharing group. (Age varies by country and region.)

Turn Screen Distance on or off

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Screen Distance, then turn Screen Distance on or off.

With Screen Distance on, when you hold the screen too close to your face for an extended period, Screen Distance covers the screen with an alert, preventing you from continuing.

When you move iPhone more than 12 inches away, you can tap Continue to resume using it.

See also

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Previous
Get started with Screen Time

Next
Create, manage, and keep track of a Screen Time passcode

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

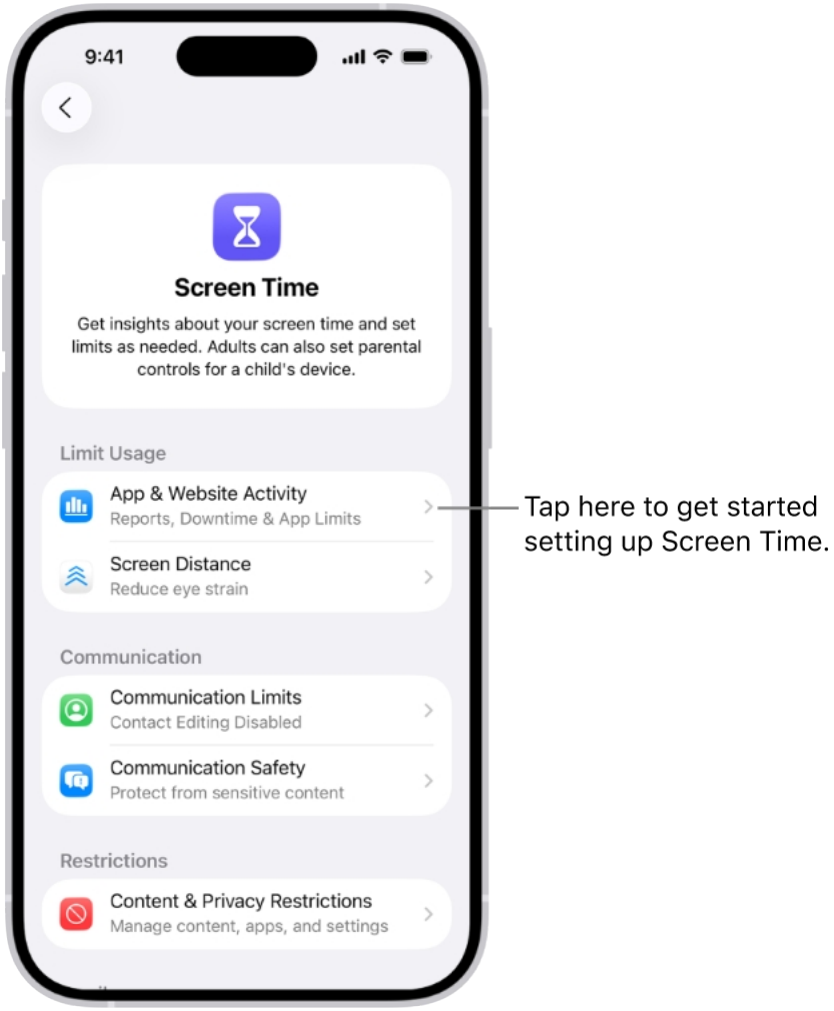
Table of Contents

Get started with Screen Time on iPhone

You can get information about how you and your family members spend time on your devices—including which apps and websites you use and how often you pick up your device. Screen Time also lets you schedule time away from the screen and set limits for app use.

Turn on Screen Time

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap App & Website Activity, then tap Turn On App & Website Activity.



Use Screen Time on all your devices

You can share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then turn on Share Across Devices. (You may need to scroll down.)

View your Screen Time summary

Any time after you turn on Screen Time, you can view a report of your device use, including how much time you spend using certain kinds of apps, how often you pick up your iPhone and other devices, which apps send you the most notifications, and more.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap See All App & Website Activity, then tap Devices to select which device you want to see usage for.

3. Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use, or tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.



Use the Screen Time widget to check your device use at a glance

You can quickly check your device use by adding a Screen Time widget to your Home Screen. The widget displays information from your Screen Time summary—the larger the widget you add, the more information it displays.

If you set up Screen Time for family members through Family Sharing, you can tap the widget to see a list of the people in your family group. Tap the name of a family member whose report you want to view.

You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when one appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can find it in Notification Center.)

See also

Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases on iPhone

Set schedules with Screen Time on iPhone

Previous
Share a child's age range with apps

Next
Protect your vision health with Screen Distance

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

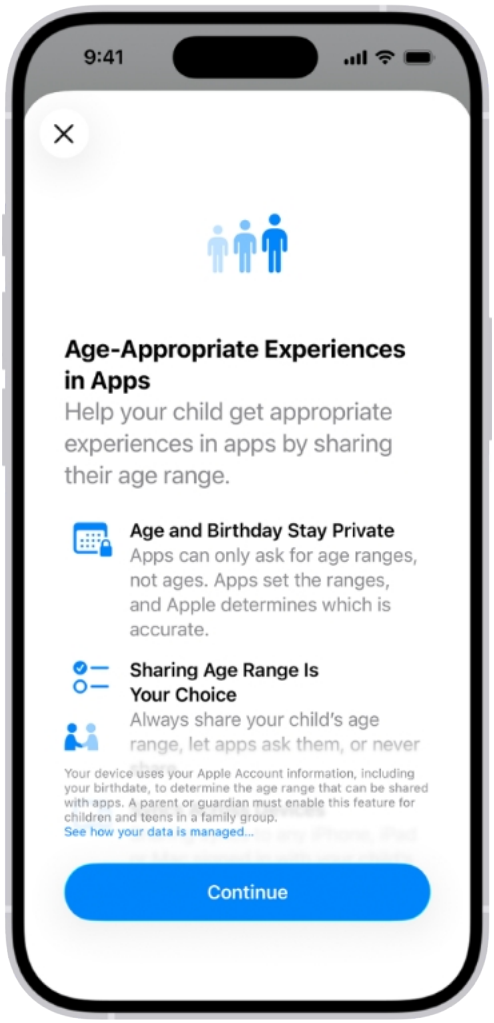
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Share your child’s age range with apps on iPhone

With Age Range for Apps, family organizers can help their child get age-appropriate experiences in apps by sharing their age range. The family organizer can decide whether to always share their child’s age information, require permission for each request, or never share (age restrictions vary by country or region).

Note: Apps can only access an age range, and the child’s birth date is kept private. Your choices sync to any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you’re signed in to the same Apple Account. Age Range for Apps is only available for third-party apps when the developer has implemented the necessary technical requirements.



Set up Age Range for apps

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then select your name or the name of a child.

   If you don't see Family, set up Family Sharing on iPhone.
3. Tap Apple Account & Password, then tap Set Up next to Age Range for Apps.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: If you need to update your birthday or your child's birthday, see Update the birth date associated with your Apple Account.

Change when you share your age range or your child's age range

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then select your name or the name of a child.

   If you don't see Family, set up Family Sharing on iPhone.
3. Tap Apple Account & Password, then tap Age Range for Apps.
4. Tap the pop-up menu next to Share with Apps, then choose an option for you or your child's age range:

   - *Always:* It's automatically shared with apps when they request it.
   - *Ask First:* You or your child can choose to share if an app requests it.
   - *Don't Share:* It's not shared with apps.

   You can prevent child accounts from changing this option. See the Apple Support Article Use parental controls on your child's iPhone or iPad.

View and update details for apps that asked for your age range or your child's age range

If you choose Always or Ask First when you set up Age Range for apps, you can view and update details for apps that requested the age range.

Note: To view and update these details across devices, make sure you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Do either of the following:

   - *If viewing or updating details for yourself:* Go to the Settings app on your iPhone, tap your name, then tap Personal Information.

   - *If viewing or updating details for a child in your Family Sharing group:* Go to the Settings app on the child's iPhone, tap Family, select the name of your child, then tap Apple Account & Password.

   If you don't see Family, set up Family Sharing on iPhone.

2. Tap Age Range for Apps.

3. Tap an app on the list.

   You can see which apps requested the age range and whether or not it was shared.

4. If you want to update your age range or your sharing preference, tap Share Age Range Again.

Previous
Set up a child's device

Next
Get started with Screen Time

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone

You can use Apple Cash and Apple Card with your Family Sharing group. The organizer of the Family Sharing group can set up Apple Cash for a child, and share Apple Card with trusted members of their Family Sharing group.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Set up Apple Cash Family for a child

The family organizer can set up Apple Cash for a child.

Note: Apple Cash Family is only available in the U.S.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then select the child for whom you want to set up Apple Cash.
3. Tap Apple Cash, tap Set Up Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To see the card balance, monitor transactions, and narrow the list of people that the child can send money to, go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay. See Apple Cash Support.

For more information about system requirements and how to manage Apple Cash accounts, see the Apple Support articles Set up and use Apple Cash Family and View and limit your child or teen's Apple Cash activity.

Set up Apple Card Family

You can share your Apple Card with family members, manage payments, and control account settings and limits for children who are 13 years or older. You can also review and manage everyone's details.

Note: Apple Card Family is only available in the U.S.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Family, then tap Apple Card Family.

   The option only appears if you have Apple Card.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about what owners, co-owners, and participants can do with Apple Card, see the Apple Support article Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants.

See also

Turn on Ask to Buy

Previous
Share locations with family and locate lost devices

Next
Set up parental controls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone

With Family Sharing, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can use Quick Start on their iPhone to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. You can also set up a device for a child without using Quick Start.

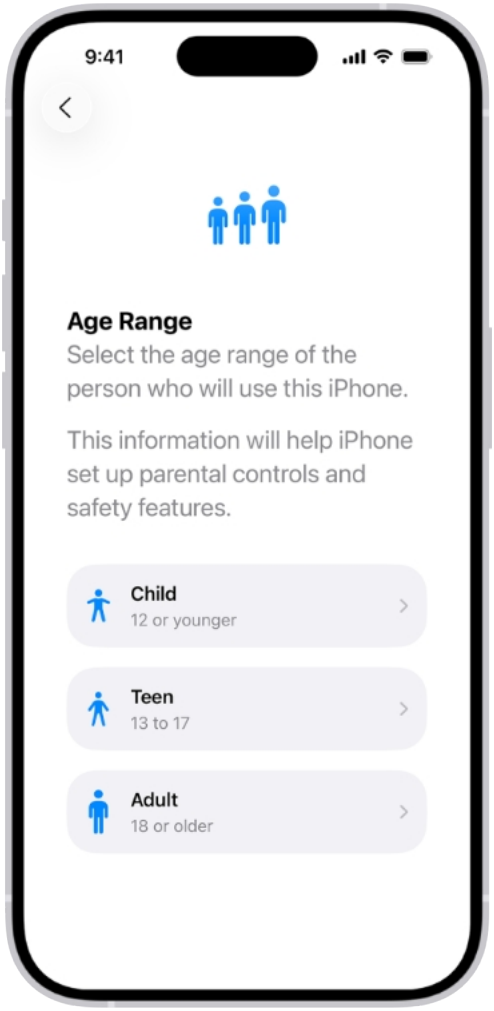
If you didn't sign in to a child's account when you set up their device, you can do so in Settings with their Apple Account and password, or by using proximity sign-in with a nearby iPhone or iPad.

Note: If the child already has an Apple Account, make sure they've been added to your Family Sharing group. If the child doesn't have an Apple Account and they're under 13 (this age varies by region), you can create an Apple Account for them while adding them to the group.

Use Quick Start to set up an iPhone or iPad for a child

Note: Requires iOS 16 or later. Bluetooth® must be turned on.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account on your iPhone.
3. On the new iPhone or iPad you want to set up for your child, press and hold the side button or top button until the Apple logo appears.
4. Bring your iPhone next to the new device.
5. Select an age range for your child.



6. Tap Connect Now.
7. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish setting up your child's device.

Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child without using Quick Start

1. Turn on the new device.
2. When the Quick Start screen appears, tap Set Up Without Another Device, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   If your child is 12 or younger, their iPhone will need to be connected to a parent or guardian's device.

   Note: Exact age ranges may vary based on country or region.
3. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child in Settings

If you didn’t sign in to a child’s account during setup, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Make sure you’re signed in to your Apple Account on your iPhone.
3. Do one of the following to sign in to the child’s account:

    - *Sign in with an email address or phone number and password:* Tap Sign in Manually, then tap “Sign in a child in my Family.”

    - *Sign in with a nearby iPhone or iPad:* Tap Use Another Apple Device, then follow the onscreen instructions. If you already have a child in your family group, tap their name, then tap Get Started. If you need to create a new Apple Account for a child, tap Create New Child Account.

4. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

You can turn on safety features for your child such as Content & Privacy Restrictions, Communication Limits, Screen Distance, and Communication Safety. See Set up Screen Time for a family member for more information.

Note: Screen Distance is available on supported models.

See also

Family Sharing website

Set schedules with Screen Time on iPhone

Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone

Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy

Previous
Set up parental controls

Next
Share a child’s age range with apps

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Check for sensitive images and videos in Screen Time on iPhone

Your iPhone can detect nudity in images and videos before they're sent or received. This feature is available in Messages, AirDrop, Contact Posters, FaceTime, the Photos picker, and shared albums in Photos. Nude photos or videos can also be detected when they're selected to share in some third-party apps.

If an attempt to send photos or videos that might contain nudity is detected, Communication Safety provides a warning, gives options to stay safe, and provides helpful resources. Photos and videos are analyzed on the device. Apple does not receive an indication that nudity was detected and doesn't get access to the photos or videos.

To learn more about setting this feature up for a family member under 18, see Turn on or off checking for sensitive images and videos in communications on a family member's iPhone and About Communication Safety on your child's Apple Device.

Note: Communication Safety is turned on by default for children under 18 (age varies by country or region).

---

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Communication Safety, then turn Communication Safety on or off.

   When Communication Safety is turned on, iPhone detects nude images or videos, and displays a warning.

   Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on Sensitive Content Warning in Settings > Privacy & Security. You can also turn on Sensitive Content Warning separately in Settings > Privacy & Security. See Receive warnings about sensitive content.

You can help Apple improve Communication Safety by sharing analytics and usage data. No messages or media are shared with Apple. To turn this on, go to Settings > Screen Time > Communication Safety > Improve Communication Safety.

See also

Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases on iPhone

Set schedules with Screen Time on iPhone

Turn on or off checking for sensitive images and videos in communications on a family member's iPhone

Previous
Block calls and messages with Screen Time

Next
Set up Screen Time for a family member

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases on iPhone

You can restrict access to apps, features, and websites, in addition to iTunes and App Store purchases.

Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases

Set Content & Privacy Restrictions to block inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Do any of the following:

    - *Set restrictions for store purchases and redownloads:* Tap iTunes & App Store Purchases.
    - *Remove an app or feature from the Home Screen:* Tap Allowed Apps & Features.
    - *Set content ratings and other restrictions for App Store, Media, Web, & Game Center:* Tap App Store, Media, Web, & Games.
    - *Restrict access to Apple Intelligence,* Siri, and Math Results:* Tap Intelligence & Siri. (See Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time.)
    - *Allow changes to privacy settings in certain features, apps, or media:* Tap an option below Privacy, then tap Allow Changes or Don't Allow Changes.

- *Allow changes to other settings:* Tap an option below Allow Changes To, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

Turn built-in apps and features on or off

You can restrict the use of built-in apps or features. If you turn off an app, it isn't deleted; it's temporarily hidden from your Home Screen until you turn it back on.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap Allowed Apps & Features, then turn off the apps or features you want to restrict.

Block websites

You can block specific websites by URL.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap App Store, Media, Web, & Games, then tap Web Content.
4. Select Limit Adult Websites, tap Add Website below Never Allow, and enter the URLs of the websites you want to block.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Set up Screen Time

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

About Communication Safety in Messages

Table of Contents

Block calls and messages with Screen Time on iPhone

Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

You can either allow or block communication—including incoming and outgoing phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from certain contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then tap Communication Limits.
3. Tap During Screen Time, then select one of the following for communication at all times (other than during downtime):

    - *Contacts Only:* To allow communication with only your contacts.
    - *Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact:* To only allow one-on-one conversations with people in your contacts and group conversations that include at least one person in your contacts.
    - *Everyone:* To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.
4. Tap Back at the top left, then tap During Downtime.

    The option you selected in step 3 (for During Screen Time) is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

    - *Choose From My Contacts:* To allow communication with your existing contacts during downtime.

- *Add New Contact:* To add a contact and allow communication with them during Downtime.

If someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings tries to call you or send you a message, their communication won't go through.

If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings, their name or number appears in red in your list of recent calls or messages, and your communication won't go through. You can communicate with them when the communication limit is changed. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a Time Limit message. You can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

See also

Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases on iPhone

Check for sensitive images and videos in Screen Time on iPhone

Set schedules with Screen Time on iPhone

Previous
Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases

Next
Check for sensitive images and videos

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

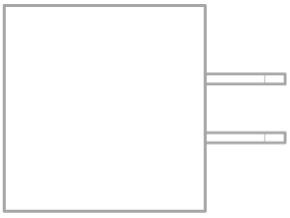
Table of Contents

Power adapters for iPhone

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using its charging cable (included) and a compatible power adapter (sold separately).

You can use the following Apple USB power adapters to charge iPhone. The size and style may vary depending on the country or region.

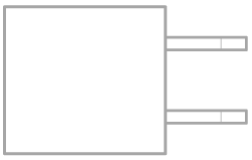
Apple 20W USB-C power adapter



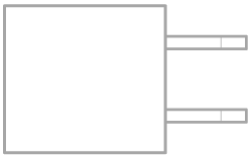
Note: For fast charging, iPhone 12, iPhone SE (3rd generation), and later models require a power adapter with a minimum power output of 20 watts, such as the Apple 20W USB power adapter. If you use a third-party power adapter, it should meet these recommended specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line Voltage:* 100 to 240 VAC
- *Output Voltage/Current:* 9 VDC/2.2 A
- *Minimum Power Output:* 20 W
- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 18W USB-C power adapter



Apple 5W USB power adapter



You can also use Apple USB power adapters for iPad and Mac notebooks to charge iPhone, and you can use third-party power adapters that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards.

See also

"Charging" in Important safety information

Apple Support article: About Apple USB power adapters

Apple Support article: Fast charge your iPhone

Previous
Charging cable

Next
MagSafe chargers and battery packs

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

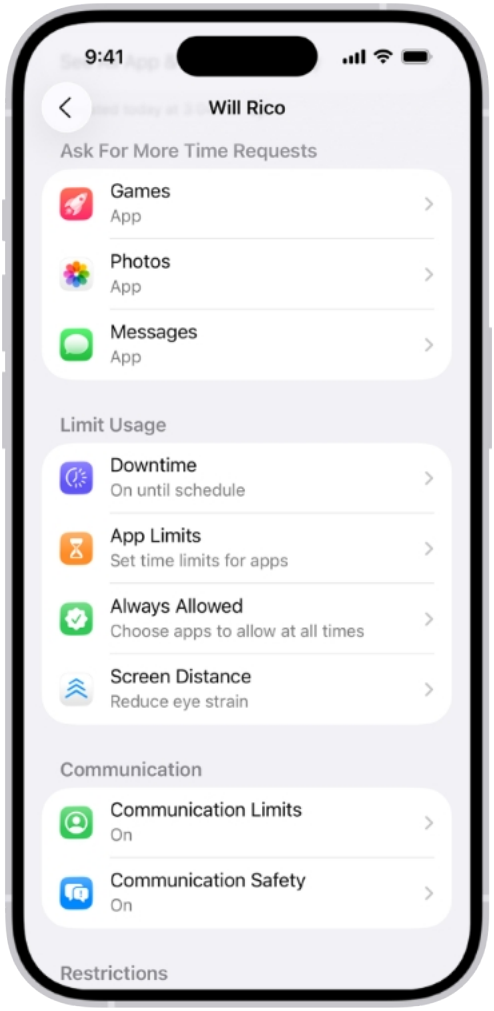
Respond to a child's Screen Time request on iPhone

Screen Time helps parents manage the time their kids spend on devices, which apps they use, and the people they can communicate with. And it allows them to make requests when they've reached a limit you set. For example:

- If you turned on Downtime or App Limits, they can ask you to allow more time after they reach a time limit.
- If you set their Communication Limits so they can only communicate with people in their contacts list, they can ask to add a new contact to the list.

  Note: If an app has adopted the necessary technical requirements, your child may be able to ask to communicate with people in an app.

Your child can also make other requests outside of Screen Time. If you set up Ask to Buy, your child can request permission to download an app, redownload a shared app, or purchase an item from the App Store, iTunes Store, or Apple Books. They can also ask for an exception to purchase or download an app that's above their current age rating. To set up Ask to Buy or to handle these requests, see Turn on Ask to Buy and Respond to a child's App Exception request.



Respond to a child's Screen Time request directly on their device

1. On the child's device, open the relevant app, then click or tap an option to initiate the request. (For example, click or tap Ask for More Time.)
2. Click or tap Enter Screen Time Passcode, then enter the Screen Time passcode.
3. Click or tap an option to Approve or Deny.

Respond to a child's Screen Time request on your iPhone

You can approve a child's request—like a request for more time on an app—on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then select the name of your family member. (You may need to scroll down.)

3. If your child has made a request, a list of apps will appear. Tap the app under the child's requests, then enter the Screen Time passcode.
4. Depending on the request, do one of the following:

    - *Approve for 15 minutes*: Tap Approve for 15 minutes.
    - *Approve for 1 hour*: Tap Approve for an hour.
    - *Approve for the rest of the day*: Tap Approve all day.
    - *Approve the request*: Tap Approve Request.
    - *Deny the request*: Tap Don't Approve.

You can also approve or deny requests directly from notifications and Messages. In the notification or message, click Approve or Deny (or click the Options pop-up menu to choose an option).

See also

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Check for sensitive images and videos in Screen Time on iPhone

Create, manage, and keep track of a Screen Time passcode on iPhone

Previous
Set up Screen Time for a family member

Next
Charging cable

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

You can wirelessly charge iPhone using a Qi-certified charger (sold separately). You can also use a Qi-certified charger to charge AirPods.

Charge iPhone or AirPods with a Qi-certified charger

1. Connect the charger to power. Use the power adapter that came with your charger or a power adapter recommended by the manufacturer.
2. Do one of the following:

    - *iPhone:* Place iPhone face up on the center of the charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger,  appears in the status bar.

    - *AirPods 2 (with Wireless Charging Case), AirPods 3, AirPods 4 (with Active Noise Cancellation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support articles How to wirelessly charge your iPhone and Charge your AirPods and learn about battery life.

See also

MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device by following the steps in Set up Screen Time, or if they're in a Family Sharing group for which you're the organizer, you can set up Screen Time for them through Family Sharing on your device.

If you're the organizer (or a parent or guardian) of a Family Sharing group, when you set up a child account, you enter the child's name and birth date. The child's birthday is used to set suggested content restrictions that determine the content they can access.

You can manually set up content restrictions, allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts, and downtime later in Settings > Screen Time on the child's device.

When you set up a device for a child under 18, Communication Safety and Web Content limits are turned on by default and can later be managed in Screen Time settings. (This age varies by country or region.)

Set up Screen Time for a family member

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then scroll down and select a family member below Family.
3. Do any of the following:

   - To schedule downtime for your family member, follow the instructions in Schedule time away from the screen.

     You can approve or decline a request in the Messages app, or in Settings > Screen Time.

   - To set limits for app use for your family member, follow the instructions in Set limits for app use.

- To choose apps and contacts to allow your family member to use at all times, follow the instructions in Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times. You can also view or change your family member's contacts and set up Age Range for apps.

  Note: If your family member needs health or accessibility apps, make sure they're in the Allowed Apps list. If Messages isn't always allowed, your family member may not be able to send or receive messages (including to emergency numbers and contacts) during downtime or after the app limit has expired.

- To help reduce your family member's risk of myopia (nearsightedness) or eyestrain, turn on Screen Distance

- To create a Screen Time passcode for a family member, see Create a Screen Time passcode.

- To turn on Communication Safety features for your family member, see Turn on or off checking for sensitive images and videos in communications on a family member's iPhone

You can also do any of the following for a family member:

- Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases
- Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

View or change your family member's contacts

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then select the name of your family member. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. Tap Communication Limits, then turn on Manage [*child's name*]'s contacts.

   To allow your child to add and edit contacts, turn on Allow Contact Editing.
4. Have your child approve the managing contacts request on their device.
5. Once your child accepts your request, do any of the following:

   - *View your child's contacts:* Tap Contacts.

   - *Edit your child's contacts:* Tap Contacts, tap a name, then tap Edit in the top right of the screen.

- *Remove someone from your child's contacts:* Tap Contacts, tap a name, then tap Delete Contact. (You may need to scroll down.)

- *Add someone to your child's contacts:* Tap Contacts, then the add button in the top right corner.

Note: You'll need to enter the child's Screen Time passcode each time you view or make changes to your child's contacts

---

Turn on or off checking for sensitive images and videos in communications on a family member's iPhone

You can have your family member's iPhone detect nudity in images and videos before they're sent or received. This feature is available in Messages, AirDrop, Contact Posters, FaceTime, the Photos picker, and shared albums in Photos. Nude photos or videos can also be detected when they're selected to share in some third-party apps.

If an attempt to send photos or videos that might contain nudity is detected, Communication Safety provides a warning, gives options to stay safe, and provides helpful resources. Photos and videos are analyzed on the device. Apple does not receive an indication that nudity was detected and does not get access to the photos or videos.

See the Apple Support article About Communication Safety on your child's Apple device for more information.

Note: Communication Safety is turned on by default for children under 18 after Screen Time is set up (age varies by country or region).

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, scroll down, then select the name of your family member.
3. Tap Communication Safety, then turn Communication Safety on or off.

   You may need to enter the Screen Time passcode.

Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on the Sensitive Content Warning in Settings > Privacy & Security. See Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone.

You can help Apple improve Communication Safety by sharing analytics and usage data. No messages or media are shared with Apple. To turn this on, go to Settings > Screen Time > Communication Safety > Improve Communication Safety.

Block adult content on a family member's iPhone

When you set up a child account, you enter the child's name and birth date after tapping Create Child Account. The child's age automatically determines the content they can access. You can also help ensure that certain content—like in Music, Podcasts, or News—on your family member's device is age appropriate by manually limiting the explicitness ratings in Content & Privacy Restrictions.

1. Go to the Settings app on your family member's iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Choose specific content and privacy options. In addition, do any of the following:

    - To protect your family member's hearing, scroll down, tap Reduce Loud Audio, then select Don't Allow. (This prevents changes to the maximum headphone volume.)

    - To modify the content your child can access in specific apps and features, tap Allowed Apps & Features, then turn them off. To allow access, turn them on.

4. Tap < at the top left.

Add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later

To add or change Screen Time settings later, follow the steps described in the sections above.

Important: If you set up Screen Time for a family member on their device (not through Family Sharing), and you forget the Screen Time passcode, you can use your Apple Account to reset it. However, if you set up Screen Time for a family member on your device through Family Sharing and you forget your Screen Time passcode, you can reset it on your device using your device passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID.

See also

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone

Set schedules with Screen Time on iPhone

Previous
Check for sensitive images and videos

Next
Respond to a Screen Time request

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

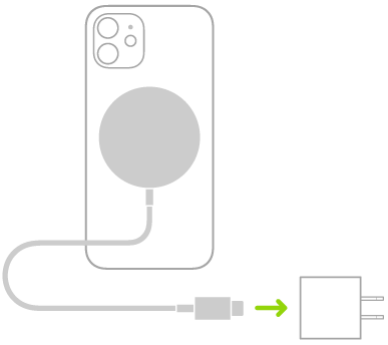
MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

On supported models, MagSafe chargers and battery packs snap to the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The magnets ensure proper alignment for fast wireless charging, and you can hold and use iPhone while it's charging.

Without the magnetic alignment, MagSafe chargers can also charge other iPhone models and AirPods. (AirPods and MagSafe chargers, battery packs, cases, and sleeves are sold separately.)

Charge iPhone or AirPods with MagSafe Charger

1. Connect MagSafe Charger to power using a compatible power adapter (sold separately).



2. Do one of the following:

   - *iPhone:* (supported models) Place MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.

     Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone.

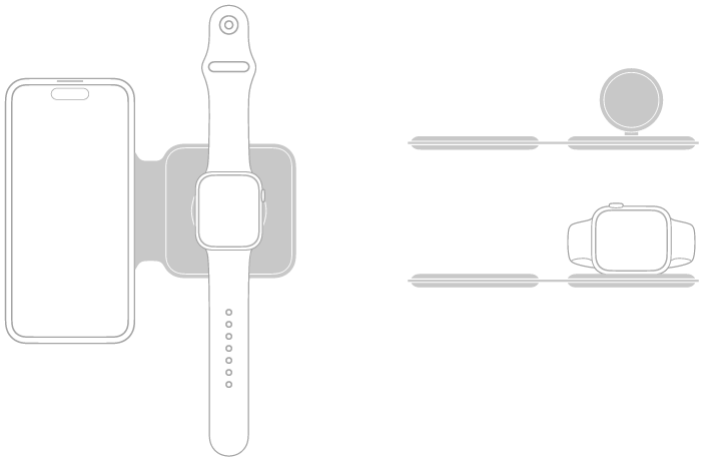
- *Other iPhone models:* Place iPhone face up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger,  appears in the status bar.

- *AirPods 2, AirPods 3 (MagSafe), AirPods 4 (with Active Noise Cancellation), AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

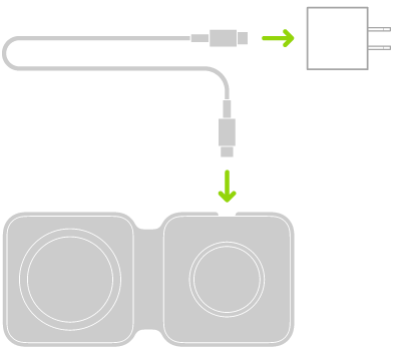
See the Apple Support article How to use your MagSafe Charger.

Charge iPhone or AirPods and Apple Watch with MagSafe Duo Charger

With MagSafe Duo Charger, you can charge your iPhone or AirPods at the same time you charge your Apple Watch. (MagSafe Duo Charger, Apple Watch, and AirPods are sold separately.)



1. Connect MagSafe Duo Charger to power using the Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).



2. To charge iPhone or AirPods, do one of the following:

- *iPhone:* Place iPhone face up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. Supported models help you align iPhone with the charger, and the charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging. On other models, the battery charging indicator appears when you properly align iPhone with the charging surface. Unless your iPhone is in Silent mode, you hear a chime when charging begins.

  Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing iPhone on MagSafe Duo Charger.

- *AirPods 2 (with Wireless Charging Case), AirPods 3, AirPods 4 (with Active Noise Cancellation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

3. To charge Apple Watch, do one of the following:

   - With the Apple Watch charging surface lying flat and the Apple Watch band open, place Apple Watch face up on the charging surface.

   - With the Apple Watch charging surface raised, place Apple Watch on its side with its back against the charging surface. Apple Watch automatically goes into Nightstand mode, so you can also use it as an alarm clock.

   The concave charging surface magnetically snaps to the back of your Apple Watch and aligns it properly. When charging begins, a charging symbol appears on the watch face.

Charge iPhone with MagSafe Battery Pack

MagSafe Battery Pack magnetically attaches to supported models and extends the battery life.

Note: If an iPhone wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Battery Pack.

- *Charge your iPhone on the go:* Place MagSafe Battery Pack on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.
- *See the battery status of MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* Check the Batteries widget in Today View or on the Home Screen. See Add a Batteries widget to your Lock Screen or Home Screen.

- *Charge MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* With MagSafe Battery Pack on iPhone, connect either device to power using the USB-C to Lightning Cable or USB-C Cable and the Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (minimum power output of 20 watts; sold separately). The status indicator on MagSafe Battery Pack is amber while charging, then turns green when charging is complete.

  Note: By default, charging is limited to 90 percent to optimize the lifespan of MagSafe Battery Pack. To remove the charging limit, open Control Center, tap Low Power Mode, then tap Charge past 90%.

  You can also charge MagSafe Battery Pack without iPhone.

See the Apple Support article How to use your MagSafe Battery Pack.

See also

"Charging" in Important safety information

Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

Previous
Power adapters

Next
Qi-certified wireless chargers

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Set schedules with Screen Time on iPhone

You can schedule time away from the screen, set time limits for app use, and more.

Schedule time away from the screen

Block apps and notifications for periods when you want time away from your devices. For example, you might want to schedule downtime during meals or at bedtime.

During downtime, only calls, messages, and apps you choose to allow are available. To learn how to allow certain apps and contacts, see Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts and Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap App & Website Activity, then turn on App & Website Activity if you haven't already.
3. Tap Downtime, then do one of the following:

   - Tap Turn On Downtime Until Tomorrow.
   - Tap Scheduled to schedule downtime in advance.

   When you schedule downtime, a 5-minute reminder is sent before downtime begins. You can ignore the reminder, or turn on downtime until the beginning of the scheduled downtime.
4. Select Every Day or Customize Days, then set the start and end times.

You can turn off the Downtime schedule at any time by turning off Scheduled.

Set limits for app use

Set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap App Limits, then tap Add Limit.
3. Select one or more app categories.

   To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.
4. Tap Next at the top right, then set the amount of time allowed.

   To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.
5. When you finish setting limits, tap .

Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times

Specify apps that can be used and contacts you can communicate with at all times (for example, in the event of an emergency), even during downtime.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Always Allowed.
2. To specify contacts you want to allow communication with, tap Contacts.

   The option you selected in communication limits appears here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

   - *Choose From My Contacts:* To select specific people to allow communication with.
   - *Add New Contact:* To add a new contact and allow communication with that person.
3. Tap < at the top left, then tap below Allowed Apps or below Choose Apps.
4. Tap < at the top left.

See also

Set up Screen Time for a family member

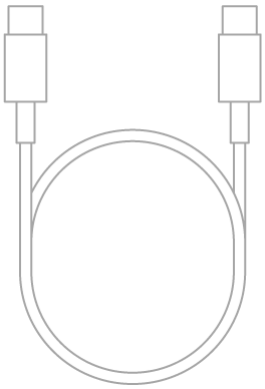
Check for sensitive images and videos in Screen Time on iPhone

Table of Contents

Charging cable for iPhone

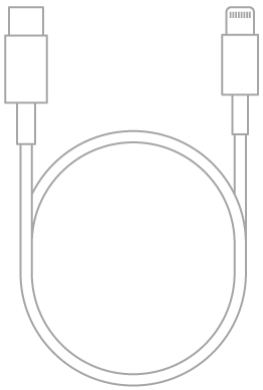
Your iPhone includes one of the following charging cables:

USB-C Cable



You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using a compatible power adapter (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also connect the included cable to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

USB-C to Lightning Cable



You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using a compatible power adapter (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also connect the included cable to your

Table of Contents

Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can dictate text instead of typing it on Magic Keyboard.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply.

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard, turn on Enable Dictation, then choose a dictation shortcut.
2. To insert text by dictating, tap to place the insertion point, then press the dictation shortcut key twice.
3. To use Magic Keyboard again, quickly press the dictation shortcut key twice.

As you speak to insert text, iPhone automatically inserts punctuation for you. You can insert emoji by saying their names (for example, “mind blown emoji” or “happy emoji”).

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Table of Contents

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

You can play audio from iPhone on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth® headphones and speakers.

Play audio from iPhone on a wireless device

1. Open an audio app such as Podcasts or Music on your iPhone.
2. Choose an item to play.
3. Tap , then choose a playback destination.



Note: If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

Note: For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see Pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory.

Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices

With AirPlay 2 and iPhone, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.

Siri: Ask Siri something like:

- "Stop playing music everywhere"

- “Set the dining room volume to 10 percent”
- “What’s playing in the kitchen?”
- “Play a song I like in the kitchen”
- “Add the living room speaker”
- “Remove the music from the kitchen”
- “Move the music to the den”

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPhone screen.

1. Tap in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or on the Now Playing screen for the app you’re listening to.
2. Select each device you want to use.

Note: Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

While playing audio from Music, Podcasts, or another audio app, bring iPhone close to the top of HomePod.

Audio handoff has the following requirements:

- You must be signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- On your iPhone, you’ve turned on Wi-Fi and Handoff.
- iPhone and HomePod must be in the same HomeKit home and on the same Wi-Fi network.
- Your devices must have Bluetooth turned on in Settings and be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

To disable Handoff between iPhone and HomePod and other devices, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity.

Note: To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the HomePod User Guide and Apple TV User Guide.

For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the Home accessories website.

Table of Contents

Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can use Magic Keyboard, including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad, to enter text on iPhone. Magic Keyboard connects to iPhone using Bluetooth®.

Pair Magic Keyboard

1. Make sure the keyboard is turned on and charged.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

Note: If Magic Keyboard is already paired with another device, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Keyboard to your iPhone. Do one of the following:

- *On iPhone or iPad:* See Unpair a Bluetooth accessory.
- *On macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.
- *On macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device name, then click Remove.

Reconnect Magic Keyboard to iPhone

Magic Keyboard disconnects when you turn its switch to Off or when you move it or iPhone out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the keyboard switch to On, or bring the keyboard and iPhone back into range, then tap any key.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Commands for dictating text on iPhone

Previous
HomePod and other wireless speakers

Next
Enter characters with diacritical marks

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

With Magic Keyboard, you can switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, other language keyboards that you add, and the onscreen keyboard.

Switch between language keyboards and the onscreen emoji keyboard

1. On Magic Keyboard, press and hold the Control key.
2. Press the Space bar to cycle between the language keyboard for your region, the emoji keyboard, and any keyboards you added for typing in different languages.

Show or hide the onscreen keyboard

To show the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ on Magic Keyboard. To hide the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ again.

Previous
Enter characters with diacritical marks

Next
Dictate text

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Use AirPods with iPhone

After you pair AirPods with iPhone, you can use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPhone, make and answer calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders when you need them, listen to conversations more easily in noisy environments, and more.

Pair AirPods with your iPhone

1. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
2. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *AirPods (1, 2, 3, and 4) and AirPods Pro:* Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPhone.
   - *AirPods Max:* Take your AirPods Max out of the Smart Case, then hold AirPods Max next to your iPhone.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.

   Note: If onscreen instructions for pairing your AirPods Max don't appear, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then select your AirPods Max. If the status light doesn't flash white on AirPods Max, press and hold the noise control button until it does.

Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

Note: If you can't pair your AirPods, see the Apple Support article If your AirPods won't connect.

Do more with AirPods and your iPhone

See the AirPods User Guide for detailed instructions on how to get the most out of your AirPods.

See also

Use hearing health features in Health on iPhone

Previous
Qi-certified wireless chargers

Next
Use EarPods

Helpful? Yes No

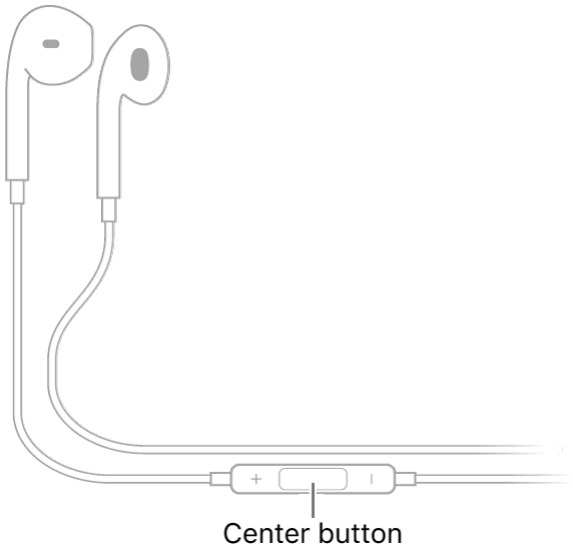
Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Use EarPods with iPhone

You can use EarPods (sold separately) to listen to music and videos and to make calls on iPhone. EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.

Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPhone is locked.



Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause:* Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.
- *Skip forward:* Press the center button twice quickly.
- *Skip backward:* Press the center button three times quickly.
- *Fast-forward:* Press the center button twice quickly and hold.

Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call:* Press the center button.
- *End the current call:* Press the center button.

- *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold:* Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.

Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone.

See also

Use hearing health features in Health on iPhone

Previous
Use AirPods

Next
Apple Watch

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Apple Watch with iPhone

Pair Apple Watch with iPhone

On your iPhone, tap the Apple Watch app, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone in the Apple Watch User Guide. (Apple Watch sold separately.)

Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

When you're wearing your Apple Watch (Series 3 and later), you can use it to securely unlock your iPhone (models with Face ID) when you're wearing a face mask (watchOS 7.4 or later required).

Note: On iPhone 12 models or later, it's not necessary to use Apple Watch to unlock iPhone when you're wearing a face mask. See Use Face ID while wearing a face mask.

To allow Apple Watch to unlock your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Apple Watch (below Unlock with Apple Watch).

   If you have more than one watch, turn on the setting for each one.

To unlock your iPhone while you're wearing your Apple Watch and a face mask, raise iPhone or tap its screen to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

Note: To unlock your iPhone, your Apple Watch must have a passcode, be unlocked and on your wrist, and be close to your iPhone.

Work out with Apple Fitness+

Used in conjunction with Apple Watch, Apple Fitness+ is a subscription service that lets you choose from a catalog of workouts led by expert trainers. While you follow a workout on your iPhone, in-session metrics like heart rate and calories burned (which are captured by your watch) appear on your screen. (watchOS 7.2 or later required; Apple Fitness+ availability varies by country or region.)

See Apple Fitness+ at a glance in the Apple Fitness+ User Guide.

Note: With Fitness on iPhone, you can view your active calories and steps, set a move goal, track your progress, and see your movement trends over time—even if you don't have an Apple Watch. See Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness.

Collect health and fitness data from Apple Watch

Apple Watch can send data about your health and fitness to iPhone for you to view in Health. Apple Watch can also send notifications about high heart rates, low heart rates, loud environmental sounds, and more to your iPhone.

See Track important health information in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Previous
Use EarPods

Next
Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Connect iPhone to a display with a cable

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPhone to a secondary display, like a computer monitor, TV, or projector.

1. Depending on your iPhone model, plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter, Lightning to VGA Adapter, USB-C Display AV Adapter, or USB-C VGA Multi-port Adapter into the charging port on the bottom of iPhone.
2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.
3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the monitor, TV, or projector.
4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the monitor, TV, or projector. If you need help, use the display's manual.

The adapters have an extra port so you can connect the charging cable and charge your iPhone while connected to a monitor, TV, or projector.

See also

Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

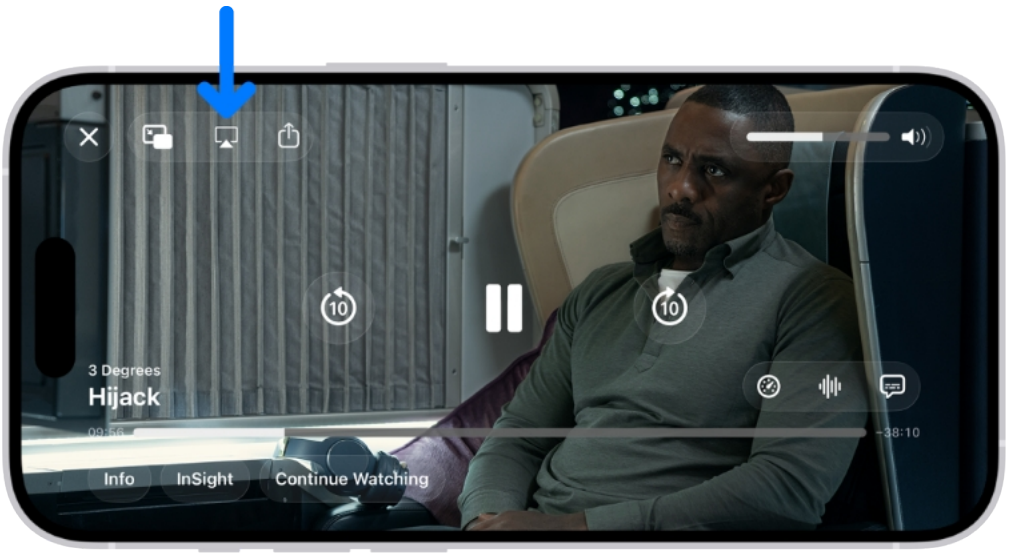
You can use your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV to watch videos and view photos streamed from your iPhone.

Note: To stream videos or photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from your iPhone, both devices must be on the same Wi-Fi network.

Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app or another supported video app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the controls.
2. Tap , then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.



To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo, then tap .
3. Swipe up, tap , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To stop streaming photos, tap near the top of the iPhone screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.

Turn automatic AirPlay streaming on or off

You can allow your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any frequently used Apple TV or smart TV when playing content from apps that you regularly use with AirPlay.

Go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

Mirror your iPhone on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPhone.

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To switch back to iPhone, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

Note: For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the Home accessories website.

To learn more about using Apple TV, see the Apple TV User Guide.

See also

Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

Previous
Apple Watch

Next
Connect to a display with a cable

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Enter characters with diacritical marks while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

If your Magic Keyboard doesn't include accents and other diacritical marks for the language you're typing, you can use an Option key modifier or the onscreen keyboard to enter those marks.

Use the Option key to enter a diacritical mark for a character

To enter a character with a diacritical mark, you can press the Option key on Magic Keyboard to select a mark.

1. Do one of the following:

   - Add or remove a keyboard for another language that supports diacritical marks, then in an app, switch to that language keyboard.

     For example, add the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard, then in an app, press and hold the Control key on Magic Keyboard, then press the Space bar until you select Español (México).

   - Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then choose an alternative keyboard layout that supports diacritical marks.

     For example, if you have the English (US) language keyboard, tap English (US), then choose U.S. International — PC or ABC — Extended.

2. In an app, press and hold the Option key, then press a key that enters a diacritical mark.

   For example, the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard and the U.S. International — PC alternative layout support these diacritical marks:

   - *Acute accent* (for example, *é*): Option-E.

- *Grave accent* (for example, è): Option-`.
- *Tilde* (for example, *ñ*): Option-N.
- *Diaeresis or umlaut* (for example, *ü*): Option-U.
- *Circumflex* (for example, *ê*): Option-I.

3. Press the letter.

   For example, to enter *ñ* using the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard or the U.S. International — PC alternative layout, press Option-N, then type an *n*.

Note: The ABC - Extended alternative layout also allows you to enter tone marks for typing Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin orthography. For example, to type ǔ in lǚxíng (“travel”), press Option-V, then type a *v*. In addition, the ABC - Extended layout allows you to type diacritical marks and letters from several different European languages, such as Czech, French, German, Hungarian, and Polish.

Use the onscreen keyboard to enter a diacritical mark

1. To show the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ on Magic Keyboard.
2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that’s related to the character you want.

   For example, to enter é, touch and hold the *e* key.
3. Slide your finger to choose a variant.
4. To hide the onscreen keyboard when you’re finished, press ⏏ on Magic Keyboard.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Previous
Pair Magic Keyboard

Next
Switch between keyboards

Table of Contents

Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth accessory

After you connect your iPhone to a Bluetooth accessory, you can play and control the audio from your iPhone on the accessory.

Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth audio accessory

1. Open an audio app such as Music or Podcasts on your iPhone and play an item.
2. Tap , then tap your Bluetooth accessory.

   While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.
3. Use the controls on your iPhone to pause or play the audio, adjust volume, skip tracks, and more.

The playback destination returns to your iPhone if you move the Bluetooth accessory out of range.

Note: For information about protecting your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphones with iPhone, see Use hearing health features in Health on iPhone.

Improve the audio accuracy of third-party Bluetooth accessories and devices

You can improve the sound of third-party Bluetooth devices by specifying the Bluetooth device type (such as headphone, speaker, or car stereo) on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings > Bluetooth, then tap next to the name of the accessory or device.

2. Tap Device Type, then choose the type of device.

See also

Connect iPhone to Bluetooth accessories

Use AirPods with iPhone

Previous
Connect Bluetooth accessories

Next
Printers

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Choose an alternative layout for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

With an alternative keyboard layout, you can enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on Magic Keyboard. For example, with the ABC - Extended keyboard layout, you can type letters and enter diacritical marks for several different European languages and tone marks for Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin.

1. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.
2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Previous
Use shortcuts

Next
Change typing assistance options

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Connect iPhone to Bluetooth accessories

Connect your iPhone to Bluetooth® accessories to stream music and videos, play games, connect to keyboards, and more.

Pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory

1. Put your Bluetooth accessory in discovery mode. If you aren't sure how to make it discoverable, check the instructions that came with your accessory.
2. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth and make sure Bluetooth is turned on.
3. Tap the name of the accessory when it appears onscreen, below the devices list.

   You might need to enter the accessory PIN or passcode. Check the instructions that came with your accessory.

Note: iPhone must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth accessory to pair.

If you have trouble pairing your accessory, see the Apple Support article If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone or iPad.

Unpair a Bluetooth accessory

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth.
2. Tap next to the accessory you want to unpair, then tap Forget This Device.
3. Tap Forget Device to confirm.

If you don't see the devices list, make sure Bluetooth is turned on.

Note: If you unpair AirPods, they're automatically unpaired from other devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account.

Disconnect from all Bluetooth accessories

If you need to quickly disconnect your iPhone from all Bluetooth accessories and devices without turning Bluetooth off, open Control Center, then tap ᛒ. Your Bluetooth accessories and devices disconnect from your iPhone until the next day.

Note: The use of certain accessories with iPhone may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS or iPadOS accessories are fully compatible with iPhone. Turning on Airplane Mode may eliminate audio interference between iPhone and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPhone and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

See also

Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth accessory

Connect a game controller to iPhone

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

Apple Support article: If an app would like to use Bluetooth on your device

Previous
External storage devices

Next
Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth accessory

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use shortcuts on Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can perform searches and use text replacements from anywhere on iPhone without taking your hands away from Magic Keyboard.

- *Open Search:* Press Command-Space.

  Note: You can change the actions that are performed by the Command key (and other modifier keys like Caps Lock). Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

- *Use text replacements:* You can set up text replacements that enter words or phrases after you type just a few characters. For example, type “omw” to enter “On my way!” See Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone.

- *Choose additional accessibility keyboard shortcuts:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards > Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access. See Control iPhone with an external keyboard.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Table of Contents

Change typing assistance options for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can change Magic Keyboard options for autocorrection, autocapitalization, and more.

Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:

- *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.
- *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.
- *Turn "." Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.
- *Change the action performed by the Command key or other modifier key:* Tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

See also

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Previous
Choose an alternative keyboard layout

Next
External storage devices

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Print from iPhone

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, and Safari. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

Note: Your iPhone and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article About AirPrint.

Choose an AirPrint-enabled printer

After confirming that your printer supports AirPrint and that your iPhone and printer are on the same Wi-Fi network, do the following:

1. Open the app you want to print from.
2. Tap , •••, , or (depending on the app).
3. Tap Print, tap No Printer Selected, then choose an AirPrint-enabled printer.

Print a document

1. Open the app you want to print from.
2. Tap , •••, , or (depending on the app).
3. Tap Print. (If you don't see Print, swipe up.)

See the status of a print job

Open the App Switcher, then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

See also

View available networks and connect to Wi-Fi

Previous
Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth accessory

Next
Intro to Continuity

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Connect external storage devices to iPhone

You can use the Files app and other supported apps to access files stored on external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, connected to your iPhone.

Connect a USB drive or an SD card reader

1. Attach the USB drive or SD card reader to the charging port on your iPhone using a compatible connector or adapter.

   You may need the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter, Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter, USB-C to SD Card Camera Reader, or Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (all sold separately).

   Note: An external storage device must have only a single data partition, and it must be formatted as APFS, APFS (encrypted), macOS Extended (HFS+), exFAT (FAT64), FAT32, or FAT. To change the formatting of a storage device, use the Files app or a Mac or PC.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Insert an SD memory card into a card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.

     Note: You can import photos and videos from the memory card directly to the Photos app. See Import and export photos and videos on iPhone.

   - *View the contents of the drive or memory card:* In a supported app (for example, Files), tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.

   - *Disconnect the drive or card reader:* Remove it from the charging port on iPhone.

Note: External hard drives often require an external power source when used with iPhone. If an external hard drive doesn't supply its own power, and your iPhone has a USB-C

connector, you can use a powered USB hub. If your iPhone has a Lightning connector, you can use the Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter connected to a USB power adapter.

See also

Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

Previous
Change typing assistance options

Next
Connect Bluetooth accessories

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use AirDrop to send items to nearby Apple devices

With AirDrop, you can wirelessly send photos, videos, documents, and more to a nearby iPhone, iPad, or Mac. You can use AirDrop to send files to your own devices or to share files with others.

You can use AirDrop with an iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

Transfers are encrypted for security, and the recipient can accept or decline each transfer as it arrives.

Note: If you leave Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range after an AirDrop transfer is initiated, the transfer continues over the internet.



Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

If you want to use AirDrop to send items between your Apple devices, sign in to your Apple Account to automatically accept and save the items.

Turn on AirDrop

- *On an iPhone or iPad:* Open Control Center, touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap . Tap Contacts Only or Everyone for 10 Minutes to choose who you want to receive items from.

  Note: The Contacts Only and Everyone for 10 Minutes options are available only on devices with minimum system requirements for AirDrop.

- *On a Mac:* Click in the menu bar, then click . When it's blue, it's on.

To choose who can send items to you, click the right arrow next to AirDrop, then click Contacts Only or Everyone.

Send an item using AirDrop

To send an item to someone with AirDrop, both you and your recipient must have turned on AirDrop and chosen to accept items from either Contacts or Everyone. If a recipient chooses to only accept items from a contact, you must be in their contacts list and they need to have your Apple Account email address or phone number included in your contact card.

Then do any of the following:

- *On an iPhone or iPad:* Open the item, then tap , Share, , or another button (depending on the app). Tap , then tap the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.

  Tip: If you're within close range of someone in your contacts, you can initiate an AirDrop transfer by opening the file you want to share, then moving your iPhone close to your contact's iPhone (on supported models with iOS 17 or later).

- *On a Mac:* Open the item on a Mac, click in the toolbar, then click AirDrop. Select the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.

  Tip: You can also share items with AirDrop in the Finder. To open a Finder window, click in the Dock. Click AirDrop in the sidebar, then drag the item you want to share to the recipient you want to send it to.

To use AirDrop to securely share app and website passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see Share passwords and passkeys with people you trust on iPhone.

Receive items with AirDrop

On your device, tap or click Accept on the AirDrop notification.

Note: If you're sending an item between devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, the item is automatically accepted.

Most items are saved in the app that they're sent from. For example, if someone uses AirDrop to send you a photo from the Photos app, it's saved in the Photos app on your device.

Depending on the device, you may find your files in other places. On an iPhone or iPad, some items may be saved in the Files app. On a Mac, some items are automatically saved in the Downloads folder, but you may also have the option to choose where to save items—for example, whether to save a photo in the Downloads folder or open it in Photos.

Note: If you opened AirDrop in the Finder on a Mac, the notification to accept or decline appears here, rather than in Notification Center.

If you send items from one of your Apple devices to another (for example, from your Mac to your iPhone), and you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices, the item is automatically accepted and saved.

Turn off cellular data for AirDrop

Cellular data charges may apply when you use AirDrop.

If you don't want to use cellular data when you're out of Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range, go to Settings > General > AirDrop, then turn off Use Cellular Data.

Typically this is a one-time setting, but you might want to change it if, for example, you're traveling and want to avoid roaming charges.

If AirDrop isn't working

- Make sure that both the sender and recipient have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on and that you're both using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.
- Check that the recipient has their AirDrop settings set to receive from Everyone or Contacts Only.
- If you're having difficulty getting AirDrop to work, restart your device and try again.
- For additional support, see the Apple Support articles How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad.

To quickly share your contact information, see Use NameDrop on iPhone.

AirDrop is best for sharing a small selection of files between devices. If you want to share many files between your Mac and other Apple devices, see Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud.

See also

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices

Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices

Sync content between your Mac and iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch

Previous
Intro to Continuity

Next
Hand off tasks between devices

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices

With Handoff, you can start a task on one device and complete it on another. For example, you can start an email on your iPhone but then finish it on your Mac computer's bigger screen.

You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Safari, Mail, FaceTime, and Maps. Some third-party apps also work with Handoff.

You can use Handoff between your iPhone, iPad, and Mac. You can also hand off tasks between your Apple Watch and iPhone.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.
- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Handoff.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Turn on Handoff

Turn on Handoff on both your iPhone and your other Apple device.

- *On your iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then turn on Handoff.
- *On your Mac:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click General in the sidebar (you may need to scroll). Click AirDrop & Handoff, then turn "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices" on or off.

Note: If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click General, then select "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices."

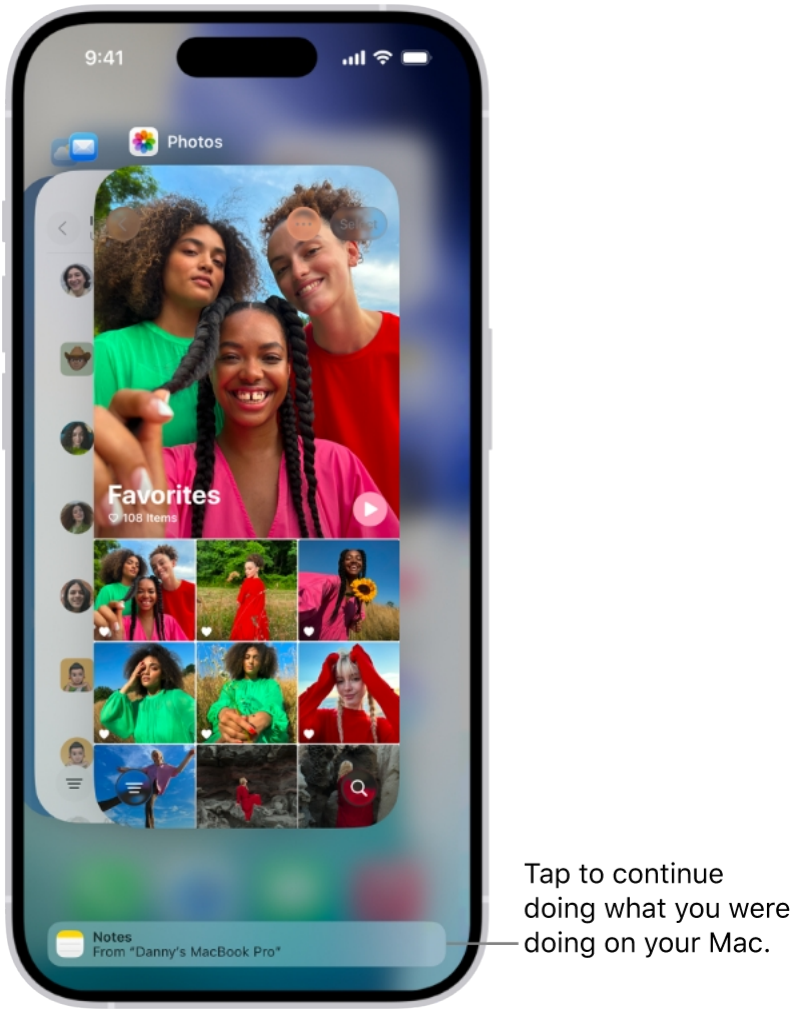
- *On your Apple Watch:* Open the Apple Watch app on iPhone, go to My Watch > General, then turn on Enable Handoff.

Hand off a task between your iPhone and other devices

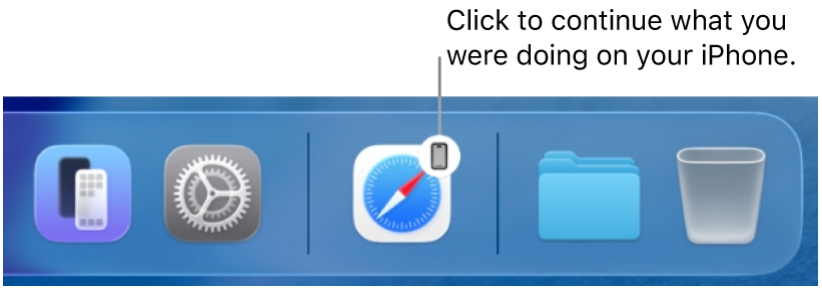
When your devices are near each other, an icon appears whenever a task can be handed off. Just tap or click the Handoff icon to continue working on your other device.

The Handoff icon appears in the following locations:

- *On an iPhone:* At the bottom of the App Switcher screen.



- *On an iPad:* At the right end of the Dock.
- *On a Mac:* Toward the right end of the Dock, if the Dock is at the bottom of the screen. If you set up the Dock to appear on the left or right side of your screen, the Handoff icon appears at the bottom of the Dock.



Hand off a task from your Apple Watch

If you have an Apple Watch, you can hand off tasks from certain apps on your Apple Watch to your iPhone. To learn more, see Handoff tasks from Apple Watch.

If Handoff isn't working

- Make sure that both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.
- Check that your app supports Handoff. Calendar, Contacts, FaceTime, Keynote, Mail, Maps, Pages, Numbers, Reminders, and Safari, as well as many third-party apps, allow Handoff.

Tip: When Handoff is on, you can use Universal Clipboard to copy and paste text, images, photos, and videos across devices.

See also

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices

Use AirDrop to send items to nearby Apple devices

Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

Previous
Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices

Next
Control your iPhone from your Mac

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

When you use your iPhone with another Apple device—like your Mac, iPad, or Apple Watch—you can take advantage of special Continuity features that let you use your devices in unique ways. You can seamlessly work across your devices, hand off tasks, share files and photos, stream video and audio, and more. Continuity features are built directly into your devices' operating systems and many of the apps you use every day. There's no additional app you need to install—just sign in to the same Apple Account on each device to get started.

Note: There are minimum system requirements for Continuity features and some features require Wi-Fi and Bluetooth®. See the Apple Support article Continuity features and requirements for Apple devices.



Quickly share content between devices

Share photos, videos, contacts, and more, with anyone on an Apple device near you. AirDrop makes sharing between iPhone, iPad, and Mac as simple as dragging and dropping.

Use AirDrop to send items to nearby Apple devices ›

Use your iPhone camera with your Mac

You can use your iPhone as your Mac computer's webcam or microphone with a feature called Continuity Camera. You can also use video effects when using your iPhone as a webcam, like Desk View.

Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac ›





Control your iPhone from your Mac

Control your iPhone from your Mac and receive iPhone notifications and Live Activities on your Mac, so you never miss a thing.

Control your iPhone from your Mac ›

Note: To use iPhone Mirroring, it must be available in your country or region. iPhone Mirroring isn't currently

available in the European Union.

Even more Continuity features

Copy and paste

Copy text, images, photos, and videos from one Apple device and paste them on another device with Universal Clipboard.

Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices

Hand off tasks

Start a task—like creating a document, writing an email, or browsing the web—on one device and pick up where you left off on another device with Handoff.

Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices

Insert sketches, photos, and scans

Take a picture or scan a document with your iPhone camera and have it appear instantly on your Mac.

Insert sketches, photos, and scans from your iPhone on Mac

Stream to a larger screen

Share videos, music, photos, and more from your iPhone to your Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled TV.

Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay

Answer calls and send texts from your iPad or Mac

Relay calls from your iPhone and send and receive texts on your iPad or Mac.

Use iPhone to allow calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac

Share your Wi-Fi

Connect your Mac to the internet using the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone.

Share your internet connection from your iPhone

Other ways to use your devices together

Continuity features aren't the only ways you can use your Mac with your other Apple devices. You can also:

- Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable
- Keep information up to date across all your devices with iCloud
- Sync content between your Mac and iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch

See also

Apple Support article: Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch

Previous
Printers

Next
Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices

You can use a feature called Universal Clipboard to copy content from one of your Apple devices and paste it on another. For example, you can copy text on your iPad and paste it into a note on your iPhone, or copy an image from a Safari webpage on your iPhone and paste it into an email message on your Mac.

You can use Universal Clipboard with your iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and Handoff turned on.
- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Universal Clipboard.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Copy and paste between your iPhone and other devices

Universal Clipboard isn't a feature that you see. It behaves just like copy and paste does on your iPhone, except with Universal Clipboard, when you paste, you can do so on one of your other Apple devices, like an iPad or a Mac.

1. Select the text or image on your iPhone, then tap Copy.
2. On your other device, either tap (on another iPhone or an iPad) or click (on a Mac) where you want to paste the text or image, then tap or click Paste. You can also use keyboard shortcuts.

For more information on how to copy or paste on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad or How to copy and paste on a Mac.

Note: When you copy the content, it's available on your Clipboard for a short amount of time.

How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad

- *Select and copy text:* Double-tap with one finger to select a word or triple-tap with one finger to select a paragraph. (You can also move the grab points to adjust your selection.) Then tap Copy.
- *Select and copy an image:* Touch and hold to select an image, then tap Copy.
- *Paste text or an image:* Tap where you want to paste the text or image, then tap Paste.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone and Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad.

How to copy and paste on a Mac

- *Select text or an image:* With your pointer, select the text or image you want to copy.
- *Copy text or an image:* Press Command-C or choose Edit > Copy from the menu bar.
- *Paste text or an image:* Move your pointer where you want to paste the text or image and click, then press Command-V or choose Edit > Paste from the menu bar.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone and Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad.

If Universal Clipboard isn't working

- Make sure that you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- If you're having difficulty getting Universal Clipboard to work, restart your devices and try again.

Universal Clipboard is best for sharing small selections of text or copied images between devices. If you want to share multiple files between your Mac and other Apple devices, see Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud.

See also

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Use AirDrop to send items to nearby Apple devices

Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices

Previous
Control your iPhone from your Mac

Next
Stream video and audio from your iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Transfer files between your iPhone and other devices

There are multiple ways to transfer photos, videos, and other files between your iPhone and other devices like an iPad, Mac, or Windows device. You can transfer files wirelessly with features like AirDrop or apps like Mail and Messages, or you can connect your iPhone to a computer or an external storage device with a cable, and then transfer or sync files.

You can also use iCloud to store your files, photos, videos, and more, and keep everything up to date on all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Important: Transferring, sharing, or syncing may be restricted for some types of data, such as files saved in an app's proprietary format, files saved in older software versions, and files protected by copyrights.

Transfer files from your iPhone wirelessly

To quickly share a photo, file, or other item from your iPhone to a nearby Apple device, you can use AirDrop. See Use AirDrop to send items to nearby Apple devices.

You can also transfer files from your iPhone to another device by sending the file as an attachment in the Mail or Messages app.

- *Send a file as an email attachment:* See Add email attachments in Mail.
- *Send a file as an attachment in Messages:* See Share content in Messages.

Transfer files by connecting your iPhone with a cable

You can connect your iPhone to your Mac or Windows device with a cable to transfer files to your computer, an external storage device, or a file server. When you transfer files to your Mac or Windows device, you can use the Finder, Apple Devices, or iTunes, depending on the model and operating system of your computer.

Note: Only files from iPhone apps that support file sharing can be transferred.

- *Transfer files with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* Use the Finder. See the Apple Support article Use the Finder to share files between your Mac and your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch.
- *Transfer files to your Windows device (Windows 10 or later):* Use Apple Devices for Windows. See Transfer files between your Windows device and iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch in the Apple Devices User Guide for Windows.
- *Transfer files to your Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or Windows device (Windows 7 or earlier):* Use iTunes. See the Apple Support article Use iTunes to share files between your computer and your iPhone or iPad.
- *Transfer files to a storage device, a file server, or a service like Box or DropBox:* See Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud.

Sync your iPhone with other devices

You can also connect your iPhone to your Mac or Windows device to sync supported content. For example, when you add a movie to your iPhone, you can sync so that the movie also appears on your computer. You can sync content like music, movies, TV shows, and more.

When you sync files to your Mac or Windows device, you can use the Finder, Apple Devices, or iTunes, depending on the model and operating system of your computer.

- *Sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* Use the Finder. See Sync content between your Mac and iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch in the Mac User Guide.
- *Sync content with your Windows device (Windows 10 or later):* Use Apple Devices for Windows. See Sync your Windows device and iPhone, iPad, or iPod in the Apple Devices User Guide for Windows.
- *Sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or Windows device (Windows 7 or earlier):* Use iTunes. See the Apple Support article Use iTunes to sync your iPhone, iPad, or iPod with your computer.

Automatically keep your files in sync with iCloud

You can store your files, photos, videos, and more in iCloud so you can access them and keep them synced on all your devices as well as supported web browsers. Any change you make to a file on a device that's signed in to your Apple Account appears on all

devices that are signed in to the same Apple Account. For more information, see How iCloud keeps information up to date across all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

To get started, see Set up iCloud on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: OS X 10.10 (or later) or Windows 7 (or later) are required. You must be signed in to the same Apple Account on both your iPhone and your computer, as well as any supported web browsers you might be using. See the Apple Support article System requirements for iCloud.

Previous
Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

Next
Intro to CarPlay

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

You can use a cable to directly connect your iPhone to a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later, or to a Windows device with Windows 7 or later.

Using the charging cable for your iPhone, connect iPhone to the USB port on your computer. If the cable isn't compatible with the port on your computer, you'll need to use an adapter (sold separately).

Note: If an alert appears on your iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article About the 'Trust This Computer' alert.

After you connect your iPhone to a computer with a cable, you can do any of the following:

- Set up iPhone for the first time.
- Share your iPhone internet connection with your computer.
- Update iPhone using your computer.
- Sync content or transfer files between between your iPhone and your Mac or Windows device.

The iPhone battery charges when iPhone is connected to your computer and your computer is connected to power.

See also

Apple Support article: About the Apple USB-C to USB Adapter

Apple Support article: About the Apple USB-C to Lightning Cable

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Share your internet connection from your iPhone

You can share the internet connection from your iPhone with other devices using a feature called Instant Hotspot. Instant Hotspot uses the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone, and is useful when your other device doesn't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network.

There are several ways to connect other devices to your Personal Hotspot:

- Connect your other device to your iPhone through Wi-Fi settings.
- Pair your two devices with Bluetooth®.
- Connect your other device to your iPhone with a cable.

You can share the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone with another iPhone, an iPad, a Mac, a Windows device, and more.

Note: Personal Hotspot isn't available with all carriers. Additional fees may apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPhone model. Contact your carrier for more information.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Instant Hotspot.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

If you're sharing your Personal Hotspot with your Apple devices, it's faster to connect if you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

Note: You can only use Personal Hotspot by sharing the cellular internet connection on your iPhone. You can't connect your iPhone to a Wi-Fi network, and then share that network with another device.

Set up Personal Hotspot on your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to the Settings app.
2. Tap Cellular, then tap Set Up Personal Hotspot.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Optionally, you can change the Wi-Fi Password. Your Wi-Fi network name is your device name, which you can change in Settings > General > About.

If you set up your iPhone to use two SIMs, Personal Hotspot uses the line you select for cellular data. See Set up Dual SIM.

Note: If Cellular Data is turned on in Settings > Cellular, but you don't see Set Up Personal Hotspot as an option, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.

Turn Personal Hotspot on and off on your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to the Settings app.
2. Tap Personal Hotspot.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

You can choose who is allowed to use your Personal Hotspot, set a password, and—if you're in a Family Sharing group—decide if you want to automatically share your Personal Hotspot with specific family members.

Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Wi-Fi

You can connect another device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using Wi-Fi settings. You can connect another iPhone, an iPad, a Mac, a Windows device, and many other devices that are able to connect to a Wi-Fi network.

1. On the device that you want to connect to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone, do any of the following:

- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.
- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up from the bottom to open Control Center. Tap to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.
- *On an iPad:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.
- *On a Mac:* Click in the menu bar, then choose your iPhone.
- *On a Windows device or other device:* Follow the manufacturer's instructions to connect to a Personal Hotspot.

2. Enter the password you set up for your Personal Hotspot to connect. If you're connecting another Apple device and you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices, you don't need to enter a password.

   Note: When a Mac is connected to your Personal Hotspot, the Personal Hotspot icon appears in the status bar of the connected Mac.

When you're not using the hotspot, your devices automatically disconnect to save battery life.

Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Bluetooth

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using Bluetooth instead of Wi-Fi. Both devices must have Bluetooth turned on.

1. On your Mac, go to the System Settings app.

   Note: If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu > System Preferences.

2. Click Bluetooth in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. On your iPhone, go to the Settings app, then tap Bluetooth.

   Keep Bluetooth Settings open to make sure that your device is discoverable.

4. On your Mac, select your iPhone when it appears. (It may take a moment.)

As soon as it's connected by Bluetooth, your Mac is able to use the cellular connection on your iPhone.

To connect your Windows device to your iPhone using Bluetooth, follow the manufacturer's directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.

Connect to a Personal Hotspot with a USB cable

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using the USB cable that came with your iPhone (or another cable that matches the ports on your iPhone and other device).

Note: If you see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

As soon as it's connected by a cable, your Mac or Windows device is able to use the cellular connection on your iPhone.

If your Personal Hotspot isn't working

- Make sure that your devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- See the Apple Support article If Personal Hotspot is not working on your iPhone or iPad (Wi-Fi + Cellular) for additional troubleshooting steps.
- Maximize compatibility in Settings > Personal Hotspot, then enable Maximize Compatibility. Maximize Compatibility may reduce performance for devices connected to your Personal Hotspot when turned on.

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPhone, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

If you use Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family. See Set up Family Sharing.

See also

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Apple Support article: Use Instant Hotspot, Auto-Join Hotspot, or Family Sharing to connect to your Personal Hotspot without entering a password

Apple Support article: About the ‘Trust This Computer’ alert

Previous
Allow phone calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac

Next
Use iPhone as a webcam

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Control your iPhone from your Mac

You can use iPhone Mirroring to control your iPhone from your nearby Mac. When iPhone Mirroring is turned on, you can also receive iPhone notifications on your Mac and keep track of Live Activities, so you don't miss a thing.



Note: Some iPhone features such as the camera and microphone aren't compatible with iPhone Mirroring. Also, some Continuity features, like Continuity Camera and AirPlay, aren't available on your Mac when using iPhone Mirroring.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.

- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- Your devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Your iPhone has iOS 18 or later and your Mac has macOS Sequoia or later.
- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for iPhone Mirroring.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

To use iPhone Mirroring, it must be available in your country or region. iPhone Mirroring isn't currently available in the European Union.

If iPhone Mirroring isn't available in your country or region, iPhone Mirroring tells you that it's unable to connect to your iPhone for that reason.

Set up iPhone Mirroring on your Mac

1. Make sure your iPhone is turned on and nearby, with the screen locked.

   Note: Your iPhone must be nearby to use iPhone Mirroring.

2. Go to the iPhone Mirroring app on your Mac.
3. Click Connect.
4. Enter your iPhone passcode, then choose one of the following:

   - *Ask Every Time:* Receive a prompt for Touch ID, Face ID, or your device passcode each time you use iPhone Mirroring.
   - *Authenticate Automatically:* Automatically connect to iPhone Mirroring without needing to authenticate.

     Note: If you see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

5. Choose whether or not to Allow Notifications from iPhone.

Choose which iPhone to use with iPhone Mirroring

You can set up more than one iPhone to use with iPhone Mirroring on your Mac, but you can only connect to one iPhone at a time.

1. Go to the iPhone Mirroring app on your Mac.
2. Click iPhone Mirroring Settings, then click Change iPhone.
3. Under Widgets, click the iPhone pop-up menu, then choose your iPhone.

You can also open the System Settings app on your Mac and click Desktop & Dock in the sidebar (you may need to scroll down). Under Widgets, choose your iPhone from the iPhone pop-up menu.

Use iPhone Mirroring on your Mac

1. Make sure your iPhone is turned on and nearby, with the screen locked.
2. Go to the iPhone Mirroring app on your Mac.
3. Click Continue.
4. Do any of the following:

    - *Click to tap:* Click your Mac computer's mouse or trackpad to tap. You can also swipe and scroll in the iPhone Mirroring app, and use your keyboard to type.
    - *Open the App Switcher:* Move your pointer to the top of the iPhone Mirroring screen until the menu bar appears, then click to open the App Switcher.
    - *Go to the Home Screen:* If you're in an app and want to return to the Home Screen, move your pointer to the top of the iPhone Mirroring screen until the menu bar appears, then click .
    - *Rearrange your Home Screen and perform quick actions:* On the Home Screen, Control-click any app, then click Edit Home Screen. You can also Control-click an app and choose to turn some apps into widgets or to perform quick actions, like creating a new note in Notes or sending your location in Maps.

When you open an iPhone widget on your Mac, it opens in the iPhone Mirroring app.

Get iPhone notifications on your Mac

When you set up iPhone Mirroring, you can also turn on iPhone notifications. iPhone notifications appear on your Mac with an iPhone badge, so you know which notifications are from your iPhone.

Note: Your iPhone doesn't have to be nearby for its notifications to appear on your Mac, but it must be turned on.

If you didn't choose to turn on iPhone notifications when you set up iPhone Mirroring and you want to turn it on, or if you want to choose which apps send notifications to your Mac, do either of the following:

- *On your iPhone*: Go to Settings > Notifications, choose any app, then turn "Show on Mac" on or off.
- *On your Mac*: Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click Notifications in the sidebar (you may need to scroll down), then click "Allow notifications from iPhone." Under Mirror iPhone Notifications From, turn the option on or off for any app.

View Live Activities from iPhone on your Mac

When you set up iPhone Mirroring, Live Activities from your iPhone appear in the menu bar on your Mac.

1. On your Mac, click the Live Activity in the menu bar to view more information.
2. Do any of the following:

    - Click the Live Activity again to open the relevant app in the iPhone Mirroring app on your Mac.
    - Click outside of the Live Activity to close it, but continue to see it in the menu bar.
    - Move the pointer over the Live Activity, then click to close the Live Activity and remove it from the menu bar.

Transfer files using iPhone Mirroring

You can transfer files, photos, videos, and more between your Mac and iPhone in supported apps using iPhone Mirroring. To transfer a file, simply drag and drop it from your Mac to the iPhone Mirroring app window, or vice versa.

Turn off iPhone Mirroring

1. On your iPhone, go to the Settings app.

2. Tap General, tap AirPlay & Continuity, then tap iPhone Mirroring.
3. Tap AirPlay & Continuity, then tap iPhone Mirroring.
4. Tap Edit in the top right, then select a Mac to remove.

If iPhone Mirroring isn't working

- Make sure that you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- If you have more than one iPhone set up for iPhone Mirroring, you can choose which iPhone you want to use. On your Mac, go to iPhone Mirroring Settings, click Change iPhone, then choose your iPhone.
- For additional troubleshooting steps, see "If you need help" at the bottom of the Apple support article iPhone Mirroring.

See also

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac

Insert sketches, photos, and scans from your iPhone on Mac

Previous
Hand off tasks between devices

Next
Copy and paste between devices

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPhone as your Mac webcam or microphone, and take advantage of the powerful iPhone camera and additional video effects. You can connect wirelessly, or with a USB cable for a wired connection.

You can use your iPhone as a webcam with Continuity Camera on an iPhone and Mac.

You can also use your iPhone as a webcam when making a FaceTime call on Apple TV. To learn more, see Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later).



Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.
- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Set up your iPhone for Continuity Camera

1. Mount your iPhone using an iPhone-compatible mount or stand in landscape orientation. It must be near your Mac (within 30 feet) in a stable position, with its rear camera facing you.
2. To turn on Continuity Camera, go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
3. Tap General, then tap AirPlay & Continuity.
4. Turn on Continuity Camera.

Continuity Camera works wirelessly, though you can also use Continuity Camera by connecting your iPhone to your Mac with a USB cable. You can use the cable that came with your iPhone or another cable that matches the ports on your iPhone and Mac.

Note: If you connect your iPhone and Mac with a cable and see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

Use your iPhone as a webcam for Mac

1. On your Mac, open any app that has access to the camera or microphone, like FaceTime or Photo Booth. You can also use this feature with many third-party apps that access the camera or microphone.
2. In the app's menu bar or settings, choose your iPhone as a camera.

   Note: The location of these settings can vary depending on the app. For instance, in FaceTime, click in the menu bar, then choose your iPhone. Or in Magnifier, click Camera in the menu bar, then choose your iPhone. See Choose an external camera on Mac for guidance on where to find these settings in other apps.

   Your iPhone begins streaming audio or video from the rear camera to your Mac.

3. To control video or audio, do any of the following:

    - *Pause the video or audio:* On your iPhone, tap Pause. You can also unlock your iPhone to pause video or audio by swiping up.

    - *Resume the video or audio:* On your iPhone, tap Resume. You can also resume by locking your iPhone.

    - *Stop using your iPhone as a webcam or microphone:* On your Mac, quit the app.

      Note: If you need to charge your iPhone while Continuity Camera is turned on, use a USB cable for best results.

While streaming video or audio, you can move your iPhone and change its orientation. Remember, however, that for best results, keep your iPhone mounted and in landscape orientation.

When using your iPhone as a webcam, you can use video effects like Portrait mode and Center Stage. See Use video conferencing features on Mac.

Turn on Desk View

You can use Desk View and other video effects when you're using an app that supports video and have set up your iPhone as a webcam.

1. On your Mac, do either of the following:

    - *FaceTime:* Start your video call, click ··· in the bottom of the video window, then choose Desk View.

    - *Other apps that support video:* Click in the menu bar, then click the Desk View button.

2. Click Share Desk View.

    Desk View opens, which mimics an overhead camera and shows a top-down view of your desk.

3. Use the Desk View setup window on your Mac to align your desk with the camera. To zoom in or out, drag the onscreen control at the bottom of the window. When you're ready to share your desk view on the video call, click Share Desk View.

    Note: To share what's on your desk in a third-party app, use the app's screen sharing feature to select the Desk View window for sharing. To find out how, see the developer's instructions or explore the app's menus and settings.

4. To turn off Desk View, click ⊗ to close the window.

Use your iPhone as a microphone for your Mac

You can use your iPhone as a microphone on a Mac that doesn't have a built-in or external microphone.

1. On your Mac, go to the System Settings app ⚙.
2. Click Sound 🔊 in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. Click Input, then select your iPhone in the list of sound input devices.

   Note: In order to use your iPhone as a microphone on a Mac, the iPhone must be in landscape orientation and stationary, with its screen turned off.

Remove your iPhone as a webcam or microphone option for your Mac

On your iPhone, tap Disconnect, then confirm that you want to disconnect. iPhone

Your iPhone is removed from the camera and microphone lists in apps, and also from the list of sound input devices in Sound settings.

To reconnect your iPhone as a webcam or microphone, connect it to your Mac with a USB cable, then follow the steps to use your iPhone as a webcam or use your iPhone as a microphone, above.

If Continuity Camera isn't working

- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another and, for best results, your iPhone should be mounted and in landscape orientation.
- Connect your iPhone to your Mac with a USB cable and check again. (If it's already connected with a cable, disconnect and reconnect it.) If your iPhone asks you to trust the computer or your Mac asks you to allow the accessory, be sure to give permission.
- Make sure that you aren't using another Continuity feature, such as iPhone Mirroring.
- Check that your devices meet minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera.

- For additional troubleshooting steps, see “If you need help” at the bottom of the Apple Support article Continuity Camera.

See also

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

Previous
Share your internet connection

Next
Insert sketches, photos, and scans on Mac

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Start SharePlay by holding two iPhone devices close together

With SharePlay, you can instantly stream supported content, listen to music, play games, and more in sync with a friend by holding your iPhone close to your friend's iPhone.

Start SharePlay

1. On your iPhone, in an app that supports SharePlay, tap the content you want to share.
2. Hold your iPhone next to the iPhone of the person you want to share with.

   If they're not in your contacts (or vice versa), you first need to share your contact information with them. See Use NameDrop on iPhone.
3. Tap SharePlay.

   The person you want to share with can accept or decline your SharePlay invitation.

Note: iOS 17 or later is required on both iPhone devices. AirDrop must be turned on, and the sender and recipient must be included in each other's contacts. Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie or TV show together, each participant must have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the minimum system requirements. SharePlay might not support sharing some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions.

See also

Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later)

Table of Contents

Insert sketches, photos, and scans from your iPhone on Mac

With the Continuity Sketch and Continuity Camera features, you can draw a sketch, take a photo, or scan a document using your nearby iPhone and have it appear instantly on your Mac, exactly where you want it—for example, in an email, note, or folder. You can also mark up a file on your Mac with your iPhone using Continuity Markup.

You can use Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup with your iPhone and a Mac.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.
- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- Your devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Depending on where the photo or scan is inserted, you can mark it up or adjust other aspects, such as crop it or apply a filter.

Insert a sketch, photo, or scan from your iPhone

You can draw a sketch on your iPhone and have it appear on your Mac with Continuity Sketch, or take a photo or scan a document on your iPhone and have it appear on your Mac with Continuity Camera.

1. On your Mac, Control-click where you want to insert the sketch or photo—for example, in an open window, like a note or email message.

   You can also Control-click the desktop or a folder in a Finder window.

2. Choose an option from the pop-up menu.

   You may need to click “Insert from iPhone or iPad” before seeing the options.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a sketch:* On your iPhone, draw a sketch using your finger.
   - *Take a photo:* On your iPhone, take a photo, then tap Use Photo or Retake.
   - *Scan a document:* On your iPhone, scan a document. Your iPhone detects the edges of the document and autocorrects any skewing of the image. If you want to adjust the area included in the scan, drag the frame or its edges. When you’re ready, tap Keep Scan or Retake. You can continue to scan documents until you’re done, then tap Save.

On your Mac, the sketch, picture, or scan appears in the location you chose in step 1. If you added it from the desktop or a folder, it appears as a file.

Depending on where the photo or scan is inserted, you can mark it up or adjust other aspects, such as crop it or apply a filter.

To use a scanner with your Mac, see Scan images or documents using a scanner and your Mac.

Note: Scans you take on your iPhone aren’t saved on the device.

Use your iPhone to mark up a file on your Mac

Use your iPhone to add text, make drawings, rotate, and crop images, PDF documents, and more on your Mac, called Continuity Markup.

1. On your Mac, click the desktop to open the Finder.
2. Control-click the file you want to mark up, choose Quick Actions, then choose Markup.

   The file opens.

3. In the toolbar, click or click (the button may have an arrow next to it), then choose your device.
4. Use the Markup tools to draw, add text or shapes, and more.

5. When you're done, tap Done on your iPhone.
6. To save your changes, click Done on your Mac.

If Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, or Continuity Markup aren't working:

- Make sure you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- Make sure that both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on.
- Make sure that your devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- Make sure your device meets minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera.

See also

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices

Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac

Previous
Use iPhone as a webcam

Next
Start SharePlay instantly

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay

With AirPlay, you can stream video and audio from your iPhone to a nearby Mac or TV. You can also mirror what's on your iPhone screen.

You can use AirPlay with your iPhone and a Mac, an Apple TV, or another TV.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi turned on and are connected to the same network.
- If you're streaming between your own Apple devices, it's useful to sign in to the same Apple Account.
- To use AirPlay to stream content to a Mac, both devices meet minimum system requirements.
- To use AirPlay to stream content to a TV, make sure you're using Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Set up a Mac to allow streaming from your iPhone

1. On a Mac, go to the System Settings app.
2. Click General in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. Click AirDrop & Handoff, then turn on AirPlay Receiver.
4. Click the pop-up menu next to "Allow AirPlay for" and choose the devices that can use AirPlay to stream content to this Mac.

- *Allow only your devices:* If you only want to allow AirPlay from devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, select "Current user."
- *Allow any device:* Select "Anyone on the Same Network" or Everyone.

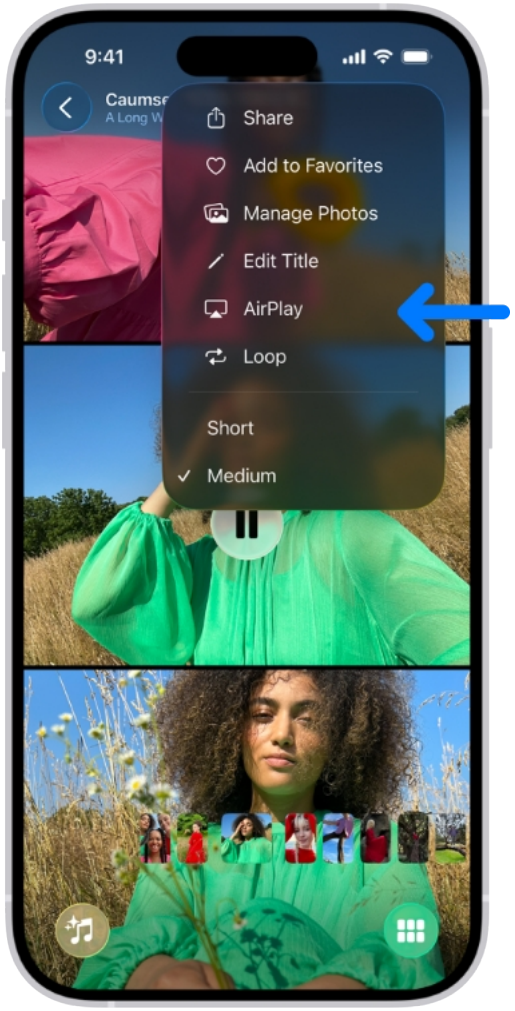
5. To require a password to use AirPlay with the Mac, select the option, then enter a password.

Stream photos or videos from your iPhone to your Mac or TV

You can stream photos and videos from your iPhone to a Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

1. On your iPhone, find the photo or video that you want to stream.
2. Tap .

   Note: In some apps, you may need to tap a different button first, like .



3. Choose your Mac or TV from the list.

4. Use the playback controls on your iPhone.
5. To stop streaming, on your iPhone, tap , then tap Turn Off AirPlay.

   Tip: You can set up your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any Apple TV or smart TV that you use frequently when you play content from apps that you use regularly with AirPlay. To turn this feature on or off on your iPhone, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity, tap the Automatically AirPlay pop-up menu, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

Mirror your iPhone on a Mac or TV

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then choose your Mac or TV as the playback destination.

To switch back, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

Play audio from your iPhone on a Mac or TV

You can use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPhone to a Mac or TV. If you're streaming to your Mac, make sure you've set up the Mac to allow streaming from another device first. See Allow streaming from another device.

1. Go to an audio app (such as Podcasts or Music) on your iPhone, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.

You can also use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPhone to a HomePod. To learn more, see Play audio on HomePod using an iOS or iPadOS device.

Use AirPlay in your hotel room

If you stay in a hotel room with a TV that supports AirPlay, you can use it to play movies, TV shows, music, and more from your iPhone.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. If it's not already on, turn on the room's TV and locate the AirPlay QR code.
3. Scan the QR code with your iPhone camera, then follow the onscreen instructions to connect to your hotel Wi-Fi (if you're not already connected) and the room's TV.

4. Use your iPhone to display content on the TV screen by streaming photos or videos, mirroring your screen, or playing audio. Choose your hotel TV as the playback destination.
5. To stop streaming or mirroring, tap the AirPlay or Screen Mirroring button (or) on your iPhone, then tap your iPhone in the list or tap Stop Mirroring.

Note: AirPlay in hotels isn't available in all countries or regions.

If AirPlay isn't working

- Make sure that both of your devices are on the same network.
- Check that your Mac is set up to allow streaming from another device.
- See the Apple Support article If screen mirroring or streaming isn't working on your AirPlay-compatible device.

See also

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

Previous
Copy and paste between devices

Next
Allow phone calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Use iPhone to allow calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac

You can relay phone calls and text messages through your iPhone to your iPad or Mac, so it's easy to stay in touch no matter which device you're on.

Note: Cellular charges may apply. Wi-Fi Calling isn't available from all carriers.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi turned on and are connected to the same Wi-Fi network.
- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- You're signed in to FaceTime with the same Apple Account and have your phone number turned on in FaceTime settings on both devices. See Get started with FaceTime on iPhone and Sign in to or out of FaceTime on Mac.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration doesn't prevent local networking, as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Set up your iPhone to allow phone calls on your other devices

1. On your iPhone, go to the Settings app  .
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Calls on Other Devices, turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices, then choose the devices you want to allow to make and receive calls.

The devices you choose can make and receive calls when they're near your iPhone, connected to the same Wi-Fi network, and signed in to the same Apple Account.

Make or receive phone calls on your iPad or Mac

After you set up your iPhone to allow calls on your other devices, you can make and receive phone calls on your iPad and Mac.

- *Make a call:* On your iPad or Mac, tap or click a phone number in Contacts, Calendar, FaceTime, Messages, Search, or Safari. Or open the Phone app, tap or click and type a number, or search for a contact.

  If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- *Receive a call:* On your iPad or Mac, swipe, tap, or click the notification to answer or ignore the call.

For more information on how to use the Phone app on your Mac, see Make or receive calls in the Phone app.

Send and receive messages on your iPad or Mac

You can send and receive messages—both iMessage and SMS/RCS/MMS messages—on your iPad or Mac. For more information on iMessage and SMS/RCS/MMS messages, see What is the difference between iMessage, RCS, and SMS/MMS?

To send and receive iMessages on iPad, see Set up iMessage on iPad. To send and receive iMessages on Mac, see Set up iMessage on Mac.

To send and receive SMS/RCS/MMS messages on your iPad and Mac, see Access your messages on all your Apple devices.

If phone calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac aren't working

- Make sure that you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.
- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have Wi-Fi turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.

- If you're having difficulty getting text messages to work, see the Apple Support article Forward text messages from your iPhone to other devices.

In addition to making and receiving phone calls on your iPad or Mac, you can also use Handoff to transfer a FaceTime call from one device to another. See Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPad to your other Apple devices for iPad and Move a FaceTime call to another device for Mac.

For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling.

See also

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices

Get started with FaceTime on iPhone

Set up Messages on iPhone

Previous
Stream video and audio from your iPhone

Next
Share your internet connection

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

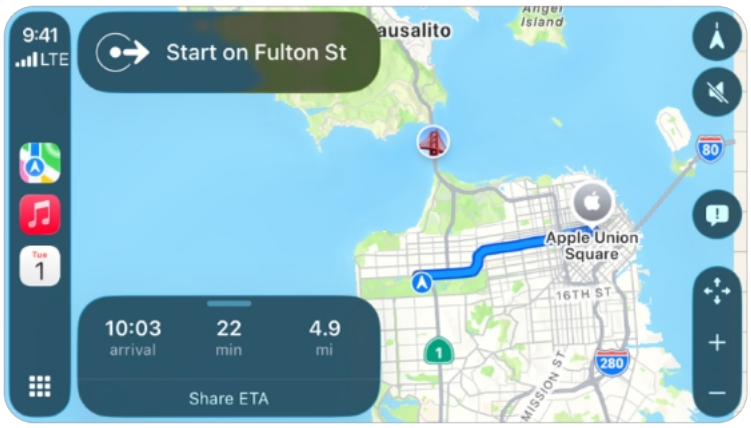
iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Maps to get turn-by-turn directions, traffic conditions, and estimated travel time (not available in all regions).

Note: To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Location Services must be on. (See Control the location information you share on iPhone.)



Find a route

CarPlay generates likely destinations using addresses from your email, text messages, contacts, and calendars—as well as places you frequent. You can also search for a location, use locations you saved as favorites and in collections, and find nearby attractions and services.

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Maps in CarPlay and select a route.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Maps doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ☐ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Maps.

1. With Maps open in CarPlay, do one of the following:

   - Select a place you saved as a favorite. (See Add places and notes to your Places in Maps on iPhone.)

- Select Destinations, then select a recent destination or scroll to select a destination you saved in a collection. (See Organize places with custom guides in Maps on iPhone.)

- Select Search, then select to speak a search phrase, or select to use the onscreen keyboard (if available). You can also select a destination from a category of nearby services, such as Parking or Restaurants.

2. If multiple routes appear, use your vehicle's controls to select the route you prefer.
3. To call your destination before you leave, select .
4. To start turn-by-turn directions, select Go.

Maps shows directions from your current location.

When you arrive at your destination and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker appears in Maps on iPhone so you can easily find your way back to your vehicle.

Follow turn-by-turn directions

As CarPlay follows your progress, it speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

Do any of the following at any time during your trip:

- *Add a stop to your driving directions:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Add Stop, then choose a destination or use Siri to search for one.
- *End directions at any time:* Say something to Siri like "Stop navigating," or select the estimated time of arrival (ETA) display at the bottom left, then choose End Route.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions:* Tap , then choose to mute all directions.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions, except for alerts and hazards:* Tap , then choose .
- *Make a quick detour:* Say something to Siri like "Find a gas station." Or select the ETA display, select Search, select a suggested service, then choose a destination.
- *Share your ETA:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Share ETA, then choose one or more suggested contacts.

  People using devices with iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using devices with earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message. (Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.)

To stop sending ETA information, select Sharing ETA at the bottom of the CarPlay screen, then choose a contact.

Note: For navigation apps that support the CarPlay Dashboard, Dashboard shows the last navigation app opened if no apps are navigating, the one that is actively navigating, or the last opened and actively navigating app if multiple apps are navigating.

See also

Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

Previous
Use your vehicle's built-in controls

Next
Report traffic incidents

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

View Live Activities in CarPlay

You can view app activities on CarPlay Dashboard so you can easily follow their progress—for example, directions in the Maps app, live sports updates, food delivery estimates, and more. These are the same Live Activity settings you see on iPhone, but you can adjust them.

1. Go to the Settings app on iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap the app whose settings you want to change, then tap Live Activities.

See also

Change settings in CarPlay

Previous
Change the map view

Next
Customize widgets

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

In select regions and countries, you can report accidents, hazards, speed checks, and road work (features vary by region and country).

Report an incident

With turn-by-turn directions showing, select, then choose from one of the available options.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers for Accident, Hazard, and Road Work are displayed in Maps for other users.

Note: Speed checks are not displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you follow turn-by-turn directions.

Report on the status of a hazard or accident

Incident markers show information about hazards and accidents. When you're near their locations, you can report their status.

1. Select the incident marker.
2. Select Cleared or Still Here.

   Note: You can't clear reports of speed checks.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in reports that an incident has been cleared, its incident marker is removed from Maps.

Note: Apple is committed to keeping personal information safe and private. To learn more, go to Settings > Apps > Maps, then tap "See how your data is managed."

See also

Change the map view in CarPlay

Previous
Get turn-by-turn directions

Next
Change the map view

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay

CarPlay works with your vehicle's built-in controls—for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad. To learn how to operate your display, see the owner's guide that came with your vehicle.

- *Open an app:* Tap the app on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select the app, then press the knob.
- *Switch between CarPlay Dashboard and CarPlay Home:* CarPlay Dashboard displays several items you likely want to view or control, such as driving directions, audio playback, and suggestions from Siri. CarPlay Home shows all your CarPlay apps organized into pages.

  To go to CarPlay Home, tap ▢ on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select ▢, then press the knob.

  To go to CarPlay Dashboard, tap ⁘, or turn the rotary knob to select ⁘, then press the knob.
- *Return to your vehicle's Home Screen:* Select the icon with your vehicle's logo if it appears on CarPlay Home or, if available, the physical Home button on your radio.
- *Return to a recently used app:* Tap its icon on the edge of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to the icon, then press the knob.
- *View additional apps:* If you have more than eight apps, some may appear on another page of CarPlay Home. To view them, swipe left on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob. (See Use other apps with CarPlay.)
- *Scroll quickly through a list:* Tap the letters in the list on the right side of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob.

- *Control audio playback:* Use the audio playback controls on CarPlay Dashboard. Or from CarPlay Home, select Now Playing to view and control the current audio app.

See also

Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Previous
Connect to CarPlay

Next
Get turn-by-turn directions

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Connect iPhone to CarPlay

Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

1. Start your car, then make sure Siri is on.
2. Connect your iPhone to your car:
   - *If your car supports CarPlay with a USB cable:* Plug your iPhone into the USB port in your car. The USB port might be labeled with a CarPlay icon or a smartphone icon. Be sure to use an Apple USB Cable.
   - *If your car supports CarPlay both wirelessly and with a USB cable:* Plug your iPhone into the USB port in your car. The next time you attempt to connect your iPhone to CarPlay, an alert on your iPhone allows you to connect wirelessly.
   - *If your car supports only wireless CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel. Make sure that your stereo is in wireless or Bluetooth mode. Then on your iPhone, go to Settings > Wi-Fi, and make sure that Wi-Fi is also turned on. Tap the CarPlay network, and check that Auto-Join is turned on. Then, go to Settings > General > CarPlay, and select your car. Check your car manual for more information.

Note: After connecting to CarPlay on some electric vehicles, use the Maps app to identify the vehicle for EV routing. See Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone.

On some vehicle models, CarPlay Home appears automatically when you connect iPhone.

If CarPlay Home doesn't appear, select the CarPlay logo on your vehicle's display.



See also

Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay

Previous
Intro to CarPlay

Next
Use your vehicle's built-in controls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

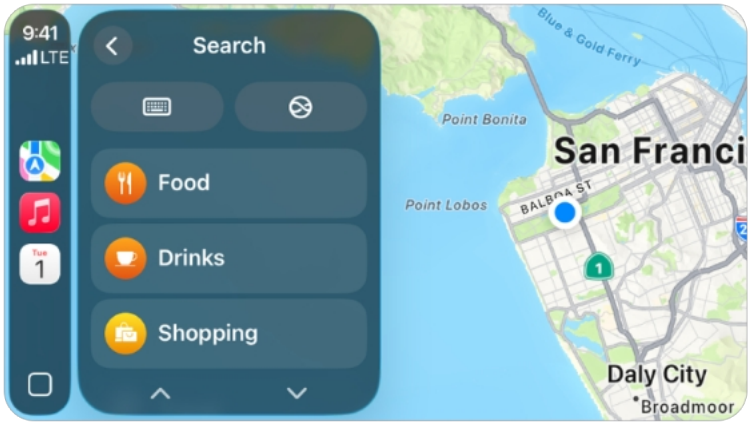
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change the map view in CarPlay

Find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.



When you follow turn-by-turn directions, you can tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Switch between detailed and high-level views:* To see a detailed 3D map with your heading at the top of the screen, select . To see the route overview in 2D with north at the top of the screen, select .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select + or −.
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow on one of the edges of the screen. To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap Resume.

  On some touchscreens, you can also drag the map to scroll it.

You can also change the map view when not following directions. Tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Show your current location:* Tap . Your position is marked in the middle of the map.

- *View a 3D map:* Tap 3D. To return to a 2D map, tap 2D.
- *Show your heading at the top of the screen:* Tap . To resume showing north at the top, tap .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select + or −.
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow at the edges of the screen. When finished, tap Done.
- *Switch between detailed and high-level views:* To see a detailed 3D map with your heading at the top of the screen, select . To see the route overview in 2D with north at the top of the screen, select .

See also

Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay

Previous
Report traffic incidents

Next
View Live Activities

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Customize widgets in CarPlay

View and customize widgets in CarPlay to allow quick access to your most important information at a glance.

Add a widget for CarPlay

1. When you're not driving, go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, tap CarPlay, then tap your car.
3. Tap Widgets, then tap Add Widgets.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to add a widget.

Note: The number of widget stacks you see depends on your vehicle's CarPlay screen.

Rearrange or remove CarPlay widgets

1. When you're not driving, go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap CarPlay, then tap your car.
3. Tap Widgets, then drag to rearrange a widget, or tap to remove it.

Turn on Smart Rotate or Widget Suggestions

1. When you're not driving, go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap CarPlay, then tap your car.
3. Tap Widgets, then turn on Smart Rotate or Widget Suggestions.

See also

Change settings in CarPlay

Previous
View Live Activities

Next
Make phone calls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Play music with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Music in CarPlay to play music that's available on your iPhone—including songs, artists, albums, playlists, and Radio.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control music playback.

You can also play music together using SharePlay. See Play music together in the car using SharePlay and CarPlay on iPhone.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ☐ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Music.

Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current song.
	Skip to the next song. When pressed and held, fast forward through the current song.
	Return to the song's beginning. When pressed again, return to the previous song. When pressed and held, rewind through the current song.
	Play songs in random order.
	Continually repeat the current song.
	Display controls to create a custom station based on the current song and to rate the current song.
Up Next	Display a list of songs queued for playback. (You can select a song from the list to skip the songs that proceed it.)

On some systems, Now Playing displays only a partial list of choices while you're driving. To choose among options not in the list, select More at the bottom of the screen, or use Siri by pressing and holding the voice command button on your steering wheel.

See also

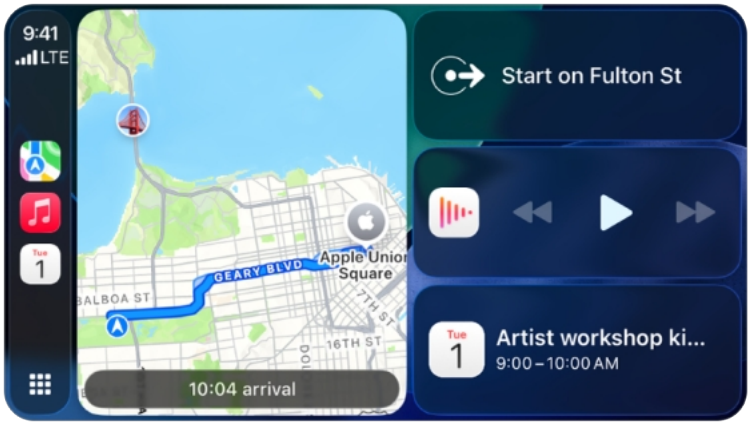
Apple Music Classical User Guide

View your calendar with CarPlay

Table of Contents

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Connect your iPhone to CarPlay to get turn-by-turn directions, make phone calls, listen to music, check your calendar, and more—all from your vehicle's display.



Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website).

CarPlay is available on select automobiles (see the CarPlay Available Models website) and on select aftermarket navigation systems.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

See also

Connect iPhone to CarPlay

Table of Contents

Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone.

You can also use your vehicle's built-in controls to help make a call.

Open Phone in CarPlay, then select an option.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Phone doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ☐ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Phone.

See also

Play music with CarPlay

Previous
Customize widgets

Next
Play music

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Control your home from CarPlay

You can use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or use Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as garage doors, lights, and door locks.

See also

Use other apps with CarPlay

Control your home

Previous
Listen to news stories

Next
Use other apps with CarPlay

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use other apps with CarPlay

You can use Siri with CarPlay to access many of the apps on iPhone, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and more.

CarPlay works with select third-party apps that you download to your iPhone. Compatible apps—including audio, navigation, messaging, and voice-calling apps, and apps made by your vehicle manufacturer—appear automatically on CarPlay Home and can be controlled with Siri. For example, you can use Siri to give you directions from your favorite navigation app. CarPlay also works with additional third-party apps for EV charging, parking, and quick food ordering.

Note: Compatible third-party navigation apps appear on CarPlay Dashboard while in use. When you're not actively navigating, or if you're navigating using more than one app, CarPlay Dashboard displays the last compatible navigation app that was used.

See also

Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

Previous
Control your home

Next
Rearrange icons on CarPlay Home

Table of Contents

Play podcasts with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Podcasts and select a podcast to play.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ▢ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Podcasts.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control podcast playback.

Button	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Jump back 15 seconds
	Jump forward 30 seconds
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed

See also

Play audiobooks with CarPlay

Table of Contents

Change settings in CarPlay

In Settings in CarPlay, you can change the Wallpaper, turn on Driving Focus, change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard on or off, and show or hide album art.

Use the Driving Focus with CarPlay

The Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. While your iPhone is connected to CarPlay and Driving Focus is on, notifications and text messages are silenced or limited.

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

   Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Settings doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ☐ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Settings.

2. Go to Driving Focus, then select Activate With CarPlay.

If you receive a Driving Focus notification when you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger) you can turn it off—tap the notification, then tap "I'm not driving."

Switch the appearance of CarPlay

CarPlay is set to dark appearance by default in most vehicles. If you prefer to have CarPlay automatically switch between dark and light appearance, do the following:

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.
2. Select Appearance.
3. Select Always Dark.

The dark appearance is optimized for viewing in low-light environments, such as at night.

Change the wallpaper in CarPlay

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, select Wallpaper, then choose one of the available options.

Hide or show suggestions on CarPlay Dashboard

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Suggestions in CarPlay off or on.

Hide or show album art

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Show Album Art off or on.

Capture screenshots from CarPlay

1. Go to the Settings on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Screen Capture.
3. Turn on CarPlay Screenshots.
4. While connected to CarPlay, take a screenshot with iPhone to also capture a screenshot of CarPlay.

See also

Play music with CarPlay

Previous
Rearrange icons on CarPlay Home

Next
Get started with accessibility features

Table of Contents

Announce incoming text messages with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to have Siri automatically read your incoming text messages and listen for your response.

- On your iPhone, go to Settings > Announce Messages, then turn on Announce Notifications.

Note: You can also enable or disable Announce Messages directly in CarPlay by tapping Announce when Siri reads an incoming text message. See Have Siri announce notifications.

See also

Play podcasts with CarPlay

Previous
Send and receive text messages

Next
Play podcasts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

1. When you're not operating your vehicle, open Settings on your iPhone, go to General > CarPlay, select your vehicle, then tap Customize.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *Move an icon:* Drag ☰ up or down in the list.
   - *Remove an icon:* Tap ⊖ next to the icon, then tap Remove.

     Only icons that have ⊖ next to them can be removed.
   - *Add an icon back to CarPlay:* Below More Apps at the bottom of the page, tap ⊕ next to the icon.



Your icon changes appear on CarPlay Home the next time you connect to CarPlay.

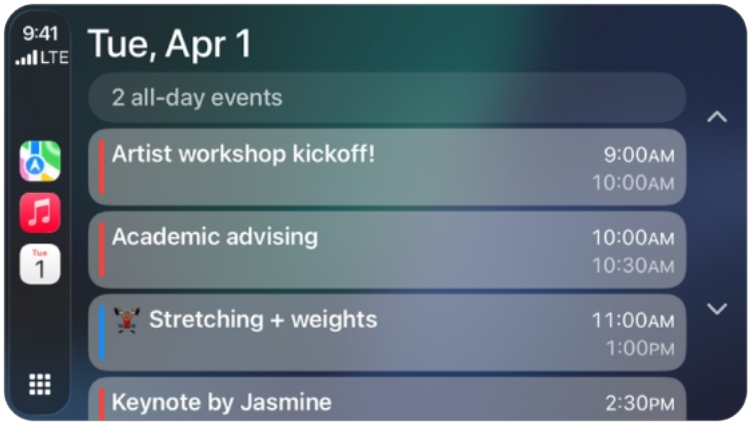
See also

Change settings in CarPlay

Table of Contents

View your calendar with CarPlay

Upcoming events appear in CarPlay Dashboard. You can also use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Calendar in CarPlay to view upcoming events.



Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ▢ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Calendar.

To see more information about an event, select it. Options may allow you to get directions to the event or phone into it.

See also

Use the Messages app with CarPlay

Previous
Play music

Next
Send and receive text messages

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use the Messages app with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.

Send and receive text messages

You can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help send and receive messages. Open Messages in CarPlay, then do one of the following:

- *Hear unread messages or respond to a thread:* Select a conversation.
- *Start a new conversation:* Select .
- *Automatically send messages:* Skip the confirmation step when sending messages with Siri to send messages automatically, unless you ask to change or cancel it.

  In CarPlay, go to Settings > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then select Automatically Send Messages.

React with Tapbacks

Tapbacks give you a quick and easy way to respond to a message, such as a heart or thumbs-up.

When you receive a message in CarPlay, you can respond with "like that message" to give it a thumbs-up.

Or select and choose a different emoji.

Pin important conversations

Your pinned conversations from Messages on iPhone are now in the Messages app in CarPlay.

To lean how to pin a Messages conversation on iPhone, see Pin a conversation.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Messages doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ☐ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including incoming text messages with CarPlay.

Previous
View your calendar

Next
Announce incoming text messages

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Play audiobooks with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.

Or you can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Audiobooks and select a book to play. You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control audiobook playback.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ☐ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Audiobooks.

See also

Listen to news stories with CarPlay

Previous
Play podcasts

Next
Listen to news stories

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Listen to news stories with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories. If you aren't a subscriber, you can listen to story previews.

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open News and select a story to play.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and News doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ▢ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including News.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control playback.

Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current story.
	Skip to the next story.
	Jump back 15 seconds.
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed.

See also

Control your home from CarPlay

Table of Contents

Use accessibility features during iPhone setup

iPhone has accessibility features that you can turn on the first time you turn on your iPhone, to make it easier to set up and personalize other iPhone features.

Hear what's onscreen with VoiceOver

VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—tells you what's happening onscreen.

1. After iPhone is turned on, triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to turn on VoiceOver.
2. Do any of the following and more:

   - *Speak the entire screen:* Swipe up with two fingers.
   - *Find out what you're touching:* Touch the screen or drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. Swipe right to elect the next item. Tap with four fingers near the top to select the first item on the screen.
   - *Select an item:* Tap to select a button or link, and activate it by double-tapping.
   - *Scroll to another page:* Swipe with three fingers.
   - *Open the onscreen rotor:* Turn two fingers on the screen, as if rotating a dial. See Control VoiceOver using the rotor.

Note: When VoiceOver is on, basic gestures don't work as usual. See Use VoiceOver gestures and Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on.

You can adjust audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, how much detail VoiceOver provides, and more in VoiceOver settings.

Zoom in on part of the screen

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers, then use the slider to set a magnification level.
2. Use three fingers to scroll around the zoomed-in screen.

See Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

Turn on other features during setup

You can turn on additional accessibility features from the Quick Start screen.

Tap to turn on or adjust settings for any of the following:

- VoiceOver
- Zoom
- Display & Text Size
- Motion
- Read & Speak
- Touch (such as AssistiveTouch and Touch Accommodations, Switch Control, or any external keyboard.)

If you've set up accessibility features on an iPhone or iPad that's nearby, you can transfer your settings to your new iPhone with Quick Start—just follow the onscreen instructions. See Turn on and set up your iPhone. (See Move from an Android device to iPhone if your previous device wasn't made by Apple.)

See also

Turn on and set up iPhone

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen

To make it easier to see what's on your iPhone screen, you can invert display colors, make transparent items solid, and modify how colors appear with color filters.

Tip: Quickly set brightness with the slider in Control Center.

Invert colors

Make the background dark so text and content stand out. This can be especially useful in apps and websites that don't support Dark Mode.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on one of the following:

   - *Smart Invert:* Reverse colors everywhere except images.
   - *Classic Invert:* Reverse all the colors onscreen.

Differentiate or tone down colors

You can apply a filter to view the entire screen in grayscale, adjust colors for color vision deficiencies, or tint the screen a color of your choosing.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Tap Color Filters, turn on Color Filters, then tap a color filter to apply it.

   You can drag any slider that appears to adjust the intensity or hue. The pencils reflect how the filter affects a range of colors.

   Note: Color filters can change the look of images and videos.

Turn on Reduce White Point to tone down the intensity of bright colors.

To have screen colors become warmer as it gets dark out, use Night Shift. Night Shift automatically removes inverted colors and color filter effects (except grayscale).

You can also use the Magnifier app to capture an image of nearby text or objects and apply a color filter to it. See Customize controls in Magnifier.

Make transparent items solid

Some backgrounds appear transparent or blurred by default. You can make these transparent backgrounds opaque by giving them a solid color. In this way you simplify those parts of your screen and make them easier to see.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Reduce Transparency.

Differentiate without color

Some screen items rely on color to convey information. You can replace these with alternative ways to tell them apart, like shapes or text.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Differentiate Without Color.

Use symbols for on/off switches

Switches turn green when they are on. You can also have switches use a vertical line to indicate when they’re on and a circle to indicate when they’re off.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

2. Turn on On/Off Labels.

To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

See also

Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone

Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone

Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
View a larger version of text you're reading or typing

Next
Make text easier to read

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone

You can quickly turn many accessibility features on or off by clicking or pressing an iPhone button or tapping the back of iPhone. You can also use Control Center, Siri, or Vocal Shortcuts.

Use the Accessibility Shortcut

Triple-click the side button or Home button to turn the accessibility features of your choice on or off.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select the features you want.

   If you select only one feature, the feature is immediately turned on or off when you click the button shortcut.

2. Triple-click one of the following:

   - The side button (on an iPhone with Face ID)
   - The Home button (on other iPhone models)

   To have iPhone recognize a slower triple-click, see Adjust settings for the side or Home button.

3. Tap the feature you want to turn on or off (if Accessibility Shortcut is set up with more than one feature).

Note: To add some features—like Assistive Access or Guided Access—to the Accessibility Shortcut, you need to set them up first. You can use the Accessibility Shortcut to enter and exit Assistive Access, but you can't use it to turn on other features while Assistive Access is active. To use the Accessibility Shortcut while Guided Access is on, you must turn on Accessibility Shortcut in Guided Access settings.

Press the Action button

On supported iPhone models, you can press the Action button to open the Magnifier app or an accessibility feature of your choice. See Use and customize the Action button.

Tap the back of iPhone

You can double- or triple-tap the back of iPhone to open an accessibility feature of your choice. See Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts.

Use Control Center

You can add accessibility features to Control Center for quick access when you swipe from and edge of the screen.

1. To change the features available in Control Center, open Control Center, tap + in the top-left corner, then tap Add a Control.
2. Tap a control to add it to Control Center. Scroll down to see more controls, including categories of controls for accessibility, hearing, mobility, and vision.

You can change which features appear when you tap in Control Center. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Control Center, then add or remove features.

Use Siri

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Turn on Voice Control." Learn how to use Siri.

Use a Vocal Shortcut

You can teach iPhone to turn on an accessibility feature when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing. See Use Vocal Shortcuts.

Use the Shortcuts app

You can create a shortcut to get one or more tasks done with your apps using just a tap or by asking Siri. For example, if you have short-term memory loss, you can use Remember This to log what happens throughout the day. You can also run the In Case of Emergency shortcut to send your location to your chosen emergency contacts, share a message with custom instructions, and display a message of your choice onscreen for first responders to see. To learn more, see Run a shortcut from the Shortcuts app on iPhone or iPad in the Shortcuts User Guide.

See also

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Previous
Change Siri accessibility settings

Next
Share your Accessibility settings with another device

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you're doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom) or magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.



Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.
2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Follow Focus:* Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.
- *Smart Typing:* Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.
- *Keyboard Shortcuts:* Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.
- *Zoom Controller:* Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.
- *Zoom Region:* Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
- *Zoom Filter:* Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
- *Maximum Zoom Level:* Drag the slider to adjust the level.

3. If you use iPhone with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:
    - *Zoom Pan:* Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.
    - *Adjust Size with Zoom:* Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.
4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.

Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or use Accessibility Shortcut to turn on Zoom.
2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:
    - *Adjust the magnification:* Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.
    - *Move the Zoom lens:* (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.
    - *Pan to another area:* (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.

3. To adjust the settings with the Zoom menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:

    - *Choose Region:* Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
    - *Resize Lens:* (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.
    - *Choose Filter:* Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
    - *Show Controller:* Show the Zoom Controller.

4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:

    - *Show the Zoom menu:* Tap the controller.
    - *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap the controller.
    - *Pan:* When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with Magic Keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the screen. See Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone.

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or use Accessibility Shortcut.

See also

Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone

Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Read or listen to text in apps with Accessibility Reader

Next
View a larger version of text you're reading or typing

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Customize iPhone in ways that work best for you with features for vision, hearing, mobility, speech, and cognitive accessibility—whether you need them temporarily or on an ongoing basis.

You can turn on accessibility features when you set up your iPhone for the first time, or at any time in Settings > Accessibility.



Vision

Use the built-in screen reader to hear what's on the screen and navigate iPhone with gestures. Or make text bigger, zoom in on the screen, adjust display colors, and more.

You can even use your iPhone as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of your surroundings if you can't see them.

Learn more about accessibility features for vision ›

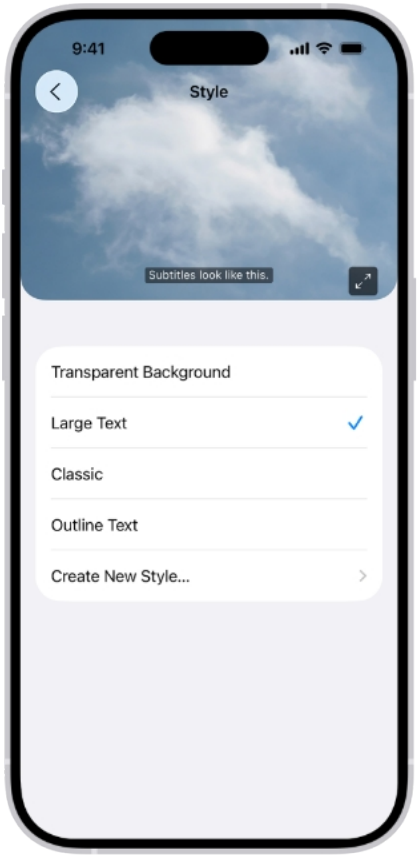
Mobility

Navigate and perform actions on iPhone using just your eyes or spoken commands. Or connect an assistive device or an external keyboard and use it to control iPhone.

You can also make it easier to use gestures and set other options so iPhone responds best to your touch.

Learn more about accessibility features for mobility ›





Hearing

Get real-time captioning of spoken audio from an app or live conversation, turn on flash notifications, have iPhone recognize sounds, and more.

You can also pair hearing devices with your iPhone, and adjust headphone audio so it's right for you. Or experience songs as taps, refined vibrations, and other haptics that are synced to the rhythm of the music.

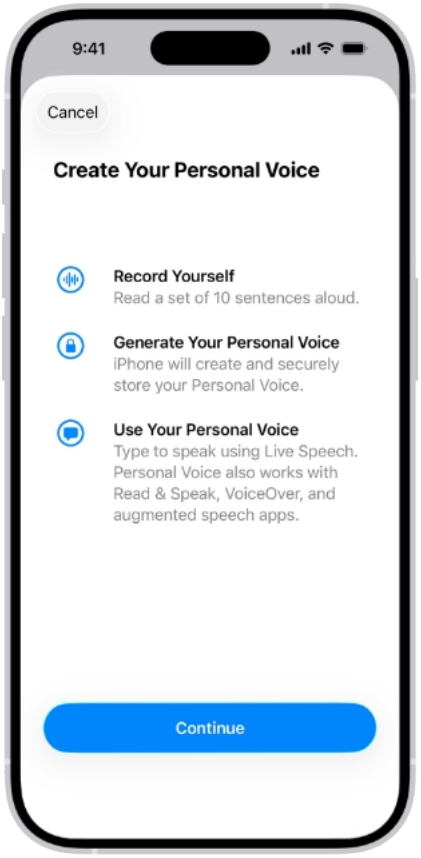
Learn more about accessibility features for hearing ›

Speech

Create a custom voice that sounds like you, or choose one of dozens of system voices, then use it to have what you type spoken out loud.

You can also have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns, or teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or sound of your choosing.

Learn more about accessibility features for speech ›





Cognitive

iOS accessibility features can help you—or someone you care for—use iPhone with greater independence. You can set up an iPhone with a simplified interface for someone with a cognitive disability, or temporarily lock iPhone to one app when you let a child use it.

Learn more about cognitive accessibility features ›

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with Siri, the click of a button, or from Control Center. See Quickly turn accessibility features on or off.

See also

Apple Accessibility website

Apple Accessibility Support website

Get started

Setup basics

Previous
Change settings in CarPlay

Next
Use accessibility features during setup

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

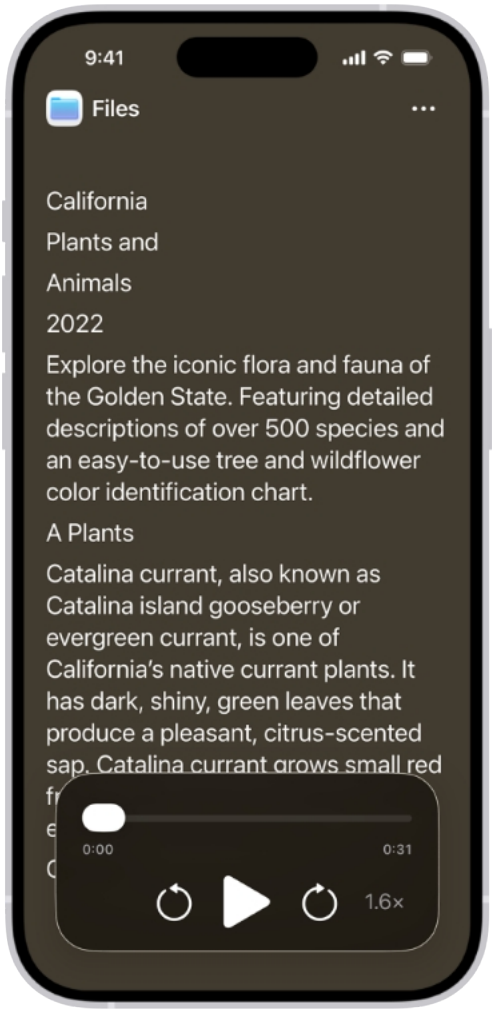
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Read or listen to text in apps with Accessibility Reader on iPhone

With Accessibility Reader on iPhone, you can read or listen to text in a full-screen view, and customize fonts, layouts, and background colors. You can use Accessibility Reader with any app on your iPhone. Accessibility Reader is also built into the Magnifier app, so you can customize text in your surroundings—like in restaurant menus or books. See view your captured text in a format for easier reading and listen to your captured text.



Turn on and use Accessibility Reader

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Read & Speak.

3. Tap Accessibility Reader, then turn on Accessibility Reader.

   Turn on Autoplay if you want Accessibility Reader to automatically read text aloud.

4. To start using Accessibility Reader, do either of the following:

   - *Use the Accessibility Shortcut:* Open an app, triple-click the side button on your iPhone, then tap Accessibility Reader.

     Note: To learn how to add Accessibility Reader to your Accessibility Shortcuts, see Use the Accessibility Shortcut.

   - *Use Control Center:* Open an app, open Control Center, then tap Accessibility Reader.

     Note: To learn how to add Accessibility Reader to your Control Center, see Customize controls.

Customize text color, font, and spacing in apps

1. Open any app on your iPhone, then open Accessibility Reader.

   See Turn on and use Accessibility Reader.

   Note: Accessibility Reader alerts you if no text is detected.

2. Tap •••, then tap AA.

3. Select a theme, then tap Edit.

4. Do any of the following:

   - *Text Color:* Choose a color or tap Custom Color.

   - *Background Color:* Choose a color or tap Custom Color.

   - *Text Size:* Drag the slider left or right to make the text smaller or larger.

   - *Font:* Choose a font.

   - *High Legibility Characters:* Turn on High Legibility Characters.

     Note: This option is only available when using System Font.

   - *Bold Text:* Turn on Bold Text.

- *Line Spacing:* Choose , , or to customize the space between lines.
- *Word Spacing:* Choose , , or to customize the space between words.
- *Character Spacing:* Choose Abc, Abc, or Abc to customize the space between characters.
- *Hyperlinks:* Turn Show Links on or off. When you turn on Show Links, you can customize the color.
- *Playback:* Turn Highlighting on or off. When you turn on Highlighting, you can customize the style or highlight color.
- *Rename:* Enter a name for the settings you choose.
- *Reset to Default:* Reset all themes to their default settings.

Tip: Rename a theme with your custom settings so you can easily find it and reuse it later.

Listen to spoken text in apps

1. Open any app on your iPhone, then open Accessibility Reader.

   See Turn on and use Accessibility Reader.

   Note: Accessibility Reader alerts you if no text is detected.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Listen to the text:* Tap ▶.
   - *Pause the text:* Tap ⏸.
   - *Skip backward or forward:* Tap ↺ or ↻.
   - *Increase or decrease the speed:* Tap 1×, then select a speed.
   - *Go to a specific time:* Drag the slider left or right.

     Note: You can hide or show audio controls in Accessibility Reader: Tap •••, then tap .

See also

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

View a larger version of text you're reading or typing on iPhone

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Previous
Overview of accessibility features for vision

Next
Zoom in

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

With built-in accessibility features for vision on iPhone, you can make it easier to see what's on the screen, or you can hear what's on the screen spoken out loud. You can even use your iPhone as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of what's around you if you can't see it.

To explore accessibility features for vision, go to Settings > Accessibility. Vision features are at the top.

Hear what's on the screen

Use Braille Access with a braille display

Turn iPhone into a braille notetaker that can launch apps, perform calculations, open Braille Ready Format (BRF) files, transcribe conversations, and more.

Use Braille Access with a braille display

Read or listen to text in apps

Customize text appearance for any app with Accessibility Reader. You can also listen to spoken text.

Read or listen to text in apps with Accessibility Reader

Control iPhone with VoiceOver

Have the built-in screen reader speak what's on the screen. Navigate your iPhone with gestures, or with a connected keyboard or braille display.

Turn on and practice VoiceOver

Speak onscreen text

Even when VoiceOver is off, have iPhone read all text on the screen, what you're typing, and more.

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Hear descriptions of video

Get spoken descriptions of visual content in movies, TV shows, and other media, when available.

Hear audio descriptions for video content

You can also have iPhone play sounds when you turn it on and off.

Tip: With Siri and Dictation, you can complete common tasks and enter text using just your voice.

Get information about your surroundings



Point at text and hear it spoken

Have iPhone read text on household appliances, ATMs, and more.

Read aloud text and labels around you



Hear about your surroundings

Hold up iPhone and get information about what your camera is pointed at, including when people, doors, or text are detected.

Get live descriptions of visual information around you



Get a closer look

Use iPhone as a magnifying glass to zoom in on items around you.

Magnify and examine objects around you

Make text and other onscreen content larger



Zoom in

Enlarge what you're viewing—the entire screen or one part of it.

Zoom in on the iPhone screen



Make text bigger and bolder

Adjust the reading size for text across iPhone apps and system features.

Make text easier to read



Enlarge text as you type

Display a separate window with a larger version of the text that you're typing.

Use Hover Typing

If you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, you can also show a larger version of text when you hover over it or make the pointer easier to see.

View what's on the screen more comfortably

Reduce onscreen motion

Pause animated images, and slow down the motion of interface elements. Or dim your display when media you're viewing depicts strobe or flashing lights.

Stop or reduce onscreen motion

Use iPhone more comfortably in a car

Get animated dots on the edges of the screen that may help reduce motion sickness.

Use iPhone more comfortably while riding as a passenger in a vehicle

Use Dark Mode

If you prefer light text on a dark background, choose a dark color scheme for the iPhone interface.

Turn Dark Mode on or off

Adjust the display colors

Differentiate content on the screen more easily by inverting colors, applying a color filter, and more.

Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut.

See also

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Apple Accessibility Support website

Adjust CarPlay accessibility settings for vision

Previous
Share your Accessibility settings with another device

Next
Read or listen to text in apps with Accessibility Reader

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Share your Accessibility settings with another device on iPhone

You can temporarily share your Accessibility settings with another iPhone or iPad. For example, if you're borrowing a friend's iPhone or using a public iPad, you can share your Accessibility settings with the other device and remove them when you're finished. Some settings you can share with another device include:

- Zoom
- Hover Text and Hover Typing
- Display & Text
- VoiceOver
- Touch Accommodations
- Read & Speak
- Full Keyboard Access
- Live Speech
- Music Haptics
- Audio & Visual
- Side Button

Note: Only your Accessibility settings will be shared with the other device during the sharing session.



Share your Accessibility settings with another device

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Share Accessibility Settings. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. Tap Share Accessibility Settings, then tap Continue.
4. Make sure both devices have Bluetooth and Wi-Fi turned on, then do one of the following:

    - *Select a device:* Tap a device in your contacts or a device signed in to your iCloud account.
    - *Bring your iPhone to another iPhone:* Hold the top of your iPhone near the top of another iPhone.
    - *Bring your iPhone to an iPad:* Tap Search People Nearby, then tap and hold the screen on the other device with three fingers to create a six-digit code. Enter the code on your device, then select the name of the device.

Note: To hear the six-digit code spoken aloud, continue to tap and hold the screen on the other device with three fingers.

5. Do either of the following on the other device to accept your request to share your accessibility settings:

   - Tap Accept.
   - Tap and hold the screen on the other device with three fingers.

6. Start using the other device with your Accessibility settings.
7. When you're finished using the device, do any of the following:

   - *iPhone models with a Dynamic Island:* Tap the Accessibility button at the top of the screen, then tap Stop Sharing.
   - *iPhone models without a Dynamic Island:* Tap the Share Accessibility Settings button in the Status Bar, then tap Stop Sharing.
   - *All iOS models:*
     - Lock your device and let it go to sleep.
     - Triple-click the side or home button.

   Note: If you move more than 30 feet away from the device you're sharing your Accessibility settings with, the session automatically ends.

You can also add Share Accessibility settings to your Control Center and start sharing directly from Control Center. See Customize controls.

Sync your Share Accessibility Settings to iCloud

If you use different Accessibility settings on different devices, you can sync your preferences to iCloud so they're available when you share Accessibility settings between different devices. For example, if you sync your iPhone settings and later use your iPad to share with another iPhone, your iPhone accessibility preferences can be used.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Share Accessibility Settings. (You may need to scroll down.)
3. Turn Sync to iCloud on or off.

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone

Previous
Quickly turn accessibility features on or off

Next
Overview of accessibility features for vision

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

You can change how quickly or when Siri responds, use text to make requests to Siri, have Siri listen for atypical speech patterns, have Siri audibly share notifications, and announce and end calls.

Tell Siri when and how to respond to requests

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Set how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking:* Below Siri Pause Time, choose Default, Longer, or Longest.
   - *Change how fast Siri speaks:* Adjust the slider below Speaking Rate.
   - *Decide when Siri responds aloud or in text:* Choose an option below Spoken Responses. You can also change when Siri responds.
   - *Use Siri even when iPhone is covered or facing down:* When you set up Siri, "Hey Siri" activates Siri only when your iPhone faces up. To change this, turn on Always Listen for "Hey Siri." Learn how to use Siri.
   - *Require "Siri" or "Hey Siri" in order to interrupt Siri:* Turn on Require "Siri" for Interruptions. This can be useful if you use VoiceOver or Voice Control and don't want VoiceOver speech or Voice Control commands to interrupt Siri.

To change how you activate Siri, see Turn on Siri and Change when Siri responds.

Type instead of speak to Siri

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.

If Apple Intelligence* is turned on, this option may not be shown. See Use Apple Intelligence with Siri.

2. To make a request, activate Siri, then interact with Siri using the keyboard and text field.

Have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns

When your primary language is set to English (U.S.), you can have Siri listen for atypical speech. This may be helpful if you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, such as cerebral palsy, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), or stroke.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Listen for Atypical Speech.

You can also teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or make a sound of your choosing. See Use Vocal Shortcuts.

Announce calls and notifications for specific apps

You can have Siri announce notifications and calls from apps like Messages on your iPhone speaker, supported headphones, when using CarPlay, and on MFi hearing devices.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Announce Notifications on Speaker.
2. Tap Announce Notifications, then for each app, choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

End calls with Siri

You can have Siri end phone and FaceTime calls.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Siri, tap Call Hangup, then turn on Call Hangup.

   Note: Available in select languages and on iPhone 11, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and later. Requires download of speech models.

2. To end a call, ask Siri something like, “Siri, hang up.” (Participants on the call will hear you.)

You can also route and automatically answer calls or have Siri announce and answer calls.

*Apple Intelligence is available in beta with support for the following languages: Chinese (Simplified), English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese (Brazil), and Spanish. Some features may not be available in all languages or regions. For more information on language and feature availability or system requirements, see the Apple Support article How to get Apple Intelligence.

See also

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone

Previous
Use accessibility features during setup

Next
Quickly turn accessibility features on or off

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

View a larger version of text you're reading or typing on iPhone

With Hover Text on iPhone, you can move the pointer over text and other items on the screen (such as icons) to view a larger version of them. Or use Hover Typing to display a separate window with a larger version of text that you're typing.

Before you begin

To use Hover Text, you need to connect a pointing device such as a trackpad or mouse with your iPhone. See the Apple Support article How to use a pointer device with AssistiveTouch on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

You don't need to connect a pointing device to use Hover Typing.

Show a larger version of text when you hover over it

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Hover Text, then turn on Hover Text.
3. Move the pointer over text to display a larger version of it.
4. If you have a connected keyboard, you need to press and hold the Control key to show the Hover Text window.

If you use iPhone with a connected keyboard, you can have the Hover Text window automatically displayed when you move the pointer over text, without needing to press and hold a key every time. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hover Text, then turn on Activation Lock. To use activation lock, quickly press the Control key three times.

You can change the key you press to activate Hover Text and activation lock. Tap Activation Modifier, then choose another key.

Show a larger version of text you're typing

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Hover Text, tap Hover Typing, then turn on Hover Typing.
3. As you type in a text entry field, a larger version of what you're typing is displayed.

   To temporarily hide the Hover Typing window, swipe on it. It reappears when you start typing again.

Customize Hover Text

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Hover Text.
3. Customize any of the following:

   - *Display mode:* Choose where to show the Hover Text or Hover Typing window—inline (near the cursor), at the top of the screen, or directly above the onscreen keyboard.
   - *Content:* Choose to show Text, Color, or Text & Color.
   - *Scrolling speed:* Choose a faster or slower speed (for scrolling in the Hover Text window when viewing large blocks of text).
   - *Font:* Choose a custom font.
   - *Size:* Adjust the slider to change your preferred reading size.
   - *Text Color:* Choose a text color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
   - *Background Color:* Choose a background color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
   - *Border color:* Choose a border color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.

Customize Hover Typing

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Accessibility, tap Hover Text, then tap Hover Typing.

3. Customize any of the following:

- *Display mode:* Choose where to show the Hover Text or Hover Typing window—inline (near the cursor), at the top of the screen, or directly above the onscreen keyboard.
- *Font:* Choose a custom font.
- *Size:* Adjust the slider to change your preferred reading size.
- *Text Color:* Choose a text color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Insertion Point Color:* Choose an insertion point color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Background Color:* Choose a background color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Border color:* Choose a border color by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Misspelled Word Color:* Choose a color for misspelled words by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.
- *Autocorrected Word Color:* Choose a color for autocorrected words by Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders.

See also

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone

Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Zoom in

Next
Change display colors

Table of Contents

Customize onscreen motion on iPhone

You can customize movement of some elements on the screen, such as:

- Motion effects for wallpaper, apps, and alerts
- Screen transitions
- Siri animations
- Typing autocompletion
- Animated full-screen and bubble effects in the Messages app
- Animated images on the web and in apps

Customize onscreen motion

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Motion.
3. Do any of the following:

    - *Reduce Motion:* Turn on. (When off, you'll see more motion, like the fluid morphing effects of Liquid Glass.)
    - *Vehicle Motion Cues:* Turn on, off, or set to automatically turn on when you're moving in a vehicle. You can also customize the appearance of the cues including the pattern, color, and visibility. (When on, dots appear and move on the screen to reduce or stop onscreen motion.)
    - *Dim Flashing Lights:* Turn on. (The display of media automatically dims when flashes or strobe effects are detected.)
    - *Auto-Play Animated Images:* Turn off. (When on, rapid animated images and moving elements such as GIFs in Messages and Safari play automatically.)

- *Auto-Play Video Previews:* Turn off. (When on, it allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.)
- *Auto-Play Message Effects:* Turn off. (When on, the Messages app automatically plays full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.)
- *Prefer Non-Blinking Cursor:* Turn on. (Stop the blinking of the vertical bar that appears at the insertion point where you're typing. If you use a braille display with iPhone, the cursor indicator on the display also stops blinking.)
- *Limit Frame Rate:* Turn on. (On models with ProMotion display technology, this limits the maximum frame rate of the display to 60 frames per second.

To apply these effects to specific apps, see Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps.

Important: Your iPhone uses an on-device algorithm to detect flashing or strobing lights included in supported media and automatically dims them on your iPhone in real time. Motion settings should not be relied upon in high-risk situations, or for the treatment of any medical condition.

See also

Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

Turn off vibration on iPhone

Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Make text easier to read

Next
Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

You can choose different color, text size, and motion settings for certain apps or for the Home Screen and App Library.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Per-App Settings.
2. Tap Add App, then choose an app from the list (or Home Screen & App Library).
3. Tap the name of the app (or Home Screen & App Library) to access its settings.

See also

Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen

Make text easier to read on iPhone

Customize onscreen motion on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

Next
Hear what's on the screen or typed

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Make text easier to read on iPhone

You can make it easier to read text on iPhone by increasing its size, making it bold, and more.



Make text bigger and bolder

You can set a single preferred text size for all supported apps (including Calendar, Mail, Messages, Notes, Settings, and more). You can also turn on bold text.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Do any of following:

- *Make text bigger:* Tap Larger Text, then drag the slider to adjust the text size.

  For additional text sizes, turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes.

- *Make text heavier:* Turn on Bold Text.

Tip: Change the size of text while you're in an app. Open Control Center, then adjust the Text Size slider AA. If you don't see the Text Size slider, tap + in the top-left corner, tap Add a Control, then tap the Text Size control.

You can also turn on Display Zoom to increase the size of text as well as interface elements like icons and buttons.

Identify tappable text

You can underline any text that performs an action when you tap it.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Button Shapes.

You can also change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen or zoom in on the screen.

See also

Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

Customize onscreen motion on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Change display colors

Next
Customize onscreen motion

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items. VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture—touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

Explore and speak items on the screen

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

Action	Gesture
Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left
Move into a group of items	Two-finger swipe right
Move out of a group of items	Two-finger swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen
Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

For more information about navigation styles, see Use flat or grouped navigation.

Scroll up, down, left, and right

Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

Action	Gesture
Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

Action	Gesture
Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double tap
Touch and hold (long press) the item	Triple tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double tap
Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”)
Edit an item’s label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double tap and hold
Lower the top half of the screen	Swipe up from the bottom of the screen with one finger, then, without lifting your finger, swipe down

Tip: As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

Action	Gesture
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.
Turn the screen curtain on or off (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is black and appears to be turned off.)	Three-finger triple tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.
Use a standard gesture	Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume. For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.
Open the Item Chooser	Two-finger triple tap. To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also use handwriting to select an item by writing its name. If you use Braille Screen Input to type braille directly on the screen, when you're not entering text, you can type to search for an item. To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").
Open the VoiceOver quick settings	Two-finger quadruple tap.
Start or stop Live Recognition	Four-finger triple tap. See Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

You can use the onscreen rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. See Control VoiceOver using the rotor.

You can use these gestures with the rotor.

Action	Gesture
Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

See also

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Change your VoiceOver settings

Next
Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPhone even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—for example, hear the battery level, who's calling, or what item your finger is on. You can also customize the VoiceOver speaking voice to suit your needs.

When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, use VoiceOver gestures.

When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the screen changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPhone.

Turn VoiceOver on or off

Important: VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPhone. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPhone.

To turn VoiceOver on or off, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn VoiceOver on or off.
- Use Control Center if you've added VoiceOver there.
- Use the Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up to turn on VoiceOver.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Turn on VoiceOver." Learn how to use Siri.

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on and often reads more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.

Use an interactive tutorial to learn VoiceOver

You can learn VoiceOver basics and practice essential gestures with the interactive VoiceOver Tutorial.

With VoiceOver turned on, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap VoiceOver Tutorial to get started.

Practice VoiceOver gestures

You can use the VoiceOver Practice area to safely try out VoiceOver gestures and hear what they do—without performing any action or otherwise affecting iPhone.

Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.
3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:
    - Tap
    - Double tap
    - Triple tap
    - Swipe left, right, up, or down
4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.

See also

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Table of Contents

Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPhone

If you can't see your screen and your content includes audio descriptions, you can listen to an audio description—a separate audio track that narrates or describes the visual content of a clip, show, or movie.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.
2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.

If you don't see audio descriptions, see the Apple Support article Turn on audio descriptions on your iPhone or iPad.

If you're a content creator and want to add audio descriptions to a file, see Add descriptive audio tracks in the Compressor User Guide.

See also

Customize onscreen motion on iPhone

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Adjust CarPlay accessibility settings for vision

With CarPlay accessibility features for vision, you can make it easier to read text and differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen.

Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Filter display colors

To make it easier to differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen, you can apply filters for color vision deficiencies, or view the entire screen in grayscale.

1. In CarPlay, go to the Settings app.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Color Filters.
3. Turn on Color Filters.
4. Tap a filter. To change the intensity of the filter, tap Low, Medium, or High.

Change the text size

1. In CarPlay, go to the Settings app.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Text Size.
3. Tap a text size. You can see a preview of the text size below each number.

Make text bold

Turn on bold text to make it easier to read what's on the CarPlay touchscreen.

1. In CarPlay, go to the Settings app.

Table of Contents

Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

If you experience discomfort when you use iPhone while riding as a passenger in a car or other on-road vehicle, you can turn on Vehicle Motion Cues—onscreen cues that may help reduce motion sickness. Vehicle Motion Cues appear as animated dots on the edges of the screen that represent how the vehicle is moving without interfering with what you're doing on iPhone.

Note: Vehicle Motion Cues should not be used while operating a moving vehicle and in other situations requiring attention to safety. For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone. Vehicle Motion Cues work best when you're seated facing forward in the vehicle.

Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Motion.
3. Tap Vehicle Motion Cues, then tap an option. If you choose Automatic, animated dots appear on the screen when iPhone detects that you're riding in a car or other on-road vehicle; the dots are hidden when the motion stops.
4. To manually show or hide Vehicle Motion Cues, open Control Center, tap , then tap an option.

   Tip: You can also set up a shortcut to turn Vehicle Motion Cues on or off. See Quickly turn accessibility features on or off.

Customize Vehicle Motion Cues

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Motion.
3. Tap Vehicle Motion Cues, then tap Customize Appearance.
4. Customize any of the following:

- *Pattern:* Select Regular for a stable and predictable pattern, or Dynamic for a more engaging visual experience.
- *Color:* Select a color. Color saturation will automatically adjust to maintain contrast with the content behind each dot.
- *Visibility:* Select Larger Dots to increase the size of the dots or More Dots to increase the number of dots.

See also

Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen

Make text easier to read on iPhone

Customize onscreen motion on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Customize onscreen motion

Next
Customize per-app visual settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

2. Tap Accessibility, then turn on Bold Text.

Control CarPlay with voice commands

You can use the microphone of your iPhone to control CarPlay with voice commands.

1. In CarPlay, go to the Settings app  .
2. Tap Accessibility, then turn on Voice Control.

See also

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Change settings in CarPlay

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Hear audio descriptions

Next
Turn on and practice VoiceOver

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPhone read text on the screen out loud. Have iPhone read the entire screen or a specific selection. Or hear what you type spoken out loud, character by character or word by word.

Have iPhone speak onscreen text

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Read & Speak.
3. Turn on and customize any of the following:

- *Accessibility Reader:* Turn on Accessibility Reader to read or listen to text in a full-screen view, and customize fonts, layouts, and background colors. Turn on Autoplay if you want Accessibility Reader to automatically read text aloud.

  See Read or listen to text in apps with Accessibility Reader on iPhone.

- *Speak Screen:* Tap Speak Screen, then turn on Speak Screen to have iPhone read all text on the screen, then do any of the following:

  Highlighting: Customize the highlight style, color, and selection for in-app text that is spoken aloud.

  Show Controller: Turn on Show Controller to keep the Speak Screen controls on the screen.

  Controller Actions: Choose what happens when you long press or double-tap the screen. You can also reduce the size of the speech controller when you're not using it.

- *Speak Selection:* Turn on Speak Selection to have iPhone speak the text you select. Customize the highlight style, color, and selection for in-app text that is

spoken aloud.

4. Do any of the following:

   - *Hear selected text (if you turned on Speak Selection):* Select the text you want spoken, then tap Speak.

   - *Hear all text on the screen (if you turned on Speak Screen):* Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen.

     Use the controls that appear to pause speaking, adjust the rate, navigate forward or back to the content you want to hear, or use Speak on Touch (tap the text you want iPhone to read).

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Speak screen." Learn how to use Siri.

Change how spoken content sounds

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, the tap Read & Speak.
3. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Voices:* Choose a voice and dialect.

   - *Default Language:* Choose a default language that iPhone will speak.

   - *Detect Languages:* Turn on Detect Languages to have iPhone automatically detect and speak multiple languages.

   - *Speaking Rate:* Drag the slider.

   - *Pronunciations:* Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.

See also

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Read or listen to text in apps with Accessibility Reader on iPhone

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone

Table of Contents

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

Adjust the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds

- To increase or decrease your iPhone's volume, including the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds, as well as all other iPhone audio, press the volume buttons on iPhone.
- To temporarily reduce the volume of other iPhone audio while VoiceOver is speaking, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, tap Audio Ducking, then select When Speaking. Drag the Ducking Amount slider to set how much the volume decreases for other iPhone audio—like media and calls—when VoiceOver is speaking.
- To set other audio options, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:
  - *Sounds & Haptics:* Adjust and preview sound effects and haptics.
  - *Auto-select Speaker in Call:* Automatically switch to the speaker during a call when you're not holding iPhone to your ear.
  - *Send to HDMI:* Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.

Set the VoiceOver language

- *Change the primary language:* VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPhone. To choose a different primary language, go to Settings > General > Language & Region, then tap Add Language.

- *Switch languages using the rotor:* Use the rotor to switch to a voice for another language.
- *Automatically switch languages:* VoiceOver can detect text in another language and automatically switch to a voice for that language. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Speech, then turn on Detect Languages.

Note: VoiceOver isn't available in all languages. See the Apple Support article Languages supported by VoiceOver.

Change the speaking voice

You can change the VoiceOver speaking voice, or add another voice and use the rotor to switch between voices as needed.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Tap Speech, then do one of the following:
   - *Change the primary voice:* Tap the name of the current primary voice, then tap Voice.
   - *Add another voice:* Tap Add Rotor Voice.
3. Choose a voice. To choose an enhanced voice, tap first.

Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate:* Drag the Speaking Rate slider.
- *Adjust the pitch:* Tap Speech, tap a voice, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.
- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words:* Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap +, enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

  Note: You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.

Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity, then do any of the following:

- *Change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation:* Tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which "[" is spoken as "left bracket."
- *Change how VoiceOver reads notifications:* Tap System Notifications. By default, VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages, as they occur—even if iPhone is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPhone.
- *Choose additional options:* Have VoiceOver speak hints, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions and tell you when the flashlight is turned on.

Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity, such as programming. Then, when you open certain apps or adjust the rotor, the settings for speech, audio, verbosity, typing, navigation, and braille are applied automatically.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.
2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.
3. Adjust the settings, then below Automatic Switching, do any of the following:

    - *Apply the settings for certain apps:* Tap Apps, then select the ones you want this setting to apply to.
    - *Apply the settings for certain contexts:* Tap Context, then select one or more contexts, such as Word Processing, Messaging, or Console.

Use flat or grouped navigation

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigation Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Flat:* VoiceOver moves sequentially through each item on the screen when you use the move next and previous commands.

- *Grouped:* VoiceOver moves through items and groups of items on the screen. To move into a group, use a two-finger swipe right. To move out of a group, use a two-finger swipe left.

Set a delay between touching the screen and selecting an item

You can control the amount of time between when you touch the screen and when VoiceOver selects the item you've touched. Increasing this value may help reduce accidental touches.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, tap Delay before Selection, then tap + or − to increase or decrease the delay.

Adjust VoiceOver visuals

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor:* If you have difficulty seeing the outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.
- *Caption Panel:* The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Use Quick Settings to adjust VoiceOver from anywhere on iPhone

When VoiceOver is turned on, you can access Quick Settings by doing a two-finger quadruple tap.

To customize Quick Settings, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Quick Settings.
2. Choose the settings you want, or drag ☰ to reorder settings.

Reset VoiceOver settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap VoiceOver.

3. Tap Reset VoiceOver Settings. (You may need to scroll down.)

Reset VoiceOver Commands

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap VoiceOver, then tap Commands.
3. Tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

See also

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Turn on and practice VoiceOver

Next
Use VoiceOver gestures

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

When you turn on Braille Screen Input in VoiceOver, you can use your fingers to type braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard. You can also use Braille Screen Input to enter braille commands for navigating and controlling your iPhone.

Enter braille on the screen

1. With VoiceOver turned on, do one of the following to start Braille Screen Input:

   - *Use a gesture:* Place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap. If the gesture doesn't work, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille. Tap Braille Screen Input, then turn on Use Activation Gestures.

   - *Use the rotor:* When you're in a text input area, set the rotor to Braille Screen Input. If Braille Screen Input isn't in the rotor, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Tap Rotor Items, then select Braille Screen Input.

2. Place iPhone in one of the following positions:

   - *Tabletop mode:* Lay iPhone flat in front of you.

   - *Screen away mode:* Hold iPhone in landscape orientation with the screen facing away from you. Your fingers wrap around the sides of iPhone to tap the screen.

3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

   Tip: To hear where each dot is located, touch and hold, then drag your finger around the screen. To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, tap and lift your right three fingers all at once to position dots 4, 5, and 6, followed immediately by your left three fingers for dots 1, 2, and 3.

You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

Action	Gesture
Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to *your* right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger
Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through modes (like Braille Entry Mode and Command Mode)	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (if you're typing contracted braille)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next braille table	Swipe up with two fingers

4. To exit Braille Screen Input, slide two fingers in opposite directions, or do a two-finger scrub (draw the letter "z" by quickly moving two fingers back and forth three times).

Tip: You can view and edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.

Type on the screen to enter braille commands

With Braille Screen Input Command Mode, you can control iPhone by typing braille commands on the screen. You can use the same commands you use with a refreshable braille display.

1. With VoiceOver turned on, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap to start Braille Screen Input.
2. Switch to Command Mode by swiping left or right with three fingers.

3. Type braille commands directly on the screen.

   See the Apple Support article Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Change Braille Screen Input settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap VoiceOver.
3. Tap Braille, then tap Braille Screen Input.
4. Set any of the following:

   - *Use Activation Gestures:* To start Braille Screen Input, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap. If this option is off, use the rotor to start Braille Screen Input.
   - *Start Automatically when Editing Text:* Have Braille Screen Input start automatically when you enter a text input area.
   - *Keep Active until Dismissed:* After you launch an app or choose an item in Braille Entry Mode, automatically switch to Command Mode and keep it active.
   - *Customize Commands:* Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Assign New Braille Keys.
   - *Learn Dot Positions:* Have Braille Screen Input calibrate the positions of dots as you enter them.
   - *Reverse Dot Positions:* For six-dot braille, swap the positions of dots 1 and 3, and dots 4 and 6.
   - *Visual Text Feedback:* As you type in braille, display a text translation of what you're typing.
   - *Typing Feedback:* Get sound or haptic feedback as you enter text with Braille Screen Input.
   - *Single Hand Mode Style:* Choose one of the following options to type in Portrait orientation:

- *Right Hand or Left Hand:* Type a column of dots and swipe right to enter an empty column. Double-tap to enter one braille cell. (Dots 1 and 4, dots 2 and 5, and dots 3 and 6 are oriented from left to right.) Right Hand is turned on by default.

- *Slate and Stylus:* Your screen acts as a braille cell with 6 dots. (Dots 1, 2, and 3 are on the right side, and dots 4, 5, 6 are on the left side.)

- *Reversed Slated and Stylus:* Your screen acts as a braille cell with 6 dots. (Dots 1, 2, and 3 are on the left side, and dots 4, 5, 6 are on the right side.)

- *Mode Announcements:* When you switch Braille Screen Input modes, have VoiceOver speak, play sounds, or both.

- *Choose a Braille table:* Select a braille format.

See also

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Use a braille display

Next
Use Braille Access with a braille display

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone

With handwriting mode in VoiceOver, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to typing or dictation, use handwriting mode to enter your iPhone passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.

   If Handwriting isn't in the rotor, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.

2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

   To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger.

   You can also do any of the following:

   - *Enter an alternate character (a character with an accent, for example):* Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the character you want.
   - *Enter a space:* Swipe right with two fingers.
   - *Go to a new line:* Swipe right with three fingers.
   - *Delete the previous character:* Swipe left with two fingers.

4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or set the rotor to a different setting.

Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

   If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

Quickly navigate a long list

1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).
2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.

See also

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Use the onscreen keyboard

Next
Keep the screen off

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

Unlock iPhone

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Wake iPhone and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones.
- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode or type onscreen braille.

Go to the Home Screen

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.

Switch to another app

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher.

1. To open the App Switcher, do one of the following:

    - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear three tones, then lift your finger.

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.

2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.
3. Double-tap to open the app.

Open Control Center

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear the second tone.
- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers. Or touch and hold the bottom of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe up.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”).

View notifications

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear the third tone.

  To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”).

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers. Or touch and hold the top of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe down.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”).

Speak status bar information

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.
2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.

Rearrange apps on your Home Screen

Do one of the following:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.
- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear "Edit Mode," double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

When you're finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.
2. Swipe down with three fingers.

See also

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Use VoiceOver gestures

Next
Control VoiceOver using the rotor

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

You can use the onscreen VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.



When you use Magic Keyboard to control VoiceOver, use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.

   VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.

2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

   The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, swipe down or up to move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag to reorder settings.
   - *Add another voice to the rotor:* See Change the speaking voice.
   - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.

See also

Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

Next
Use the onscreen keyboard

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

   The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.

2. To enter text, do one of the following:

   - *Standard typing:* Select a key by swiping left or right on the keyboard, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.

   - *Touch typing:* Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.

- *Direct Touch typing:* VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.

- *Dictation:* Use a two-finger double tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, do one of the following:

- *Standard typing:* Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.
- *Touch typing:* Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.

Edit text with the onscreen keyboard

- *Move the insertion point:* Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.

  VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.

- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence:* Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

  When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.

- *Delete a character:* Use ⌫.

- *Select text:* Do any of the following:

  - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)

- Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”) to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.

- *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.
- *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.
- *Undo:* Shake iPhone, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.

Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Tap any of the following:

    - *Typing Style:* You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.
    - *Phonetic Feedback:* Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, “f” and then “foxtrot.
    - *Typing Feedback:* Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.
    - *Verbosity:* Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.

See also

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

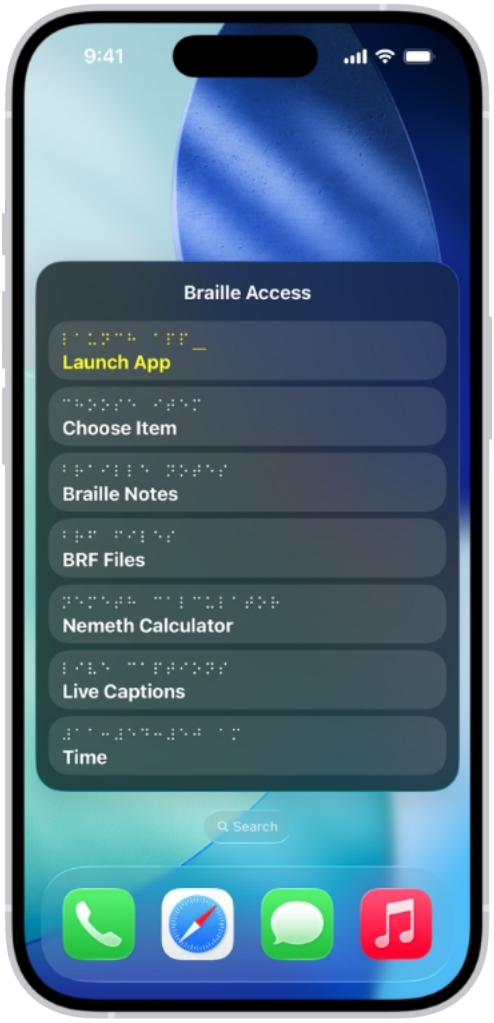
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Table of Contents

Use Braille Access with a braille display on iPhone

With Braille Access, you can turn your iPhone into a braille notetaker that can easily open any app by typing with a connected braille display. You can perform calculations, open Braille Ready Format (BRF) files, transcribe conversations with Live Captions, and more.

Note: Live Captions is available on iPhone 11 and later. Live Captions isn't available in all countries or regions. The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn’t be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations.



Navigate the Braille Access menu

1. Connect your braille display to your iPhone, then turn on VoiceOver.

See connect a braille display and turn VoiceOver on or off.

2. Press dots 7 and 8 together or use the Toggle Braille Access command on your braille display.

   If you're using an eight-dot table, press dots 7 and 8 and the Space bar together.

   To access the Toggle Braille Access command on your iPhone, go to the Settings app > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > tap ⓘ next to your braille display (you may need to scroll down) > Braille Commands > Braille > Toggle Braille Access.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Next item or line:*
     - Use the Next command: dot 4 + Space
     - Use the panning button on your braille display
   - *Previous item or line:*
     - Use the Previous command: dot 1 + Space
     - Use the panning button on your braille display
   - *Go to the first item on the menu:*
     - Use the First Item command: dots 1, 2, 3 + Space
   - *Go to the last item on the menu:*
     - Use the Last Item command: dots 4, 5, 6 + Space
   - *Go to the previous screen:*
     - Use the Back command: dots 1, 2, + Space
   - *Select a menu item:*
     - Use the Return command: dot 8
   - *Open a context menu:*
     - Use the Delete command: dot 7

- *Search for text:*
  - Use the Search command: dots 1, 2, 4 + Space
- *Exit Braille Access:*
  - Press dots 7 + 8

Use Braille Access with a braille display

1. Connect your braille display to your iPhone and turn on VoiceOver. See connect a braille display and turn VoiceOver on or off.
2. Press dots 7 and 8 together or use the Toggle Braille Access command on your braille display.

   If you're using an eight-dot table, press dots 7 and 8 and the Space bar together.

   To access the Toggle Braille Access command on your iPhone, go to the Settings app > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > tap ⓘ next to your braille display (you may need to scroll down) > Braille Commands > Braille > Toggle Braille Access.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Launch App:* Choose an app to open—such as Mail, News, or Wallet.
   - *Choose Item:* Choose an item to open on the screen—such as dictate, compose, or edit.
   - *Braille Notes:* Enter New > New Note or New Folder to create a new note or folder. You can access your notes here after you create them.

     Note: Your braille notes will sync to iCloud.
   - *BRF Files:* Enter New > File name or New folder name to create a new BRF file or folder. You can open your BRF files here after you create them. You can also search for text and add bookmarks that sync with iCloud.
     - To search for text, use the context menu or Text Search command (dots 1, 2, 4 + Space).
     - After you search for text or move a bookmark, use the Return command (dot 8) to keep searching or moving to other bookmarks.

Note: Opening Braille Access creates a BRF Files folder in iCloud Drive. You can't change the location of BRF Files in iCloud.

- *Calculator:* Use Nemeth or UEB Math to type calculations.

  Note: A visual representation of the formula appears on the screen if Show Visuals is enabled.

- *Live Captions:* Enter Live Captions and iPhone will listen to your surroundings and translate it in braille on your device.

  New transcriptions you haven't read appear surrounded by full cells (dots 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8) on your braille display.

  Note: Press any router key to bring the focus to the latest caption line.

- *Time:* Check the current time on your iPhone.

- *Close:* Close the Braille Access menu.

  Note: In most pages of Braille Access, you can select Close or Back at the bottom of the menu. See Exit Braille Access.

You can start typing right away if the menu item has a cursor at the end. See the Apple Support article Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Manage Braille Notes, BRF files, and Live Captions with Context Menus

After you create Braille Notes and BRF files in Braille Access, you can organize them with Context Menus. You can also pause and listen to audio in Live Captions. To learn how to create notes, folders, and BRF files, see Use Braille Access with a braille display.

1. Connect your braille display to your iPhone, then turn on VoiceOver. See connect a braille display and turn VoiceOver on or off.
2. Press dots 7 and 8 together or use the Toggle Braille Access command on your braille display.

   If you're using an eight-dot table, press dots 7 and 8 and the Space bar together.

   To access the Toggle Braille Access command on your iPhone, go to the Settings app > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > tap ⓘ next to your braille display (you may need to scroll down) > Braille Commands > Braille > Toggle Braille Access.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Braille Notes:* Navigate to a note or folder, then open the Context Menu by using the Delete command (dot 7). Do any of the following:
  - *Move:* Move the note or folder to a new location.
  - *Delete:* Delete the note or folder.
  - *Pin:* Pin the note or folder for easier access.
- *BRF Files:* Navigate to a BRF file, then open the Context Menu by using the Delete command (dot 7). Do any of the following:
  - *Find:* Find a specific BRF file.
  - *Previous Find:* View your previous Find searches.
  - *Add Bookmark:* Add a bookmark for easier access.
  - *Move:* Move the file to a new location.
  - *Delete:* Delete the file.
  - *Rename:* Rename the file.
- *Live Captions:* Open Live Captions, then open the Context Menu by using the Delete command (dot 7). Do any of the following:
  - *Pause:* Pause Live Captions.
  - *Listen to audio:* Listen to audio descriptions of your surroundings.
  - *Type to speak:* Type on your braille device to have Mac speak it aloud.
  - *Summarize:* If you have Apple Intelligence turned on, you can get a summary of the audio in your surroundings.

Exit Braille Access

If you have Braille Access open on your iPhone and you want to exit, do any of the following:

- Use the Home or Back command on your braille display.

  See the Apple Support article Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

- Press dots 7 and 8 together on your braille display.
- Select Close or Back at the bottom of the menu to exit Braille Access.

Change Braille Access settings

1. Go to the Settings App on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap VoiceOver, tap Braille, then tap Braille Access.
3. Do any of the following:

   - *Main Menu Items:* To customize which menu items appear in Braille Access, tap an item. To change the order that the items appear in, tap and drag ☰ to the desired place.
   - *Open to Last Position:* Turn on Open to Last Position to allow previous settings to appear when Braille Access is reopened.
   - *Speak List Items:* To have iPhone speak items aloud, turn on Speak List Items.
   - *Show Visuals:* Turn Show Visuals on or off.
   - *Typing Speech Feedback:* Turn Typing Speech feedback on or off.
   - *Braille Notes:* Sort notes by the date edited or created. You can also sort the order of notes by oldest or newest.
   - *BRF Files:* Turn Fit BRF Content on or off. Turn Hide BRF Page Indicators on or off.
   - *Calculator:* Choose Nemeth or UEB Math as the math code.
   - *Live Captions:* Choose Microphone or iPhone Audio as the source for Live Captions.

See also

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

Previous
Type braille on the screen

Next
Customize gestures and keyboard shortcuts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone

You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

---

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap VoiceOver, then tap Commands.
3. Tap any of the following:
   - *All Commands:* Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.
   - *Touch Gestures:* List the gestures and the associated commands.
   - *Keyboard Shortcuts*: Navigate to the shortcut you want to customize, then enter the key combination.
   - *Magic Tap:* Turn on Magic Tap to pause or play media when no other action is available.
   - *Handwriting:* List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.
   - *Braille Screen Input:* List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.
   - *Braille Screen & Braille Keyboard Input:* Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Assign New Braille Keys.

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

See also

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Use Braille Access with a braille display

Next
Use VoiceOver with a pointer device

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

If you use Magic Keyboard with iPhone, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

Choose the VoiceOver modifier

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.
2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

   This modifier is abbreviated as “VO” below.

VoiceOver keyboard commands

You can control VoiceOver using key combinations.

(VO = modifier keys)

Action	Shortcut
Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar
Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M
Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H
Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H

Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-Slash
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Turn the rotor left or right	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Fn-Hyphen (or VO-Globe key-Hyphen, depending on your keyboard)
Return to the previous screen	Esc

Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

Action	Shortcut
Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow
Adjust the rotor	Up Arrow-Left Arrow or Up Arrow-Right Arrow

Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

Item type	Shortcut
Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W
List	X
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.

Action	Shortcut
Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z

See also

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Keep the screen off

Next
Use a braille display

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

With VoiceOver, you can connect a Bluetooth® wireless refreshable braille display and use it to control and navigate iPhone and read what's on the screen. The braille you type on the display is automatically translated into text, and the display shows what you're typing in context. You can read and type using contracted or uncontracted braille, with support for many international braille tables.

For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Connect a braille display and learn commands to control iPhone

1. Turn on the braille display.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.
3. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.
4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPhone, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.

See the Apple Support article Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Change the braille display settings

1. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.
2. Set any of the following:

Setting	Description
Match Input and Output Tables	Set the braille display to use the same table for both the input and read output.
Input and Output	Choose the braille table you want to use to type braille input and output. You can choose from tables for additional languages as well as six-dot or eight-dot and contracted or uncontracted braille.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver.
Braille Tables	Add tables to the braille table rotors.
Braille Access	Quickly access braille notes, BRF files, and more using a braille display. See Change Braille Access settings.
Item Overview	Adjust the number of cells displayed per item. Press dots 6, 7, and 8 at the same time to turn Item Overview on or off.
Automatic Translation	Turn this option on to automatically translate the braille you type into text soon after you stop typing.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show Onscreen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.
Word Wrap	Wrap words to the next line.

Text Formatting	Display text formatting attributes like bold and italics.
Use Underline Cursor	Display the cursor as an underline.
Braille Alert Messages	When turned on, your braille display shows an alert message for the specified duration.
Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.
Sound Curtain	When a braille display is connected to iPhone, mute most sounds. Emergency alerts will still play sounds.
Enable Bluetooth on Start	Automatically turn on Bluetooth when you turn on VoiceOver so that braille displays can connect to iPhone.

Output closed captions in braille during media playback

1. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.
2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.

Use a 2D braille display

If you use a supported 2D braille display, you can use the rotor to switch between different output modes, such as the mode for displaying images or the mode for reading text on multiple lines.

1. Connect your braille display to iPhone.

2. With VoiceOver turned on, use the Braille Text Mode rotor to switch between output modes. See Control VoiceOver using the rotor.

See also

Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Use VoiceOver with an external keyboard

Next
Type braille on the screen

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Keep the screen off when you use VoiceOver on iPhone

If you use VoiceOver on iPhone, and don't need to see what's on the screen, you can turn on the screen curtain to improve battery life and maintain privacy. When the screen curtain is on, your iPhone is active even though the display is off.

With VoiceOver on, triple-tap with three fingers to turn the screen curtain on or off. If both VoiceOver and the Zoom feature are turned on, quadruple-tap with three fingers.

See also

- Zoom in on the iPhone screen
- Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on
- Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone
- Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Write with your finger

Next
Use VoiceOver with an external keyboard

Helpful? Yes No

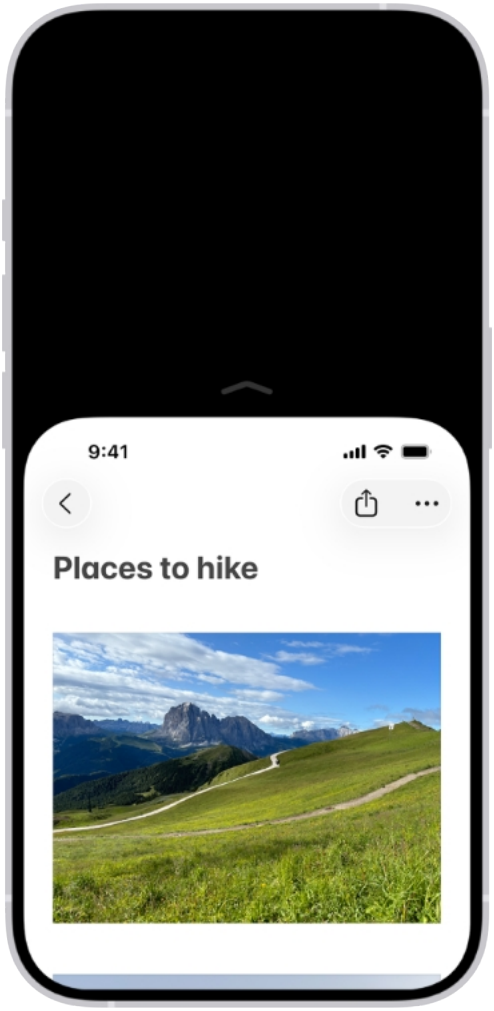
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Reach the top of the iPhone screen with one hand

When you use iPhone with one hand in portrait orientation, you can use Reachability to lower the top half of the screen so it's within easy reach of your thumb.



1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn on Reachability.
2. To lower the top half of the screen, do one the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down on the bottom edge of the screen.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Lightly double-tap the Home button.

- *While VoiceOver is on:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen with one finger, then, without lifting your finger, swipe down.

3. To return to the full screen, tap the upper half of the screen.

See also

Use AssistiveTouch

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Back tap

Next
Auto-answer calls

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

If you use a pointer device with iPhone, you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:
   - *Pointer:* Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.
   - *Speak Under Pointer:* You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.

See also

Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone

Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Customize gestures and keyboard shortcuts

Next
Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Route and automatically answer calls on iPhone

You can automatically direct the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to the iPhone speaker, a Bluetooth® headset, or your hearing device. iPhone can also automatically answer calls after a length of time you set.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing, then choose an audio destination.
2. Tap Auto-Answer Calls, turn on Auto-Answer Calls, then set the duration of time before the call is answered by tapping − or +.

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPhone speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear.

See also

Use hearing devices with iPhone

Announce calls and notifications for specific apps

End calls with Siri

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use VoiceOver Recognition on iPhone to scan your surroundings and get live descriptions of the scenes detected in the camera view. You can also get descriptions of onscreen images and interface elements, even in apps and on webpages that don't provide accessibility information.

Important: VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

1. With VoiceOver on, triple-tap the screen with four fingers to start Live Recognition.
2. Choose the kinds of visual information you want VoiceOver to describe, like scenes, people, doors, furniture, or text. At the bottom of the screen, select a category, then double-tap to turn it on or off. If you turn on Point & Speak, you can point your finger at text and have VoiceOver read it aloud.

   Note: Detection of people, doors, and furniture is available only on supported iPhone models.
3. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect what's around you. VoiceOver describes what it detects.

   To interrupt VoiceOver speech and move to the next detected item, tap the screen with two fingers.
4. To turn off Live Recognition, triple-tap the screen with four fingers. Or if the VoiceOver cursor is focused on an interface element for Live Recognition, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Tip: You can also set up a shortcut to quickly start and stop Live Recognition. See Set up shortcuts for Live Recognition.

You can also use Detection Mode in the Magnifier app to detect and describe scenes, people, and more. See Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier.

To change Live Recognition settings, go to the Magnifier app, tap, then tap Detect. Tap Scenes, People, Doors, Furniture, Text, or Point & Speak.

Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of the people, objects, and text in images in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information. You can move your finger over a photo to discover a person's position relative to other objects, or navigate nutrition labels and receipts in the order items are listed.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition, then turn on Image Descriptions.
2. To get descriptions of text found in images, turn on Text Recognition.
3. Go to an app such as Photos or Safari, then select an image.
4. Swipe up to hear more options, then double-tap when you hear Explore Image
5. Move your finger around the image to find out the position of each object.

You can add custom descriptions to your images with Markup.

Note: Image descriptions aren't available in all languages. See the iOS and iPadOS 18 Feature Availability website.

Get descriptions of interface elements

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of interface elements in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.
2. Turn on Screen Recognition.

See also

Find and name people and pets in Photos on iPhone

Previous
Use VoiceOver with a pointer device

Next
Use VoiceOver in apps

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

With built-in accessibility features for mobility, you can navigate and interact with iPhone using just your eyes, spoken commands, assistive devices, an external keyboard, and more. You can also set options so it's easier to use gestures and press iPhone buttons.

To explore accessibility features for mobility, go to Settings > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Physical and Motor section.

Action	Related features and settings
Navigate your iPhone hands-free	• Eye Tracking • Head Tracking • Voice Control • Siri • Shortcuts • Call audio routing • Use simple sounds to perform gestures
Let iPhone type for you	• Dictation • Predictive text
Connect other inputs	• Switch Control • Keyboards • Bluetooth accessories • Head tracking
Control other devices	• Apple Watch Mirroring • Apple TV remote • Control nearby devices • Platform Switching
Customize gestures	• AssistiveTouch • Back tap • Reachability • AirPods • Pointer scrolling speed • Side or Home button • Face ID and attention
Adjust the sensitivity of your input	• Slow Keys and Sticky Keys • Siri Pause Time • Touch accommodations

Turn off vibration	• Vibration

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut.

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Apple Accessibility Support website

Apple Accessibility website for Mobility

Previous
Use VoiceOver in apps

Next
Use AssistiveTouch

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

If you have difficulties with hand tremors, dexterity, or fine motor control, you can adjust how the iPhone touchscreen responds to tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures. You can have iPhone recognize faster or slower touches and ignore multiple touches. You can also prevent iPhone from waking when you touch the screen, or turn off Shake to Undo if you unintentionally shake iPhone.

Adjust settings for taps, swipes, and multiple touches

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations, then turn on Touch Accommodations.
2. You can configure iPhone to do any of the following:

   - *Respond to longer or shorter touches:* Turn on Hold Duration, then tap − or + to adjust the duration.
   - *Prevent unintended swipe gestures:* If you turn on Hold Duration (above), you can increase the amount of movement required before a swipe gesture begins. Tap Swipe Gestures, turn on Swipe Gestures, then adjust required movement.
   - *Treat multiple touches as a single touch:* Turn on Ignore Repeat, then tap − or + to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches.
   - *Respond to the first or last place you touch:* Choose Use Initial Touch Location or Use Final Touch Location.

     If you choose Use Initial Touch Location, iPhone uses the location of your first tap —when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example.

     If you choose Use Final Touch Location, iPhone registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPhone responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain

period of time. Tap − or + to adjust the timing. Your iPhone can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.

Adjust settings for touch-and-hold gestures

You use the touch-and-hold gesture to see additional options or actions you can perform, or show a preview of content. If you have trouble performing this gesture, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then tap Haptic Touch or 3D & Haptic Touch.
2. Choose the touch duration—Fast or Slow.
3. On an iPhone with 3D Touch, you can also choose the pressure needed—Light, Medium, or Firm.
4. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.

Turn off Tap to Wake

On a supported iPhone model, you can prevent touches on the screen from waking iPhone. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Tap to Wake.

Turn off Shake to Undo

If you tend to unintentionally shake iPhone, you can turn off Shake to Undo. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch.

Tip: To undo text edits, swipe left with three fingers.

See also

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

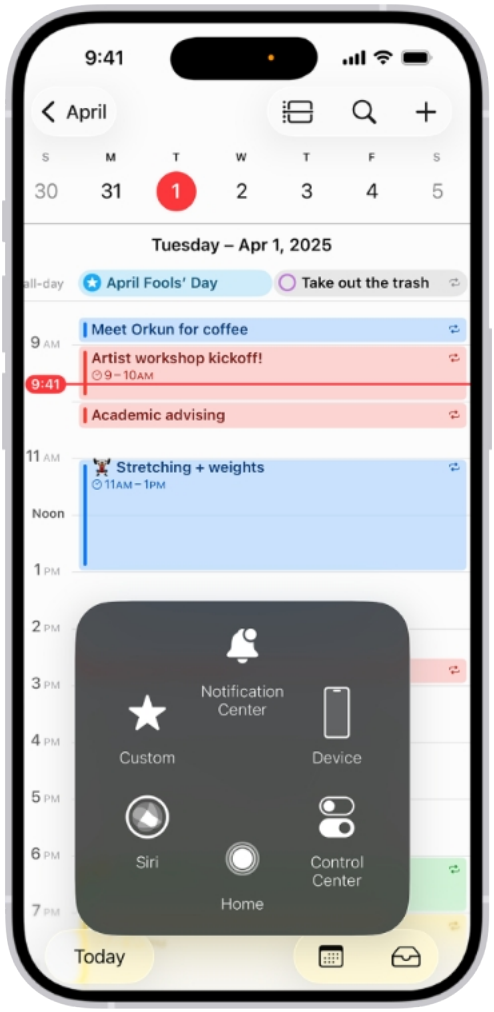
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

With AssistiveTouch on iPhone, you can adapt the touchscreen to fit your needs. If certain gestures don't work for you, replace them with a tap or other gesture, or use a simple sound. You can also use AssistiveTouch when you need to press iPhone buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory or with a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick).



You can use AssistiveTouch to perform actions such as the following:

- Go to the Home Screen
- Double-tap
- Perform multifinger gestures

- Perform scroll gestures
- Activate Siri
- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher
- Adjust the volume on iPhone
- Shake iPhone
- Take a screenshot
- Use 3D Touch (on supported iPhone models)
- Use Apple Pay
- Use Emergency SOS
- Speak screen
- Adjust dwell settings
- Restart iPhone

Set up AssistiveTouch

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Turn on AssistiveTouch." Learn how to use Siri.

Or do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch. The AssistiveTouch menu button appears on the screen.
3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:

    - *Customize Top Level Menu:* Tap an icon to change its action. Tap − or + to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.
    - *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, Long Press, or 3D Touch:* Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button. 3D Touch is available only on supported iPhone models.
    - *Create New Gesture:* Add your favorite gestures.
    - *Idle Opacity:* Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.

- *Confirm with AssistiveTouch:* On an iPhone with Face ID, confirm payments with Face ID by using AssistiveTouch instead of double-clicking the side button.

Tip: To quickly turn AssistiveTouch on or off, you can set up the Accessibility Shortcut, then triple-click the side or Home button.

Use AssistiveTouch

When AssistiveTouch is on, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button, then choose an action or gesture.

To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture, tap anywhere outside the menu.

To move the AssistiveTouch menu button, drag it to a new location on the screen.

For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch and Rotate:* Tap Custom, then tap Pinch and Rotate. When the two pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch or rotate gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.
- *Multifinger swipe or drag:* Tap Device > More > Gestures, then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

Control iPhone with a pointer device

You can connect Bluetooth® and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, game controllers, and mouse devices.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:

    - *Devices:* Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.
    - *Mouse Keys:* Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard.
    - *Pointer Style:* Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.
    - *Show Onscreen Keyboard:* Display the onscreen keyboard.

- *Sound on Click:* Play a sound when the pointer device is clicked.
- *Always Show Menu:* Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.
- *Tracking Sensitivity:* Adjust how quickly the pointer moves when you drag the mouse or your finger on the trackpad.

You can also change the appearance of the pointer.

Set up Dwell Control

iPhone performs a selected action when you hold the cursor still on a screen element or an area of the screen.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn on Dwell Control.
2. Adjust any of the following:
   - *Fallback Action:* Turn on to revert the dwell action to the selected fallback action after performing an operation.
   - *Movement Tolerance:* Adjust the distance the cursor can move while dwelling on an item.
   - *Hot Corners:* Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.
   - *Time needed to initiate a dwell action:* Tap − or +.

Use simple sounds to perform gestures

With AssistiveTouch, you can have iPhone perform a gesture or other action when you make a simple sound, such as a mouth pop or an S-sound.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn AssistiveTouch on.
2. Tap Sound Actions, then tap a sound.
3. Select the gesture or other action you want performed when you make the sound.

4. To perform the gesture or action, just make the sound.

Create custom gestures

You can add gestures you use often (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with, for example, different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.
2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:

   - *Touch-and-hold gesture:* Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.

   - *Two-finger rotation gesture:* Rotate two fingers on the iPhone screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

   If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.
3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.
4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button, tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.

See also

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

Table of Contents

Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts

You can double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform actions such as taking a screenshot, turning on an accessibility feature, running a shortcut, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap.
2. Choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose an action.
3. To perform the action you set, double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone.

To turn off Back tap, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then tap None.

See also

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

Next
Use Reachability

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Turn off vibration on iPhone

If you don’t want your iPhone to vibrate, you can turn vibration off for specific uses or all alerts.

- *Set vibration options for specific alerts:* Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics. See Change iPhone sounds and vibrations.
- *Turn off all vibrations:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Vibration.

  Note: This setting turns off vibrations for earthquake, tsunami, and other emergency alerts.

See also

Customize onscreen motion on iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Auto-answer calls

Next
Change Face ID and attention settings

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use VoiceOver in apps on iPhone

You can use VoiceOver in all the built-in apps that come with your iPhone—such as Safari, Maps, and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements on webpages and in apps, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

Browse the web in Safari

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Safari app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Search the web:* Select the address field, double-tap to show the keyboard, then enter a search term, phrase, or URL. Double-tap Go, or select a search suggestion, then double-tap.
   - *Skip to the next element on a webpage:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.
   - *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Select or deselect items, or drag up or down to reposition an item.
   - *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.
   - *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* In the Safari address field, select the Format Options button, double-tap, select Show Reader View (not available for all webpages), then double-tap.

Tip: If you use Magic Keyboard with iPhone, you can use single-key Quick Nav for web browsing.

Navigate in Maps

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

    - *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Select , then double-tap until you hear the tracking option you want.

        - *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.

        - *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPhone speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.

        - *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.

    - *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.

    - *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe up or down with one finger.

    - *Pan the map:* Select the map, then swipe with three fingers.

    - *Browse locations and pins on the map:* Select the map, set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.

    - *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road.

    - *Get information about a location:* Select the location (for example, a business, landmark, or pin), then double-tap to open the information card. Swipe left or right to hear information such as directions, street address, phone number, business hours, and customer reviews.

    - *Get guidance to the starting point:* When you start walking directions in Maps, iPhone guides you in the direction of the starting point using sound and haptic

feedback.

- *Get a description of the map:* Tap the screen with three fingers to get information about nearby places, including directions and distances.

Read PDFs

In the Books and Files apps, you can use VoiceOver to read PDFs. VoiceOver even describes detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists.

Make and receive phone calls

You can use VoiceOver to make and receive calls.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Answer or end a call:* Double-tap the screen with two fingers.

     When a phone call is established with VoiceOver on, the screen displays the numeric keypad by default, instead of showing call options.

   - *Display call options:* Select the Hide button in the lower-right corner, then double-tap.

   - *Display the numeric keypad again:* Select the Keypad button near the center of the screen, then double-tap.

Take photos and videos

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Camera app on your iPhone. VoiceOver describes objects in the viewfinder.
2. Select Camera Mode, then swipe up or down with one finger to switch between modes, like Photo or Video.
3. To take a photo or start or stop recording a video, double-tap the screen with two fingers.

Trim voice memo recordings

You can use VoiceOver to edit recordings in the Voice Memos app.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Voice Memos app on your iPhone.
2. Select the recording you want to trim, then double-tap.
3. Select •••, then double-tap.
4. Select Edit Recording, then double-tap.
5. Select •••, then tap .
6. In the Waveform Overview, select Trim Beginning or Trim End, double-tap and hold, then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
7. Select Trim, then double-tap.
8. Select Save, then double-tap.
9. Select Done, then double-tap.

Hear visual Weather data as sound

Some maps in the Weather app are encoded to allow you to hear the data as a changing tone or pitch. For example, as intensity of weather condition changes in a visual animation on screen, you can have these described using variations in sound.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Weather app on your iPhone.
2. Open a location page with a precipitation, wind, or air quality map.
3. Double-tap and hold the map until you hear a tone or the words “Weather Map Snapshot.” If you hear spoken instructions, follow them.

   As you run your finger or pointer over a sonified map, the pitch shifts to represent the changing values.

Read math equations

VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.

- *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver read the text as usual. VoiceOver says “math” before it starts reading an equation.

- *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. To drill down into the selected element, double-tap it, then swipe left or right to read one part of the element at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See Use a braille display with VoiceOver.

See also

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Previous
Get live descriptions of your surroundings

Next
Overview of accessibility features for mobility

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Adjust accessibility settings for the Camera Control on iPhone

On supported models, you can change the pressure required to lightly press the Camera Control or the speed required to lightly double-press it. You can also change the gesture you use to access controls like Zoom or Depth, disable that gesture, or disable the Camera Control entirely.

---

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Camera Control.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Disable the Camera Control entirely:* Turn off Camera Control.
   - *Use a light press gesture to access controls:* Turn Light-Press on. Turn it off to disable the gesture.
   - *Use a swipe gesture to access controls:* Turn on Swipe. Turn it off to disable the gesture.
   - *Adjust the pressure required to lightly press the Camera Control:* Choose a firmness option below Light-Press Force. You can practice the gesture to try out the pressure you set.
   - *Adjust the speed required to lightly double-press the Camera Control:* Below Double Light-Press Speed, choose how fast you need to press for iPhone to recognize a light double press.

You can also customize the Camera Control to open the Magnifier app. See Use the Camera Control to open another app.

See also

Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone

Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone

Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Adjust the side or Home button

Next
Use Apple TV Remote buttons

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone

After you turn on Voice Control on your iPhone, you can speak commands to interact with what's on the screen, perform gestures and button presses, dictate and edit text, and more.

Note: When Voice Control is on, you use Voice Control to dictate text; standard iOS Dictation isn't available. If you just want to enter text using Dictation, without controlling your iPhone with your voice, see Dictate text. Voice Control isn't available in all languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Set up Voice Control

Before you turn on Voice Control for the first time, make sure iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. After iPhone completes a one-time file download from Apple, you don't need an internet connection to use Voice Control.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Voice Control.
2. Tap Set Up Voice Control, then tap Continue to start the file download.

   When the download is complete, appears in the status bar to indicate that Voice Control is turned on.
3. Set options such as the following:

   - *Language:* Set the language and download languages for offline use.
   - *Customize Commands:* View the available commands and create new commands.
   - *Vocabulary:* Teach Voice Control to recognize new words and phrases. You can enter a word or phrase and teach Voice Control how you pronounce it, or import a vocabulary list.

     Note: Not all Voice Control languages support a custom vocabulary.

- *Show Confirmation:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.
- *Play Sound:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.
- *Show Hints:* See command suggestions and hints.
- *Overlay:* Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.
- *Attention Aware:* On an iPhone with Face ID, Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPhone and goes to sleep when you look away.

Turn Voice Control on or off

After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by doing any of the following:

- Use Control Center if you've added Voice Control there.
- Use Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up to turn on Voice Control.

Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Turn on Voice Control." Learn how to use Siri.

Start using commands

To use Voice Control on your iPhone, just say a command.

Voice Control: Say, for example, "Open Control Center," "Go home," "Tap *item name*," or "Turn up volume."

Tip: Use the interactive Voice Control Tutorial to get familiar with Voice Control and practice essential commands. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Voice Control, then tap Open Voice Control Tutorial.

Pause or resume Voice Control

Pause Voice Control when you don't want words you say to be interpreted as commands or dictation. Resume Voice Control when you're ready for it to listen for commands and dictation again.

Voice Control: Say “Stop listening” or “Start listening.”

See what commands you can use

Display a list of the available commands, which vary depending on the app you’re working in and what you’re doing. For example, you see text formatting commands while writing a document.

Voice Control: Say “Show commands.”

To browse the full list of supported commands and see examples of how to use them, go to Settings > Accessibility > Voice Control > Commands.

Label onscreen items

When you’re not sure what to call something, you can display a name or number next to each item on the screen. You can then use the item’s name or number to interact with it.

Voice Control: Say “Show names,” “Show numbers,” or "Show text numbers.”

To interact with an item, say its name or number, or say a command—such as “Long press”—followed by the item’s name or number. The item names or numbers disappear after you say the command.

Show a numbered grid on the screen

You can make it easier to interact with a precise area of the screen by superimposing a grid.

Voice Control: Say “Show grid.”

- *Interact with a location on the grid:* If a number is at the location you want to interact with, say any command—such as “Tap”—followed by the grid number. The grid disappears after you say the command.
- *Drill down on an area of the grid:* If you need to further refine the location, say a grid number to show a more detailed grid in that area.

Say “Hide names,” “Hide numbers,” or “Hide grid” to turn the overlay off.

Enter text

When working in a text input area, you can dictate word by word (with Dictation mode) or character by character (with Spelling mode). To avoid mistakenly entering a Voice Control command as text, have Voice Control respond only to commands (with Command mode).

When you're in a text input area and label onscreen items with numbers, numbers are shown next to each line of text. Select a line or another section of the text to display a number for each word in the selection; select a single word to show a number for each character in the word. To interact with a text item (such as a line or a word), say a command followed by the item's name or number. For example, you can say "Delete [*item number*]" or "Uppercase [*item number*]."

Command	Description
Voice Control: Say “Dictation mode.”	Dictate word by word. Any words you say that aren’t Voice Control commands are entered as text. Dictation mode is on by default. In some Voice Control languages, if several words phonetically match what you say, they appear onscreen. Tap to choose the one you want.
Voice Control: Say “Spelling mode.”	Dictate character by character. Spelling mode is helpful when you need to enter a password, a web address, or another sequence of characters that wouldn’t be recognized as a word in Dictation mode. When Spelling mode is on, ABC appears in the text input area. To increase accuracy when entering letters, you can use the letter’s phonetic alphabet code word (for example, say “Alfa Bravo Charlie” to enter “abc”). *Note:* Spelling mode isn’t available in all Voice Control languages.
Voice Control: Say “Command mode.”	Voice Control responds only to commands. Words and characters that aren’t commands are ignored and aren’t entered as text. Command mode is helpful when you need to say a series of commands and don’t want them inadvertently entered in a text input area. When Command mode is on, appears in the text input area to indicate you can’t dictate to enter text.

See also

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Table of Contents

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

On the Apple TV Remote on iPhone, you can use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Apple TV Remote, then turn on Directional Buttons.

See also

Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Adjust Camera Control settings

Next
Adjust pointer settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods on iPhone

With AirPods 3 or later, AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can adjust the accessibility settings to suit your mobility or hearing needs.

---

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > AirPods.
2. If you have multiple AirPods, select one.
3. Set any of the following options:
   - *Press Speed:* Adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.
   - *Press and Hold Duration:* Adjust the duration required to press and hold on your AirPods.
   - *Noise Cancellation with One AirPod:* With AirPods Pro, turn on noise cancellation even when you're using only one of your AirPods.
   - *Spatial Audio Head Tracking:* When you turn on Follow iPhone, Spatial Audio sounds like it's coming from your iPhone instead of following the movement of your head (for supported audio and video content).
   - *Tone Volume:* Adjust the volume of the sound effects that are played by your AirPods, such as low battery alerts.

If you have AirPods Pro 2, you can use your iPhone to take a hearing test. If you have perceived mild to moderate hearing loss, you can get hearing assistance with the Hearing Aid feature. See Use hearing health features with AirPods Pro 2.

See also

Adjust audio settings on iPhone

Use AirPods with iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Control iPhone with an external keyboard

Next
Turn on Apple Watch Mirroring

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

UK

Table of Contents

Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

Setting up Face ID usually requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Set Up Face ID, then tap Get Started.
3. Position your face within the frame, then tap Accessibility Options.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency when you unlock iPhone.

Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention-aware*. It unlocks iPhone only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPhone can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPhone to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Face ID & Attention.
2. Turn on or off any of the following:

   - *Require Attention for Face ID:* Provide an additional level of security by unlocking iPhone only when you're looking at it.

- *Attention Aware Features:* iPhone checks for attention before dimming the display, expanding a notification when locked, or lowering the volume of some alerts.

- *Haptic on Successful Authentication:* Play a haptic when Face ID successfully unlocks iPhone, authorizes Apple Pay, or verifies iTunes and App Store purchases.

These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone.

Note: Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

See also

Set up Face ID on iPhone

Set up Touch ID on iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Turn off vibration

Next
Use Voice Control

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone

You can adjust accessibility settings for the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPhone models).

---

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility, then tap Side Button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home Button (on an iPhone with Touch ID).
2. Set any of the following:
   - *Click Speed:* Choose the speed required to double-click or triple-click the button—Default, Slow, or Slowest.
   - *Press and Hold to Speak:* Choose whether Siri responds when you press and hold the button.
   - *Rest Finger to Open:* On an iPhone with Touch ID, you can unlock and open iPhone by resting your finger on Touch ID.
   - *Home Button Haptic:* On an iPhone with Touch ID, you can choose how it feels when you press it. Tap Home Button Haptic, tap an option, then press the Home button to try it out. Tap Done when the option you like best is selected.

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can also use AssistiveTouch or use Switch Control to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the side button.

See also

Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Use Voice Control commands with CarPlay

Next
Adjust Camera Control settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Voice Control commands to interact with CarPlay

With Voice Control, you can use your voice to navigate CarPlay and apps, and interact with what's on the CarPlay touchscreen.

Note: Voice Control is available only in supported languages. CarPlay is available only in supported countries and regions.

Turn Voice Control on or off

1. In CarPlay, go to Settings > Accessibility.
2. Turn Voice Control on or off.

   When you turn on Voice Control, appears in the sidebar to indicate that Voice Control is listening for commands.

Start using commands

To use Voice Control in CarPlay, just say a command.

Voice Control: Say, for example, "Open Maps," "Pan left," or "Go back."

When you say multiple commands in quick succession, pause about half a second between commands.

Pause or resume Voice Control

Pause Voice Control when you don't want words you say to be interpreted as commands. Resume Voice Control when you're ready for it to listen for commands again.

Voice Control: Say “Stop listening” or “Start listening.”

Commands for navigation and interaction

Command	Description
“Open [*app*]”	Open an app.
“Go Home”	Return to the Home Screen.
“Go back”	Return to the previous screen (in apps with a Back button).
“Tap [*item*]”	Tap an item on the touchscreen. In some apps, if you’re not sure what to call an unlabeled item, you can refer to it based on its position relative to other items. For example, if you see a row of icons with no text labels, you can try saying “Tap first” or “Tap second” to tap the first or second icon in the row, respectively.
“Single tap”	Tap the touchscreen. This can be useful in an app like Maps where some items are hidden after a period of inactivity. Tapping the screen causes hidden items to reappear.
“Double-tap”	Double-tap the touchscreen. This can be used in an app like Maps to zoom in on the map.
“Double-tap [*item*]”	Double-tap an item on the touchscreen.
“Swipe left” or “Swipe right”	Swipe between pages in CarPlay Home or CarPlay Dashboard.
“Swipe up” or “Swipe down”	Navigate up or down in a list.
“Pan left,” “Pan right,” “Pan up,” or “Pan down”	In an app like Maps, move around the map.

“Open Siri”	Activate Siri (instead of pressing the voice command button on the steering wheel).

Use Voice Control in Maps

If you use Voice Control in the Maps app in CarPlay and don’t know what to call a button, you can use the button names in the table below.

If a button has a text label, use the text shown as the name of the button. For example, to tap a button labeled Go, just say “Tap Go.”

Button	Name
	Zoom In
	Zoom Out
	Pan
	Tracking
	Overview *or* Route Overview
	Expand *or* Up
	Collapse *or* Down
	Close *or* Dismiss
	Report
	All Guidance *or* Speaker
	Alerts Only

	No Guidance *or* Mute
	Siri *or* Dictation
	Keyboard

To learn more about using the Maps app in CarPlay, see Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay, Change the map view, and Report traffic incidents.

Use Voice Control in Music

If you use Voice Control in the Music app in CarPlay and don't know what to call a button, you can use the button names in the table below.

If a button has a text label, use the text shown as the name of the button. For example, to tap a button labeled Cancel, just say "Tap Cancel."

Button	Name
	Play
	Pause
	Fast Forward
	Rewind
	Shuffle
	Repeat
	Autoplay
	Favorite
	More
	Go back
	List

See also

Change settings in CarPlay

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Use Voice Control

Next
Adjust the side or Home button

Table of Contents

Control iPhone with an external keyboard

If you use Magic Keyboard or another physical keyboard with iPhone, you can use Full Keyboard Access to control your device with keyboard shortcuts instead of the touchscreen. Full Keyboard Access highlights the item on the screen that has focus.

Control iPhone using Full Keyboard Access

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards, tap Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access.
2. Navigate iPhone using the following default commands.

Action	Shortcut
View available Full Keyboard Access commands	Tab-H
Move forward	Tab
Move backward	Shift-Tab
Activate the selected item	Space bar
Go to the Home Screen	Fn-H
Open the App Switcher	Fn-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Fn-C
Open Notification Center	Fn-N

Customize Full Keyboard Access

You can change the keyboard shortcuts associated with Full Keyboard Access commands, and customize the appearance of Full Keyboard Access (such as the color, contrast, and size of the highlight).

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap Full Keyboard Access.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *View a complete list of Full Keyboard Access commands and customize them:* Tap Commands.
   - *Change the look of Full Keyboard Access:* Tap an option below Appearance.

See also

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings for accessibility on iPhone

Use shortcuts on Magic Keyboard with iPhone

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Adjust keyboard settings

Next
Adjust AirPods settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings for accessibility on iPhone

You can set the onscreen keyboard on iPhone to show only uppercase letters, and if you use a physical keyboard with your iPhone, adjust key sensitivity and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

You can also set typing options, such as auto-correction and slide to type, make it easier to type with one hand, and add keyboards for other languages or alternative layouts.

Set the onscreen keyboard to display only uppercase letters

If it's easier to read uppercase letters, you can set an option so the onscreen keyboard doesn't display lowercase letters.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards, then turn off Show Lowercase Keys.

Tip: Rotate iPhone to landscape orientation to use a larger keyboard for typing in many apps, including Mail, Messages, Notes, and Safari. See Change or lock the screen orientation.

Change how the keys respond on an external keyboard

If you use Magic Keyboard or another physical keyboard with iPhone, you can adjust the sensitivity of keys and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap any of the following:

- *Key Repeat:* You can set how long you must press and hold a key before it starts repeating and how fast it repeats once it starts. You can also prevent the key from repeating at all.

- *Sticky Keys:* When you need to press multiple keys at the same time, you can press each key separately instead. For example, enter the keyboard shortcut Command-Z by pressing Command, then pressing Z.
- *Slow Keys:* Adjust the time between when you press a key and when it's activated.

See also

Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone

Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone

Control iPhone with an external keyboard

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Adjust pointer settings

Next
Control iPhone with an external keyboard

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone

If you have difficulty seeing or following the pointer when you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, you can change its size and color so it's easier to locate on the screen.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then adjust any of the following:

- Increase Contrast
- Automatically Hide Pointer
- Color
- Pointer Size
- Scrolling Speed

To customize the buttons of the pointing device, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Devices.

See also

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Table of Contents

Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone

To set up Switch Control, you need to connect and add one or more switches, then assign an action to each switch. You can choose a scanning style and fine-tune other settings to suit your needs. After you turn on Switch Control, you may need to change the assigned actions or readjust the settings. If you have difficulty performing these steps, you can get personalized help at your nearest Apple Store.

Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional)

If you want to use an adaptive accessory, joystick, game controller, or MFi device for Switch Control, you need to first connect it to iPhone by following the manufacturer's instructions. If the switch connects using Bluetooth®, you need to pair it with iPhone.

You can also add nonexternal switches, such as sounds or AirPod Gestures. See Step 2: Add switches, recipes, and switch sets.

1. Turn on the switch.
2. Go to Settings > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, tap the name of the switch, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Step 2: Add switches, recipes, and switch sets

You can use only one switch, or you can use multiple switches to accommodate different actions. Each switch performs an assigned action, such as selecting an item or moving the cursor to the next item.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Switch Control, then tap Switches.
3. Tap Add New Switch, then choose External, Screen, Camera, Back Tap, Sound, or AirPod Gestures.

If you're trying to add an external switch but it isn't shown in the list, make sure it's connected to your iPhone as described above in Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional).

4. Assign an action to the switch.

   The action for the switch depends on the number of switches you have and the scanning style you choose in Step 3: Choose a scanning style, below. If you don't know which action to assign, choose Select Item, which is compatible with Auto Scanning (the default scanning style). You can return to this setting later to change the assigned action.

   Tip: Turn your iPhone into a game controller that uses gestures you've already set up, like the same switch (or alternative input method) that you navigate and control your iPhone with. Or you may decide to reuse your Back Tap gestures instead.

   You can also assign recipes—a set of temporary, specialized actions—to your switches. Use recipes for repetitive, complex actions in apps such as turning pages in the Books app. To create a recipe, go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Recipes.

   If you have multiple sets of switches or recipes that you switch between, you can create a Switch Set for your settings. To create a profile, go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switch Sets > Add New Switch Set.

Step 3: Choose a scanning style

By default, the cursor automatically moves from one item to the next after a specified duration. If you prefer to move the cursor manually, you can choose a different scanning style.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Scanning Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Auto Scanning:* The cursor automatically moves to the next item after a specified duration. This is the default scanning style.

  If you use Auto Scanning with just one switch, make sure the Select Item action is assigned to the switch.

- *Manual Scanning:* When you activate your Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item.

  Manual Scanning requires at least two switches. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to one switch, and the Select Item action is assigned to another switch.

- *Single Switch Step Scanning:* When you activate the Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item; if no action is taken within a specified duration, the current item is automatically selected.

  This scanning style requires only one switch. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to the switch.

Step 4: Fine-tune Switch Control settings

You can adjust the behavior of Switch Control in a variety of ways, to suit your specific needs and style. For example, you can change the scanning speed or have iPhone speak the highlighted items.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control, then adjust any of the following:

- *Auto Scanning Time:* Adjust the item scanning speed.
- *Pause on First Item:* Set scanning to pause on the first item in a group.
- *Loops:* Choose how many times to cycle through the screen before hiding Switch Control.
- *Move Repeat:* Set the delay before moving to the previous or next item while a switch is pressed.
- *Long Press:* Set whether a different action occurs when you press and hold a switch, and how long to wait before performing that action.
- *Tap Behavior:* Choose a tap behavior and set the interval for performing a second switch action to show the Scanner menu.
- *Focused Item After Tap:* Choose whether Switch Control resumes scanning at an item you tap or from the beginning.
- *Scan Same Key After Tap:* Turn on scanning the same key after tapping.
- *Always Tap Keyboard Keys:* Turn on always tapping keyboard keys.
- *Extended Predictions:* Turn on extended predictions.
- *Hold Duration:* Specify how long you need to press and hold a switch before it's accepted as a switch action.
- *Ignore Repeat:* Ignore accidental repeated switch triggers.
- *Sound Effects:* Turn on sound effects.
- *Speech:* Speak items as they're scanned.

- *Menu Items:* Choose the actions shown in the Scanner menu and the order in which they appear.
- *Group Items:* Group items for faster navigation.
- *Large Cursor:* Make the highlight more prominent.
- *Cursor Color:* Choose a different highlight color.
- *Saved Gestures:* Create a custom gesture.
- *Confirm with Switch Control:* Turn on Confirm with Switch Control to confirm payments with your passcode or any time double-clicking the side button is required.

Step 5: Turn on Switch Control

Important: When Switch Control is turned on, you can't use the standard gestures on the touchscreen to exit Switch Control.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control, then turn on Switch Control.

Tip: You can add Switch Control to Accessibility Shortcut, then quickly turn it on or off by triple-clicking the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or the Home button (on other iPhone models).

See also

Intro to Switch Control on iPhone

Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more

Control several devices with one switch on iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Intro to Switch Control

Next
Select items, perform actions, and more

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Use hearing devices with iPhone

You can use MFi hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings. For a list of models that work well with iPhone, see the Apple Support article Made for iPhone compatible hearing devices.

If you have AirPods Pro 2, you can use your iPhone to take a hearing test. If you have perceived mild to moderate hearing loss, you can get hearing assistance with the Hearing Aid feature. See Use hearing health features with AirPods Pro 2.

Pair hearing devices with iPhone

If your hearing devices aren't listed in Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, you need to pair them with iPhone.

If your hearing devices are already paired to another nearby device, such as a Mac or iPad, make sure Bluetooth® is turned off on those devices. (When you finish pairing your hearing devices to your iPhone, you can turn Bluetooth on again on those devices.)

1. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then make sure Bluetooth is turned on.
2. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
3. Turn your hearing devices off and back on again.

   If you're unsure how to turn them off, refer to the instructions that came with them, or check with the audiologist who helped you set them up.
4. When their name appears below MFi Hearing Devices (this could take a minute), tap the name and respond to the pairing requests.

   Pairing can take as long as 60 seconds—don't try to stream audio or otherwise use the hearing devices until pairing is finished. When pairing is finished, you hear a series of beeps and a tone, and a checkmark appears next to the hearing devices in the Devices list.

You need to pair your devices only once (and your audiologist might do it for you). After that, your hearing devices automatically reconnect to iPhone whenever they turn on.

Adjust the settings and view the status of your hearing devices

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices.
- *By triple-clicking the side or Home button:* Use the Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up.
- *In Control Center:* Tap . (If you don't see , add it to Control Center.)
- *On the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices, then turn on Control on Lock Screen. From the Lock Screen, you can do the following:
  - Check battery status.
  - Adjust ambient microphone volume and equalization.
  - Choose which hearing device (left, right, or both) receives streaming audio.
  - Control Live Listen.
  - Choose whether phone and media audio are routed to the hearing device.
  - Choose to play ringtones through the hearing device.

Use your hearing devices with more than one device

If you pair your hearing devices with more than one device (both iPhone and iPad, for example), the connection for your hearing devices automatically switches from one to the other when you do something that generates audio on the other device, or when you receive a phone call on iPhone.

Changes you make to hearing device settings on one device are automatically synced with your other devices.

1. Sign in to your Apple Account on all the devices.

2. Connect all the devices to the same Wi-Fi network.

Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility

Hearing Aid Compatibility may reduce interference and improve audio quality with some hearing aid models.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
2. Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility.

For iPhone hearing aid compatibility ratings, see the Apple Support article About Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) requirements for iPhone.

Hearing aid compatibility ratings aren't a guarantee that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone. Some hearing aids might work well with phones that do not meet the FCC requirements for hearing aid compatibility. To ensure that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone, use them together before purchasing.

Stream audio to your hearing devices

You can stream audio from phone calls, music, movies, podcasts, Siri, and more.

1. Tap in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or in the Now Playing controls for the app you're listening to.
2. Choose your hearing device.

You can also automatically route audio calls to a hearing device.

To troubleshoot issues you have using your hearing devices with iPhone, see the Apple Support article Use Made for iPhone hearing devices.

See also

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Table of Contents

Control several devices with one switch on iPhone

You can remotely control your other Apple devices without adjusting any switch connections. With Platform Switching, you can navigate your iPad, Mac, or Apple TV using the same switch that you use to control your iPhone.

1. Connect your devices to the same Wi-Fi network.
2. Sign in with the same Apple Account on all your devices.
3. Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone, then turn on Switch Control for the others: iPad, Mac, or Apple TV.
4. Use the switch to open the Scanner menu.
5. Choose Device, choose Use Other Device, then choose Connect.

To remove control from your iPhone, choose Devices on the connected device, then choose Disconnect.

See also

Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

Control your home remotely with iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Table of Contents

Control iPhone with the movement of your eyes

With Eye Tracking, you can control iPhone using just your eyes. An onscreen pointer follows the movement of your eyes, and when you look at an item and hold your gaze steady, or *dwell*, you perform an action, such as a tap. All data used to set up and control Eye Tracking is processed on device.

Before you begin

Eye Tracking uses the built-in, front-facing camera on iPhone. For best results, make sure that the camera has a clear view of your face and that your face is adequately lit. iPhone should be on a stable surface about a foot and a half away from your face.

Eye Tracking is available with supported iPhone models.

Turn on Eye Tracking

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Eye Tracking, then turn on Eye Tracking.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to calibrate Eye Tracking. As a dot appears in different locations around the screen, follow its movement with your eyes.

   Note: You need to calibrate Eye Tracking every time you turn it on.

Use Eye Tracking

After you turn on and calibrate Eye Tracking, iPhone follows the movement of your eyes. By default, when you're looking at an item on the screen, an outline appears around the item.

If Snap to Item is turned off, when you hold your gaze steady at a location on the screen, the dwell pointer appears where you're looking and the dwell timer begins (the dwell pointer circle starts to fill). When the dwell timer finishes, an action—tap, by default—is performed.

To perform additional onscreen gestures or physical button presses, use the AssistiveTouch menu. See Use AssistiveTouch.

Recalibrate Eye Tracking

If you change the position of your face or your iPhone, Eye Tracking calibration automatically starts if recalibration is needed. You can also manually start Eye Tracking calibration.

1. Look at the top-left corner of your screen and hold your gaze steady.

   The dwell pointer appears and the dwell timer begins (the dwell pointer circle starts to fill). When the dwell timer finishes, Eye Tracking calibration starts.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions to calibrate Eye Tracking. As a dot appears in different locations around the screen, follow its movement with your eyes.

You can change which corner of the screen you need to look at to start recalibration or assign actions to other corners. See Set up Dwell Control.

Set options for Eye Tracking

You can set options for how the Eye Tracking pointer responds to your gaze.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Eye Tracking, then adjust any of the following:

   - *Smoothing:* Increase this value to make the movement of the pointer smoother. Or decrease this value to make the pointer more responsive.

   - *Snap to Item:* Have the Eye Tracking pointer automatically move to the item on the screen that's closest to where you're looking.

   - *Zoom on Keyboard Keys:* When you dwell on the keyboard, zoom in on the section of the keyboard you're looking at. Dwell again on a key to tap it.

   - *Auto-Hide:* Show the Eye Tracking pointer when you hold your gaze steady for the amount of time specified. The pointer automatically fades while your eyes are

moving.

- *Dwell Control:* Turn Dwell Control on or off. To adjust settings for Dwell Control, such as the default dwell action and the duration of the dwell timer, see Set up Dwell Control.

- *Show Face Guidance:* Turn Show Face Guidance on or off to get help adjusting how you're positioned.

To change the size or color of the Eye Tracking pointer, go to Settings > Accessibility > Pointer Control. See Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone.

See also

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Control a nearby Apple device

Next
Control iPhone with the movement of your head

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more

After you set up and turn on Switch Control, you can select items on the screen by doing any of the following:

- *Item mode:* The cursor sequentially highlights items or groups of items. This is the default method when you first turn on Switch Control and whenever the Scanner menu appears.
- *Gliding cursor:* You select a point on the screen using scanning crosshairs. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.
- *Head tracking:* You can move your head (detected by the front-facing camera) to control the cursor on the screen.
- *Eye tracking:* You can move your eyes (detected by the front-facing camera) to control the cursor on the screen.

When the cursor is on the item you want, the Scanner menu opens to show the available actions such as tap, scroll, control the volume, and more.

Use item mode to select items and perform actions

1. Depending on the scanning style you're using, do one of the following:

    - *If using Auto Scanning:* Watch or listen as groups of items are sequentially highlighted.
    - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
    - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.

2. When the group you want is highlighted, do one of the following:

    - *If using Auto Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
    - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
    - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Wait until the current group is automatically selected.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and select an item within the group.
4. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and choose an action in the Scanner menu. The dots at the bottom of the menu provide more options.

To dismiss the Scanner menu without choosing an action, activate your Select Item switch when the original item is highlighted and all the icons in the menu are dimmed.

Use the Gliding Cursor to select a point

Switch Control starts in item mode by default, but you can choose to use the Gliding Cursor instead.

1. Do either of the following:

    - Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switch Control Mode > then select Gliding Cursor.
    - Use item mode to select any item, then choose Gliding Cursor (in the Scanner menu).

2. To position the vertical crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide vertical band is over the item you want.
3. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine vertical line is over the item.
4. To position the horizontal crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide horizontal band is over the item you want.
5. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine horizontal line is over the item.
6. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

Set up Head Tracking

You can move your head to control a cursor on the screen. You can also assign actions to facial expressions, such as a smile or raised eyebrows.

To set up Head Tracking, do the following:

- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches, then make sure you've set up switches.
- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Head Tracking, turn on Head Tracking, then set any of these options:
    - *Assign actions to facial expressions:* Each expression can perform a different action and require a different degree of expressiveness.
    - *Choose how the pointer tracks your head movement:* Tap Tracking Mode, then choose With Face, When Facing Screen Edges, or Relative to Head.
    - *Adjust the pointer speed:* Tap − or +.

Use Head Tracking

1. Do either of the following:
    - Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switch Control Mode > then select Head Tracking.
    - Use item mode to select any item, then choose Head Tracking (in the Scanner menu).
2. Move your head to position the cursor on the location you want, then activate it using your Select Item switch or facial expression.
3. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch or facial expression.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

Set up Eye Tracking

You can move your eyes to control a cursor on the screen. You can also use Dwell Control to perform actions by maintaining your gaze for a set amount of time.

To set up Eye Tracking, do the following:

- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches, then make sure you've set up switches.
- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Eye Tracking, turn on Face Guidance.
- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Eye Tracking > Dwell Control, choose a switch action, then set any of these Dwell Options:
  - *Dwell Timeout:* Tap − or +.
  - *Movement Tolerance:* Drag the slider to set the distance you can move while dwelling on an item.

Use Eye Tracking

1. Do either of the following:
   - Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switch Control Mode > then select Eye Tracking.
   - Use item mode to select any item, then choose Eye Tracking (in the Scanner menu).
2. Move your eyes to position the cursor on the location you want, then activate it using your Select Item switch.
3. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch.

See also

Intro to Switch Control on iPhone

Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Table of Contents

Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

Apple Watch Mirroring allows you to see and control your Apple Watch screen from your paired iPhone. You can use touch or assistive features like Voice Control, Switch Control, and more on your iPhone to interact with Apple Watch. (Apple Watch Mirroring is available on Apple Watch Series 6 and later.)

To turn on Apple Watch Mirroring, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Apple Watch Mirroring.
- You can triple-click a button if you set up Accessibility Shortcut.

To turn off Apple Watch Mirroring, tap .

See also

Use Apple Watch with iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Adjust AirPods settings

Next
Control a nearby Apple device

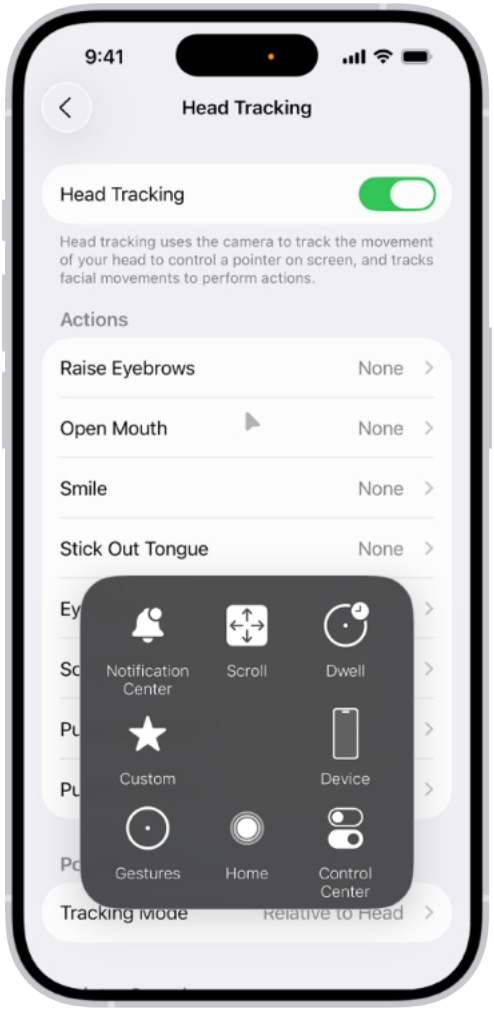
Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Control iPhone with the movement of your head

With Head Tracking, you can control iPhone using just your head. An onscreen pointer follows the movement of your head, and when you look at an item and hold your head steady—or *dwell*—you perform an action, such as a tap.



Note: Head Tracking is available on iOS 26 and later.

Before you begin

Head Tracking uses the built-in, front-facing camera on iPhone. For best results, make sure that the camera has a clear view of your face and that your face is adequately lit.

iPhone should be on a stable surface about 18 inches away from your face.

Turn on Head Tracking

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Head Tracking, then turn on Head Tracking.

Use Head Tracking

After you turn on Head Tracking, an onscreen pointer follows the movement of your head. When your head is pointed toward an item on the screen, an outline appears around the item. The pointer always moves with your head no matter where you face. Moving faster makes the pointer move faster.

When you hold your head steady at a location on the screen, the dwell pointer appears where you're looking and the dwell timer begins (the dwell pointer circle starts to fill). When the dwell timer finishes, an action—tap, by default—is performed.

To perform additional onscreen gestures or physical button presses, use the AssistiveTouch menu. See Use AssistiveTouch.

Set options for Head Tracking

You can customize actions like a Single-Tap or Double Tap to different facial movements, like smiling, blinking, or scrunching your nose. You can also set options for how the Head Tracking pointer responds to your head's movement.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Actions:* Select a facial expression (like Raise Eyebrows or Open Mouth), then choose an action from the list (like Open Menu or Single-Tap).

     Sensitivity: Choose the amount of expressiveness needed to perform the expression.

   - *Pointer:* Select an option to have the pointer move with face movements, when facing screen edges, or based on head position.

- *Pointer Speed:* Select the Increment button or Decrement button to adjust how quickly the pointer moves with head movement.
- *Snap to Item:* Have the pointer automatically move to the item on the screen that's closest to where your head is pointing.
- *Dwell Control:* Turn Dwell Control on or off. To adjust settings for Dwell Control, such as the default dwell action and the duration of the dwell timer, see Set up Dwell Control.

See also

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Control iPhone with the movement of your eyes

Next
Intro to Switch Control

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

iPhone comes with built-in tools designed to help you hear better—or stay connected without hearing a sound.

To explore accessibility features for hearing, go to Settings > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Hearing section.

Use alternatives to sound

Get real-time captions of spoken audio

With Live Captions, get a transcription of the audio from any app and from live conversations around you.

Get live captions of spoken audio

Customize subtitles and captions

Change how subtitles look. Or instead of standard subtitles, use closed captions and SDH when available.

Display subtitles and captions

Get notified if someone says your name

With Name Recognition, have iPhone listen for your name and alert you when it recognizes it.

Recognize your name

Get notified about sounds around you

With Sound Recognition, have iPhone listen for sounds—such as a doorbell or siren—and alert you when it recognizes them.

Recognize sounds

Feel the music

Experience music as taps, textures, and refined vibrations that are synchronized with a song's audio.

Play music as vibrations and other haptics

Type to Siri

Type your Siri requests instead of speaking them.

Change Siri accessibility settings

Make Real-Time Text (RTT) calls

Type to communicate on a phone call. The person you're talking to sees your message as you type it.

Set up and use RTT and TTY

Blink the iPhone light for notifications

If you can't hear your alerts, get notified visually.

Flash the iPhone indicator light for notifications

You can also get transcriptions of audio messages, HomePod intercom messages, and podcasts.

Use hearing devices and make audio adjustments

Hearing devices

Pair Made for iPhone (MFi) hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings.

Use hearing devices

Live Listen

Stream sound from the iPhone microphone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods.

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

Audio balance

Play stereo audio as mono, adjust left-right stereo balance, and more.

Adjust audio settings

AirPods

Set accessibility options for AirPods and other Apple headphones paired with your iPhone.

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods

Background sounds

Have your iPhone play ambient sounds—such as ocean waves or rain—to help you focus or rest.

Play background sounds

You can also have Siri announce notifications and calls on your MFi hearing devices.

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut.

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Apple Accessibility Support website

Apple Accessibility website for Hearing

Previous
Control several devices with one switch

Next
Use hearing devices

Table of Contents

Intro to Switch Control on iPhone

Switch Control is an assistive technology for anyone with limited mobility. It enables you to interact with iPhone by activating a *switch*, such as pressing an external adaptive button, performing a head movement, or making a voiced or voiceless sound. Using one or more switches, you can navigate a cursor around the iPhone screen, then open the Scanner menu to choose an available action such as tap, zoom in, zoom out, and more.

What is a switch?

A switch can be an external hardware device or a feature on your iPhone.

Switches on iPhone don't require any additional hardware. For example:

- *Screen:* Use a tap or long press anywhere on the iPhone screen. You can set up tap and long press as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Camera:* While in view of the front-facing iPhone camera, move your head to the left or right, or pinch your left or right index finger and thumb. You can set up each gesture as a different switch with a separate action.
- *Back Tap:* Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone. You can set up double tap and triple tap as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Sound:* Make simple voiced sounds (such as "Oo") or voiceless sounds (such as a pop). You can set up each sound as a different switch with a separate action.
- *AirPods:* Nod or shake your head while wearing supported AirPods that are paired with your iPhone. You can set up nod and shake as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Gaming:* Turn any switch into a virtual game controller to play your favorite games on iPhone.

External switches connect to iPhone through Bluetooth® or the Lightning or USB-C connector. For example:

- Adaptive accessory

- Joystick
- Game controller
- MFi switch or switch interface

How does Switch Control work?

In Switch Control, each switch performs a specific action—for example, Move To Next Item moves the cursor to the next item on the screen. The switch's action is performed when you activate the switch—such as by pressing the adaptive button, moving your head, or making a sound.

You can use just one switch, or you can use multiple switches for different actions, depending on how you like to work. For example, you can activate your Move to Next Item switch to move the cursor from one item to the next. When the cursor highlights the item you want, you can activate your Select Item switch.

See also

Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Previous
Control iPhone with the movement of your head

Next
Set up and turn on Switch Control

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

You can remotely control your other Apple devices with your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Control Nearby Devices, then tap Control Nearby Devices.

   The device you want to control must be signed in to the same Apple Account and connected to the same Wi-Fi network as your iPhone.

2. Choose the device you want to control, then tap a button.

   Button names correspond to the controls on your device. Tap ••• to see your options, including media play controls.

Tip: To quickly turn on Control Nearby Devices, add this feature to Accessibility Shortcut.

To stop controlling the other device, tap ×.

See also

Control several devices with one switch on iPhone

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

Control your home remotely with iPhone

Table of Contents

Display subtitles and captions on iPhone

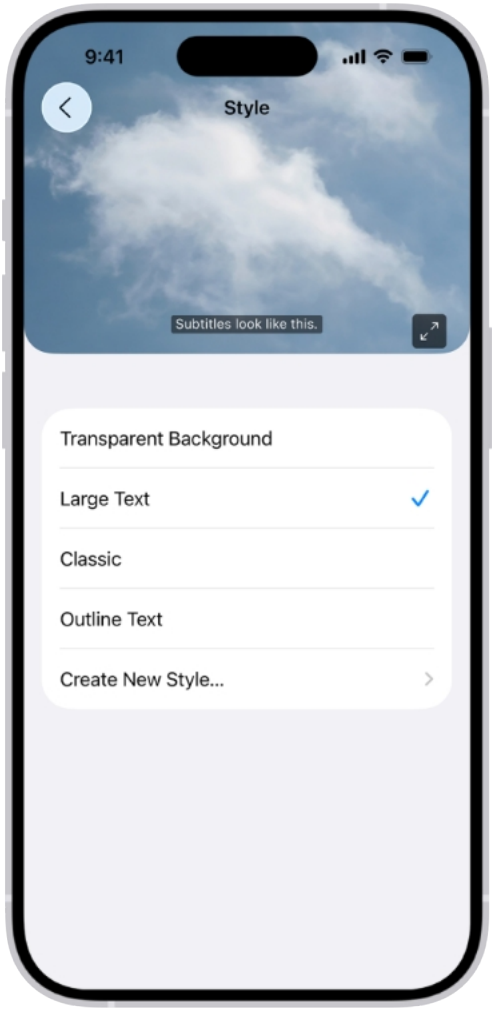
iPhone can provide subtitles, closed captions, and transcriptions so you can follow along more easily with audio and video.

Turn on subtitles and captions in the Apple TV app

When you play video content in a supported app, you can turn on subtitles and closed captions (if available). iPhone usually shows standard subtitles and captions, but you can also choose special accessible captions—such as subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing (SDH)—if available.

1. While playing video content, tap ⋯, then tap Subtitles.
2. Choose from the list of available subtitles and captions.

Customize the subtitles and captions in supported video apps



1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning.
2. If you prefer closed captioning or subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing when available, turn on Closed Captions + SDH.
3. Tap Style, then choose an existing caption style or create a new style based on the following:

    - Font, size, and color
    - Background color and opacity
    - Text opacity, edge style, and highlight

See also

Get live captions of spoken audio on iPhone

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Table of Contents

Set up and use RTT and TTY on iPhone

If you have hearing or speech difficulties, you can communicate by telephone using Teletype (TTY) or real-time text (RTT)—protocols that transmit text as you type and allow the recipient to read the message right away. RTT is a more advanced protocol that transmits audio as you type text.

iPhone provides built-in Software RTT and TTY from the Phone app—it requires no additional devices. If you turn on Software RTT/TTY, iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.

iPhone also supports Hardware TTY, so you can connect iPhone to an external TTY device with the iPhone TTY Adapter (sold separately in many regions).

Important: RTT and TTY aren't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions. RTT and TTY functionality depends on your carrier and network environment. When making an emergency call in the U.S., iPhone sends special characters or tones to alert the operator. The operator's ability to receive or respond to these tones can vary depending on your location. Apple doesn't guarantee that the operator will be able to receive or respond to an RTT or TTY call.

Set up RTT and TTY

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > RTT/TTY.

   Note: Depending on your carrier, you might see RTT, TTY, or RTT/TTY.

2. Turn on Software RTT, then do any of the following:

   - If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line.
   - Tap Relay Number, then enter the phone number to use for relay calls using Software RTT.
   - Turn on Send Immediately to send each character as you type. Turn it off to complete messages before sending.

- Turn on Answer All Calls as RTT/TTY.

3. If you want to answer and make TTY calls from an external TTY device instead of from your iPhone, turn on Hardware TTY.

When RTT or TTY is turned on, ☎ appears in the status bar at the top of the screen.

Connect iPhone to an external TTY device

If you turned on Hardware TTY in Settings > Accessibility > RTT/TTY, connect your iPhone to your TTY device using the iPhone TTY Adapter. If Software TTY is also turned on, incoming calls default to Hardware TTY. For information about using a particular TTY device, see the documentation that came with it.

Start an RTT or TTY call

1. Go to the Phone app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Contacts, then choose a contact.
3. Tap Call, then choose RTT/TTY Call or RTT/TTY Relay Call.
4. Wait for the call to connect, then tap ☎.

   iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.

If you haven't turned RTT on and you receive an incoming RTT call, tap the RTT button to answer the call with RTT.

Type text during an RTT or TTY call

1. When you accept or start an RTT or TTY call, tap ☎ Use RTT, then tap ☎.
2. Enter your message in the text field.

   If you turned on Send Immediately in Settings, your recipient sees each character as you type. Otherwise, tap ↑ to send the message.
3. To also transmit audio, tap in the top-right corner.

Note: Continuity features aren't available for RTT and TTY support. Standard voice call rates apply for both Software RTT/TTY and Hardware TTY calls.

See also

Get live captions of spoken audio on iPhone

Type to speak using Live Speech on iPhone

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Apple Support article: Answer or make RTT or TTY calls from your iPhone

Previous
Use name recognition

Next
Flash the indicator light for notifications

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Flash the iPhone indicator light for notifications

You can set the iPhone indicator light to blink when you receive a notification. This can be useful if you can't hear the sounds that announce incoming calls or other alerts, or if you might miss audible alerts in a noisy environment.

The indicator light is the light-emitting diode (LED) located on the back of iPhone, next to the camera lens.

---

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio & Visual, then turn on LED Flash for Alerts.
2. Turn any of the following on or off:
   - *Flash While Unlocked:* The indicator light flashes even when iPhone is unlocked.
   - *Flash in Silent Mode:* The indicator light flashes even when iPhone is in Silent mode.

See also

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Table of Contents

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

You can stream sound from the microphone on iPhone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

1. Do one of the following:
   - *If you're using a hearing device:* Wear your hearing device and make sure it's paired to your iPhone.
   - *If you're using AirPods:* Wear one or both of your AirPods and make sure they're connected to your iPhone.
2. To turn on Live Listen, do one of the following:
   - Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio & Visual > Live Listen > then tap Start Live Listen.
   - Open Control Center, then tap .

     (If you don't see , add it to Control Center. See Customize controls.
   - Open Control Center, tap , tap your hearing device or AirPods, then tap Live Listen.

     (If you don't see , add it to Control Center. See Customize controls.
   - If you've set up the Accessibility Shortcut, triple-click the side button or Home button, tap Hearing Devices, then tap Live Listen.

- If you're using hearing aids, go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, then turn on Live Listen.

3. Position iPhone near the sound source, then sounds around you will become louder.
4. In Control Center, tap , tap Live Listen, then do any of the following:

   - *View Live Captions:* View captions of the Live Listen session in real time.
   - *Rewind:* Tap to go back to something that may have been missed.
   - *Skip forward:* Tap to go back to the live audio.
   - *Stop Live Listen:* Tap to stop the Live Listen session.

Control a Live Listen session on Apple Watch

When you use Live Listen on your iPhone, you can view a live transcription of nearby speech directly on your Apple Watch. As your iPhone picks up audio, the text appears on your watch screen in real time, so you can follow along without looking at your iPhone. You can also use Apple Watch as a remote to start, stop, or jump back in on a session to capture something that may have been missed. See View Live Listen transcription on Apple Watch.

See also

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

AirPods User Guide: Use Live Listen with AirPods

Previous
Use hearing devices

Next
Use sound recognition

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Play background sounds on iPhone

You can have iPhone play ambient background sounds—such as ocean waves or rain—to help you focus or rest. See the Apple Support article, Use Background Sounds to help with sleep, focus, and more.

---

1. Go to to the Settings app on your iPhone.

   Tip: Control Background Sounds with the click of a button or from Control Center. See Quickly turn accessibility features on or off.

2. Tap Accessibility, tap Audio & Visual, tap Background Sounds, then turn on Background Sounds.

3. Set any of the following:

   - *Sound:* Choose a sound; the audio file downloads to your iPhone.
   - *Volume:* Drag the slider.
   - *Use When Media is Playing:* Adjust the volume of the background sound when iPhone is playing music or other media.
   - *Equalizer:* Adjust the volume of different frequency ranges in background sounds.

     Tone: Select Broad to hear wider frequency ranges with a richer sound. Select Focused to hear specific frequency ranges with less audio distraction.

     Balance: Drag the slider left or right to adjust the sound balance.
   - *Stop Sounds with a Timer:* Set a timer to stop playing background sounds at a specific time or after an amount of time.

     Tip: Repeat the timer settings you selected by turning on “Always use these settings.”

- *Stop Sounds When Locked:* Background sounds stop playing when iPhone is locked.

See also

Play music on iPhone

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Previous
Adjust audio settings

Next
Display subtitles and captions

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Adjust audio settings on iPhone

You can use mono audio, adjust left-right stereo balance, and—with supported headphones—amplify soft sounds and adjust certain frequencies to best suit your hearing needs.

Balance the audio

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.
2. Adjust any of the following:
   - *Mono Audio:* Turn on Mono Audio to make the left and right speakers play the same content.
   - *Stereo Audio Balance:* Drag the Balance slider left or right.

Use phone noise cancellation

Phone noise cancellation uses air pressure to reduce ambient background noise. This means that you hear better when you're holding the receiver to your ear in certain noisy environments. Phone noise cancellation is available and on by default on iPhone 12 and earlier, and can be turned off for your comfort.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.
2. Turn Phone Noise Cancellation off or on.

Adjust certain frequencies and soft sounds

With Headphone Accommodations for supported Apple and Beats headphones, you can adjust certain sounds to best suit your hearing. Make soft sounds louder and boost some

frequencies so phone calls and media sound crisper and clearer.

1. Make sure you're in a quiet environment and that you've paired your AirPods or paired other supported Bluetooth® headphones.
2. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio & Visual > Headphone Accommodations, then turn on Headphone Accommodations.
3. Adjust any of the following:
   - *Frequencies:* Below Tune Audio For, choose an option to boost different frequencies.
   - *Soft sounds:* Drag the slider to set an amplification level for soft sounds.
4. Scroll down, then do any of the following:
   - Turn on Phone to apply the settings to phone calls.
   - Turn on Media to apply the settings to media playback like music, movies, and podcasts.

With some supported headphones, you can use Headphone Accommodations to personalize your headphone audio based on what sounds good to you. Tap Custom Audio Setup, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Tip: Quickly access Headphone Accommodations by tapping 🎧 in Control Center. (If you don't see 🎧, add it—tap +, tap Add a Control, scroll down to Hearing Accessibility, then tap Headphone Accommodations.)

For information about applying Headphone Accommodations settings to Transparency Mode and Conversation Boost when using AirPods Pro and iPhone, see Customize Transparency mode for AirPods Pro in the AirPods User Guide.

Make dialogue sound clearer in videos

When you watch supported video content, you can turn on voice isolation so the dialogue is easier to hear. During dialogue, voices are isolated and all other audio is substantially reduced.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.
2. Turn on Add Voice Isolation.
3. While watching a supported video in the Apple TV app, tap ···, then tap Audio.

4. Tap Enhance Dialogue, then tap Enhance or Enhance More.

See also

Check your headphone audio levels on iPhone

Play music on iPhone as taps, textures, and more

Adjust the sound quality in Music on iPhone

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Previous
Flash the indicator light for notifications

Next
Play background sounds

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Recognize your name using iPhone

Your iPhone can continuously listen for your name and notify you when it recognizes it. You can record how you or someone else says your name to help iPhone recognize your name.

Note: Name Recognition is available on iOS 26 and later. Name Recognition is only available in English. Don't rely on your iPhone to recognize your name in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured or in high-risk or emergency situations.



Set up Name Recognition

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Sound & Name Recognition, tap Name Recognition, then tap Set Up Name Recognition.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Add more than one name to Name Recognition

If you identify yourself by more than one name, you can have iPhone recognize multiple names.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Sound & Name Recognition, tap Name Recognition, then tap Add Name.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Tip: To quick turn Name Recognition on or off, add it to Control Center.

Previous
Use sound recognition

Next
Set up and use RTT and TTY

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Get live captions of spoken audio on iPhone

With Live Captions on iPhone, you can get a real-time transcription of spoken audio. Use Live Captions to more easily follow the audio in any app, such as FaceTime or Podcasts, as well as live conversations around you.

Note: Live Captions is available on iPhone 11 and later. Live Captions isn't available in all languages, countries, or regions. The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn’t be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations.

Set up and customize Live Captions

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Live Captions, then turn on Live Captions.
2. Tap Appearance to customize the text, size, and color of the captions.
3. By default, Live Captions are shown across all apps. To get live captions only for certain apps such as FaceTime or RTT, turn them on below In-App Live Captions.

Use Live Captions

With Live Captions turned on, iPhone automatically transcribes the spoken audio in apps —or from dialogue around you. You can do any of the following:

- *Transcribe an in-person conversation:* Tap Live Captions, then tap Microphone.
- *Transcribe iPhone audio:* Tap Live Captions, then tap iPhone Audio.
- *Pause the transcription:* Tap Live Captions, then tap Pause Listening.
- *Move the Live Captions window:* Drag the Live Captions window to reposition it on the screen.
- *Hide the Live Captions window:* The Live Captions window is automatically hidden when no audio is detected. If the window is showing, swipe left or right on the window to hide it. To restore the window, tap .

- *Make the transcription window full-screen:* Tap . To restore the window to the smaller size, tap .

See also

Display subtitles and captions on iPhone

Show transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod on iPhone

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Previous
Show transcriptions for Intercom messages

Next
Play music as taps, textures, and more

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Show transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod on iPhone

If members of your home use HomePod for Intercom messages, iPhone can transcribe the messages for you.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning, then turn on Show Audio Transcriptions.
2. In the Home app, tap •••, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Intercom, then choose when you receive notifications.

See Use HomePod as an Intercom in the HomePod User Guide.

See also

Get live captions of spoken audio on iPhone

Display subtitles and captions on iPhone

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Previous
Display subtitles and captions

Next
Get live captions of spoken audio

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Recognize sounds using iPhone

Your iPhone can continuously listen for certain sounds—such as a doorbell, siren, or crying baby—and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.

Note: Don't rely on your iPhone to recognize sounds in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation.

Set up Sound Recognition

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Sound & Name Recognition, tap Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.

   Note: After you turn on Sound Recognition, you may need to wait for iPhone to download the available sounds to your device.
3. Tap Sounds, then turn on the sounds you want iPhone to recognize.

Tip: To quickly turn Sound Recognition on or off, add it to Control Center.

Add a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell

You can also set up iPhone to recognize a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell if they aren't recognized automatically.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, tap Sound & Name Recognition, tap Sound Recognition, then tap Sounds.
3. Tap Custom Alarm or Custom Appliance or Doorbell, then enter a name.
4. When your alarm, appliance, or doorbell is ready, place iPhone near the sound and minimize background noise.

5. Tap Start Listening, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See also

Get notified about sounds in CarPlay

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Previous
Use Live Listen

Next
Use name recognition

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Play music on iPhone as taps, textures, and more

With Music Haptics, you can experience music on iPhone with taps, textures, and refined vibrations that are synchronized with a song's audio.

Note: Music Haptics is available with supported iPhone models for millions of songs in Apple Music, Music Classical, Shazam, and compatible third-party apps when your iPhone is connected to Wi-Fi or cellular.

---

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Music Haptics.
2. Turn Music Haptics on.

   To start or stop Music Haptics as a song plays, open Control Center, tap the audio card, then tap . If you see , Music Haptics isn't available for the song.
3. Doing any of the following to customize haptics:

   - *Customize:* Select Full Mix to play haptics to match the rhythm, beat, and energy of the song. Select Vocals Only to play haptics for vocals or vocal-like melodies.
   - *Intensity:* Select Light, Medium, or Strong haptic feedback.

Tip: You can also control Music Haptics with the click of a button or other shortcut. See Quickly turn accessibility features on or off.

See also

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Previous
Get live captions of spoken audio

Next
Get notified about sounds in CarPlay

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Cognitive accessibility features on iPhone

iPhone comes with built-in options to suit your cognitive needs—or those of someone you care for.

To explore accessibility features on iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility.

Adapt iPhone for someone you care for

Keep iPhone simple

If someone you care for has a cognitive disability, set up an iPhone with a simplified interface. Choose and customize core features that work best for them.

Assistive Access User Guide

Lock iPhone to one app

When you let a child use your iPhone, limit their access to a single app.

Lock iPhone to one app with Guided Access

You can also reduce sensory stimulus from the screen—for example, automatically dim the display of content that depicts flashing or strobing lights, and pause the display of rapid animated images such as GIFs. See Stop or reduce onscreen motion.

iPhone offers many additional tools to help you focus, make it easier to enter text, or follow along with what you're reading or listening to with features like Focus, Dictation, Read & Speak, and Live Captions.

For more resources, visit the Apple Cognitive Accessibility website.

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut.

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Record your Personal Voice on iPhone

If you're at risk of speech loss or someone with a speech disability, you can use Personal Voice on iPhone to create a synthesized voice that sounds like you. You can use your Personal Voice with Live Speech and have what you type spoken out loud during in-person conversations, in Phone and FaceTime calls, and in assistive communication apps.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Accessibility, then tap Personal Voice.
3. Tap Create a Personal Voice, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   (If you need to pause your recording session, tap Done. To resume, tap the name of your Personal Voice, then tap Continue Recording.)

   To allow your Personal Voice to be used on all of your devices with iCloud, turn on Share Across Devices. To allow apps to request to use your Personal Voice, turn on Allow Apps to Request to Use.

Note: To see the option to create your Personal Voice, you must first set a passcode. Personal Voice is available on supported iPhone models and is not available in all languages. See the Apple Support article Use Live Speech on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Watch to learn how to use Live Speech with your Personal Voice.

Your Personal Voice is saved securely on your iPhone for you to use during Phone and FaceTime calls, in-person conversations, and third-party alternative and augmentative communication (AAC) apps.

Important: Personal Voice can be used only with Live Speech and with third-party apps that you allow, such as Augmentative and Alternative Communication (AAC) apps. You can use Personal Voice only to create a voice that sounds like you on device, using your own voice, and for your own personal, noncommercial use. See the Apple Support article Create a Personal Voice on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac to learn how to create a Personal Voice. Your Legacy Contact won't be able to access your Personal Voice.

See also

Type instead of speak to Siri

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Accessibility features for speech on iPhone

Previous
Type to speak

Next
Use Vocal Shortcuts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Vocal Shortcuts on iPhone

With Vocal Shortcuts, you can teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing. Vocal Shortcuts can be useful if you have moderate to severe atypical speech but can reliably vocalize certain utterances. Audio is processed on device.

Set up Vocal Shortcuts

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts.
2. Tap Set Up, then tap Continue.
3. Choose an action for iPhone to perform when you say the shortcut. If you want the action to be a request to Siri, tap Siri Request, then enter the request.
4. Enter the phrase you'll say when you want iPhone to perform the action, then follow the onscreen instructions to repeat the phrase out loud so that iPhone can recognize it.

After you set up Vocal Shortcuts, is shown in the status bar to indicate that Vocal Shortcuts is using the iPhone microphone to listen for shortcuts. When you don't want Vocal Shortcuts to use the microphone, go to Settings > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts, then turn off Vocal Shortcuts.

Add a Vocal Shortcut

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts.
2. Tap Add Action, then tap Continue.
3. Choose an action for iPhone to perform when you say the shortcut. If you want the action to be a request to Siri, tap Siri Request, then enter the request.

4. Enter the phrase you'll say when you want iPhone to perform the action, then follow the onscreen instructions to repeat the phrase out loud so that iPhone can recognize it.

Use a Vocal Shortcut

After you've set up Vocal Shortcuts, just say the phrase for one the shortcuts you've created.

Delete a Vocal Shortcut

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts.
2. Tap Edit, tap ⊖ next to the shortcut you want to delete, then tap Delete.

Tip: If you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, you can have Siri listen for and recognize a wider range of atypical speech patterns. See Change Siri accessibility settings.

See also

Turn on and activate Siri on iPhone

Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

Accessibility features for speech on iPhone

Previous
Record your Personal Voice

Next
Overview of cognitive accessibility features

Helpful? Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Lock iPhone to one app with Guided Access

With Guided Access, you can temporarily restrict iPhone to a single app. This can be useful when you let a child use your iPhone or when you want to stay focused on a task. You can set a time limit, and customize which features, hardware buttons, and areas of the screen are available.



Set up Guided Access

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Guided Access, then turn on Guided Access.
2. Do any of the following for Guided Access sessions:

- *End a session with a passcode:* Tap Passcode Settings, tap Set Guided Access Passcode, then enter a passcode.
- *End a session with Face ID or Touch ID:* Tap Passcode Settings, then turn on Face ID (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID (on other iPhone models).
- *Play a sound to announce time limits:* Tap Time Limits, tap Sound, then select a sound or tap Tone Store to browse other options.
- *Hear time limits spoken:* Tap Time Limits, then turn on Speak to hear the time remaining before a Guided Access session ends.
- *Allow Accessibility Shortcut during a session:* Turn on Accessibility Shortcut.
- *Set how long it takes iPhone to lock automatically:* Tap Display Auto-Lock, then select an option.

Start a Guided Access session

1. Go to the app you want to use.
2. To turn on Guided Access, do one of the following:

   Siri: Ask Siri something like, "Turn on Guided Access." Learn how to use Siri.

   - Use Control Center if you've added Guided Access there.
   - Use the Accessibility Shortcut.
3. Circle any areas of the screen you want to disable. Drag the mask into position or use the handles to adjust its size.
4. Tap Options, then turn on or off any of the following:

   - Side Button
   - Volume Buttons
   - Motion (to prevent iPhone from switching from portrait to landscape or from responding to other motions)
   - Software Keyboards

- Touch
- Time Limit

5. Tap Start.

Important: Crash Detection and Emergency Services aren't available while using Guided Access. Exit Guided Access to use Crash Detection or to make emergency calls.

End a Guided Access session

Depending on the passcode options you chose when you set up Guided Access, do any of the following:

- *Use the passcode:* Triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPhone models), then enter the Guided Access passcode. If you didn't set a Guided Access passcode, enter your iPhone passcode.
- *Use Face ID or Touch ID:* If you turned on the Face ID or Touch ID option in Guided Access Passcode Settings, double-click the side button or Home button, then unlock your iPhone with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your iPhone model).

To set up an iPhone with a simplified interface and a customizable set of core features, see the Assistive Access User Guide.

See also

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone

Customize onscreen motion on iPhone

Cognitive accessibility features on iPhone

Previous
Overview of cognitive accessibility features

Next
Control what you share

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Accessibility features for speech on iPhone

iPhone comes with built-in tools for communicating in the way that works best for you, whether you're nonspeaking, at risk of speech loss, or someone with a speech disability. You can have what you type spoken out loud, create a synthesized voice that sounds like you, and more.

To explore accessibility features for speech, go to Settings > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Speech section.

Type to speak



Live Speech

If you're unable to speak or you have a speech disability, type what you want to say and have iPhone speak it.

Type to speak using Live Speech



Personal Voice

If you're at risk of losing your ability to speak, create a synthesized voice that sounds like you.

Record your Personal Voice



Type to Siri

Type your Siri requests instead of speaking them.

Type instead of speaking to Siri

Control iPhone with your voice

Use voice commands

Speak commands to navigate and interact with what's on the screen, dictate and edit text, and more.

Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone

Use simple sounds

You can use voiced or voiceless sounds—like an S-sound or a mouth pop—to navigate and interact with what's on the screen.

Use sound actions with Switch Control

Vocal Shortcuts

Have iPhone perform an action when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing.

Use Vocal Shortcuts

Have Siri listen for atypical speech

If you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, have Siri recognize a wider range of atypical speech patterns.

Change Siri accessibility settings

You can also have Siri wait longer for you to finish speaking, or use Dictation to enter text using just your voice.

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut.

See also

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Apple Accessibility Support website

Apple Accessibility website for Speech

Previous
Get notified about sounds in CarPlay

Next
Type to speak

Helpful? Yes No

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Get notified about sounds in CarPlay

With Sound Recognition in CarPlay, you can have iPhone continuously listen for car horns, sirens, or baby crying, and recognize them using on-device intelligence. A notification appears on the CarPlay touchscreen when these sounds are detected.

Note: Sound Recognition in CarPlay is available with supported iPhone models. Don't rely on Sound Recognition in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation. CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

1. In CarPlay, go to Settings > Accessibility.
2. Select Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.
3. Turn on the sounds you want to be notified about.

See also

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Change settings in CarPlay

Recognize sounds using iPhone

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Previous
Play music as taps, textures, and more

Next
Overview of accessibility features for speech

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Type to speak using Live Speech on iPhone

If you're unable to speak or have lost your speech over time, you can use Live Speech on iPhone to have what you type spoken out loud during in-person conversations and in apps like FaceTime. You can choose from dozens of system voices or use a Personal Voice you create.

Note: Live Speech is not available in all languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Turn on Live Speech

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Live Speech, then turn on Live Speech.
2. Choose a voice. You can use Live Speech with any voice you choose, including your Personal Voice.
3. Triple-click the side button or Home button (depending on your iPhone model), then tap Live Speech (if the Accessibility Shortcut is set up with more than one feature).

Have what you type spoken out loud

1. After you turn on Live Speech, type what you want to have spoken in the Live Speech window.

   You can also paste copied text into the window, or tap suggested words that appear above the keyboard as you type.
2. Tap Speak to have your text spoken out loud.

If you're on a FaceTime call, Live Speech is output on the other end of the call. Otherwise, the speaker on your iPhone outputs Live Speech.

Have saved phrases spoken out loud

With Live Speech, you can select from a list of phrases you use often.

1. After you turn on Live Speech, tap Keyboard at the top of the Live Speech window.
2. Tap a category, like Recent or Saved, then tap a phrase to have it spoken out loud.
3. To hide your saved phrases and return to entering text with the keyboard, tap Phrases at the top of the Live Speech window.

Add or remove saved phrases

Add or remove phrases from the list of saved phrases that you use often.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Live Speech, then tap Phrases.
2. Tap Saved or another category you've created, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a saved phrase:* Tap +, enter your phrase in the text field, then tap Save.
   - *Remove a saved phrase:* Tap a phrase, then tap Delete Phrase.

Create categories for saved phrases

Organize your saved phrases into categories, such as for different activities—like work, school, or gaming.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Live Speech, then tap Phrases.
2. Tap +, enter a name for the category, choose an icon, then tap Done.

Allow audio from other apps in calls

You can allow the audio from apps to be audible in voice and video calls, which can be helpful if you use apps that assist with speaking and communication.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Audio & Visual, then tap Add Audio in Calls.
2. Turn on Allow Apps to Add Audio in Calls.

When this option is on, both audio and microphone input are included in calls. To silence all audio during a call, mute the microphone.

See also

Type instead of speak to Siri

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Accessibility features for speech on iPhone

Apple Support article: Use Live Speech on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Watch

Previous
Overview of accessibility features for speech

Next
Record your Personal Voice

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Set a passcode on iPhone

For better security, set a passcode that needs to be entered to unlock iPhone when you turn it on or wake it. Setting a passcode also turns on data protection, which encrypts your iPhone data with 256-bit AES encryption. (Some apps may opt out of using data protection.)

Set or change the passcode

1. Go to Settings, then depending on your model, do one of the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Turn Passcode On or Change Passcode.

   To view options for creating a passcode, tap Passcode Options. The most secure options are Custom Alphanumeric Code and Custom Numeric Code.

After you set a passcode, on supported models you can use Face ID or Touch ID to unlock iPhone (depending on your model). For additional security, however, you must always enter your passcode to unlock your iPhone under the following conditions:

- You turn on or restart your iPhone.
- You haven't unlocked your iPhone for more than 48 hours.
- You haven't unlocked your iPhone with the passcode in the last 6.5 days, and you haven't unlocked it with Face ID or Touch ID in the last 4 hours.
- Your iPhone receives a remote lock command.
- There are five unsuccessful attempts to unlock your iPhone with Face ID or Touch ID.
- An attempt to use Emergency SOS is initiated (see Use Emergency SOS).

- An attempt to view your Medical ID is initiated (see Set up and view your Medical ID).

Change when iPhone automatically locks

Go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then set a length of time.

Note: If you keep your iPhone on the Home Screen and don't take any action, your Auto-Lock time is reduced by half.

Erase data after 10 failed passcodes

Set iPhone to erase all information, media, and personal settings after 10 consecutive failed passcode attempts.

1. Go to Settings, then do one of the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Scroll to the bottom and turn on Erase Data.

After all data is erased, you must restore your device from a backup. If you didn't back up your iPhone, you need to set it up again as new.

Turn off the passcode

1. Go to Settings, then do one of the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Turn Passcode Off.

Reset the passcode

If you enter the wrong passcode four times in a row, you'll be locked out of your device, and you'll receive a message that says iPhone is disabled. If you can't remember your passcode, you can erase your iPhone with a computer or with recovery mode, then set a

new passcode. See the Apple Support article If you forgot your iPhone passcode, use your Mac or PC to reset it.

Note: If you made an iCloud or computer backup before you forgot your passcode, you can restore your data and settings from the backup.

See also

Set up Face ID on iPhone

Set up Touch ID on iPhone

Previous
Control what you share

Next
Set up Face ID

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Prevent contacts from communicating with you on iPhone

On iPhone, you can easily block contacts from being able to communicate with you in the Phone, Messages, and FaceTime apps.

Block a contact

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, then tap Blocked Contacts.
3. Tap Add Blocked Contact, then select a contact to block.

Unblock a contact

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, then tap Blocked Contacts.
3. Select a Blocked Contact, scroll down, then tap Unblock Contact.

See also

Screen and block calls on iPhone

Screen, filter, report, and block text messages on iPhone

Block a FaceTime call and report it as spam on iPhone

Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency

Table of Contents

Control the location information you share on iPhone

You control whether iPhone and apps have information about your location.

To figure out where you are when getting directions, setting up meetings, and more, Location Services uses information (when available) from GPS networks, your Bluetooth® connections, your local Wi-Fi networks, and your cellular network. When an app is using Location Services, appears in the status bar.

When you set up iPhone, you're asked if you want to turn on Location Services. Afterward, you can turn Location Services on or off at any time.

The first time an app wants location data from your iPhone, you receive a request with an explanation. Some apps may make a one-time only request for your location. Other apps may ask you to share your location now and in the future. Whether you grant or deny ongoing access to your location, you can change an app's access later.

Turn on Location Services

If you didn't turn on Location Services when you first set up iPhone, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.

Important: If you turn off Location Services, many important iPhone features stop working.

View apps using your location information

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. To review or change access settings for an app or to see its explanation for requesting Location Services, tap the app.

To allow an app to use your specific location, leave Precise Location turned on. To share only your approximate location—which may be sufficient for an app that doesn't need

your exact location—turn Precise Location off.

Note: If you set the access for an app to Ask Next Time, you're asked to turn on Location Services again the next time an app tries to use it.

To understand how a third-party app uses the information it's requesting, review its terms and privacy policy. See the Apple Support article About privacy and Location Services.

Hide the map in Location Services alerts

When you allow an app to always use your location in the background, you may receive alerts about the app's use of that information. (These alerts let you change your permission, if you want to.) In the alerts, a map shows locations recently accessed by the app.

To hide the map, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Location Alerts, then turn off Show Map in Location Alerts.

With the setting off, you continue to receive location alerts, but the map isn't shown.

Review or change Location Services settings for system services

Several system services, such as location-based suggestions and location-based ads, use Location Services.

To see the status for each service, to turn Location Services on or off for each service, or to show in the status bar when enabled system services use your location, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

Table of Contents

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Use Safety Check to periodically review and update information you share with people, apps, and devices. From Safety Check, you can stop sharing your location with others in Find My, remove others' access to shared content like Photos, Notes, and Calendar, reset system privacy permissions for apps, restrict Messages and FaceTime to the device in your hand, and more.

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Safety Check.
2. Tap Manage Sharing & Access, tap Continue, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You might also be sharing information that Safety Check can't review or change—for example, accounts and passwords, social media sharing, and information shared from another device. To learn more about reducing the information you share, see Additional considerations when using Safety Check in the Personal Safety User Guide.

Important: In an emergency, you can also use Safety Check to quickly reset access to your device and personal information. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Safety Check, tap Emergency Reset, tap Start Emergency Reset, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To learn more about Safety Check, see How Safety Check on iPhone works to keep you safe in the Personal Safety User Guide.

See also

Stop sharing with people and apps with Safety Check on iPhone

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

Harden your iPhone from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode

Previous
Keep your Apple Account secure

Next
Control app tracking permissions

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Control app tracking permissions on iPhone

All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPhone across websites or apps owned by other companies for advertising or to share your information with data brokers. After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later. You can also stop all apps from requesting permission.

Review or change an app's permission to track you

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Tracking.

   The list shows the apps that requested permission to track you. You can turn permission on or off for any app on the list.

2. To stop all apps from asking permission to track you, turn off Allow Apps to Request to Track (at the top of the screen).

For more information about app tracking, tap "Learn more" near the top of the screen.

See also

Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone

Previous
Manage information sharing with Safety Check

Next
Control the location information you share

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Set up Touch ID on iPhone

Use Touch ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by pressing the Home button with your finger or thumb.

To use Touch ID, you must also set up a passcode on your iPhone.

Turn on Touch ID

1. Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on any of the options below Use Touch ID For, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you turn on iTunes & App Store, you're asked for your Apple Account password when you make your first purchase from the App Store, Apple Books, or the iTunes Store. When you make your next purchases, you're asked to use Touch ID.

Note: If you can't add a fingerprint or unlock your iPhone using Touch ID, see the Apple Support article If Touch ID isn't working on your iPhone or iPad.

Choose when to use Touch ID

You can use Touch ID to unlock your iPhone, authorize payments, automatically fill in passwords, and open password-protected apps.

Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode, then turn on options below Use Touch ID For.

Add a fingerprint

You can add multiple fingerprints (both of your thumbs and forefingers, for example).

1. Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode.

2. Tap Add a Fingerprint.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Name or delete a fingerprint

1. Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode.

   If you added more than one fingerprint, place a finger on the Home button to identify its print.

2. Tap the fingerprint, then enter a name (such as “Thumb”) or tap Delete Fingerprint.

Turn off Touch ID

Go to Settings > Touch ID & Passcode, then turn off one or more of the options.

See also

Change when iPhone automatically locks

Previous
Set up Face ID

Next
Turn on Lock Screen features

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

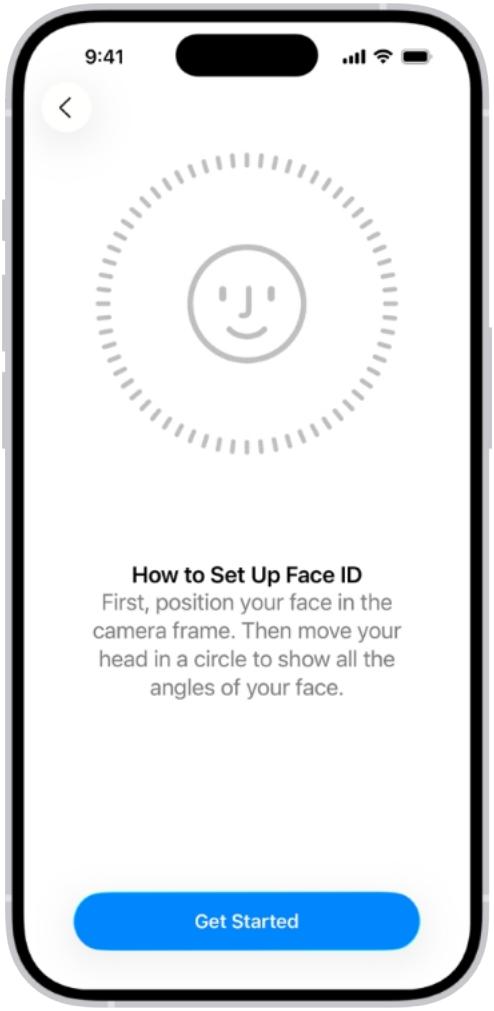
Set up Face ID on iPhone

Use Face ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by simply glancing at your iPhone.

To use Face ID, you must also set a passcode on your iPhone.

Set up Face ID or add an alternate appearance

- If you didn't set up Face ID when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode > Set up Face ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- To set up an additional appearance for Face ID to recognize, go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode > Set Up an Alternate Appearance, then follow the onscreen instructions.



Choose when to use Face ID

You can use Face ID to unlock your iPhone, authorize payments, automatically fill in passwords, and open password-protected apps.

Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode, then turn on options below Use Face ID For.

Use Face ID while wearing a face mask

On iPhone 12 models or later, you can use Face ID to unlock your phone while you wear a face mask (or other covering that blocks your mouth and nose).

When you turn on Face ID with a Mask, Face ID analyzes the unique characteristics around your eyes, and it works with all of the Face ID options you turn on in Settings > Face ID & Passcode.

Note: Face ID is most accurate when it's set up for full-face recognition only.

Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode, then do any of the following:

- *Allow Face ID to work while you wear a face mask:* Turn on Face ID with a Mask, then follow the onscreen instructions.

  Important: If you usually wear glasses, you can improve the accuracy of Face ID by wearing a pair of transparent glasses (not sunglasses) when you turn on Face ID with a Mask.

- *Add a pair of transparent glasses (not sunglasses) to your appearance:* Tap Add Glasses, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- *Don't allow Face ID to work while you wear a face mask:* Turn off Face ID with a Mask.

Alternatively, you can use Apple Watch with all models of iPhone that support Face ID to unlock iPhone while you wear a face mask. See Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch.

Temporarily disable Face ID

You can temporarily prevent Face ID from unlocking your iPhone.

1. Press and hold the side button and either volume button for 2 seconds.
2. After the sliders appear, press the side button to immediately lock iPhone.

   iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

The next time you unlock iPhone with your passcode, Face ID is enabled again.

Turn off Face ID

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Turn off Face ID for specific items only:* Turn off one or more of the options, such as Password AutoFill.

   - *Turn off Face ID for face masks:* Turn off Face ID with a Mask.

   - *Turn off Face ID:* Tap Reset Face ID.

If your device is lost or stolen, you can prevent Face ID from being used to unlock your device with Find My iPhone Lost Mode. (See Locate a device in Find My.)

For more information about Face ID, see About Face ID advanced technology.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Control what you share on iPhone

Apps ask for permission the first time they want to use something on your iPhone. You can control which apps can access your data, location, camera, and microphone, and manage safety protections. You can later change how much you want to share.



Control which apps have access to information on your iPhone

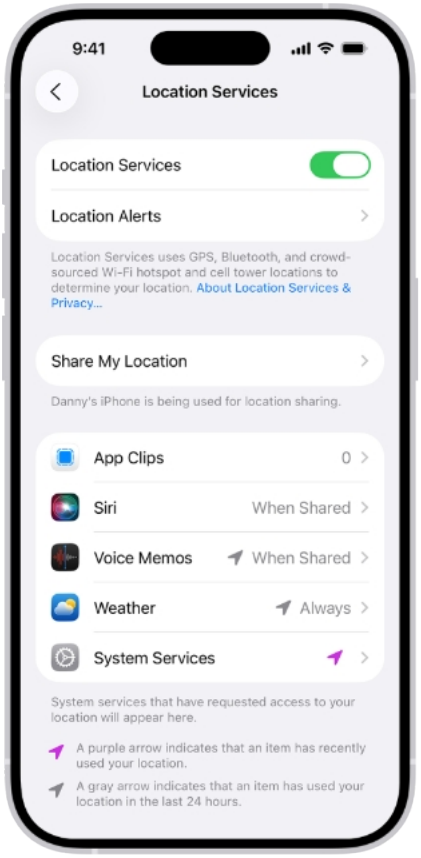
You can let third-party apps use information in your iPhone apps—such as Contacts, Photos, and Calendar—to help you get things done more quickly. For example, a messaging app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. You can turn access on or off for any individual app.

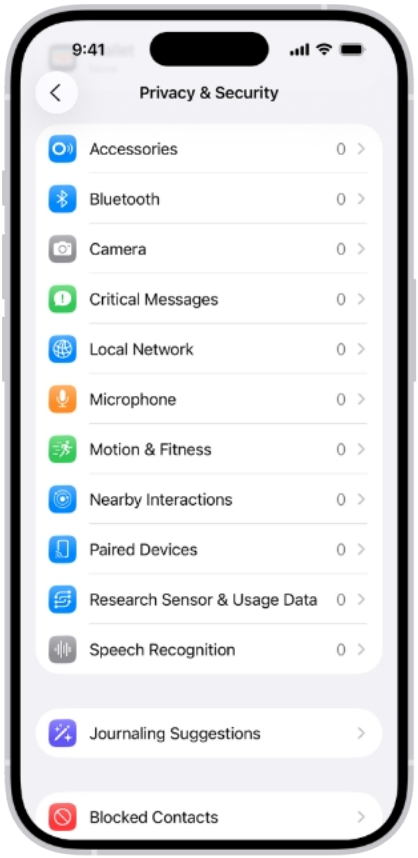
How to control access to information in iPhone apps ›

Control which apps can use the location of your iPhone

When you give apps access to the location of your iPhone, those apps can help you get directions, receive assistance in an emergency, and more. For example, a ride-sharing app may request access to your location to pick you up. When an app is using Location Services, ➤ appears in the status bar.

How to control access to the location of your iPhone ›





Control which apps have access to the camera and microphone on your iPhone

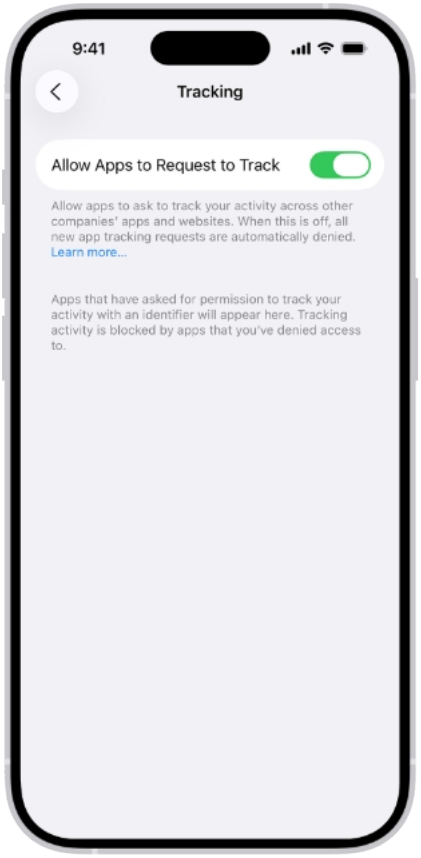
You can let apps use the camera and microphone to make it easier to upload content directly to those apps. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and post pictures to that app. Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears.

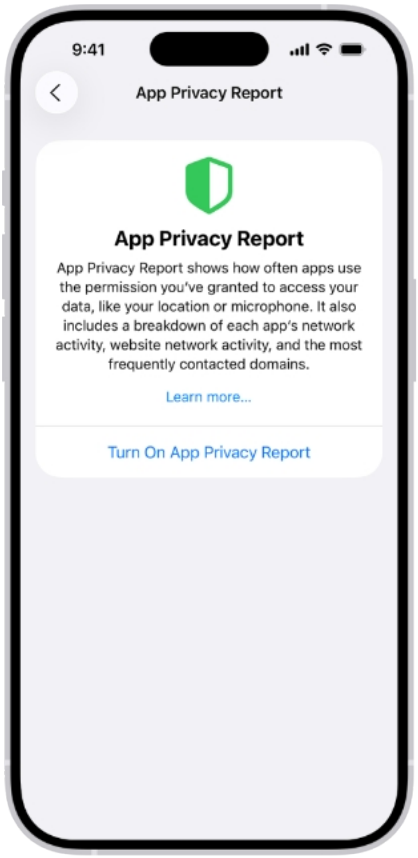
How to control access to the camera and microphone ›

Control which apps can track you or your iPhone across websites or other apps

All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPhone across websites or apps owned by other companies (for example, for advertising or to share your information with data brokers). After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later. You can also stop all apps from requesting permission.

How to control app tracking permissions ›





Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them

You can see how apps are using the permissions you've granted them, and their network activity, by reviewing an App Privacy Report.

How to view an App Privacy Report ›

To learn more about how Apple protects your information, go to the Privacy website. To learn how Apple designs security into the core of its platforms, see the Apple Platform Security Guide.

Previous
Lock iPhone to one app

Next
Set a passcode

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Keep your Apple Account secure on iPhone

Your Apple Account is the account you use to access Apple services like the App Store, Apple Music, iCloud, iMessage, and FaceTime. Your Apple Account includes the email address and password you use to sign in as well as the contact, payment, and security details you use across Apple services. Apple employs industry-standard practices to safeguard your Apple Account.

Best practices for maximizing the security of your Apple Account

- Don't let others use your Apple Account, even family members.

  To share purchases, subscriptions, a family calendar, and more without sharing Apple Accounts, set up Family Sharing.

- Use two-factor authentication. If you created your Apple Account on a device with iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later, your account automatically uses two-factor authentication. If you previously created an Apple Account without two-factor authentication, turn on two-factor authentication now.

- Never provide your password, security questions, verification codes, recovery key, or any other account security details to anyone else. Apple will never ask you for this information.

- When accessing your Apple Account page in Safari or another web browser, look for 🔒 in the address field to verify that your session is encrypted and secure.

- When using a public computer, always sign out when your session is complete to prevent other people from accessing your account.

- Avoid phishing scams. Don't click links in suspicious email or text messages, and never provide personal information on any website you aren't certain is legitimate. See the Apple Support article Recognize and avoid social engineering schemes including phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams.

- Don't use your password with other online accounts.

- To help protect your information in case your iPhone is stolen, turn on Stolen Device Protection. Stolen Device Protection adds a layer of security when your iPhone is away from familiar locations, such as home or work.
- If one of your devices is lost or stolen, turn on Lost Mode as soon as possible for that device. (You can do this on a friend's device and don't need to use your own.)

Add Account Recovery Contacts

If you forget your password or get locked out, choose one or more people you trust as Account Recovery Contacts to help you reset your Apple Account password and regain access to your account.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security > Recovery Contacts, tap Add Recovery Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security, then tap "Learn more" below Add Recovery Contact.

Add Legacy Contacts

The Digital Legacy program allows you to designate people as Legacy Contacts so they can access your Apple Account in the event of your death.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Sign-In & Security > Legacy Contact, tap Add Legacy Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about how to share the access key with a legacy contact, how to remove a legacy contact, and how your legacy contact can request access to your account, see the Apple Support article How to add a Legacy Contact for your Apple Account. Also see the Apple Support article Data that a Legacy Contact can access.

Generate a recovery key for your account

For additional control over your account security, you can generate a recovery key that helps you reset your account password or regain access to your Apple Account. A recovery key is a randomly generated 28-character code that you should keep in a safe place. You can reset your account password by either entering your recovery key or using another device already signed in to your Apple Account. To ensure you have access to

your account, you are personally responsible for maintaining access to the recovery key and your trusted devices.

See the Apple Support article Set up a recovery key for your Apple Account.

For more information about best practices, see the Apple Support article Security and your Apple Account.

To set up or manage your Apple Account, go to the Apple Account website.

If you forgot your Apple Account password, see the Recover your Apple Account website.

Previous
Block contacts

Next
Manage information sharing with Safety Check

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Turn on Lock Screen features on iPhone

You can make some commonly used features (such as Control Center, widgets, and media playback controls) available on the Lock Screen for easy access when iPhone is locked.

1. Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with a Home button).
2. Turn on options below Allow Access When Locked.

You can also supply medical information and emergency contacts in a Medical ID that first responders and others can view on your iPhone when it's locked. See Set up and view your Medical ID.

If you turn off Lock Screen access to a feature, you prevent someone who has your iPhone from viewing any personal information that it might contain (such as an upcoming event in the Calendar widget). However, you also lose quick access to the information yourself.

See also

Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

Lock or hide an app on iPhone

Previous
Set up Touch ID

Next
Block contacts

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Harden your iPhone from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode

Lockdown Mode is an extreme protection feature for iPhone. Its protections include safer wireless connectivity defaults, media handling, media sharing defaults, sandboxing, and network security optimizations.

Lockdown Mode is optional and should be used only if you believe you might be targeted by a highly sophisticated cyberattack, such as by a private company developing state-sponsored mercenary spyware.

Important: Most people are never targeted by attacks of this nature.

When iPhone is in Lockdown Mode, it doesn't function as it typically does. Apps, websites, and features are strictly limited for security, and some functionality isn't available, including:

- SharePlay
- Shared Albums
- FaceTime Live Photos
- FaceTime Continuity Handoff

In addition, your iPhone must be unlocked to connect with wired accessories. (Some connections are permitted for a short time after going into Lockdown Mode.)

Turn on Lockdown Mode

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then tap Turn On Lockdown Mode.

If you've set up an Apple Watch with your iPhone, turning on Lockdown Mode also turns it on for the paired Apple Watch (requires watchOS 10 or later).

Important: For complete protection, all of your devices must have Lockdown Mode turned on.

Learn about Lockdown Mode

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then tap Learn More.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Previous
Use Advanced Data Protection

Next
Use Stolen Device Protection

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Control access to hardware features on iPhone

Before apps use the camera or microphone on your iPhone, they're required to request your permission and explain why they're asking. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and upload pictures to that app. Apps are similarly required to request your permission to use various other hardware features, including Bluetooth® connectivity, motion and fitness sensors, and devices on your local network.

You can review which apps have requested access to these hardware features, and you can change their access at your discretion.

Review or change access to the camera, microphone, and other hardware features

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a hardware feature, such as Camera, Bluetooth, Local Network, or Microphone.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Note: Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears. An orange indicator appears at the top of the screen whenever an app uses the microphone without the camera. Also, a message appears at the top of Control Center to inform you when an app has recently used either.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Table of Contents

Use Stolen Device Protection on iPhone

You can use Stolen Device Protection to protect against the rare instance when someone has stolen your iPhone and knows your passcode. Stolen Device Protection prevents the person from performing critical device and Apple Account operations (like changing your device passcode or Apple Account password). It does this by requiring biometric authentication with Face ID or Touch ID. There is no passcode to fall back on.

When Stolen Device Protection is turned on, more sensitive operations require a Security Delay: a successful Face ID or Touch ID, an hour wait, then an additional successful biometric authentication. Security Delay helps prevent someone from making changes to settings that can lock you out of your iPhone or Apple Account. These measures help protect your device and account, and give you more time to turn on Lost Mode using the Find My app or find devices on iCloud.com.

Turn on Stolen Device Protection

1. Go to Settings, then do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode, then enter your passcode.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode, then enter your passcode.

2. Scroll down and tap Stolen Device Protection.

   Note: If you don't see Stolen Device Protection, you may need to set up Face ID or Touch ID first.

3. Turn on Stolen Device Protection.

4. Do one of the following:

   - *Use Stolen Device Protection when you're away from home or work:* Tap Away from Familiar Locations.

- *Use Stolen Device Protection everywhere:* Tap Always.

Turn off Stolen Device Protection

1. Go to Settings, then do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode, then enter your passcode.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode, then enter your passcode.

2. Scroll down and tap Stolen Device Protection.
3. Turn off Stolen Device Protection.

   If you have Stolen Device Protection set to Away from Familiar Locations and you're not at home or work, or you have Stolen Device Protection set to Always, a Security Delay is required to turn off Stolen Device Protection. Tap Start Security Delay, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more detailed information about Stolen Device Protection, see the Apple Support article About Stolen Device Protection for iPhone.

See also

Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone

Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Previous
Use Lockdown Mode

Next
Receive warnings about sensitive content

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

You control whether third-party apps have access to information in Contacts, Photos, Calendar, and other apps.

Review or change access to information in apps

The first time an app wants to use information from another app, you receive a request with an explanation. For example, a messaging app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. After you grant or deny access, you can change access later.

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a category of information, such as Calendars, Reminders, or Motion & Fitness.

A list appears showing the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security, then tap App Privacy Report.

The App Privacy Report shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them and shows you their network activity.

To turn off the report and delete its data, go to Settings > Privacy & Security > App Privacy Report, then tap Turn Off App Privacy Report. You can return to this Settings screen to turn the report on again.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Apple Support article: About App Privacy Report

Apple Support article: About privacy and Location Services

Previous
Control the location information you share

Next
Control access to contacts

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while preventing network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari.

Note: iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. For more information, see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.

Note: You need to turn on iCloud Private Relay on each device where you want to use it.

Turn iCloud Private Relay off

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *Turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily:* Tap Turn Off Until Tomorrow.

     Within 24 hours, iCloud Private Relay will turn back on automatically. If you want it to resume sooner, follow the instructions for turning it on at any time.

   - *Turn off iCloud Private Relay completely:* Tap Turn Off Private Relay.

For information about turning off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for a specific website, see Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a Wi-Fi network

1. Go to Settings > Wi-Fi.
2. Tap ⓘ, then turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

If you turn off Limit IP Address Tracking for a Wi-Fi network on your iPhone, iCloud Private Relay is turned off for this network across all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a cellular network

1. Go to Settings > Cellular, then do one of the following:
   - *If your iPhone has a single line:* Tap Cellular Data Options.
   - *If your iPhone has multiple lines:* Select a line (below SIMs).
2. Turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

The network setting is specific to a physical SIM or eSim in your iPhone (eSIM not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings.

Set the specificity of your IP address location

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Private Relay > IP Address Location, then choose one of the following:

- Maintain General Location (for example, to see local content in Safari)
- Use Country and Time Zone (to make your location more obscure)

See also

Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone

Apple Support article: About iCloud Private Relay

Table of Contents

Use Advanced Data Protection for your iCloud data

By default, iCloud secures your information by encrypting it when it's in transit, storing it in an encrypted format, and securing your encryption keys in Apple data centers. In addition, many Apple services use end-to-end encryption; your information is encrypted using keys derived from your devices and your device passcode, which only you know.

For the highest level of cloud data security, you can turn on Advanced Data Protection (iOS 16.2 or later required). It uses end-to-end encryption on more data categories such as the following:

- Device backup
- Messages backup
- iCloud Drive
- Notes
- Photos
- Reminders
- Safari bookmarks
- Siri Shortcuts
- Voice Memos
- Wallet passes

With Advanced Data Protection, your protected data can be decrypted only on your trusted devices, protecting your information even in the case of a data breach in the cloud. Not even Apple can access your information.

For detailed information about the requirements for using Advanced Data Protection, see the Apple Support article How to turn on Advanced Data Protection for iCloud.

Turn on Advanced Data Protection

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then tap Advanced Data Protection.
2. Tap Turn On Advanced Data Protection.
3. If you haven’t set up a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key, tap Account Recovery, tap Set Up Account Recovery, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   WARNING: If you use Advanced Data Protection, you’re responsible for your data recovery. Because Apple won’t have the keys required to recover your data, you’ll need to have a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key set up on your account. You can use these additional recovery methods to regain access to your data if you ever forget your password or lose access to your account.

If you choose to turn off Advanced Data Protection later, your iCloud data will revert to the standard level of security.

See also

Apple Support article: iCloud data security overview

Previous
Use a private network address

Next
Use Lockdown Mode

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use a private network address on iPhone

To help protect your privacy, your iPhone uses a unique private network address, called a *media access control (MAC) address*, on each Wi-Fi network it joins.

If a network can't use a private address (for example, to provide parental controls or to identify your iPhone as authorized to join), you can stop using a private address for that network.

Turn a private address off for a network

1. Go to Settings > Wi-Fi, then tap for a network.
2. Turn Private Address off.

   Important: For better privacy, leave Private Address turned on for all networks that support it. Using a private address helps reduce tracking of your iPhone across different Wi-Fi networks.

See also

View available networks and connect to Wi-Fi

Previous
Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay

Next
Use Advanced Data Protection

Helpful? Yes No

Table of Contents

Control access to your contacts on iPhone

On iPhone, you control which of your contacts an app can access. The first time an app wants to access your contacts, you receive a request from the app, along with an explanation. For example, a messaging app may ask to access your contacts in order to find friends who are using the same app. After you grant or deny the app's request, choose which contacts the app can access. You can always change the access you granted later.

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap Contacts, then tap the app.
3. Choose how much access to your contacts you're giving the app (below Contacts Access).
4. If you're giving Limited Access, tap Edit Selected Contacts to choose individuals.

   Select or deselect individual contacts, then tap Done.

See also

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

Previous
Control access to information in apps

Next
Control how Apple delivers advertising to you

Table of Contents

Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms or signing up for newsletters on the web, or when sending email.

You can create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Hide My Email, then do any of the following:

- *Create a Hide My Email address:* Tap Create New Address, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Deactivate a Hide My Email address:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), then tap Deactivate Email Address. After you deactivate the address, it no longer forwards emails to you.
- *Change which personal email address you forward to:* Tap Forward To, then choose an email address. Options consist of addresses that are available with your Apple Account.
- *Copy a forwarding address to use elsewhere:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), touch and hold the Hide My Email section, then tap Copy. To immediately use that address elsewhere, touch and hold in a text field, then tap Paste.

You can also generate Hide My Email addresses in Safari and Mail wherever email addresses are required. See Use Hide My Email in Safari and Use Hide My Email in Mail. In supporting apps, you can also generate a Hide My Email address when an email address is required by tapping the email address field, then tapping Hide My Email above the keyboard.

See also

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Control how Apple delivers advertising to you on iPhone

You control how Apple delivers advertising.

Ads delivered by Apple may appear in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. These ads don't access data from any other apps. In the App Store and Apple News, your search and download history may be used to serve you relevant search ads. In Apple News and Stocks, ads are served based partly on what you read or follow. This includes publishers you've enabled notifications for and the type of publishing subscription you have. The articles you read are not used to serve targeted ads to you outside these apps, and information collected about what you read is linked to a random identifier rather than to your Apple Account.

Review the information Apple uses to deliver ads

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > View Ad Targeting Information.

The information is used by Apple to deliver more relevant ads in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. Your personal data isn't provided to other parties.

Turn personalized ads on or off

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising, then turn Personalized Ads on or off.

Note: Turning off personalized ads limits Apple's ability to deliver relevant ads to you. It may not reduce the number of ads you receive.

Learn more about privacy and Apple's advertising platform

Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > About Advertising & Privacy.

See also

Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Previous
Control access to contacts

Next
Control access to hardware features

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Restore all content to iPhone from a backup

You can restore content, settings, and apps from a backup to a new or newly erased iPhone.

Important: To restore your iPhone, you must have a backup to restore from. See Back up iPhone.

Restore iPhone from an iCloud backup

1. Turn on your iPhone.

   The Hello screen should appear. If you already set up your device, you need to erase all of its content before you can use these steps to restore from your backup.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap Set Up Manually, tap Restore from iCloud Backup, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   - If you have another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later, you can use Quick Start to automatically set up your new device. Bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions to securely copy many of your settings, preferences, and iCloud Keychain. You can then restore the rest of your data and content to your new device from your iCloud backup.

     Or, if both devices have iOS 12.4, iPadOS 13, or later, you can transfer all your data wirelessly from your previous device to your new one. Keep your devices near each other and plugged into power until the migration process is complete.

You're asked for your Apple Account. If you've forgotten your Apple Account, go to iforgot.apple.com.

Restore iPhone from a computer backup

1. Using USB, connect a new or newly erased iPhone to the computer containing your backup.
2. Do one of the following:

    - *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPhone, click Trust, then click "Restore from this backup."

    - *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows device:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPhone near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore Backup.

      Note: Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article Update to the latest version of iTunes.

3. Choose your backup from the list, then click Continue.

If your backup is encrypted, you must enter the password before restoring your files and settings.

See the Apple Support articles Restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch from a backup and If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Previous
Erase iPhone

Next
Restore purchased and deleted items

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Update iOS on iPhone

When you update to the latest version of iOS, your data and settings remain unchanged. You can also automatically install system file updates to improve the features of your iPhone without updating iOS.

Before you update, set up iPhone to back up automatically, or back up your device manually.

Update iPhone automatically

If you didn't turn on automatic updates when you first set up your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, tap Software Update, then tap Automatic Updates.
3. Turn on one of the following:

   - *Automatically Install:* When an update is available, iPhone downloads and installs it overnight while charging and connected to Wi-Fi. You're notified before an update is installed.

   - *Automatically Download:* Downloads an update automatically when your iPhone is connected to Wi-Fi, charging, and locked so you can install the update later. To see this option, first turn off Automatically Install.

Update iPhone manually

At any time, you can check for and install software updates.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Software Update.

The currently installed version of iOS is shown, and whether an update is available.

3. If an update is available, tap Download and Install, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Update using your computer

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.
2. Do one of the following:

   - *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPhone, then click General at the top of the window.

   - *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows device:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPhone near the top left of the iTunes window, then click Summary.

     Note: Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article Update to the latest version of iTunes.

3. Click Check for Update.
4. To install an available update, click Update.

Automatically update system files only

iPhone can automatically download and install system file updates to improve iPhone features without updating iOS.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, tap Software Update, then tap Automatic Updates.
3. Under iOS Updates, turn off Automatically Install.
4. Under System Files, turn on Automatically Install.

See the Apple Support articles Update to the latest iOS and If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Table of Contents

Back up iPhone

You can back up iPhone using iCloud or your computer. To decide which method is best for you, see About backups for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Tip: If you replace your iPhone, you can use its backup to transfer your information to the new device. See Restore all content to iPhone from a backup.

Back up iPhone using iCloud

iCloud backups store information and settings on your device that don't regularly sync to iCloud. This includes things like device settings, Home Screen layout, and app organization. See the Apple Support article What does iCloud back up?

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], tap iCloud, then tap iCloud Backup.
3. Turn on Back Up This iPhone.

   iCloud automatically backs up your iPhone daily when iPhone is connected to power, locked, and connected to Wi-Fi.

   Note: On models that support 5G, your carrier may give you the option to back up iPhone using your cellular network. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Backup, then turn Back Up Over Cellular on or off.
4. To perform a manual backup, tap Back Up Now.

If you need help backing up your iPhone with iCloud, see the Apple Support article If you can't back up to iCloud.

View available iCloud storage

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.

2. Tap [*your name*], then tap iCloud.

   The amount of iCloud storage used and the amount of iCloud storage available appear at the top of the screen.

Manage iCloud storage

You can view details about iCloud backups, such as the last backup, the next backup size, and the apps included in the backup.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap iCloud.
3. Tap iCloud Backup, then tap your iPhone (This iPhone).
4. To reduce the size of a backup, tap the apps you don't want to back up anymore; the apps' existing backup data will also be deleted from iCloud.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Manage your iCloud storage.

Back up iPhone using your Mac

You can save a backup of your iPhone on your Mac.

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.
2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPhone.

   To use the Finder to back up iPhone, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, use iTunes to back up iPhone.
3. At the top of the Finder window, click General.
4. Select "Back up all of the data on your iPhone to this Mac."
5. To encrypt your backup data and protect it with a password, select "Encrypt local backup."
6. Click Back Up Now.

Note: You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly. See Sync your iPhone with other devices.

Back up iPhone using your Windows device

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.
2. In the iTunes app on your Windows device, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window.
3. Click Summary.
4. Click Back Up Now (below Backups).
5. To encrypt your backups, select “Encrypt local backup,” type a password, then click Set Password.

To see the backups stored on your computer, choose Edit > Preferences, then click Devices. Encrypted backups have a lock icon in the list of backups.

Note: You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly. See Sync your iPhone with other devices.

Previous
Update iOS

Next
Reset iPhone settings

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Use Contact Key Verification on iPhone

You can use Contact Key Verification to receive automatic alerts that help verify you're communicating only with the people you intend. You can also generate unique codes that you and your contacts can compare simultaneously in the Messages app to further verify each other's identities. Additionally, you can post your Public Verification Code to a social media account so other people can confirm that it's you when they send you a message, and you can save other people's codes in the Contacts app.

Note: Contact Key Verification is designed to prevent highly sophisticated cyberattacks; it isn't designed to prevent fraud such as phishing or other text-based scams. To learn more about Contact Key Verification and troubleshooting, see the Apple Support article About iMessage Contact Key Verification.

Before you begin

To use Contact Key Verification, make sure of the following:

- Your devices are passcode or password protected.
- You're signed in to iCloud and iMessage with the same Apple Account and you have two-factor authentication turned on for your Apple Account.
- The person you're trying to verify is in your contacts.

Turn on Contact Key Verification

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Contact Key Verification.
2. Turn on Verification in iMessage, then tap Continue.

Note: When you turn on Contact Key Verification, you're prompted to update all of your Apple devices to compatible software. If you have a device that can't be updated, you need to sign out of iMessage on that device before you can turn on this feature.

Share a Public Verification Code

You can share your Public Verification Code in a message, or post it on a social media account so other people can verify your identity.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Contact Key Verification.
2. Tap Show Public Verification Code.
3. To share your Public Verification Code, tap Copy Verification Code, tap OK, then paste the code wherever you want to share it.

You can also use someone else's Public Verification Code to verify their identity. For example, if someone shares a Public Verification Code with you that doesn't match the code they have displayed on their social media profile, you should stop sending them messages until you can confirm their identity.

Generate verification codes in Messages

For a higher level of security, you and your contacts can generate a verification code in Messages, then save each other's Public Verification Codes in Contacts. This is useful when you want to verify each other simultaneously, or if the Public Verification Code you received doesn't match the one your contact shares with you.

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPhone.
2. Tap the person's name at the top of the conversation, scroll down, then tap Verify Contact.

   When the other person taps Verify Contact on their device, a contact verification code appears.
3. Compare the verification codes on both devices, then do one of the following:

   - *If the codes match:* Tap Mark as Verified, then tap Update to add the verification code to the other person's contact card.

   - *If the codes don't match:* You might not be communicating with the person that you intend. Tap No Match, then stop sending messages to the person until you can verify their identity.

After you verify a contact, a checkmark appears next to their name in Messages. You can also check their verification status in the Conversation Details, or find their Public Verification Code in Contacts.

See also

Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone

Screen, filter, report, and block text messages on iPhone

Add and use contact information on iPhone

About iMessage

Previous
Receive warnings about sensitive content

Next
Turn iPhone on or off

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

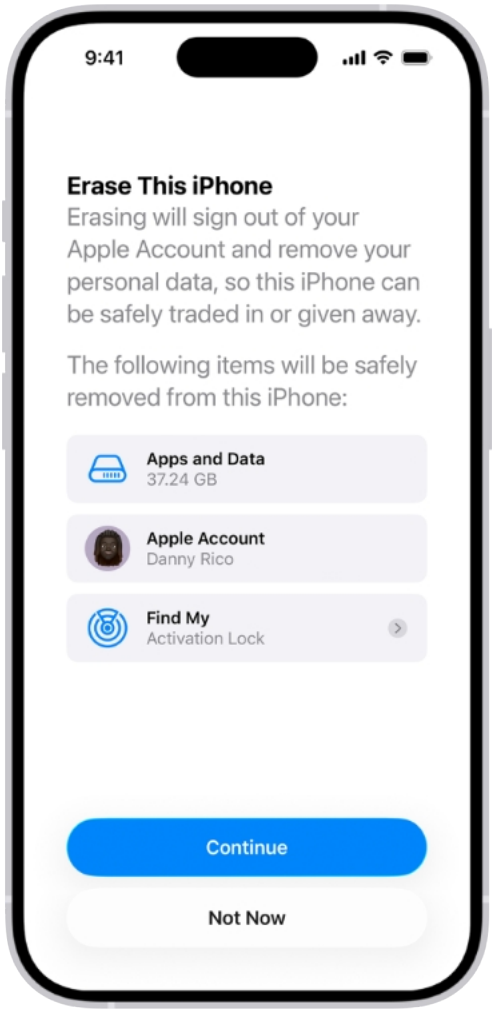
Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Erase iPhone

You can securely erase your personal information, content, and settings (such as privacy and network settings) from your iPhone. When you erase your iPhone, it's restored to factory settings. If you want to reset your iPhone settings but keep your personal content, see Reset iPhone settings to their defaults.



Before you begin

Back up your iPhone so you can restore your data later on a different device.

Erase iPhone using Settings

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Transfer or Reset iPhone.
3. Tap Erase All Content and Settings.
4. If asked, enter your iPhone passcode or Apple Account password.
5. Tap Continue to confirm.

   If you have an eSIM, you can choose to erase your eSIM or keep it. If you erase your eSIM, you need to contact your carrier to reactivate your cellular plan.

Erase iPhone using your Mac or Windows device

1. Connect your iPhone to your computer with a USB or USB-C cable.
2. On your Mac, click to open a Finder window, or open the Apple Devices app on your Windows device.

   If your Mac is using macOS 10.14 or earlier, or your Windows device doesn't have the Apple Devices app, open iTunes instead.
3. Click the iPhone icon in the Finder sidebar (below Locations), then click General at the top of the window.
4. Click Restore iPhone, then click Restore to confirm.

   Note: If you're signed in to Find My, you need to sign out before you can click Restore.

For troubleshooting, see the Apple Support article, Restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod to factory settings.

See also

Sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone

Apple Support article: If you forgot your iPhone passcode or your iPhone is disabled

Apple Support Article: How to erase the eSIM on your iPhone or iPad

Table of Contents

Turn iPhone on or off

Use the side button to turn on iPhone. You can use the side button (along with either volume button on some models) or Settings to turn off iPhone.

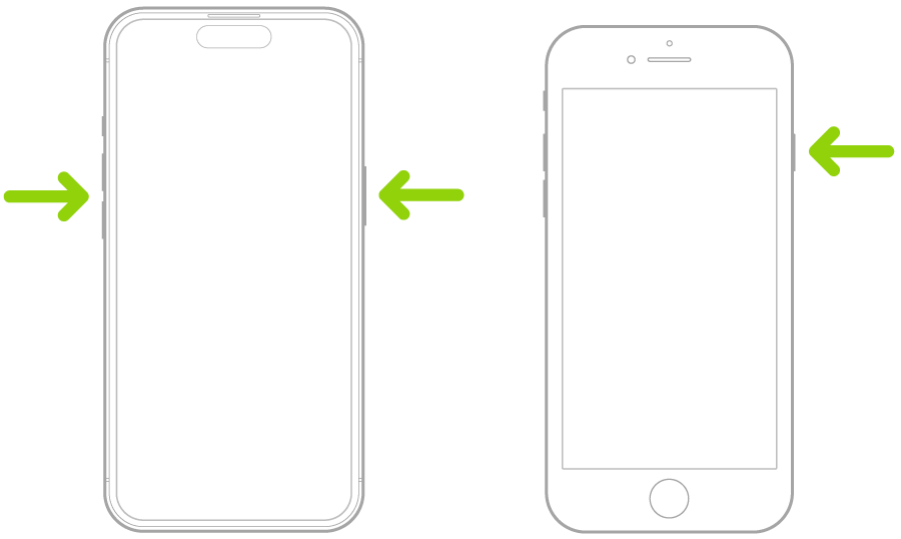
If your iPhone isn't working as expected, you can try restarting it by turning it off, then turning it back on. If turning it off and on doesn't fix the issue, try forcing it to restart.

Turn on iPhone

Press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears.

Turn off iPhone

- *iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the Power Off slider.
- *iPhone with the Home button:* Press and hold the side button, then drag the slider.



- *All models:* Go to Settings > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.

See also

Force restart iPhone

Previous
Use Contact Key Verification

Next
Force restart iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

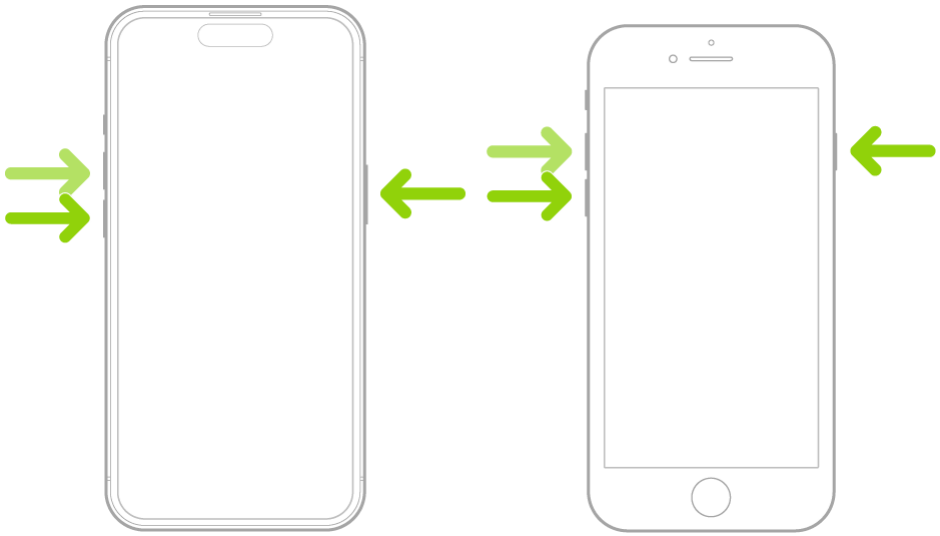
Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Force restart iPhone

If iPhone isn’t responding, and you can’t turn it off then on, try forcing it to restart.

1. Press and quickly release the volume up button.
2. Press and quickly release the volume down button.
3. Press and hold the side button.
4. When the Apple logo appears, release the side button.



If iPhone doesn’t restart after you try these steps, see the Apple Support article If your iPhone won’t turn on or is frozen. Or if your iPhone isn’t working as expected after you restart it, see the iPhone Support website.

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Reset iPhone settings to their defaults

You can return your iPhone settings to their defaults without erasing your content.

If you want to save your settings, back up iPhone before resetting it. For example, if you're trying to solve a problem but resetting iPhone doesn't help, you might want to restore your previous settings from a backup.

---

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, tap Transfer or Reset iPhone, then tap Reset.

   WARNING: If you choose the Erase All Content and Settings option, all your content is removed. See Erase iPhone.
3. Choose an option:

   - *Reset All Settings:* All settings—including network settings, the keyboard dictionary, location settings, privacy settings, and Apple Pay cards—are removed or reset to their defaults. No data or media are deleted.

   - *Reset Network Settings:* All network settings are removed. In addition, the device name assigned in Settings > General > About is reset to "iPhone," and manually trusted certificates (such as for websites) are changed to untrusted.

     Cellular data roaming may also be turned off. (See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.)

     When you reset network settings, previously used networks and VPN settings that weren't installed by a configuration profile or mobile device management (MDM) are removed. Wi-Fi is turned off and then back on, disconnecting you from any network you're on. The Wi-Fi and Ask to Join Networks settings remain turned on.

     To remove VPN settings installed by a configuration profile, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the configuration profile, then tap Remove Profile. This also removes other settings and accounts provided by the profile. See Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone.

To remove network settings installed by MDM, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the management, then tap Remove Management. This also removes other settings and certificates provided by MDM. See “Mobile device management (MDM)” in the Deployment Reference for iPhone and iPad.

- *Delete All eSIMs:* All eSIMs stored on your iPhone are deleted. You will need to set up a new eSIM or physical SIM card to connect to a cellular network. See Set up cellular service on iPhone.
- *Reset Keyboard Dictionary:* You add words to the keyboard dictionary by rejecting words iPhone suggests as you type. Resetting the keyboard dictionary erases only the words you’ve added.
- *Reset Handwriting Style:* Resets custom handwriting preferences to their defaults.
- *Reset Home Screen Layout:* Returns the built-in apps to their original layout on the Home Screen.
- *Reset Location & Privacy:* Resets the location services and privacy settings to their defaults.

If you want to completely erase your iPhone, see Erase iPhone using Settings.

Previous
Back up iPhone

Next
Erase iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Support > iPhone User Guide > Reset iPhone settings to their defaults

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

You are invited to take part in a short survey to help us improve your Apple Support online experience. Please select Yes if you would like to participate.

Yes No

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone

You can have your iPhone (or your family member's iPhone) check for sensitive images and warn you before you view them.

Turn on Sensitive Content Warning

1. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security.
2. Scroll down and tap Sensitive Content Warning, then turn on Sensitive Content Warning.

   You (or your family member) will receive a warning before receiving or sending sensitive images.

   Note: Sensitive Content Warning is turned on automatically if you set up Screen Time and turn on Communication Safety. See Check for sensitive images and videos in Screen Time on iPhone.

In Screen Time, you can also block inappropriate content and set restrictions on purchases. See Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases.

See also

Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases on iPhone

Previous
Use Stolen Device Protection

Next
Use Contact Key Verification

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

UK

Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Restore purchased and deleted items to iPhone

You can redownload items purchased from the App Store, Book Store, Apple TV app, and iTunes Store without repurchasing them. If you're part of a Family Sharing group, you can download items purchased by other family members, too. To restore purchases that aren't on your iPhone, see the following Apple Support articles:

- Redownload apps and games from Apple
- Redownload books and audiobooks
- Redownload TV shows and movies that you purchased
- Redownload music

You can also recover recently deleted email, photos, notes, and voice memos.

Previous
Restore all content from a backup

Next
Sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Class 1 Laser information for iPhone

iPhone 7 and later are classified as Class 1 Laser products per IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3. These devices comply with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11, except for conformance with IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3., as described in Laser Notice No. 56, dated May 8, 2019. Caution: These devices contain one or more lasers. Use other than as described in the user guide, repair, or disassembly may cause damage, which could result in hazardous exposure to infrared laser emissions that are not visible. This equipment should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider.



Previous
Ultra Wideband information

Next
Apple and the environment

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

ISED Canada compliance statement

This device complies with ISED Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Operation in the band 5150–5250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.

Models supporting Wi-Fi 6 GHz operation in the 5925–7125 MHz band shall not be used for control of or communications with unmanned aircraft systems, or on oil platforms, or on aircraft, except for the low-power indoor access points, indoor subordinate devices, low-power client devices, and very low-power devices operating in the 5.925–6.425 GHz band, that may be used on large aircraft as defined by the Canadian Aviation Regulations, while flying above 3,048 meters (10,000 feet).

Models supporting Wi-Fi 6 GHz operation in the 5925–7125 MHz band shall not be used on automobiles, trains, or maritime vessels (except for very low-power devices).

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d’ISDE Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L’exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l’appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l’appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d’en compromettre le fonctionnement.

La bande 5150–5250 MHz est réservée uniquement pour une utilisation à l’intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux.

Les modèles prenant en charge le fonctionnement Wi-Fi 6 GHz dans la bande 5925–7125 MHz ne doivent pas être utilisés pour le contrôle ou la communication avec des systèmes d’aéronefs sans pilote, ou sur des plateformes pétrolières ou à bord d'aéronefs, à l’exception des points d'accès intérieurs à faible puissance, des appareils subordonnés intérieurs, des appareils clients à faible puissance et des appareils à très faible puissance fonctionnant dans la bande 5,925–6,425 GHz, qui peuvent être utilisés sur de gros aéronefs tels que définis par le Règlement de l’aviation canadien, lorsqu’ils volent à plus de 3048 mètres (10,000 pieds).

Les modèles prenant en charge le fonctionnement Wi-Fi 6 GHz dans la bande 5925–7125 MHz ne doivent pas être utilisés sur les automobiles, les trains ou les navires (à l'exception des appareils à très faible puissance).

Previous
FCC compliance statement

Next
Ultra Wideband information

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Important safety information for iPhone

⚠ **WARNING:** Failure to follow these safety instructions could result in fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. Read all the safety information below before using iPhone.

Handling. Handle iPhone with care. It is made of metal, glass, and plastic and has sensitive electronic components inside. iPhone or its battery can be damaged if dropped, burned, punctured, or crushed, or if it comes in contact with liquid. If you suspect damage to iPhone or the battery, discontinue use of iPhone, as it may cause overheating or injury. Don't use iPhone with cracked glass, as it may cause injury. If you're concerned about scratching the surface of iPhone, consider using a case or cover.

Repairing. iPhone should only be serviced by a trained technician. Disassembling iPhone may damage it, result in loss of splash and water resistance (supported models), or cause injury to you. If iPhone is damaged or malfunctions, you should contact Apple, or an Apple Authorized Service Provider for service. Repairs performed by untrained individuals or using non-genuine Apple parts may affect the safety and functionality of the device. You can find more information about repairs and service at the iPhone Repair website.

Battery. An iPhone battery should only be repaired by a trained technician to avoid battery damage, which could cause overheating, fire, or injury. Batteries should be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste and according to local environmental laws and guidelines. For information about battery service and recycling, see the Battery Service and Recycling website.

Lasers. The proximity sensor in iPhone 7 and later, the TrueDepth camera system, and the LiDAR Scanner contain one or more lasers. These laser systems may be disabled for safety reasons if the device is damaged or malfunctions. If you receive a notification on your iPhone that the laser system is disabled, you should contact Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider for service. Improper repair, modification, or use of non-genuine Apple components in the laser systems may prevent the safety mechanisms from functioning properly, and could cause hazardous exposure and injury to eyes or skin.

Distraction. Using iPhone in some circumstances may distract you and might cause a dangerous situation (for example, avoid listening to music with headphones while riding a bicycle and avoid typing a text message while driving a car). Observe rules that prohibit or

restrict the use of mobile devices or headphones. For more about safety while driving, see Stay focused while driving with iPhone.

Navigation. Maps depends on data services. These data services are subject to change and may not be available in all countries or regions, resulting in maps and location-based information that may be unavailable, inaccurate, or incomplete. Compare the information provided in Maps to your surroundings. Use common sense when navigating. Always observe current road conditions and posted signs to resolve any discrepancies. Some Maps features require Location Services.

Charging. To charge iPhone, do any of the following:

- Charge the iPhone battery using the charging cable (included) and an Apple USB power adapter (sold separately).
- Place iPhone face up on MagSafe Charger or MagSafe Duo Charger (connected to Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or other compatible power adapter) or on a Qi-certified charger. (MagSafe Charger, MagSafe Duo Charger, power adapters, and Qi-certified chargers are sold separately.)
- Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

You can also charge iPhone with "Made for iPhone" or other third-party cables and power adapters that are compliant with USB 2.0 or later and with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. Other adapters may not meet applicable safety standards, and charging with such adapters could pose a risk of death or injury.

Using damaged cables or chargers, or charging when moisture is present, can cause fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. When you use the charging cable (included) or a wireless charger (sold separately) to charge iPhone, make sure its USB connector is fully inserted into a compatible power adapter before you plug the adapter into a power outlet. It's important to keep iPhone, the charging cable, the power adapter, and any wireless charger in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. When using a wireless charger, remove metallic cases and avoid placing metallic foreign objects on the charger (for example, keys, coins, batteries, or jewelry), as they may become warm or interfere with charging.

Charging cable and connector. Avoid prolonged skin contact with the charging cable and connector when the charging cable is connected to a power source because it may cause discomfort or injury. Sleeping or sitting on the charging cable or connector should be avoided.

Prolonged heat exposure. iPhone and Apple USB power adapters (sold separately) comply with required surface temperature limits defined by applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. However, even within these limits, sustained contact with warm surfaces for long periods of time may cause discomfort or injury. Use common sense to avoid situations where your skin is in contact with a device,

its power adapter, or a wireless charger when it's operating or connected to a power source for long periods of time. For example, don't sleep on a device, power adapter, or wireless charger, or place them under a blanket, pillow, or your body, when it's connected to a power source. Keep your iPhone, the power adapter, and any wireless charger in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. Take special care if you have a physical condition that affects your ability to detect heat against the body.

USB power adapter. (sold separately) To operate an Apple USB power adapter safely and reduce the possibility of heat-related injury or damage, plug the power adapter directly into a power outlet. Don't use the power adapter in wet locations, such as near a sink, bathtub, or shower stall, and don't connect or disconnect the power adapter with wet hands. Stop using the power adapter and any cables if any of the following conditions exist:

- The power adapter plug or prongs are damaged.
- The charge cable becomes frayed or otherwise damaged.
- The power adapter is exposed to excessive moisture, or liquid is spilled into the power adapter.
- The power adapter has been dropped, and its enclosure is damaged.

Apple 20W USB-C power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output power:* 5V/3A or 9V2.2A
- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 18W USB-C power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output power:* 5V/3A or 9V/2A
- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 5W USB power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output power:* 5V/1A
- *Output Port:* USB

Hearing loss. Listening to sound at high volumes may damage your hearing. Background noise, as well as continued exposure to high volume levels, can make sounds seem quieter than they actually are. Turn on audio playback and check the volume before inserting anything in your ear. For information about how to set a maximum volume limit, see Use hearing health features in Health on iPhone. For more information about hearing loss, see the Sound and Hearing website.

⚠ **WARNING:** To prevent possible hearing damage, do not listen at high volume levels for long periods.

Radio frequency exposure. iPhone uses radio signals to connect to wireless networks. For information about radio frequency (RF) energy resulting from radio signals, and steps you can take to minimize exposure, go to Settings > General > Legal & Regulatory > RF Exposure, or see the RF Exposure website.

Radio frequency interference. Observe signs and notices that prohibit or restrict the use of electronic devices. Although iPhone is designed, tested, and manufactured to comply with regulations governing radio frequency emissions, such emissions from iPhone can negatively affect the operation of other electronic equipment, causing them to malfunction. When use is prohibited, such as while traveling in aircraft, or when asked to do so by authorities, turn off iPhone, or use airplane mode or Settings > Wi-Fi and Settings > Bluetooth to turn off the iPhone wireless transmitters.

Medical device interference. iPhone and MagSafe accessories contain magnets as well as components and/or radios that emit electromagnetic fields. These magnets and electromagnetic fields might interfere with medical devices.

Consult your physician and medical device manufacturer for information specific to your medical device and whether you need to maintain a safe distance of separation between your medical device and iPhone and MagSafe accessories. Manufacturers often provide recommendations on the safe use of their devices around wireless or magnetic products to prevent possible interference. If you suspect iPhone and MagSafe accessories are interfering with your medical device, stop using these products.

Medical devices such as implanted pacemakers and defibrillators may contain sensors that respond to magnets and radios when in close contact. To avoid any potential interactions with these devices, keep your MagSafe compatible iPhone models and MagSafe accessories a safe distance away from your device (more than 6 inches/15 cm, or more than 12 inches/30 cm while wirelessly charging, but consult with your physician and your device manufacturer for specific guidelines).

Not a medical device. iPhone is not a medical device and should not be used as a substitute for professional medical judgment. It is not designed or intended for use in the diagnosis of disease or other conditions, or in the cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of any condition or disease. Please consult your healthcare provider prior to making any decisions related to your health.

Medical conditions. If you have any medical condition or experience symptoms that you believe could be affected by iPhone or flashing lights (for example, seizures, blackouts, eyestrain, or headaches), consult with your physician prior to using iPhone.

Explosive and other atmospheric conditions. Charging or using iPhone in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as areas where the air contains high levels of flammable chemicals, vapors, or particles (such as grain, dust, or metal powders), may be hazardous. Exposing iPhone to environments having high concentrations of industrial chemicals, including near evaporating liquified gasses such as helium, may damage or impair iPhone functionality. Obey all signs and instructions.

Repetitive motion. When you perform repetitive activities such as typing, swiping, or playing games on iPhone, you may experience discomfort in your hands, arms, wrists, shoulders, neck, or other parts of your body. If you experience discomfort, stop using iPhone and consult a physician.

High-consequence activities. This device is not intended for use where the failure of the device could lead to death, personal injury, or severe environmental damage.

Choking hazard. Some iPhone accessories may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep these accessories away from small children.

For Australian customers, see the Online Safety resources website.

Previous
Install or remove configuration profiles

Next
Important handling information

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Apple and the environment

At Apple, we recognize our responsibility to minimize the environmental impacts of our operations and products. See our Environment website.

Previous
Class 1 Laser information

Next
Disposal and recycling information

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Find more resources for iPhone software and service

Refer to the following resources to get more iPhone-related safety, software, and service information.

To learn about	Do this
Using iPhone safely	See Important safety information for iPhone.
iPhone service and support, tips, forums, and Apple software downloads	See the iPhone Support website.
Service and support from your carrier	Contact your carrier or go to your carrier's website.
The latest information about iPhone	See the iPhone website.
Getting personalized support (not available in all countries or regions)	See the Apple Support website.
Managing your Apple Account	Sign in to your Apple Account.
Using iCloud	See the iCloud User Guide.
Using iTunes for Windows	See the iTunes User Guide for Windows.
Using other Apple iPhone apps	See the App Store Support website.
Finding your iPhone serial number, IMEI, ICCID, or MEID	You can find your iPhone serial number, International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI), Integrated Circuit Card Identifier (ICCID), or Mobile Equipment Identifier (MEID) on the iPhone packaging. Or, on iPhone, go to Settings > General > About. See the Apple Support article Find the serial number or IMEI on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.
Obtaining warranty service	First follow the advice in this guide, then see the iPhone Support website.
Viewing iPhone regulatory information	On iPhone, go to Settings > General > Legal & Regulatory.
Battery service	See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

Battery performance and health	See the iPhone Battery and Performance website.
Learn about iPhone compliance with power management requirements	See the Environmental regulatory information website.
Using iPhone in an enterprise environment	See the Apple at Work website.

Previous
Important handling information

Next
FCC compliance statement

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Disposal and recycling information for iPhone

Apple Recycling Program (available in some countries or regions)

For free recycling of your old device, a prepaid shipping label, and instructions, see the Apple Trade In website.

Disposal and Recycling Information



The symbol above means that according to local laws and regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from household waste. When this product reaches its end of life, take it to a collection point designated by local authorities. The separate collection and recycling of your product and/or its battery at the time of disposal will help conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For information about Apple's recycling program, recycling collection points, restricted substances, and other environmental initiatives, visit apple.com/environment.

Brasil – Informações sobre descarte e reciclagem

O símbolo acima indica que este produto e/ou sua bateria não devem ser descartados no lixo doméstico. Quando decidir descartar este produto e/ou sua bateria, faça-o de acordo com as leis e diretrizes ambientais locais. Para informações sobre substâncias de uso restrito, o programa de reciclagem da Apple, pontos de coleta e telefone de informações, visite apple.com/br/environment.

Información sobre eliminación de residuos y reciclaje

El símbolo de arriba indica que este producto y/o su batería no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos. Cuando decidas desechar este producto y/o su batería, hazlo de conformidad con las leyes y directrices ambientales locales. Para obtener información sobre el programa de reciclaje de Apple, puntos de recolección para reciclaje, sustancias restringidas y otras iniciativas ambientales, visita apple.com/mx/environment o apple.com/la/environment.

Turkey environmental information

Türkiye Cumhuriyeti: AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Battery service

The lithium-ion battery in iPhone should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider, and must be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste. See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

Dispose of batteries according to your local environmental laws and guidelines.

警告：不要刺破或焚烧。该电池不含水银。



廢電池請回收

警告：請勿戳刺或焚燒。此電池不含汞。

Previous
Apple and the environment

Next
Unauthorized modification of iOS

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Select version:

iOS 26

Table of Contents

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Apple, the Apple logo, 3D Touch, AirDrop, AirPlay, AirPods, AirPods Max, AirPods Pro, AirPrint, AirTag, App Clip Code, App Clips, Apple Books, Apple Card, Apple Cash, Apple Music, Apple Pay, Apple Podcasts, Apple TV, Apple Wallet, Apple Watch, Apple Watch SE, Apple Watch Ultra, AssistiveTouch, CarPlay, Digital Crown, Dynamic Island, EarPods, Face ID, FaceTime, Final Cut, Final Cut Pro, Finder, Find My, Flyover, Freeform, Guided Access, Handoff, HomeKit, HomePod, HomePod mini, iMac, iMac Pro, iMessage, iMovie, iPad, iPad Air, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPad Pro, iPhone, iPod, iPod touch, iTunes, Keychain, Keynote, Lightning, Live Listen, Live Photos, Live Text, Mac, MacBook, MacBook Air, MacBook Pro, Mac mini, macOS, Mac Pro, Magic Keyboard, MagSafe, MagSafe Duo Charger, Memoji, Memory Mixes, Motion, NameDrop, Night Shift, Numbers, OS X, Pages, Photo Booth, ProMotion, ProRAW, ProRes, QuickPath, QuickTake, Safari, Siri, Siri Shortcuts, Spotlight, Touch ID, TrueDepth, True Tone, tvOS, visionOS, and watchOS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Apple Intelligence, Apple Sports, Apple Vision Pro, Genmoji, Live Activities, Multi-Touch, and SharePlay are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Apple Arcade, Apple Messages for Business, Apple News, Apple News+, Apple One, Apple Store, Apple TV+, App Store, Daily Cash, Genius, iCloud, iCloud+, iCloud Drive, iCloud Keychain, and iTunes Store are service marks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Apple Fitness+ and Apple News Today are service marks of Apple Inc.

Apple
One Apple Park Way
Cupertino, CA 95014
apple.com

Beats, the b logo, Beats Solo, Beats Solo Pro, Beats Studio, Beats[X], Powerbeats, Powerbeats Pro, and Solo are trademarks of Beats Electronics, LLC registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Beats Flex is a trademark of Beats Electronics, LLC.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Apple is under license.

Dolby, Dolby Atmos, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works, © 1992-1997 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered trademarks owned by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and regions and is used under license.

Other company and product names and logos mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Apple is not responsible for printing or clerical errors.

Some apps and features are not available in all areas. App and feature availability is subject to change.

Previous
Unauthorized modification of iOS

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone

Before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, see the Apple Support article What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, and be sure to perform the following tasks:

- If you paired an Apple Watch with your iPhone, unpair your Apple Watch. (See the Apple Support article Unpair and erase your Apple Watch.)
- Back up iPhone. If you replace one iPhone with another, you can use the setup assistant to restore the backup to your new iPhone.

  If you're replacing your iPhone with another one you have on hand, you can use extra free storage in iCloud to move your apps and data from one iPhone to another. Go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone > Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- Sign out of iCloud, the iTunes Store, and the App Store. Go to Settings > [*your name*], scroll down, tap Sign Out, enter your Apple Account password, then tap Turn Off.
- Erase all content and settings that contain personal information. If you previously turned on Find My for your iPhone, Activation Lock is removed when you erase iPhone, making it ready for a new owner.

Previous
Restore purchased and deleted items

Next
Install or remove configuration profiles

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone

Configuration profiles define settings for using iPhone with corporate or school networks or accounts. You might be asked to install a configuration profile that was sent to you in an email, or one that's downloaded from a webpage. You're asked for permission to install the profile and, when you open the file, information about what it contains is displayed. You can see the profiles you have installed in Settings  > General > VPN & Device Management. If you delete a profile, all of the settings, apps, and data associated with the profile are also deleted.

Previous
Sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone

Next
Important safety information

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Ultra Wideband information

Ultra Wideband is available on all iPhone 11, iPhone 12, iPhone 13, iPhone 14, iPhone 15, iPhone 16 models, iPhone 17 models, and iPhone Air. Availability varies by region.

Ultra Wideband must be turned off when onboard aircraft, ships, and other prohibited regions by turning on airplane mode. To turn on airplane mode, open Control Center, then tap ✈. You can also turn airplane mode on or off in the Settings app ⚙. When airplane mode is on, ✈ appears in the status bar.

Australia: Ultra Wideband transmitters must not be operated within a nominated distance from specified Australian radio-astronomy sites. For further information about nominated distance, please refer to the Radiocommunications (Low Interference Potential Devices) Class License 2015 published by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

Previous
ISED Canada compliance statement

Next
Class 1 Laser information

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

Unauthorized modification of iOS

iOS is designed to be reliable and secure from the moment you turn on your device. Built-in security features help protect against malware and viruses and secure user access to personal information and corporate data. Unauthorized modifications to iOS (also known as “jailbreaking”) bypass security features and can cause numerous issues such as security vulnerabilities, instability, and shortened battery life to the hacked iPhone.

- **Security vulnerabilities.** Jailbreaking your device eliminates security layers designed to protect your personal information and your iOS device. With this security removed from your iPhone, hackers may steal your personal information, damage your device, attack your network, or introduce malware, spyware, or viruses.
- **Instability.** Unauthorized modifications can cause frequent and unexpected crashes of the device, crashes and freezes of built-in apps and third-party apps, and loss of data.
- **Shortened battery life.** Hacked software can cause an accelerated battery drain that shortens the operation of iPhone on a single battery charge.
- **Unreliable voice and data.** Unauthorized modifications can cause dropped calls, slow or unreliable data connections, and delayed or inaccurate location data.
- **Disruption of services.** Services such as iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, Apple Pay, Visual Voicemail, Weather, and Stocks, may be disrupted or no longer work on the device. Additionally, third-party apps that use the Apple Push Notification Service may experience difficulty receiving notifications or may receive notifications intended for a different device. Other push-based services, such as iCloud and Exchange, may experience problems syncing data with their respective servers.
- **Inability to apply future software updates.** Some unauthorized modifications may cause damage to iOS that is not repairable. This can result in the hacked iPhone becoming permanently inoperable when a future Apple-supplied iOS update is installed.

Apple strongly cautions against installing any software that modifies iOS. It is also important to note that unauthorized modification of iOS is a violation of the iOS and iPadOS Software License Agreement and because of this, Apple may deny service for an iPhone that has any unauthorized software installed.

Information about products not manufactured by Apple, or independent websites not controlled or tested by Apple, is provided without recommendation or endorsement. Apple assumes no responsibility with regard to the selection, performance, or use of third-party websites or products. Apple makes no representations regarding third-party website accuracy or reliability. Contact the vendor for additional information.

Previous
Disposal and recycling information

Next
Copyright and trademarks

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies
UK

Table of Contents

Important handling information for iPhone

Cleaning. Clean iPhone immediately if it comes in contact with anything that may cause stains, or other damage—for example, dirt or sand, ink, makeup, soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, or lotions. To clean:

- Disconnect all cables, then do one of the following to turn off iPhone:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the side button, then drag the slider.
  - *All models:* Go to Settings > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.
- Use a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth—for example, a lens cloth.
- Avoid getting moisture in openings.
- Don't use cleaning products or compressed air.

iPhone has a fingerprint-resistant oleophobic (oil-repellant) coating. This coating wears over time with normal usage. Cleaning products and abrasive materials will further diminish the coating and may scratch iPhone.

Exposure to liquid and dust. If liquid splashes on iPhone or dust gets on it, wipe it off with a soft, lint-free cloth (for example, a lens cloth) and ensure that your iPhone is dry and free of dust before opening the SIM tray. Minimize exposing iPhone to soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, and any liquids—for example, salt water, soapy water, pool water, perfume, insect repellent, lotion, sunscreen, oil, adhesive remover, hair dye, and solvents. If iPhone comes into contact with any of these substances, follow the instructions above in the Cleaning section.

Supported models are splash, water, and dust resistant and were tested under controlled laboratory conditions with a rating of either IP68 or IP67 under IEC standard 60529. Splash, water, and dust resistance are not permanent conditions and resistance might decrease as a result of normal wear. Liquid damage not covered under warranty. See the Apple Support article About splash, water, and dust resistance of iPhone 7 and later. To prevent liquid damage on iPhone, avoid the following:

- Swimming or bathing with iPhone
- Exposing iPhone to pressurized water or high velocity water, such as when showering, water skiing, wake boarding, surfing, jet skiing, and so on
- Using iPhone in a sauna or steam room
- Intentionally submerging iPhone in water
- Operating iPhone outside the suggested temperature ranges or in extremely humid conditions
- Dropping iPhone or subjecting it to other impacts
- Disassembling iPhone, including removing screws

If your iPhone has been exposed to liquid, unplug all cables and do not charge your device until it's completely dry. Using accessories or charging when wet may damage your iPhone. Allow at least 5 hours before charging or connecting a Lightning or USB-C accessory.

To dry iPhone, tap it gently against your hand with the Lightning or USB-C connector facing down to remove excess liquid. Leave the device in a dry area with sufficient airflow. Placing the device in front of a fan blowing cool air directly into the Lightning or USB-C connector may help the drying process.

Do not dry your iPhone using an external heat source or insert a foreign object into the Lightning or USB-C connector such as a cotton swab or a paper towel.

Using connectors, ports, and buttons. Never force a connector into a port or apply excessive pressure to a button, because this may cause damage that is not covered under the warranty. If the connector and port don't join with reasonable ease, they probably don't match. Check for obstructions and make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

USB-C or USB-C to Lightning Cables. Discoloration of the Lightning or USB-C connector after regular use is normal. Dirt, debris, and exposure to moisture may cause discoloration. If your Lightning or USB-C cable or connector becomes warm during use or iPhone won't charge or sync, disconnect it from your computer or power adapter and clean the Lightning or USB-C connector with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth. Do not use liquids or cleaning products when cleaning the Lightning or USB-C connector.

Certain usage patterns can contribute to the fraying or breaking of cables. The included cable, like any other metal wire or cable, is subject to becoming weak or brittle if repeatedly bent in the same spot. Aim for gentle curves instead of angles in the cable. Regularly inspect the cable and connector for any kinks, breaks, bends, or other damage. Should you find any such damage, discontinue use of the cable.

Operating temperature. iPhone is designed to work in ambient temperatures between 32° and 95° F (0° and 35° C) and stored in temperatures between -4° and 113° F (-20° and 45° C). iPhone can be damaged and battery life shortened if stored or operated outside of these temperature ranges. Avoid exposing iPhone to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity. When you're using iPhone or charging the battery, it is normal for iPhone to get warm.

If the interior temperature of iPhone exceeds normal operating temperatures (for example, in a hot car or in direct sunlight for extended periods of time), you may experience the following as it attempts to regulate its temperature:

- iPhone stops charging.
- The screen dims.
- A temperature warning screen appears.
- Some apps may close.

Important: You may not be able to use iPhone while the temperature warning screen is displayed. If iPhone can't regulate its internal temperature, it goes into deep sleep mode until it cools. Move iPhone to a cooler location out of direct sunlight and wait a few minutes before trying to use iPhone again.

See the Apple Support article Keeping iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch within acceptable operating temperatures.

Previous
Important safety information

Next
Find more resources for software and service

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies

Table of Contents

FCC compliance statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications to this product not authorized by Apple could void the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) and wireless compliance and negate your authority to operate the product.

This product has demonstrated EMC compliance under conditions that included the use of compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components. It is important that you use compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components to reduce the possibility of causing interference to radios, televisions, and other electronic devices.

Models supporting Wi-Fi 6 GHz are prohibited from operation on oil platforms and aircraft. Operation in 5.925–6.425 GHz is permitted in large aircraft while flying above 10,000 feet.

Installation on outdoor fixed infrastructure is prohibited.

Operation of transmitters in the 5.925–7.125 GHz band is prohibited for control of or communications with unmanned aircraft systems.

Responsible party (contact for FCC matters only):

Apple Inc.
One Apple Park Way, MS 911-AHW
Cupertino, CA 95014
USA
apple.com/contact

Previous
Find more resources for software and service

Next
ISED Canada compliance statement

Helpful? Yes No

Copyright © 2025 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.
UK
Privacy Policy | Terms of Use | Sales and Refunds | Site Map | Use of Cookies